Asiatic Society (Calcutta, India), Asiatic Society...
BIBLIOTHECA INDICA:

A COLLECTION OF ORIENTAL WORKS,

PUBLISHED BY

THE ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL.

TRANSLATION

OF

THE ṬABAḴĀT-I-NĀṢIRĪ

OF

THE MAULĀṆĀ, MINḤĀṆ-I-SARĀṆ,

ABŪ ḤUMAR-I-ʻUṢMĀṆ. 
LONDON
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.
TABAKAT-I-NĀSIRĪ:
A GENERAL HISTORY
OF THE
MUḤAMMADAN DYNASTIES OF ASIA,
INCLUDING HINDŪSTĀN,
FROM A.H. 194 [810 A.D.], TO A.H. 658 [1260 A.D.],
AND THE
IRRUPTION OF THE INFIDEL MUGHALS INTO ISLĀM.
BY
THE MAULĀNĀ, MINHAJ-UD-DIN, ABŪ-'UMAR-I-'ŪSMĀN.
Translated from Original Persian Manuscripts.

BY MAJOR H. G. RAVERY,
BOMBAY NATIVE INFANTRY (RETIRED).
Author of a Grammar, a Dictionary, and The Gulshan-i-Roh, or Selections,
Prose and Poetical, in the Pūrāto or Afghān Language; The Poetry
of the Afghāns (English Translation); The Fables of Æsop
Al-Ḥakīm in the Afghān Language; The Pūrāto or
Afghān Manual; Notes on Afghānistān,
Geographical, Ethnographical,
and Historical, etc.

VOL. I.

London:
PRINTED BY GILBERT & RIVINGTON.
1881.
PREFACE.

In 1865 I was led to read the printed text of the Tabakat-i-Nāširi, published at Calcutta in 1864, in search of materials towards a history of the Afghāns and their country, which is very much mixed up with that of India.

Having gone through a great portion of it, and finding it defective in many places, and full of errors, I thought it advisable to examine the India Office Library MS., No. 1952, from which the printed text was said to have been taken, went through the whole of that work, and found that it also was defective, and contained numerous errors. I found nothing, however, respecting the Afghāns, except in one place, and there they were briefly mentioned in a few lines, but very characteristically.

I had already discovered, when in search of other materials, what lamentable errors the available Histories of India, so called, in the English language contained, and I now found how they had arisen. With a view of correcting them, I made a translation of those portions of the Tabakat-i-Nāširi which related to India, and the History of the Ghaznawi and Ghūrī dynasties: and, when I offered a translation to the Bengal Asiatic Society some twelve years ago, my intention was, as stated in my letter on the subject, merely to have made a fair copy of the translation of those identical portions.

Soon after, I obtained a very old copy of the work; and, on comparing it with the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, I found such considerable and important differences to exist, that I determined to begin anew, and translate the whole work.

The Society having accepted my offer, and the defective
state of the printed text being well known, Mr. Arthur Grote, to whom I am very greatly indebted for assistance in many ways, advised that, in making this translation, I should avail myself of any other copies of the text that might be procurable in Europe. On instituting inquiry the following were found, and have been already referred to in my report to the Society, published in the "Proceedings" for February, 1873, and have been used by me in my task. I must here give a brief description of them, and notice and number them according to their apparent age and value, which arrangement, however, will be somewhat different from that in the notes to pages 68 and 77 of the translated text.

1. A MS. belonging to the St. Petersburg Imperial Public Library.

This, probably, is the most ancient of the copies collated. It is not written in an elegant hand, by any means, although plainly and correctly, but in the style in which Mullās usually write. The dāls are marked with diacritical points, and other letters are written in a peculiar manner, denoting considerable antiquity. It is, however, imperfect, and does not comprise much more than half the work.


This copy is considered by Doctor Rieu, whose experience is sufficiently great, and authority undoubted, to be a MS. of the fourteenth century. It is clearly written and correct, and has been of the utmost use to me. It wants a few pages at the end, hence the date on which it was completed, and by whom written, which generally are inserted at the end, cannot be discovered.

3. The old MS. in my possession,

To judge from the writing and paper, I should suppose it to be about the same age as No. 2. It is clearly written, but wants several pages at the end, consequently, the date of its completion likewise cannot be discovered. One pretty good proof of its age, however, is that the whole, from beginning to end, has been cut close to the illuminated borders of each leaf, and inlaid on other paper, which also appears to be of considerable age. Whoever did this turned a number of leaves the wrong way, and misplaced
several pages, which took me some time to put in their places again.

I imagine that there is very little difference, in point of antiquity, between these three copies.

4. A *MS.* belonging to the Imperial Academy of Sciences at St. Petersburg.

This is a well and correctly written *MS.*, which has also been of the greatest use to me in my work. It wants about two leaves at the end, and, consequently, the date on which it was copied does not appear. I should say, comparing it with the others above described, that it is a *MS.* of the sixteenth century, possibly, still earlier. It has an unreadable name on the last leaf, with 1218 H. [1803 A.D.] upon it.

5. The India Office Library *MS.*, No. 1952.

This is also a plainly written copy, and, apparently, of considerable age, nearly as old, possibly, as the three copies first named, but it is incorrect in scores of places: one place in particular, where three complete pages of the history of Sulṭān Mas'ūd of Ghaznīn occur in the middle of the account of the Saljūqs. This is important, although an error, because it shows us how many other copies have been taken from it, or that it, and the other copies hereafter to be named, were all copied from another, still earlier, *MS.* imperfect in that identical place.

This *MS.* is, in all probability, that referred to by Stewart, as belonging to Tipū’s library, and said to have been “copied by the author himself.” The reason why this, too, has been erroneously considered “an autograph of the author’s,” is simply this—whoever copied it, as in the case of other copies, neither recorded his own name, nor the place where, or date when, it was completed, and so it terminates in the author’s own words, hence some people have run away with the idea—and it only shows upon what a shadow they often found their theories—that the author himself *must have written it.* It ends thus:—“The book of Al-Minhāj bin Sarāj, the 5th of Rabi’-ul-Awwal—the third month—in the year fifty and six hundred.” The eight, which should have preceded the fifty, has been left out. On the first leaf the following is written: “The Ṭabaḵāt-i-Nāṣiri, in the city of Ḥaidar-ābād, in the month of Rabi’-
ul-Awwal, 1157 H. [1744 A.D.], was bought of the booksellers in that place."

6 and 7. Two MSS. in the Paris National Library.

These may be classed, at least the best of the two, with the preceding MS., No. 5, in point of date, and want of correctness; and I believe that they are either copies of No. 5, or, like it and two others—the Bodleian MS., and the Ro. Asiatic Soc. MS.—copies of the same identical MS. They all agree as to errors,¹ and they all end in the same way, without the name of the scribe, the date, or place where copied, with the single exception of the Bodleian copy, which has the word "eight" written over the words "fifty and six hundred." For the reasons above-mentioned, both Paris MSS.—not one only, I find—were fondly considered "autographs of the author's;" but M. H. Zotenberg, whose opinion I asked, very justly says, "this is impossible, because the two MS. are not in the same handwriting." He, however, adds, "but to judge from the paper and the writing, I should suppose that they are both MSS. of the fifteenth century. They were both brought from India." They came from the Dakhan, in all probability.

8 and 9. The other copy of the text in the British Museum, No. Add. 25,785, which Doctor Rieu considers may be of the sixteenth century, and another belonging to the Imperial Academy of Sciences of St. Petersburg. These are, comparatively, modern copies, of the first half of the seventeenth century in all likelihood. They are plainly written, but are neither of them very correct. The former is defective to the extent of seven or eight 8vo. pages at the end, and the other also wants a few leaves. They are neither of them of much value.

10. A MS. formerly in the Library of Haileybury College.

This is the most complete MS. of the text that I have met with, although it is of comparatively recent date. It is written in a plain, but not elegant hand. It is generally correct, and closely agrees with Nos. 2, 3, and 4; and I have found it exceedingly useful. Indeed without it, and

¹ See Notes 8, page 308; 8, page 376; 8, page 400; 8, page 426; 8, page 573; 7, page 577; and particularly page 665, note 8; page 684, note 8; note page 692; and 8, page 703; in which some of these are pointed out.
Nos. 2, 3, and 4, I never could have completed my task satisfactorily. In a few places it supplied what was defective in two of the others. The date of copying is not given, but, from its appearance, I should say it was a M.S. of the last half of the seventeenth century. After the author's concluding words the following is written:—

"The owner of this M.S., in the port [Bandar] of Sūrat, [is] the Hājī, Muhammad Sharīf, son of Mullā Muḥammad Sharīf, son of Mullā Muḥammad Tāhīr;" after which follow some words not quite intelligible, "on the 8th of Sha'bān—the eighth month—1113 H. [1701-1702, A.D.], was recorded." The two last words appear to refer rather to the date the owner wrote his name, than to the date the M.S. was completed. It subsequently belonged to some Grandee of the Mughal empire, from the titles given under the above record, namely, "The Mumtāz-ud-Daulah, Mufakhkhar-ul-Mulk, Ḥusām-i-Jang." Who he was I am unable to say.

11. The copy of the text formerly belonging to the late Colonel G. W. Hamilton, C.B., in the collection of the late Earl of Crawfurd and Balcarres. This is, upon the whole, the worst copy I have collated, and contains very numerous errors, although, in point of age, it may be older than Nos. 8, 9, and 10. It terminates abruptly at page 462 of the Printed Text, and is thus defective to the extent of about twenty-six pages, but it has the closing page, and when and where written. Before I saw it, I was informed that it was a very valuable copy, and that it had belonged to "the Emperor Shah Jahan, because his seal was stamped on the margin of one of the pages." On examination, I found that the M.S. was completed "on Thursday, the 6th of Rajab—the seventh month—of the year 1059 H. [July, 1649], in the reign of the Second Šāhīb-i-Kirān, Abū-l-Muẓaffar, Shihāb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Šāh-i-Jahān, Bāḏshāh-i-Ghāzi, in the city of Būhrānpūr [in Kāndes], at the time when hostilities broke out between that monarch and Šāh 'Abbās the Second [the Šafawī ruler of I-rān], respecting Kandaḥār [the Kizil-bāshīs were then actually investing that stronghold]," and that the copyist was the Khānāh-zād-i-Dargāh [the born slave of the Court or Household], Mu'in-ud-Din, Khwājah-i-Jahān, the Jahān-giri," [of the Household of Jahāngīr Bāḏshāh], Šāh-i-Jahān Bāḏshāh's father.
Beneath this again is the name of a Maulawī, the son of some “Khān,” partly obliterated, with the date 1255 H. [1839 A.D.]. A seal underneath bears the date 1233 H. [1818 A.D.]. The largest seal, supposed to be that of Shāh-i-Jahān Bādshāh, bears the following inscription:—“Mu'in-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [the same person as referred to above], ghulām-i Shāh-i-Jahān,” with the figures 24, referring to the year of that monarch’s reign, and the year 1061 H. [it began Dec. 14th, 1650, A.D.]. A smaller seal, with an inscription—“Yā Mu’īn”—“O Helper!”—bears date 1058 H. [1648 A.D.]. I could discover nothing to show that the MS. had ever belonged to Shāh-i-Jahān Bādshāh.

12. The MS. belonging to the Royal Asiatic Society. This, as previously mentioned, is a modern copy, of the latter part of the seventeenth century possibly, and is either a copy of No. 5, or copied from the same MS. that was copied from. It is pretty plainly but carelessly written, in, by no means, a good hand; but, like the others referred to, is very defective, and the proper names of persons and places are often without any points.

I have already noticed how incorrect the Printed Text is. In the Preface to it, Colonel W. N. Lees, LL.D., says: “When I commenced the work, we had three copies, one belonging to the Ro. Asiatic Soc., one in the India House Library, and one belonging to the High Priest of the Pārsīs at Bombay. A little while afterwards, Colonel Hamilton, in reply to a circular of the Society, forwarded a copy from Dehli. These MSS. are all apparently good old copies, and are written in very different hands. It was supposed, then, that we had four distinct copies to collate; but, before long, it became apparent that the four had been copied from two MSS.,* so, in reality, we had only two... The Society had issued hundreds of circulars to all parts of India, and had failed to draw out more than two copies; and the fact, that the four old copies I had had been copied

* In this case, if the Ro. As. Soc’s MS. is a copy of the India Office MS., the Hamilton MS., and the High Priest’s, must be copies one of the other, or copies from another MS.

Sir Henry Elliot mentions that he found one in the Royal Library at Lakhnāo, but most of the MSS. in that collection were, I believe, destroyed during the rebellion of 1857.
from two MSS., seemed to indicate so clearly the great scarcity of MSS. of this work, that I decided to go on."

From these remarks its defectiveness is not to be wondered at, but, at the same time, as I have shown in my notes, there are numerous errors in it which are not to be found in these MSS., and a little historical and geographical discrimination on the part of the editors might have corrected many of them.

The time and labour required for simply translating a book, especially if but one or two copies be used for collation, is not very great; and this translation could have been accomplished in a tithe of the time I have devoted to it. But, as this History is one of the four most important works with respect to the early rulers of India, and that part of Central Asia upon which all eyes have been lately turned, and are likely to be turned in the future, I thought it advisable not to spare any pains on it, although it has occupied some years longer than I anticipated. I have collated nine copies of the text word for word; and all doubtful passages have been collated for me from the other three. Although this has occupied a great deal of time, and entailed much labour, a still greater amount of both has been expended on the notes, which I deemed necessary to illustrate our author's often brief, sometimes erroneous, but generally valuable, statements, to point out the errors which he has sometimes fallen into, and to point out some of the legion of lamentable mistakes, and misleading statements, contained in compilations purporting to be "Histories of India," "Histories of Afghanistan from the Earliest Times," and similar Histories of other Eastern states and peoples; and to show the exact value of the compilations, turned out by the yard by raw hands, for the Public of the newspapers and reviews, and the general reader.

These errors in Indian History are solely attributable to the miscalled translations of the comparatively modern chronicle, known as the Tārikh-i-Firīštah by Dow and Briggs, the first of whom could not possibly have understood the words of the writer in scores of places, and in such cases appears to have recorded his own ideas instead of the author's statements. Firīštah's work, too, is not difficult, and the style is simple; and it is one of a few books
well adapted for the Lower Standard of Examination in the Persian language. Firishtah's materials were chiefly taken from the Ţabakât-i-Akbari, also known as the Ţabakât-i-Akbar Shahi, of the Khwajah, Nizâm-ud-Din, Ahamd, who obtained his materials, up to the reign of Ghiyâs-ud-Din, Balban, from the work of our author; and not a single event is recorded in Firishtah that is not recorded in the Ţabakât-i-Akbari. This will be quite clear to any one who will take the trouble to compare them. Firishtah, indeed, follows it so closely that, not only are the poetical quotations appropriated, but the errors also, as I have pointed out in my notes, have been faithfully copied by the Dakhani author: where the one errs the other is sure to follow.

The English version of Briggs, "the admirable version," as a writer, who did not know the contents of Firishtah, calls it, is clearly based upon Dow's, with very slight alterations, and they are chiefly of a verbal kind. I should be sorry to be unjust to any author, but I submit that, where great, misleading, and glaring, historical errors, are as clear as the light of day, it is a duty towards the public, and in the interests of science, that they should be pointed out, even at the risk of "hurting the susceptibilities" of the authors of them or their friends, especially when such pernicious compilations as I have referred to, under the name of history, continue to be used in our colleges and schools, without the nature of them being known in its true light. The writers of them have much to answer for, but those who have adopted them in our public institutions a vast deal more. See, for example, note 4, page 312, and note, page 323.

One of the most glaring of the misstatements I refer to is that wherein the Turk sovereigns of Ghaznin, as well as the Tâjzik rulers of Ghür, are turned into "Patháns" or "Afgháns," which words are synonymous, and "Pa-tháns" or "Afgháns" into Turks and Tâjzik Ghürís. Dow, in the first place, is to blame for this, but Briggs blindly followed him. I say this advisedly. The proof is

---

3 A few examples of which may be seen in Note 6, page 441; and 5, page 653; last para. of Note 8, page 665; 6, page 697; and 4, page 711.

4 Examples of this will be found in Notes 1, page 204; 6, page 312; 4,
easy from any MS. of Firishtah's work, but with MSS. alone we need not rest content. We have only to compare Briggs's version with that lithographed edition printed at Bombay, to which Briggs put his name as editor and reviser, to prove my words.

Let us, for example, take any passage in Briggs' account of the Ghūrls, or the history of the Turkish slave Sulṭāns of Dihli—those, say, referred to at page 508 of this work—and in the Persian text which, according to the title-page, had the benefit of his editing and revision, not one word will be found respecting their being Afghāns, as contained in his "admirable translation:" all comes from Dow.

If this TRANSLATION OF THE ṬABAḴĀT-I-NAṢIRĪ, the original of which was published just six hundred and twenty-one years ago, and the notes accompanying it, disperse to the winds this error-bubble alone, I shall deem my time not lost, and the labour of years not thrown away, because, even since the publication of Sir H. Elliot's extracts from various Histories, which also showed how incorrect this "Pathān" theory was, Turks, Tajzik Ghūrls, Turkish Slaves, Jaṭs, Sayyids, and others, continue to figure under the ridiculous name of "Pathān dynasties," up to this present day.

I have already remarked that our author has mentioned the Afghāns but once in his History, and that very briefly, but, at the same time, most graphically [page 852], a body of them being in the pay of the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zām. The Afghāns were by no means unfamiliar to our author, and he certainly knew the Ghūrls better than any other author known to us, and he shows on that very page that they were a totally different race. In his account of the Shansabānīs of Ghūr, and their dynasties, he simply stands unrivalled, and also in his accounts of the first Mughal invasions of the territories between Hirāt and Multān. The Afghāns appear at this time to have begun to take service under the Muḥammadan feudatories of the western border provinces of the Dihli kingdom. They may have been in the

---

page 320; note 7, para. 4, page 321; note 8, page 404; 7, page 431; note 9, page 441; note 4, page 514; and 1, para. 5, page 794.

habit of taking such service previously, but to no great extent I imagine, but, about this period, there was a particular reason for it—the confusion and convulsions caused throughout the vast tracts of country which formed the kingdom of the Ghaznavis and their subverters the Ghuris, styled Afghanistan by Europeans chiefly, through the irruptions, devastations, massacres, and final subversion of the Musalmān rule by the hordes of infidel Mughals, by whom the country of the Afghans was completely surrounded on the north, south, and west, while the only territory still held by a Musalmān sovereign lay on the east—the Panjāb—the western part of which also subsequently fell under the Mughal yoke. The limits of the true Afghanistan were prescribed by the mountains bounding the Kurmaḥ valley and the territory of Kābul on the north, the Koh-i-Surkh on the south, the territories of Ghaznī and Kandahār on the west, and the Sulimānī mountains or Koh-i-Siyah on the east.

It will be observed that I have really commenced the Translation from Section VII.; and from that point it embraces the whole work. The first six, with the exception of the History of the early kings of I-rān, are not of much importance by reason of their brevity. The account of the I-rānī dynasties, which would require a volume to illustrate them, I have treated as a separate work, which, ere long, may see the light. To make the Translation in effect complete, however, I have given an abstract of the first six Sections.

The adulations addressed to, and constant prayers offered up for, the Sultan to whom the author dedicated, and after whom he named, his History, have been omitted or greatly reduced, and some of the introductions to the Sections also, which are of a similar style, have been cut short, but, in all other cases, I have not "compressed" the Translation in the least degree; and I may say that I have weighed every word and sentence, and have omitted nothing, not even the poetical quotations, having only rejected some of the longer portions when they have been of no interest, not necessary to the text, or of no particular merit. I have endeavoured to render the translation as nearly as possible in the author's own words, without being slavishly literal. It is however sufficiently
literal to assist a student, and yet readable by the English reader, though keeping much of a foreign complexion for various reasons. It is possible that in so long a work, published at intervals as completed, and not in a complete form at once, slight inconsistencies in punctuation and English (though not Persian, save through printers' errors) orthography may be here and there observable. Most English punctuation is haphazard, and left to the compositors, who, apparently, sometimes use it to denote breathing pauses; sometimes to help out the grammar. One may point sentences very much or very little, but whatever is done should be upon one system. Accordingly here, for the most part, the minute plan of what may seem to some over-much stopping is adopted, though not always, but no such absurdity is allowed to appear as a divorce of the verb from its subject by a single comma, and other errors of that sort, which come of printers attending entirely to pause and forgetting grammar.

Scholars will understand that there may be much to be said for more ways than one of spelling the same word in such a language as English.

This book, the text and notes together, will be found to be a very thesaurus of the most varied and often recondite historical material for the periods of which it treats, and many time-honoured historical errors have been pointed out and rectified. It wants but one thing to make it still more acceptable to the Student, and that is an Index. The Reviewers are tolerably sure to point this out for fear nobody else should see it. So the Translator begs to say, once for all, that he is too weary, and his time too valuable, to take up any such work. Meanwhile, The Index Society will have here a capital tough subject for their charitable exertions.

Besides the standard Histories mentioned in note 4, page 869, the following, among which are many rare, celebrated, and excellent, works, have been also used; and some of them have been extensively drawn upon. The majority, but not all, have been mentioned in the notes taken from them. From "the labours of" these authors "my predecessors" I have derived the utmost "assistance," and acknowledge it accordingly.
The following Pughto or Afghān Chronicles have also been used:—The History of the Khāshi sept of the Afghān nation, and their conquests beyond the river of Kābul, by Khwāji, the Matizī; the Tarikh-i-Nisbat-i-Afaghīnah, by the Shāikh, ‘Abd-ur-Razzāk, Matizī; and the Tarikh-i-Muraṣṣa’ by Muḥammad Afzal Khān, Khāṭak.

I cannot close these remarks without tendering my sincere thanks to Doctor C. Rieu, Keeper of the Oriental
Manuscripts of the British Museum, for his kind and efficient assistance at all times, also to Professor Alois Sprenger of Wabern near Bern, and to Monsieur H. Zotenberg of the French National Library, who very kindly collated numerous passages for me.

The system of transliteration, adopted in the following pages, is that known as the system of Sir William Jones, which, after some thirty years' experience, the Translator conceives to be the easiest, as well as the most natural, and as easy of pronunciation [except, perhaps, the purely 'Arabic gutturals] as the original letters of the 'Arabic alphabet.

The vowels are three short —a, i, u, equivalent to — and —; and three long—ä, ı, ü, equivalent to ı̝— ı̝ — ı̝.

All consonants, except the following, are pronounced precisely the same as in English: — ç ş, as th in thing, or lisped s; ĝ — ch, as ch in church; ĝ — h, strongly aspirated, which occurs only in purely 'Arabic words; ĥ — kh, as ch in loch, and as German ch; ź — ž, pronounced by applying the tip of the tongue inverted to the palate; ź — z, as th in thine, by 'Arabs, dîh; ʒ — r, as r uttered by striking the point of the tongue on the palate; ʒ — jz, as s in pleasure, or soft French j; ʃ — sh, as sh in shell; ʂ — s, as ss in dissolve; ʃ — z, as dud; Ʉ — t, as t with a slight aspiration; Ʉ — z, as English s with a slight aspiration; ġ — ' , a deep guttural without any audible aspiration, and, when initial to a word, the ' is placed before its vowel, as in 'Ali, and, when not initial, after its preceding vowel, as in Ja'far and Râfî'; ĝh, a guttural sound like that produced in gargling, or Northumbrian r, and something similar to gh in ghost; Ʉ — k, another peculiar 'Arabic sound, produced by pressing back the root of the tongue to the throat, and partaking of the sound of k and q; Ʉ — h, slightly aspirated; at the end of a word it is often unaspirated. When e occurs at the end of a word preceded by ā, the former is almost quiescent. The only diphthongs are ai and au.

From the above system the scholar can at once tell the original letters in the names of persons and places. Unless the peculiar letters are marked there is no knowing what they are meant for. For example; if the equivalent of خ a
is not marked, we cannot tell whether the original was خ or
the two letters ﷖ and ﷖; and if the roman equivalents ﷚ of
س, ﷚, and ﷚ are all rendered by simple “s,” how are we to
know which is the letter meant?

As the work is rather more bulky than was anticipated
at the outset, and may be perhaps more convenient in two
volumes than in one, I have provided for binding it up into
two volumes by giving two separate title-pages, as it can
be conveniently divided at the commencement of Section
XXII., page 719.

Rock House,
Milverton, Somerset,
12th January, 1881 A.D. 12th Safar, 1298 H.
MEMOIR OF THE AUTHOR.

FEW materials exist for a notice of our author, and these are chiefly furnished by himself.

The first mention he makes of his family is to the effect that "the Imām, 'Abd-ul-Khālid, the Jūrjānī, having, in his early manhood, dreamt a dream on three successive occasions, urging him to proceed to Ghaznīn and seek a wife, set out thither; and, subsequently, obtained, in marriage, one of the forty daughters of Sulṭān Ibrāhīm of Ghaznīn," who was in the habit of bestowing his daughters, in marriage, upon reverend and pious Sayyids and 'Ulamā, like other Musalmān rulers have continued to do, down to recent times.

By this wife, 'Abd-ul-Khālid had a son, whom he named Ibrāhīm, after his maternal grandfather, the Sulṭān; and he was our author's great-grandfather. He was the father of the Maulānā, Minhāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, who was the father of the Maulānā, Sarāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad—who is called Ibrāhīm by some—who was known by the title of 'Ujūbat-uz-Zamān—The Wonder of the Age. He was the father of the Maulānā, Minhāj-ud-Dīn,1 Abū-'Umar-i-'Uṣmān, the author of the following History, who thence often brings in his father's and grandfather's name, styling himself Minhāj-i-Sarāj-i-Minhāj, the two Ḳaṭṭāfs being used to signify son of in place of the Arabic bin.

Our author's ancestors, on both sides, for several generations, appear to have been ecclesiastics of repute, and men

---

distinguished for learning. He states that he possessed, among the *mīsāl* or diplomas granted to his maternal ancestors by the Khalifahs, one from the Khalifah, Mustażi B'llah, conferring the *Kāzi*-ship of the fortress, or rather, fortified town, of Tūlak, described in the following pages, together with that over the Kūhistān, and the Jibāl—Highlands—of Hirāt, upon his maternal grandfather, in conformity with the diploma previously held by the latter’s father before him. His paternal grandfather also received an honorary dress from the same Pontiff; and our author says that he himself possessed the diploma which was sent along with it.

In the oldest copies of the text, and in several of the more recent, our author almost invariably styles himself ‘the Jūrjānī’—जरजानी—as I have from the outset rendered it; but those *MSS.* previously referred to, which appear to have been copied from the same source as that from which the I.O.L. *MS.* was taken, or from that copy itself, generally have जरजानी—Jūzānī—and sometimes Jūrjānī as above. If the point of ज—ज—be left out, as is very liable to be the case, like the points of other letters, by copyists, it is but simple ज—ज. Words containing long उ—उ—are often written with the short vowel *samāmah* or *pesh*——instead of उ—उ—and hence, in some few copies, it is जरजानी—Jurjānī, while sometimes it is written both ways in the same *MS.*

Since writing note?, at page 321, giving an account of the Amir, Mas'ūd’s inroad into the northern parts of Ghūr, when on his way from Ghaznīn to Hirāt, I have considered that the word given by our author referred to the tract of country described in that note as the Gūzgānān, or the Gūzgāns, by Tājziks, but which ‘Arabs, and people of ‘Arab descent, who use យ—យ—for the Tājzik گ—گ—turn into Jūzjānān, and that the word he uses in connexion with his own name refers to one of the Gūzgāns, and that he should be styled ‘the Gūzgānī’ or ‘Jūzjānī.’ As the most trustworthy copies of the text, the best and most correctly written, had Jūrjānī, I considered it necessary to follow them as I had begun, and to mention the matter more in detail here in the Memoir of the Author’s life.

Gūzgān, as the native inhabitants styled it, or Jūzjān, is not the name of a single town, village, or fortress,
but one of the small districts or tracts of country among
the mountains, on the north-west frontier of the country
of Ghūr, and north of Hirāt, beyond the Murgh-Āb—the
Jibāl of Hirāt, as he himself styles it—but its exact posi-
tion, and the localities of most of the great fortresses
mentioned by our author in the last Section of his
work, are at present unknown to us. The Gūzgānān, or
Gūzgāns were the appanage of the Amir, Muḥammad,
brother of Mas'ūd; and it was from thence that he was
brought when he assumed the throne of Ghaznīn after the
death of his father. Notwithstanding the details which our
author gives respecting the great fortresses of Ghūr, Ghar-
jistān, and other parts, including the fortress of Tūlāk,
which appears to have been his own place of residence at
the time, and also the home of his maternal relatives (see
page 1066 and note 4), which he helped to defend against
the Mughal invaders, and which must have been situated
in one of the Gūzgāns, he never once, throughout his whole
work, refers to Gūzgān or Jūzjān, except in connexion with
his own name. See also notes to pages 186 and 232.

After the Ghūris obtained possession of Lāhor in 582 H.,
and they had seized the Sultan, Khusrau Malik, the last of
the Sultāns of Ghaznīn, our author's father was made Kāzi
of the Ghūriān army stationed at Lāhor, under the Sipah-
Sālār, 'Ali-i-Kar-mākh; and twelve camels were assigned
him for the conveyance of the establishment of his office,
his tribunal, etc., on the line of march.

Our author was born after this, in the year 589 H., the
very year in which Dīhli, of which, and of which Musulmān
kingdom, he was subsequently to become the chief Kāzi and
Sadr, was made the seat of the Musulmān government in
Hindūstān by the Turk Mamlūk, Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, who
was, in after-years, to become its first Muḥammadān Sultān.
That our author was born at Lāhor, as the Dāghistānī, re-
ferred to farther on, asserts, cannot be correct; for, from
what he himself states respecting his arrival at Ūchchah in
624 H. [see pages 541 and 722], that was the first time he
set foot in Hind. Had he been born at Lāhor, he would,
doubtless, have mentioned it, and he would probably have
been styled and known as the Lāhori in consequence.

The next mention he makes of his father is, that, when
Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, ruler of Bāmiān and Ṭukhāristān, succeeded his father on the throne, he desired that our author’s father, the Maulānā, Sarāj-ud-Din, Muḥammad, should take up his residence in his kingdom, and enter his service. With the sanction of his own sovereign and patron, and Bahā-ud-Din, Sām’s suzerain, namely, the Sultan of Ghūr, Ḥiyāṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, the Maulānā proceeded to the Court of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, and was made Kāzī of the kingdom of Bāmiān and Ṭukhāristān, with the judicial administration over its forces, was made censor, with full powers as regards ecclesiastical law, and intrusted with the charge of two colleges, and their funds. This happened in 591 H., when our author was in his third year. He states that the diploma conferring these offices upon his father, in the handwriting of the Wazīr of the Bāmiān state, was still contained in the khārītah [a bag of embroidered silk for holding documents] containing his own diplomas, his banner, and turban of honour.

The mother of our author was the foster-sister and school-mate of the Princess, Māh Malik, the daughter of Sultan Ghiyāsh-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, mention of which lady will be found in several places in the following pages; and his mother appears to have continued in her service after her marriage. Our author distinctly states that his early years were passed in the Haram of the Princess, until the period of his entering upon adolescence, when, according to Musalmān usages, he had to be sent elsewhere. He speaks in terms of much gratitude of the fostering kindness and protection he received while dwelling in that Princess’s household. Under these circumstances, Lāhūr can scarcely have been the place of his birth.

When Sulṭān Takīsh, Khwārazm Shāh, withdrew his allegiance from the Khalīfah, Un-Nāṣir-ud-Din-Ullah, and the latter’s troops had been defeated by him, Ibn-ur-Rabbī’, and Ibn-ul-Khaṭīb, on two different occasions, came as envoys to the Courts of the Sulṭāns of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, to demand aid from these monarchs against Sulṭān Takīsh. In consequence, the Imām, Shams-ud-Din, the Turk, and the Maulānā, Sarāj-ud-Din, Muḥammad, the Tajzik, our
author's father, were directed to proceed to Baghdad, to the Khalifah's Court, along with the envoys. They set out for Baghdad by way of Mukran; and, in some affray into which they fell on the road, they were attacked by a band of robbers, and our author's father was killed. Intimation of his death was received in a communication from the Khalifah to the Sultan, Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sam, in these words: "Furthermore, Saraj-i-Minhaj perished in an affray on the road. The Almighty recompense him!"

Another of our author's relatives, his mother's brother's son, was Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of 'Abd-us-Sallām, Kāzī of Tūlak, who was left in command of the fortress of Tabarhindah, with a force of 1200 Tūlakīs, by the Sultan, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, when that Sultan was about to retire from Hind before the hot season of 587 H., intending to return after it was over and relieve him. The Kāzī of Tūlak was to hold the place for seven months; but, as the Sultan, just after this arrangement was made, was defeated by Rāe Pithorā, and severely wounded in the battle, and an expedition into Khurāsān soon after intervened, he was totally unable to come to the Kāzī's relief, as agreed upon, in the following season, and, consequently, after having held out over thirteen months, the Kāzī, Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, had to capitulate.

At the time Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, was assassinated by the Khwārazmī refugees, in Safar, 607 H., our author was dwelling at Firūz-koh, and was then in his eighteenth year.

In 611 H., the year preceding the surrender of his capital, Firūz-koh, by the last of the Sultāns of the Ghūrī dynasty,
our author proceeded thither. Two years after we find him in Sijistan, at Zaranj, the capital, where he remained some time. At this period the whole of the territories which had formed the empire of the Ghūris, including the dominions of Ghaznin, and extending east of the Indus into the upper part of the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah of the Panj-āb as far as the Jhilam, had fallen under the sway of the Khwārazmīs. These events must, in some way, have been the cause of his sojourn in Sijistān for seven months, but he is quite silent on the causes which led him there. See page 195.

In 617 H., during the first inroad of the Mughals into Ghūr and Khurāsān, before the Chingiz Khān himself crossed the Oxus with his main army, our author was living at Tūlak; and, shortly after, in the same year, took part in the defence of that fortified town against the invaders, who kept prowling about it for about eight months. During a period of four years, from the above mentioned year up to the close of 620 H., during which the Mughals made several attempts upon it, he helped to defend it.

In 618 H., the year in which he says the Chingiz Khān crossed the Jihān into Khurāsān, and he was in his thirtieth year, he married the daughter of a kinsman of his own; and, in 620 H., he determined, as soon as circumstances permitted, to leave his native country, and proceed into Hindūstān, not liking, apparently, to dwell in a country overrun by the Mughal infidels. In 621 H. he was despatched from Tūlak, where he was then living, and in the defence of which against the Mughals he had just taken part, by Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Hasan-i-Khār-post, to Isfīzār, after Khurāsān had become clear of Mughals, and from thence into the Kuhistān—the Chingiz Khān had, at that time, returned homewards—to endeavour to arrange for the re-opening of the kārwān routes, which, during the Mughal invasion, had been closed, and the traffic suspended.

On a second occasion, in 622 H., he again proceeded from Tūlak into the Kuhistān for the same purpose, at the request of Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of 'Uṣmān, the Maraghāni, of Khāesār of Ghūr, the father of
Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, the first of the Kurat dynasty, as the Tajzik—not Afghān, I beg leave to say—rulers of the fefts of Hirāt and Ghūr and their dependencies, who were the vassals of the Mughals, were styled. The following year he again set out on a journey into the Kuhistān, on the part of Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Muhammad, that the kārwan route might be re-opened. From Khāesār he first went to Farāh, and from thence proceeded by way of Sijistān into the territory referred to, and returned to Khāesār again.

In 623 H., our author, who appears to have left Tūlak and was residing at Khāesār, with the permission of Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Muhammad, went to Farāh in order to purchase a little silk required by him for his journey into Hindūstān. Having arrived in the neighbourhood of Farāh, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Bīnāl-Tīgin, the Khwārazmī, who then ruled over Sijistān, and was engaged in war with the Mulahidah of the Kuhistān, induced him to undertake a journey into the latter territory, to endeavour to bring about an accommodation between himself and the Mulahidah governor of that part, the Muḥtashīm, Shams-ud-Dīn. Our author was accompanied by the son of Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, whose name is not mentioned, but, in all probability, it was the identical Shams-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, the founder of the Kurat dynasty. Our author succeeded in effecting an accommodation, but it does not appear to have been on terms acceptable to Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bīnāl-Tīgin, for he wished him to return to the Muḥtashīm's presence and declare war again. This he declined to do, as he had several times put off his journey into Hind, and was now desirous of departing without further delay, and before the Mughals should again appear. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bīnāl-Tīgin, was wroth at this refusal, and shut him up within the walls of the fortress of Šashed of Sijistān. There he was detained for a period of forty-three days, but, Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, having interfered in his behalf, he was set at liberty.

He did not allow the grass to grow under his feet after this; and in the fifth month of the following year—Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 624 H., [in another place he says it was Rajab, the seventh month, while in another place—page 612—he
says it was in 625 H., by way of Ghaznîn and Banían, he reached Úchchah by boat; and, in the following Zi-Ḥijjah, Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Ḍîn, Kaba-jah, ruler of Úchchah and Multān, placed him in charge of the Fīrūzī College at Úchchah, and made him Kāẓī of the forces of his son, 'Alā-ud-Ḍîn, Bahrām Shāh.

Our author could distinguish the winning side, and preferred it; for, no sooner had Sultān Shams-ud-Ḍîn, I-yał-timish, ruler of Dihlī, Kaba-jah's rival, appeared before Úchchah, than he deserted Kaba-jah and the Fīrūzī College, and went over to his rival. In the first place, our author presented himself before Malik Tāj-ud-Ḍîn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, who was in command of the van of I-yał-timish's forces; and, a few days after, I-yał-timish himself having arrived, he waited on him. He was favourably received, and was appointed to officiate, in his priestly capacity, within that Sultan's camp. After the fall of Úchchah, he accompanied I-yał-timish to Dihlī; and reached it in Ramāzan, 625 H.

He subsequently accompanied the Sultān, in his priestly capacity, to Gwāliyūr in 629 H.; and, in the following year, after that stronghold was taken possession of, was made Kāẓī, Khāṭīb, and Imām of Gwāliyūr and its dependencies, under the governor, Rashīd-ud-Ḍîn, 'Allī. In the early part of Sultān Raźiyāyat's reign he returned to Dihlī, but he was not removed from office, neither was he a "forgiven rebel;"* and, during his absence from Gwāliyūr, his Deputies acted for him. On reaching the capital, in 635 H., that sovereign added to his offices that of Superintendant of the Nāṣirīah College at Dihlī.

In the year 639 H., in the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Ḍîn, Bahrām Shāh, our author was made Chief Kāẓī of the Dihlī kingdom, and of the capital as well. In the disturbances which arose between that Sultān and his Amīrs, our author, and other ecclesiastics, endeavoured to bring about a peaceful accommodation, but without effect. In Zi-Ḵa'dah of the same year, the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Ḍîn, the Wazīr, bribed a number of villains to murder him; and, after the conclusion of the Friday's prayers, on

---

the 7th of that month, they actually attacked him in the Jāmi’ Masjid, but he escaped without hurt.

Soon after, on the accession of Sultān ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas‘ūd Shāh, on the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, being re-appointed Wazīr, our author, in 640 H., resigned the Chief Kāzi-ship, and in Rajab of that year left Dihlī in order to proceed into the territory of Lakhānawatī. There he remained about two years, and there he acquired his information respecting it and its rulers. While residing in that country, he accompanied Malik Tughrīl-i-Tughān Khān in his expedition against the Rāe of Jāj-Nagar, and was present at the attack on the frontier post of Katāsīn, in Shawwāl, 641 H. On the removal of that Malik from the government of Lakhānawatī in 643 H., our author accompanied him on his return to Dihlī, and, in Šafar of that year, presented himself at Court. Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn had in the meantime been put to death by the Amīrs; and, through the interest and efforts of his subsequent munificent patron, Malik Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balban (afterwards Ulugh Khān-i-A’zam, and subsequently Sultān of Dihlī), who held the office of Amir-i-Ḥājib, three days after his return, he was put in charge of the Nāṣirīah College once more, and entrusted with the administration of its endowments, the lecture-ship of the Jāmi’ Masjid, and the Kāzi-ship of Gwāliyūr, according to the previous grant. Subsequently, in the same year, he accompanied the army which advanced to the banks of the river Biāh for the relief of Ochchah when invested by the Mughals.

In 644 H., at Jalhandar [in the Panj-āb], on the return of the army, on the occasion of performing the services prescribed for the ‘Id-i-Āzāhā in the hall of the College there, the new Sultān, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, to whom this History is dedicated, presented our author with a cloak, a turban, and a richly caparisoned horse. In 645 H., he wrote a description, in verse, of the expedition against Talsandah, entitled the “Nāṣirī Nāmah.” The Sultān rewarded him for this with a yearly stipend, and Malik Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balban, the hero of the poem, and commander of the expedition, gave him the revenues of a village in the Hansī province, which was that Malik’s fief at that period. In
649 H., for the second time, the Chief Kāzi-ship of the Dihli kingdom, with jurisdiction over the capital as well, was conferred upon him; but, when, two years after, in 651 H., the eunuch, 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān, succeeded in his conspiracy for the removal from office of our author's patron, who had been raised to the title of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam in 647 H., and he was banished the Court, our author, like others of the Ulugh Khān's clients and supporters, was removed from the office of Chief Kāzi, and it was conferred upon one of the Rayhānī's creatures, notwithstanding our author stood so high in the estimation of the weak and puppet Sulṭān. In 652 H., matters improved a little: a new Wazīr succeeded; and, while in the Kol district, whither our author appears to have accompanied the Sultan's Court, the title of Ṣadr-i-Jahān was conferred upon him.

At the close of the following year the Rayhānī was ousted from office, the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam again assumed the direction of affairs, and our author, who, for months past, had been unable, for fear of his life, to leave his dwelling, even to attend the Friday's service in the Jāmi' Masjid, was, in Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 653 H., for the third time, made Chief Kāzi of the Dihli kingdom, with jurisdiction over the capital as before.

With the exception of his remark at page 715, in winding up the events of the year 658 H., that if his life should be spared—he was then in his seventieth year—and aptitude should remain, whatever events might subsequently occur would be recorded, our author henceforward disappears from the scene, and we hear no more of him. At the end of his account of the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam farther on, he does not renew that promise, nor does he do so when finally closing his History. The munificent rewards he received on presenting copies of his work to the Sultan and to the latter's father-in-law, the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, are mentioned at page 1294. He refers to his family casually, now and then, in the following pages, but, with a single exception, enters into no particulars whatever. At page 820 he says, with reference to the Malik-ul-Ḥujjāb [Head of the Chamberlains], 'Alā-ud-Dīn, the Zinjānī, that he is "his son, and the light of his eyes;" but he could not have been

4 See page 698, and note 8.
his son from the fact of his being styled “the Zinjānī,” that is to say, a native of Zinjān in Khurāsān. He may have been his son-in-law, or an adopted son.

When the emissaries from Khurāsān were received by the Sultān, Nāsir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, as related at page 857, our author composed a poem befitting the occasion, and this, he says, was read before the throne by one of his sons. He also, in one place, refers to a brother.

Between the time when our author closes this History in 658 H., and the Ulugh Khān-i-A’zām succeeded to the throne of Dihli under the title of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, in 664 H.—the date generally accepted, although Fāsh-i says it was in 662 H.—is a period of about six years; and, as no other writer that we know of has recorded the events of that period, it is a complete blank in Indian History, which, I fear, cannot be filled up. Ziyā-ud-Din, Barānī, in his Tārīkh-i-Fīrūz-Shāhī, which is not much to be depended on, says he takes up the relation of events from the time our author left off, but this is not correct, for he begins with the reign of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, Balban.

Our author died in his reign, but when cannot be discovered, neither can the place of his burial. Possibly some inscription may hereafter turn up which may tell us, but there is no record available in any of the works I have waded through in search of the information. Whether his health failed him; whether he grew out of favour with his old patron, the new Sultān; or whether circumstances arose which, as regards the Ulugh Khān’s conduct towards the weak-minded, but amiable, Sultān, Nāsir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, would not bear the light of day—for there are vague statements of foul play on the part of the Ulugh Khān, but no proofs—who shall say? Some writers state that the Sultān died a natural death, which is most probable, and some further add that he, having neither offspring nor heir, nominated his father-in-law, the Ulugh Khān-i-A’zām, his successor, which was but natural, seeing that, for nearly twenty years, he had virtually ruled the state. That the Ulugh Khān-i-A’zām poisoned him appears unworthy of credence, since, had he desired to supplant him, or get rid of him, he might have effected either object years before. See note 4, page 716.
The only mention I can find, after much search, respecting these years, between the closing of our author's History and the accession of the new Sultan, is the following from Faşih-i. "Sultan Nilâş-ud-Dîn, Mahmüd Shâh, died in this year, 662 H., and great anarchy and disorder arose throughout the territory of Hindûstân. At last, since among the great Amîrs of Hind, for prudence, counsel, wisdom, munificence, dignity, magnificence, and power, the Amîr, Ghiyâhs-ud-Dîn [the Ulugh Khân-i-A'zam] was preeminently distinguished, and as he had obtained his freedom previously—a matter never alluded to by our author—he, with the unanimous accord of the great nobles and grandees of the kingdom, ascended the throne of Dihli in the beginning of this year, 662 H."

The Dâghistâni, previously referred to, in his Tažkirah, under the letter ـىــىـ ـىـ ـىـ has the following:—"Saraj-ud-Dîn-i-Minhâj is the author of the Tabâkât-i-Nâširî, which he completed in the name of the Malik of Hind, Nâşir-ud-Dîn. His birthplace was Lâhor, and his origin was from Samr-şand."

This last sentence of the Dâghistâni's is sufficient to show that he is not entirely to be depended upon, in this instance at least. Our author's family was not from Samr-kand. The Dâghistâni also gives the following as a quatrain of our author's:—

"That heart which, through separation, thou madest sad;  
From every joy that was, which thou madest bare of;  
From thy disposition I am aware that, suddenly and unexpectedly,  
The rumour may arise that thou hast broken it."

In the "Akhbâr-ul-Ahîyâr"—a Biographical Collection of Notices of Saints—of 'Abd-ul-Ḥâkk [he died 1052 H, = 1642 A.D.], the following will be found respecting our author:—"The Shaikh, Kâzi Minhâj, the Jurjâni, the author of the Tabâkât-i-Nâširî, was a saint, and one of the most learned and excellent of his time, and one of those who would become filled with religious ecstasies on hearing the singing at Zikrs or Taqkirs. When he became Kâzi of Hindûstân that office assumed integrity and rectitude. The Shaikh, Nizâm-ud-Dîn, states:—"I used, every Monday,

* This, probably, is no other than the celebrated saint of Dihli.
to go to his Tażkirs, until, one day, when I was present at one of them, he delivered this quatrain:

"The lip, in the ruby lips of heart-ravishers delighting,
And to ruffle the dishevelled tresses essaying,
To-day is delightful, but to-morrow it is not—
To make one's self like as straw, fuel for the fire."

"When I heard this verse," says the Shaikh, Nizam-ud-Dîn, "I became as one beside myself; and it was some time before I came to my senses again."

Our author appears to have been deeply imbued with the tenets of Şüfi-ism, for a brief essay on which, see the Introduction to my "Poetry of the Afghâns." Professor Sprenger tells me that he was a notorious Şüfi. A good account of these Zikrs, or Tażkirs, will be found in the notes to the Third Chapter of Lane's "Thousand and One Nights."

Before closing this brief memoir of our author, it will be necessary to mention the reasons which led him to write this History. These he gives in the Preface dedicating the work to the Sultan, Nâṣir-ud-Dîn, Maḥmûd Shâh, and this divested of much of its fulsome adulation and redundant expressions, may well appear as the Preface to this translation of his History.
THE AUTHOR’S PREFACE ¹ AND DEDICATION.

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate!

Thus sayeth Abū-'Umar-i-'Usmān, son of Mūhammad-al-Minhāj-al-Jurjānī, that, when, through the blessing of Almighty God, the diadem and throne of the dominion of Hindūstān became graced by [encircling] the blessed head, and adorned by [being pressed by] the august foot of that Lord of the World, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muẓaffar-i-Mahmūd Shāh, son of the Sultān, I-yal-timīsh—May his reign long continue!—and the khūṭbah and coin became embellished with his titles and his name, and, during the reign of which august sovereign, the justice-seat of the Kāżi-ship of the empire of Hindūstān was con-signed to this loyal servant, on a certain occasion, in the tribunal of law and justice, a book came under his observation which the learned and worthy of former times had compiled for the edification of the select and distinguished of posterity. This had been taken from the annals of the Prophets and Khalīfahs—On whom be peace!—together with their genealogies, and the histories of the reigns of great Maliks [kings] of bygone times—the splendour of the Almighty illumine their tombs!—and had been written down in tabulated forms, and abbreviated after the manner

¹ This Preface varies in some copies, particularly at the commencement, to the extent of a page or more.
² I do not find any trace in the Preface to either of the copies collated, of the "tabular chronicle compiled by the Imām Mūhammad Ali Abu l-Kāsim Imādī, in the time of Nāṣir ol-dīn Soboktikīn," mentioned by Col. Lees, L.L.D., in the English Preface to the Calcutta Printed Text, nor is it to be found in its Persian Preface. The words are ....... جمع كرده که بودند The Imām’s "Tārīḵh-i-Majdūl" is mentioned in Section XI.
of an epitome, in the time of the Sultāns of the dynasty of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Sabuk-Tīgin—The Almighty guard their last resting-place!—from every flower-garden a flower; from every sea a drop, they had brought together [in this book]. After mentioning the Prophets, and giving their genealogies, and that of the Khalīfahs of the Bani-Ummiyah and Bani-'Abbās, the Maliks of 'Ajam, and the Akāsirah, they rested content with an account of the family of the august Sultān, Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tīgin-i-Ghāzī—On whom be peace!—and abstained from any mention of other great Maliks, or the dynasties or annals of the Sultāns of the past.

This frail one desired, therefore, that this meagre History should be filled up from first to last, from beginning to end, with an account of the whole of the Maliks and Sultāns of Islām, both of 'Arab and of 'Ajam, and that a candle out of every dynasty should be enkindled in this assembly, and that, to the head of every race, a cap might be stitched, by the relation of events and occurrences and illustrious actions. Therefore, an account is recorded here, of the Tubbā-yawa' of Yaman, and the Ḥimyar Maliks; and, after mention of the Khalīfahs, an account of the Tāhirīs, Šuffāris, Sāmānis, the dynasty of Buwīah, the Saljūks, Rūmīs, Shansabānis, and the Sultāns of that family who were sovereigns of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, and Hind, the Khwārazm-Shāhis, the Kurd Maliks who are Sultāns of Shām, and the Mu'izzīyah Maliks and Sultāns, who became Bāḏshāhs on the thrones of Ghaznīn and of Hind, up to the present time, which is the reign of the heir to the diadem and throne of the dominions of the I-yal-timishī dynasty and house,

—Khuld U'llah Saltanatahu!²

and this History is reduced to writing, and adorned with his august titles and name, and is entitled the

ṬABAḴĀT-I-NĀṢIRĪ.

It is his implicit hope, through the perfect grace of the Creator, the Most High and Holy, that, when this book shall be honoured by the blessed sight of this Bādghāh, the Asylum of the World, it may meet with the felicity of his approbation; and that from the zenith of the firmament of benefaction, and the summit of the sphere of favour, a ray of the royal grace may shine upon this frail one; and, after his removal from this temporary dwelling, from its readers may a kind invocation endure; and, should they become cognizant of any error or omission, may they veil it with the skirt of the robe of forgiveness, since whatever was to be found in trustworthy chronicles is herein recorded.

* In ELLIOT, vol. II., page 261, the editor, Mr. Dowson, tells us that, “The eulogistic way in which he [our author] always speaks of the successor of Nāṣiru-d din would induce the belief that the work appeared in the reign of that Sultān, and the fact is proved by his more than once offering up an ejaculatory prayer for the continuance of his reign.” Again, at page 362 of the same work, in a foot-note, we are informed that “The text says ‘the Sultān (may God prolong his reign)’; plainly showing that this part of the work [the notice of Ulugh Khān—the text at page 807 of this Translation is referred to] was written in the reign of Balban.”

What our author says above, as well as his other statements noticed in the body of the work, and up to its very conclusion, are, perhaps, undoubted proofs that this work was neither written, nor appeared, in Balban’s reign.
# CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preface</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memoir of the Author</td>
<td>xix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author's Preface and Dedication</td>
<td>xxxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents</td>
<td>xxxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Notes and Emendations</td>
<td>xlv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errata</td>
<td>lvii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introductory, being an Epitome of the First Six Sections 1

**SECTION I.**

Adam, the Patriarchs and Prophets, and the ancestors of Muḥammad ib.

**SECTION II.**

The Four orthodox Khalifahs, the descendants of 'Ali, and the Companions of the Prophet ib.

**SECTION III.**

The Khalifahs of the house of Ummiyah ib.

**SECTION IV.**

The Khalifahs of the house of 'Abbās ib.

**SECTION V.**

The Maliks of 'Ajam to the rise of Islam:
- I. The Bāstānīāh or Peş-Dādān 2
- II. The Kāiānīān 3
- III. The Ašḵānīān 4
- IV. The Sāsānīān ib.
- V. The Aḵāsīrāh 5

**SECTION VI.**

The Tubbā-yawā', and Maliks of Yaman 6
CONTENTS.

SECTION VII.
The Dynasty of the Tahir Muhammadan Maliks in 'Ajam.
I. Tahir-i-Zu'l-Yamanain .......................... 9
II. Talhah, son of Tahir ....................... 11
III. 'Abd-ullah, son of Tahir .............. 12
IV. Tahir, son of 'Abd-ullah, son of Tahir .. 13
V. Muhammad, son of Tahir, son of 'Abd-ullah 14

SECTION VIII.
The Suffarfiin Dynasty ............................ 19
I. Ya'kub, son of Lais, Suffarfi .......... 20
II. 'Umro, son of Lais, Suffarfi ........ 23

SECTION IX.
The Dynasty of the Samanis .................. 26
Asad, son of Samaan-i-Khaddat ............ 27
I. Ahmad, son of Asad, son of Samaan ...... 28
II. Nasr, son of Ahmad, Samaan .......... 29
III. Isma'il, son of Ahmad, Samaan ...... 31
IV. Abu Nasr-i-Ahmad, son of Isma'il .... 33
V. Nasr, son of Ahmad, son of Isma'il ... 35
VI. Nuh, son of Nasr, son of Ahmad ...... 38
VII. 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nuh ........... 40
VIII. Mansur, son of Nuh .................. 41
IX. Nuh, son of Mansur, son of Nuh ...... 44
X. Mansur, son of Nuh, son of Mansur ... 48
XI. Abi-l-Fawaris-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nuh 50

SECTION X.
The Dynasty of the Di'alamah Maliks at the Dar-ul-Khilafat of Baghdad, and in 'Irak ....................... 55
I. Abi-l-Hasan, son of Buwia, Ud-Dilami .... 58
II. Al-Hasan, son of Buwia, Ud-Dilami ...... 59
III. Baikht-yar, son of Al-Hasan, son of Buwia, Ud-Dilami 60
IV. Fanai Khursau, son of Al-Hasan, son of Buwia, Ud-Dilami 61
V. Al-Marzaban, son of Fanai Khursau, Ud-Dilami 64
VI. Abi-l-Fawaris-i-Makan, son of Fanai Khursau, Ud-Dilami 65

SECTION XI.
The Dynasty of the Yaminiah, Al-Mahimidiah Sovereigns of the race of Sabuk-Tigin .............. 67
I. Amir-ul-Ghazi, Nasir-ud-Daulah, Sabuk-Tigin 70
II. Sultan-ul-A'zam, Yamin-ud-Daulah, Niqam-ud-Din, Abi-l-Kasim, Mahmud-i-Ghazi, son of Sabuk-Tigin 74
III. Amir Muhammad, son of Mahmud ........ 88
### CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV. Sultan Nasir-ud-Din-U'llah, Mas'ud, the Martyr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Shihab-ud-Daulah, Maudud, son of Mas'ud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. 'Ali, son of Mas'ud, and Muhammad, son of Maudud, in Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. 'Abd-ur-Rashid, son of Mahmud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. Tughril, Al-Mal'um, or The Execrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. Farrukh-Zad, son of Mas'ud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. Sultan Ibrahim, Sayyid-us-Salatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI. 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud-al-Karim, or the Beneficent, son of Ibrahim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII. Malik Arsalan, son of Mas'ud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII. Mu'izz-ud-Daulah wa ud-Din, Bahram Shāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV. Khusrau Shāh, son of Bahram Shāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV. Khusrau Malik, son of Khusrau Shāh, the Last of the Mahmūdī-ah Dynasty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SECTION XII.

The Dynasty of the Saljūkīlah

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Tughril, son of Mika'il</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Malik Dā'ud-i-Jaghar Beg, son of Mīkā'īl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Sultan Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, son of Dā'ud-i-Jaghar Beg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din, Malik Shāh, son of Alb-Arsalān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Muhammad, son of Malik Shāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Sultan-ul-A'gam, Mu'izz-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din, Sanjar, son of Malik Shāh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Account of the Sultāns of Rūm of the Saljūkīlah Dynasty

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Mahmūd, son of Malik Shāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Mas'ud, son of Mahmūd Shāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Kizil-Arsalān, son of Mas'ud, son of Mahmūd, son of Malik Shāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Kulji-Arsalān, son of Kizil-Arsalān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Izz-ud-Dīn, Kā-Kā-ūs, son of Kizil-Arsalān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Kā-Kubād, son of Kā-Kā-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Kā-Khusrau, son of Kā-Khusrau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. Izz-ud-Dīn, son of Kā-Khusrau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. Kutb-ud-Dīn, Kulij-Arsalān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. Tughril, son of Tughril</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SECTION XIII.

Account of the Sanjariyah Rulers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Dynasty. The Sanjariyah Maliks of 'Irāk and Āzarbājān:—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. The Ata-Bak, Īlatt-Giz, Us-Sanjārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. The Ata-Bak, Muḥammad, son of Īlatt-Giz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. The Ata-Bak, Yūz-Bak, son of Muḥammad, Us-Sanjārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. The Ata-Bak, Abū-Bikr, son of Muḥammad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

Second Dynasty.

The Sanjariyah Maliks of Fars:
I. The Ata-Bak Sunqar, Us-Sanjart  173
II. The Ata-Bak, Zangi, son of Sunqar  175
III. The Ata-Bak, Duklah, son of Sunqar ib.
IV. The Ata-Bak, Sa'd, son of Zangi  176
V. The Ata-Bak, Abū-Bikr, son of Sa'd  179

Third Dynasty.

The Sanjariyah Maliks of Nishāpūr:
I. Malik Mu-ayyid, Us-Sanjart  180
II. Malik Tughān Shāh, son of Mu-ayyid  181
III. Sanjar Shāh, son of Tughān Shāh  182

SECTION XIV.

The Maliks of Siijistān and Nimroz  183
I. Tāhir, son of Muhammad  184
II. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fatḥ, son of Tāhir  187
III. Malik-us-Sā’īs, Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Tāj-ud-Dīn  189
IV. Malik-us-Sā’īd, Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab, son of Muḥammad  191
V. Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Tāj-ud-Dīn  193
VI. Malik ul-Ghızl, Yāmīn-ud-Daulah wa ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh, son of Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab  194
VII. Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, son of Malik Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh  196
VIII. Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh  197
IX. Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Ḥarab  198

SECTION XV.

The Kurdfah Maliks of Shām  203
I. Sultan Nūr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd-i-Zangī ib.
II. Malik-us-Ṣāliḥ, 'Alī, son of Maḥmūd-i-Zangī  205
III. Malik Aiyūb, son of Shādī  207
IV. Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, son of Shādī, in Mīr  208
V. Sultan Shalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf, son of Aiyūb-al-Kurdf  214
VI. Malik-ul-Asfal, 'Alī, son of Shalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf  222
VII. Malik-ul-ʿAzīz, ʿUsmān, son of Shalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf  223
VIII. Malik-ul-ʿĀdil, Abū-Bikr, son of Aiyūb al-Kurdf  224
IX. Malik-ul-Maʿṣām, ʿĪsā, son of Abū-Bikr, son of Aiyūb-al-Kurdf  227
X. Malik-ul-Kāmil, son of Abū-Bikr, son of Aiyūb-al-Kurdf  228
XI. Malik-us-Ṣāliḥ, son of Al-Kāmil, son of Abū-Bikr, son of Aiyūb-al-Kurdf  229

SECTION XVI.

The Maliks of the Khwārizm-Shāhīah Dynasty  231
I. Kuṭb-ud-Dunya wa ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Turk ib.
CONTENTS.

II. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Ī-bak .......................... 234
III. Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, Khwārzam Shāh, son of Tāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad .................. 236
IV. Sultan I-yl-Arsalān, son of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Utsuz ........................................... 238
V. Sultan Takīsh, son of I-yl-Arsalān ....................................................................... 239
VI. Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of I-yl-Arsalān ........................................... 245
VII. Yūnas Khān, son of Takīsh, Khwārzam Shāh .............................................. 249
VIII. Malik Khān, son of Takīsh, Khwārzam Shāh .............................................. 250
IX. 'Alī Shāh, son of Takīsh, Khwārzam Shāh .............................................. 252
X. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Takīsh, Khwārzam Shāh ..................... 253
XI. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Arzalū Shāh, son of Muḥammad, son of Takīsh, Khwārzam Shāh .......... 279
XII. Sultan Rukn-ud-Dīn, Ghūr Shāh, son of Muḥammad, Khwārzam Shāh ............ 281
XIII. Malik Ghayyār-ud-Dīn, Shāh, son of Muḥammad, Khwārzam Shāh ............... 282
XIV. Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-Barnī, son of Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārzam Shāh ...... 285

SECTION XVII.

The Shansabānīah Sultāns, and the Malik of Ghūr ........................................ 300
Account of the First [Ancestors] of the Family, their Genealogy, and their Progenitors, up to Zuhāk, surnamed Tāżī .............................. 302
Account of Bustām, Malik of Hind and Sind ..................................................... 305
I. Amir Fūlād [or Fūlād], Ghūr, Shansabī ......................................................... 311
II. Amir Banjī, son of Nahārān, Shansabī ......................................................... ib.
III. Sūrī, son of Muḥammad .............................................................................. 316
IV. Malik Muḥammad, son of Sūrī ...................................................................... 320
V. Malik Abū-'Alī, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī ........................................... 325
VI. Malik 'Abbās, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī ........................................... 330
VII. Amir Muḥammad, son of 'Abbās .................................................................. 332
VIII. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥasan, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Abbās .................. 333
IX. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, Abū-us-Salāṭīn, son of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥasan .......... 335
XI. Sultan Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain ........................... 341
XII. Malik Shiḥāb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [Khāmak], son of Al-Ḥusain, Malik of Mādin of Ghūr .................. 343
XIII. Malik Shujjā'-ud-Dīn, Abī-'Alī, son of Al-Ḥusain [son of Sām], son of Al-Ḥasan, Shansabī ................................................................. 345
XIV. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, son of Sām, son of Al-Ḥasan .......................................................... 347
XV. Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, son of Muḥammad, Mādin ....................... 364
XVI. Sultan Saif-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain .......... 365
XVII. Sultan-ul-A'ẓam, Ghiyās-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fath, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Kasīm-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminīn .................. 368
CONTENTS.

XVIII. Malik-ul-Hājī, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Malik Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abī-'Alī, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, son of Al-Ḥasan, Shansabī  ........................................... 391

XIX. Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Shansabī  ........................................... 396

XX. Sultan Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, son of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Shansabī  ........................................... 408

XXI. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, son of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, Jahān-soz  ........................................... 413

XXII. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abī-'Alī, the Last of the Sultāns of Ghūr  ........................................... 417

SECTION XVIII.
The Shansabānī Sultāns of Tukhāristān and Bāmīān

I. Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, Shansabī  ........................................... 421

II. Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Mas'ūd, son of Al-Ḥusain, Shansabī  ........................................... 422

III. Sultan Baha-ud-Dīn, Sām, son of Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad  ........................................... 425

IV. Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, son of Sultan Baha-ud-Dīn, Sām, Bāmīānī  ........................................... 432

SECTION XIX.
The Sultāns of Ghaznī in the Shansabānīah Dynasty

I. Sultan Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain  ........................................... ib.

II. Sultan-un-A'zam, Mu'izz-ud-Dunya wa ud-Dīn, Abī-l-Muγaffar, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Kašm-i-Amīr-ul-Mūmīnīn  ........................................... 446

III. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, of Bāmīān  ........................................... 492

IV. Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, Val-dūz, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sultānī  ........................................... 496

V. Sultan-ul-Karīm, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sultānī  ........................................... 506

SECTION XX.
Account of the Mu'izziah Sultāns of Hind

I. Sultan Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sultānī  ........................................... 508

II. Sultan Ārām Shāh, son of Sultan Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak  ........................................... 512

III. Malik [Sultan] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kābā-jah, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sultānī  ........................................... 528

IV. Malik [Sultan] Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tuγhrīl, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sultānī  ........................................... 531

V. Malik-ul-Ghāzī, Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, Khalījī, in Lakhanawatī  ........................................... 544

VI. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sherān, Khalījī  ........................................... 548

VII. Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, son of Mardān, Khalījī  ........................................... 573

VIII. Malik [Sultan] Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, son of Ḥusain, Khalījī  ........................................... 576

SECTION XXI.
The Shamsī Sultāns of Hind

I. Sultan ul-Mu'azzam, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muγaffar, 1-yal-timīsh, the Sultān  ........................................... 597
CONTENTS.

II. Malik-us-Sa’id, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Māḥmūd Shāh, son of Sūltān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timīsh ... 628

III. Sūltān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Fīrūz Shāh, son of the Sūltān [I-yal-timīsh] ... 630

IV. Sūltān Rażīyyat-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, daughter of Sūltān I-yal-timīsh ... 637

V. Sūltān Mu’izz-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, son of Sūltān I-yal-timīsh ... 649

VI. Sūltān ‘Alā-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Mas’ud Shāh, son of Sūltān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Fīrūz Shāh ... 660

VII. Us-Sultan-ul-A’zam ul-Mu’aggam, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muẓaffar-i-Māḥmūd Shāh, son of the Sūltān [I-yal-timīsh], Ẓāfīn-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminīn ... 669

Events of the First Year: 644 H.

Second ... 645 H. ... 675
Third ... 646 H. ... 679
Fourth ... 647 H. ... 683
Fifth ... 648 H. ... 687
Sixth ... 649 H. ... 689
Seventh ... 650 H. ... 692
Eighth ... 651 H. ... 693
Ninth ... 652 H. ... 696
Tenth ... 653 H. ... 701
Eleventh ... 654 H. ... 704
Twelfth ... 655 H. ... 706
Thirteenth ... 656 H. ... 711
Fourteenth ... 657 H. ... 712
Fifteenth ... 658 H. ... 714

SECTION XXII.

Account of the Shamsiah Maliks in Hind ... 719

I. Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān ... 722
II. Malik ‘Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān, Ayāz-i-Hazār-Mardah, ul-Mu’izz ... 724
III. Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ai-Yitim-ul-Bahā-i ... 727
IV. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak-i-Ūchchah ... 729
V. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak-i-Yughān-Tat ... 731
VI. Malik Naẓrat-ud-Dīn Tā-yasa’ī [Tāi-shī] ... 732
VII. Malik ‘Izz-ud-Dīn, Tughrīl-i-Tughān Khān ... 736
VIII. Malik Kamar-ud-Dīn, Khān-i-Tamur Khān, us-Sūltānī ... 742
IX. Malik Hindū Khān, Mu-ayyid-ud-Dīn, Mihtar-i-Mubārak, ul-Khāzn, us-Sūltānī ... 744
X. Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Karā-Kush Khān-i-Aet-kīn ... 746
XI. Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūnīah, of Tabarhind ... 748
XII. Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kīn ... 749
XIII. Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunkar-i-Rūmī ... 752
XIV. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Khīk-lūk ... 754
XV. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kuret Khān ... 756
XVI. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Bat Khān, Ī-bak-i-Khīṭā-i ... 757
XVII. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān ... 759
XVIII. Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Yūz-bak-i-Tughrīl Khān ... 761
CONTENTS.

XIX. Malik Taj-ud-Din, Arsalan Khan, Sanjar-i-Chast 766
XX. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Khashi Khan, us-Sultani, Shamsi 775
XXI. Malik Nusrat Khan, Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar-i-Siffi, Rumi 787
XXII. Az-Kulli Dad-Bak, Malik Saif-ud-Din, Bak-i-Shami, 'Ajami 788
XXIII. Malik Nusrat-ud-Din, Shor Khan, Sunkar-i-Saghalsus 791
XXIV. Malik Saif-ud-Din, Bak-i-Khashi Khan, us-Sultani 795
XXV. Ul-Khakain-ul-Mu'azgam-ul-A'gam, Baha-ul-Haak wa ud-Din, Ulugh Khan-i-Balban, us-Sultani 799

SECTION XXIII.

The Affairs of Islam, and Irruption of the Infidels 869

I. Account of the Outbreak of the Chingiz Khan, the Mughal 935
History of the events which happened in Islam 968

Account of the crossing of the river Jihun by the troops of the Chingiz Khan towards Khurasan 1001
Account of the passage of the river Jihun by the Chingiz Khan 1008
Account of the coming of Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mang-Barni, son of Sultan Mubammad, Khwarazm Shah, to Ghaznin, and the events that befell him there 1012
Account of the taking of Wallk of Tulhristan 1023
Account of the capture of the cities of Khurasan, and the martyrdom of their inhabitants 1026
Account of the calamities which befell the territory of Khurasan the second time 1042
Account of the capture of the Forts of Kal-yun and Fiwar 1051
Account of the events which happened in Ghur, Garjistan, and Firuz-Koh 1055
Account of the events which took place before the fort of Saif-Rud of Ghur 1062
Fall of the fort of Ashiyar of Garjistan, and other fortresses 1071
Account of the return of the Chingiz Khan towards Turkistan, and his departure to hell 1077

II. Tush, son of the Chingiz Khan 1096

III. Uktase, son of the Chingiz Khan 1104

Account of the nomination of armies from Turkistan to proceed into the territory of Irak 1115
Account of the despatching of Mughal armies to proceed towards Ghazniz and Luhawar 1126
Account of the death of Uktase, son of the Chingiz Khan 1136

IV. Chaghatae, son of the Chingiz Khan—May God's curse be upon him 1144

V. Kyuk, son of Uktase, son of the Chingiz Khan 1148

Account of a Musalman miracle 1157
The decease of Kyuk, the Accursed 1160

VI. Batu, son of Tush, son of the Chingiz Khan 1164
An astonishing anecdote 1173

VII. Mangu Khan, son of Tului Khan, son of the Chingiz Khan 1176
Account of the fall of the Mulhidahs—on the whole of whom be God's curse 1187
An account of the misfortune which happened to the Muḥtaṣīm,  
\[ \text{Shams-ud-Dīn} \]  ........................................... 1212

VIII. Hulākū, son of Tūlī, son of the Chingiz Khān  ................................. 1225
Account of the fall of the capital of the Khilāfat  ........................................ 1228
Account of the martyrdom of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mustāsim B’llah—the Almighty reward him!  ................................. 1252
Account of the march of Hūlākū towards Ḥalāb and Shām  .......... 1262
Account of the miracle [which happened in behalf] of the Musalmāns of Mayyā-fārīkīn  ........................................... 1270
Another miracle [wrought in behalf] of the Musalmāns  .................. 1279
Account of the conversion of Barkā Khān, son of Tūshi Khān,  
son of the Chingiz Khān, the Mughal  ........................................... 1283
Anecdote respecting Barkā Khān’s zeal in the Musalmān faith  .......... 1288
First statement .................................................................................. 1287
Second statement ............................................................................. 1290
Conclusion ......................................................................................... 1293
Appendix A. ...................................................................................... i
Appendix B. ...................................................................................... vii
Appendix C. ....................................................................................... xiii
Appendix D. ....................................................................................... xxiii
ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

There is some disadvantage in publishing an extensive History of this kind in parts after each portion is completed, because any extra information obtained during the progress of the work cannot be inserted in its proper place. To remedy this, as much as possible, I have embodied here such further information in the form of Additional Notes and Emendations.

Page 34.—Further research shows that Arg or Ark—१५१—is an error of the copyists for Úk—१७१—the ā having been mistaken for ā, as suggested in note ४. The word is correctly given in the last Section. See pages 1120, 1124, and note, page 1122, para. 5. It was a celebrated fortress of Sijistān, and was still an important place when Amīr Tāmūr took it.

Page 36.—“Sanjaris,” in note ९, taken from Faṣīḥ-Ī, is an error for Sijistān or Sigizis, that is to say Sijistāns or Sigistāns. See note ९, page 34. This error is frequently made by oriental authors as well as scribes.

Page 52, note ९.—All the copies of the text are wrong with respect to this word, and have १५१ for १५१ Úζ-kand of Turkistān is meant, not Úrgān the capital of Khwārzm. See note ७, page 1097.

Page 68, line 5.—There is no doubt whatever as to the meaning of the text here respecting Sabuk-Tīgīn’s nickname; and that one man could possibly be nicknamed “black troop,” or “black uproar,” is very improbable. See note ४, page 852, and Elliot’s India, vol. viii., page xii., where, if not “ghaughā,” there is, at least, “ghubār-angesi.” I have not followed the printed text in this Translation, because it is very incorrect as well defective.

The Turk Amīr-ul-Umarā of Baghdād, who was accidentally killed by some Kurds in 329 H., bore the name of Buj-kum [१५२], as written with the vowel points, which is the same word as I supposed that applied to Sabuk-Tīgīn to be from the way it was written in one copy of the text, which Turkish word means, in the Tāzīk language, ghajz-ghāo [१५३]. See the last para. of note ४, and the Bodleian copy of the Kitāb-ul-Kāmil of ʿĪzz-ud-Dīn-i-Ibn-ul-Aṣfir, under the year 329 H. It is therefore quite clear that Jūk [not Ḥūk (حريم)], which is the same word less the vowel point of ā left out by the copyists: a similar name occurs at page 477], entitled Sabuk-Tīgīn, was, by his Turkish comrades, nicknamed “the Kāra Buj-kum,” the Tāzīk translation of which is “the Siyah Ghajz-Ghāo,” which is the Kutās of Mīrzā Ḥādīdar, the Doghlahf Mughal, who gives a description of that immense and formidable animal. The English translation thereof is “The Black Wild Yak,” siyah here signifying furious as well as black, and the Turkish kāra will bear the same construction. See note at page 922, and at 948, para. 2.

Page 77, note ८, para. 1.—There is no doubt whatever as to the point of junction of the rivers of Nūr and Kīrāt at Darūnīthah, now a well-known place. The words in the original are १५६ but the printer has carelessly let.
the I drop out after the type was set up, and the proof passed for press. I have described the Darâh of Nûr, as well as Darûn-thâh, in my "Notes on Afgânîstân," page 108, and there they will be found. Mr. Dowson appears to have forgotten what is contained in his second vol., page 465. See also vol. i. page 394, which is certainly amusing.

Page 95.—The fortress of Garî here mentioned, I believe, refers to the fortress of Gîbar Kôt in Bâjâwî. See "Notes on Afgânîstân," page 117.

The word "Tâhirî" in para. 5 should be "Tîghrî."  

Page 101.—The singular of the word mûrghàn [مَرَحَٰن], which I have rendered "carrier pigeons," "signifies a bird absolutely" [مَرَحَٰن], and not a fowl only, as Mr. Dowson imagined; and as fowls do not carry news, and carrier pigeons are referred to by the same word as is here used in note 5, page 1280, para. 4, I had no hesitation in adopting the rendering I have. Another proof that carrier pigeons were meant is the fact that one day was not sufficient to convey the news from Ghaznîn to the fortress of Baz-Ghûnd, afterwards known as Kûshk-i-Sultân, for that was at Fîrûz-Koh, a distance of about 240 miles as the crow flies, and a very difficult tract of country to traverse.

Pages 104, 105.—There is an error here respecting our author's ancestors, caused by some confusion in most copies of the text, which have "great-great-grandfather," whereas, from his statements elsewhere, his third ancestor, or great-grandfather is meant. It should stand "great-grandfather" at page 104, and "That princess bore him a son, whom he named Ibrâhîm, and he was the father of the Maulânâ, Minhâj-ud-Dîn, 'Ugmân-i-Ibrâhîm, upon whom be the mercy of the Almighty! The Maulânâ, Minhâj-ud-Dîn, was the father of the Maulânâ, Sarâj-ud-Dîn," etc., etc.

Page 106.—The text is not "chând bârah wa kâshbah"—as Mr. Dowson imagined; and even if it were, although bârah means "walls," it does not mean "a fortification," much less "fortifications," but the text has یار—pârah—not "bârah," and no ۰ and the signification, of the sentence, in the idiom of the East, is as rendered in the Translation. The very same word occurs at page 821—rî of the printed text—but that Mr. Dowson leaves untranslated. See also printed text, page 394 and page 1294 of this Translation.

Mr. Dowson (Elliot's India, vol. viii., p. xi.) is very wroth with me about my criticisms, to one of the errors in which work the above refers, and says he has "noticed them, and examined them seriatim," but this is a mistake, and the "Cradle of Irâk," in note 9, page 107, is one of very many others to which, very wisely, he has not referred.

Page 107.—The words of the text are not گرّس و مالک غزیان as Mr. Dowson assumed, except in the printed text, in which, two words have been left out before گرّس and the first is redundant. The reason why Arsâlân assumed the throne in the Garmâr, instead of waiting until he reached Ghaznîn, the capital, is elsewhere explained.

Page 112, note 5, para. 2.—There seems to be an error of ten years here. The writer doubtless meant the year of the Rîḥlât, instead of the Hîjrat, which would make a difference of ten years. Our author distinctly states, at page 111, that Bahram Shâh was succeeded by his son, Khusrav Shâh, in 552 H. See note 4, and note 3, page 347.

Page 115.—Our author has made a mistake here, or rather, his copyists for him, of ten years, for, as related at pages 378, 457, and in other places, the campaign against Sulân Shâh in Khurâsân occurred in 587 H. See also Appendix A., page ii.
ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

Page 122, note 8.—The proper title and names of this Chief are "Amır 'Imad-ud-Daulah, Dā'dūd-i-Jaghar Beg, or Jaghar Beg," son of Mīkā'll [Faṣīḥ-i says, son of Tağharı Beg], son of Abū-Sulfmān, son of Saljūḵ. The word Mīkā'll has been left out accidentally after Jaghar Beg.

Page 154, line 6 after poetry.—The word Kāālīk, written in the text is an error for Kāālīk—the ı was made i by the copyists. For the details respecting it see page 900, and note 2. Kāārā-Khiṭā-i in the same paragraph should be Kāārā-Khiṭā, the latter word, or Kāārā-Khiṭā, being the proper name, the substantive, applied to the country, and the former, the adjective, applied to the people, as correctly given a few lines under, and farther on.

Pages 159, 160.—Kīzīl is the more correct mode of writing this Turkish word, signifying "red," and so it should be read in all cases.

Page 162, note 1.—The Nū-īn or Nūyān, Tājū, is the same leader as is mentioned at page 1237, and is the Tānĝū of the Pro-Mughal writers. See note at page 1191, line 10.

Page 163, note 2, line 9.—"Abghā" Khān cannot be correct, for the period indicated was the interregnum which occurred between the death of Kyūk Khān, and the accession of Mangū Khān in 648 h. Abghā, Ab-kā, Abagha, or Abākā Khān, Hulākī's son, appears to be referred to here, and he only succeeded his father in 661 h. See note at page 1287, para. 2.

Page 164, line 15.—The Nū-īn, Aljāktā, here mentioned, is the Aljāktā, or, more correctly, Iljīdā, Īlīchikdāe, or Īlīchikdā, as it is variously written, the desolator of Hirāt. Much about the latter Sultāns of Rūm will be found in note 2, page 1261.

Page 188.—The campaign against Khiṭā mentioned here refers to the war with the Gūr Kḥān of Kāārā-Khiṭā, mentioned at pages 261 and 934.

Page 201.—"Arg of Sīstān." This refers, as previously mentioned, to Ūk. According to the Pro-Mughal writers, the investment took place in 627 h., but it actually commenced in 625 h., and terminated in 627 h., the place having held out nineteen months. See page 1120.

Page 224 and note 2.—The chroniclers of the Crusades say that "it was proposed that Joan of Sicily, sister of Richard Cœur de Lion, should be given in marriage to Saphaddin," as they write the title, Saif-ud-Dīn, "and that Jerusalem should be yielded to the parties in this strange alliance." The Princess, however, refused to give her consent, and so the affair came to nothing.

Page 233, line 6.—After Muḥammad there should be an isāfāt, namely, "Muḥammadm-i-'Ugmān," because 'Ugmān was his father. See page 1198.

Page 233, line 12, and note 2.—Ṣūhārī is the same place as is referred to at page 227, and again at page 237, where it is said to be in Turkistan.

Page 235, line 12.—This well-known place is called Guzarwān, and Juzarwān by 'Arabs, and people of 'Arab descent. Its correct name, according to the pronunciation of the people inhabiting it, was Gujzarwān, as mentioned in the note below. See note 3, pages 257 and 258, and pages 376 and 475.

Page 239, note 1.—There is an error here: it should be sixteen, not "eight" years, for, from 551 h., as mentioned in the preceding note 3, to 567 h., is a period of sixteen years.

Page 254, line 18.—At page 240 the Kḥān of Kifchāk is styled Akṛān or 1krān. This was his Turkish name, and Kadr, which is 'Arabic— Kadr Kḥān —his Musalmān title only. Our author, to avoid confusion, ought to have given both.
Page 257, note 3, line 7.—Shihāb was his first title, by which some Indian Muhammadan writers, who knew not the fact of the change, nearly, if not always, incorrectly style him. His elder brother and sovereign assumed a new title on ascending the throne, and a new one was also assigned to Shihāb-ud-Dīn, his brother. See page 370.

Page 260, and note 7, para. 5.—Kulīj Khān cannot refer to the Gūr Khān, for his Khītārī name, which is very different, is given at page 928, and Kulīj is again mentioned distinct from the Gūr Khān.

Page 263, note 1.—The frontiers of Jund are referred to here; and the correct name of the territory referred to in the following para. is Šaghānāk, as confirmed by other writers.

Page 267.—The Kadr Khān, son of Yūsuf, here mentioned, is the same person as is referred to at page 1097, as son of Šafaktān-i-Yamak. It appears, therefore, that, in this instance also, Yūsuf is his Musulmān name, and Šafaktān his Turkīsh name. The Yīghur, or Ī-ghūr, here mentioned, and at page 270, is written Šaghar at page 960, which see, also note 6 to that page.

Page 267, note 8, to “this very year” should have been added “according to some,” for, as given farther on, the first month of 617 H. was the year of the Sultān’s flight. See note 3, para. 2, page 972, and page 274.

Page 268, note 4, line 5.—Takrīt is an error of the writer from whose work the extract was taken. It should be Makrīt, a well-known tribe; and Karā-Ḳuram is an error, often made, for Ƙara-Ƙum. These errors have been rectified at page 1097.

Page 270, para. 3, line 6.—“Tingit.” The name of this country is written Tingkūt by the Pro-Mughal writers.

Page 270, and note 7.—The Sayyid, Bahā-ud-Dīn, is a totally different person from the Badr-ud-Dīn of Guzīdah, and Ahmad, the Khujandī. The Sayyid was a man of high position and dignity, and is again referred to at page 963, where the subject is more fully detailed.

Page 280, and note 8.—The movements of the Chingiz Khān and his sons are given in greater detail at page 968. Tūlī was not sent into Khwārazm, but, when the two eldest sons of the Chingiz Khān began to quarrel at the siege of Gurgānji, or Urgānji, its capital, Uktāc, the youngest of the three there present, was directed to assume the chief command. See note at page 1099, para. 2.

Page 288, note 3, line 5.—Wāmān or Bāmān, and Wālīān, mentioned below, are neither of them correct. Our author, in the text above, did not give the name of the place, but he does so farther on. It should be Wālīshṭān—Wālshtān—Walshtan—Walshtun.—Some careless copyist of an early copy, probably, writing the ʃ long, thus—Walshtan—left out the three points of the letter, and thus led others who followed to read the word ʃ—Wālīān—omitting the Ms. form of ʃ—which ʃ is without the points, putting two points under instead of over, and thus turning it into ʃ—and causing great confusion and error. Wālīshṭān is the same place as is mentioned at page 319, but, in the same way as in Guğzān and Guğzānān, the singular form of the word, and also its plural, as if there was more than one place or district so called. The same mode of expression is used with regard to the Lamḏhān district, which is also known as the Lamghānāt or the Lamḡāns.

The Chingiz Khān, moreover, was not investing Tān-kān, twenty miles east from Kūndūs, as mentioned in the fifth line from the bottom in the same note, but Tāl-kān, about three hundred miles west of Kūndūs, and much the same
distance from the Parwan Pass. His main army was encamped at and around the Pushtah-i-Nu'man, near by. It is a common error for writers to mistake Tal-ḵān, which is in Khurāsān, for Tāe-ḵān, which is in Tukharistān; and these errors are contained in the Tāriḵ-i-Jahān-Kūshā, and other works consulted by me, which led me to suppose that our author’s statement at page 290 might possibly be wrong, but he was perfectly correct, and the others wrong. At page 1016, likewise, our author mentions Wālīshān as the identical place invested by the Mughals which Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn marched to relieve, and there the details will be found.

Page 290, note 4.—Tal-ḵān had fallen after a long siege, and before the Chingiz Khan set out in pursuit of the Sulṭān. The writers, who mistake that place for Tāe-ḵān, make the Chingiz Khan move towards Ghaznīn by way of Andar-āb, Bāmīān, and Kābul, thus making the geography suit their statements. He reached Ghaznīn by a much more direct route; and such a place as Bāmīān is not once referred to. See page 1016, and note 4.

Page 318, line 1.—"Aytīn-ābād." From the way in which the first part of this word is written elsewhere, and what is stated at pages 350 and 448, and in note 4, this might be more correctly written Ai-Tīgin-ābād, and might refer to Tīgin-ābād, about which so much is said, but the site of which, unless Kandahār stood on it—which I am sometimes inclined to think, because the latter name begins to be mentioned when the other disappears—has been altogether lost.

Page 319, line 1.—"Tajīr-Kōh." This I believe to be the Nahjīr of Bāīhāḵī, or in some way connected with it.

Page 319, line 11.—It was not my MSS. which "enabled" me "to correct" the words "the fifth mountain is Faj Hanīsdr" in Elliot (see vol. viii., p. xviii.), but the knowledge that Faj is a common term for a defile or pass, in the same way that I was aware what rāsīf̣ meant, and that "the mountains of Rāsīf̣d" was, and is, an impossible translation, whether "worthy of consideration" or not. I was also aware that "Sarḵa-sang" was not a proper name, as supposed, and rendered in Elliot, which Mr. Dowson wisely passes over in his "seriatim examination," but two very simple, every-day words.

Page 341, note 7.—See note at page 348, last para. Bahram Shāh is said to have died in 543 H., the year previous to Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, the Ghūrī, but our author distinctly states at page 111 that Bahram Shāh was succeeded by his son nine years later, namely, in 552 H. The former date may refer to the Riḥlat.

Page 370, line 4 from the bottom.—The meaning usually assigned to Sar-i-Jān-dār, as here given, is not correct, but, at page 603, I have mentioned its correct signification. See also pages 410 and 447.

Page 378, line 8.—Kīlāf, or Kīlīf, is probably the town on the Oxus of that name, only, in our maps, it is placed on the farther (north) bank.

Page 379, note 4.—See page 469, and Appendix A., page ii.

Page 391, note 6.—As subsequently shown, Ighrāḵ was the name of a Turk-mān tribe, and the territory held by those people was sometimes called after them. See pages 1015 and 1043.

Page 392, last line.—The Ürgān here mentioned may possibly refer to Urgūn of Ghaznīn. See my "Notes on Afghanīstān," page 85.

Page 427, last para. of note 6.—"Rāṣīf." The name of this place is also written Arṣuḡ—"Rāṣīf"—in several histories, the first letter being placed second.

Page 429, line 4, and note 4.—Rāz is the name of a place near Sabzwar,
but the Imām was probably styled Rāzī, not as being a native of that place but of Rai, the inhabitants of which are styled Rāzī.

Page 433.—The Beghū, referred to here, and in note 4, also written Beghūn, with the "n" nasal, is the name by which the Kārlūks or Kārlūghs are also known, an account of whom is given in the notice of the Afrāsiyābī rulers at page 909. In MS., the letters ğ and ğ are very liable to be mistaken one for the other, as the point of the latter is often omitted.

Page 435, line 13.—The Ḥazār-Darakhṭān here mentioned is not that northwest of Ghaznī, but more to the west, on the way from that city towards the Bāmīān district. There are several places so called.

Page 477, note *,—I think it probable that all the errors that have been written as to the gates of Ghaznīn having been shut against the Sulṭān by his most trusted slave, and his successor to the throne of Ghaznīn, have arisen from the act and name of the slave, mentioned in the text above, Ayyah, Jūk (Sabuk-Tīgīn's Turkish name was Jūk. See ante), who seized the bridle of the Sulṭān's charger, and dragged him out of the fight. The "king of Mūltān" is no other than the Khokhar Rāe.

Page 482, note, line 18 from bottom.—Amīr Muḥammad, son of Abī 'Allī, was the Sulṭān's kinsman, and also son-in-law to the late Sulṭān, Ghīyās-ud-Dīn. He was entitled Ziyā-ud-Dīn before he succeeded to the throne of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn.

Page 488, note 1.—"The year 4 of his rule," mentioned in the second para., cannot refer to his rule in Hind, because 589 H. was the year in which Dihīl was made the capital, as mentioned at page 469. Lāhor was acquired as early as 582 H., but some say in 583 H.

Page 495, line 9.—It is probable that the name Aetkin would be more correctly Ai-Tīgīn, for both may be written as one word thus— and as two

Page 499, note 4.—This requires a little explanation. The lower road did not lead by the Dara'h of Kārmān, but the northern or higher routes did; one leading by Kohāt to Peḵāwār, and the other through Bānnū. The route by Kābūl, and Nangrāhar, or Nek-Nīhār, or Nek-Anhār, through the Kaḥībar/aʃ/ or defile, was rarely used at the period in question. The flourishing province of Kārmān, so called after the small Dara'h of that name, in those days was of considerable extent, and very populous. In after years, at the period of Akbar Bāḏshāh's reign, it constituted the Sarkār of Bangāsh, but its condition had greatly changed for the worse. The "lower road" into Hind was by the Gūmūl. See "Notes on Afghanistan," etc., previously referred to, Section Second.

Page 503, note 8.—The Jalāl-ud-Dīn, referred to in line 7, cannot, from the dates, refer to the gallant Sulṭān of Khwārazm, but to Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, son of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Ghūrī, of Bāmīān. See page 493, and note at page 527.

Page 513, note 1, last line, should be I-bak-i-Shil, as repeated in the second line over leaf, or the nickname would not be complete, for I-bak, alone, does not convey the meaning ascribed to it, from the simple fact that at least half-a-dozen I-baks are mentioned in this work, and the whole of them could not have each had a fractured finger.

Page 525, line 2.—It must not be supposed from our author's mode of narrating events that Malik Kūfīb-ud-Dīn set out from Lāhor for the presence of Sulṭān Maḥmūd, the late Sulṭān's nephew. It is only his way of relating
ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

events which happened subsequently, before others which happened previously. Malik Kūṯ̣b-ud-Dīn had gone to join the late Sultan in the expedition against the Khokhars, as related at page 604, under the reign of I-yal-timīsh, and had not left the Panj-āb. Sultan Muʾizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, was assassinated on the 3rd of Shaʿbān, the eighth month of 602 H., and Malik Kūṯ̣b-ud-Dīn, according to our author, assumed sovereignty at Lāhūr in Zi-Kaʿdah, which is the eleventh month. But there is, I think, no doubt that the correct date of his assuming sovereignty was 605 H., as stated at page 398, for it was only in that year that he received his manumission from Sūltān Māḥmūd; and it is very certain that an unmanumitted slave could not assume sovereignty. It is very possible, however, that Sūltān ʿĀlā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who had been made Sūltān of Ghar on the death of Sūltān Qhiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, may have sent Kūṯ̣b-ud-Dīn the investiture of Hindīstān when Sūltān Muʾizz-ud-Dīn was assassinated, and before he was himself ousted by his rival, Māḥmūd, to whom Kūṯ̣b-ud-Dīn, as stated at page 398, sent soliciting his manumission. See also note to page 525, para. 2.

Page 529, note 4.—It is barely possible that the words Kūṯ̣b-ud-Dīn's "brother's son"—may have been intended by Abū-l-Faṣl and others, and that in some copies the word so may have been left out by the scribes, but, whether Abū-l-Faṣl says so or not, it is clearly stated that Kūṯ̣b-ud-Dīn had no son: still, on the other hand, we are not told that he had a brother. An adopted son is by far the most probable.

Page 531, last line.—This word, like Ai-Tīgīn, may be, more correctly, Ai-Tīmūr, as no discritical points are given in the text.

Page 539.—The Khalj, not "Khilj," are by no means "hypothetical," but a well-known tribe, as may be seen from these pages. See Elliot, vol. viii., p. xviii. There was no "army of Khilj," but a contingent from the Khalj tribe served in the army of the Sūltān of Khwārazm. A Turk tribe, or part of a tribe, all the males being armed, was a ta[i]khar in itself; and who and what the Khalj were who sought refuge in Sind is explained in the note. That these few formed "all the forces of Khwārizm" is a blunder pure and simple. What the forces of Khwārazm were composed of is mentioned in many places in this work.

Page 551, text, para. 2.—Two or three copies of the Persian text have these additional words at the beginning of the para.: "for one or two years, in this manner, he used," etc.

Page 553, note 6, line 7.—559 H. is a printer's error for 590 H., as the context plainly shows.

Page 562, note, last para., line 4, where "Dināj-pūr" occurs, is also a mere press error, unobserved by the printer's reader, for Dinaj-pūr. It is correctly given in the preceding note 1, pages 558—559, and Dinaj-pūr should be read in all places.

Page 567, line 11.—"Nūnīs" is incorrect: it is an error in the text of 1 for 3. The Tūnīs are described farther on, page 1157. The Kar-battan of our author may be Shigatze of the latest maps, or where Shigatze now stands; and the great river in which the Musalman troops perished is, doubtless, the Sānpo. They must have penetrated to within a few marches of Lhāsā. Names of places become changed in the course of six or seven centuries, especially when old dynasties, one after the other, have been overthrown, and others have arisen.

Page 581.—See Elliot's India, vol. viii., p. xx. The Editor, Mr. Dowson, does not see the least necessity for my criticism of the incorrect
ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

translation of this sentence in vol. ii. of that work, and says that the words are (in the text) "Nán-i khurish-i safriyána," and that "bread for travelling food" is its literal translation, explained in dictionaries as "travelling provisions," and adds that mine is "a paraphrase, not a translation."

Safar certainly means "journey," "travelling," etc., but "safár" does not. The printed text, which Mr. Dowson says he so implicitly followed, has the words ५९७ before the "travelling food." What has become of them in the "literal translation"? The words for the food are not ५९७ before nan—there should be no isdât after nan—but nan-khurish-i-safarianah, nan-khurish being a well-known compound word, signifying some dainty or savoury morsel to eat along with bread, such as meat, fish, cheese, pickles, or the like, and is equivalent to the 'Arabic word pol which word, as well as nan-khurish, he will probably find in his dictionary if he refers to it.

Page 582.—There is no necessity to "venture upon any explanation of the position " of Basan-kot, as suggested by Mr. Dowson, because it is sufficiently well known; but, in Elliot, the proper name has been left out entirely.

Page 583, note 9.—"To better his means." The next page shows how he bettered them. He came, as others still come from the very same parts, to better his means, and the word in the Translation is correct as rendered. He was an eminent ecclesiastic and good preacher, and was, therefore, invited to deliver "a discourse" before the pious and orthodox Sultan and his Court, as I have translated the sentence, and as any one else would do who knew what he was translating.

Mr. Dowson, however (vol. viii., p. xxx.), "cannot admit Major Raverty's improved rendering of the words," although he is himself "not satisfied with the Munshi's rendering in Elliot 'his name was mentioned at Court,'" and considers "Having recited a commemorative (speech or ode) he came to Court," would be much better, or, he thinks, "the author's meaning would have been more clearly rendered [mark the words] by He came to Court and delivered an eulogistic speech."

In other places he can admit "preach," "sermon," and even "discourses," which is the same in signification as "discourse" used by me.

At page 615 of this Translation, our author—himself a good preacher and ecclesiastic of repute—says he was called upon, on first entering Hind, to deliver discourses within the audience tent of Sultan I-yal-timish when that Sultan was investing Uchchah. The corresponding place in Elliot is page 326 of vol. ii., but the whole passage has been left out, and so we have no "commemorative speech or ode," nor an "eulogistic speech."

At page 619, our author relates, that, during the time the same Sultan was investing Gwaliyir, he "was commanded to deliver discourses at the private pavilion of the Sultan," that "three times in each week discourses were fixed;" that "in Ramaqân—the fast month—a discourse used to be delivered daily;" and that "ninety-five times congregations were convened at the entrance of the Sultan's pavilion." The words of our author here, as elsewhere, I have rendered literally; and the printed Persian text agrees with the MSS. I used. See also page 745.

The corresponding place in Elliot is page 379, and there it is stated that the author "was ordered to preach in turns [sic, but not in the original] at the door of the royal tent;" that "Discourses were appointed to be delivered three times every week;" and winds up with "Ninety-five times religious assemblies were convened at the royal tent."

At page 651, our author says "a discourse was delivered" by him in the
ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

Kasr, named Safed [White Castle], and the same word is again used two lines under.

The corresponding place in Elliot is page 338, and it is rendered, "there was a sermon in the Palace of the White-roof;" and two lines under "sermon" is again used.

At page 656, our author again says, on the news of the Lâhor disaster, that —and the rendering is literal—"to the writer of these lines the Sultan gave command to deliver a discourse, and the people pledged their fealty [anew] to the Sultan." In a note I say, "Compare Elliot, vol. ii., p. 340, for, at that page, the corresponding passage of the text is thus rendered, 'The Sultan assembled the people of the city at the White Palace [there is no White-roof here], and the writer of this book received orders to preach and induce the people to support the Sultan.'" This too is literal possibly.

Again, at page 845, our author says—and the translation is literal—that he, on the occasion of the invasion of Sind by the Mughal infidels, "by command, delivered an exhortation with the object of stimulating to holy warfare, and the merit of fighting against infidels," etc.

The corresponding place in Elliot is page 379, which is there rendered "the author received orders in the royal tent to compose an ode, to stir up the feelings of the Muhammadans and to excite them to warlike fervour for the defence of their religion and the throne." This is certainly very far from literal, even without the "ode."

Which is the most probable, the delivery of an exhortation, lecture, sermon, or discourse, by an eminent preacher and one of the highest ecclesiastics in the kingdom, on such an occasion, or "the composition of an ode"? and would "odes" be delivered three times a week, and "religious assemblies convened" ninety-five times to "compose" or listen to "odes" or "eulogistic speeches"?

The very idea of such a thing is absurd.

Now I must mention that in every instance here referred to in which I have used "discourse" or "exhortation," the very same word is used in every copy of the Persian text, the printed text included, and that word is تلاکر and it was ignorance of the correct signification of this simple word, the idiom of the language, and the usages of the Musalmâns, which has given rise to all these blunders, and yet they must not be noticed!

There are several other instances in our author's work of the delivery of discourses, lectures, or exhortations. At page 190 it is stated that his grandfather, an eminent ecclesiastic and preacher, was called upon to deliver a discourse—تلاکر—before the ruler of Sijistân ; and the subject he chose for his discourse or lecture was "on defiling emissions." Mr. Dowson "cannot admit" my "improved rendering" of the word "discourse" for تلاکر. Does he think "the author's meaning," in this instance, "would have been more clearly rendered" by "He came to Court and delivered a eulogistic speech on defiling emissions," or that he "composed an ode" on the subject?

Because, in the course of my work, I have had to point out such like errors as these—but this last "is a gem of its kind"—Mr. Dowson, in the Preface to vol. viii. of Elliot's India, must call it "hostile criticism;" and has been so foolish as to dig up "the late Lord Strangford," who, to suit certain purposes, had the assurance to write a criticism on my Psâghto works, without knowing a single word of the language, except "what he read up for the purposes," in the course of a few days, as I was informed on undoubted authority. I could say much more on this subject, but I will only remark here that the writer's object was not attained, and that I hope he possessed a more practical
knowledge on the other subjects upon which he is said to have written. Better Mr. Dowson had admitted the errors, and eschewed "glaughd." It seems that a writer must shut his eyes upon, and conceal the most palpable errors in Oriental history and geography for fear of "hurting the susceptibilities of those who made them," and must refrain from correcting them lest he be declared "hostile" and "offensive." But I undertook this "Translation," and have devoted years to it, to correct errors.

Page 587, note 4.—Mr. Dowson is not altogether disingenuous in his "Examination" of my criticisms, and in this one, xxxiii. of his replies, he would make it appear that I objected to his rendering of the words "territories of Lakhnauti," at page 319 of the volume referred to, but what I say is, that there is nothing, even in the printed text, to warrant such a statement as "that Fajnagar ever formed part of the Lakhnanawati territory." They were totally different: one was a Muhammadan state, the other Hindú.

Page 600, note 4.—Mr. Dowson appears to have assumed that, because herds or droves of horses are mentioned in the same page with merchants, the latter may be turned into "a dealer." There is nothing in the original to show that the merchants were horse-dealers, but the contrary; and the herds of horses—not a "drove," for the plural form is used—evidently belonged to the Ilbarī tribe because the pastures are also mentioned. I contend that the bāsargānān—here too the plural form is used—were not necessarily horse-dealers any more than ass-dealers, cow-dealers, or any other dealers. The word bāsargān signifies a merchant, but, in the translation in Elliot, the words, "into the pastures" have been left out.

Mr. Dowson considers this last criticism "a gem of its kind," and, at the beginning of his "Examination" of my criticisms, says he has noticed and examined them seriatim." He is mistaken: a great many "gems" are passed over unnoticed by him, and not with reference to the Tabakat-i-Nāṣirī only; for example, at pages 311, 557, 579, 580, 664, 686, 687, 853, 1023, and several other places.

Page 623, and note 8.—For the identification of Banlān see my "Notes on Afghanīstān," page 281.

Page 633, note 7.—Further research has shown that this Turkish title should be read Tāl-shī. See reference to page 732 farther on.

Page 644, note 4, para. 2.—Balkā Khān is referred to at length at page 1283. The name of this monarch is generally written with "r"—Barkā—as our author writes it, but in Turkish words "1" and "r" are often interchangeable. See page 617 and note 8.

Page 645.—The Turkish name of Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn is sometimes written Қarā-Kəsh, and sometimes Қarā-Kuʃ, and Қarā-Kuʃ, which last two forms are the most correct ones, and signify, literally, "a large black bird," kuʃ or kuʃ signifying a bird in general, but the term Қarā-Kuʃ is the name by which the Golden Eagle is known in Turkistān. Such names often occur, as for example Қarā-Sunkar, a species of black or dark falcon. Karā-Kuʃ was also the name of the celebrated engineer from Egypt, who built the citadel of Al-Kāhirah, and had fortified Acre, and took part in its defence when besieged by the Christians in 1189 A.D., which was considered "one of the mightiest events of the middle ages."

Page 677, note 8.—I have previously referred to the identification of Banlān. Instead of "hilly tract west of" read "hilly tract west of the Jhilam," etc. The year 644 refers to the Riḥlat, which is equivalent to 654 H. The details will be found at page 1201.
ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS. iv

Page 716.—As the Ulugh Khan’s son, whose Turkish title was Bughrā Khan, and his Musalmān title Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Māhmid—and evidently so named after his father’s sovereign and son-in-law—married a daughter of Sultan Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Māhmid Shāh, it is very evident that the idle tales about the latter having only one wife must be incorrect. He must have had more than one, or a concubine at least, since the Bughrā Khan could not possibly have married a daughter of his own sister, even though she is the only wife mentioned. As this daughter of the Sultan had children by the Bughrā Khan, and a son of hers, Kaï-Kubād, succeeded her father, Sultan Ghiyāg-ud-Dīn, Balban, Sultan Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Māhmid Shāh, can scarcely be said to have left no offspring or heir, unless she died shortly before her father, but even then an heir survived.

Page 717, note *, para ®. The Malik of Kābul is an error on the part of the writer from whom this extract was taken, or the scribe who copied it possibly, for the Malik-i-Kāmil, an account of whom is given at page 1274.

Page 732, and note *.—The title of Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn is, correctly, Ta’á-shē, not Ta-yasa’ī. It is a Turkish title. The scribes appear to have read the three diacritical points of a as ı. See Additional Note, page 866, para. 7.

Page 901, note, para. 4.—Gardez is not really in Kārmān, but, at the period in question, it was included in the province of Kārmān. See "Notes on Afgānistan," page 75.

Page 932, note, para. 4.—The word I-lāsh, in the original یلاش is possibly an error for Talāsh, which would be written یلاش the two points above instead of below making all the difference. I-lāsh and Ilāmish are both plainly written, however, in several works. Talās, also written Talāsh, is the name of a city of Turkistān. There is also a little district so called immediately north of Lower Suwat.

Page 987, note, para. 1, line 6.—"Darah of the Sārīgh-Kol" [کریگ]—the latter a Tajzik word—is, literally, Valley of the Yellow Lake, a mistake constantly made. The correct name is "The Lake in, or of, the Sārīgh Kol" [کریگ]—the last a Turkish word—or Yellow Valley.

Page 1043, note 1.—The most correct mode of writing this word is Gībarī or Gībari, and not "Gabari." The fort referred to near the Indus is known to the Afgāns, and other inhabitants of the locality, as Gaṛī Kapūra’h. See "Notes on Afgānistan," page 247.

Page 1201, note, para. 5, line 2 from end.—Can the Chingiz Khān here mentioned be the person referred to whose coin is given by Thomas, in his "Pathān Kings of Dehli," page 91? See also pages 711, 784, 792, and 884.

Page 1216, note, para. 3.—Jāng, in Turkī, signifies "cold," and, if the word be read Chāng, it means "dust" in the same language. We have a tract called Kāra-Kum, or Black Sand, and another called Kāra-Kuram, or Black Shale, etc., and, therefore, a Kāra-Jāng, or Black Cold, or a Kāra-Chāng, or Black Dust, is not improbable after all.

Page 1220, note, last line.—The great river Kā’ān-Ling here referred to is evidently the "Kyan-lin" of the Chinese, mentioned six paragraphs farther on.

Page 1229, note *.—The "Ibn" prefixed to the word would rather indicate that "the 'Allkami" is the father's name.
ERRATA.

Page 9, note 1, for Zu-l-Yamanain read Zu-l-Yamanain in all places.
10, line 6, "A'yan" A'yun, also at page 30, line 11.
" " 20, "Ahwâz" Ahwâz in all cases.
" " 19, "Irâk" Irâk.
11, " 3, "Tâlîhah" Talîhah.
12, " 12, should be Mâwar-un-Nahr in all places where otherwise, not Mâwar, the last syllable of the word having escaped notice for some time. It is correctly written subsequently.
14, line 17, for Al-Mutaṣim read Al-Mu'taṣim.
15, " 3, "Zu-l-Ḥiyyah" Zu-l-Ḥiyyah always.
" " 16, "Muḥammad-i-Ṭâhîr read Muḥammad-i-Ṭâhir.
19, " 3, "There should be a comma after Sarâj.
21, " 7 from bottom. After Lâq should be a semicolon.
" " 20, for Lâis read Lâis,
22, note 8, "Shâpûr, and Ya'qûb read Shâpûr, and Ya'qûb in all cases.
23, " 1, "Badghais read Bâdghais.
24, " 1, "Jâmi'-ut-Tawârîkh read Jâmi'-ut-Tawârîkh.
" " 1, "Nâkîb" Nâkîb.
25, line 7, "Muḥammad Basâhir" Muḥammad-i-Basâhir, that is, son of Basâhir, which he was.
" note 2, "Ibrâhîm" Ibrâhîm.
27, line 15, "Khâdîdât" Khâdîdât.
29, " 5, "Kâshghar is written in other places Kâshghar.
" " 7, "Irân read I-rân always.
32, note 8, "Haḳ" Haḳ.
33, line 18, "Zakrîa read Zakrîa, also at page 37, note 8.
34, note 8, "Haft Aḳîlm read Haft Iḳîlm.
35, " 4, "Dowâṭî and dowâṭ read Dawâṭî and dowâṭ.
" " 4, "Ibrâhîmâf" Ibrâhîmâf.
36, line 9, and page 38, line 16, for Nâyâb read Nâ'îb, and in other places.
38, note 8, for MS.
" " MSS.
39, line 4, also page 63, for Jâbâl read the Jâbâl, and where otherwise.
40, last line, and note 4, "Alb-Ṭagîn read Alb-Tigîn, as in other places.
44, line 2 from bottom "Hîsâm" Hûsâm in all cases.
45, " 25, for Î-lâk" Îlak.
46, " 15.—Abî 'Alî is often written Abî 'Alî, and both are of the same meaning, and sometimes Bû is written for Abû.
" note 4, third line from bottom, should be "from Kâshghar to Chîn, not the Jîhûn."
52, lines 3 and 10, and note 8, for Zî-Kâ'dâh read Zî-Ka'dâh.
" note 8, for Ibrâhîm" Ibrâhîm.
" " 8, line 13 from bottom, for Abû Ismâ'îl read Abû Ibrâhîm.
53, last line of text, "Ilyas" Ilyâs.
ERRATA.

Page 58, line 2, the comma after "he" is redundant.

Page 59, line 10, for "Müşil" read Mauiil, as correctly written in other places.

Page 61, line 18, "dife-rent" read different, the printer has incorrectly divided the word.

Page 64, note 1, para. 2, for Burhân Kâti read Burhân-i-Kâti always.

Page 70, line 1, for "Ghâfi" read Ghâfi.

Page 72, line 2, should be "Amîr Mânşûr, son of Nûb, son of Naşr."

Page 77, first line after the Persian, for "Tawarikh" read "Tawârîkh."

Page 80, line 2, for "Maḥmud" read "Maḥmûd."

Page 81, line 4, "overcome" read "overcame."

Page 86, line 28, "Al-Zawzanî" read "Az-Zawzanî" in all places.

Page 87, para. 1, "Amîd" read "Amîd."

Page 88, line 6.—The words "works of" have been left out after "in."

Page 89, line 5, for "Jalâl-ul-Millât" read "Jamâl-ul-Millât."

Page 90, line 6, for "Mamlûks" read "Mamlûks," and next line, after "contrary to" a comma is required.

Page 91, line 9, for "lyaz" read "Ayaz."

Page 93, first line, for "Sankaran" read "Sankurân;" also on page 115, note 8, as at pages 450 and 498.

Page 97, line 13, for "Sülîmân" read "Sulîmân."

Page 101, line 23, the date should be 443 H., as in note 8, page 102, not 344 H.

Page 102, line 10, for Raggi-ud-Din read Razi-ud-Din.

Page 107, note 8, line 5, for Baihaki read Baihaki.

Page 109, line 15, there should be a comma after "the Martyr."

Page 110, line 1, first line.—The year 548 H. is an error for 514 H., as the context shows, and as given immediately under.

Page 112, line 6, for "western" read "eastern," the present Panjâb is referred to.

Page 113, line 13, "Badâûnî," "Budâûnî."

Page 115, note 8, as at pages 450 and 498.

Page 117, para. 3, line 2, for "Tughrîl" read "Taghârî."

Page 123, line 6 from bottom, for "Sâljûks" read Saljûks" as before.

Page 128, line 2, after "p. 142" there should be a full stop.

Page 134, line 3, for "Gûr Khân" read "the Gûr Khân."

Page 135, line 8, last, for "early" read "yearly," the letter "y" has been allowed to fall out.

Page 140, line 3 from bottom, for "Khâfé" read "Khîfâ."
ERRATA.

Page 154, line 6 of the poetry.—The note refers to “white steed’s,” and not to girths, therefore, the figure 9 should be over the former.

161, note, line 14 from bottom, for “fifth” read “fourth.”

167, , , , line 8, for “Yafâ’î” read “Yâfâ’î,” as in other places.

170, , , , 10 from bottom, for “Shirwan” read “Shirwân.”

171, , , , 1, for “Muhammad, Jahân Pahlawân,” read “Jahân Pahlawân, Muhammad,” as in the note above.

172, , , , line 14, for “Buwiah” read “Buwîah.”

180, , , , for “Changiz” read “Chingiz,” as in other places.

183, line 9, after “himself seen” there should be a comma.

185, note, line 5, para. 2, and para. 3, line 4, for “Husain ‘Ali” read “Husain-i-‘Ali,” with an ١٢٤٩٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠_**Sufed” read “Sufed.” **walls of his fortress,” read “walls of this fortress”; the printer, after revision, let the “t” drop out.

204, line 4, for “Lakhnautil” read “Lakhânautil,” also in note 1 of preceding page.


208, , , 1.—“After “Zangî” there should be a comma.

211, line 3.—There should be a comma after “Rûm,” and another after “other” in line 10.

217, note, line 5 from bottom.—There should be a comma after “Vertot.”

220, , , 8.—After “force” in line 2, after “Jerusalem” and “Nov.,” in the next line, and after “kings” in the next, there should be commas.

221, , , 4, line 5, for “different to” read “different from.”


225, note 4, next to last line of para. 1, also at page 226, note 4, for “Miîs-färîkîn” read “Miyyā-fârîkîn,” as at page 1268, and note 4.

229, , , 4, last para., line 7, for “Manîsûrah” read “Manîsurîyâh; and “ Kaîf or Kayîf” appears to be meant for “Katîf.”

235.—There should be no comma between “Abî” and “Muhammad” in lines 16 and 19; and for “Kutlugh” in the latter read “Kutlugh,” and in all cases.

242, note 4, para. 1, for “Dajlah” read “Dijlah,” as in other places.

246, , , 7, three lines from the bottom, instead of “that man,” the sense requires “that that man,” etc., the other that has been left out.

247, , , 1, para. 2, line 10 from bottom, after “his brother” a comma is required.

250, , , 4, line 4, for “Sultân Shâh” read “Malik Shâh,” as above.

252, , , 3, , 3, after “brother” should be a comma.

253, para. 4, line 7, for “Garmîr” read “the Garmîr.”
ERRATA.

Page 595, note 5, for “Nāsir-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz,” read “Nāsir-ud-Dīn-i-
'Iwāz,” with an iṣfāt, that is, son of 'Iwāz, for Ghīyās-ud-Dīn,
'Iwāz, was his father.

597, line 3, for “very different to” read “very different from.”

602, line 2, for “Nāsīr” “Nāsir.”

610, para. 2, line 1, for “D’Ahsson” read “D’Ohsson.”

615, last para. of note 9, next to last line, for “page 389” read “page
398.”

621, note 4, line 12, for “minārah” read “manārah” as before.

622, 5 from bottom of last para., for “Afāghinah” read “Afāghinah.”

627, line 9, after “Yal-dīz” there should be a comma.

637, 15, for “Gūjah” and “Kūjāh” read “Gūjah” and “Kūjāh,” as
at page 750.

644, para. 3, line 3, for “Kinnanj” read “Kinnauj.”

649, note 4, line 2, for “and refers to the office,” etc.

651, para. 2, line 3, for “different statement to” read “different
statement from.”

662, line 3, for “‘Abbāsīs” read “‘Abbāsīs.”

665, para. 3, line 3, for “mawās” “māwās.”

672, line 12, for “‘Abbiasis.” See “Additions,” reference to page 318.

690, end of note 4, for “page 694” read “page 695.”

694, 5, para. 2, line 3, for “Nāyab” read “Nā’ib.”

704, 15, for “mawās” “māwās.”

705, 7, 5, 3, “ṃaẉās,” “ṃaẉās.”

712, text, last line, for “Balarām” read “Balarām,” and also in note 9,
three lines from the bottom.

716, note 4, para. 2, line 12, for “Ziyā” read “Ziyyā.”

720, text, line 11, for “fi ul-‘Alamīn” read “fi-l-‘Alamīn.”

726, note 4, the printer has put “See the reign under” instead of “See
under the reign,” and the printer’s reader has passed it over.

749, line 5, for “Awwāl” read “Awwal.”

753, note 4, for “Shārt-badār” read “Shārt-bardār.”

754, 6, for “ee” read “See.” Here also a letter has fallen out.

761, line 11, for “Shāhnagfī” read “Shāhnagfī.”

764, 16, for “Lakhaṇawatī” read “Lakhaṇawatī,” as in tenth line
above.

775, note, para. 4, line next to last, for “stated above” read “as stated
above.”

778, para. 5, line first, for “as far it goes” read “as far as it
goes.”

780, line 5, for “page 650” read “660.”

784, line 12, “Kurt.” See page 1198.

809, line 5, for “Tukhāristān” read “Khurāsān.”

810, 4, 2, “664 H.” is an error for “646 H.”

820, line 6 from the bottom, “-i-,” after Kashī Khan is a printer’s
blunder: it should be “Kashī Khan, Ḳalb-us-Sultānī.”
ERRATA.

Page 822, line 10, for "Zi-Ka’dah" read "Zi-Ka’dah."

824, , , 16, and next page, line 9, as before noticed, instead of "Tä- yasa’i," the correct title is "Tä-äh'i." See note, page 866.

838, , , 15, after "Kasmandah" there should be a comma.

867, note, line 13 from bottom, for "Balaban" read "Balban."

872, , , para. 1, line 8, for "Sâklabs" read "Sâklâbs."

875, , , 8, , , , , , next to last, for "different to" read "different from."

877, , , para. 3, third line from bottom, "Kafchâk," etc., may be also written "Khîfchâk" and "Khiîfchâk," as at pages 254, 796, and 914: with "i" in the first syllable is, perhaps, the most correct.

890, , , line 2, "Irdîsh" is also written with "a"—Ardîsh, as in note at page 950, para. 3.

892, , , para. 6, line 5, for "occasion" read "occasion."

909, , , 2, , 4, , "Mughuls" , , "Mughals."

908, , , 2, , 7, , "Itsiz" , , "Itsuz."

913, , , 3, , 5, , "Tâyâ-Ghû" , , "Tâyâ-Ghû."

920, , , last line in page, , "Muran" , , "Mur-ân."

926, , , para. 2, line 3, , "Timur-chî" , , "Tamur-chî."

956, , , , 2, , 5, , "Jabbâh" , , "Jabbah."

957, , , , 3, , , next to last, for "Ja’îr" read "Ja’îr."

968, text, line 2, after "sovereignty" there should be a comma.

969, note 8, for "shràb" read "sharâb."

973, , , line 27, for "Jûjî" read "Jûjî."

979, line 3, for "jâshî" read "jâshî."

980, note 7, para. 2, line 2, for "Ghû-ralîfgh" read "Ghû-Bâlîfgh."

981, , , 4, , 3, , "Gûzîdah" , , "Guzîdah."

983, , , 5, , 2, , "Gûr Khân" , , "Gûr Khân."

985, , , 2, , 11, , "shûjâ" , , "shûjâ."

986, , , 1, , 6, , 6 from bottom, after the bracket and before "gave him" there should be a comma.

988, , , , last, line 3, for "Mughal" read "Mughal."

989, , , , 2, , 14, , "Tûkâjîr" , , "Tûkâchûr, as in the preceding page.

991, , , 4, , 3, , "Fûshang" , , "Fûshanj."

1002, , , 8, , 2, , "was styled" read "was also styled."

1010, , , para. 2, line 1, for "Ibn Khallikân" read "Ibn Khallikan," as at page 1278.

1011, , , para. 2, line 7 from bottom, for "Tâl-kûn" read "Tâl-kûn," and the comma after the word is redundant.

1014, , , 3, , 12, , "Aghràk" , , "Ighràk," as in other places.
lxiv ERRATA.

Page 1020, note, para. 4, line 9, the full stop after 30,000 men is a printer's error, and is redundant.

1025, "para. 4, line 1, for "Mamālīk" read "Mamālīk."
1027, "para. 2, next to last line, for "Taghachār" read "Taghachār," also in para. 3, line 3.

1029, note, para. 4, line 2, for "Bahā-ud-Mulk" read "Bahā-ul-Mulk."
1032, "para. 2, 5, after "Jahān" the comma is redundant.
1046, "para. 6, for "Al-Birūnī" read "Al-Birūnī."
1048, text, last line, ""Hirāt"", "Hirāt" as in other places.

1073, note 4, para. 4, line 7, for "Turān" read "Turān."
1074, "five lines from bottom of page, for "Shiwtān" read "Shiwtān."
1095, "para. 3, line 3, for "Mughāl" read "Mughal" as in line 2 above.
1099, "para. 2, line 17, for "the two" read "the other two."
1116, "para. 3, 4, "Itmās", "Itmās."
1119, text, line 7 from bottom, "Tā-īr" may also be written "Tā-īr" as in note 2, para. 3, next page.
1126, note 6, para. 2, lines 2 and 3, for "Mukānū" and "Mukātū" read "Mukānū" and "Mukātū," and also in next two paragraphs.
1132, "para. 2, line 2, before "Humāyūn" there is an empty space for the word "to," which, through carelessness, the printer has allowed to fall out after revise, and a letter in the next to get out of its place.
1135, "para. 2, next to last line, for "eve" read "even," a letter has fallen out here too.
1137, "para. 4, line 3, for "tomāns" read "tomāns."
1161, line 15, after the words "inclined to it" there should be a comma.
1164, "para. 5, for "Chingīz" read "Chingiz," as it has been printed scores of times before.
1166, note, para. 2, line 3, for "Bāghgīrd" read "Bāghgīrd."
1180, "para. 4, 4, "Uğbūl", "Uğbūl."
1183, "para. 2, line 2, for "Shirāmūn" read "Shirāmūn."
1188, end of note 7, for "hat" read "that," a letter has been allowed to fall out again.
1194, note, para. 2, line 6, for "Jāmī" read "Jāmī," as in fourth line above.
1196, "line 1, here again, through carelessness, the "g" of excepting has fallen out unnoticed.
1197, text, line 14, and 1198, line 17, for "Isfīrār" read "Isfīrār."
1201, "para. 1, for "karwāns" read "kārwāns."
1203, "para. 3, the "b" in "Tabās" should be doubled thus—"Tabās."
1220, note, second line from bottom, and next page, line 7 of note, for "Taghachār" read "Taghachār."
1234, "para. 4, for "Usmanīlī" read "Usmānīlī."
1239, "para. 3, line 7, for "Ilkān, or Ilkān, or Ilkān," read "I-yalkān, or I-yalkān, or I-yalkān."
1255, "para. 1, last line, for "Ibn 'Amrān" read "Ibn 'Amrān."
1260, "para. 3, line 3, for "Ilkā," read "I-yalkā."
1267, "para. 3, line 4, for "Kūrdīlāh" read "Kūrdīlah."
1276, "para. 3, 2 from end, for "Umār" read "Umār."
"para. 3, 10, for "Kāmīrī" read "Kāmīrī."
THE TABAKAT-I-NASIRI:

INTRODUCTORY,

BEING AN EPITOME OF THE FIRST SIX SECTIONS.

The following is a brief summary of the contents of the first six Sections of the work as an Introduction to the Seventh with which my translation begins.

SECTION I. Account of Adam, the Patriarchs and Prophets, the ancestors of Muhammad, and the latter's history to the date of his decease.

SECTION II. The four orthodox Khalifahs, the descendants of 'Ali, and the 'Aṣharah-i-Mubashirah, or Ten Companions or Apostles of Muhammad.

SECTION III. and IV. The Khalifahs of the house of Ummiyah and 'Abbās, to the downfall of the latter.

SECTION V. The Maliks [Kings] of 'Ajam to the rise of Islam, consisting of five dynasties:—I. The Bāstāniāh or Pesh-Dādān. II. The Kai-ānīān. III. The Ashkānīān. IV. The Sāsānīān. V. The Akāsīrāh.

The author, quoting the Tawarikh-i-'Ajam from which he says the Shah-Namah of Firdausi was taken, and the statements of the Fire-Worshippers, and other authentic information, states that, when Kābil slew his brother Hābil, Adam had another son born to him who was named Shīṣ, which signifies “given by God.” He was inspired, and became ruler over Adam's descendants. The Persians say this [Shīṣ] was Gaiū-mart, son of Adam; but the Musalmāns say that it is Unnūsh, son of Shīṣ, who is here referred to. In Unnūsh's time a son of Adam named Nabaṭī, with his children, retired to the mountains of Jarmūn, and devoted themselves to religion, and many others joined them. From the death of Adam to this period, according to Abū-l-Ma'shar-i-Munajjim, in the Ẓānīn-i-Mas'ūdī, was 432 years. After some time elapsed, Nabaṭī and his descendants came down from the mountains, and joined the
descendants of Kābil, who had taken possession of the hills of Shām, and parts around, and who had increased beyond computation. Iblis [the Devil] had taught them the worship of fire; and drunkenness, and all sorts of other grievous sins prevailed among them. A thousand years had elapsed since Adam's death, and the rebellious sons of Kābil and Nabaṭī began to act tyrannically. They chose one of their number to rule over them, who was named Sāmiārūsh; and between them and the other descendants of Adam, who were just persons, hostility and enmity arose.

The sons of Shīṣ, and others of Adam's descendants who acknowledged Shīṣ' authority, assembled, and chose one of the Kārānīān Malik, who are styled the Bāstānīān Malik, to defend them from the wickedness of the sons of Kābil and Nabaṭī; and this, the first person among the upright and just kings whom they set up, is styled Ilū-rūs in the Yūnānī language; and the Yūnānīs say, that he is the same as he whom the 'Ajamīs call by the name of Gaiū-mart. He was entitled Gil-Shāh, and was the first king of the Gil-wānīān dynasty, which is also named the Pesh-Dādiān, and Bāstānīān dynasty. When this Ilū-rūs became king, 1024 years had passed from the fall of Adam, and the land of Babil became the seat of his government, and the just sons of Shīṣ, and other just descendants of Adam obeyed him. When 1162 years had passed away, the countries of 'Arab, 'Ajam, Shām, and Maghrab became settled; and, according to the Kānūn-i-Mas'ūdī, previous to Nūh's flood, eleven kings of the Gil-wānīān dynasty had reigned.

FIRST DYNASTY: THE BĀSTĀNĪĀH.

I. GAIŪ-MART, or Gil-Shāh, surnamed Pesh-Dād, or I-rān Shāh. Reigned 30 years. II. HOSHANG, who was born 223 years after Gaiū-mart's death, reigned, according to different accounts, 1400, or 400, or 40 years. III. THA-MŪRAS-I-DĪW-BAND, great grandson of the preceding. Reigned 30 years: some say 1030. IV. JAMSHED, grandson of Hoshang, but Tabari says brother of Tamūras. Reigned 700 years. V. BIWAR-ASP, the infidel, who dethroned Jamshed, and was swallowed up in the Flood. For 1000 years after the death of Nūh there was no king
INTRODUCTORY.

on earth, but, after that, one arose of the seed of Šām, son of Nūh, named Žuḥāk. VI. ŽUḤĀK, THE TĀZI [i.e. 'Arab]. He was a great sorcerer, and reigned 1000 years. VII. AFRIḌŪN, entitled Mihr-gān. Ibrāhim, the Patriarch, Ţabāri says, lived in his reign, which was 500 years, but Ibrāhim lived in Žuḥāk’s reign, when Nimrūd reigned over Bābil. VIII. I-RAJ, son of Afridūn, reigned 40 years. IX. NIMRŪD, THE TYRANT. He was a great grandson of Nūh, and the first to assume sovereignty after the Flood. He perished after reigning 400 years. A son of his, Kūbt, an idol-worshipper, succeeded, and reigned 100 years. After him, a son of his reigned 80 years, when the sovereignty again passed to the former kings of 'Ājam. X. MANŪ-CHIHR, son of I-raj. Reigned 120 years, in the 60th year of which the Patriarch Mūsā appeared. XI. AFRĀSIYĀB, THE TURK, who invaded I-rān and overthrew the dynasty. XII. ZAU, son of Ţhamāsib, son of Manū-chihr, who reigned 30 years.

SECOND DYNASTY : THE KAI-ĀNĪAH.

I. KAI-KUBĀD, sixteenth in descent from Manū-chihr. Reigned 100 or 120 years. II. KAI-KĀ-ŪS, his son, reigned 150 years. Mihtar Sulīmān lived at this period. III. KAI-KHUSRAU, grandson of Kai-Kā-ūs. Died aged 150, but the years of his reign are not given. One of his champions was Rustam. IV. KAI-LUHRĀSIB, THE TYRANT. Reigned 120 years and abdicated. The Prophet Asha’yā [Isaiah] lived at this time, and Bukht-un-Naṣṣar was leader of the forces of Sanjārīb, Malik of Bābil. V. GUSHTĀSĪB, son of Luhrāsib. Zartusht arose in this reign, Rustam died, Bukht-un-Naṣṣar became Malik of Bābil, and Jerusalem was sacked. Reigned 120 years. VI. BAHMAN, son of Isfandiyār, son of Gushtāsīb, surnamed ARDA-SHER-I-DIRĀZ-DĀST [Artaxerxes Longimanus of the Greeks]. The Bani-Isrā’il carried into captivity. Bahman marries an Isrā’īlī woman, who bore him a son. The Bani-Isrā’il set free. Reign 22 years. VII. HUMĀ-I [also Humān], daughter of Bahman. Married by her father and bore him Dārā. She abdicated after reigning 30 years. VIII. DĀRĀ [or DĀRĀ]-I-AKBAR [Great or Elder]. He made captive the king of Rūm, and imposed tribute of 100,000 eggs of
gold, each as large as an ostrich egg. Failakūs, Iskandar's father, was king of Yūnān. Dārā reigned 12 years. IX. Dārā-i-Āṣghār [Less or Younger]. Iskandar, son of Failakūs, brought all Rūm under subjection. Invaded and subdued I-rān. Length of reign not given. X. Iskandar, son of Failakūs, who is said to have been the son of Dārā's sister married to Failakūs. Iskandar died in I-rān after 12 years' reign.

THIRD DYNASTY: THE ASHKĀNĪĀN.

I. Āshk [Ushk = Hushkā ?], styled Arfā'wā, ninth in descent from Dārā-i-Akbar. Āshk reigned 10 years. II. Āshkān, his son, reigned 10 years. III. Shāpūr, his son, who totally destroyed Jerusalem. In his reign Mihtār 'Īsā [Jesus Christ] was born. Shāpūr reigned 60 years. IV. Gudarz-i-Akbar, son of Shāpūr. Reigned 10 years. V. Gudarz-i-Āṣghār, his son, reigned 21 years. VI. Narsi-ul-Āṣghānt, who reigned 40 years. VII. Kisrā-ul-Āṣghānti, son of Narsi. He is styled also, Ardawān-i-Akbar, and reigned 44 years. VIII. Balās-ul-Āṣghānti, who reigned 24 years. IX. Ardawān-i-Āṣghār, who reigned 13 years.

FOURTH DYNASTY: THE SASĀNĪĀN.

I. Arda-Sher-ul-Jāmi' or Bābakān, son of Bābak, son of Sāsān, descended from Kai-Luhrāsib. He rose to power 266 years after Iskandar, some say 270, but the Christians, 550 years after. He reigned 14 [40?] years and 6 months. II. Shāpūr, his son, reigned 30 years. III. Hūrmuz [Hūrmaz or Aormazd], who reigned 1 year and 10 months. IV. Bahram, his son, reigned 3 years. V. Bahram, son of Bahram, who assumed the title of Shāh-an-shāh [King of Kings]. He reigned 4 months: Tabari says, 4 years. VI. Narsi, son of the elder Bahram, succeeded his brother, and reigned 9 years. VII. Hūrmuz, son of Narsi, who reigned 7 years and 5 months. He left one of his wives pregnant, who, after six months, gave birth to Shāpūr. VIII. Shāpūr-i-Zu-l-Aktāf, so called because, when at war with the 'Arabs, he had the shoulder-blades of all those who fell into his hands removed. He defeated and took prisoner the Kaṭṣar of Rūm. Shāpūr
reigned 72 years. IX. ARDA-SHER, son of Hurmuz, Shāpūr's brother, a great tyrant; and after 4 years he was dethroned. X. SHĀPŪR, son of Shāpūr-i-Zūl-Aktāf, who was put to death by his troops after reigning 5 years and 2 months. XI. BAHRĀM, son of Shāpūr, styled Kirmān-Shāh before his accession. He was slain by his troops after reigning 11 years, but Ţabarî says 15 years. XII. YAZD AJIRD-UL-ĂSIM [Evil-doer], also styled KĀWKHASH [morose]. Killed, after reigning 21 years, by the kick of a mysterious horse, which suddenly appeared, and as quickly vanished again. XIII. BAHRĀM, his son, styled BAH RĀM-I-GOR, so called from having, when hunting, discharged an arrow at a lion which was about to tear a wild ass, and pierced both through. He reigned 60 years. XIV. YAZDAJIRD, his son, who reigned 18 years, 4 months, and 18 days. XV. FĪRŪZ, son of Yazdajird, who reigned 27 years. XVI. BALĀSH, son of Firūz, reigned 4 years. XVII. KUBĀD, his son, was dethroned by his brother, Jamāsīb, but recovered the sovereignty again. Reigned 42 years.

FIFTH DYNASTY: THE AKĀSIRAH.

I. NUSHIRWĀN, son of Kūbād, famous for his justice and equity. Reigned 47 years, in the 40th year of which the Prophet, Muḥammad, was born. II. HURMUZ, his son, reigned 11 years and 7 months, and was deposed. III. KHUSRAU PARWIZ, son of Hurmuz, was one of the most magnificent monarchs of I-rān, and reigned 38 years, when he was put to death by his son. In the 20th year of his reign, Muḥammad began to propagate his religion, and, in the 30th, fled from Makkah to Madinah, which year is called the Hijrah or Flight. IV. SHERWAIAH, son of Khusrav Parwiz, who died of poison 6 months after putting his father to death. V. ARDA-SHER, his son, a mere child, succeeded, who was put to death by his Wāzīr, Shahr-ārāe, after he had been 1 year and 6 months on the throne. VI. SHAHR-ĀRĀE [or Shahr-yār] usurped the throne, but was assassinated after 1 month. VII. TURĀN-DUKHT, daughter of Khusrav Parwiz, was raised to the throne. She sent back to Rūm the Cross, which her father had
carried away. She died after reigning 1 year and 6 months. VIII. ARZUMAND-DUKHT, another daughter of Khusrau Parwiz, succeeded, but was cruelly murdered after reigning 6 months. IX. KISRA, son of MIHR-JAISH, a descendant of Arda-Sher, Babakān, was then set up, but was soon after dethroned and put to death. X. JUNAID, a descendant of NUSHIRWAN'S, was then raised to the throne, but immediately after dethroned. XI. FARRUKHZAD, son of Khusrau Parwiz, who was deposed and put to death after 6 months' reign. XII. YAZDAJIRD-I-SHAHR-YAR, son of Khusrau Parwiz, who, after a nominal reign of 20 years, was assassinated by a peasant of Marw, in the 21st year of the Hijrah [A.D. 642]. In his reign the Musalmāns overthrew the 1-rānī empire, and with Yazdajird the dynasty terminated.

SECTION VI.

THE TUBBĀ-YAWA', AND MALIKS OF YAMAN.

The author states that he copies the account of the kings contained in this Section from the Tāriḵh-i-Muḵaddasi, and from Ṭabarī.

After Kaḥṭān, son of 'Abir, son of Shalik, son of Ar-fakhshad, son of Sām, son of Nūḥ, came into Yaman, Y'rāb, his son, became king; and he was the first who used the 'Arabic language. Fifteen kings are said to have reigned for a great number of years, up to the time of Ḥāris-ur-Rāyish, who is the first of the Tubbā-yawa' dynasty.

I. ḤĀRIS-UR-RĀYISH. He was contemporary with Manū-chihr, sovereign of 'Ajam, and was subject to him. He reigned 120 years.

II. ABRÁHĀH-I-ZU-L-MANĀR, son of Ḥāris. He was subject to Manū-chihr, and reigned 180 years.

III. AFRIKIS, son of Abrahāh. He also was subject to Manū-chihr, and reigned 164 years.

IV. MUNDAZ, styled ZU-L-ADGHĀR, son of Abrahāh. He was subject to Manū-chihr, and reigned 25 years.

V. HAILĀD, son of Sarakhīl, grandson of Ḥāris. He was cousin of Mundaz, and son of Balkis [Queen of Sabā], but
by some he is said to have espoused the daughter of the
king of the Jinn, and that Balkis was their daughter.

VI. Balkis, daughter of Hailad, became sovereign of
Yaman and Maghrab. She reigned 40 years.

VII. Un-Nashir-un-Na'am, son of 'Umaro, son of Sara-
khil. He reigned 75 years.

VIII. Shammar, son of Afrikis, son of Abrahah, styled
Ra'ash—the Palsied. He was a great king, contemporary
with Gushtasib and Bahman. He reigned 137 years.

IX. Akrān, son of Shammar. He reigned 53 years.

X. Tubba', son of Akrān, or Tubba'-i-Akbar. He
reigned 160 years.

XI. Malkirab, son of Tubba'. He reigned 35 years.

XII. Tubba'-ul-Ausat [the Medium]. He was put to
death by his soldiery after reigning 160 years.

XIII. Ḥassān, son of Tubba', surnamed Zū-Ḥassān.
He was put to death by his brother 'Umaro after a reign of
5 years.

XIV. 'Umaro, son of Tubba'. He reigned 23 years.

XV. 'Abd-ul-Kulāl, son of Marsad. In his reign Ḥisā
[Jesus Christ] lived, and 'Abd-ul-Kulāl believed in him.
He reigned 74 years.

XVI. Tubba'-ul-Asghar [the Younger], son of Ḥassān.
He made great slaughter among the Bani-Isrā'il of Ma-
dinah on account of their crimes, and slew fifty of their
Mihtars. He reigned 78 years.

XVII. Marsad, son of 'Abd-ul-Kulāl. He reigned 41
years; and, after him, the dominions of Ḥimyar and the
Tubbā-yawa' became restricted to Yaman.

XVIII. Wulta'ab, son of Marsad. He reigned 37
years.

XIX. Ḥassān, son of Ḥassān. He reigned justly for
70 years.

XX. Zu-Shanātar. He did not belong to the family
of the Tubbā-yawa'. How long he reigned is unknown.

XXI. Zu-l-Nawāsh, son of Ḥassān, son of Ḥassān.
Tabari calls him Zar'ab. With him the Tubbā-yawa'
dynasty ended, which from the time of Ḥarīṣ up to this
period lasted 1360 years.

XXII. Abrahah-ul-Ashram [The Scarred in the Lip],

1 Tabari calls him Zū-l-Nawās. He was a Jew.
Şāhib-ul-Fīl, son of Ḥasan-uṣ-Ṣabbāḥ. He endeavoured to destroy the ka'bah of Makkah, but perished with his whole army. The period of his reign and the reigns of his two sons, Yagsūm [Bagsūm] and Masrūḵ, when this Ḥabāšah dynasty terminated, was 73 years, and in the last year the Prophet, Muḥammad, was born.

XXIII. Yagṣūm, son of Abrahah, who reigned 4 years.

XXIV. Masrūḵ, son of Abrahah. He was dethroned by Saif, the son of his mother by an 'Arab husband, aided by some criminals set at liberty for the purpose by command of Nūshīrwān, to whom Saif had complained.

XXV. Saif, son of Zi-Yazan. He reigned a considerable time, and was subsequently slain by a Ḥabāšī left behind, who had entered his service.

XXVI. Hariz [or Dahriz], the 'Ajami, who had accompanied Saif, son of Zi-Yazan, from 'Ajam, by command of Nūshīrwān, became ruler. He reigned 4 years.

XXVII. The Marzabān, son of Hariz [or Dahriz], the 'Ajami. He succeeded his father by Nūshīrwān's command, and reigned over Yaman a long time. At his death his son, Sajān [Abū-Shajān?], succeeded, and, at his death, Khur-Khusrau became king of Yaman. The reign of Nūshīrwān had terminated, and Hurmuz had succeeded; and Khur-Khusrau, having rebelled, was removed.

XXVIII. Bāzān, the Muslim Malik. He became king and ruled over Yaman up to the rise of Muḥammad, the Prophet. He embraced the new faith, and Yaman passed under the rule of the Musalmāns.
SECTION VII.

THE DYNASTY OF THE TĀHIRĪ MUḤAMMADAN MALIKS IN 'AJAM.

MINḤĀJ-I-SARĀJ, JŪRJĀNĪ, the humblest of the servants of the Almighty's Court, gives, in the following pages, an account of the Tāhirī Maliks [kings], whose descent, in some histories, is traced to Manūchīhr Al-Malik, sovereign of 'Ajam; and, according to which, the first of them who rose to power, was Tāhirī, son of Al-Ḥusain, son of Mūṣ-ʿab, son of Zarnīk, son of Asʿad, son of Bādān, son of Māe Khusrau, son of Bahram. Māe Khusrau was the first who embraced the faith of Islām, having been converted by 'Alī—May God reward him!—and received the name of Asʿad. This Bahram was son of Razān Mūrit, son of Rustam, son of As-Saddīd, son of Dostān, son of Barsān, son of Jūrāk, son of Gushṭ-āsp, son of Ashraṭ, son of Isḥam, son of Tūrāk, son of Anghar, son of Shāid-āsp, son of Azar-sab, son of Tūḥ, son of Rū-shed, son of Manūchīhr Al-Malik.

The Tāhirī Maliks were remarkable for their virtues and equity; and they first rose to power in Khurāsān, in the time of the Amīr-ul-Mūminīn [Commander of the Faithful], Māmūn, and in the following manner. Between the Khalīfah, Muḥammad Amin, who was at

1 The Tarīkh-i-Yaḥṣīʿ, which is a rare and most valuable work, and highly esteemed by the early chroniclers, gives a different account. According to it the following is the genealogy of the family:—"Abū-Tayyib-i-Tāhir, called Zūl-Yamanain, son of Ḥusain, son of Rūzāk [giving the vowel points], son of Māhān-i-Khazāʾī, son of Asʿad, son of Rādwiḥā; and, according to another tradition, Asʿad, son of Rādān; and, according to another, Muṣʿab, son of Tāḥah. Tāhir's ancestor, Rūzāk, was a servant of Tāḥah-i-Talahāt, who was renowned for his generosity and beneficence."
Baghdad, and his brother Mâmûn, who was in Khurâsân, ill-feeling arose. Upon this, Amin despatched 'Ali 'Isâ-i-Mâhân from Baghdad into Khurâsân to reduce Mâmûn to obedience; and, in one of the months of the year 195 of the Hijrah, he reached Hamadân with a warlike army. Mâmûn appointed Harşamah, son of A'yan, to the command of a force to oppose 'Ali 'Isâ; and Tahir, son of Husain, was nominated to command the van of Harşamah's army.

By the advice of Fâzîl, son of Sahl, who was Mâmûn's Wâzir, Mâmûn bestowed a standard upon Tahir, saying unto him at the same time, that he had bent for him a standard which for thirty years should lead to victory; and so it turned out, for the sway of the Tahiris lasted for upwards of thirty odd years. Within two leagues of Rai, with 14 or 15,000 horse, he encountered 'Ali, son of 'Isä, son of Mâhân, who had brought 50,000 horse with him, defeated, and slew him, and sent his head to Mâmûn. He then subdued the whole of the mountain tracts of 'Irâk, and took Wâsi't and Ahwâz, and appeared before the gates of Baghdad.

After carrying on hostilities for the space of a year, Tahir captured Muhammad Amin, put him to death, and despatched his head to Mâmûn, his brother,

2 His right name is Abû Yahyâ-i-'Ali, son of 'Isä, son of Mâhân. His two sons were also sent to serve under him; and his army amounted to 50,000 men.

3 Tabarî says Tahir was alone appointed, but, subsequently, when he asked for reinforcements, on marching from the Hulwân Pass to Baghdad, then Harşamah was sent with another army.

4 Other chroniclers of undoubted authority state that 'Ali, son of Abî Khâlid, was the minister in question.

5 Most writers give a greater number of years than this. Their dynasty is said to have continued nearly fifty-four years. One of the poets has brought together the names of the Tahirî rulers in these two couplets:—

"In Khurâsân, of the race of Muš'ab Shâh,
Were Tahir, and Taḥâh, and 'Abd-ullah:
Then a second Tahir, and a Muhammad, who,
Gave up unto Ya'kîb, the throne and crown."

6 Tabarî says 20,000 men.

7 'Ali, son of 'Isä, was slain, it is said, by Dâ'ûd-i-Siyâh, or the Black. Most writers state that Tahir himself slew him.

8 The author of the Mujmal-i-Fâshî-i states, that a slave of Tahir's, Firdaus by name, slew Muhammad Amin on the 5th of Muharram, 198 H. The author of the Tarîkh-i-Yafa'î gives the 6th of Safar as the date.
THE TĀHIRĪ DYNASTY.

Together with his mantle, his rod of office, and his seal, by the hand of his uncle's son, Muḥammad, son of Al-Ḥasan, son of Muṣ'ab. This event happened, and this victory was gained, on the 25th of the month Muḥarram, in the year 198 H.

I. TĀHIR-I-ẒŪ-L-YAMANAIN.

Ibn Haiṣam, the chronicler, and author of the work entitled "Ḵaṣaṣ-i-Sānī," whose patronymic appellation was Abū-l-Ḥasan, and his name Haiṣam, son of Muḥammad, Al-Bāḳī [Nābī?] states, that, when the Commander of the Faithful, Māmūn, removed Ghassān, son of 'Ubbād, from the government of Khurāsān, he conferred it, together with the government of Ḥājam, upon Amir Tāhir; and that As'ād, the grandfather of Tāhir, before his conversion to the Muhammadan religion, bore the name of Farrūḵh. He was converted to the faith by Ṭalḥah, who gave him the name of As'ād; and he had a son whom he named Muṣ'ab; and he, Muṣ'ab, became resident at Fūṣhanj.

When the claims of the family of Ḥabīs to the Khilāfāt were put forward, this same Muṣ'ab became one of the principal men and partisan leaders of that dynasty. Muṣ'ab had a son, Ḥusain by name, which Ḥusain, for a considerable time, administered the affairs of Fūṣhanj, and was its Wālī [governor]; and Tāhir [Ẓū-l-Yamanain] was his son; and these successes, which have been mentioned, were gained by this same Tāhir.

When Māmūn came to Baghdad, to assume the Khilāfāt, Tāhir had also lost an eye, which our author does not seem to have known. The reasons why he obtained the name of Ṭalḥah, son of 'Abd-ullāh, one of the Prophet's companions. According to the genealogical tree previously given, Tāhir was third in descent from As'ād.

As considerable difference exists in some of these terms, I have thought it best to add, occasionally, the signification which the author means to convey.
he despatched Tahir to Raqqa,¹ to carry on hostilities against Nasr-i-Shis.² Subsequently to this he came into Khurásan; and, in 207 H.,³ he died, having nominated his son Talha, son of Tahir, his Khalifah or successor.

The chronicler relates, that on the Friday he read the Khutbah,⁴ and either forgot to mention the name of Māmūn, or omitted it purposely. After he had returned to his residence at night, and had retired to rest, at daybreak of Saturday morning he was found in his bed asleep in death; and it was never known how, or from what, his death originated.⁵

II. TALHAH, SON OF TĀHIR-I-ZŪ-L-YAMANAIN.

When the Khalifah, Māmūn, became aware of the death of Tahir, he sent letters patent to Talha, confirming him in the government of Khurásan, together with a robe of honour.⁶ He held the government until 213 H.; and, when the end of his life drew near, he bequeathed the government of Khurásan to Muḥammad, son of Al-Ḥasan, son of Muṣ'ab, At-Tāhirī, who was Talha's paternal uncle, and soon after died.

During his lifetime, the Khāriji or heretic, Ḥamzah, broke out into rebellion in Sijistān,⁷ and Talha

¹ In two MSS. written Rakah, which is not correct. Tahir's father, Ḥusain, son of Muṣ'ab, son of Ruzaik, died at Hirāt of Khurásan in 199 H. At this time Tahir was at Raqqa, and the Khalifah, Māmūn, was present at his funeral, and prayed over him, and the Wazir Fazl, son of Sahl, placed the body in the grave.

² Abu Nasr-i-Shis, son of Rabi'il, the Khariji, or Schismatic.

³ He died at Marw, according to Yafa'i, 23rd of Jamā'd-ul-Ākhir, 207 H., or, according to the computation of the Musalmāns, the night being reckoned before the day, on the night of the 24th.

⁴ As the word Khutbah will occur frequently in these pages, it will be well to explain, that it is an oration delivered after the service on the Muhammadan Sabbath, in which the deliverer of it—the ruler or governor of the province properly—blesses Muḥammad, his successors, and the reigning Khalifah or the Sovereign. In ancient times, the Khalifah, or his heir apparent, pronounced it, at the capital, in the principal Mosque.

⁵ He is said to have been poisoned. The account is to be found in detail in several histories.

⁶ Also called Nim-roz.
THE TAHIRI DYNASTY. 13

carried on hostilities against him for a considerable period; and what he did in Khurāsān, during the Khilāfāt of Māmūn, was the cause of his name being remembered with gratitude in that country, where numerous proofs of his goodness remained.

III. ʿABD-ULLAH, SON OF TĀHIR.

On the decease of ʿAlḥah, the Commander of the Faithful, Māmūn, summoned to his presence ʿAbd-ullah, the son of ʿTāhir, who had become Amir [governor] of Misr. ʿAbd-ullah had been brought up at the Court of the Khilāfāt, and under the patronage, and under the eye, of the Khalifah himself, and had become greatly accomplished. In his seventeenth year, Māmūn had entrusted him with the command of his forces; and he had so conducted himself, that, in his twenty-seventh year, ʿAbd-ullah had become renowned among men for his manliness, his vigour, his intrepidity, and his virtues and talents. At this period the Khalifah appointed him to the government of Khurāsān, and directed that ʿAlī, son of ʿTāhir, brother of ʿAbd-ullah, should act as his brother's Khalifah, or Lieutenant, in the command of the troops of the Dār-ul-Khilāfāt [the capital], in repressing the seditious and rebellious, and in the extermination of heretic Khārījīs, and, likewise, in carrying out the affairs of state, and all such other duties as appertained unto ʿAbd-ullah to perform and attend to.

At the time the Khalifah's mandate to proceed into Khurāsān and assume the government reached him, ʿAbd-ullah was at Dinawr engaged in suppressing Bābak-i-Khurramī. When he reached Nishāpūr, rain, which had not fallen for a considerable time, began to descend and

6 Any large city: Egypt, and its capital.
7 Some copies of the original mention "his twentieth year," but I prefer the other reading.
8 Other writers state, that ʿAlī succeeded his father in the government of Khurāsān, and that he was killed in battle fighting against the Khārījīs, in the vicinity of Nishāpūr; and, that ʿAbd-ullah was at Abīward when he received the intelligence of his brother's death.
9 Tabarī makes no mention of ʿAbd-ullah, son of ʿTāhir, as having been employed against Bābak, but says that Isḥāk, son of Ibrāhīm, son of Muṣab—who would be thus cousin of ʿAbd-ullah's father—was. That author states, that ʿAbd-ullah seized Bābak's brother in Khurāsān, and, that he sent that heretic to Isḥāk, at Bagdād, to be dealt with as Bābak had already been.
to refresh the parched ground on the very same day, and
the people took it as a good omen. He founded palaces
for himself, and his followers and dependents, at Shād-
yākh¹ of Nīshāpur. He suppressed the Khārijīs, and
punished them with severity; and ruled with the utmost
equity and justice, and introduced many good and wise
regulations.

He was also a great patron of learning, and to such a
degree, that he requested the Imam 'Abd-ul-Ḳāsim², son
of Sallām, to write a commentary for him on the work entitled "Gharib-ul-Ḥadīs," and, in recompense for so
doing, sent him a present of 100,000 silver dirams, and a
valuable dress of honour.

The Lord of the Faithful, Al-Māmūn, had entrusted
'Abd-ullāh with the government of the whole of the
territory of 'Ajam³; and, when that Khālīfah died, his
successor, Al-Mutāṣim B'illah, confirmed him, as his father
had done before, in the government of the whole of the
territory of 'Ajam, which 'Abd-ullāh retained until the year
230 H., in the reign of Al-Wāṣik B'illah, when he died. He
had exercised sovereignty over the territories of 'Ajām for a
period of seventeen years; and, when he died, he had
attained the age of forty-eight, the same age as his father.
When his death drew near, he nominated his son Tāhir as
his successor over Khūrāsān⁴.

IV. TĀHIR, SON OF 'ABD-ULLAH.

When the account of the decease of 'Abd-ullāh reached
the Khālīfah, Al-Wāṣik, he despatched, from the Dār-ul-
Khilāfat of Baghdād, letters patent and a standard, con-
firming him as his father's successor.

His brothers⁵ solicited from Tāhir the grant of the pro-

¹ In the Persian translation of the Arabic work entitled Aṣār-ul-Bilād, by
Muḥammad Murād, son of 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān, Shād-yākh is described as "a
city of Khūrāsān near unto Nīshāpur;" but it appears to have been a fortified
suburb, where the royal palace, arsenal, and gardens were situated. The
Ḥabīb-us-Siyar states that the capital of the Tāhirīs was called Kar-shākh.
² Some copies have Abīl-Ḳāsim. ³ 'Ajam—countries not Arabian: Persia.
⁴ 'Abd-ullāh, son of Tāhir, had a son called 'Abd-ullāh, who was born
223 H.; and another son, Muḥammad, who was his father's deputy at Baghdād,
died in 226 H.
⁵ In all the copies of the original the word brothers is used, but only one
brother is mentioned afterwards.
vance of Khurāsān, and its government; and he bestowed on his brother, Amir Muṣ'ab, the government of Nishāpur. The Khalifah, Al-Wāṣīk, died in the month Zūl-Hijjah, 232 H., and Al-Mutawakkil assumed the Khilāfāt.

He confirmed Tāhir in the government of 'Ajam. After a period of fourteen years and nine months, at which time the Khalifah, Al-Mutawakkil, was martyred by the Turks, he was succeeded by Al-Mustansīr.

Six months subsequently to that event, in the year 248 H., Al-Musta'īn succeeded him. He sent letters patent and a standard, and confirmed Tāhir, son of 'Abd-ullah, in his government, as before; and, in that same year, Amir Tāhir died, having previously nominated his son Muḥammad as his successor over Khurāsān.

V. MUḤAMMAD, SON OF TĀHIR.

Amir Muḥammad-i-Tāhir was endowed with good breeding, the gift of poetry, and many other accomplishments; but was greatly addicted to pleasure and amusement.

He had entrusted the government of Tabaristān to his uncle Sulīmān, son of 'Abd-ullah-i-Tāhir; but, in 251 H., Amir Ḥasan, son of Zaid-ul-'Alawi, broke out into rebellion in that country. He was a Sayyid, and a well-bred and learned person, and a poet. He subdued the territories of Dilam, and Gilān, which were in the possession of infidels; and the people of those parts were converted to the Muḥammadan faith by him. From thence he entered Tabaristān with a large army; and Sulīmān, son of 'Abd-ullah-i-Tāhir, uncle of Amir Muḥammad, was defeated by him, and retreated

6 In 231 H., Ḥasan, son of Al-Ḥusain, brother of Tāhir-i-Zūl-Yamanain, died in Tabaristān; and, in 235 H., Is-bāk, son of Ibrāhīm, son of Zūl-Yamanain's brother, Ḥasan, died at Baghdad. He had held the Sharṭ, or district of Baghdad, under three Khalīfahs.

7 Middle of the month of Shawwāl, 247 H.

8 According to our author, in his account of the Khalīfahs, on the 4th of Rābi'-ul-Awwal, 248 H.

9 Succession to the government of Khurāsān seems to have been considered hereditary, but to that of 'Ajam, at the pleasure of the Khalīfah.

1 His name is given differently by Ḥamd-ullah-i-Mustaṭfī in his history. He styles him Muḥammad, son of Aḥmad, son of Tāhir, son of 'Abd-ullah, son of Tāhir-i-Zūl-Yamanain. In the Mujmal-i-Fāṣīḥ-I he is called Muḥammad, son of Tāhir-i-Zūl-Yamanain.
to Rai, and subsequently retired to Baghdad. On his arrival at the latter place, he was made Kā'īd [governor] of the district of Baghdad.

At this period, Ya'qūb, son of Lāis, had risen in rebellion in Sistān, and had subdued some portion of Jarūm, and of Zāwulistān, and had acquired considerable power in Khurāsān. In 259 H., Ya'qūb determined to attack Amir Muḥammad. The reason of this was, that his enemies, Aḥmad and Fazl, the brothers of 'Abd-ullāh-i-Ṣāliḥ, Sijizī, had fled from the territory of Nim-roz, and had sought the protection of Muḥammad, son of Tāhir. Ya'qūb continued repeatedly to demand them at the hands of Amir Muḥammad-i-Tāhir, but he had always refused to give them up. On this Ya'qūb determined to march against Nīshāpūr; and, when he had arrived within a short distance of it, Aḥmad and Fazl came to the entrance of the palace, where Amir Muḥammad was at the time, to acquaint him with the news of Ya'qūb's approach. The Ḥājib [chamberlain] of the Amir told them that his master was asleep, and that he had no leisure to receive them. They observed to each other that it was necessary that some one should awaken the Amir; and, thus saying, they retired and went to their brother 'Abd-ullāh-i-Ṣāliḥ, Sijizī, and told him what had occurred. He was well aware that Amir Muḥammad was entirely sunk in carelessness, and that his dynasty was near its fall; so he retired to Rai, and sent his brothers, Aḥmad and Fazl, to the Wāli [governor] of Rai, but went himself into Tabaristān to Amir Ḥasan, son of Zaid-ul-'Alawi.

When Ya'qūb, son of Lāis, reached a place called Farhādgurd, a short distance from Nīshāpūr, Amir Muḥammad despatched an agent to Ya'qūb, named Ibrāhīm-i-Ṣāliḥ,

---

2 Re is not the correct pronunciation for the name of this city, but Rai. It is written thus in the original Persian—ъ.
3 Jarūm is described as being the district of Garmsīr, which latter word is written in various ways by those who fancy that Oriental proper names, as well as other words, may be written according to their fancy, such as Gurmshehl, Gurmseer, and the like.
4 The capital of Khurāsān. As stated, previously, the Tāhirī rulers held their court at Shād-yākh, a short distance from that city.
5 The name of this place is not quite certain: it is written—امربا کرد فرمادکرد and even آمربا کرد in the different copies of the MSS. collated. The above name is the most probable one.
Marwazī [or native of Marw], with a message demanding whither he was going without the command of the Lord of the Faithful, and that, in case he had a commission, he should show it, in order that he, Muḥammad, might obey it, and observe its provisions. When the agent reached Yaʿḳūb's presence, and delivered his message, Yaʿḳūb put his hand under his prayer-carpet and drew forth his sword, and, placing it before the envoy, said: "This is my pass and authority."

When the envoy, Ibrāhīm-i-Ṣāliḥ, returned with this reply, all the people of Nishāpūr entered into communication with Yaʿḳūb; and they delivered Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir into his hands, and the dynasty of the Ṭāhirīs came to an end⁴. This event happened on Sunday, the 3rd of the month of Shawwāl, 259 H. Respecting the generosity and munificence of Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir, one of the learned, whose statement may be depended on, relates the following

ANECDOTE.

There was a person dwelling at Nishāpūr, one of the most excellent men of his day, named Maḥmūd-i-Warrāk⁷. He possessed a female slave, who played exceedingly well upon the barbat—a kind of lute—and of such grace and beauty as cannot be described.

The fame of the loveliness of this slave-girl, and of her amiability and accomplishments, having reached the ear of Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir, to the effect that she improvised ghāzals, or odes, sang them, and accompanied them on the barbat, the heart of Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir desired, beyond measure, to obtain possession of her. He had repeatedly asked Maḥmūd-i-Warrāk to part with her, and had offered to give a very high price for her; but all his offers were rejected, and he could not obtain possession of her, for her master himself was deeply enamoured of his beautiful slave, Rātibah, as she was named.

After some time had elapsed, however, and Maḥmūd-i-Warrāk had expended all his property and possessions in pleasure and expense on her account, and nothing remained to him, he despatched a person with a message to the

⁴ These events are fully detailed in the Jāmiʿ-ut-Tawārīkh, and several other histories. See note 7, page 22.
⁷ Warrāk means a writer, a cutter and folder of paper, also a monied man.
presence of Muhammad-i-Tahir soliciting that the Amir would honour him with a visit, in order that he might dispose of his beautiful slave to him.

When Muhammad-i-Tahir received this message he was delighted beyond measure, and directed that four badrahs* of silver should be brought and handed over to the domestic who brought the message, while the Amir arose, and proceeded, by way of his own private residence to that of Mahmūd-i-Warrāk. When the Amir had sat down, and the silver was placed before the eyes of Mahmūd-i-Warrāk, he, seeing the state of affairs, went out, and directed Rātibah, saying: “Don your best apparel, Rātibah, and prepare to present yourself before the Amir, as I am going to sell you to him.” When the slave-girl heard these words she burst into a flood of tears, and, such was the paroxysm of her grief, that the sounds reached the ears of the Amir, who was in another apartment. He heard Mahmūd say to her: “Wherefore all this grief and lamentation, O Rātibah?” to which she replied: “O my master! is this the end of our connexion, that at last you separate me from you?” Mahmūd replied: “All this I do out of love and affection for you, now that I possess nothing, and am a beggar; and, that you may continue to live in ease and affluence for the rest of your life, I send you to the haram of the Amir.” Rātibah replied: “If you merely act thus on my account, refrain from doing so, for I undertake to work for the rest of my days, and, by industry befitting a woman, by weaving coifs and mantles, earn sufficient means for your subsistence and my own, but do not separate me from you.” Mahmūd-i-Warrāk rejoined: “If such be the case, O Rātibah, I now pronounce you free, and fix your dowry at nineteen dinārs and a half, and make you my wife.”

Muhammad-i-Tahir, hearing this loving and affectionate dialogue between Mahmūd-i-Warrāk and his slave, arose, and, gathering his garments about him, said to Mahmūd: “The whole of the four badrahs of silver are thine; I make thee a present of it: pass the rest of thy life in ease and affluence!” Thus saying, he went his way; and the fame of his generosity still remains.

---

* A weight equal to 10,000 dirams, also a bag made of leather or lamb’s-skin.
SECTION VIII.

THE ŞÜFFARIÜN DYNASTY.

The author, Minhaj-i-Saraj Jūrjāni, makes a short extract from the Tārīkh or chronicle of Ibn Haişam-i-Sāni, respecting the dynasty of the Şuffāriūn. That chronicler and annalist relates, that Ya'kūb-i-Laīš, and 'Umrū, 'Alī, and Mu'addil-i-Laīš, were four brothers, sons of Laīš, the Şuffār or worker in brass, who was head of the braziers of Sijistān¹. [At this time] Ibrāhīm, son of Al-Ḥusain⁴, was the Wāli [governor] of Sijistān on the part of Muḥammad, son of Tāhir, the last of the Tāhirūs, who was the Amir of Khurāsān. This Ibrāhīm had appointed a deputy or lieutenant of his own to govern in Sijistān in his name, who was called Şāliḥ, son of Un-Nāṣr. This Laīš the brazier was a restless and refractory fellow, and had a great number of assistants, servants, and followers.

¹ Other historians greatly differ here, as to the origin and rise of the Şuffāriūn. One says that Laīš, the brazier, was in the service of Şāliḥ, son of Naṣr, Kanānī; and another, quoting the History of Khurāsān of Moulanā Muʿīn-ud-Dīn, Sabzwārī, states, that the latter author had traced the descent of this family to Nūshīrwān the Just, the celebrated ruler of Irān. Again, another author states, that Ya'kūb, son of Laīš, after the death of Darhīm [sic], son of Un-Nāṣr, revolted against his sons Şāliḥ and Naṣr, in 237 H., and managed to gain possession of some portion of the territory of Sijistān. His affairs prospered, and, the principal men among the partisans of Darhīm's family having combined with him from time to time, in 253 H., he acquired the whole of Sijistān. Darhīm's sons fled to the king of Kābul.

² In three copies of the MSS. compared, and also in the Tārīkh-i-Fanākātī, this name is written “Hašīn,” [७] which signifies a fortification. A few words, respecting the Tārīkh-i-Fanākātī, may not be amiss here. Abū Sulṭān-i-Dāʿūd, the author of that work, surnamed Fakhr-ud-dīn, was a native of Fanākāt—also written Banākāt, according to the rule by which 'Arabs change Persian / into b—in Māwar-un-Nahr; hence he is known as Al-Fanākātī, and Al-Banākātī, and his work as the Tārīkh-i-Fanākātī or Banākātī; but not by the absurd name that some persons have bestowed upon it, apparently through ignorance of the existence of this place, such as “Bīnā-Getī,” and “Bīna-i-Getī.” They probably supposed the meaning to be a “History of the Foundation of the World,” which Bīnā-i-Getī would signify.
The author of these pages, in the year 613 H., arrived in Sijistân, during the rule of the Malik of Nimroz, Shâh-i-Ghâzî, Yamin-ud-din, Bahrám Shâh, son of Malik-i-Kabîr, Tâj-ud-din, Harab, son of I'zz-ul-Mulûk, Muḥammad. There I noticed a place, on the south of the city of Sijistân, which they call by the name of Dar-i-Ṭâ'âm, outside the city, at a spot called Reg-i-Gunjân. In the vicinity of this latter place, on a height or rising ground, there is a palace in ruins; and a number of trustworthy persons informed me, that Ya'küb, son of Laiš, and his brothers, with their dependents and servants, were in the habit of coming thither one day in each week, as is the custom among young men, to divert themselves by sports and fun.

They used on these occasions to choose an Amir, or king of the sports, and a Wazîr, or minister. One day, according to their usual custom, they had come to the wonted place of meeting, and Ya'küb had been chosen Amir for the day's sports; and, to each and every one of his brothers, his kinsmen, and dependents, he had assigned

3 "There I noticed a place," &c. This sudden change to the first person is found in the original, and is not unusual in Oriental works. The whole of the MSS. compared here appear hopelessly corrupt, the place to the south of Sijistân having, apparently, two names, and yet either of them is named, as though it were a principal distinguishing designation. But, as the Bodleian and some other MSS. omit the relative in the last clause, it has been adopted in the text of the translation. Since the above has been in type I find, from "Maşâlik wa Mamâlik"—the original MS., not a translation—that Dar-i-Ṭâ'âm was the name of one of the thirteen gates of the suburbs of the then extensive city of Zaranj, the capital of Sijistân, founded after the city of Râm Shahr became uninhabitable. The city was surrounded by a high wall and a ditch, and had five gates, which were of iron. The walls of the suburbs were probably not so strong, and the gates seem to have been of wood. The author says: "The palace of Ya'küb, son of Laiš, is situated between the gates called Dar-i-Ṭâ'âm, and Darwâzah-i-Bârs [Fârs]; and the palace of 'Umro, son of Laiš, is the residence of the ruler." The copy of the above work which I have used is, from the style of writing, very ancient; and, from various events mentioned in it, appears to have been compiled previous to the time of Mahmûd of Ghaznîn. I have translated a considerable portion of it. Our author's journey to Sijistân took place some centuries after this work was written, at which period, from his remarks, the extensive suburbs had almost disappeared, and the names only of some of the gates appear to have survived. From the mention of the Reg [sand] of Gunjân, the suburbs had evidently been partially, if not altogether, buried in the sands, which, in after-times, reduced a once well-cultivated tract into a desert. See Section XIV. on the Kings of Nimroz and Sijistân.
the name of some one of the nobles and grandees of the country. Unexpectedly, the deputy of the Amir of Sijistan, Šāliḥ, son of Naṣr, himself, on his return home from the chase, arrived at this place, attended by his usual small suite. Perceiving this assemblage of people collected on the mound in question, he directed one of his attendants to go and make inquiry who they were.

When the man sent reached the party, and noticed what was going on, he was much astonished; and, a bevy of youths having come forward to receive him, the messenger was forced to dismount from his horse, because it was necessary to present himself before the Amir of the sports on foot. The servant of Šāliḥ, accordingly, was under the necessity of complying; and he made his obeisance, and returned, and related to his master, Šāliḥ, son of Naṣr, what had passed and what he had seen.

Šāliḥ, whose disposition was inclined to pleasantry, said, "We will go and see what this party of youths are about," and rode up and came to the spot where they were. Ya'kūb-i-Laīš never moved from his seat, and he directed, that Amir Šāliḥ should be brought forward to pay his obeisance. The youths, as commanded, advanced to meet him, and they made Šāliḥ dismount from his horse, and compelled him to make his obeisance to Ya'kūb.

As the day of his fortune and the period of his age had reached the evening of their termination, and the morning of the prosperity of the Suffārīn had dawned, Ya'kūb made a sign to the effect that it was necessary to put an end to Amir Šāliḥ's career, and forthwith they put him to death. Ya'kūb, without delay, mounted a horse, and the party with him armed themselves, and, with the utmost expedition, they set out for the city, and proceeded to the palace of the ruler, and there Ya'kūb took up his quarters.

This event took place at the time of early forenoon, and by the time of meridian prayer the territory of Sijistan was in the hands of Ya'kūb-i-Laīš, and all the people submitted to his rule, like as if the Almighty God had pre-ordained that he should follow his own way. Ya'kūb directed that the Khutbah should be read for him; and these events, and this success, took place in the year 251 H.

After this, Ya'kūb led an army towards Bust and Zāwulistān, and the territory of Dāwar [Zamīn-i-Dāwar]
and Ghaznin, and subdued the whole of them. From thence he advanced into Tukhāristān4 and Balkh, and subdued them; and then returned and marched towards Kābul5. This success took place in 256 H., and, subsequently, he returned to Sijistān, and afterwards advanced to Hirāt, which, after much fighting, he gained possession of. After this he took Bādgāhais, Būshanj [or Fūshanj], Jām, and Bākhrurz, and returned to Sijistān again.

After a short time Ya'kūb again put his forces in motion, and marched against Nīshāpur, which he gained possession of without opposition in 259 H., and, subsequently, he returned to Sijistān, and afterwards advanced to Gurgān and Tābāristān, and, after having extorted tribute, again retired. He made his brother, U'mro-i-Laīš, Wālī [governor] of Hirāt: and, in 261 H., a person—one of the Amirs of Muḥammad-i-Tāhir—revolted, and set Muḥammad-i-Tāhir at liberty7, who retired to the Court of the Khalīfah, Al-Wāṣīk B'illah. Ya'kūb-i-Laīš again marched an army into Irāk, and, on his return from thence, he reached a place which was called Khandah-i-Shāpūr8, and there he departed this life, in the year 265 H., of colic, after a reign of fourteen years.

4 The ancient name of one of the districts of the territory of Balkh, and of which Tāe-kān—Tāl-kan by moderns, but not correct, I think—is the largest town, the authority of "Hwen [Houen?] Thsang," and its extent of "ten day's journey by thirty days," and "twenty-seven states," notwithstanding. See J. Ro. As. Soc., vol. vi. p. 94.

5 As stated in a former note, the sons of Darhim, Naṣr and Sāliḥ, had fled to Kābul, and had sought shelter with the "Shāh," as he is styled, of that territory, whose name was Rātbel or Rantbel; but this seems to have been a surname merely, for the opponent of the first Mussalmāns bore this very title.

6 The name here is not correct: the last of the Tāhirīs is Muḥammad, son of Tāhir, son of 'Abd-ullāh, son of Tāhir-i-Zūl-Yamānain. See page 15.

7 The author says not one word respecting Ya'kūb's overthrow near Hulwān by Muwaffāk, the brother of the Khalīfah Mu'tamīd, in 262 H. On that occasion the baggage and effects of Ya'kūb fell into the hands of the victors, on which occasion were the chests containing his treasures, clothes, &c. On opening one of the chests, they found reclining therein the Amīr Muḥammad, son of Ut-Tāhir, whom Ya'kūb had made captive, when he gained possession of Nīshāpur, and overthrew the Tāhirī dynasty. Muwaffāk set him at liberty, and sent him to Baghdad. He died there in 266 H., and, at that time, with him, other authors consider the Tāhirī dynasty to have ended.

8 The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh calls this place by the name of "Jand-i-Shāpūr, a town of Ahwāz," and states that the date of his death was the 14th of Shawwāl, 265 H. It is also called "Jande-Shāpūr." Ya'kūb was buried there.
When Ya'qūb-i-Lais was removed from this transitory life, his brother, 'Umro, Suffārī, sent a written petition to the Lord of the Faithful, the Khalifah, Al-Muwaffik B'llah, tendering his obedience and submission, and soliciting that he should be confirmed in the possession of the greater part of Fārs, Gurgān, Sijistān, and Khurāsān. His request was acceded to by the Khalifah, and 'Umro retired from the mountain tracts of Irāk with his own forces and those of his brother, and returned towards Sijistān again. From thence he moved towards Hirāt, and arrived there in the year 266 H. From Hirāt he marched to Nishāpūr; and Khujistān, who was one of the Amirs of Muḥammad, son of Tāhir [the last of the Tāhirī dynasty], who had released his master from the hands of the Suffāris, and who was at this period in Gurgān, marched to Nishāpūr against 'Umro, and there he was joined by Rāfī, son of Harsamah, from Marw.

They fought a battle with 'Umro before the gate of Nishāpūr, and 'Umro was defeated and put to the rout. He retreated to Hirāt, and the Khalifah, Al-Mawaffik B'llah, deposed

There was no Khalifah of this name. The author must refer to the Khalifah Mu'tamid's brother, Muwaffik, who was made Wālī over the eastern parts of Islām, and declared heir, after the death of Mu'tamid's son Ja'far, but he did not succeed to the Khalifah. Mu'taqid, son of Muwaffik, who died before his brother, Mu'tamid, succeeded his father, Al-Muwaffik, in his capacity as ruler of the eastern parts of the Khalifah; and he conferred the investiture of Khurāsān, Fārs, Isfahān, Sijistān, Kirmān, and Sīnā, upon 'Umro in 265 H., after the death of Ya'qūb; and, in 266 H., 'Umro appointed 'Ubaid-ullah, the son of Tāhir, to the district of Baghdād, as his deputy. Mu'tamid was the Khalifah who excommunicated 'Umro, son of Laig, from the pulpit, at Baghdad, in 265 H. 'Umro had despatched an agent to offer his submission and obedience, which the Khalifah refused to accept, and he cursed him.

Under the events of the year 278 H., the Mujmal-i-Fasih-i also mentions, that 'Amīr Ismā'īl, Sāmānī, overcame 'Umro, son of Laig, the Suffār; and, under the events of the following year, 279 H., I find the Khalifah, Al-Mu'taqid, presenting a standard to 'Umro, with the government of Khurāsān, at 'Umro's request, and that 'Umro hoisted the standard over his Sarāe or palace, and kept it flying there for three days. The Khalifah also conferred upon 'Umro's envoy, who brought the request for a standard, a dress of honour, and a present." Our author sadly confounds the dates of events, and jumbles them into a very short space.

This is an error, although seven copies of the text give the same name. Other authors state, that Ya'qūb was defeated by Aḥmad, son of 'Abd-ullah, Khujistānī, i.e. a native of Khujistān, which, the author of the Mujmal-i-Fasih-i says, is a dependency of Badghais, in the highlands of Hirāt.

See preceding note, on this subject.
'Umro-i-Lais from the government of Khurāsān in the year 271 H., and the whole of the territories and places which had been annexed by him were given [back] to Muḥammad, son of Ṭāhir, son of 'Abd-ullāh.

Muḥammad was, at that time, at the Dār-ul-Khilāfat of Bahgādād, and Rāfī', son of Harṣamah, was directed to act as his deputy and lieutenant in the government of Khurāsān. The government of Māwar-un-Nahr — the territory trans Jihūn—was conferred upon Ahmad, Sāmānī, as the deputy likewise of Muḥammad, son of Ṭāhir. Between 'Umro-i-Lais and Rāfī', son of Harṣamah, many battles and conflicts took place up to the period that Rāfī'-i-Harṣamah himself rebelled against the authority of the Khalīfah.

In the year 284 H., in an encounter which took place between him and 'Umro-i-Lais, Rāfī' was slain. 'Umro sent the head of Rāfī' to the Court of Bahgādād, at which time the masnad [throne] of the Khilāfat had devolved upon Al-Mu'taṣīd B'illah, and 'Umro-i-Lais made a request to him that the government of Māwar-un-Nahr, Khurāsān, Nim-raz, Fārs, Kirmān, and Ahwāz, together with the Naḵābat, or guardianship of the entrance to the palace of the Khalīfah, and of the district of Bahgādād, should be made over to him. More than this, he solicited that the name 'Umro should be inscribed on the canopies which every chief had in his residence [which would signify that he was above them all], and that his name should be mentioned in the Khūṭbah, and on the coins of Makkah and Madīnah and of Hijāz. All his demands were acceded to by the Khalīfah's Court, and were duly carried out, and numerous dresses of honour, and countless marks of favour and distinction, were conferred upon him.

The letters patent, acceding to his demands, having reached 'Umro from his Majesty the Khalīfah, he made

---

3 Other authors state that Rāfī' was taken prisoner by 'Umro, and sent to Bahgādād, where he died in confinement, which former proceeding so pleased the Khalīfah that he restored 'Umro to the government of Khurāsān, Māwar-un-Nahr, Kirmān, &c., again. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, and Tārīkh-i-Guzīdah, however, state that Rāfī' sought shelter with the ruler of Khwārazm, who put him to death, and sent his head to 'Umro. The latter's report to the Khalīfah, in the Mujmal-i-Fāṣīḥ-ī, confirms this.

4 Sijistān.

5 Naḵābat, the office of a Naḵib, a leader, &c.

6 The word is rather doubtful—سرہندی One MS. has سرہندی another سرہندی
preparation for proceeding and taking possession of Māwar-un-Nahr; and Muḥammad Bashīr, who was his Ḥājib [chamberlain], was despatched with a force from 'Umro's army in advance.

Amīr Ismā‘īl-i-Aḥmad, Sāmānī, marched from Bukhārā towards Khurāsān, crossed the river Jiḥūn, and defeated the [advanced] force of 'Umro under Muḥammad Bashīr, who was slain in the engagement, together with a great number of his troops. Upon this 'Umro-i-Lais proceeded towards Māwar-un-Nahr with a numerous army, for it included 70,000 horsemen armed with spears, besides other troops. Amīr Ismā‘īl-i-Aḥmad crossed the Jiḥūn, and fought a battle with 'Umro-i-Lais before the walls of Balkh, defeated him, and took him prisoner, and sent him to the court of Baghdaḏ, and then Ismā‘īl returned to Bukhārā. In the year 288 H., the Khalifah, Al-Muṭaẓīḍ, directed that 'Umro should be cast into prison, and in it he died; and the dynasty of the Ṣuffārīūn terminated.

7 Ismā‘īl's army is said to have consisted of 12,000 horse, but the accounts of other writers differ considerably in their statements from this one.

8 The Oxus, also called Bakhtrus, and Amūfah.

9 According to the author's own statement above, Ismā‘īl with his army was already across.

1 See note 4, page 31, for a full account of 'Umro's fate.

2 The Tarīḵ-i-Ibrahīmī, and others, state, that after the downfall of 'Umro his descendants contented themselves with the sovereignty of Sijistan, subject, however, to the Sāmāns. This is also proved from the subsequent accounts given by our author himself. When the people of Sijistan became aware of 'Umro's capture they set up Ṭābir, who, according to the Tarīḵ-i-Guzīḏah, Niẓām-ut-Tawārīḵ, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīḵ, and other works, was not 'Umro's brother, but his grandson, Ṭābir, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Umro. Ismā‘īl, Sāmānī, overcame him; but after a time conferred the government of Sijistan upon Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, Ṭābir's son. His descendants continued to possess it until the year 643 H. 'Umro, son of Lais, founded the 'Atīk Masjid at Shīrāz.
SECTION IX.

THE DYNASTY OF THE SĀMĀNĪS.

The humblest of the servants of the Almighty, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī, states that, after the mention of the Maliks of Yaman, and the Şūfārīn Amīrs, he has considered it preferable to insert here the section in which it is proposed to give an account of the race of Sāmān, and the Maliks of that dynasty, and therefore this portion of the work was made, in its arrangements, antecedent to that treating of the genealogy of the Mahmūdī, and Nāṣīrī Maliks. Although the history of the Maliks of Yaman ought, properly, to have been first in the arrangement of the book, still, as they were not among the number of Maliks of Islām, he did not consider it right to place them before the Khalīfahs, and therefore they have received this much precedence.

This section has been taken from the Tārikh or Chronicle of Ibn Haiṣam, in order that those under whose inspection it falls may place perfect confidence in its correctness.

The chronicler relates that the ancestor of the Sāmānīs was named Sāmān; but, according to some others, his name was different from this; and, moreover, that Sāmān is the name of one of the districts of the Sughd of Samrānd, and that the ancestor of the Sāmānīs was the Raʾīs [chief] of that place, and that he used to be styled Sāmān-i-Khaddāt; but, for sake of brevity, the name of Sāmān was

1. The Ghaznawī dynasty, and the Turkish Slave dynasty (not Patīns), of which Nāṣīr-ud-dīn, the ruler of Dihlī, to whom the author dedicated his work, was one.
2. These remarks would have been better prefixed to the notice of the kings of Yaman, or the Tāhirīs, and are rather out of place here.
3. The Tārikh-i-Jahān-Arā states that he was chiefly known by the name of Sāmān-i-Khadāh, which signifies the master or possessor of sāmān or effects, chattels, &c. Sāmān likewise, quoting the “Muajjam-ul-Baladān,” is the name of a village of Māwar-un-Nahr, but others consider it to be the name of a place in the territory of Balkh. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh also agrees with this statement.
adopted, and it became the name by which he was generally known. He was of the posterity of Bahrām Shūbin⁴.

This Sāmān-i-Khaddāt had a son who was named Asad, who had four sons—named, respectively, Nūḥ, Yaḥyā, Ilyās, and Aḥmad. They became Princes and Lords of great dignity and power, able, and experienced, and endowed with considerable promptness and vigour. At length, when their family had attained the pinnacle of greatness and power, Alb-Tigin⁵, the Amir of Ghaznin, and Sabuk-Tigin, were amongst the slaves and servants of their descendants. All the Sāmānis left numerous proofs of their goodness in Khurasān and Māwar-un-Nahr; and may the Almighty reward them by bestowing upon them exalted stations in the courts of Paradise.

ASAD, SON OF SĀMĀN-I-KHĀDDĀT.

He had four sons, Yaḥyā, who held the territory of Shāsh and Isfanjāb, and their dependencies; Ilyās, who held the government of the province of Hirāt and parts adjacent; Aḥmad, the third son, who held Samrḵand and Farghānāh, and their dependencies; and Nūḥ, the fourth, who at first held the government of Samrḵand, which, however, was subsequently conferred upon Aḥmad.

The Lord of the Faithful, Māmūn, when he came to Marw, remarked the talents and capabilities, bravery, and innate nobility of mind of the sons of Asad, son of Sāmān, and he treated them with great distinction, and conferred great favours upon them, and raised them to high rank and position.

When the Khalifah, Māmūn, returned to Baghdād, his capital, he directed Ghassān⁶, the son of 'Ubbād, to

---

⁴ The noble, who, in the reign of Hurmuz, son of Nūshirwān, overthrew the son of the Khākān of Turkistan, with an immense army, before the walls of Balkh, but was insulted by Hurmuz, and he rebelled and dethroned him, and set up another in his stead. The word is sometimes written Chūbin, sometimes Shūbin.

⁵ See note ², page 37.

⁶ In the year 204 H., Ghassān, son of 'Ubbād, was appointed to the government of Khurāsān. He conferred Samrḵand upon Nūḥ, son of Asad, Sāmānī. Aḥmad, Ilyās, and Yaḥyā, the other sons of Asad, received, respectively, the investiture of Farghānāh, Shāsh, Isrūghtah, or Sfrūghtah, and Hirāt. Soon after, Tāhir i-Zūl-Yamanain became Wāli of Khurāsān, Nūḥ died, and the former bestowed the territory held by Nūḥ on his brothers, Yaḥyā and Aḥmad. When Ilyās, another brother, died, Tāhir gave his territory of Hirāt to his own son, 'Abd-ullah. After this the family of the Sāmānis rose to great power in Khurāsān and Māwar-un-Nahr. See note ¹, page 11; note ⁴, page 28.
assume the government of Khurāsān, and added thereunto the whole of it as far as Māwar-un-Nahr. Ghassān, son of 'Ubbād, made each of the sons of Asad the Amir [ruler] of a territory, and conferred certain cities upon them, as the table given at the end of this Section shows. These governments were first conferred upon them in the year 204 H.; and, when his Majesty, the Khalifah, nominated Amir Ṭāhir-i-Ẓūl-Yamanain, son of Al-Ḥusain, to the government of Khurāsān, the whole four Sāmānī Amirs, who [as already stated] were four brothers, were confirmed by him in the territories and cities they were then holding.

When the sovereignty passed from Amir Ṭāhir to his son, 'Abd-ullah-i-Ṭāhir', he confirmed the Sāmānis in their governments as his father had done, and made no change with respect to them.

I. AḤMAD, SON OF ASAD, SON OF SĀMĀN.

Each of the sons of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt rose to great rank and power, and they each held a tract of territory in Māwar-un-Nahr, Farghānah, or Khurāsān, as will be mentioned in the succeeding pages.

Nūḥ, son of Asad, who was a person of excellent qualities and disposition, and of great energy and high courage, was invested with the government of the territory of Samrḵand. Yahyā, another son, held the territory of Shāsh, and Isfānjāb, and their dependencies. He was a man of undaunted spirit and energy, and possessed great talent for government, and left many proofs of his goodness in those parts. Ilyās held the government of the province of Hirāt and its dependencies, and the parts adjacent. He also was a person of energy and great experience; but Aḥmad was the greatest, the most intrepid, energetic, and sagacious of

7 It passed to his son, Talḥah, first, and afterwards to 'Abd-ullah, and also by the author's own account.

8 Shāsh is the name of a territory, river, and city of Māwar-un-Nahr, on the Sḥūn or Jaxartes, on the frontier of the Turks. It was also called Fanākāt, and is now known as Tāškand. According to the Asār-ul-Bilād, and Masālik wa Mamalik, it was also called Chāj and Jáj. Ibn Ḥaukal [the translation] first states that Sekeṭ is the capital, and immediately after says Chāj is. Its inhabitants were Musalmāns of the tribes of Ghuzz and Khalj. Isfānjāb, also written Sfānjāb, is a town or city of Māwar-un-Nahr, towards Turkistān. These names are generally carelessly written in the various copies of the text.
the whole of the brothers, and held charge of the territory of Samarkand.

Nūḥ, at first, was placed in charge of the affairs of Farghānah, but, subsequently, it came into the hands of Aḥmad, with the whole of Kāshgar, and Turkistān, to the frontier of Chin. He was renowned for his courage, and valour, and experience, which were celebrated throughout Irān and Tūrān; and his descendants, one after the other, occupied the throne, and governed God's people liberally and beneficently. Of those of his descendants who attained to sovereignty, one of the learned men has spoken, in verse, in the following quatrain:

"Nine persons there were of the race of Sāmān, renowned,  
Who as rulers became famous in Khurāsān,  
A Ismā'īl, a Aḥmad, and a Naṣr,  
Two Nūḥa, two 'Abd-ul-Maliks, two Manṣūrs."

Amir Aḥmad had nine sons: Naṣr, Ismā'īl, Is-hāk, Manṣūr, Asad, Ya'kūb, Ḥamid, Yaḥyā, and Ibrāhīm. The mention of their descent was found, as has been entered herein—Sāmān, son of Jashmān, son of Tamghān, son of Noshār, son of Noshed, son of Bahrām, son of Shūbin [Chūbin].

II. Naṣr, Son of Aḥmad, Sāmānī.

When Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān, died at Samarkand, he nominated his son, Naṣr, as his successor; and, during the sway of the Tāhirīs, the territory, which Naṣr's father had held, was confirmed to him, and his brother Ismā'īl served under him, and acknowledged in him, as his suzerain, his superiority.

In 261 H. Naṣr conferred the government of the territory of Bukhārā upon Ismā'īl, who established himself therein. Naṣr performed great deeds, and was endowed with many virtues. He governed with strict regard to the rules of equity and justice until the end of his days, when death overtook him in the month of Jamādī-ul-Akhrīr, in the year 279 H.¹

¹ The Tārīkh-i-Guzīdah and others state, that, after the death of Ahmad in 261 H., the Khalifah, Al-Mu'tamid B'illah, placed the whole of those territories under the government of one person—Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, the most upright and best prince of the Sāmānī dynasty.
² According to the I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and the R.A.S. MS., which
When his brother, Ismā'il, had become established in the government of the Bukhārā territory, several designing and evil-intentioned persons managed to come between him and his brother Naṣr, his sovereign, and began to resort to calumny and falsehood [to effect their designs], until the disposition of Naṣr became completely changed towards his brother, and he determined to reduce Ismā'il by force, and overthrow him entirely.

Amir Naṣr accordingly moved from Samrkand towards Bukhārā with a large army. Amir Ismā'il despatched a trusty agent to Rāfī', son of Harṣamah, son of A'yan, who was Amir of Khurāsān, and acquainted him with the state of affairs between himself and his brother, Amir Naṣr, and solicited assistance from that ruler.

Rāfī', son of Harṣamah assembled a warlike army, numerous and well-equipped in every way, and marched towards the scene of expected hostility; but he, out of benevolence, kindness, and humanity, interposed between the brothers, and brought about an accommodation between them, and retired into his own territory again.

Amir Naṣr returned to Samrkand, and Amir Ismā'il proceeded to Bukhārā. As soon as Naṣr heard of this, still nourishing that antagonism against his brother which had taken possession of his heart, he advanced towards Bukhārā with a warlike army. Ismā'il came out of the city to encounter him; and a fierce and obstinate battle took place between them, attended with great carnage, in the year 275 H. Ismā'il was victorious over his brother, whose forces were defeated and put to the rout, and Amir Naṣr was himself taken prisoner. He was taken to the presence of Ismā'il, who, seeing that he was being brought forward, immediately dismounted from his horse, and rendered homage to his captive brother, and kissed him on the breast, and paid him the utmost honour and respect. He then induced Amir Naṣr to return to Samrkand, and returned himself to Bukhārā, which he continued to retain as the lieutenant of his brother. Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, ruled for a period of eighteen years.

of course agrees, Naṣr assumed the government in 269 H., and reigned eighteen years. This is quite wrong. The correct date is 261 H., as in the other MSS., which date other histories confirm.

2 Subordinate to the Khaļifahs.
III. ISMA'IL, SON OF AḤMAD, SĀMĀNĪ.

On the death of Amīr Naṣr, the Khalīfah, Al-Mu'tāzīd B'ilah, conferred upon Amīr Ismā'īl the government of the territory of Māwar-un-Nahr, and also all the territory which his brother, Naṣr, had held, and sent him a commission and a standard. He became a great and powerful ruler, and the whole of those territories submitted to his sway; and all men, chiefs, and grandees, and the common people, became obedient to his authority.

He was a just man, and endowed with wisdom; and many great deeds were performed by him, for when 'Umrō, son of Laiṣ, determined to make war upon Ismā'īl, and set out with a vast army to attack him—according to the author of the Tārīkh of Ibn Haiṣam—on the day that 'Umrō, son of Laiṣ, set out to enter upon hostilities with Amīr Ismā'īl, he had seventy thousand horsemen armed with spears under his standard, without counting archers, swordsmen, and other armed men besides. Amīr Ismā'īl crossed the river Jīhūn, and encountered 'Umrō, son of Laiṣ, at Balkh; and the Almighty bestowed the victory upon Ismā'īl. The army of 'Umrō was defeated and put to the rout, and 'Umrō was himself taken prisoner. Ismā'īl sent his captive to the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mu'tazīd-B'ilah, to dispose of as he might deem fit.

Abū Sulmān-i-Dā'ūd, author of the Tārīkh-i-Fanākatf, considers Ismā'īl, Sāmānī, very properly, as the first of the dynasty who is entitled to be considered a sovereign prince. The Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī, Jahān-Ārā, and several other histories, also confirm it, as does Ibn-Haukal likewise. The Mujmah-i-Fasībī also agrees in this. Under the events of the year 287 H. it is stated, that from that year commenced the sovereignty of the Sāmānīān, who were nine persons, who reigned 103 years, 9 months, and 11 days; and, that Ismā'īl, Sāmānī, had risen, and had subdued, during that same year, Māwar-un-Nahr, Khurāsān, Fārs, Kirmān, 'Irāk, Sījistān, and some parts of Hindūstān. At this period, it must be remembered, the territory of Kabūl was considered a part of "Hind;" and this, doubtless, is what is referred to here. In the same year, the Khalīfah, Al-Mu'tāzīd B'ilah, sent Ismā'īl the investiture of Khurāsān, Tabaristān, and Jurjān, together with a rich dress of honour, and the sum of "ten times a thousand thousand dirams" [ten millions of dirams]; and the affairs of Ismā'īl began to prosper greatly.

In 280 H., Ismā'īl made an expedition into the territory of the Turks, and made holy war upon them. The chief town was taken, and booty and captives beyond compute carried off, together with their Malik [king] and his wife. Each horseman present on this expedition received a thousand dirams for his share of the booty.

Respecting the subsequent fate of 'Umrō, son of Laiṣ, it appears, on
The Khalifah bestowed a commission on Amir Isma'il, with the investiture of the territory of Khurasan, together with the whole of 'Ajam; and Amir Isma'il's power and grandeur increased accordingly.

Subsequently, the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mu'tazid, despatched a commission to him, with directions to free the countries of Tabaristan and Gurgan from the sway of Amir Muḥammad-i-Zaid-ul-'Alawi, who had possessed himself of them. Amir Isma'il appointed Aḥmad-i-Hārūn to the command of the van of his army, and sent him on in advance with that portion of his forces; and, between Amir Muḥammad-i-Zaid-ul-'Alawi and Amir Isma'il, very severe fighting took place, and the Amir Muḥammad-i-Zaid was slain. His son, Zaid, also, was taken prisoner and brought before Amir Isma'il, who sent him to Bukhārā, with orders that, on the way thither, due respect should be paid to him, and that he should be provided with suitable accommodation; and he treated him with such honour and attention as kindness and magnanimity could devise.

trustworthy authority, that Amir Isma'il sent 'Umro to Baghdad at his [‘Umro’s] own request. Arrived there, he was, by the Khalifah’s orders, paraded on a camel’s back through the streets of Baghdad, and afterwards thrown into prison. This was in 287 H. In the year 289 ‘Umro died in confinement. It is said that the Khalifah, Mu’tazid, whilst in his last struggles, expressed a desire that ‘Umro should be put to death; but, that he was entirely forgotten in his prison, and neither food nor drink was brought to him, and he died of starvation and thirst. Another account is, that Mu’tazid gave orders to Saft to put him to death, and that he delayed carrying the sentence into execution. When Al-Muktafi succeeded to the Khilafat, he inquired of Saft respecting ‘Umro, whether he was still alive. He replied that he was. Muktafi said: “I will act generously towards him; for, during the time of Mu’tazid, he continually sent me presents, and was always very attentive to me.” Kāsim, son of ‘Abd-ullah, however, feared ‘Umro; and, when he heard this speech of the Khalifah’s, he gave directions to put ‘Umro to death in his prison. More respecting the Suffarīs will be found at page 183. I hope, very shortly, however, to give a detailed account of the rise of the different Muḥammadan dynasties to the public.

6 In the Mir’āt-ul-‘Alam and other works, he is styled “Muḥammad, son of Zaid-ul-‘Alawi, who bore the surname of Ud-Դϊ淡定-ٰ-Hak.” In the Tāriḵ-i-Guzidah, he is styled “Al-Bākirī,” instead of ‘Alawi; but the meaning of these two titles is much the same. He was a descendant of the Khalifah, ‘Ali, and Bākīr was the surname of Abū Ja’far-i-Muḥammad, son of ‘Ali, son of Ḥusain, son of ‘Ali, the fourth Khalifah.

7 Muḥammad, son of Hārūn, seems to be the correct name of this officer. He had been deputy to Rāfī, and had entered the service of Amir Isma’il.
THE SĀMĀNĪ DYNASTY.

At this time, the Khalīfah Al-Mu'taṣīd B'illah died, and his son, Al-Muktafī B'illah, succeeded to the throne of the Khilāfat. He despatched a commission and a standard to Amīr Ismā'il, and conferred upon him the territories of 'Irāk, Rai, and Šafahān, and the provinces of Ṭabaristān, and Gurgān, the whole of which were incorporated with Khurāsān. Amīr Ismā'il gave the government of Rai to his nephew, named Abū Šalih, son of Manṣūr, son of Is-hāk, Sāmānī, and to his own son, Aḥmad by name, that of Gurgān.

On the night of Tuesday, the 14th of the month Ṣafar, in the year 295 H., he died, and his title became Amīr-i-Māzī, or the Past or Late Amīr. He had reigned for a period of eight years.

IV. ABŪ NAṢR-I-AḤMAD, SON OF ISMĀ'IL.

This ruler had four sons, named Naṣr, Manṣūr, Ibrāhīm, and Yaḥyā, whose surnames were, respectively, Abū Šalih, Abū Muḥammad, Abū Is-hāk, and Abū Zakriā.

Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad was a severe and energetic ruler, and put to death several of his slaves for some misconduct. The rest of the slaves, who were their comrades, sought opportunity to revenge them, and to assassinate Amīr Aḥmad; but he had a lion, which had been trained, and he was in the habit of securing the animal near his sleeping-apartment, in the night-time, in order that, through fear of this creature, no one should approach his place of repose. This animal used to keep guard over his master at night, until, on one occasion, when the Amīr had gone on a hunting excursion, and set out, on his return from thence, at an untimely hour. The halting-place was at a considerable distance, and he was unable to reach the station fixed upon, and had to stop at another place for the night. The slaves

---

8 Isfahān.
9 A son of Aḥmad is so named. See page 29.
1 Amīr Ismā'il made the celebrated Abū-l-Faṣl, Al-Bal'ami, his Wazīr. He continued to act in that office up to the time of Amīr Niḥ, son of Manṣūr, by whose command he translated the Tārīḵ-i-Ṭabarī from 'Arabic into Persian.
2 Computing from the commencement of his reign in 287 H.
3 Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad signifies Aḥmad, the father of Naṣr.
4 The word لُحُن is used both for lion and tiger.
now found the opportunity they had been seeking, and they assassinated Amīr Āḥmad. This event happened on the night of Thursday, the 23rd of the month Jamāḍī-ul-Ākhir, 301 H. They then took his body, and conveyed it to Bukhārā; and, after this occurrence, Amīr Āḥmad was designated the Amīr-i-Shalīd, or the Martyred Amīr.

In the outset of his career, after his father had departed this life, and an assemblage of the heads of the army, the grandees, and principal men of the country had pledged their allegiance to him, Abū Naṣr-i-Āḥmad, son of Ismāʿīl, he sent a distinguished person, as envoy to the Court of the Khalīfah, and from thence, the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Muktafi Bʾillah, sent him a commission and a standard; and his reign gave regularity and order to the affairs of the Empire. In Sījistān, however, Muʿaddil, son of ʿAlī, son of Lais, ʿṢuffārī, brother's son of Yaʿkūb and ʿUmro, had broken out into rebellion, and caused great disturbance and disorder. An army had been appointed to proceed into that quarter, and Muʿaddil had been reduced, and rendered powerless; and he was made captive, and put in durance.

The government of Sījistān was then conferred by Amīr Āḥmad upon his uncle's son7, in whom he placed confidence, Abū Ṣāliḥ-i-Manṣūr, son of Is-ḥāk, son of Āḥmad, Sāmānī. Subsequently the people of Sījistān revolted, and seized the person of Abū Ṣāliḥ, and confined him in the fortress of Ark, and gave their allegiance to ʿUmro, son of Yaʿkūb-

---

6 Tārīḥ-i-Guzdah, Khulāṣat-ul-Ākhbār, Mujmal-i-arrisī, and other works, say this event occurred 23rd Jamāḍī-ul-Ākhir, 300 H. Fāsiḥ-ī gives his reign as 5 years and 3 months.

7 Our author seems to have had a very imperfect and confused idea of the state of Sījistān at this period. He makes no mention of the doings of Sījizī, the slave—*the Sījizī [سابع], or Sījizī [سبابع] slave probably—of ʿUmro, son of Lais; his having, at last, taken to the fortress of Bam, in Kirmān, and his subsequent flight into the desert of Khūrāsān; nor of Tāḥīr and Yaʿkūb, ʿUmro's sons, nor of Lais, son of ʿAlī, of the same family, all three of whom were, at different times, taken captive and sent to Bağdād. In 297 H. Muḥammad, son of ʿAlī, brother of Yaʿkūb and ʿUmro, sons of Lais, ʿṢuffārī, was made prisoner along with Sījizī, by Amīr Āḥmad, Sāmānī, who subdued Sījistān. He sent them to Bağdād, at the Khalīfah's request. In 299 H., Lais, son of ʿAlī, died in Fārs; and Muʿaddil, his son, died the same year.

8 The same Abū-Ṣāliḥ, who was son of Manṣūr, son of Is-ḥāk, mentioned towards the close of the last reign, which see.
On this, Amir Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, son of Ismā'il, nominated a well appointed army [well equipped in all things] to march into Sijistān for the second time, and Ḥusain 'Ali', Marw-ar-Rūdī 3, was made Amir [commander] of that force. This army had entered Sijistān in the year 300 H., and had invested 'Umro [son of Muḥammad], son of Ya'ḳūb, for a period of seven months 4, when he begged for quarter, and came out and surrendered. Sijistān was then made over to the charge of Simjūr-i-Dowātī 4.

It was at this period that the Amir, having been unable to reach his appointed place of rest before nightfall, as already related, was assassinated, after having reigned for a period of six years and three months.

V. NAṢR 5, SON OF AḤMAD, SON OF ISMĀ'IL.

On the decease of the Amir-i Shahid, Aḥmad, son of Ismā'il, the whole of the Amirs, and commanders of the troops, and the principal men of the country, in concert with the 'Ulamā—the learned in law and religion—of that period, set up his son, Naṣr, as his successor 6.

Amir Naṣr at this time was but eight years of age, and according to the statement of the chronicler, at the very

---

9 'Umro, son of Muḥammad, son of Ya'ḳūb-i-Laigs, is correct.
1 Other writers say Ḥusain, son of 'Alī.
2 That is, he was a native of Marw-ar-Rūd.
3 Others give nine months as the period.
4 Tārīkh-i-Ibrahāmī says Aḥmad-i-Simjūr—also written Simjūr-i-Dowātī. Dowātī is from dowāt, a pen-case, or ink-holder.
5 His proper designation, according to the Mujmal-i-Fāṣih-i, Tārīkh-i-Jahān-Arā, the Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhāmī, and Tārīkh-i-Fanākātī, is Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, &c.
6 Among the events of the year 301 H., the Mujmal-i-Fāṣih-i mentions, the "arrival of the news at Baghdad, that the slaves of Amir Aḥmad, son of Ismā'īl, son of Ahmad, Sāmānī, had put him to death, on the banks of the Jihūn of Balkh, [referring to what was mentioned under 300 H.] and that his son, Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, had succeeded him. Upon this, the Khaṭṭāf, Muḳtadīr, despatched to him a commission confirming him in the government of Māwar-un-Naṣr, and added thereunto that of Khurāsān."
time that they brought him forth from the Haram to place him upon the throne, being of such tender years, he was completely overcome with fear and began to cry, and was saying, "Where are you taking me to? Do you desire to put me to death, in the same way as you put my father? Let me alone, I beg of you!"

After they had placed him on the throne, Abü 'Abd-ullah Muḥammad, son of Aḥmad, Al-Jihānī, was appointed his Nāyab [lieutenant]. He was a man of sagacity, and wise in counsel, and he entered upon the administration of the government in accordance with the rules of strict justice, and with a firm hand, but based upon moderation and beneficence; but, as the Amir was himself so young in years, the governors and great nobles on the confines showed a refractory spirit.

The first to revolt against his authority was his father's uncle, Is-hāk, son of Aḥmad, Sāmānī, and his son Ilyās, at Samrākand. They made ready their forces, and marched towards Bukhārā. Ḥamzah, son of 'Alī, who was one of the chiefs of Amir Naṣr's forces, pushed forward to meet them with a large following, put them to the rout, and pursued them as far as the gates of Samrākand. Amir Is-hāk sought for mercy, and became ashamed of his conduct, and he was forgiven.

Subsequently to this, Amir Naṣr's uncle's son, Mansūr, son of Is-hāk, revolted against him in 302 H. in Khurāsān and Nishāpūr; and Ḥusain 'Alī, who was Wālī [governor] of Hirāt, joined him in his rebellion. The Sipah-salār, [general-in-chief] of Amir Naṣr's forces, Ḥamawiyah, marched against them from Bukhārā, but, before he came up with them, Mansūr had died at Nishāpūr, and Husain 'Alī returned to Hirāt, but still continued in a state of revolt. He engaged in many conflicts, and gave battle on several occasions, until, at length, he was taken prisoner. He likewise, being clothed in a dress of

7 Ḥusain, son of 'Alī. 8 Abū Mansūr-i-Jihānī, was appointed to the government of Hirāt, Fūshanj, and Bādgāhais, and arrived at the former city to take up his appointment. In 311 H. Shāh-Malik, son of Ya'kūb, son of Lāṣ, the Šuṣfārī, and a body of Sanjarīs appeared before Hirāt. Simjūr was at Hirāt at this time; and Shāh-Malik and his party invested Hirāt four months, but could effect nothing, and had to retire. Changes continually took place there for
THE SĀMĀNĪ DYNASTY.

37

pardon', was forgiven, through the intercession of Muḥam-
mad, son of Aḥmad, Al-Jihānī, the Nāyab of the Empire;
indeed, during the reign of Amīr Naṣr, whoever revolted
against his authority, was either put to death, or, on
expressing penitence for his conduct, was pardoned.

His sovereignty continued during the reigns of the Khalī-
fahs, Al-Muqtadīr Bʿillah, Al-Ḵāhir Bʿillah, Ar-Rāżī Bʿillah,
up to that of Al-Muttaḵī Bʿillah, and he continued to pay
fealty to them, and to render them submission and obedi-
ence; and, from each of those Khalīfahs likewise, he re-
ceived a commission and a standard. He continued to
reign, until the month of Rajab, in the year 331 H.², when
he died.³ He was spoken of by the title, or surname,
of the Amīr-i-Sāʿīd, or the August Amīr, and his reign
extended to a period of thirty years. He had three sons,
some years. In 319 H. Abī Zakrīa-i-Yaḥyā, son of Aḥmad, son of Ismāʿīl,
Sāmānī, appeared before Hirāt, ousted Shabāsī, who had seized the govern-
ment, burnt some of the gates, and threw down part of the walls, and left
Ḵarā-Tīgīn, a slave of Abū Ibrāhīm, Sāmānī, in possession. He then departed
towards Samrḵand, but, the following day, Amīr Naṣr himself reached Hirāt,
stayed one day, and set out by way of Karūk, after Abū Zakrīa, leaving
Ṣīmūr again governor of the province. In 321 H., Ṣansūr, son of Ḍī, was
appointed. He died there in 324 H., having been Wālī [governor] for three
years.

The appointment was then conferred upon Muḥammad, son of Ḥasan,
son of Is-hāḵ. Soon after, in the same year, Abū-l-ʿAbbās, Muḥammad,
son of Al-Jarrāb, marched against Hirāt, took Muḥammad, son of Ḥasan,
captive, and sent him, in bonds, to Jurjān to Balkā-Tīgīn. In 326 H. the
office of Wāżīr was conferred upon Muḥammad, son of Muḥammad, Al-Jihānī,
by Amīr Naṣr.

Our author generally leaves out the principal events, or most of them, so
does not say anything of Māḵān, son of Kāḵī, Dīlamī, his attempt on
Khurāsān, or the events which led to his death. He was slain by Amīr ʿAlī,
son of Ilyās, who was one of the Umrā-i-Juyūḵ [Commanders of the Forces]
of Amīr Naṣr. Amīr Naṣr sent a Dabīr [Secretary] along with Amīr ʿAlī,
with directions to transmit him a brief account of what took place, and send
it by a carrier-pigeon. He did so in the following words—

Maḵān [Maḵān] "was not," which interpreted is—"' Was not' has become like his name."

In this same year, 329 H., Balkā-Tīgīn was removed from the government
of Hirāt, and it was again conferred upon Abū Maṇṣūr-i-Kārā-Tīgīn.

A winding-sheet, with a sword hung round his neck, probably, as was the
custom until very lately.

² It was in Amīr Naṣr's reign that Alb-Tīgīn is first mentioned as being
one of his mamlūkīs or slaves, but it was only in the subsequent reign that he
rose to the rank of Amīr [lord]. See page 49, and note 4.

³ The Tārīḵ-i-Guzdāh, Tārīḵ-i-Fašīh-i, Tārīḵ-i-Ibrāhīmī, and other
histories, state that Amīr Naṣr was slain by his own slaves, 12th of Ramāzān,
330 H., but some say it took place in 331 H.
Nūḥ, Ismā’īl, and Muḥammad, and the first succeeded him.

VI. NŪḤ, SON OF NAṢR, SON OF AḤMAD, SĀMĀNĪ.

Amīr Nūḥ, son of the Amīr-i-Sa’īd, ascended the throne of the dominion of ’Ajam, on the 5th of the month of Ṣha’bān, in the year 331 H.⁴, and he reigned for a period of twelve years and three months. He had two sons, ’Abd-ul-Malik and Maḥṣūr. The Lord of the Faithful, Al-Muttaḳī B’illah, sent Amīr Nūḥ a standard, with the deed of investiture, confirming him in the government of the whole of the territories of ’Ajam and Khūrāsān, which had been held by his father. He appointed the Imām, Shams-ul-A’immah, Abī-ul-Faẓl, Muḥammad, son of Al-Ḥākim, Sarakhsi, the author of the work entitled “Mukhtāsar-i-Kaḥī,” to the office of Wazīr, and made him his Nayāb, and entrusted to him the administration of his affairs⁵.

Having entered upon his office, the Imām began to conduct the affairs of the country according to the precepts of wisdom and knowledge, the rules of justice, and the canons of the orthodox law and usage, and, in such a manner, that he left not the least thing neglected. Matters went on in this way until Amīr Nūḥ, through the rebellion of ’Abd-ullāh, son of Ashkān⁶, Khwārazm Shāh, proceeded to Marw⁷ in 332 H., and brought that important matter to a successful issue. In the year 335 H., his

⁴ In 330 H., according to others, as stated previously.
⁵ Nūḥ first appointed Ḥākim Abū-l-Faẓl, Aḥmad, son of Muḥammad, to the office of Wazīr in 330 H., when he succeeded his father. In the same year I find Amīr Nūḥ giving orders to put the Wazīr Abū-l-Faẓl, Al-Bal’amī, to death. This is not the Wazīr, Al-Bal’amī, who translated the Tāriḵh-i-Ṭabarī, but of the same family.
⁶ The Mujmal-i-Fasāḥ-i mentions among the events of the year 332 H., that ’Abd-ullāh, son of Ashḵān, manifested hostility towards Amīr Nūḥ, but where, is not stated. The Khwārazm Shāhīs are not mentioned by our author until a long period after this time. The name of this person is written Ashḵān, Ashḵāb, and Asḵāb, in as many different copies of the MS. In 331 H. Ḵarā-Tīgin had been removed from the government of Hirāt, and it was conferred upon Ibrāhīm, son of Sīmūr, who, in the following year, sent thither Abū-l-Faẓl-i-’Āzīz, son of Muḥammad, the Sijizī, to act as his deputy, until he came himself, and directed that the gateways should be destroyed and the walls of the city thrown down.
⁷ Neither “Meru” nor “Merce” is the correct pronunciation.
uncle, Is-hāk*, who had fled to Baghdād, had managed to obtain from the Khalīfah, Al-Muktafi B‘illah, the investiture of Khurāsān. He, accordingly, entered those parts, and seized upon the territory of Jibāl* and Khurāsān.

Amīr Nūḥ had proceeded to Marw to expel him, but the whole of his nobles, his retinue, and the soldiery were disaffected. They had become annoyed and irritated at the enlightenment displayed, and the just administration of Shams-ul-A‘immah, and had become quite sated with his ministry, because he had entirely fettered the hands of tyrants and oppressors, and restrained their extortionate demands and exactions, so that that party were unable to succeed in acquiring what their ambition and tyranny suggested.

Amīr Nūḥ, was in urgent need of his army’s services, to enable him to oppose his uncle, Amīr Is-hāk, whilst the troops began to show a rebellious spirit towards him, and an inclination to take the side of his uncle. A party of the officers of his army, tyrants and enemies to progress and good government, proceeded to the presence of Amīr Nūḥ, and stated that all the dissatisfaction and discontent among his retinue and troops, the confusion in the country, and division in the state, was caused by the Wazīr, Shams-ul-A‘immah¹. “Give him,” they demanded, “over into our hands, or otherwise we will all join your uncle.” Amīr Nūḥ was constrained by necessity to deliver the Imam into the hands of those tyrants, and they brought him forth. At the entrance of the royal residence there stood two tall white poplar-trees. These they bent downwards, and, fastening each of that fortunate minister’s feet to a branch of either tree which was nearest it, let the trees spring back again into their upright

---

* Other authors mention hostilities between Amīr Nūḥ and his uncle Ibrāhīm.
* Jibāl, or the Highlands of 'Irāk, is meant here.
¹ Faṣīḥ-Ī, under the events of the year 335 H., mentions that Abū 'Alī-i-Sīmjūr became hostile towards Amīr Nūḥ, son of Naṣr, and that the troops demanded of him the Wazīr, Ḥākim Abū-l-Faṣl, son of Muḥammad, and that the Amīr had to comply, whether he liked it or not, and that they put the Wazīr to death, after he had held that office four years. After his being thus put to death, Amīr Nūḥ conferred the office of Wazīr upon Shams-ul-A‘immah; so it seems from this, that our author has confused the two ministers into one.
position, and that great man was thus torn asunder. This occurrence took place in the year 335 H.

Amir Nūḥ, son of Naṣr, died in 343 H., and he was styled by the title of Amir-i-Ḥamīd, or the Laudable Amir.

VII. 'AHD'-UL-MALIK, SON OF NŪḤ, SĀMĀNĪ.

On the decease of Amir Nūḥ, the son of Naṣr, the whole of the great nobles and principal commanders of the troops agreed together to give their allegiance to his son, Ābū-Fawāris-i-'Ābd-ul-Malik, and they accordingly placed him on the throne. The Wazir's office was given to Ābū Manṣūr, Mūḥammad, son of Al-'Azīz, and the commander over the Amir's troops was Ābū Sa'īd-i-Bakır, son of Al-Malik, Al-Farghānī.

Āmir 'Ābd-ul-Malik based the administration of the government of his dominions upon the rules of justice and rigour, and placed Wālis [governors] in different parts, while others of the great nobles were retained by him in authority near his own person. An arrangement was entered into with Ābū-Ḥasan, son of Buwiah respecting his territory, for the sum of 200,000 rukni divams. This treaty was concluded, in accordance with the mandate of the Amir 'Ābd-ul-Malik, by Ābū Sa'īd-i-Bakır, son of Al-Malik, Al-Farghānī, before mentioned, who was the general of his troops; but Ābū Sa'īd being suspected of partiality in this matter towards the Dīlamān and the family of Buwiah, Amir 'Ābd-ul-Malik put him to death. He also imprisoned the Wazir, and subsequently put him to death likewise, as both he and Ābū Sa'īd had become tainted with the doctrine of the Kārāmīṭah sect of heretics. The command of his troops was entrusted to Alb-Ṭagīn, the Ḥājib [chamberlain],

2 Āmir 'Ābd-ul-Malik made Ābū Ja'far, ul-'Utba, his Wazir, according to other authors.
3 See the dynasty of the Dīlamah, page 55.
4 In Fašḥī-ī, Alb-Ṭagīn is first mentioned in the year 267 H. in the following words:—"Birth of Alb-Ṭagīn, the freedman (‘āfa) of Naṣr, son of Abmād, Sāmānī." According to the same excellent authority, in 346 H., Ābū Manṣūr, son of 'Ābd-ur-Razzāq, who had been made Wālī [ruler] of Hīrāt [which appears to have always formed a province of itself, from its constant separate mention], that same year left it, and retired to Tūs, thus throwing up his command.
until the year 350 H., when Amîr 'Abd-ul-Malik, having gone one evening to the Maidan or Course to amuse himself in playing Chaugân⁶, fell from his horse and was killed⁷, after having reigned for a period of little over seven years.

VIII. MANŞÜR, SON OF NÛH⁸, SĀMĀNĪ.

On the decease of Amîr 'Abd-ul-Malik, the commanders of the troops, and the heads and elders of the religious bodies and the law, at the capital [Bukhârâ], met together,
and held consultation whether they should raise to the throne Abū Šāliḥ-i-Maṇṣūr, son of Nūḥ, the late Amīr's brother, or the latter's son.

At this juncture Al-Bītīn, the Amīr-i-Ḥājīb [Lord-Chamberlain], was absent in Khurāsān, and the Wazīr of the late Amīr was 'Alī Al-Bal'āmī ⁹, between whom and the Amīr-i-Ḥājīb great unanimity and concord existed. The Wazīr wrote to Al-Bītīn to consult with him on this matter, and have his advice, to which Amīr Al-Bītīn wrote in reply that the son's right to succeed his father to the throne was greater than that of the father's brother ¹; but, before Al-Bītīn's reply had time to arrive, the whole of the soldiery, the great nobles, and the heads of religion and law, had agreed to place Amīr Maṇṣūr, son of Nūḥ, on the throne, and had already installed him thereon. When the news reached Al-Bītīn respecting Amīr Maṇṣūr's elevation to the sovereignty, he despatched messengers and agents in order to stop by the way, those bearing his letter of reply, and to bring it back, but they did not succeed in finding the kāṣids, or couriers, who bore it.

Amīr Al-Bītīn [at this period] held the government of the province of Nīshāpūr from the Sāmānī Court ², but it was [now] conferred upon Ibn 'Abd-ur-Razzāḳ ³.

Amīr Al-Bītīn holds government of the province of Nīshāpūr from the Sāmānī Court, but it is now conferred upon Ibn 'Abd-ur-Razzāḳ.

⁹ His name is not correctly given by our author. His right name is Abū 'Alī, son of 'Abd-ullāh, Muḥammad, Al-Bal'āmī; and on the authority of the Ağār-ul-Nuzārā, Tārīkh-i-Yāfāī, and other works, Abū 'Alī was the translator of the Tārīkh of Imām Muḥammad Jarīr-ut-Taḥārī, as stated in the preface to that translation. See note ⁴, page 44.

¹ Other writers state quite contrary to this, and say that Al-Bītīn, having risen so as to be considered one of the greatest Amīrs, was written to, and asked which of the two named he preferred being raised to the throne. He wrote in reply that the uncle was the best of the two; but, before his reply came, the nobles and great men had raised Maṇṣūr, son of the late 'Abd-ul-Malik, to the throne. On this account Maṇṣūr cherished enmity towards him, or at least Al-Bītīn thought so. Fāṣīh-ī says nothing whatever respecting the letter to the Wazīr, or his advice as to the succession. Had Al-Bītīn written what our author states he did, it was entirely in favour of the son, and therefore if Maṇṣūr was the son he could have no cause to entertain enmity against him; but, if the uncle, the case would be different. I have been very careful to give the exact words here.

² See note ⁴, page 40.

³ It was conferred upon Abī-l-Ḥasan-i-Sīmjūr in 351 H., he having become Sāhib-ul-Jaīsh, or commander of the troops, and proceeded to Nīshāpūr; and the government of Hirāt was conferred upon Abī-l-Ḥasan, son of 'Umro Al-Fāryābī. After four months it was bestowed upon Taḥāh, son of Muḥammad, Un-Nisāī. In 352 H. Al-Bītīn died.
Alb-Tigín was filled with wonder and astonishment, and he determined to proceed from Nishápür to the court of Bukhárā; but, when he had reached Balkh, on the way thither, having been informed respecting the change in the heart of Amir Mañşür towards him, on account of the letter he had despatched [which had fallen into Mañşür's hands], on reaching Balkh, he turned aside, and proceeded towards Ghaznín. Amir Mañşür despatched a commission after him, and pacified his mind [by assuring him of his favour].

In this reign, Hasan, son of Buwíjah, died; and his son, Faná Khusrau, removed his father's treasures, and proceeded to Baghdad, overcame his uncle, Bakhtyar, and possessed himself of Irák. The 'Ulamá and the Kazís he now put forward, and solicited an accommodation from Amir Mañşür, under the agreement that he, Faná Khusrau, should retain possession of the territories of Irák, Rai, Gurgán, and Tabarístán, in fief, on payment of a tribute, at the rate of one thousand gold dinárs daily.

During the reign of Amir Mañşür, in Farghánah, Sijístán, and Irák, the whole of the great nobles were continually revolting from his authority; but the Almighty was pleased to bestow victory upon the Amir's nobles and
troops, until the whole of the rebels were reduced to submission.

Amir Manšur died on Tuesday, the 11th of the month of Shawwāl, 365 H., after a reign of seventeen years, six months, and eleven days. He went by the surname of the Amir-i-Sadid, or the Steadfast Amir.

IX. Nūḥ, son of manšūr, son of nūḥ, sāmānī.

His sons were Manšūr, 'Abd-ul-Malik, and Muḥammad. On the departure from this world of Amir Manšūr, son of Nūḥ, they [the people] gave their allegiance to his son, Amir Abū-l-Ḵāsim-i-Nūḥ, and raised him to his father’s throne. The Lord of the Faithful, Ut-Tā’u-Lillah, sent him a patent of investiture and a standard.

The new ruler directed Fayik-i-Khāṣah, and Tāsh, the Ḥājib [chamberlain], to assume the command of his troops and the direction of military affairs. Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Simjūr, who was the son of a slave of this dynasty, and ruled, in the name of Amir Nūḥ, over parts of Khurāsān, such as Hirāt and Nīshāpūr, and over the territory of Māwar-un-Nahr, received the title of Nasir-ud-Daulah from the Amir, and the territory of Tūs was added to the territories already held by him.

The office of Wazīr was conferred upon Abī-ul-Ḥasan-i-'Abd-ullah, son of Ṭāmīd Al-'Utba; and Tāsh, the Ḥājib, was made head of the army, or commander-in-chief, with the title of Hisām-ud-Daulah. Kābūs, son of Washm-gīr, was made Wāli [governor] of Gurgān.

Five years previous to this event, in 360 H., Maḥmūd, son of Sabuk-Tigīn, was born.

The author’s arrangement of his work is by no means uniform; he sometimes mentions the sons of rulers, and at times leaves them out altogether. This too is often the case with respect to their titles. The title of Nūḥ was Ar-Riqa, and other authors style him Nūḥ, son of Manšūr, son of 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ, son of Naṣr, &c.

1 From one meaning of this word, Fayik appears to have been a secretary. The Tārikh-i-Ibrāhīmī calls him Fāyik-i-Bak-Tūrīn.

2 His right name is Abū-l-'Abbās-i-Tāsh. So in all copies of the text.

3 The author of the Tārikh-i-Yamnī was of this family. The name has been sometimes written 'Utbi. Guzīdah, and other most trustworthy works state that Abū 'All, son of 'Abd-ullah-i-Muḥammad, son of Bal'ami, translator of the Tārikh-i-Ṭabarī, was his Wazīr. In the preface to that translation Manšūr is styled son of Nūḥ.
and he and other nobles were despatched along with Tāsh into 'Irāk, in order to carry on hostilities against Buwiah; son of Al-Hasan, son of Buwiah. They fought a battle before the gate of Gurgān and were defeated, and Tāsh, the Hajib, was overthrown and had to retreat.

After some time Tāsh and Abū-l-Hasan-i-Simjūr, both of them, revolted; but, after some struggles, and victory over the Diālamah of the family of Buwiah, they both returned to their allegiance; and the command of Amir Nūḥ's forces, after some time, fell to Abī 'Ali, son of Simjūr, and Nishāpūr was made over to him, and he received the title of 'Imād-ud-Daulah.

In this reign likewise, Amir Abū Mūsā-i-Hārūn, I-lak, determined to attack Bukhārā, and Amir Nūḥ fled to Āmul, and kept in retirement. Abī 'Ali, son of Simjūr, now began to act in a rebellious manner. I-lak Khān, after having succeeded in gaining possession of the country [Bukhārā] and overthrowing the government, became greatly afflicted with hæmorrhoids, and determined to retire into his own territory again. He sent for Amir 'Abd-ul-'Aziz, son of Nūḥ, son of Naṣr, who was an uncle of Amir Nūḥ's, and presented him with a robe of honour, and made over the territory to him, after which he retired towards Turkistān. Amir Nūḥ, son of Mansūr, brought assistance from the Turkists, and set out in pursuit of I-lak Khān until he came up with him; but I-lak Khān faced about, and inflicted a defeat upon his pursuers before the gate of Samrḵand; and on his way back to Turkistān the Khān died.

Amir Nūḥ returned again to Bukhārā, and once more

---

5 So in the original; but it was against the forces of 'Uẓ̄d-ud-Daulah, Abū Shujā'-i-Fanā Khusrau, the Dīlamī, that Amir Nūḥ's forces were sent. The details are very long.

6 Our author's account here is very confused. The details would occupy more space than I can spare.

7 Abū-l-'Abbās-i-Tāsh, surnamed Hisām-ud-Daulah, died in 379 H., at Jurjān. Some copies of the text have for ٧١.

8 This is incorrect; it was Bughra Khān, ruler of Turkistān, not I-lak, who was his son and successor, as mentioned farther on by our author himself. According to Guzidah and other histories, Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr contemplated assuming independent sovereignty, and sought support from Bughra Khān to aid him in doing so. Bughra Khān's coming was after Nūḥ and Sabuk-Tigin proceeded to Hīrat to attack Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr. See note 4 to page 46.

9 In Māzandarān.
acquired strength; but, through the rebellion of Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr, the affairs of Khurāsān had fallen into great disorder, and [to make matters worse] Amir Alb-Tigin had likewise died at Ghaznin, and Sabuk-Tigin had succeeded him there, and become very powerful.

The people of Balkh, on account of the weak state of the Sāmānī ruler's power, implored aid from Amir Sabuk-Tigin from the tyranny of Fāyik-i-Khāṣah, and he had marched thither. Amir Nūḥ sent a sagacious person to him, and great graciousness and courtesy passed between them, and compacts were entered into. Amir Sabuk-Tigin came to Kash and Nakhshab, and Amir Nūḥ came out of Bukhārā [to meet him], and they united [their forces], and afterwards marched into Khurāsān to crush Abī 'Ali-i-Simjūr. When they reached the confines of Tāl-kān, the agents and instigators of the ʿĀrāmiṭah and Mūlaḥidah schismatics had arrived in that territory, and a great number of the people of those parts had listened to and accepted their doctrine. Amir Sabuk-Tigin laid hands upon the whole of them, and made holy war, as by orthodox institutes prescribed, [upon them], and obtained the title of Nāṣir-ud-dīn.

When Bū 'Ali-i-Simjūr became aware that Amir Nūḥ and Sabuk-Tigin had set out towards Hirat, he left Nishā-

1 The only correct way of spelling his name as given with the vowel points—ṣ followed by the short vowel a, silent ṣ followed by the short vowel u, and silent k = Sabuk; t with the short vowel i, and silent g, the long vowel i, and silent n = Tiγin — (Sabuk-Tigin). Neither "Sebektekein," nor "Sabak Tagin," "Subuktugan," "Sēbekteghin," "Subuktagi," &c.

2 Sabuk-Tigin had certainly succeeded; but between his accession and Alb-Tīgin's death sixteen years had intervened, and three other persons had administered the government.

3 "Kesh," as this place has been styled in some works, is an impossible word. The Persian is گ and by any change of the vowel points it cannot be made Kesh. It must be either Kash, Kīsh, or Kūsh; but the first is correct.

4 Faṣih-ī says, under 382 H., "Amir Nūḥ, son of Manṣūr, Sāmānī, and Amir Nāṣir-ud-dīn, Sabuk-Tīgin along with him, came to Hirat, and fought a battle with Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr, and overthrew him." It was in the following year, 383 H., that Bughrā Khān advanced against Bukhārā. Our author has put this event previously to Nūḥ and Sabuk-Tīgin joining against Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr, not only confusing the order of events, but also giving Bughrā Khān a wrong name. His title and name was Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Harūn, son of Sulīmān, son of I-lak Khān, surnamed Bughrā Khān, the Turk, and he held the tract of territory from Kashghar to the Jihān. His son, I-lak Khān, succeeded him. In 384 H. Amir Nūḥ gave the government of Khurāsān to Sabuk-Tīgin.
pir and proceeded thither. Amir Nūḥ, on the day of the engagement between the two armies, gave up the command of the troops to Amir Sabuk-Tigin. When their forces encountered each other before the gate of Hirāt, and, during the engagement, Dārā, son of Ḳābūs, son of Waḥīm-gīr, who was on the side of Abū 'Ali, deserted, and went over to the other side; and Abū 'Ali was overthrown, through the misfortune of his having acceded, as well as most of the chief men of that territory, and his army also, to the exhortations of the Karāmītāhs, and having become contaminated with that heresy. He had founded a Masjid-i-Jāmi"6, or great masjid, at Nishāpūr, intending, when it should be completely finished, that the Khutbah should be read there for Müșṭanṣir-i-Misrī7. This victory was gained by Amir Nūḥ, son of Maṃṣūr, in the middle of the month of Ramazān, in the year 384 H.8; and, after this success, the affairs of the province of Hirāt were arranged by Amir Nūḥ, and he proceeded to the territory of Nishāpūr.

Abū'Ali-i-Simjiir now sought for peace; but, on his request not being acceded to, he left Nishāpūr, and set out towards Rai, and sent his son to Abū-l-Ḥāṣan, son of Buwīlah. Amir Nūḥ was now left to return [to his capital]; and Sabuk-Tigin and his son, Amir9 Maḥmūd, were stationed at Nishāpūr; but, as Amir Nūḥ paused at Tūs, Sabuk-Tigin despatched his son, Amir Maḥmūd, to the Court; and he was nominated to the command of the troops, and the title of Saīf-ud-Daulah was conferred upon him, together with the government of Nishāpūr. Subsequently to this, Amir Nūḥ, son of Maṃṣūr, returned to Bukhārā, leaving Balkh, Hirāt, Nishāpūr, and the territory of Khurāsān1, under the care of Amir Sabuk-Tigin and his son, Amir Maḥmūd, the latter of whom took up his quarters at Nishāpūr.

6 With a body of troops.
7 The rival Khalīfah, whose seat was in Miṣr, and who was head of the Karāmītāh sect at this period, was Ul'-Azīz B'illah, Maṃṣūr-i-Nīzār, who died in 386 H.
8 Faṣīb-ī says Nūḥ defeated Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr at Nishāpūr, and that Abū 'Ali fled.
9 He was not "Amir" Maḥmūd then, and the author's intention here is merely to call him by the title he subsequently acquired.
1 So in the original.
In the month of Rabi'-ul-awwal, 385 H., Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr came out of Gurgān, and advanced to Nishāpūr, with the intention of compelling Maḥmūd to relinquish it, and the people of the city espoused his cause. Maḥmūd, after much opposition and hard fighting, was defeated, for he had but a small force with him, and retired again to Hirāt. Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr again gained possession of Nishāpūr, and continued there until Sabuk-Tigin, with a large army, advanced towards that place. Abū 'Ali moved forward towards Tūs to oppose his advance, and there they encountered each other, and a severe and sanguinary battle ensued. Amir Maḥmūd made an attack upon the rear of Abū 'Ali's army, and broke through his ranks, and overthrew Fāyk, who was with him, and completed the defeat of Abū 'Ali's army. Fāyk retired to Bukhārā, and there was thrown into confinement, and died. Amir Sabuk-Tigin proceeded to Balkh, and took up his quarters there; and Amir Maḥmūd returned again to Nishāpūr.

At length, on Friday, the 13th of the month of Rajab, 387 H., Amir Nūḥ, son of Manṣūr, departed this life. His reign extended over a period of twenty-one years and nine months; and in this same year Amir Sabuk-Tigin also died.

X. MANṢŪR, SON OF NUḤ, SON OF MANṢŪR.

The late Amir Nūḥ had nominated his son, Amir Manṣūr, as his heir and successor; and, when the former died, his son ascended his father's throne. He entrusted the command of his forces to Fāyk-i-Khāṣah; and Abū Manṣūr-i-'Aziz, who, through fear of Amir Maḥmūd, son

2 Other writers say that Fāyk, after this defeat, separated from Abū 'Ali, and feared to return to Amir Nūḥ, although he had permission to do so. He went, therefore, and joined I-lak Khān, son of Bughrā Khān, and obtained high rank in his service.

3 Hostility arose between Amir Nūḥ and Sabuk-Tigin in 386 H.

4 Some state that Abū 'Ali and Fāyk sent a force of slaves and had him put to death; others, that it was supposed he was assassinated at the instigation of the Şāhiḥ, Ibn-i-'Ubūd, the Wazīr of Fakhr-ud-Daulah, Abū-Ḥasan-i-Buwfāh, by the Karamiṭah schismatics. Fāṣīḥ-i says, "Amīr Ar-Raṣi-ṣ-Nūḥ, died at Nishāpūr, 13th of Rajab, 387 H.; and, in the same year, Sabuk-Tīgin, the slave of the house of Sāmānī, also died."

5 He has not been mentioned before, and who or what he was, the author does not say; but Fāṣīḥ-i mentions that the Wazīr, Abū Manṣūr-i-‘Azīz, was removed from that office in 388 H., on account of disagreement with Fāyk, the Hījīh.
of Sabuk-Tigin, had fled, and retired to Isfanjab, was brought back again. At the time of returning he had implored help from I-lak Khan, soliciting that he would take vengeance upon the enemies and opponents of Amir Mansur. When Abi Mansur, son of Aziz, reached the gate of Samarkand he seized him; and at this period Faiyik-i-Khasah was at Samarkand. I-lak Khan summoned Faiyik to his presence, and despatched him to Bukhara with an army; and, on Amir Mansur becoming aware of it, he left Bukhara, and retired to Amul.

When Faiyik reached Bukhara, and approached the gate of the palace of the Samani princes, he showed great emotion, and became greatly agitated, and went and joined Mansur [Amir Mansur, son of Nuh], and asked of him why he had left the government, and abandoned the capital. Mansur, on this, returned to Bukhara again, and left the office of commander of the troops [there, as previously stated,] to Faiyik, and in Khurasan the command over the troops was given to Bak-Tuzun, as Amir Mahmud had proceeded to Ghaznin, in order to take possession of the territory of his father, Sabuk Tigin [who was now dead], and he left Bak-Tuzun the command over the forces in Khurasan.

At this period Bak-Tuzun slew Abi-l-Kasim-i-Simjur, and took up his residence at Nishapur; and, on this, Amir Mahmud marched an army from Ghaznin towards Khurasan.

6 Also written Sifanjab.
7 In every copy of our author which I have compared, except one, the first letter of this word is m, and the other letters also differ; but from other histories it is fully proved that the name of this personage is Bak-Tuzun. A similar name occurs in the history of the Dfalamah; and sometimes the Bak is omitted, as in the Jamil-ut-Tawarikh. Guzidah also has Bak-Tuzun. The word, Bak, (९७५) is quite a distinct word from Beg (९७६). The Shams-ul-Lughat describes it as written with Arabic kaf [i.e. not gaf], and short a —Bak, signifying "a lord," "a great man." It is a title or surname, like Bak in Bak-Taghdi, Alb in Alb-Tigin, and Balka in Balka-Tigin, &c. The Tarikh-i-Ibrahimi calls him Faiyik-i-Bak-Tuzun.
8 The command of the troops, and the government which he had held, when the late Amir died. Other authors state that Mansur would not confirm Mahmud in that appointment, and that he became hostile in consequence.
9 A great deal of detail is wanted here to elucidate these transactions. In the month of Rabul-Awwal, 388 H., Abi-l-Kasim, the commander of the Simjur forces, was defeated by Bak-Tuzun, on which he retired to Fushanj. Bak-Tuzun again assembled a force, and advanced to Fushanj against Abi-l-Kasim; but an agreement was arrived at between them. I have not space to give further details.
Bak-Tūzūn, being aware that he could not cope with Maḥmūd, evacuated Nīshāpūr, and set off for the presence of Amīr Maṇṣūr. The latter had left Bukhārā, and had arrived at Marw, and Fāyīk was with him; but, when Bak-Tūzūn joined him, Amīr Maṇṣūr had reached Sarakhs. Fāyīk-i-Khāsah and Bak-Tūzūn now conspired together to dethrone Amīr Maṇṣūr; and, on the night of the 12th of the month of ʿṢafar, 389 ʿH., they removed him from the sovereignty, after which they left Sarakhs, and went back to Marw again. There they agreed together to place Abū-l-Fawāris-i-ʿAbd-ūl-Malik, son of Nūḥ, on his brother’s throne. This they carried out, and they deprived Amīr Abū-ḥ-Ḥirṣ-i-Maṇṣūr, son of Nūḥ, of his sight, after he had reigned one year and eight months.

XI. ABŪ-L-FAWARIS-I-ʿABD-UL-MALIK, SON OF NŪḤ.

By the time that Fāyīk-i-Khāsah and Bak-Tūzūn had placed Amīr ʿAbd-ūl-Malik upon the throne, Amīr Maḥmūd had arrived at Balkh; and, on being made acquainted with this occurrence, he advanced to the gates of Marw in order to revenge the treatment which Amīr Maṇṣūr had suffered at their hands. They, however, sent an agent to negotiate with Maḥmūd; and an arrangement was entered into between them and him, whereby it was agreed that Hirāt and Balkh should be held by Maḥmūd, and Marw and Nīshāpūr by them. Amīr Maḥmūd, after this arrangement, again retired, and this was on Tuesday, the 26th of the month of Jamādi-ul-awwal, in the year 389 ʿH.

1 Faṣīḥ-i says, on the 8th of ʿṢafar, and that they then deprived Amīr Maṇṣūr of his sight. His reign, according to the same authority, was one year and nine months.

2 According to some, Abū-ḥ-Ḥārīṣ was his title, but Abū-ḥ-Ḥirṣ is correct. The whole of the Sāmānī rulers had titles of this kind, but the author does not always give them. I have supplied them.

3 He had dethroned his own brother Ismāʿīl, and had assumed the Ghaznī throne, a short time previous to the accession of Abū-ḥ-Fawāris-i-ʿAbd-ul-Malik.

4 Maḥmūd fought a battle against ʿAbd-ūl-Malik, son of Nūḥ, who fled, along with Fāyīk and Bak-Tūzūn; the two former retired to Bukhārā, and the latter to Nīshāpūr. Abū-ḥ-Ḵāsim-i-Ṣīmūr retired to Kūhištān, and Khūrāsān was left in Maḥmūd’s possession. About this time, Maḥmūd gave the command of his troops to his brother Naṣr, and made Balkh the capital of his dominions. See notes to Maḥmūd’s reign.
THE SĀMĀNĪ DYNASTY.

At this period, Dārā, son of Ḋābūs-i-Washm-gīr, was Wālī [governor] of Gurgān, and incited a party of the slaves of the Sāmānī kings [who appear to have taken refuge with him], to follow the forces of Amīr Maḥmūd, with the object of plundering his retinue; and they set out in pursuit of them. Amīr Naṣr, son of Sabuk-Tigin, the brother of Maḥmūd, had charge of the rear [column] of his brother's forces, and joined battle with the body of pursuers, and also despatched a messenger to Maḥmūd to inform him of the state of affairs. Amīr Maḥmūd turned back, and proceeded to the scene of action; but, previously to his reaching it, Amīr Naṣr had already defeated the assailants, and put them to the rout.

When the party of nobles, at Marw, became aware that Maḥmūd had made a retrograde movement in that direction, they evacuated it, and retired to Bukhārā. Fāyīk, shortly after these events took place, died in the month of Sha'ban, of this same year. He had deeply regretted, and heartily repented of the acts he had committed, but now of no avail, and his contrition came too late; and all the adherents of the Sāmānī dynasty became separated and dispersed.

After the death of Fāyīk, Amīr Abū-l-Ḥasan, I-lak'-i-

1 Styled nobles in following paragraph, and refer to slaves such as Alb-Tigin and Sabuk-Tigin, who were some of the chief men in the state.

2 Maḥmūd having succeeded his father in 389 H., by the dethronement of his brother Iṣmāʿīl, appointed his brother Naṣr commander of his army in Khorāsān, and made Balkh the capital of his dominions. At this period, Amīr Abū Ibrāhīm-i-Iṣmāʿīl, son of Nūḥ, the last of the Sāmānīs, was struggling to recover the dominions of his ancestors, after having escaped from Bukhārā when I-lak-i-Naṣr, son of Bughrā Khān, entered it, and had, just before this period, succeeded in reaching Khwārazm. At this time he had come to Bukhārā again, from whence he went to Abīward, and from thence to Nishāpūr. Naṣr, brother of Maḥmūd, on this, evacuated Nishāpūr with all despatch, and retreated precipitately towards Hīrāt. Subsequently, Maḥmūd advanced to Nishāpūr, upon which Abū Ibrāhīm fled therefrom, and took shelter with Shams-ul-Maʿālī, Ḍābūs, son of Washm-gīr. This must have been the time, when, according to our author, Amīr Naṣr had charge of the rear [column] of his brother's army, but he has related these events in his usual confused manner, and has not mentioned even the name of Abū Ibrāhīm-i-Iṣmāʿīl. See note 1, page 52.

7 Other authors state that Amīr Maḥmūd, son of Sabuk-Tigin, marched against Bak-Tūzūn and Fāyīk, who had conspired against their sovereign, dethroned him, and deprived him of his sight, drove them out of Khorāsān, and possessed himself of that territory; and that Bak-Tūzūn and Fāyīk fled
Naṣr, son of 'Ali, brother of the Khān-i-Buzurg, or the Great Khān, advanced from Farghānah, and appeared before the gates of Bukhāra, in the month of Zi-Ka'dah, in the year 389 H. He pretended to the people that he had come to render aid to Amir Ābū-l-Fawāris-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ. Amir 'Ābd-ul-Malik despatched the nobles and principal officers still remaining in his service to receive him; but, as soon as they approached, he gave orders to seize the whole of them; and, on the 10th of Zi-Ka'dah of that same year, he entered Bukhāra. Amir 'Ābd-ul-Malik concealed himself; but I-lak-i-Naṣr asked him to return, and succeeded in getting the Sāmānis prince into his power; after which he sent him to Urjand, and the dominion of the Sāmānis terminated. The dynasty, into Māwar-un-Nahr, and once more conspired with I-lak Khān, who, under pretence of aiding Amir 'Ābd-ul-Malik, whom they had set up, marched out of Kāshghar, and appeared before Bukhāra.

I-lak, son of Bughrā Khān, took Bukhāra, 10th of Zi-Ka'dah, 389 H. The blind Amir Mansūr, 'Ābd-ul-Malik, Ibrikīm, and Ya'qūb, the four sons of Nūḥ, were made captive at the same time.

One copy has Uzjand, but other writers give Uzgand, and the fortress of Uzgand; and state that there he was confined till his death, which took place in 389 H. It was the capital of Khwārazm, and the name of a province: the 'Arabs called it Jurjānīah. It is the present Urganj.

Other most trustworthy historians, some of whose works I have been quoting from, give an account of the reign, or rather struggles, of another prince of this dynasty, brother of Mansūr and 'Ābd-ul-Malik, which, in a condensed form, is as follows:

"ABŪ IBRĀHĪM-I-ISMĀ'IL, SON OF NŪḤ.

He was known by the title of Muntaṣīr, one of the significations of which word is 'extricating one's self from any calamity or misfortune,' which may have reference to the following circumstances. During the uproar and confusion which ensued upon the seizure of 'Ābd-ul-Malik by I-lak-i-Naṣr, Abū Ismā'īl, having covered himself with the mantle of a slave-girl, succeeded, by means of that disguise, in getting out of the throng. For three days he lay concealed in the dwelling of an old woman, after which time he managed to effect his escape from the place in the dress of a common soldier, and reached the territory of Khwārazm. Some of the nobles and soldiery of the Sāmānī dynasty, on becoming aware of his escape, hastened there to join him. Muntaṣīr by this means acquired some strength; and he began to prepare his followers to make an effort to regain the territory of his ancestors. For several years he carried on a desultory warfare on the confines of Khūrāsān and Māwar-un-Nahr. He encountered the troops of I-lak Khān [I-lak-i-Naṣr], and the governor of Khūrāsān, on several occasions, with various success. At length, in the month of Rabī'-ul-Awwal 395 H., while in the encampment of a
from the commencement of the reign of Ismā'īl up to this
time, had continued for a period of one hundred and eight
years⁸.

The following table gives the genealogical tree of the
race and dynasty of the Sāmānīs⁴:

Mī-Dād, father of
Kār-Kīn, father of
Bahrām Jash-Nāsh, father of
Bahrām Chūbin, father of
Nūshad, father of
Nūshir, father of
Tamghān, father of
Jashmān, father of
Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, father of
Asad, who had four sons, Nūh, Aḥmad, Yaḥyā, Ilyas.

nomad tribe, in whose tents he had sought shelter, in the neighbourhood of
Bukhārā, he was put to death by Māh-Rūě [moon-faced], the chief of the
tribe. The Mujmāl-i-Fāsiḥ-i states that Māh-Rūě was 'Amil or subordinate
governor of the district in the vicinity of Üzgand, on the part of Sulṭān
Māḥmūd, and that Māḥmūd put Māh-Rūě to death for his treatment of Amīr
Abū Ibrāhīm. Thus ended the dynasty of the Sāmānīs, none of the race
being left, after having lasted one hundred and three years, nine months, and
eleven days." The account given by Abū-Sulṭān-i-Dā'ūd, Al-Fanākatī, is
slightly different from this.

⁸ The I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and its prototype the R. A. S. MS., for
they seem, as far as errors go, to be copies of each other, give one hundred and
eighty years as the period during which this dynasty continued. Guzīdah says
one hundred and two years, six months, and twenty days.

³ To make it more intelligible I have reversed it, as the author begins with
the last ruler. It must be also borne in mind that, as such great difference
exists in all the MSS. as to the names before Sāmān, and that no vowel points
are given, they cannot be absolutely depended upon. I give the variations within
brackets, and also mention the result of my comparison with other writers.

⁴ This word of course may possibly be read Gargin, &c., as in Persian, or
may be ē or g.

⁵ No doubt Nūshir is correct.

⁶ Fāsiḥ-i gives the following names:—Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, son of
Jashmān, son of Bahrām Chūbin, son of Bahrām Hashnūs, who is said to have been stationed at Rai and Ahwāz, as Wālī of Āṣarbāījān
on the part of Hurmuz, son of Nūshīrwān.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAMES OF RULERS</th>
<th>PERIOD OF REIGN</th>
<th>SONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aḥmād, son of Asad</td>
<td>Eighteen years</td>
<td>Naṣr, Ismāʿīl, Isḥāq, Maṃsūr, Asad, Yaʿkūb, Ḥamīd, Yaḥyā, Iḥrāḥīm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naṣr, son of Aḥmād</td>
<td>Eighteen years</td>
<td>Aḥmād, Nūḥ, Iyās, Yaḥyā.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ismāʿīl, son of Aḥmād</td>
<td>Eight years</td>
<td>Naṣr, Maṃsūr, Ibrāḥīm, Yaḥyā.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aḥbū Naṣr-i-Aḥmād, son of</td>
<td>Six years and three months</td>
<td>Yaʿkūb, Asad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nūḥ, son of Naṣr</td>
<td>Thirty years</td>
<td>Nūḥ, Ismāʿīl, Maṃsūr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ</td>
<td>Twelve years and three months</td>
<td>'Abd-ul-Malik, Abū Ṣāliḥ-i-Maṃsūr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aḥbū Šāliḥ-i-Mansūr, son of Nūḥ</td>
<td>Seventeen years, six months, and eleven days</td>
<td>Maṃsūr, 'Abd-ul-Malik, Muḥammad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nūḥ, son of Abū Šāliḥ-i-Maṃsūr</td>
<td>Twenty-one years and nine months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maṃsūr, son of Nūḥ</td>
<td>One year and six months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ</td>
<td>Between nine and ten months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 From the period he acquired sole rule. Tārīḵh-i-Guzīdah gives seven years and ten months.
8 One MS. gives twelve years and nine months, another eleven years and nine months.
9 Two copies have eight years.
1 One MS. has seventeen years; another seventeen years, six months, and eleven days; two others, eighteen; but, as he assumed power in 350 H., and died in Shawwāl, 365 H., the above is correct.
2 There were other sons besides these. See note 8 page 52.
SECTION X.

THE DYNASTY OF THE Dİ ĀŁAMAH MALİKS AT THE DĀR-UL-KHİLĀFAT OF BAGHĪDĀD, AND IN 'ĪRĀK.

The first person of the family of the Dīālamah, who rose to power, was Mākān, son of Kākī, Dīlamī, who was

Mākān, son of Kākī, was certainly a native of Dīlam, but he was not of the same family as the Buwāhāhs, and belonged to an entirely different dynasty, called the Al-i-Ziyār.

According to the most trustworthy writers, the first of the family of Buwāhāh, who attained to sovereign power, was 'Imād-ud-Daulah, Abū-l-Hasan-i-'Alī, who afterwards received the title of 'Imād-ud-Daulah, the son of Buwāh, son of Fānā Khusrau, Dīlamī. 'Imād-ud-Daulah's father is said to have been a fisherman. Abū-l-Hasan-i-'Alī was an officer in the service of Mardāwānj, as he had previously been in that of Mākān, son of Kākī, whom Mardāwānj had succeeded, when Mākān retired, and entered the service of the Sāmānīs. Mardāwānj had conferred some territory upon Abū-l-Hasan, who, in 321 H., considered himself sufficiently powerful to endeavour to gain possession of Isfahān and the territory of 'Irāk for himself. Abū-l-Hasan accordingly marched against Isfahān, and defeated Muqaffar, son of Yākūt, a slave of the 'Abbāsī dynasty, who was governor of Fārs for the Khalīfah. Muqaffar was defeated, and retired to Shīrāz, which was his father's head-quarters. Mardāwānj did not approve of this movement on the part of Abū-l-Hasan, and he determined to march to Isfahān and oust him. Abū-l-Hasan was not sufficiently strong to oppose Mardāwānj, and was advised to turn his arms against Fārs. This he acted upon; and Yākūt, who came out of Shīrāz, the capital of Fārs, to oppose him, was overthrown. Abū-l-Hasan took possession of it, and made it his capital. This was in 321 H.; and he now assumed sovereignty, and read the Khutbah for himself, and coined money. In 323 H., on the death of Mardāwānj, at Isfahān, he determined to extend his conquests; and he gained possession of Isfahān, Rai, Hulwān, and other territories. He now made his eldest brother, Abū 'Alī-i-Hasan, afterwards entitled Rukn-ud-Daulah, ruler of 'Irāk, and sent the youngest, Abū-l-Husain-i-Aḥmad, afterwards Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, to Kirmān. In 326 H., 'Imād-ud-Daulah, Abū-l-Hasan-i-'Alī, sent an envoy to Baghādād to the Khalīfah-Ar-Rāṣif Bīllah, and asked to be confirmed in the possession of his territory, which was granted; and, in the same year, 'Imād-ud-Daulah left his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, as his representative at Baghādād. In 330 H. 'Imād-ud-Daulah died, after a reign of nearly seventeen years, leaving no sons. Rukn-ud-Daulah, his eldest brother, succeeded him at Shīrāz, while Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, the youngest, remained at Baghādād as previously; but, in the course of that same year, Mu'izz-ud-Daulah set out on an expedition towards Miṣr and Shām. In 333 H. the Khalīfah, Al-Muttakī Bīllah, was blinded by Tūzūn, son of Abū-i-Wafā,
Wālī [sovereign] of Gurgān until the reign of Abū 'Ali 2 , Sāmānī, who succeeded in wrestling Gurgān from him, after considerable fighting. Mākān retired towards Rai, and sought shelter from Shām-gīr [Wāshm-gīr], son of Ayāz. Abū 'Ali went in pursuit of him, and fought an engagement with both of them, slew Mākān, son of Kākī, and became powerful in that part.

Amīr Buwīāh, Dilamī, was with Mākān's force; and he had a great number of followers and dependents, and grown-up sons, who were endowed with wisdom and valour, and great talent and ability. All of them rose to greatness and renown, and became sovereign princes; and for a considerable time they held the supreme authority and dominion at the Dār-ul-Khilāfat of Baghdād.

Notwithstanding the author made much search for information on this subject in the Tārikh-i-Ibn Haisam-i-Sānī 6 , but little was to be found respecting them and their actions in those chronicles, on account of some confusion as to which preceded, which followed the other. The author, therefore, has written a short account of them, somewhat based on supposition and conjecture 4. If any errors have been made, he hopes he may be excused, since it is known that no mention is made of them in the histories of 'Ajam and Khurāsān, except very briefly.

a Turk, the Amīr-ul-Umrā [see note 1, page 58], who set up his son, Al-Mustakfī. We now come to the first ruler mentioned by our author, who, certainly appears to have had a very superficial knowledge of this dynasty. He takes little or no notice of the other two dynasties of Fārs and 'Irāk, and confines his account to those who ruled at Baghdād. It is the most meagre and incorrect notice of these princes, that I am acquainted with; and, although the dynasty only terminated in 459 H., he ends his history of them in 388 H. Ample materials for a history of this dynasty are available; and I have been obliged to burden the translation with this long note to make the author's account intelligible.

2 So stated in all the copies of the work examined, but erroneously; for it refers to Abū 'Ali, son of Ilyās, Sipah-sālār, or general of the forces of Amīr Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, Sāmānī, who overthrew Mākān, son of Kākī, as subsequently shown. See latter part of note 9, pages 36, 37.

3 The I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and of course the R. A. S. MS., have "and in Yamīn" after the word Sānī, but not the other MSS. The word Sānī at this place, in four of them, is doubtful; and, in two, another word follows. I think "Ibn Haiṣam-i-Fāryābī" [native of Fāryāb] is the correct name of this author.

4 A novel way of writing history, and our author's account of this and other dynasties shows what such history is.
GENEALOGICAL TREE OF THE DIAŁAMAH PRINCES OF THE DYNASTY OF BUWIAH, DILAM!  

**BUWIAH**

- Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Aḥmad.
  - [Izz-ud-Dīn], Bakhtyar.
  - Fakhr-ud-Daulah wa ud-Dīn?, Abū-l-Ḥasan [-i-'Ali].
  - Rukn-ud-Daulah, Abū 'Ali-i-Ḥasan.

- Fakhr-ud-Daulah.
- Muayyid-ud-Daulah, Buwiah.
- 'Uṣd-ud-Daulah wa ud-Dīn, Fanā Khusrau.

- Bahā-ud-Daulah, [Khusrau Fīruz].
- Ṣharaf-ud-Daulah, Abū-l-Fawāris-i-Mākān.
- Ṣamṣām-ud-Daulah, Marzabān.

---

5 The whole of the MSS. compared do not contain this Tree, and, in those that do contain it, it is arranged in such a manner as to be almost unintelligible without reference to the different princes in the body of the work, besides being incorrect. The names within brackets I have added. The author mentions the names of ten out of eighteen persons, and gives an account of six only.

6 Abū-l-Ḥusain is correct.

7 His title was 'Imād-ud-Daulah.

8 His correct title and name was Ṣharaf-ud-Daulah-i-Shīr-Zail.
I. ABU-L-HASAN, SON OF BUWIAH, UD-DILAMI.

He bore the title of Fakhr-ud-Daulah⁹; and he, first rose to power and dominion, from the time that he was Amir [lord] of Ahwaz, when the Turks of Baghdad, whose chief and commander was Tüzün, seized the person of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Muttaki B'illah, and deprived him of his sight, set him aside, and fixed a stipend for his support. Having done this, Tüzün set up the dethroned Khalifah's son, Al-Mustakfi B'illah, in his stead, while Tüzün himself became Amir-ul-Umra¹, and assumed the direction of the whole of the affairs of the Khalifat.

Abū-l-Hasan, son of Buwiah, assembled the troops of Dilam, and marched towards Baghdad; and for a period of four months carried on hostilities with the Turks, at the expiration of which time the Turks were defeated, and put to flight. Abū-l-Hasan took possession of Baghdad, and his commands were obeyed in all matters respecting the government of the territory, and the Khalifat. A party of spies informed him, however, that the Khalifah, Al-Mustakfi, meditated treachery towards him, in order to get him into his power, and intended to put him to death if he succeeded in doing so. Abū-l-Hasan, however, determined to be beforehand and to anticipate his intention, and seized the person of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mustakfi B'illah, blinded him, and set up the Khalifah, Al-Muti'u-L'ilah², in his stead. According to the historian Ut-Tabri³, he gave himself the title of Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, and took the whole power in the State into his own hands, so

---

⁹ He bore no such title: it was Mu'izz-ud-Daulah. His name also, as given by our author, is not correct. It was Abū-l-Ḥusain-i-Aḥmad. For his first rise to power see note ¹, page 55. His elder brother, 'Imād-ud-Daulah, ought to have been the first mentioned here.

¹ Lord of Lords: a title adopted by the ministers, or rather tyrants, of the Khalifahs, in the decline of their power. This title was also often conferred upon the chief commander of an army—a captain-general.

² Fasaḥ-i, among the events of the year 334 H., mentions the succession of Al-Muṭṭi'u-L'ilah, and that he had no territory, and was agreeable to a stipend being allowed him.

³ As these events occurred in 334 H., and Muḥammad, son of Jarir-ut-Ṭabarî, died at Baghdad, in 310 H., although some say in 311 H., our author must refer to the continuation of Ṭabari's Chronicle by the Wazir, Al-Bal'ami.
that Al-Muṭṭi'u-L'illah was Khalīfah only in name, while he ruled the country, issued his mandates, and exercised the supreme authority over the Khilāfah.

Ḥabūl-Ḥasan, son of Buwīḥah, instituted many excellent regulations which he carried out; and he caused the whole of the depopulated and dilapidated parts of Baghdād to be restored and rendered habitable. He also abolished a custom whereby each quarter of the city possessed a separate prison of its own, and had them all demolished. On the son of Ḥabūl-Hayjā' he conferred the fief of Mūṣil, and to his brother, 'Ali, son of Buwīḥah, he gave the title of 'Imād-ud-Daulah, and to another brother, Ḥasan, that of Ṭukhn-ud-Daulah; and day by day the sovereignty of the family of Buwīḥah began to prosper uninterruptedly.

II. AL-ḤASAN6, SON OF BUWĪḤAH, UD-DĪLAMI.

He was Amir of Hamadān and Rai, and was a person of great manliness and generosity; and he entertained a large number of troops in his pay, and possessed great military resources. The whole of the men of Dilam, both high and low, were obedient to his authority. He had several talented and warlike sons grown up, the name of one of whom was Fakhr-ud-Daulah, 'Ali, son of Al-Ḥasan, and of the second, Muayyid-ud-Daulah, Buwīḥah. Fakhr-ud-Daulah, 'Ali, was Amir of Irāḳ, to whom Shams-ul-Ma'āli, Қā❜ūs-i-Waşhm-gir, went for protection, and sought his assistance, and Fakhr-ud-Daulah accordingly marched to Nishāpūr for that purpose, and Muayyid-ud-Daulah had

---

6 Only two sons are mentioned by our author. The I. O. L. MS. also, contains but one name. 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, Abū Šuḥjā'i-Fanā Khusrau, the eldest of the sons, who was accounted 'the cream' of the Buwīḥah family, is not mentioned here. An account of his reign, however, is given at page 61.
several engagements with them, the events of which Ṣābi' has mentioned in his History.

III. BAKHTYÂR, SON OF AL-ḤASAN*, SON OF BUWĪAH, DILÂMÎ.

On the death of his father he took possession of Baghdād, and directed the affairs of government after the manner of his father, and acquired great power and dominion.

As soon as he had become firmly established in his authority, the Khalīfah, Al-Muṭš'ū-L'illah, preferred a request to him respecting the sedition and discord caused by the Karâmištah sect of schismatics, which had assumed great proportions throughout the empire of Islâm, and urged him to assemble forces and suppress them, and uproot them utterly. Bakhtyr, however, did not pay attention to the solicitations of the Khalīfah, and, consequently, enmity arose between them. Matters assumed such an aspect that Bakhtyr was not safe from the designs of Al-Muṭš'ū-L'illah; and the informers of Bakhtyr warned him that the Khalīfah meditated treachery towards him. Bakhtyr sought his opportunity, according to the statement contained in the History of Ibn-Haisam, and assembled together all the Kazîs and 'Ulamâ—judges,

* The oldest MS. has Zāy-yâ; but one of the others has Ṣâbi, and another Ṣâfî, which is one and the same thing, and I also find Guzīdah quotes, as one of its authorities, the Kitâb-i-Nâjr of Šâbi-i-Dabir, or Šâbi, the secretary; and, among the events recorded in Faṣîb-I in the year 365 H., is the death of Šâbit, son of Sinān, son of Šâbit, son of Kurrah, surnamed Abû Kurrah, us-Sâbi, in the month of Zi-Ka'dah, the author of the Šannafah-ut-Târīkh, containing a history of events between the years 195 H., and 343 H. This, no doubt, is the author referred to by the Târîkh-i-Guzīdah, and our author.

* As before stated, the father of Bakhtyr was named Abû-l-Husain-i-Ahmad, son of Buwīah, and his title was Mu'izz-ud-Daulah. Bakhtyr's title was Izz-ud-Daulah, Abû Mansûr-i-Bakhtyr. Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, the father of Bakhtyr, died at Baghdād, of which he was ruler on the part of his nephew, Amîr 'Uzâd-ud-Daulah, the head of the dynasty, on the 1st of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 356 H., but, according to other writers, on the 16th of that month. He was known by the name of Ikṭâ', having lost his left hand, and the fingers of his right, in an affair with the Kurds of Kirman according to the Târīkh-i-Yâfa'i, but other writers say, with the Kûch and Baluchar, a nomad tribe [two tribes] then inhabiting a portion of Kirman, according to the Burhan Kâtî, and from whom the present Balûchis are descended. Kûch in Persian, among other meanings, signifies a nomad, and in the Afghan language, Kochaey, which some persons, who know no better, imagine to be the name of an Afghan tribe, signifies "pastoral" or "nomad."
lawyers, and ecclesiastics—and transferred the office of Khalifah to the son of Al-Muṭi‘u-l-‘illah whose name was Abū-Bikr-i-‘Abd-ul-‘Karīm, and gave him the title of Uṯ-Tā-i-l-‘illah. As soon as he was installed in the Khilāfāt, he gave his daughter in marriage to Bakhtyār, Buwīah, and he became the chamberlain and lieutenant of the Khilāfāt.

Soon after this dignity was conferred upon Bakhtyār, he set out for Ahwāz in order to levy the revenues and taxes. Sabuk-Tigin, Chāshnī-gīr, [cup-bearer or taster] who was Bakhtyār’s deputy, began to act insubordinately towards his master, and took the power out of his hands.

IV. FANĀ KHUSRAU, SON OF AL-ḤASAN, SON OF BUWĪAH, DILĀMI.

The title borne by Khusrav was ‘Uzd-ud-Daulah, and he was a proud and haughty prince, but was, at the same time, endowed with great intellect and valour.

The direction of the affairs of the country, and the different forces were left under his control; and the whole of the property and treasure of the dependencies of the Dār-

The author himself states, in his account of the Khalifas, Section IV., that Al-Muṭi‘u-l-‘illah abdicated in favour of his son, in 363 H., on account of his infirmities. Other historians confirm it; but, in Faṣīḥ-Ī, it is said that he abdicated at the end of Muharram, 364 H., having previously been stricken with palsy, and died two months afterwards. It must also be remembered that the Buwīah rulers were Shi‘ahs, hence probably their severity towards the Khalifas.

Her name was Shāh-i-Zamān, and she had a dowry of 100,000 dinārs.

Al-Fanākatī considers Fanā Khusrav third prince of the dynasty.

In 366 H., Rukn-ud-Daulah, Abū ‘Alī-i-Ḥasan, son of Buwīah, brother of ‘Imād-ud-Daulah, the founder of the dynasty, died. Some say he died in 365 H. He had succeeded his elder brother, ‘Imād-ud-Daulah, who died without issue, in the sovereignty of Fars, the sovereign of which was, in that family, considered suzerain over the other two branches, who ruled in Irāk, and at Baghdad. Rukn-ud-Daulah bequeathed his dominions in the following manner:—To his youngest brother, Mu‘izz-ud-Daulah, Aḥmad, he left Kirmān. He afterwards became Amir-ul-Umrā at Baghdad. He was the father of Bakhtyār; and our author calls him Al-Ḥasan, and says he was the second prince of the dynasty. To ‘Uzd-ud-Daulah, Abū Shujā-i-Fanā Khusrav, his eldest son, he left the sovereignty of Fars; and he became the head of the family, and suzerain over all. To his second son, Muṣyīd-ud-Daulah, Abū Naṣr, he left Irāk and its dependencies; and to his youngest son, Fakhr-ud-Daulah, ‘Alī, he bequeathed Rai, Hamadān, Kazwīn, and other territory in Aṣarbājān.
ul-Khilāfat came into his possession. The reason of this was, that, when Bakhtyār set out for Āhwāz, to collect the revenue due to the Bait-ul-Māl, or Khalifah’s treasury, Sabuk-Tigin, the Chāshni-gir [cup-bearer], who was his deputy at Baghādād, assembled the Turks together, and opposed the authority of Bakhtyār, drove out the Dilamis, broke out into open revolt, and began to act in an overbearing and tyrannical manner. They [the Turks and Sabuk-Tigin] commenced shedding the blood of Musalmāns, and carrying off their females. 'Īzz-ud-Daulah, Bakhtyār, sent to acquaint his uncle Abū-l-Ḥasan, son of Buwīah, who was ruler of Rai, with what had occurred; and to his first cousin, Fanā Khusrau-i-Abū Shujā’, who held the government of Fārs, he also gave information; and solicited assistance from both of them. A large army was assembled, and Fanā Khusrau came to his aid with the troops of Fārs; and Abū-l-Ḥasan, his uncle, despatched his forces to co-operate with them.

The combined troops marched towards Baghādād; and Sabuk-Tigin, with the Turks and other forces, moved out of Baghādād, and advanced to meet them. When Sabuk-Tigin and his adherents reached the village of 'Ākul, he was taken ill, and died after four days. The Turks were defeated; and they took along with them from Baghādād, the Lord of the Faithful, Ut-Tā-i’u-L’illah, and marched towards Nahrwān, in order again to encounter Fanā Khusrau. They were defeated a second time, however, and retired towards Müsil.

Fanā Khusrau entered Baghādād, and found with respect to the affairs of his cousin, Bakhtyār, that he was in the habit of passing his time in gaiety and pleasure, and that he was no longer fit for and capable of directing the affairs of government. He therefore seized Bakhtyār, and put him in durance. The latter sent a letter of complaint to his uncle, Abū-l-Ḥasan, son of Buwīah, the father of Fanā Khusrau, ruler of Rai, saying: "Your son, Fanā Khusrau, has seized me without cause or reason, and has imprisoned me."

1 Intended, according to the Kur‘ān, "For God, His Apostle, his kindred, the orphan, the poor, and travellers."

2 As before stated, the name of Rukn-ud-Daulah, the uncle of Bakhtyār, was Abū 'Alī-i-Ḥasan.

3 A small town or village in the Müsil [not Mosal] territory.
The father of Fana Khusrau issued a mandate to his son, directing him to set Bakhtyār at liberty. This he did, and he [Fana Khusrau] returned to Fārs; but, when his father died, Fana Khusrau proceeded to Baghādād, again seized Bakhtyār, and put him to death, after which he took possession of the territory of Baghādād, and the control of the affairs of the Khilāfat.

He entered into a compact with the Sāmānī Amīrs for the mountain tracts, or Highlands of 'Irāk, as far as Ṭabaristān, of which he received the tenure from them, at the rate of one thousand dinārs per day.

Fana Khusrau ruled with vigour and energy; and, as before stated, was excessively proud, but of great spirit and resolution. He had, however, great dread of death, so much so that not a soul dared to mention before his throne, in any way, the name of the Gor-i-Dashti, or Wild Ass, because Gor also signifies a grave; and it is stated that he commanded that all graveyards should be enclosed with lofty walls, so that his eyes might not behold a grave. Of his pride and grandeur the following is a specimen. After his decease, eight thousand napkins and handkerchiefs, of great price and fineness of fabric, befitting a king, were found, belonging to him, of brocade, linen, and Egyptian tūzī, threaded and embroidered with gold, and ornamented with jewels, with which he was wont to wipe his mouth and nose, and which fetched the price of 50,000 dinārs of gold.

When his end drew near, he affixed his seal to mandates and decrees, which he gave into the hands of his secretary, directing him to fill them up according to the best of his own ability and judgment, and to issue, and carry them into execution, and not to let people know of his death. For a period of four months his decease was kept con-

---

8 Izz-ud-Daulah, Abū Maṇṣūr-i-Bakhtyār, is said, by the author of the Mujmal-i-Faṣīḥ, to have ended his days at Baghādād, in 367 H., having been put to death by his nephew, 'Uṣd-ud-Daulah, Abū Shuja'-i-Fanā Khusrau, after he had ruled there for a period of eleven years and some months, at the age of thirty-six, and Bahā ud-Daulah, Khusrau Fīrūz, son of 'Uṣd-ud-Daulah, his nephew, succeeded him as ruler of Baghādād.

9 The name of an expensive and fine fabric so called from being the peculiar manufacture of a town or city of that name, now in ruins. It is said to have been manufactured from flax; but tūzī is also the name of the bark of a tree like the papyrus.
cealed, and they continued to place his corpse upon the throne, so that people, from a distance, could see him, as they supposed, as usual. When his end drew near, he directed that ashes should be spread upon the floor, in which he rolled about, exclaiming, “What advantageth all my wealth and my sovereignty, since death has overcome me!” until he ceased to be.

His death took place in the month of Ramażān, in the year 372 H. The Almighty alone is eternal.

V. AL-MARZABĀN, SON OF FANĀ KHUSRAU, DīLAMI.

On the decease of his father 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, the Khalifah, Ut-Tā-i’ullāh, conferred upon him the title of Şamsām-ud-Daulah, and raised him to his father's office.

The Khalifah treated him with great esteem and distinction. He embarked on board a vessel on the river Dijṭah [Tigris] and proceeded to the palace of Fanā Khusrāu, and paid a visit of consolation and condolence to his son, Marzabān, and conferred considerable honours and dignities upon him. The Khalifah left the administration of affairs in his hands, and showed great respect and honour towards...
him. He [Marzaban] exercised the authority at Baghdad until his brother, Abū-l-Fawāris, rose against him.

VI. ABŪ-L-FAWĀRIS, MĀKĀN, SON OF FANĀ KHUSRAU, DĪLAMI.

He was ruler of Kirmān; and, when he became aware of the death of his father, and heard of the exalted position of his brother at the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, he assembled troops in Kirmān, and entered Fārs, and seized upon that territory. He then advanced to Āhwāz, and possessed himself of that likewise, having expelled from thence his brother Abī-ul-Hasan-i-Abi Shujā', son of Fanā Khusrau, and then he pushed on to Baṣraḥ. Having gained possession of that place he marched towards Baghdad.

When the news of his approach, and his designs, reached Baghdad, his brother, Samsam-ud-Daulah, Marzaban, son of Fanā Khusrau, came out and waited on him, in order to show his submission and pay him homage. Abū-l-Fawāris-i-Mākān seized his brother, and deprived him of his sight.

Enmity and hostility now arose between the Turks and Dilamis; and the Turks of Baghdad overcame their opponents, and of the Dilamis about 4000 men were slain by them. After a short time, however, Abū-l-Fawāris overthrew them, and entered Baghdad, and assumed the administration of the affairs of the Dār-ul-Khilāfat. The Khalifah, ʿUt-Ṭāʾ-ʾu-Lʾillah, conferred upon him the title of Sharaf-ud-Daulah.

After him, the author has not found any annals respecting the Diālamah such as he could write down. What

---

3 In the year 375 H.
4 His correct titles and name are, Sharaf-ud-Daulah, Abū-l-Fawāris-i-Shīr Zail, son of ʿUṣd-ud-Daulah. All the copies of the work have "Mākān," but it is not mentioned by any other writer that I am acquainted with.
5 He was imprisoned in the fortress of ʾUmmān after being blinded in 375 H.; and on the death of Sharaf-ud-Daulah, who had dethroned him, he was again brought forth, blind as he was, and reinstated. After about nine months, Shams-ud-Daulah, ʿAlī, son of Sharaf-ud-Daulah, rose against him, whom he defeated in 379 H.; but Bahā-ud-Daulah now rose against him, and civil contention continued for some time, till, in 380 H., the sons of ʾIzz-ud-Daulah, Bakhtyār, put him to death.
6 Sharaf-ud-Daulah, and Zain-ul-Millat, in 377 H. He died in the month of Jamāḥ-ʾul-Ākhir, 379 H., after reigning seven years over Kirmān, and six months at Baghdad.
was contained in histories, and what came to his hearing, has been entered herein, so that this work may not be without mention of those princes; and he hopes that those who may peruse it will extend pardon and indulgence to the author for any shortcomings.

7 The dynasty of the Buwlahs did not terminate until 459 H., or eighty two years after the date of our author's account of them, when it fell before the power of the Saljûks. His great mistake throughout has been in not keeping the rulers of Fârs, 'Irâk, and Kirmân, separate from those who ruled at Baghdad. Al-Fânakâfî gives a more accurate account of this dynasty, although a very abridged one. The last of the family was Abû 'Alî-i-Kai-khusrau, son of 'Izz-ul-Mulûk, who died in 487 H., and who submitted to Alb-Arsalân, and had a small tract of territory assigned to him.
SECTION XI.

THE DYNASTY OF THE YAMĪNĪAH', AL-MAḤMŪDİAH
SOVEREIGNS OF THE RACE OF SABUK-TIGĪN.

The pages of this section are devoted to the mention of the Malikṣ and Sultāns of the dynasty of Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Sabuk-Tigīn, and of Sultān Yāmīn-ud-Daulah, Niẓām-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Ḵāsim, Maḥmūd, the Conqueror, and to the description of the events in their lives; to an account of their lineage; to the record of their justice and equity, and the incidents in their reigns; to the vicissitudes and changes in the fortunes, and the dominion of the sovereigns of that family of exalted power and might, from the outset of the career of the Amīr-i-Ghāzi, Sabuk-Tigīn, to the end of the reign of Khusrau Malik, the last of that dynasty of kings, in an abridged and concise form, in order that this Ṭabaḵāt of kings and nobles may be illumined by the mention of their lineage and their titles, and the pages of this history be adorned and ennobled by the relation of the deeds of those sovereigns of Islam, whom may the light of Almighty God illumine!

Imām Abū-l-Fażl, Al-Ḥasan-i-Baiḥakī, in his chronicle

¹ So called from Maḥmūd's title of Yāmīn-ud-Daulah.
² The printed edition of the ṬABAḴĀT-I-NĀṢĪRĪ, edited by Lieut.-Colonel W. N. Lees, LL.D., and his Maulawīs, commences from this Section. It forms No. 42—50 of the BIBLIOTHECA INDICA, New Series. I have been unable to make any use of it for a very cogent reason, that not a page of it is correct. Whole sentences are often wanting, and, at times, much more; and the names of persons and places are frequently wrongly spelt. The work, however, appears to have been printed from the text of the MS. No. 1952 of the India Office Library, and the Royal Asiatic Society's MS., to which I have before alluded, both of which are the most defective and incorrect of any I have collated. The same errors occur in each, in nearly every instance. To restore the text would be impossible without entirely reprinting the work. I may say, however, that the state of most of the MSS. I have collated is such that it would be impossible to give anything like a correct version without examining the number of copies which I have been so fortunate as to find in different Libraries, and others which have been placed at my disposal through the kindness of their owners, and of the Imperial Russian Government in particular.

³ So called from Baiḥak, the name of his native town, which is also called Muḵīr, in Zāwulīstān. His correct name will be found in note ⁴, page 87. The passage above quoted may have been contained in the first portion of his work; but is not to be found in what has been preserved, as far as we know.
entitled "Tārīkh-i-Nāṣiri," relates the following tradition told him by the august Sultān Mahmūd himself, which the latter had heard from his father, the Amīr Sabuk-Tīgin, [namely] that his [Sabuk-Tīgin's] father used to be called by the name of Karā Bāh-kam; and that his [proper] name was Ḥūk; and that Ghar-ghāū in the Turkish language is called Bāh-kam; and that the meaning of Karā Bāh-kam would be the Black Tātar Bull; and everywhere that the

In eight copies of the text the words "لا مِلَك" occur, and of this number one MS. says, that these Turkish words mean "لا مِلَك" but all the other copies differ. In the very old MS. previously referred to, which copy I shall here call No. 1 MS., the passage stands as follows:

The printed text is similar to No. 7, except that it has in both instances. The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, the R. A. S. MS., and the St. Petersburg MS. No. 572 Ab. are all alike defective here, I shall call them Nos. 10, 12, and 13 respectively.
Turks, in Turkistan, heard his name mentioned, they fled before him on account of his energy and valour.

Imām Muḥammad 'Alī, Abū-l-Ḵāsim, 'Imādi, in his work, the “Tārikh-i-Majdūl,” states, that Amir Sabuk-

It will be noticed that four copies say his name was ٥٦ [Hark, or Ḥurk], which might possibly be read ٥٧ [Ḫuk, or Hauk], as in the two best copies, whilst in two other copies the word is ٥٨ [Juk, or Jauk], and in another ٥٩ [Jūn]. Then comes the signification of the Turkish word, as it is called, ٦٠ [嘧, or Ḥak], in five copies, it is said to mean ٦١ [阇, or Juk], in another ٦٢ [阇, or Jauk] and in three others ٦٣ [阇, or Jauk], and in one ٦٤ [阇]. The printed text has ٦٥ [阇, or Jauk]. The Arabic words (٦٦, ٦٧) contained in two copies of the text—in one of the best and one of the most modern—would be intelligible enough, but we are told that the words, whether ٦٨ or ٦٩ are Turkish, and that they signify ٧٠ [阇, or Jauk], and that whichever we choose to select, and we must presume that these words are intended for the Persian equivalents of the Turkish. The word ٧١ must be ٧٢ [阇, or Jauk], also written ٧٣ —Ghajz-ghau; and, at times, ٧٤ —Ghaz-ghau; and as in the Persian language is permutable to ٧٥ of the words are, and may be respectively written, ٧٦ or ٧٧ signifying a Khita‘l bull—the Yilk [Bos Grun- nienš], found in the vast mountain tracts of Central Asia, north of Hindūstān, the tail of which is fastened to the manes and necks of horses, and as an ornament to Tartar and Turkish standards [hence “a Pachah” of so many “tails”]. The author from whom I take this says, “Its real name is Gāo-i-Khiṭā‘l, the Khiṭā‘l bull, and is called ٧٨ by the Rūmfs [Greeks], who say it is a ‘sea- horse.’ It is also called the ‘Silk Bull,’ as ٧٩ and ٨٠ also signify silk.” The word ٨١ or, more correctly, ٨٢ is, of course, the Turkish for ٨٣ in Persian ٨٤. In Elliott’s INDIA, vol. ii, p. 266, the passage in question is thus translated: “His [Subuktigin’s] father was called ٨٥ —Jauk [troop], and in Turki they call a troop bahkam [on whose authority, I wonder?] so that the meaning of the name Kard-bahkam is black-troop.”

From this it will be seen that the translator has discarded altogether, both ٨٦ of MSS. 10 and 11, and ٨٧ of the printed text, and has given the person’s Turkish real name as the equivalent [the Persian equivalent, it must be sup- posed] of his Turkish nickname; so according to this theory ٨٨ means troop, and ٨٩ also means troop, but what becomes of the Persian translation ٨٠ &c., the translator sayeth not! Jauk, however, is Arabic for a party, a troop, &c., but what ٨١ may mean, remains to be proved. I have an idea, however, from the manner in which the word is written, in one place, in one of the MSS., viz. ٨٢ —Baj-kam, that ٨٣ —Bāb-kam—is an error of some early copyist [but ٨٤ and ٨٥ are interchangeable] for ٨٦ —Bah-kam, “a wolf,” which word is used, but not commonly, in Persian, and probably is Turkish; and it is not impossible that the author quoted may have been under the impression that a Khiṭā‘l bull was the same beast ٨٧ —Gurg, a wolf; and, therefore, I am inclined to think that the correct interpretation is, that Sabuk- Tigin’s father was called in Turkish, the Black Wolf, meaning a soldier of [black being expressive of excess, &c.] excessive fierceness and daring. This reading, as I have said before, is not certain; but I do not think any thing more intelligible can be made of it without Bāhak’s work to refer to; but that portion does not appear to be in existence.

A few copies have ٨٨ [Ḫamādī], which is incorrect.
Tigín was a descendant of Yazdijurd-i-Shahryār—the last of the sovereigns of Persia—and, that, at the time that Yazdijurd was murdered in the mill in the territory of Marw, which was during the Khilāfat of the Lord of the Faithful, 'Uṣmān, the family and dependents of Yazdijurd fled before the troops of Islam into Turkistān, and reached the frontier district of Nakhistān in that territory, and there took up their residence, and intermarried with the people. After two or three generations had passed away, they became Turks; and their palaces are still standing in that country.

The pedigree of Sabuk-Tigín is given in the above history after the manner in which it is here entered, in order that it may come under the notice of the king of the world—May the Almighty perpetuate his sovereignty!—and of such others as may peruse this work, viz.:—Sabuk-Tigín, son of Ḥūk-i-Ḵārā Bah-kam, son of Ḵāra [Ḵāra ?] Arsālān, son of Ḵāra [Ḵāra ?] Mallat [or Millat], son of Ḵārā Na'mān, son of Fīrūz-i-Bam-siṅjān [?], or Barsiṅjān [?], son of Yazdijurd-i-Shahryār, or Yazdijurd, the king.

I. AMĪR-UL-GHAṬI, NASĪR-UD-DĪN-ULLAH, SABUK-TIGIŅ.

Imām Abū-I-Fażl-i-Baihaḵī states that, during the reign of Abd-ul-Malik-i-Nūḥ, the Sāmānī, there was a merchant named Naṣr, the Ḥājī [pilgrim], who purchased Sabuk-
Tigin and brought him to Bukhārā. Perceiving in his countenance evident signs of capacity and energy, the Amir-i-Ḥājib [Lord Chamberlain], Alb-Tigin, purchased him. He accompanied his master into Ṭukhāristān, when the government of that territory was entrusted to him; and subsequently, when the government of Khurāsān was made over to Amir Alb-Tigin, Sabuk-Tigin attended him thither also. After some time had passed away, Alb-Tigin, through the vicissitudes of fortune, retired towards Ghaznīn, and subdued the territory of Zāwulistān, and wrested Ghaznīn out of the hands of Amir Abū-Bikr-i-Lawīk.

Eight years subsequently to these events Amir Alb-Tigin died, and his son, Is-hāk, succeeded to his father's authority. He entered into hostilities against Lawīk, but was defeated, and retired to Bukhārā, to the court of Amir Manṣūr, son of Nūḥ, Sāmānī, and there continued until

---

8 See note 8, page 70.
4 See under the reign of Manṣūr, son of Nūḥ, the eighth sovereign of the Sāmānī dynasty.

"In the year 322 H., Alb-Tigin, the Turk, the slave of the Sāmānī dynasty, took Ghaznīn, and Lawīk, the Wālī [the word here signifies a chief or sovereign, as he does not appear to have been subject to the Sāmānīs] of that territory, fled." Nothing more is mentioned respecting Alb-Tigin, in the work from which I have extracted these occurrences, until 346 H. There had been repeated changes in the government of Hirāt for some time past, and considerable disorder had arisen therein. "In 346 H.," I find that "Abī Manṣūr, son of 'Abd-ur-Razzāk, the Wālī of Hirāt and its dependencies, gave up his appointment, and withdrew to Tūs again, in consequence of which great agitation and commotion arose at Hirāt." On this becoming known to the Sāmānī court, the Ḥājib, Alb-Tigin, who appears from this to have administered the affairs of Ghaznīn since 322 H., was entrusted with the government. He sent to Hirāt, as his deputy, Is-hāk-i-Ṭāhirī; but he was very shortly removed, and Ḥasan, son of Rībāl, was sent to replace him. In 350 H. Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Sīmjūr was sent to govern Hirāt; and, in the following year, having been promoted to the rank of Ṣāhib-ul-Jaish [Commander-in-Chief of an army], he proceeded to Nīshāpūr, and was succeeded, at Hirāt, by Abū-l-Ḥasan, son of 'Umro, Fāryābī. After he had held it four months the government was bestowed upon Ṭalḥāh, son of Muḥammad, Nisā'. In the following year, "352 H., Alb-Tigin, the Turk, died at Ghaznīn, and was succeeded in the government by his son, Is-hāk," subordinate, of course, to the Sāmānī sovereigns, although Mr. E. Thomas, in his paper "ON THE COINS OF THE KINGS OF GHAZNI," in Ro. As. Soc. Journal for 1859, styles them kings and speaks of their reigns, when they were merely subordinate governors. The most astonishing thing, however, is, how our author makes out that Alb-Tigin died eight years after his seizure of Ghaznīn. From 322 to 352 H. is a period of thirty years; but then he generally eschews dates. According to Faṣḥīb-ī and others, Alb-Tigin was born in 267 H., and died in the year above-mentioned.
that ruler directed that aid should be afforded to him, when Is-hâk came back again to Ghaznin, and regained possession of it. After a year Is-hâk died, when Balkâ-

6 Is-hâk succeeded his father in the government in 352 H., and died in 355 H., and so ruled for about four years. Among the events of the year 353 H., Faşih-i mentions that "Amîr Is-hâk, son of Alb-Tîgin, attended by Sabuk-Tîgin, his father's slave—who is mentioned for the first time in that work—fled from Ghaznin, and proceeded to Bukhârâ, and obtained the investiture of the government of that province from the Sâmânî sovereign." In the following year, 354 H., the same work states that "Is-hâk, son of Alb-Tîgin, the Turk, the slave of the house of Sâmânî, returned to Ghaznin again, and fought against Lawîk [this name is also confirmed by other writers, and there is no doubt of its correctness], who, previously, had been Wâll [sovereign or chief], of Ghaznin, and had been ousted by Alb-Tîgin. When Is-hâk retired to Samrâkand, Lawîk returned to Ghaznin, but now that Is-hâk had come back again, Lawîk again fled."

Mr. Thomas, in his paper just referred to, trusting implicitly, it would seem, to the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, and the R. A. S. copy of our author's work, calls Amir, Abî Bikr-i-Lawîk, "the Anûk." In those two MSS. Amir, Abû Bikr, is left out altogether, but occurs in the other MSS., although some have ०५.८ instead of ०५.८! yet in a note Mr. Thomas says,—"I propose with but slight hesitation a rectification of the orthography to ०५.८, or 'Lumghân,' the Lampâge of classical writers," from a personal to a local name! Into what mazes of error do not the "classical writers" draw their disciples as regards Oriental history! See note F., Elliott's INDIA, vol. ii, last par., which is quite to the point.

On the death of Is-hâk, Balkâ-Tîgin, the slave of Alb-Tîgin, succeeded to the government of Ghaznin, by order of Amîr Nûh, son of Naşr, the Sâmânî sovereign. Balkâ-Tîgin died in 362 H., after being governor eight years. Mr. Thomas, on this passage in our author, in which the latter says Balkâ-Tîgin ruled ten years, remarks: "Two copies of the work, out of the three I have at this moment the opportunity of consulting, give fe instead of fwo [years]; the former, however, is a palpable error." I wonder on which side the error lies really? This is not all. In his remarks on the "coin of Mansûr, son of Nûh, with the name of Balkâ-Tîgin under the symbol, on the obverse," Mr. Thomas gives a translation of his Excellency, State Counsellor Von Dorn's description, and a woodcut of it, contained in the St. Petersburg Journal. If the translation is correct, of which there can be but little doubt, his Excellency must have been somewhat in the dark respecting the Sâmânîs, and their connexion with Ghaznin, which formed part of their dominions. What I refer to is this: "History mentions only the conquest of Alp-Tîgin, but is silent in regard to the rule of the Sâmânîs in Ghazna. We see from our coin that Balkâ, or Balkâ-Tîgin, in the year A.H. 359 was chief of the Sâmâni party in this city. His name appears already on the Balkh coins of A.H. 324. Subsequently he passed over to Alptegen's cause [!] became chamberlain under Abû Ishâk, and is said to have ascended the throne after the death of the latter in A.H. 365." This is absurd. What sort of history can it be that is silent in regard to the rule of the Sâmânîs in Ghaznin," when it formed an integral part of their empire? Balkâ-Tîgin, in 324 H., was governor of the province of which Balkh was the seat of government, hence his name on the coin referred to.
Tigin, who was the chief or commander of the Turkish troops, was raised to the government. He was a just and pious man, and one of the greatest warriors of his time. He exercised the authority for a period of ten years, and died. Sabuk-Tigin was in his service.

After the death of Amir Balkā-Tigin, Pirey succeeded to the authority. He was a great villain; and a body of people wrote from Ghaznin to Abū 'Ali-i-Lawik, and invited him to come there. Abū 'Ali-i-Lawik acceded to their request, and brought along with him the son of the Shāh, or king, of Kābul to assist him. When they reached the vicinity of Charkh, Sabuk-Tigin, with a body of five hundred Turks, suddenly fell upon them, and defeated them, killed a great number of their followers, took them captive also, and slew them. He also captured ten elephants, and brought them to Ghaznin.

Such a great success having been gained by Sabuk-Tigin, and all having become quite sated with the villainies and misdeeds of Pirey, with one accord, they raised Sabuk-Tigin to the direction of affairs. On Friday, the 27th of the month of Sha'bān, 366 H., Amir

Our author is quite correct as to Pirey, but gives no details or dates. I will furnish them. "On the death of Balkā-Tigin, in 362 H., Pirey, the slave of Alb-Tigin [as was his predecessor and successor also], obtained the government. In the following year, 363 H., Pirey, the Wali of Ghaznin, with the help of Sabuk-Tigin, fought a battle with a body of infidels who had advanced out of Hind for the purpose of seizing Ghaznin, overthrew them, and despoiled them. This event is confirmed from other annals. In the year 367 H. Pirey was deposed from the government [as our author records], and the government passed to Sabuk-Tigin." He was confirmed by the Sāmānī ruler, but soon after, on the decline of their power, became independent in all things, except, perhaps, in name.

The "Kitāb," or "Tarikh-i-Yamīnī," which is considered to be a very trustworthy and authentic history, contains, judging from Reynold's version, not one word about Sabuk-Tigin having been Alb-Tigin's slave, although probably transferred as such to Balkā-Tigin, and his son Isbāk; and makes no mention of the government of Amir Pirey, although he ruled over the province of Ghaznin for just five years.

A well known place situated a few miles from the right or east bank of the Lohgar river on one of the routes between Kabul and Ghaznin. Abū-Fażl, the secretary, mentions in the A'in-i-Akbarī, that Charkh is so called after a pious man, one Maulānā-i-Charkhī.

Faṣiḥfī says this took place in 367 H., the same year that 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Abū Ma'sūr-i-Bakhtyar, Buwāh, was put to death at Baghdād. See page 63. In the same year Sabuk-Tigin appointed Abū-l-'Abbās, Al-Fażl-i-ʾAḥmad, son of Muḥammad, Al-Isfarānī, his Wazīr. He had acted
Sabuk-Tigin, with a scarlet canopy held over him, and attended by a large following with standards, came down from the citadel, and proceeded to the Jāmī' Masjid, or Great Mosque, and the administration of the government and the sovereignty of that province was settled upon him.

Soon after, he put his forces in motion and marched from Ghaznin towards the adjacent parts, and took possession of the districts of Bust, Zāmīn [district] of Dāwar, the Zāmīn of Kuśdār, and Bāmiān, all Tukhrīstān, and Ghūr 1.

On the side of Hind, he overthrew Jai-pāl 2, with numerous elephants and a host of troops, and he rid the Sāmānī family of Bughrā Khān of Kāshghār, and marched to Balkh, and sent back the Amir of Bukhārā to take re-possession of his throne.

During the time that Amir Sabuk-Tigin held the government, great deeds were performed; and he completely put an end to the iniquitous heresy of the Bātināh schismatics in Khurāsān 3.

in the same office to Fāyīk-i-Khāṣah, and, after the latter's defeat, Amir Sabuk-Tigin took him under his patronage. Wazīr does not necessarily mean the minister of a sovereign prince only; and Sabuk-Tigin was not yet independent.

1 The mode of spelling the word by its people, and on the authority of the Burhān-i-Kātī and other works.

2 "In 369 H., Jai-pāl, 'Badshah' of Hind, as he is termed, marched an army towards Ghaznīn to attack Amīr Nāsīr-ud-Dīn, Sabuk-Tigīn; but an accommodation was come to, and Jai-pāl again retired." This is quite a different affair from that in which Sabuk-Tigīn assisted Amīr Pīrey, mentioned in a previous note. It must be remembered too, that, at this time, the country west of the Indus, between Safti-Koh west, and the Salt-Range on the east, and Hindī-Kugh, extending as far west as Kābul, was still under Hindī rule. The Afgānīs had not extended northward of the river Kurmah [erroneously called the Kurum and Koorum] at this time.

3 Our author says nothing about the affair of Bust in 370 H., or of Sabuk-Tigīn's raid on the frontier districts of Hind in 376 H., when he carried off many captives and much booty. In the same year he took possession of the territory of Kuśdār. In 378 H., Sabuk-Tigīn again encountered Jai-pāl, king of Hind, who was routed, and pursued by him. A peace was afterwards concluded, the terms being that "Jai-pāl should cede unto Sabuk-Tigīn four of the fortresses of Hind on the side of Ghaznīn, and one hundred elephants." In 380 H., an occurrence took place, which few writers have noticed, namely, the imprisonment of Mahmūd in the fortress of Ghaznīn, by his father's orders, where he remained until the following year. In 382 H. Amīr Nūḥ, son of Mansūr, Sāmānī, reached Hirāt, attended by Sabuk-Tigīn, and marched against Abū 'Alī-i-Sīmjūr, whom they defeated. See page 46, and note. In 384 H. Amīr Nūḥ conferred the government of Khurāsān upon Sabuk-Tigīn; and in the same year Amīr Nuḥ defeated Abū-'Alī-i-Sīmjūr at Nīshāpūr.
THE YAMINIAH DYNASTY.

In the month of Shawwāl, 384 H., his son, Amir Maḥmūd, was made captain-general of the forces of Khurāsān, and received the title of Saif-ud-Daulah, while Amir Sabuk-Tīgin himself received that of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-ullah. Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Simjūr they defeated and repulsed, and Khurāsān became cleared of their enemies.

Amir Sabuk-Tīgin was a man of great valour and intrepidity, just and pious, faithful, true to his word, not avaricious of other men's goods, kind and compassionate to his people, and a discerner between right and wrong; and, in fact, every sign and indication of all such virtues and accomplishments as are desirable in kings and nobles, the Almighty had amply endowed him with. He ruled for a period of twenty years; and was fifty-six years old when he died. His decease took place on the frontier of Balkh, at the village of Madrū-mūe, in the year 387 H.

His sons were Ismā'īl, Naṣr, Maḥmūd, Ḥusain, Ḥasan, and Yūsuf.

II. SULTĀN-UL-A'ZAM, YAMĪN-UD-DAULAH, NIẒĀM-UD-ḤĪN, ABŪ-L-KĀSIM, MAḤMŪD-I-GHĀZĪ, SON OF SABUK-TĪGIN.

Sultān Maḥmūd-i-Ghāzī was a great monarch, and was the first among the sovereigns of Islām, who was styled

385 H. Sabuk-Tīgin defeated Abū 'Alī-i-Simjūr, and Fāyīḵ at Tūs. Among the events of the year 387 H. recorded in Faṣīḥ-i, are the deaths of Amīr Nūḥ, son of Maṃṣūr, Sāmānī, and Nāṣir-ud-dīn, Sabuk-Tīgin, the Mawla, or manumitted slave of the house of Sāmānī.

4 From the Sāmānī sovereigns, see page 47. Abū 'Alī, the son of Abū Ḥasan-i-Simjūr was the person who was defeated: Abū-l-Ḥasan, the father, had died previously. See pages 45 and 48.

5 This name is written in various ways:—Barmal-Madrie, Madrie, Madrīf, and, in one MS., Tirmaz. In the translation of Yamīnī, p. 201, it is said that a palace [!] was erected at the place where he died, and that it was named Sahl-ābād. Baiḥākī says his tomb is at Afghan-Shāl, a place mentioned by Babar.

6 Ismāʿīl succeeded his father; but our author ignores him as a sovereign, which is not correct, for Ismāʿīl was only dethroned in 389 H., two years after the decease of his father, by Maḥmūd, who sent him to the fortress of Kālinjar, “now known as Talwārah,” according to Faṣīḥ-i. The same authority states: “some say Ismāʿīl was confined in the fortress of Jūjānān.” Fānākāṭī states that Maḥmūd succeeded in 388 H., and that Ismāʿīl was sent to a fortress in 389 H.

7 Baiḥākī considers Maḥmūd to be the first sovereign of this dynasty.
Sultan⁶ by the Court of the Khalifahs of Baghdad. He
was born on the night of 'Ashūrā, the 10th of the month
Muḥarram, in the year 361 H⁷, in the seventh year of the
government of Amir Balkā-Tīgin, at Ghaznin.

About one hour before his being ushered into the world,
Sabuk-Tīgin, his father, saw in a dream, that there began to
issue from the chafing-dish [used in those countries instead
of having fire-places in the wall, and placed in the centre of
the apartment] in his room, a tree, which began to grow to
such a height that the whole world began to be over-
shadowed by it. When he awoke from his sleep, he began
to ponder in his mind what the interpretation of this
dream could be, when a bearer of good news presented
himself, bringing intelligence that the Almighty had been
pleased to give him a son. At this joyful announcement
Sabuk-Tīgin became overjoyed, and said to the mes-
senger: "I have given him the name of Maḥmūd¹." 

The same night also upon which Maḥmūd was born, the
idol-temple of Wahand or Bihand [it may also be read
Wahind, or Bahind], which was situated on the confines of
Barshābūr⁸, on the bank of the river Sind, split asunder.

---

⁶ There is a different version given as to how and when Maḥmūd became
styled Sultān. When Maḥmūd took the fortress of Tāk in Sijistān, by assault,
and Khalaf was brought before him, the latter addressed Maḥmūd by the title
of Sultān. This pleased Maḥmūd so much that he gave Khalaf his life. The
titles bestowed upon Maḥmūd by the Khalifah, and also bestowed, according
to Baihaḵī, upon Masʿud, were as follow: "The right hand of the empire,
defender of orthodoxy, the guardian of the true religion and of the true believers,
the regulator of the faith, the friend of the Lord of the Faithful." See note⁹,
page 80.

⁷ Faḵīḥ-I says he was born on that date in 360 H.

¹ The past. part. of the Arabic verb ḫann used as an adjective, signifying—
laudable, praised, worthy, &c.

² Out of the thirteen MSS. collated, four agree respecting the word
Barshābūr, and three have Parghāwar. These are meant, probably, for the
present Parghawar. Six copies have Nīshābūr; and six copies say that the
idol-temple in question was situated on the bank of the Sūdahra [Sudhara
Sūdahra; စီဝွဦး; စီဝွဦး သို့စီဝွဦး], an old name of the Chinchāb, see the Sādhtira—l|,|, farther on],
and a fifth copy has, the bank of the Āb-i-Shudah [sādah]. 'Uṭba ['Uṭba]
quoted in Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. pp. 27 and 41, makes the "Sihun" the Indus;
and in Reynolds' version of the same work, the Indus is called the "Jihun!"
I need scarcely mention that the first is the Jaxartes, and the last the Oxus.
In the last named version, also, we have "Waʿmūn" for "Waihind." The
name of the idol-temple is written in three different ways in the various copies
of the original collated: ဗုဒ္ဓဓိ—Waʿmūn, or Waihind, or Wabhind, in six MSS.; ဗုဒ္ဓဓိ—Bihand, or Bahind, or Bihand, in two; and ဗုဒ္ဓဓိ—
The author of the Jami'-ut-Tawarikh, in his account of the river of Kabul and its tributaries, taken from Abu Rihan, Al-Biruni, says, that, having passed by Lamghān, the united streams "join near the fort of Darūnah, or Darintah [the only place that can possibly be meant here is Darūnąh—Darīntah], and fall into the river of Un-Nūr and Kīrāt, or Kārāt [= Karat], after which the united waters meet together opposite the town [city] of Baghāwar [one MS. compared has १७४६५८], and become a mighty river called by the name of La'īr-wāl. The village of Manharah [५५४३५८] lies on the east bank of the united waters [another MS. has, instead of this sentence, the following:—'called by the name of Ma'bar, signifying a ford or crossing place,'] which fall into the Ab-i-Sind in front of [or near] the fort of Yitūr, or Yatūr [one MS. has Ṣeṭāb—Yīqāb], belonging to the town [or city] of Gandhār [how Gandhār—Gandhar can ever be mistaken for Kandahār—Kandahar is inexplicable to me], which place [منبع] is called Wahind [or may be Dahind]."

This place—Wahind, or Dahind, or whatever it may be proved to be—is that which our author refers to, no doubt, and is the same place, probably, as mentioned by Baihaḵī in one or two places in his History, although he does not mention it as being on the bank of the river Sindh. I have never seen it written Widgets. The printed text, edited by Morley, has Widgets and a MS. in my possession has Widgets. Some three years since I carefully compared the whole passage in the Jami'-ut-Tawarikh, with the work of Al-Fanakati, the Arabic copy of a portion of the former work, in the R. A. S.'s Library, and other works; and I am unable to agree either with Sir H. Elliot's first reading of it, in his Appendix p. 30, or Mr. Dowson's new reading, in Elliot's...
ties; and the same predominant star was in the as-

HISTORY OF INDIA, edited by him, vol. i. pp. 47 and 48, both of which differ widely from each other. Neither do I agree in the theory that Ùhand [not Ohind] so many miles above the junction of the Nīl-āb, or river of Kābul with the Abā-Sind, or Indus, is the place indicated, in face of the statement of Abū Rūḥān, which is perfectly plain in the passage referred to, namely, that the river in question falls into the Abā-Sind, “in front of” or opposite the fort of Yitūr or Wahind.

If the western bank of the Indus were the right place to search for this spot, so difficult to trace, there is Mahāban [—not much unlike — and to look at] together with Oong, Behoh, and Rām-tākh, mentioned by Abbott —although, from his mode of rendering Oriental words, it is impossible to tell what the originals may be—in his “Gradus ad Aornon,” in the Ben. As. Journal for 1854, and Rājāh Hojāyey’s castle, as well as “Ohind.” There are also extensive ruins of a temple on a hill called Takhti-Bihī, about fifteen miles north-east of the Kābul river’s junction with the Landjāyey Sind, and some thirty miles north-east of Pehgāwar, which I visited in 1849 [see my account of Pehgāwar, Bom. Geogr. Journal, vol. x, for 1851-2]. Can this be the idol-temple which fell when Māḥmūd was ushered into the world? In the same vicinity, and within a few miles of each other, are “Kāpīr di Gīrī”—the Infidel’s Mount, and “Pratah Minarāh”—the Fallen Minar, in Pughto, which names bear a striking resemblance to Baihāki’s fortress of “Gīrī” or “Gīrī,” and “Man-Minarah”; but both the places I have mentioned are on the western, not the eastern bank, and the last lies above Ùhand, which latter name, in all probability, is not ancient, but one of the many new designations given to places in that vicinity by the Yūsūfzī Afghāns, when they first conquered those tracts on the Indus. I have made the early history of the Afghāns my especial study for a particular purpose, and I have never met with the name of Wabhand, Wahind, Bahind, or Wahband in the histories containing the account of their conquests in those parts.

Since the above was written, I have looked over vol. ii. of Elliot’s INDIA, and find that the author, at page 465, when referring to Māḥmūd’s fourteenth expedition into India, says that Farīṣṭah in his work, as well as the “Tabaḵāt-i-Akbarī,” and “Kanzu-l-Mahpur,” which latter I have not examined, mention “the waters of Nūr and Kirāt” as falling into the Kābul river, precisely as I had read the same words in the passage from Al-Bīrūnī; but the editor, Mr. Dowson, still persists, as he says in a note to the same page, in reading them “Nurokīrāt.” Did he not consider that the second 5 in the words 5 might be and? The darak of Nūr is mentioned by Bābar, and is well known still.

To return to the subject of Wahind. From the passage in the Jāmi’-ut-Tawārīkh, and our author, “the fort belonging to the town or city of Gandhār, which place is called Wahind or Bahind, on the banks of the Sind, facing the junction of the Nīl-Āb with the Abā-Sind,” must be looked for east of the Indus, near Attak-Banāras, in the vicinity of which extensive ruins of an ancient city are mentioned in the account of the building of the former fortress in Akbar’s reign. Apollonius of Tyana, in his “Travels,” mentions a lofty temple as situated outside the walls of Taxilas, a few miles east of the Indus. [See Jour. R. A. S., vol. xvi. p. 76.] These ruins were again noticed in the writings of a Muḥammadan traveller towards the close of the last century. However, under any circumstances, and in whatever manner we may read these names, which want the vowel-points, and are probably incor-
cendant at his birth as appeared at the dawn of Islam

correctly copied, the situation of the rivers, and the number mentioned, will not agree with actual facts. The Muḥammadan traveller I refer to, states, from actual observation: “The Kābul river, after flowing through the darah of Mandro—called by the same name as the chief town of Lamghān—is joined, to the north of that place, by the Tahkīrī [तहकरी], generally known as the river of Lamghān; and near the koh or mountain of Durūntā [दुरुन्ता], those streams are joined by the Surkh-rūd [Red-River], which then flow past Jalālabād on the east, and near the town of Kāmah are joined by the Chitrār or Chitrāl [also called the Kāmah], and thus united flow on towards Peshāwar. On issuing from the Khaibar mountains at Michanī [मिषनी], the united streams again separate into three branches, and thus [not united] pass by Peshāwar—which is some distance from the nearest branch—for some miles, and do not unite again until just after receiving the Landāsāy Sind and its tributaries at Nisāta, after which the united waters fall into the Indus a little above, and opposite Attāk.” The courses of rivers may alter in the lapse of centuries, in a flat country, as they have in the Punjab, in some instances, but not in such a mountainous tract as the Kābul and its tributaries flow through, on their way to the Indus. I cannot but coincide with Abī-l-Fażl, the secretary [but never minister] of Akbar, in his remarks upon the accounts of India, written by early travellers, such as Al-Birini and others. He says, in the Ā’in-i-Akbarī [I give the pith of his remarks merely], that “Fanākati, Ḥāfs-Abīrū, and others, wrote down all the nonsense that was palmed off upon them; and, therefore, what they state is contrary to facts, and not to be depended upon, while other writers have wilfully perverted them. How could it be otherwise, when such persons knew nothing of the languages of India, or of its people, or their customs? They could neither make investigations themselves, nor could they obtain efficient interpreters, or reliable information.” See R. A. S.’s Journal, vol. iv. p. 356.

Farther investigation, since the above remarks were written, has, I think, enabled me to throw some light upon the situation of what is called Wahind and Bahind, and as to its correct name. The Tarikh-i-Mir’at-i-Jahān Numa, a general history by Muḥammad Baḵā, contains the following respecting Maḥmūd’s two first expeditions against Hindūstān. “In 390 H., Maḥmūd set out for Hindūstān and captured the fortress of Barjānid or Barjunid [बरजनिद??] possibly बरजनिद but this word is not quite certain], and again retired. In Shavvāl, 391 H., he again set out towards Hindūstān, and reached Peshāwar with 10,000 horse, and defeated Jai-pāl, who, with fifteen brothers and sons, was taken captive. This took place on Saturday, 8th Muḥarram, 392 H. From thence, Maḥmūd advanced to the fortress of Bāhindah, which was the residence of Jai-pāl; and he subdued that territory.” In a history of the Rājāhs of Jamū, said by its author, a Hindū, to have been compiled from Hindū annals, Bāthindah [बाथिन्दाह] is said to have been Jai-pāl’s capital and place of residence, which Maḥmūd captured. Mīrā Muḥāl Beg, who, about eighty-three years since, made a survey of great part of the North-West Provinces between Dihlī and the Sutlaj, the Punjab, and great part of Afghanistān, and the countries on the northern slopes of Hindū-Kush, in his account of the Lakhī jungle, says: “Bāthindah [बाथिन्दाह], which is also called Whāṭ-indāh [वाथिन्दाह] is the name of a territory, with a very ancient stronghold bearing the same name, which was the capital of the Chāhil [चाहिल] tribe. Lakhī, son of Jündharah, of the Bhaṭ tribe, having been converted to the Muḥammadan faith, during an invasion by Sulṭān Maḥmūd of Ghazānī,
itself*. In the year 387 H., Mahmud proceeded to Balkh, and received the title of Rana Lakhif, and he and his tribe were removed thither. They found there some three hundred and fifty or sixty towns and villages of considerable size, some with large and fine buildings; and began to make inroads into the tracts adjacent, against the infidels. According to traditions quoted by this author, which are also to be found in other works, there were formerly two or three considerable rivers in this now sandy tract of country. In ancient times the Ghaqhar flowed past Bhatnir, and fell into the Sind [Indus] on the confines of Jasalmir. One of these rivers is called the Saqhuri [see the various readings of the original at the beginning of this note], which falls into the Ghaqhar, and in its neighbourhood, at about five miles west, is a sacred pond or small lake, visited by hundreds of thousands of persons, and there is no other place accounted like unto it in sanctity.” There is a great deal more about this district, but I have no space for it here. I think it very probable that what has been called Wahind or Bahind is no other than Bhatindah or Whaiindah, which, written without the points—بہتندہ or بہائندہ—are much the same in appearance as the words in the various MSS. of our author’s text

As to some confusion in the arrangement of Elliot’s India, tending to distract, which I have referred to above, I would mention, with respect to the name “Wahind,” that at p. 63, vol. i., “Wahind” is said to be the capital of Kandahar [cf stands for g as well as k, and Kandahar in Afghanistan is always with j]; in a note at p. 397, the “river of Wahand or Wahand-Sagar” is mentioned; in vol. ii. p. 28, in the extract from Yamini, “Wahind” is said to be a country; at p. 33, and other places, it is again called “the river of Wahind; and at p. 444, “the river of Wahind or the Indus.” Notwithstanding all this, this identical passage in our author, after having been “revised and sundry long gaps filled up by the Editor,” is thus translated [vol. ii. p. 269]:—“On the same night that he [Mahmud] was born, an idol-temple IN INDIA, in the vicinity of Parshwar, on the banks of the Sind, fell down!!” There is nothing like giving a bold translation.

This last sentence is somewhat obscure in all the copies. It may be understood also to mean that his appearance was propitious to the ascendancy of Islam: العالج does not mean “the greatest champion.”

See note 4, page 75, for date of accession.

Balkh has been mentioned by more than one author, as the capital of Sabuk-‘Tigin’s and Mahmud’s dominions. In the same year wherein he overcame his brother (389 H.), Mahmud, according to Fasih-f, fought a battle against ‘Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nuh, Sarmal, and the Samani dynasty terminated. See page 52. His independency may be dated from that time. In the same year, Arsalan-i-Jaigar fought an engagement with Abu-l-Kasim-Simjir, and compelled him to retire to Tabas; and Mahmud made his brother, Amir Naşr, the commander of his army (see page 51, note 4). In that same year, likewise, he made Balkh the capital of his dominions; and the Khalfah, Al-Kaadir Billah, sent him a robe of honour, with the titles of Yamini-ud-Daulah, and Amin-ul-Millat. Mahmud also received the submission of the Shahr, as was the style of the rulers of Gharijan [called by some Gharistian], Abu Naşir, son of the Shahr, Rashid, and of his son, Shahr, Abu Muhammed; and the Khutbah was read for Mahmud in that territory, and the coin impressed with his name and titles. In 390 H. Mahmud made a dash upon Nishapur, which he took possession of, and Bak-Tuzin, the slave of the Samani dynasty, fled; and in the same year Bughrajaq, the uncle of Mahmud,
THE YAMINIAH DYNASTY.

ascended the throne of sovereignty, and donned the robe of honour which had been sent to him from the Dār-ul-Khilāfat. At this time the throne of the Khalifahs was adorned by the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Kādir-B‘illah.

When Sulṭān Maḥmūd ascended the throne of sovereignty, his illustrious deeds became manifest unto all man-

was slain by Tāhir, son of Khalaf, son of Aḥmad, at Fūshanj. Maḥmūd marched into Sijistān against Khalaf, who fled before him, and took shelter within the walls of the fortress of Ṭāk, which Maḥmūd directed should be invested. This is a different place to Ük. For farther particulars respecting Khalaf, whose doings appear so obscure [Jour. R. A. S., vol. xvii. p. 147], see notes to Section XIV. Maḥmūd does not appear to have established his power in Khurāsān, for in 391 H., Amīr Abū Ibrāhīm Al-Muntasir—the last of the Sāmānīs, who is not even mentioned by our author—aided by Shams-ul-Ma‘ālī Kābūs, son of Washmīr, who sent his sons Dārā [see page 51] and Manūẓīhīr, advanced with an army to recover Ra’i; but, having altered his plans, Abū Ibrāhīm, and his adherents, faced about, and marched on Nīshāpūr, from which Naṣr, Maḥmūd’s brother, again fled, and Abū Ibrāhīm once more gained possession of Nīshāpūr. Naṣr, who had retired to Hirāt, again moved to recover it, aided by Arsalān-i-Jāṣīb from Tūs. Abū Ibrāhīm despatched his forces under Arsalān-i-Bālū and Abū-l-Kāsim-i-Sīmjūr to oppose them; but they were overthrown, and Abū Ibrāhīm again retired from Nīshāpūr, and took refuge, in Jurjān, with Kābūs. Eventually he reached Sarakh, and Amīr Naṣr marched against him and defeated him; and he fled for refuge to the tribe of Ghuzz. Naṣr made prisoners of Abū-l-Kāsim-i-Sīmjūr, and Yūz-Tāsh, the Hajīb of Abū Ibrāhīm, who had previously put Arsalān-i-Bālū to death for flying from Amīr Naṣr. In the following year, 392 H., Jai-pāl, [which appears to be the title, not the actual name, of two or more princes], Badshāh of Hind, as he is called, was made captive by Maḥmūd. “He was sold for,” as the chronicler states, whose words I quote, or rather his ransom was fixed at “200,000 golden dinārs, and 150 elephants; and the necklace taken from Jai-pāl was valued at another 200,000 golden dinārs. This battle took place on Thursday, 8th of Muharram, 392 H., in sight of Burshor of Hind.” Here we might have expected to find “Wahind” or “Waband” mentioned. Whether this is what is now called Peshawar is somewhat doubtful, for up to the time of Babar and Akbar, the latter city was called generally Bagrām, and is seldom mentioned, except by more modern writers of the Fārīštah class. The chronicler adds: “Jai-pāl, the Hindū, subsequently shaved his head, and mounted a funeral pyre, and died; for it is customary with Hindūs, that any Badshāh of theirs, who becomes a captive to Musalmons, should abdicate in favour of another ruler. His son Tand-Pāl [MS. Jks but probably Anand-pāl—is meant], succeeded him as ruler of Hind.” In 393 H. the Khutbah was read for Maḥmūd in Sijistān, by Khalaf’s own nobles, and his titles were impressed upon the coins. In the following year the fortress of Ṭāk was captured, and Khalaf was made prisoner. The Sulṭān kept the territory of Sijistān entirely for himself, but gave the district of Jurjānān to Khalaf, who, taking his family with him, left Sijistān altogether. Afterwards, however, Sulṭān Maḥmūd gave the government of Sijistān to his own brother, Naṣr; and the government of that province was joined to the appointment of commander of the forces [of Khurāsān].
kind within the pale of Islam, when he converted so many thousands [!] of idol-temples into masjids, and captured so many of the cities of Hindūstān, and overthrew and subdued its Rāes. Jai-pāl, who was the greatest of the Rāes of Hind, he made captive, and kept him [a prisoner] at Man-Yazid, in Khurāsān, and commanded that he might be ransomed for the sum of eighty dirāms'. He led an army to Nahrwālah of Gujarāt, and brought away Manāt, the idol, from Somnāth, and had it broken into four parts, one of which was cast before the entrance of the great masjid at Ghaznin, the second before the gateway of the Sulṭān's palace, and the third and fourth were sent to Makkah and Madīnah respectively.

Concerning this victorious expedition the poet 'Unṣūrī composed a Kašidah, or poem, two couplets of which are here inserted:

"When the potent sovereign made the expedition to Somnāth,
He made the working of miracles his occupation.
He staked the Chess of dominion with a thousand kings:
Each king he check-mated, in a separate game."

Out of the different occasions in which the Sulṭān's greatness showed itself pre-eminent, one occurred during this expedition. When he retired from Somnāth, and desired to lead back the army of Islām by way of the desert, to Sindh and Manṣūrah, out of Gujarāt, he directed that guides should be procured. A Hindū presented himself,

6 Nearly every copy agrees in the name Man-Yazid [Ma'īn Yazid]. "Yazid" is not meant. One copy has 'Amīn Yazid.

7 Sic in MSS., but I fancy the word "thousand" must have been left out. If not, Maḥmūd did not set much value on his captive. See amount mentioned in note, preceding page.

8 One of three chief idols of the pagans of Makkah was named Manāt.

9 Some fragments of idols might still have been seen lying near the entrance to the Sulṭān's tomb a few years ago, and probably they are still there.

1 The first two lines are corrected from 'Abd-ul-Ḵādir-i-Budāūnī. The point of these lines lies principally on the play upon the terms in chess, lost in translation.

2 The Rinn or desert of Kachh. An author, quoting from the Tarīkh-i-Naṣīrī of Baihāḵī, relates a remarkable circumstance, which occurred upon this occasion: "On the Sulṭān's return from Somnāth, one of his huntsmen killed an enormous serpent or boa-constrictor, which was skinned, and found to be thirty ells (gaz) in length and four in breadth. Baihāḵī adds, 'Whoever doubts the correctness of this statement, let him go to the citadel of Ghaznin, and see for himself the skin in question, which is hung up like a canopy.'"
and offered to act as guide, and that sovereign, with the army of Islām, proceeded on his way. After the army had marched all night and next day, and the time had come round for the troops to halt, although search was made for water, none was any where to be found. The Sūltān directed that the Hindu guide should be brought before him, and inquiries made from him. This was done, when the Hindu guide replied to the Sūltān, saying: “I have devoted my life for the idol Somnāth, and I have led you and your army into this desert, in any part of which water is not to be found, in order that you may all perish.” The Sūltān commanded that the Hindu should be despatched to hell, and that the troops should halt and take up their quarters for the night. He then waited until night had set in, after which he left the camp, and proceeded to some distance from it, aside. Then, kneeling down, and with his forehead to the ground, he prayed devoutly and fervently unto the Most High for deliverance. After a watch of the night had passed, a mysterious light appeared in the horizon, and the Sūltān gave orders for the troops to be put in motion, and to follow him in the direction of the light. When the day broke, the Almighty God had conducted the army of Islām to a place where there was water, and all the Musalmāns were delivered safely out of this impending danger.

The Almighty had endowed that ruler with great power of performing many miraculous and wondrous acts, such as He has not bestowed since upon any other sovereign, nor such vast military resources, so large a number of troops, and unbounded wealth. Sūltān Maḥmūd possessed two thousand five hundred elephants; and his court was guarded by four thousand Turkish slave-youths, who, on days of public audience, were stationed on the right and left of the throne,—two thousand of them with caps ornamented with four feathers, bearing golden maces, on the right hand, and the

3 A period of three hours.

4 The words used are ملاوملا، وشاق. Washāk signifies a good-looking slave, and a beardless youth; and has sometimes been used to signify a slave-girl. As these youths attained unto man’s estate and their beards began to grow, they were attached to a separate corps, and placed occasionally under the command of rulers of provinces.

5 Signifying a Tartar cap, a sort of mitre or tiara made from leather or cloth or such like fabric, and covered with brocade or cloth of gold.
other two thousand, with caps adorned with two feathers, bearing silver maces, on the left.

This monarch, by his manliness, his bravery and intrepidity, his wisdom and foresight, and his prudent counsels and wise measures, considerably extended the Muḥammadan conquests in the east, and greatly increased the dominion of Islam in that quarter. The whole of 'Ajam, Ḫuṣrāsān and Ḫwārazm, Ṭabaristān, 'Irāk, the territory of Nimroz, Fārs, the mountain districts of Ghūr', Tukhāristān—all came under the control of his officers. The Maliks, or rulers, of Turkistān paid him obedience and acknowledged his superiority. He threw a bridge over the Jiḥūn, and marched his forces into Tūrān, and Ḵadr Ḵān had an interview with him, as had the Ḵāns of the Turks likewise; and the Khākıns of Turkistān came and presented themselves before him, and tendered him their allegiance.

That Maḥmūd ruled "the whole" of 'Ajam, and Ṭabaristān, is an exaggeration. Not one word is mentioned, by other writers of any authority, as to his holding any part of Fārs, and in 'Irāk his sway was but partial over a portion.

The only notice of this contained in Faṣīb-I, during the whole period of Maḥmūd's reign, is in the following words:—"'400 H. Death of the son of Sūrī, Malik of Ghūr, who was taken prisoner in an encounter fought by Sultan Maḥmūd, in Ghūr. He sucked poison from a ring he had, and destroyed himself. Some say it occurred in 401 H."

In the year 387 H., the same in which Sabuk-Tīgīn died, and two years before Maḥmūd became ruler, Māmūn, son of Muḥammad Al-Farīghūnī, the Wālī, or ruler, of Jurjānī [also written Gurgānīa], of Ḫwārazm died, and was succeeded by his son 'Ali; and, in this same year, 'Ali was married to a daughter of Maḥmūd. 'Ali, however, died in 390 H., and was succeeded by his brother, Abū-1-Abbās, son of Māmūn. He, in the following year, sent an envoy—supposed to be the author so much depended upon by Sir H. Eliot, and others, for his geographical knowledge of India—Abīl-'Abbas, to Maḥmūd, asking permission to marry the lady, his brother's widow. This was sanctioned by Maḥmūd, and Abū-1-Abbās married her.

In 396 H., Sultan Maḥmūd sent an envoy to I-lak Khān, the Turk, son of Bughrā Khān [for now the last of the Sāmānīs had been put to death, as already related], proposing that they should enter into an alliance, and that all the territory this side [on the left bank] of the Amūlah [Oxus] should belong to him, Maḥmūd, together with Ḫwārazm, and that all on the other side should appertain to I-lak Khān, and that they should not interfere with or molest each other's territories. Baiḥākī says, writing in 451 H., that Ḵadr Khān at that period was called Bughrā Khān. It was in this same year that Maḥmūd undertook the expedition into Hindūstān, against Bīhrā Rāq [also written—Bajfīrā in Faṣīb-I, Bībārā in Mirāt-i-Jahān-numā, بشراء Rājah Bahṭrā by
At their request, the son of Saljük, through whose activity, and boldness, too, the whole of the Khâkâns of the Turks were reduced to a state of helplessness, was permitted to

Sanjân Rae in his work. He was doubtless chief of the tribe of Bîrār—�. See also Elliot, APPENDIX to vol. ii., pages 34 and 439, wherein great confusion appears to exist. Bîrâr Rae was slain, and the fortress of Bâhîfâh near [i.e. not far distant from] Multân was taken. After this, the Suljân returned to Ghâznîn, but in the same year he undertook an expedition against the Wâlif of Multân, Abû-l-Fâth, who fled from that territory. Whilst Mahmûd was absent in Hindûstân, in 397 H., I-lâk Khân broke the newly made treaty of alliance, and invaded Khurâsân. This made Mahmûd return to Ghâznîn to make arrangements for marching against him, for I-lâk Khân had penetrated as far as Hîràt, which he took; but, in the following year, Mahmud encountered him at Balkh, and compelled him to retire. Khalaf, the late ruler of Siğistân, it was found, had been intriguing with him during Mahmûd's absence, and had advised this invasion. On this account Khalaf was immured in the fortress of Juzdez of Kûhistân. In 401 H., Mahmûd again advanced into Hindûstân against the fortress of Bhîm [also called Bhîm-nagar], the chief of which was Bhîm Narâyân. There is no mention of any expedition undertaken in that quarter in Fašîb-i, as contained in the Jâmî'-ut-Tawârîkh, against Nàrdîn; but, in some works, an expedition against Nandanah, in 404 H., is mentioned. In 407 H., Mahmûd's son-in-law, Abî-l-'Abbâs-i-

Mâmûn, Farîghûnî, ruler of Jurjâniah of Khwârazm, was murdered by some of his troops. Mahmûd went in person into Khwârazm, defeated the insurgents, and put Nîl-Tîgni [called Alb-Tîgni by Baihâkî], the ringleader, and the murderers, to the sword, reduced that territory under his sway, and Altân-Tâsh, the great chamberlain, was entrusted with its government. I-lâk Khân had died in Mâwar-un-Nahr, in 403 H.; and in 408 H. Mahmûd sought from her uncle, Tûghân Khân, who had succeeded him, the hand of I-lâk's daughter in marriage for his son Mas'ûd, whom he nominated as his heir and successor. Tûghân Khân himself died in the same year, and was succeeded by his brother, Bûghra Tîgni, entitled Aârsân Khân. On that lady's arrival shortly after at Balkh, the capital was illuminated; and soon after Mahmûd made over the government of Khurâsân to Mas'ûd, with Hîràt as the seat of government, having previously assembled the whole of his Ulûs, or tribe, together, to take oath of fealty to his son. [According to Baihâkî, however, this lady had been betrothed to Muhammad, Mas'ûd's brother, but the former, having been immured in a fortress by the latter, when he ascended the throne, Muhammad could not marry her, and Mas'ûd did, with the consent of her brother; but this was several years subsequent to the events above-mentioned.]

After having disposed of these affairs, Mahmûd had leisure again to turn his attention to Hindûstân; and I will here mention, as briefly as possible, his next expedition into that country, because the narrative will greatly differ from the accounts of other writers. In the year 409 H. [see Elliot, vol. ii. p. 460], Suljân Mahmûd undertook another expedition against the infidels of Hind, and overcame Hardab [ٓحودب—the “Hardat” of 'Abd-ul-Ḳâdir-i-Budâûnî, the “Hîrådat of Mathurâh” of the Jâmî'-ut-Tawârîkh] in that region, at which place—[my authority so styles Hardab, but must mean his capital, Mathurâh]—there were nearly a thousand palaces [ٓس] of stone, and an idol-temple of such extent and size, that “if a thousand times a thousand thousand dinârs should be expended, and builders and workmen of the greatest
pass the Jihun with all his kindred and dependents, and cross over into Khurasan. The wisest and most sagacious men of that time considered the granting of this permission

activity and energy should be employed for two hundred years, they could not complete the like." Within this great temple were five idols of gold, five gas or ells in height, and the eyes of one of them were formed of two rubies [Jami'-ut-Tawarih—"of a dark red colour"], which were valued at 50,000 dinars of gold. The eyes of another were formed of two sapphires, of the weight of four hundred miskals! [600 miskals = 1 ser = 1 lb. 13 oz.] the immense value of which could not be computed. From the lower extremities of one of the idols, pure gold of the weight of 4400 miskals was obtained. Besides these great idols, there were two hundred others of silver, in the temple, the whole of which were broken up; and the temple itself was overthrown, and set on fire. [Compare with Elliot, vol. ii. pp. 44, 45.] After this Kinnauj on the Gang, and other places, were captured, the details of which events are too long for insertion here; but among them is mentioned Nardin, the fortress of "Brahma" [perhaps the place called Bhawan or Bahawan by some authors] called Manj, Asf, and other places. From the idol-temple of the first named, a stone tablet was brought, on which was written that the temple had been founded forty thousand years before. Jai-pal of Kinnauj fled across the Gang, on the bank of which were ten thousand idol-temples in seven fortresses. At the capture of Asf, Chand-pal Bhud, the sovereign of that part, was slain. In 410 H. Mahmud again entered Hindustan, "and was engaged [detained] therein for a period of four years" during which time many conquests were made. In 411 H. Mahmud became greatly incensed against his brother Amir Nasr, who had been acting improperly and carelessly in his duty in command of his troops, being constantly engaged in wine-bibbing and pleasure, and, by his conduct, causing relaxation in discipline, "for, when the forces were about to march, his followers were generally found to be in the bazars, instead of present at their posts; and great excesses were committed by them." Mahmud sent Khwajah-i-'Amid, Abu Nasr-i-Mishkan, Al-Zawzanf, to him about this misconduct. Nasr's reply was so becoming that Mahmud passed it over, at the same time saying to the Khwajah: "My brother Nasr is a very prudent and sagacious man." In 412 H., Tisdar jir [Naro +] Jai-pal, ruler of Hind [see Elliot, vol. ii. p. 12], was slain, and Bhim-pal, his son, succeeded to his sovereignty. In 414 H., Sultan Mahmud came to an accommodation, in a distant part of Hind with Beda [Nand, in other works], on the latter's presenting 150 elephants, after which he returned to Ghaznin, and in the same year made a raid into the mountains inhabited by the Afghunfân [sic in MS.], plundered them, and carried off much booty. This is the first time they are mentioned in the history from which I have taken these accounts. In 416 H. Mahmud made another raid upon them from Balkh, and fell upon them at night. In this same year, Jaghar Beg-i-Abu Sulmân-i-Dâ'ûd, son of Tughril Beg, son of Mîkâ'il, the Saljuk, rose, and entered Khwârazm, and Bhim-pal also died. In 417 H. the expedition against Somnath was undertaken, and a farther portion of Hind was subdued; some by treaty and agreement to pay the jaziak or capitation tax, some by force of arms and plunder of the country, and making captives of the people, and some by the people becoming converts to Islam. In 419 H. Mahmud proceeded into Mawar-un-Nahr, and had an interview with Kadr Khan, sovereign of Turkistan, and the treaty formerly existing between them was renewed and confirmed, on the agreement
a grave error in the Sultan's policy; for they perceived therein danger to the empire of his sons and descendants.

Sultan Mahmid entered Irak and subdued that territory, and purposed proceeding to the Court of Baghdad to pay his respects; but, on the receipt of a mandate to the contrary from the Lord of the Faithful, he retired, and

that a portion of Mawar-un-Nahr should be held by Mahmid, and some be incorporated with Kadr Khan's dominions; and a fresh treaty was written out upon these terms, and duly signed. On his way back, Mahmid granted an audience unto Isra'il, son of Beqthu, son of Saljuq, son of Luqman, and brought him along with him. After a time Isra'il was immured within the fortress of Kalianjar, also called Talwarah, where he died. In 420 H. Mahmid slew [slain in battle with Mağmûd] Majd-ud-Daulah, Buwiah, and acquired sway over Irak [a portion], and overthrew that branch of the Buwiah dynasty; and Isra'il was added to the dominions previously conferred upon Mas'ud. "On Thursday, the 14th of Rabbi-us-sani, 421 H. [A.D. 1030, about the middle of April], Sultan Mahmid died, and was buried in the Firuz Bagh, or garden, of Ghazin, after he had reigned thirty-three years. Some say he died in 420 H." These extracts were taken originally from the work entitled 'Makamat of the 'Amid Abii Nasr," written by the 'Amid [J. e—so—of Ahmad] Abi-l-Fazl, Al-Baihaki, so called from Baihak his birth-place, a small town in Zawulistan, also called Muğir.

There are many materials for a complete history of this reign which, as regards India, is the most important one. Our author's account is, to use the words of Sir H. Elliot, "too curt," and I have been compelled to make these notes much longer than I liked. Another reason, for my comparative minuteness, was, that the accounts of this reign, in most authors, are confused and erroneous, particularly in writers of modern times. As in other cases, the "classical" writers, and the old geographers, referred to by Abi-l-Fagl, appear to have led their votaries astray; and the names of persons and places are as diverse and different as the authors and translators themselves. Elliot's work contains a large amount of most valuable materials, but the mode of arrangement tends rather to confuse, as I have previously pointed out. Names of persons and places have been introduced from modern translations of works, instead of from the originals, where possible. Who would think of appealing to Dow or the like for the correct reading of proper names? For example: in note at page 19, vol. ii., wherein S. de Sacy is quoted, who says that Dow has "Abistagi, and Subuktagi for Alpteghin and Sbeektghin," his own blunder is far worse than Dow's, for neither of the words contains any gh in it. See note 1, page 58. In the extract from 'Utbî, page 20, where mention is made of the "fountain in one of the ravines of a very lofty mountain called the 'Ukba Ghuzak ['Ukbah—ās—means a ass], into which if any filth is thrown storms arise," which is quite correct, Dow, in his "Hindostan," page 27, interprets it, "if a small quantity of a certain drug should be thrown," &c. Reynolds, in his version of the Kitab-i-Yamini, has made terrible work of the proper names, which are written all sorts of ways. He has Simjouri, Sinjur, and Simjur for one person; Basti and Bosti; Muwid-Addowlat and Muwayyad-Addowlat, and the like, in scores of places.

1 Not mentioned in other authors, and very doubtful.
THE TABAKAT-I-NASIRI.

returned to Ghaznin, where he died at the age of sixty-one, after a reign of thirty-three years, in 421 H.²

His sons were Muhammad, Naṣr, Masʿūd, Sulimān³, Ismāʿīl, 'Abd-ur-Raṣḥīd, styled 'Īzz-ud-Daulah, Amir of Ghaznin, and Ibrāhīm, which latter had a son named Sulīmān.

III. AMĪR MUḤAMMAD⁴, SON OF MAḤMŪD.

Jalāl-ud-Daulah wa-ud-Dīn⁵, Muḥammad, was a learned and virtuous-minded prince; and they recite [upon his authority] a great number of poems in the Arabic language.

When his father, Sulṭān Maḥmūd, died, his brother, Masʿūd, was in 'Irāq⁷; and the great nobles and chiefs of

² For the precise date of his decease, see note ⁶, preceding page. Among the different coins struck in Maḥmūd's reign one bore the following inscription:—

"The right hand of the empire, Maḥmūd Sulṭān, son of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Sabuk-Tigīn, Breaker of Idols." This coin appears to have been struck at Lāhor, in the seventh year of his reign. The following territories are said to have been included in his empire:—Ghaznin, Zābulistān, Khurāsān, Khwarāzīm, Chaghiānī Tābaristān, Sipahān [Iṣfahān], Kābul as far as Kīnaūj [sic in MSS.], the country around Kālinjar, Mūltān as far as Nahrwālah of Gujrāt, Somnāth, the territory lying on the sea-coast of 'Ummān, Kuṣdār, Sind as far as Sīwastān bordering on Kīrman, Kīj, and Makrān. His authority in a good many of these must have been very nominal.

³ In two MSS. the name of Maḥmūd occurs in place of Sulīmān, but the latter seems to be correct.

⁴ Most authors place Masʿūd before his brother Muḥammad, and only consider the latter's reign to have commenced after Masʿūd had been dethroned and imprisoned in 432 H.

⁵ Other writers state that his title was Jalāl-ud-Daulah and Jalal-ul-Millat. Guzīdah says 'Imād-ud-Daulah was his title. His coins have Jalāl-ud-Daulah, and Jamāl-ul-Millat.

⁶ He was an authority with respect to the text of several Arabic poems. In poems like the Mu’allaḵāt, for example, the texts furnished by various philologists differ considerably from each other. The original words are az roo از روی اشعار عربی به پاسار کند.

⁷ Masʿūd was, of course, in 'Irāq, as he held the government of all the western parts of his father's empire. He appears to have been at Hamadān— but one author, at least, says at Iṣfahān—when his father's death took place. See note ⁶ at page 87. Immediately on the decease of Maḥmūd, the Ḥājīb, 'Alī Khwēshwāwand, who was a relative of the late Sulṭān, and the Ḥājīb, Bāk-Taghīdhī, who was commander of the Māmūks of the palace, entered into a compact 'that they would act in concert with, and do nothing contrary to each other, but act in harmony in whatever might occur, and carefully hold the dargah or palace until such time as one of the late Sulṭān's sons should ascend.
the late Sulṭān’s court, by mutual accord, raised Sulṭān Muḥammad to the throne of Ghaznīn in the year 421 H. He was, however, a man of mild and unaspiring tempera-
ment, and possessed neither sufficient resolution of heart, nor decision of character, to govern the kingdom. A party, who were favourably inclined towards Mas‘ūd, sent com-
munications to him in ‘Irāk, upon which he assembled the troops of ‘Irāk and Khurāsān, with the determination of proceeding to Ghaznīn; and he marched from ‘Irāk in that direction.

When the news of his coming, and his intentions, reached Ghaznīn, Muḥammad caused his forces to be got in readi-

ness, and set out with the purpose of resisting his brother; and 'Alī Kurbat was the Ḥajib-i-Buzurg [Great Cham-
berlain], and the commander of his army.

When the forces reached Tīgin-ābād, information of the advance of Mas‘ūd having reached the camp of Muḥammad,
they seized his person, deprived him of his sight, and placed him in confinement. After this act 'Ali Kurbat marched the troops towards Hirāt, in order to meet Sultān Mas'ūd; and, having arrived within one stage of that place, he proceeded to present himself before the Sultān. Mas'ūd gave orders to seize him, and Muḥammad's whole army was plundered and despoiled.

On this occasion his reign extended to a period of seven months. Subsequently, when Sultān Mas'ūd, the Martyr, became the victim of misfortune at Mārīgalah, Sultān Muḥammad, although he had been deprived of his sight, was brought forth and placed upon the throne, and he brought the army from thence back towards Ghaznīn.

Sultān Mawdūd, the son of Mas'ūd, marched out of Ghaznīn, with the determination to take revenge upon his uncle for his father's death, overthrew him in the battle [which ensued], and put to death his uncle Muḥammad with all his offspring. Muḥammad, on the second occasion, exercised sovereignty for a period of four months. His martyrdom took place in the year 432 H.; and his age was forty-five years.

1 In Elliot's "History of India," edited by Professor Dowson of the Staff College, the latter is rather bitter [vol. ii., pref. ix], against the bad translation of extracts from our author, made for Sir H. Elliot, for his work, and, in several places, cries out against this kind of assistance. I doubt very much, however, whether any "officer," with even a practical smattering of Persian or 'Urdū, would have translated "Ordered his whole force to be destroyed." Mr. Dowson also translates this passage "When Mas'ūd was killed at Marikala," but, as in the case above, does not mean "killed." His own words disprove his own translation, for, two pages farther on, comes the passage, "but in Marikala his Turki and Hindi slaves revolted, took him prisoner," &c.

2 See note 2 at page 96.

3 The Taṣkīrat-ūl-Mulūk states that all were put to death by Mawdūd, except one son, 'Abd-ur-Raḥīm by name. "Amīr Mawdūd forbade that he should be injured, because he had been informed that, at the time of the murder of his father, Mas'ūd, one of 'Abd-ur-Raḥīm's brothers, out of insolence, had plucked the diadem which Mas'ūd wore from that gallant prince's head, but 'Abd-ur-Raḥīm took it from his brother, and replaced it on the brow of Mas'ūd again, and severely rebuked his brother for what he had done."

4 For particulars see reign of Mawdūd, and notes. His reign is said to have extended over a period of nine months. The word  شهید signifying martyr, also means one who dies for a cause which he thinks just; and any Muḥammadan killed in battle is so called.
THE YAMINIAH DYNASTY.

His sons were 'Abd-ur-Rahman, 'Abd-ur-Rahim, and Ahmad.

IV. SULTAN NASIR-UD-DIN U'LLAH, MAS'UD, THE MARTYR.

Sultan Mas'ud, the Martyr, bore the title of Nasir-ud-Din U'llah, and his surname was Abū Mas'ud. His birth, and that of his brother, Sultan Muhammad, took place on the same day. Sultan Mas'ud assumed the sovereignty in the year 422 H. He was generous and munificent to so great a degree that they called him a second Khalifah 'Ali—may God reward him!—and in valour and prowess he was a second Rustam. No man could lift his mace with one hand from the ground; and no iron target used to stay his arrow. His father, the Sultan, used to be envious of him, and constantly treated him with harshness and severity, to such degree that he preferred a request to the court of Baghdad, that the name and title of Muhammad should have precedence in the Khutbah over those of his brother Mas'ud.

Other writers style him Nāšir-ud-Daulah, and Nāšir-ud-Dīn. The Jām‘-ut-Tawārīkh gives him the title of Nāšir-ud-dīn U'llah, wa Mu'tin-i-Khalifah U'llah; but Baihaḵī, his biographer, styles him "Shihāb-ud-Daulah, and Kūṯ-ul-Millat Abī Sa'id-i-Mas'ud."

It does not follow that they were 'wins.

He ascended the throne of Ghaznin, at Hirat, on the 1st of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 422 H., soon after which he gave orders to put the Hajib, 'Alī Khweshāwand, and his brother Mangiraik, to death, and confiscated all their property. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh agrees in this statement, and adds farther, that 'Alī Khweshāwand, the Hajib, had taken an active part in raising Mubammad to the throne, and had subsequently acted perfidiously towards him.

Mr. E. Thomas, in his numismatic "Chronicles of the Pathan kings of Delhi," asserts [p. 79], with respect to a coin of the Turkish slave-king, I-valtimish, that the mace is "the special weapon of the great Mahmūd." The statement is erroneous, as shown in the text. The mace was, by no means, an uncommon weapon in those days. See also under reign of Sultan Tughīrīl, son of Arsalān Shāh, last reign of Section XII.

Mr. Dowson translates this passage [in the original—zal ५९ et ३३ esolie! ^° and even an elephant could not stand before him." The word here used signifies a plate of iron placed on a post used for tilting at, and as a butt for arrows.

Mas'ud, on one occasion, when writing to his envoy in Turkistān, mentions his father's having once ordered him back from Hirat, when there as governor, and sent him to Multān, where he was kept in durance, but that he was never considered in any other light than his father's heir.
Khwājah Abū Naṣr-i-Mishkān says: “When the [Kalifah’s] letters patent were being read out in the audience hall of Sultān Maḥmūd, a weight came over the hearts of the great nobles and chiefs, as well as my own, because the marks of majesty and nobility of mind were more prominently impressed upon the brow of Masʿūd. When Sultān Masʿūd came out from his father’s presence, I, Abū Naṣr-i-Mishkān, went out after him, and I said: ‘O Prince, a heavy load has overcome the hearts of us, your servants, on account of the reversal of your august title in the mandate of the Khalifah.’ Masʿūd replied: ‘Do not you be grieved. Have you not heard that “the sword is a truer authority than any writing?”’ and commanded me to go back again.

By the time that I returned to the audience-chamber informants had already, without loss of time, acquainted the Sultān of this obsequiousness of mine, and he summoned me before him. When I came into the presence of Sultān Maḥmūd, he demanded, saying, ‘Wherefore didst thou go out after Masʿūd, and what wast thou speaking about?’ I related all that occurred without withholding any thing, for, had I concealed any thing, my life would have been in danger. The Sultān said: ‘I am aware that, in every respect, Masʿūd excels Muhammad, and that after my time the sovereignty will fall into the possession of Masʿūd; and I use so much ceremony now that this poor Muhammad may, during my lifetime, experience a little honour and

Masʿūd, as soon as he assumed the sovereignty, appointed this same person—whose proper name is Khwājah-i-ʿAmīd, Abū Naṣr-i-Mishkān, Al-Zawzanī—his confidant and secretary, which was the same office as he had held under the late Sultān Maḥmūd; and Ṭāhir, the Dabīr [secretary], who had previously held that office, was removed. In 423 H., Ḥasanak, who bore the title of Shaikh-ul-Ḵaṭīr [great, honourable, &c.], who had been Wazīr to Sultān Maḥmūd, and had also held the same office under Maḥmūd, was gibbeted by order of Masʿūd, because he had been the most active in depriving him of the throne. He had, in all probability, influenced Maḥmūd in his harsh treatment of Masʿūd. In 426 H. Masʿūd ordered Khwājah-i-Fāṣil, Aḥmad, son of Ḥasan, Al-Maimandī [from his native place, Maimand, a small town of Ghaznī], who had been long kept in prison by his late father, to be set at liberty, after which Masʿūd made him his Wazīr. It was on this occasion that he drew up his celebrated Mūṣafat, or stipulations on his duties, to be observed between his sovereign and himself, and which each of them swore to observe.

Our author does not appear to have known that Maḥmūd, his father, had declared Masʿūd his heir, and made the whole of his ultis or tribe swear allegiance to him in 408 H. See note, p. 85.
gratification, which, after I am gone, will not be left to him.' The mercy of God be upon them!"

The Khwājah, Abī Naṣr-i-Mishkān, says, "In this occurrence two things astonished me: one was the answer of Mas'ūd to me, spoken with such wisdom and discernment, and the second, the greatness of mind, and the perfect supervision of Mahmūd, that such a trivial act of attachment could not escape him."

When Mahmūd subdued 'Irāk he bestowed the throne of that territory upon Mas'ūd; and, previous to that event, the city of Hirāt, and Khurāsān, had been ruled in Mas'ūd's name. When he ascended the throne of Šafahān, he seized the territory of Rai, Kāzwin, and Hamadān, and the country of Tāram, all which he conquered, and he likewise overcame the Dilāmān. On several occasions he donned robes of honour conferred upon him by the Court of the Khalīfahs. After the decease of his father, Mahmūd, he came to Ghaznīn, and took the government of his father's dominions into his own hands. Several times he led armies into Hindūstān, and carried on holy wars as by law enjoined. On another occasion he marched into Tabaristān.

---

4 See note 9, p. 85.
6 伊斯法罕 or 什法罕。
7 Tāram is in Lār, or Lāristān, a province of Persia.
8 Mas'ūd, in 424 H., wrested Kirmān from the Buwīah dynasty, who had long since declined; and sent Ahmad, son of Ali, son of Nūkh-Tīgin, thither as governor. This, however, could have been temporary only, for in 433 H., after Mas'ūd's death, Karā-Arsalān Beg, son of Jaghar Beg, wrested Kirmān out of the hands of Bahram, son of 'Ali, the governor on the part of the Dilāmāh sovereign, Abū Kālinjār, son of Sulṭān-ud-Daulah, son of Bāhā-ud-Daulah, son of ʻIzz-ud-Daulah, son of Rukn-ud-Daulah. See note 7 to page 66. After this, eleven princes of the race of Saljiḳ reigned in Kirmān.
9 In the year 772 H., Sulṭān Firūz, Tughluq, was encamped near a place named Zafar-ābād, on his return from Bangal. This was before he gave orders to found Jūnpūr [vul. Jounpoor]. "At this place were the ruins of several idol-temples, destroyed by Sulṭān Mas'ūd, the Victorious, during one of his campaigns in Hindūstān. A fort there still retains [i.e. when the author, from whom the extract is taken, wrote] the name of Karār-koṭ, from Karār-Bīr, a demon killed by Rājāh Rām Chand, in the Tretā Jüg." If it had not been stated that Mas'ūd destroyed these temples, I should be inclined to think this must refer to Mus'ūd-i-Karīm, only he sent his Hajīb, and did not make a campaign in India in person, that I am aware of. Baihaḵī mentions nothing more than the expedition against Hānsī, in his work. Our author does not mention his authority for the statement that Mas'ūd led armies into India upon several occasions.
1 Not "twice."
and Mazandaran; and, at the end of his reign, the Saljūks rose against him. On three several occasions he overthrew them in battle within the confines of Marw and Sarakhs; but, in the end, since it was the Divine will that the country of Khurasan should pass unto the race of Saljūk, he encountered them in battle in Dāe-kān (Tāl-kān), and for

* Isrā‘īl-i-Beghū, son of Sulīmān, son of Saljūk, who had been immured within the walls of the fortress of Kālinjar, died there in 426 H. In the same year, Jāghar Beg, or Jāgharī Beg, as he is also called—a name which most oriental writers, and all English writers but one, have, most erroneously, supposed to be “Ja‘far” Beg—son of Abū Sulīmān-i-Dā‘ūd, son of Mīkā‘īl, son of Saljūk, son of Luḥmān, rose, and took up his quarters at Marw. In the following year, Mas‘ūd made all those persons who had received grants or presents from his brother, Muḥammad, refund them. This was done quite against the urgent remonstrances of his Wāzīr. The sum produced is said to have amounted to eighty times a thousand thousand of dirams. In 429 H., Tughril Beg, son of Mīkā‘īl, son of Saljūk, assumed sovereignty at Nīshāpūr, and from that date their dynasty commenced.

This battle was fought in 431 H., but some writers differ as to 430, 431, and 432 H. The scene of the encounter is said to have been “the desert tract between Marw and Sarakhs, three marches from the former, near the fort of Dāndankād of Marw,” which name is sometimes written Dāndankān, Dīdankān, and in other ways. It occurs, with a slight variation, in the Mašālik wa Mamālik in one place, but it is correctly called Tāl-kān in another; and also occurs in Ibn Ḥaukal, in Baihakī, Yāfā‘ī, Guzīdah, Jāmi‘ī-Tawārīkh, Lubbiut-Tawārīkh, and the works of some other writers who copy from them, the only difference in writing the words being داکان—دادنکان—دادنکان—دادنکان—دادنکان—and the like. It is the “Dandanekan” of Abū-l-Fīdā [Geo. Reiske, p. 345], who describes it as a small town of Khurasan celebrated for its cotton manufactures.

These names are however mere errors for Tāl-kān, which famous place, and Tāe-kān of Tukhāristān, are commonly mistaken the one for the other, as done by our author in the text above, or rather some scribe for him, because, at page 46, and other places, and in the last Section, the name is correctly given, and also an account of the siege of Naṣīr Koh of Tāl-kān by the Chingiz Khan. In carelessly written MSS., scribes make very little difference between the letter ـ (here) without the points, and ـ—thus طاجن and طاجن, and the like. The way in which the error of Dāe-kān arose can thus be accounted for. Some early scribe read the letter ـ—as the two letters ـ—and the ـ was mistaken for ـ. The other words mentioned above evidently arose in the same way, through some scribe, writing carelessly or quickly, prefixing two letters—ـ—one without points, which was subsequently read by some for ـ—and by others for ـ—or through writing داجن—the first syllable of داجن—twice over, or putting one letter before the other.

Mr. Dowson [Elliot’s INDIA, Vol. II., page 273], who appears to have implicitly followed the printed text, has “Tālikān.” This incorrect name, sometimes varied to “Tālikān,” is generally applied by European writers to Tāe-kān of Tukhāristān, without being aware of the existence of Tāl-kān of Khurasan, or at least, without being aware of the difference between the names of the two places.
three successive days he assailed and struggled with them; and on the third day, which was Friday, the Sultan was defeated, and retreated to Ghaznin by the way of Gharjistan.

Through the great dread which had now overcome him, he collected his treasures together, and came towards Hindustan; and at Marigalah, his Turkish and Hindu slaves revolted against him, seized his person, and [again] set up his brother, Muhammad, upon the throne, and sent Mas'ud to the fortress of Girī; and, in 432 H., he was martyred. His age was forty-five years; and the period of his reign was nine years, and a little over. His sons were Maudūd, Majdūd, Muhammad, Ibrahim, Izid-yār, Farrukh-zād, Shujā, Mardān Shāh, and 'Alī.

V. SHIHĀB-UD-DAULAH, MAUDŪD, SON OF MAS'UD.

Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Abū Sa'd-i-Maudūd, son of Nāsirud-dīn U'llah, Mas'ūd, when the tidings of his father's murder reached him, ascended the throne of his father's dominions.

A pass, in ancient times somewhat difficult, situated between Rawal Pindī and Attak, a few miles east of Hasan Abdāl. The hills around used to be infested with robbers, who generally chose this pass for attacking travellers and karwāns of traders, hence the name “Mārl-galah.” The emperor Akbar had a good road carried through the pass for about two miles. I have noticed it in my paper—"Diary of a March with the Bombay Column of the Army of the Panjab,"—contained in the Transactions of the Bombay Geological Society for 1850-51.

Baihākī writes it Girī and others write it Girī and Girā.

He was not murdered until the 11th of Jamādi-ul-Awwal of the following year, 433 H., at which time, his nephew, Ahmad, son of the blind Muḥammad, pretending it was his father's command, put Mas'ūd to death, after a reign of a few days over eleven years, not nine as our author states, because he ascended the throne on the 1st of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 422 H., and was murdered in the very same month of the year 433 H.; but he had certainly been in confinement since the previous year. Muḥammad is said to have lamented this act, and greatly reproached the murderers.

Appointed governor of the territory east of the Indus, with his headquarters at Lahor, in Zi-Ka'dah, 427 H. Baihākī mentions two others, but merely gives the title of one—Amf-i-Sa'īd—to whom Mas'ūd was much attached, and whom he proposed to make his heir, but he died at Ghaznīn in 429 H. The other was named Abd-ur-Razzāk.


Maudūd was at Balkh, when the tidings of his father's imprisonment and murder reached him. He set out for Ghaznīn without delay. See note 5, p. 96.
At the period that Sultan Mas'ūd was about to proceed into Hindūstān, he had established Maudūd as his lieutenant over the territory of Ghaznīn, and its dependencies. Maudūd assumed the throne in 432 H., and assembled an army, in order to revenge his father, and commenced his march towards Hindūstān 1.

Sultan Muḥammad, son of Maḥmūd, who was Maudūd's uncle, had been brought forth from his place of confinement, by the rebellious retinue [of Mas'ūd], and had been raised to the throne by them, who, with their loins girded, stood before him [to do his behests]. The great nobles of Hindūstān submitted to him; and the Turkish slaves of Maḥmūd and of Mas'ūd, who had acted so perfidiously and with such hostility towards the latter, all had gone over to Muḥammad, and espoused his cause. After he had been made sovereign by them four months, an encounter took place between Maudūd and his uncle; and, by the will of the Most High, the victory was bestowed upon Maudūd, within the limits of Nagrahar [Nangrahār 7], and Muḥam-

---

1 Guzīdah differs in the account of this affair. "When hostilities arose between Mas'ūd, and the Saljūks, and Mas'ūd had been defeated, he had to retreat to Ghaznīn. He then determined to retire into Hindūstān [which in nearly every case should be understood to mean the Panjāb, except in the case of occasional expeditions beyond]. After Mas'ūd had passed the Jīlam [Jīlām] his troops mutinied against him, and carried away the blind Muḥammad from him, after which they placed a throne upon the back of an elephant, and seated Muḥammad thereon. They then conducted him through the whole army; and Mas'ūd was seized and brought before his sightless brother." The Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī, while confirming this, with the exception of mentioning the Ab-i-Sind, instead of the Jīlam, adds that Muḥammad gave up the direction of the affairs of government to his son, Aḥmad, and that Muḥammad only imprisoned his brother Mas'ūd; but Aḥmad directed that he should be put to death. This statement is confirmed by most other historians. Mas'ūd's object in proceeding into India, or rather his territory on the Indus and in the Panjāb, was to raise a fresh army in order to take vengeance upon the Saljūks.

2 Maudūd, on hearing of his father's murder, advanced with his troops towards Ghaznīn to secure the capital; and Muḥammad, who was on the confines of Sind [i.e. on the Indus, in the Sind Sagar Do-āb], also hastened towards Ghaznīn for a similar purpose. Every copy of the work I have seen has the name Nagrahar as plainly written as it is possible to write, yet Mr. Dowson translates it by the impossible name of "Takarkhurūd," and makes the error worse, by adding, in a note [Elliot, vol. ii. p. 274]—"or 'Bakarhā,' perhaps Bakhrāla [Firishta's text says 'Depūr,' not 'Duntoor,' as in Briggs' translation]. Why "Bakhrāla" is fixed upon thus at hap-hazard, it would be highly interesting to know. Was it because there is a place east of the Mārgalāh Pass called al-'Bakr-īlah, which happened to be not far off
mad was taken prisoner, together with his children and dependents. Sultan Maudūd wreaked vengeance upon him for his father's fall; and the murderers of his father, both Turk and Tāzik, he put to death, and thereby gained fame and great distinction. Whoever were implicated in the shedding of his father's blood, the whole of them he put to death.

He returned again to Ghaznin, and took possession of the different parts of his father's dominions. He reigned for a period of nine years, and died; and his age was thirty-nine years.

His sons were Maṣūr, Muḥammad, and Maḥmūd; and the latter had a son named Sūlimān.

VI. 'Alī, son of Mas'ūd, and Muḥammad, son of Maudūd, in association.

These two princes, uncle and nephew, were raised to the towards the Jihlām? Which is the most natural—one force marching from Ghaznin, and another marching towards it from the Mārgalāh Pass—that they should meet about half-way, or at Bak-Īlah? A glance at a map would show at once where those places lie. Maudūd founded a Bāzār or emporium, at the place where he gained this victory, which Baiḥaḳi calls Dīnūr, and named it Faṭḥ-ābād, which, in the advance to Kābul, in 1842, was occupied by the troops under the command of Gen. Sir R. Sale, G.C.B. The name has been incorrectly spelt, as usual, Futtehabad. Maudūd gained this battle 434 H.

Ⅱ Our author has omitted to mention some of the chief events of his reign, as well as the date of his death. Both Guzīdah and Faṣiḥ-Ī, as well as several other writers, state that Maudūd died in the month of Rajab, 441 H., of colic, when on his way to meet Jaghār Beg, his father's old foe, whose daughter he had married. The capital of Jaghār Beg, at this time, was Marw.

Ⅳ A very unlikely arrangement, to say the least of it. Our author, here, is at variance with all works of undoubted authority. Yāfāt-I, Faṣiḥ-Ī, the Niṣām-ut-Tawārīḵ of Baiqāwī, Guzīdah, Jahān-Ārā, Lubb-ut-Tawārīḵ, Fanākāt-I, and several others state, generally, that on the death of Mauđūd, his son Mas'ūd, in accordance with his father's will, was raised to the throne, and that his mother, the daughter of Jaghār Beg, Saļjūḵī, began to administer the government in his name, he being a child of three years of age. After he had been one month on the throne—some say ten days—with his mother's consent and approbation, the great nobles and grandees, by mutual agreement, set the child aside, and raised his uncle, Bahā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, to the throne. No writer that I am acquainted with says one word about two rulers in joint occupation of the throne, except our author, who also makes a great blunder in calling Maudūd's infant son, Mas'ūd, by the name of "Muḥammad." A very good reason is given in Guzīdah for the child's being set aside. Bahā-ud-Daulah, 'Alī, married his brother Maudūd's widow, on which she, probably, did not much mind her infant son being set aside for her new husband.
throned by the Turks and the chief men of the kingdom. Each and every person took possession of some office or other. As the two princes possessed neither capacity nor ability, and neither authority nor control, the utmost disorder and detriment continued to arise in the affairs of the country, the condition of the soldiery, and of the people in general. After two months they raised Sultan 'Abd-ur-Rashid to the throne, and sent the two princes back to a fortress again.

VII. 'ABD-UR-RASHID, SON OF MAHMUD.

Sultan 'Izz-ud-Daulah-i-'Abd-ur-Rashid ascended the throne in 441 H. He was an enlightened and intelligent man, and was a depository of the oral traditions, which he was wont to narrate; but he did not possess much strength of mind or intrepidity.

Seeing the repeated and successive changes and revolutions in the sovereignty, the Saljûks on the side of Khurâsân coveted the throne of Ghaznin. The sovereignty of

6 Fanâkatî and Târîkh-i-Ibrâhîmî say 'Alî reigned two years, after which, on 'Abd-ur-Rashid rebelling, he fled from Ghaznin. Guzîdah agrees as to the number of years that 'Alî reigned, but says that his reign terminated in 443 H., and calls 'Abd-ur-Rashid his uncle.

7 Under the events of the year 443 H., Fâsihî notices—"a battle between Majd-ud-Daulah, Abû Mansûr-i-'Abd-ur-Rashid, son of Mahmûd-i-Ghâzî, and Bâhâ-ud-Daulah, 'Alî, son of Mas'ûd, and the overthrow of 'Alî after a reign, at Ghaznin, of one year, and the accession of Majd-ud-Daulah before mentioned." Other authors also call him Majd-ud-Daulah. Ya'âfî says that 'Abd-ur-Rashid, who had for years been imprisoned in a fortress, escaped, raised forces, overthrew 'Alî, and ascended the throne.

8 A much more probable cause is given for the advance of the Saljûks in other histories, which is as follows:—"After 'Abd-ur-Rashid had reigned one year, the daughter of Jaghar Beg, in order to revenge the loss of her second husband, 'Alî, brought an army of Saljûks against him." It is farther stated that among the slaves of the Mahmûdî dynasty was one named Tughrîl, who was Amîr-ul-Umrâ, who went and joined the Saljûks, conspired with them, fought a battle against 'Abd-ur-Rashid, and took him prisoner. The daughter of Jaghar Beg, widow of Mauûd and 'Alî, made 'Abd-ur-Rashid over to Tughrîl, and returned herself to Khurâsân. Tughrîl imprisoned him in a fortress in the district of Maidân [near Kâbul]. 'Abd-ur-Rashid was of such weak intellect that on one occasion, when Tughrîl was playing at Chaugân there, 'Abd-ur-Rashid came forth to see the sport, and applauded Tughrîl. After a time 'Abd-ur-Rashid was put to death, at which period nine of the
Khurāsān had passed to Dā'ūd; and Alb-Arsalān, his son, having become the commander of his forces, they determined to advance against Ghaznīn. Alb-Arsalān entered the country by way of Tukhāristān, with a numerous army; and his father, Dā'ūd, advanced upon Bust, by way of Sistān.

Sūltān 'Abd-ur-Rashīd caused his forces to be got ready, and made Tūghrīl, who was one of the slaves of Mahmūd, and a man of consummate valour, general over them, and sent him against Alb-Arsalān. In front of the darah9 of Khumār he inflicted a defeat upon Alb-Arsalān, and from thence pushed on towards Bust, and arrived there with the utmost expedition. When he came up with Dā'ūd, the latter retired before him, and Tūghrīl pursued him into Sistān, and overthrew Beghū, the uncle of Dā'ūd.

Tūghrīl having gained two or three such like successes, returned to Ghaznīn, seized Sūltān 'Abd-ur-Rashīd, and put him to death, after which he ascended the throne himself.

'Abd-ur-Rashīd's reign was two years and a half, and his age was thirty years1.

VIII. TUGHRIL, AL-MAL'ŪN, OR THE EXECRATED2.

Tūghrīl was one of Mahmūd's slaves, and was endowed

grandsons of Mahmūd were still living. Yāfāt states that 'Abd-ur-Rashīd reigned nearly seven years, and died 450 H. No mention of Tūghrīl is made; and the author passes immediately on to Ibrāhīm, without any notice of Farrukh-zād; but that work only contains a brief notice of the Ghaznavī rulers after Mas'ūd the Martyr. The Taṣkīrat-ul-Mulūk states that he reigned four years. Fāṣibī states, and the Muntaḥab-ut-Tawāriḵk agrees, that 'Abd-ur-Rashīd succeeded in 443 H., was imprisoned in 444 H., by Tūghrīl, who was put to death the same year, and that Farrukh-zād succeeded; but makes no mention of 'Abd-ur-Rashīd's death. Fanākatf says he died 450 H., and then makes a sudden jump from 'Abd-ur-Rashīd to Sūltān Ibrāhīm. Baīṣawī, in the Niṣām-ut-Tawāriḵk, makes no mention of Tūghrīl or the reign of Farrukh-zād, and says that 'Abd-ur-Rashīd reigned seven years, and died in 445 H., and yet states that his successor, Ibrāhīm, reigned from 450 H. to 492 H.

9 A “Darah” signifies a valley between two hills, through which a stream flows, and a pass between two mountains.

1 'Abd-ur-Rashīd was present with his brother Mas'ūd at the battle of Dandākād, or Dāe-ḵān.

2 Authors of any authority do not give Tūghrīl a place among the sovereigns, because he was an usurper of forty days.
with great intrepidity and valour. During the reign of Sultan Maudūd, he left Ghaznin, and went into Khurāsān, and entered the service of the Saljūks. He remained there for a considerable time, and made himself acquainted with their mode of warfare; and returned to Ghaznin again in the reign of 'Abd-ur-Raḥīd. He seized 'Abd-ur-Raḥīd, and slew him, along with eleven other princes, and usurped the throne of Ghaznin, and reigned over the country for a period of forty days, during which he practised great injustice and tyranny.

They inquired of him, saying: "Whence didst thou acquire ambition to reign?" He replied: "At the time that 'Abd-ur-Raḥīd was sending me forth to do battle against Alb-Arsalān and Dā'ūd, and was giving me my instructions, and had placed his hand in mine, terror had overcome him to that degree, that I could hear his very bones rattling from the state of trembling he was in. I knew that this pusillanimous man was incapable of sovereignty, and the ambition of reigning entered my heart."

After forty days of his rule had expired, a Turk named Nūsh-Tigin, a Silāh-dār, or armour-bearer, who happened to be standing behind Tughril, entered into an agreement with another, his friend, and they slew Tughril upon the throne itself; after which they brought out his head, and fixed it upon a pole, and had it paraded round the city; so that the people became free from anxiety and care.

IX. FARRUKH-ZĀD, SON OF MAS'ŪD.

At the time that Almighty God brought down upon Tughril the just reward of his crimes, and delivered the

---

3 The mode of making a compact—giving one's right hand.
4 After Tughril had put all the princes he could lay his hands on to death, he compelled a daughter of the late Sultan Mas'ūd to become his wife. Soon after he made a great entertainment, when a number of champions, filled with loyalty to the Mahmūdī dynasty, attacked him, and cut him to pieces.
5 Guzidah, Faṣiḥ-i, and Tarikh-i-Ibrāhīmi, strange to say, call Farrukh-zād son of 'Abd-ur-Raḥīd. His title was Jamāl-ud-Daulah, but, in the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, he is styled 'Imad-ud-Daulah, son of Mas'ūd. Baihaki, in commencing one of the chapters of his work, states that he "began it in Zīl-Hījjah, 450 H., in the reign of the Sultan-i-Muaggam, Abu Shuja'-i-Farrukh-zād."
people from his unbearable tyranny, and unlimited oppression, two princes of the Mas'ūdī family remained alive immured within the fortress of Bar-ghund—one Ibrahim, the other Farrukh-zād.

The accursed Tughril had despatched a party to that fortress for the purpose of putting them to death; but the seneschal, who was stationed therein, had taken one day to consider the matter, and had kept the party in question without the gates, under the agreement that they should be admitted on the following day, to carry out that wicked mandate. Suddenly, carrier pigeons arrived there, bearing the news of Tughril the Accursed having been killed.

After that execrable man was slain at Ghaznin, by the hand of Nūsh-Tigin, the chief men of the empire, and the Maliks, and Ḥājibs, sought for a sovereign. It was found that two princes still remained, immured within the walls of the fortress of Bar-ghund; so all of them set out towards that fortress, and desired to raise Ibrahim to the throne: but his august frame had become overpowered by infirmity, and, as delay was impossible, they brought forth Farrukh-zād, and congratulated him on his accession to the sovereignty, on Saturday, the 9th of the month Zīl-Ḳa'dah, 344 H.

Sultan Farrukh-zād was a man of mild and amiable disposition, and just. As soon as he ascended the throne, he...
referred the revenue of the territory of Zowulistan, which had become ruined through [the levying of] heavy contributions in taxes and supplies, so that it became prosperous again. He brought under his control the frontier provinces of the empire, and governed his people with benevolence: He reigned seven years, when, suddenly, he was carried off by colic, in the year 451 H., at the age of thirty-four years.

X. SULTÁN IBRÁHÍM, SAYYID-US-SALÁTÍN.

Sultán Zahir-ud-Daulah, Naṣir-ul-Millát, Rażzí-ud-Dín,

9 The original text is 'Awdris-wa-múndát [not "mítán"] which Mr. Dowson renders "disease and murraín," and adds, in a note—"Awdris-o-múlidán. The former words [sic] mean literally diseases, but it [sic] is also used for those diseases of the body politic, extraordinary imposts." Does "múndát" also mean "murraín" in the body politic?

1 The Taṣkirat-ul-Mulúk mentions that, soon after the accession of Farrukh-zád, the Saljùks advanced towards Ghazní in great force, and were encountered by Farrukh-zád and his forces. The Saljùks were defeated and numbers slain, and some made prisoners. Subsequently, Alb-Arsalán advanced against Ghazní, fought a battle, and gained a victory, in which most of the Múmhíd chiefs were made captive, and carried away into Khurasán. At last an accommodation was come to, and some of the captives were set free.

2 Farrukh-zád, according to Guzídah, reigned six years, in which several other authors agree; but the former gives the year 450 H., as that of his death, and says he bequeathed his sovereignty to his cousin, Ibráhím. Faṣíh-í agrees in this, and also as to the year; but states that he reigned seven years, which is apparently correct, he having ascended the throne in the eleventh month of the year 443 H., and died in 450 H. According to Baihákí, just quoted, we find he was alive in the last month of 450 H., but, as he died suddenly, he might have died in that same month. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, however, says he began to reign Saturday, 9th of Zí-Ka’dah, 444 H., and died, in Safar, 451 H. Yáṣáí agrees with Faṣíh-í, and states that Ibráhím succeeded in 450 H. In the latter part of the year preceding Farrukh-zád’s death, Alb-Arsalán, who had succeeded his father, Jaghar Beg, over the territory of Khurasán, ousted his great uncle, Begbú, from Hírát, and had the Khutbah read there for himself.

3 The word used for colic is ʿaláh and described as a pain in the bowels and in the side, but I suspect it must be some type of cholera or inflammation, as it seems to have carried off several of this dynasty.

4 Among the Wázírs or Ministers of Farrukh-zád was Khwájah Abú Bikr-i-Sáliḥ, who had previously held the government of Hindútan. Among the celebrated personages who died during his reign was Abú-Nájm-i-Iyáž, Uámák or I-máék, the slave of Sultán Múmhíd, famous under the name of Iyáž. He died in the month of Rabí-al-Awwal, 449 H.

5 Sayyid here means "lord," "prince," "chief of," &c. His correct title, as given by most authors, is Zahir-ud-Daulah, Abú Muṣṣafar-i-Ibráhím. The
Ibrāhīm, son of Mas‘ūd, the Martyr, was a great and illustrious monarch, learned and accomplished, just and God-fearing, benevolent and compassionate, the friend of the learned, and supporter of religion.

After Farrukh-zād had ascended the throne, Ibrāhīm had been removed from the fortress of Bar-ghund to the fortress of Nā‘ī; and, when Farrukh-zād died, all hearts decided upon the sovereignty of Ibrāhīm. The Sarhang Ḥasan, proceeded to his presence, and, accompanied by the chief persons in the state, conducted him from the fortress; and, on a Monday, at an auspicious conjunction of the planets in the high vault above, he ascended the throne. The day after he performed the customary mourning ceremonies for the Amir-i-Ḥamīd—the Laudable Amir—Farrukh-zād, his brother, and paid a visit to his tomb, and to the tombs of his ancestors; and all the great nobles, ministers, and most distinguished personages accompanied him on foot, for he did not show [particular] favour or familiarity towards any person soever, and, on this account, awe of his authority was implanted in the hearts of all people.

When the intelligence of his accession to the throne reached Da‘iūd, the Saljik, he sent an embassy into Khurāsān; and entered into a treaty of peace with him. After Da‘iūd [died] his son, Alb-Arsalān, continued to abide by it; and Ibrāhīm brought under his entire control the

other titles, given by our author, are not mentioned by other writers. He was abstemious and continent, and renowned for his tact and excellent judgment. He wrote a beautiful hand, and every year sent a copy of the Kurān, written by himself, to Makkah, with other valuable offerings. Guzīdah says the Saljūk monarchs used to style him “father;” and, when they addressed a communication to him, used to write his titles at the top of it.

6 This fortress was situated in the district of Wajiristan.

7 The meaning assigned to this word generally is—“A commissary, a sergeant, a commander, a superior officer,” &c.; but, in the Burhān-Kātī’ and other works of authority in these matters, it seems, more correctly, an officer who marched in front of the troops bearing the standard—equivalent to the Italian gonfalonier.

8 Mr. Dowson translates this: “He bestowed no favours upon any one, and hence apprehensions about his rule took possession of the hearts of the people.”

The original is بدئ بسيب جهانی ارسلان، او دردنا خلق متشک شد.

9 Da‘iūd died, according to most authorities, in Rajab, 451 H., though one says it took place in 452 H., and another in 453 H. Faṣīb-I says, “In the year succeeding that in which Ibrāhīm ascended the throne, Jaghar Beg died.” At all events he died a considerable time before Tūghrīl, his brother.
dominions of his ancestors\(^1\). The troubles and disorders which had fallen upon that empire, through the vicissitudes of the times, and continual warfare, were all, during his reign, remedied and rectified, and the affairs of the empire of the great Mahmūd assumed fresh vigour. The ruinous places in the country were again repaired and restored, and he founded several towns\(^4\), such as Jatrābād (?) Khair-ābād, Aimin-ābād, and others in different parts.

During his reign many astonishing and uncommon occurrences took place; and Dāʾūd, the Saljūḵ, whose ravages, inroads, conflicts, and conquests might vie with the flashing lightning, died.

The birth of Ibrāhīm took place in the year of the conquest of Gurgān, in 424 H., in the province of Hirāt, and that monarch had forty daughters and thirty-six sons. All the daughters were given in marriage to illustrious Sayyids, and dignified Ulamā\(^2\); and one of those princesses was married to the great-great-grandfather of [the author] Minhāj-i-Sarāj, and this was the cause of the removal of the writer's ancestors from Jūrjān. Imām 'Abd-ul-Khālīk, Jūrjānī, who lies asleep within the Sarāē of Tāhir-ābād of Ghaznīn, saw in a dream, whilst dwelling in Jūrjān, in his youthful years, that an angel said unto him in the vision: “Arise, and proceed to Ghaznīn, and seek a wife.” When he awoke, he imagined that this dream might have been prompted by the devil; but, having dreamt the same dream three times successively, as therein commanded, he came to Ghaznīn, and one of those daughters was bestowed in marriage upon him\(^3\). That princess bore him a son, whom he named

\(^{1}\) This is not correct, because the Saljūḵs held a very considerable portion of them.

\(^{2}\) In Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 277, this passage is translated—"Several fortified places and towns were founded," &c., but kasr does not mean fortified places; and, even were "kāsr" read for it by mistake, it would not mean "fortified places." All authors agree that Ibrāhīm, during his reign, founded naught but masjids, colleges, buildings for the accommodation of travellers, and works of public utility; and that he built nothing for himself.

\(^{3}\) Here Sayyid is the title of the chiefs of the family of Muḥammad, descended from 'Alī, and his daughter Fāṭimah. Ulamā signifies the learned—theologians, ecclesiastics, doctors of law. Mr. Dowson translates the sentence, "nobles or learned men of repute."

\(^{4}\) Our author is so much taken up with his ancestor's grand alliance that he leaves out most of the principal events of the reign of Ibrāhīm. After he
Ibrāhīm—Maulānā, Minhāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān-i-Ibrāhīm—
upon whom be the mercy of the Almighty! He was the
father of Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn, who was the father of
Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dīn, 'Ujūbah-uz-zāmān [the Wonder of
his Age!], and he was the father of [the author] Minhāj-i-
Sarāj.

Sūltān Ibrāhīm was a monarch of felicitous and prosperous
career, and his reign extended over a period of forty-two
years, and his age [at his death] was sixty years. He died in
the year 492 H.

His sons were Māhmūd, Is-hāk, Yūsuf, Naṣr, 'Alī,
Bihzād, Khūrshād Malik, Khūb-chihr, Azād Malāk,
Malik-Chihr, Tūghān Shāh, Azād-Mīhr, Daulat Shāh,
Azād-Chihr, Aqīl Shāh, Nīr-Fīrūzāh Tahamtān Shāh,
Tūrān Shāh, Malik-Zād, Malik-Dād, Shams-ul-Mulk,
Malik Sher, Sher Malāk, Mas'ūd, Irān-Mīlb, Kāhān Shāh,
arranged matters with the Saljūks, by marrying his son, Mas'ūd, to a Saljūk
princess, daughter of Malāk Shāh, and sister of Sūltān Sanjar, and had no
case for farther anxiety respecting them, he carried his arms into Hind upon
several occasions, and reduced many strongholds, and other places, among
which is said to have been a populous city, inhabited by Khurāsānīs, whose
ancestors had been expelled from their native country by Afrāsīyāb. There
was a large hawz, or reservoir, there, said to have been half a league in
diameter; 100,000 persons were made captive, and taken away to Ghazānīn,
and booty, in proportion, was captured. During the reign of Ibrāhīm, in
470 H., Abū-Ṭāfīl-i-Muḥāmmad, son of Ḥusain [not Ḥassain], Al-Baihaqī, who
had been secretary in the "Diwan-i-Inshā," of Sūltān Māhmūd, son of Sabuk-
Tīghn, but, as the Deputy of the Khwājah-i-'Amīd, Abū Naṣr-i-Mīshkān, Al-
Zawzanī, and a pupil and disciple of that great man, died. Abū-l-Ṭāfīl was
the author of the work entitled the "Maṣʿāmat-ul-'Amīd-i-Abū Naṣr-i-Mīsh-
ḵān," and the "Ṭārīkh-i-Āl-i-Sabuk-Tīghn," in twelve books or volumes,
called by our author the "Ṭārīkh-i-Nāṣīrīf," entitled Tarīkh-i-Yamīnī. The
first portion of the work, containing the reigns of Sabuk-Tīghn and Māhmūd,
does not exist, and appears to have been lost for some centuries.

On the 5th of the month of Shawwāl. One author says in Rajab, but gives
no date. Fāṣībī mentions the taking of Jerusalem by the Christians [August
15th, but some say 15th July, A.D. 1099] in this same year, and the slaughter
of 80,000 Musalmāns. The year 492 H. began 27th of November, A.D.
1098.

In 471 H. Sūltān Ibrāhīm was apprized that his son, Saif-ud-Daulāh,
Māhmūd, meditated flying to Sūltān Malāk Shāh, the Saljūk; and accordingly
confined him within the citadel of Ghazānīn, and his partisans were sent to
other fortresses.

One MS. has Munawwar Shāh.

Malik Mīhr.

So in two MSS., but doubtful. The whole number forty. I expect the
text should be, "He had forty sons and thirty-six daughters."
Jahān Shāh, Firūz Shāh, Mirān Shāh, Yaghān Shāh, Turkān Shāh, Arsalān Shāh, Tughrīl Shāh, Kutlugh Shāh, Muayyid Shāh, Sultan Shāh, Malik Shāh, Khusrāu Shāh, Farrukh Shāh, and Bahram Shāh.

XI. 'ĀLĀ-UD-DĪN 3 MAS'ŪD, AL-KARĪM, OR THE BENEFICENT, SON OF IBRĀHĪM.

Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāhīm, who bore the title of Karīm, or the Beneficent, was a monarch of excellent disposition [and temperament], blessed with many virtues, just and equitable, and of auspicious reign.

He ascended the throne during the Khilafat of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mustazhar B'illah [Abū-l-'Abbās], i-Aḥmad, son of Al-Muktadi 3 Bi-amr-ullah. He was endowed with humility and beneficence to an extraordinary degree, and he suppressed all the oppressive usages which, before his time, had been established. The contingent taxes, which were exorbitant, he abolished throughout the Māhmūd dominions and in Zāwulīstān; and likewise remitted all tolls and imposts throughout the whole empire.

All the great chiefs and nobles and grandees of the country were left in undisturbed possession of the [offices and possessions] which they had held during the reign of Sultan Ibrahim 4; and he adopted the most beneficial regulations for the government of his dominions. Amir 'Uzd-ud-Daulah wa ud-Dīn 4 was continued in the government of Hindūstān.

1 Tughān, in one copy.
2 The proper title of this monarch appears to be 'Ālā-ud-Daulah.
3 Every copy of the work [and the printed text also], with one exception, perpetuates the great blunder of calling this Khalīfah "son of Muktadir," instead of Muktadi. In Section IV., on the Khalīfahs, our author gives the correct name.

Under the occurrences of the year 493 H., Faṣīh-ī mentions an important matter, from which it would appear that the chiefs of Ghūr were not, at the time in question, such great or powerful personages as Minhāj-i-Sarāj would lead us to believe. It says: "Husain, son of Sām, by command of 'Ālā-ud-Daulah, Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāhīm, obtained the government of Ghūr." I shall have more remarks to offer on this subject when I reach Section XVII.

4 Mr. Dowson renders this passage in the following manner: "He restored to the princes, nobles, and grandees, their possessions," &c. They must have been dispossessed of them in order to have them restored; but 220 — 5, "does not happen to mean "restored."

5 From the word "Amīr" I should imagine this personage must have been either a brother or uncle of Mas'ūd's.
[as before]; and, during Mas'ūd's reign, the Ḥājib-i-Buzarg [Great Chamberlain] died, and the Ḥājib, Ṭughā-Tigin, crossed the river Gang, in order to carry on holy war in Hindūstān, and penetrated to a place where, except Sultān Maḥmūd, no one had reached so far with an army before.

During the sovereignty of Mas'ūd all the affairs of the state were conducted with perfect order and regularity, and no heart had any cause of care from any quarter. He was born at Ghaznin in 453 H., reigned seventeen years, and died in 509 H., at the age of fifty-seven. The sister of Sultān Sanjar, Saljūḵī, who was styled the Mahd-i-'Irāḵ [or the 'Irāḵi spouse], was wedded to him.

His sons were Baha-ud-Din, Muḥammad, who had a son named Khaṭīr-ud-Din, Muḥammad; Sher-zād, Malik Arsalān, Farruḵh-zād, who had three sons, 'Ali, Irān Malīk, and Shah-zād; 'Ali, Bahrām Shāh, Malik-Chīhr, Malik-zād, Maḥmūd, Sultān Malīk, who had three sons, Arsalān Malīk, Al-Ḥasan, and Mir-Nūḵ; and Jamshed Malīk, who had two sons, Khūrshīd, and Tūrān Malīk.

XII. MALIK ARSAŁĀN, SON OF MAS'ŪD.

Malik Arsalān-i-'Abd-ul-Mulūk, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, ascended the throne in the year 509 H. at Garmsir itself.

6 In Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 278, "Mahd-i-'Irak" is translated "Cradle of Irāḵ." One of the meanings of mahd [६] is certainly a cradle, and also a seat for the back of an elephant or camel; but another is "making a bed," and here mahd has the metaphorical meaning of a wife, hence the meaning is the 'Irāḵi wife. Baiḥakī, in his History, makes constant use of the word in this sense.

7 Our author, like some others, has left out one sovereign. Faṣīḥ-i says that 'Alā-ud-Daulah, Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāhīm, died in 508 H., after a reign of sixteen years; and that he was succeeded by KAMĀL-UD-DAULAH, SHER-ZĀD, his son, in the same year; and in the following year Sherzād died, after reigning about one year, when Arsalān Shāh succeeded. Gūṣāḏāh confirms this succession of Kamāl-ud-Daulah, Sherzād, but says that he succeeded to the throne according to his father's will, and ruled for about a year, when his brother, Arsalān Shāh, rose against him, and put him to death, in 509 H. Other writers of authority likewise confirm the accession of Sherzād, who was the second son of Mas'ūd, while Arsalān was the third. Ya'fāfī and Fānākāṭī also state that Mas'ūd reigned sixteen years, and Baizawi confirms it.

8 His correct title is Sultan ud-Daulah, Arsalān Shāh, son of Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāhīm; and, according to the Tārīḵ-i-Ya'fāfī, he succeeded to the throne in accordance with his father's will. Some call him Abū-l-Mulūk.

9 The original is إر خود گرسپر. The passage is translated in Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 278, thus: "Malik Arslān Abu-l-malik [sic] ascended the throne
and assumed the sovereignty of the empire of Ghaznin. Bahram Shāh, his brother 1, fled from him, and proceeded into Khurāsān, to the court of Sultān Sanjar.

During the reign of Malik Arsalān some remarkable events occurred, one of which was that fire, accompanied by a thunderbolt, fell from the heavens, so that by that fire all the bazārs of Ghaznin were consumed 2. Other untoward events and occurrences likewise took place during his sovereignty, so that people held his rule in detestation 3. He was possessed of great nobility of mind, energy, courage, and valour.

When he came to the throne he treated his step-mother 4, who was [styled] Mahd-i-'Irāk, with indignity 5, and on that

A.H. 509 [A.D. 1115], and brought Garmsir and the kingdom of Ghaznī under his rule." I wonder what throne he ascended if it was not that of the kingdom of Ghaznī?

1 Some copies say "his uncle," but this is an error, for Bahram was his brother, as the names of the sons of Mas'ūd confirm.

2 The I. H. L. MS., No. 1952, and R. A. S. MS. are both very defective with regard to this reign. In those copies Bahram is said to be uncle of Arsalān; and in the sentence referring to the destruction of the bazārs of Ghaznī they have the word pluck—people—which is totally meaningless.

3 These matters are not alluded to in the works I have been quoting, and seem to have been taken from our author by more modern writers.

4 šakla means a step-mother.

5 He is said to have requested her to dance before him, for his amusement. This may have been one reason why Sultān Sanjar took up the insult to his sister, and the cause of his nephew, Bahram. When Arsalān came to the throne, he imprisoned the whole of his brothers except Bahram, who succeeded in reaching his uncle's court. Fanākātī makes a mistake in this matter. He says Sanjar was the son of Bahram's maternal uncle; but, as Mas'ūd, Bahram's father, married the daughter of Malik Shāh, she was Sanjar's sister [as our author also states], he being Malik Shāh's son. According to Guzidah, Fāṣīb-ī, and others, in 509 H., Sultān Sanjar, finding Arsalān Shāh deaf to all the expostulations which he had made in behalf of Bahram, set out along with the latter for Ghaznī, attended by a numerous army. Arsalān came forth to meet them with 30,000 horse, but, after an obstinate engagement, was defeated and retired to Lāhor. Having placed Bahram on the throne, and fixed a yearly tribute, Sanjar returned to his own dominions; but, in the same year [509 H.], Arsalān returned with an army, and defeated Bahram, who again took shelter in Sanjar's dominions. It was only in the following year that Sanjar became sole monarch of the Saljūks, after the death of his brother Mūḥammad, and had only a few months before acquired sway over 'Irāk and Khurāsān, his dominions before that having been but a portion of the latter territory. It was only in 511 H., that Bahram, having obtained the aid of an army from his uncle, who did not accompany him the second time, was able to move against his brother Arsalān again. In the encounter which ensued, Arsalān was taken prisoner, and thrown into confinement. Bahram's reign really commenced in
account Sanjar became his foe, and gave assistance to Bahram Shāh. Sanjar came against Ghaznin, and Malik Arsalān fought a battle with him, and was defeated, and retired towards Hindūstān, where he fell into misery and wretchedness. He died in the year 511 H., after a reign of two years, at the age of thirty-five years.

XIII. MU’IZZ-UD-DAULAH WA UD-DIN ?, BAHRĀM SHĀH.

Mu’izz-ud-Daulah, Bahram Shāh, was a person of handsome exterior, manly, munificent, just, and the sustainer and protector of his subjects. At the outset of his career, when Malik Arsalān ascended the throne, after the decease of their father, Sultan Mas’ud, the Beneficent, Bahram Shāh proceeded into Khurāsān, the throne of which country was adorned by the great and inestimable sovereign, the august, the martyr Sultan Sanjar; and Bahram Shāh resided at his court for a considerable time. Sultan Sanjar led an army towards Ghaznin, and Malik Arsalān, after an engagement, was defeated, and Bahram Shāh ascended the throne. Sanjar treated him with great honour, and Sayyid Hasan, a celebrated poet of Ghaznin, recited this ode [on that occasion] in the Audience Hall, in the presence of Sultan Sanjar, on whom be the mercy and the pardon of the Almighty! One quatrain of the ode in question is here inserted:—

"Of the eloquent of the world what is the strain,
That shall ever on earth be proclaimed?—
'A shout emanated from the seven heavens,
That Bahram Shāh is of the universe king.'"

511 H. In the following year Arsalān was released, but, being again found plotting, was put to death.  
6 At Shāh-ābād, in Shawwal, 511 H.  
7 Faṣihā states that his title was Vamīn-ud-Daulah, in which Guzīdah and other writers agree; but there are others also, but chiefly modern authors, who agree with the title in the text.  
8 The word Sa’īd—august—is not a proper name here. As Sanjar died a natural death it is difficult to conceive how he was a "martyr."  
9 It is the commencement of the poem. As Bahram was a patron of learning and literature, a number of authors flourished in his reign, and numerous works, both poetry and prose, were written. The celebrated work, known as "Kalīlah and Damnah," was translated from the Arabic [٧] into Persian by Naṣr-ullah, son of Muhammad, son of ‘Abd-ul-Majīd, [called "Hamīd" by Eastwick], in his reign, and was dedicated to Bahram Shāh. Subsequently, the same work was translated in the reign of Sultan Husain, of the race of Taimūr, by Mullā Hasan-i-Wā’īz-ul-Kāshīfī, and entitled Anwar-i-Suhailī.

Digitized by Google
Sultan Sanjar returned to Khurasan again, and Bahram Shâh assumed the government of the country. He carried on holy wars in the direction of Hindustan; and, on the 28th of Ramažân, in the year 512 H., he took Muḥammad Bahlîm prisoner, and put him into confinement; but at last released him, and made over the whole of Hindustan to him. Again he rebelled, and founded the fortress of Nâghawr, in the territory of Siwâlikh, in the neighbourhood of Birah; and he had likewise numerous sons and followers and dependents. Bahram Shâh, with the determination of extirpating him, advanced into Hindustan against his stronghold, and Bahlîm moved forward towards the confines of Multân, and fought an engagement with Bahram Shâh. The Almighty rewarded Muḥammad Bahlîm for his base ingratitude, and he, with his ten sons, together with their horses and arms, on the day of the battle, sank in a morass, so that no trace of him and them remained.

Bahram Shâh returned to Ghaznîn again, and between him and the Malikis, or chiefs of Ghûr, hostilities arose; and an engagement took place between them, in which Daulat Shâh, a son of Bahram, was slain. During that one campaign Bahram Shâh sustained three defeats from Sultan

---

1 One of Bahram's coins struck at Lâbor in 548 H., contained in a work on the subject, bears the following inscription. Obverse—"Coin of the Dar-us-Sulṭanat-i-Lâhor, in the fifth year of his prosperous and happy reign." Reverse—"A proclamation issued from the seven heavens, that Bahram Shâh is of the universe king." Anno 514." This inscription, it will be noticed, constitutes the two last lines of the quatrain given by our author, who, in another place, states that the coin of Bahram was stamped in Sanjar's name. See under his reign, next Section.

2 Two MSS. have ٢ and in place of ١ but either of them is a strange name for a Musalmân.

3 A few copies have "two" sons; but, as he is said before to have had "numerous" sons, ten is the more probable number.

4 Mr. Dowson, Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 280, says, with reference to this passage, "The text has some unintelligible words, which vary in different MSS.," and then quotes "Briggs." The words are which is also sometimes written signifies a ditch, a marsh, a place where water stagnates; and is the adjective derived from it.

5 Among the events of 521 H. Faṣîb-î mentions that "a battle took place between the troops of Ghaznîn, and 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Husain, son of Hasan, Ghûrî, at Tigîn-âbâd. Hostility had arisen between them on account of that place, which was a city situated between Ghaznîn and Ghûr. The city was taken, and Bahram fled. In 522 H. 'Alâ-ud-Dîn took Ghâzin, and made it over to his brother. See Section XVII.
The Yaminiah Dynasty.

1711

The Ala-ud-Din, Ghuri, and Ghaznin fell into the hands of the Ghuri. They set fire to it, and destroyed the whole city. Bahram Shah retired into Hindustan at this time, but, on the withdrawal of the Ghuri forces, he returned to Ghaznin again, and there died after a reign of forty-one years.

His sons were Jalal-ud-Daulah, Daulat Shah; slain in battle with the Ghuri; Ala-ud-Daulah, Da'ud Shah; Bahau-ud-Daulah, Sultan Shah; Fakhr-ud-Daulah, Ali Shah; Izz-ud-Daulah, Muhammad Shah; Samaud-Daulah, Masud Shah; Shiheb-ud-Daulah, Mansur Shah; Mu'ayyan-ud-Daulah, Shahan Shah; Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Khusrau Shah; and Sayyid-ud-Daulah, Farrukh Shah.

XIV. KHUSRAU SHAH, SON OF BAHRAM SHAH.

Sultan Mu'ayyan-ud-Daulah, but, according to some statements, Taj-ud-Daulah, Khusrau Shah, ascended the throne in the year 552 H.

As the Maliks and Sultans of Ghur had shaken the empire of the house of Mahmod to its very foundations, and had wrested Ghaznin, Bust, Zamin-i-Dawar, and Tiginabad out of their hands, and had ravaged and desolated them, feebleness had come upon its government, and its glory and splendour had passed away. When Khusrau Shah ascended the throne he was weak and powerless, and was unable to maintain his rule over the country.

A horde of the tribe of Ghuzz, who had acquired domination and power in Khurasan, in the reign of the August Sultan, Sanjar, who had now passed away, marched an army against Ghaznin. Khusrau Shah was unable to resist

Great discrepancy exists with respect to the dates of Bahram Shah's death, and the accession and death of his son Khusrau Shah, and also of Khusrau Malik, the last of the dynasty. For farther notice of this, see note 5, next page.

In one copy Zawul Shah.

That is, 'who were Maliks and also Sultans' from the text.

Some lexicographers spell the word Ghazz, and some Ghuz.

Sultan Sanjar died on the 16th of Rabi-ul-awwul, 552 H., but a few writers say in 553 H. The former is correct.
them, and he accordingly retired into Hindūstān, and Ghaznīn was lost to him, and fell into the hands of the Ghuzz. They retained possession of that territory for a period of twelve years, until the august Sultan, Ghīyās-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Sām, led an army from Ghūr to Ghaznīn, overthrew Burāk, the Ghuzz chief, retook Ghaznīn, and established [his brother] Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Sām, the martyr, upon the Ghaznīn throne. Khusrau Shāh had retired to Lahor, of Hindūstān. His reign extended to a period of seven years, after which he died.

The Taṣḵirat-ul-Mulīk contains a very good account of the reign of Khusrau Shāh, which I here make an extract from. "He succeeded his father, and as 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Ḥasan, Ghūrī, was in full march upon Ghaznīn, he, being unable to resist him with hopes of success, retired into Hindiūstan [here signifying the Panjab] and took up his residence at Lāhor. He turned his attention to the government of the western portion of his father's dominions, which were now left to him; but, when 'Alā-ud-Dīn retired, after the plunder of Ghaznīn, Khusrau Shāh returned to Ghaznīn, and again took up his quarters there. Soon after, when the Ghuzz tribe took Sultan Sanjar, his great uncle, captive, and were advancing towards Ghaznīn, Khusrau Shāh, who, probably, while Sultan Sanjar was in power, might have expected aid from him in some shape or other, now that he was a prisoner, was totally unable to resist them, and he again retired to Lāhor, and died there in 555 H., after reigning eight years."

In one copy Turāk.

Great discrepancy prevails among authors respecting the latter part of Bahram Shāh's reign, and the reigns of Khusrau Shāh, and Khusrau Malik, which I will notice as briefly as possible.

The first events noticed in Faṣīḥ-ī, under the year 523 H., are, "the return of Bahram Shāh to Ghaznīn, his encountering Saif-ud-dīn, Ghīrī, and the capture of the latter." He was placed upon a bullock—not "a cow"—and paraded through the streets of that city, and afterwards put to death. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, his brother, determined to revenge him, and marched towards Ghaznīn with a numerous army; but Bahram died before his arrival, in that same year [523 H.]." An account of the plunder of the city, and massacre of the people then follows; and it is farther stated therein, that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jahān-soz, made over the sovereignty of Ghaznīn to his nephews, the brothers Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, and Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, and that "Khusrau Shāh, who succeeded his father, Bahram, was inveigled by them, that same year, and immured within the citadel of Ghaznīn, and the dynasty of the race of Maḥmūd, son of Sabuk-Tīgīn, ended:"—that is, terminated over the Ghaznīn territory.

Yāfaʿī, Kāẓim Baʿzawī, Guzīdah, Ṭārīkh-i-Alfī, and some others agree with the above statement, except as to the year of Bahram's death, and the termination of the dynasty. These four works also mention 'Alā-ud-Dīn as the first of the Malikīs—here, doubtless, signifying independent rulers—of Ghūr; and they, correctly, it appears to me, account those previous to him to have been mere subordinate chieftains, for, if we consider the small extent of territory they could only have possibly possessed, their statements are to be relied upon.
His sons were Mahmūd, Khusrau Malik, and Kai-Khusrau.

Guzidah says Bahram died in 544 H. after a reign of thirty-two years, while Fanākātī asserts that he reigned twenty years, and died in 532 H. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, which is generally most particular and correct as regards dates, agrees with Guzidah as to the year, but confirms the statement of Yāfaʿī, Faṣḥ-ī, and the Nizām-ut-Tawārīkh, as to Khusrau Shāh having reigned but one year, after which the tribe of Ghuzz came against Ghaznīn, and he, being unable to cope with them, retired into Hind, and took up his residence at Lāhor, where he died in 545 H. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh however adds, that, in the Raūqat-ṣ-Ṣafā, the year 555 H. is given. Guzidah also says this event occurred in 555 H., and in this Kāṣī Bājāwī agrees. Among more modern works, the Taṣkirat-ul-Mulik and Tārikh-i-Ākbari state that Bahram died in 547 H., after reigning thirty-five years, and Khusrau Shāh in 555 H., and in this the Tārikh-i-Ākbari, Badāuīnī, and Fīrishtāh, and other modern writers agree.

Our author states that Bahram ascended the throne in 511 H., and died in 552 H. after a reign of forty-one years; and that Khusrau Shāh, his son, succeeded, and reigned seven years, but does not give the date of his decease; but, by his statement, it would have been in 559 H., after which date his son, Khusrau Malik, succeeded. Their coins, mentioned farther on, tend to show the contrary.

As to 'Alā-ud-Dīn's making over the government of Ghaznīn to his nephews, there is not so much discrepancy in the earlier writers, with the exception of our author, who expressly states that they were detained within the walls of a fortress by him, and were only set at liberty by his son and successor, as mentioned in Section XVII., which see. This was the year after Saīf-ud-Dīn's death, who, according to Faṣḥ-ī, was slain in a battle with the Ghuzz near Balkh, in which same year his nephew, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, succeeded him, and inflicted a defeat upon the Ghuzz, with considerable slaughter, and imposed tribute on them.

After Khusrau Shāh comes his son Khusrau Malik, or Malik Khusrau, as he is also styled. Yāfaʿī, Bājāwī, Guzidah, and Fanākātī say the dynasty terminated with Khusrau Shāh, and make no mention of his son, as his successor. Perhaps they considered him as ruler of the Panjāb only. The Taṣkirat-ul-Mulik states that Khusrau Malik succeeded his father as ruler of the Panjāb in 555 H., and was put to death in 583 H., after reigning twenty-eight years, while the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, which agrees in the date of his accession, says that he was immured in a fortress in Ghīrjistān in 583 H., and in 588 H. was murdered along with his son Bāhrām Shāh, and the whole of the remainder of the Ghaznavī family then left. Rauqat-ṣ-Ṣafā, Hābūb-us-Seyr, Fīrishtāh, and others say this occurred in 582 H., and Būdāuīnī, who merely gives this ruler a place "because the author of the Taṣkirat-i-Ākbarī does so," as he remarks, says 583 H. Our author states that the Ghūris first appeared before Lāhor in 577 H., and gained possession of it in 583 H., thus agreeing with some of the later statements, but mentions the year 598 H., as the year in which Khusrau Malik and all his family were murdered.

Faṣḥ-ī mentions the Ghūriāns as powerful in Ghaznīn and Hind in 566 H., that Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn took that capital from the Ghuzz tribe [What an excellent opportunity this would be, to the "comparative" or rather superlative "philologists," to have derived the name of Ghaznīn from the Ghuzz tribe!] in 569 H., and made it over to his brother, Mūlizz, as Wālī. After referring to
XV. KHUSRAU MALIK, SON OF KHUSRAU SHÀH, THE LAST OF THE MAḤMÛDĪ DYNASTY.

Tāj-ud-Daulah, Sultān-i-Ḥalim, or the Mild Sultan, Khusrav Malik, ascended the throne at Lahor.

He was a monarch of excessive mildness and beneficence, unassuming, and endowed with many good qualities, but addicted to pleasure. As he came at the close of the sovereignty of his family, no prepossessing memento of him has survived, and the sovereignty of that dynasty terminated in him. Anarchy and disorder at last showed itself in the affairs of his government, and all the Amirīs and lesser officials of the country, both the Turks and the free-born [natives], all became too powerful for him to deal with, and the servants of the state and governors of provinces and districts exercised independent power, whilst their sovereign abandoned himself wholly to pleasure.

the defeat, by him, of a horde of the Sankarān, a sept of the Ghuzz tribe [not "a mountain" or "a town"] in 571 H., and his expedition against Nahrwālah in 575 H., the same work states, under the occurrences of the year 581 H.—"In this year an engagement took place between Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, son of Sām, son of Ḥusain, son of Sām, the Wālf of Ghaznīn, and Khusrav Malīk, at Lohor, in Hind. Khusrav was taken captive by stratagem; and the Sipāḥ-sālār, 'Alī Karmākh, who was Wālf of Multān previously, was left at Lohor as Wālf, but some writers say this took place in 582 H."

In Mr. Thomas's paper on the Ghaznī Coins there is, unfortunately, no notice of the last two monarchs of the house of Sabuk-Tīgin, and there are no coins of theirs, or the dates above referred to might have been tested; but a work I have by me supplies some information on the subject, and confirms the statements of Faṣīḥ-ī, and the older writers. A coin of Khusrav Shāh's therein noticed, contains the following inscription, which I translate literally:—

Obverse—"Stamped coin in the universe, with magnificence and grandeur, the great Bāḏgštāh Khusrav Shāh."

Reverse—"Struck in the city of Lohor, A.H. 552, the first of his reign."

Another coin of his son, Khusrav Malīk, also struck in the Panjāb, contains the following inscription:—

Obverse—"Zahr-ud-Daulah wa ud-Dīn, Sultān Khusrav Malīk."

Reverse—"Struck in the city of Lohor, A.H. 555, the first of the reign."

All writers agree as to the deceitful and treacherous conduct of Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, towards Khusrav Malīk. After he had inveigled that unfortunate prince by his oaths and promises, he broke them, and sent him and the whole of the family then remaining to his brother Ghīyāṣ-ud-Dīn, to be immured in a fortress in Ghūr. Subsequently, when these very pious and model Sultāns, as our author considers them, found those unfortunates in the way, they massacred the whole of them.
Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din Muhammad, Sam, used to advance every year from Ghaznin, and to possess himself of portions of Hind and Sind, until in the year 577 H., when he appeared before the gate of Lahor, and extorted a son and an elephant from Khusrau Malik, and then retired. Thus matters went on until the year 583 H., when he brought an army against Lahor and reduced it. Khusrau Malik was induced, under the faith of a treaty, to come out, upon which he was taken and sent off to Ghaznin, and from thence was removed to the capital, Firuz-koh, which was the seat of government of the elder Sultan, Ghiyas-ud-Din Muhammad, Sam. That sovereign gave orders that Khusrau Malik should be immured within the fortress of Balarwan, in Gharjistan.

When the affair of Sultan Shah occurred in Khurasan, and the two Sultans turned their attention to that important enterprise, they put Sultan Khusrau Malik to death in the year 598 H., and the latter's son, Bahrám Shah, who was confined within the fortress of Saifrud of Ghur, was also murdered, and the dominion and dynasty of Nasir-ud-Din, Sabuk-Tigin, became obliterated, and the sovereignty of Iran, the throne of Hindustan, and the territory of Khurasan came under the sway of the Maliks and Sultans of the house of Shansabani.

Khusrau Malik's sons were Bahrám Shah, Mahmud Shah, Jahān Shah, Mas'ud Shah, Malik Shah, and Khusrau Shah.

* In the greater number of places where this name occurs in the different MSS., Yalarwan is given; but it is also written Yalarwān, Badwan, and in various other ways. Saifrūd is also written Sanskarān in some copies. See note to Mu'izz-ud-Din's reign, Section XIX.

* See under Section XVII.
SECTION XII.

THE DYNASTY OF THE SALJÜKİAH.

The author of the Ṭārīḵh-i-Ṣānī, who was Ibn Ḥaiṣām, has thus related: that when the victorious Sulṭān, Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tīgin, crossed the Jīhūn, and the territory of Māwar-un-Nahr was left clear in his hands, Kadr Khān, who was the brother of the late I-lak [Khān], and of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty, entered into negotiation with the Sulṭān. Between the two potentates treaties of alliance and amity were entered into, and confirmed and cemented, and an interview took place between them.

After Kadr Khān had been received by the Sulṭān, the latter commanded, after the public reception, that the privy apartment should be cleared; and they held private conference together, and consulted confidentially on all the affairs of Irān and Tūrān. Kadr Khān preferred many requests to the Sulṭān, one of which was that he would remove the son of Saljūḵ, the Turkmān, with his followers.

1 At Section VII. page 11, the author calls the work Kasag-i-Ṣānī, but the signification is the same. See also note 5, page 56.

2 This interview took place in 419 H. They entered into a treaty of friendship and alliance, the principal stipulation in which was, that a portion of Māwar-un-Nahr should remain in the possession of the Sulṭān, and that some should belong to Kadr Khān, who is styled Bāḏghāh of Māwar-un-Nahr. The Khwājāh i-ʿAmīd, Abū Naṣr-i-Mīshḵān, Al-Zawzanī, relates that at that time the forces along with Sulṭān Maḥmūd were so numerous, that no monarch had ever so many under his standard before.

3 With respect to the Saljūḵs and their rise to power, Oriental historians differ considerably; but space will not permit my noticing their discrepancies, except very briefly. Several authors altogether deny that Sulṭān Maḥmūd suffered the Saljūḵs to enter Khurāsān, and assigned them lands therein—among whom is the author of the Rauzat-ṣūl-Safā— and contend that the two brothers, Dāʿūd-i-Jaghar Beg and Tūghril Beg [but our author states they were altogether separate from those under Yagh-mū or Yagh-mūr; still his statement is so confused as to be scarcely reliable], with their dependents, did not cross the Jīhūn into Khurāsān, until the reign of Masʿūd, when they appropriated Nisā and Abīward, but, at the same time, sent to tender their allegiance to that monarch. See note 8, p. 120. In the Ṭārīḵh of Abū-i-ʿAlā-i-Aḥwāl, or the “Squinter,”
and dependents, from the country of Māwar-un-Nahr and Turkistan into Khurasan. These followers and dependents Saljūk is said to have been a descendant of Afrasiyāb, and had four sons—Isra'īl, Mīkā'īl, Mūsā-i-Beghū [i.e. son of Beghū], and Yūnas. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh says he had five; and that the name of the fourth son was Yūsūf, and the fifth Yūnas. Finding the lands they occupied too circumscribed, they were compelled, in 375 H., to leave their native pastures in Turkistan—one author says the Dašht-i-Khurz—and entered Māwar-un-Nahr, and took up their quarters in the Nūr of Bukhārā, and the Sughd of Samarkand, making the former their winter, and the latter their summer quarters. Māḥmūd, according to the "Squinter," was on friendly terms with them [see under his reign], and Isra'īl came and waited upon him, when that monarch entered Māwar-un-Nahr, and was treated with great distinction. This was the occasion when Isra'īl told the Sultan the effect which the sending of his two arrows and his bow would have, so well known as not to require relation here. [Gibbon incorrectly calls him Isma'īl!] The Sultan, it is stated, became suspicious of the Saljūks on this; and had Isra'īl seized, when in a state of intoxication, and sent to the fortress of Kalinjar in Hind; but a few authors, including our own, say "to the fortress of Multān." The former statement I think the most reliable. Isra'īl remained in durance till his decease seven years after; but, previous to his death, he sent messengers to his brothers, sons, and kinsmen, and incited them to rebel. They sent to ask Māḥmūd's leave to cross over the Jīhūn into Khurasān; but Arsalān the Ḥājiḥ, who was governor of that province, refused to grant it, and strongly advised the Sultan to refuse permission. Contrary to Arsalān's advice, he gave them permission; and they passed the Jīhūn, and took up their quarters in the pasture-lands about Nisā and Abīward. Mīkā'īl had two sons, Tughrīl, and Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, who, from their talents and superior accomplishments, became the leaders of the tribe.

Other writers, however, say that Saljūk had four sons, Isrā'īl, Mīkā'īl, Mūsā, and Yūnas; and that Beghū was the son of Mūsā. Mīkā'īl having been slain in one of the battles of that period, leaving two sons, Saljūk named those two grandsons, Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg and Tughrīl Beg, rulers of the tribe after his decease. When Māḥmūd of Ghaznī subdued the territories of Māwar-un-Nahr, among other chiefs, Dā'ūd and Tughrīl, who had fought several battles with the rulers of Turkistan, and had acquired fame for valour, waited on Māḥmūd, and solicited that some portion of territory should be assigned to their tribe, as grazing-grounds for their flocks and herds.

Faṣīb-i states that, previous to Māḥmūd's crossing the Jīhūn and entering Māwar-un-Nahr, as early as 416 H., Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, son of Tughrīl Beg, son of Mīkā'īl, son of Saljūk—by this account Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg was Mīkā'īl's grandson—had risen and entered into the Khwārajzm territory, thus, in a measure, confirming a part of our author's statement. The same authority mentions that it was in 419 H., on the Sultan's return from Māwar-un-Nahr, that Isrā'īl, son of Beghū, son of Saljūk, son of Lukmān, had the interview with the Sultan, who brought him along with him; but soon after, on some account or other, Isrā'īl was seized and sent to the fortress of Kālinjar.

For Fanākātī's statement on this subject, see note 2, p. 126.

The above notice of the Saljūks has been taken from the Tārīkh-i-Abū-i-'Alā, Guzidah, the Lubb-ut-Tawārikh, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, Abū-i-Fagl-i Baihaḵī, Tārīkh-i-Alī, Mujaṁi'-ul-Khiyār, Jāhān-Ārā, and the Muntakhāb-ut-Tawārikh, and others. Yāfa'ī differs considerably from these works and
of Saljūk and his son were a tribe whose dwelling-place was the Nūr of Bukhārā, and they were all subject and obedient to the Sāmānī dynasty.

At the period in question the son of Saljūk had attained to man's estate, and, on account of his prowess and valour, his arrow and his sword, all the Malikīs of Turkistān and the Afrāsiyābī rulers were continually in fear. Not a bird in the air nor a deer of the plain escaped his arrow; and, like a whirlwind and a thunder-cloud, he was wont to enter the chase or the conflict, and used to vanquish every man who entered into a personal contest with him. Upon this occasion when Ḵadr Khān joined and accompanied Sultān Maḥmūd, and all were in attendance at his stirrup, and proceeding towards the Sultān's own tents, the son of Saljūk continued to ride on before them all, a Turkmān cap placed jauntily on one side of his head, and bestriding a horse like the spur of a mountain, galloping about like a roaring lion, or the flickering lightning, in such wise that the forces of Turān and Irān were amazed at his agility and horsemanship.

As Ḵadr Khān had requested of the Sultan, so it was carried out; and, at the very time that Ḵadr Khān set out on his return [to his own territory], they brought a mandate [from the Sultan] to the son of Saljūk to remain in his tent, and gave orders that his followers, with his and their effects, should cross the river Jiḥūn into the confines of Khūrāsān in company with the Maḥmīdī forces. Agents were directed to take care of them, and look after them; and, when they reached the bank of the Jiḥūn, they crossed the river along with servants of the Sultān.

At the time the command was issued that the son of Saljūk, along with his followers and dependents, should embark on boats, and pass over the Jiḥūn with their property and effects, the Ḥājib, Arsalān Khān, who was authors, but least from Guzīdah. I have not completed the translation of that portion of Yāsāfī as yet, therefore cannot make much use of it at present.

It will be noticed that our author repeatedly quotes "the son of Saljūk," but gives no name; and, moreover, Ḫājībī, to whom he must refer, was, by some accounts, Saljūk's son, and by others, his grandson.

4 A district of the territory of Bukhārā so called.

5 His correct name is Arsalān Khān. Jāṣīb [جائیب] seems to have been an error on the part of some early copyist for Ḥājīb [حاجیب], and copied accordingly by Fīrūzštāb, and other modern authors.
the Amir [Governor] of Khurāsān, and the greatest of the retainers of Sultan Maḥmūd, made a representation to that monarch, saying: "This which your Majesty has commanded is far from the cautious counsel of your servant, for, with your own hand, you have placed power in the hands of the enemies of your country, over the dominion of your descendants; and, in the end, by this tribe, disorder and tumult will be brought upon the empire." The Sultan, in reply, said: "What is your opinion in this matter?" The Ḥājib, Arsalān, answered: "My advice is this, that the whole of them be commanded to re-embark on board the boats, and then to sink them in the river; or otherwise to have their thumbs cut off, so as to render them incapable of discharging arrows in future." Sultan Maḥmūd answered: "Arsalān, thou art a hard-hearted man, indeed! To break one's promise, and slay the helpless, are not acts becoming a sovereign who possesses any feelings of honour, or a man who has any magnanimity in his nature; and, moreover, destiny cannot be averted by perfidy any more than by valour." However, after the son of Saljūk had been conveyed across the Jihūn, it was commanded that he should be brought to Multān, while his kinsmen, and his other followers and dependents were assigned pasture-lands for their flocks and cattle in the territory of Khurāsān, such as Nisā, Nishāpūr, Bāward, and other tracts in Upper Khurāsān.

As the Almighty had willed that, subsequently, this race should become great and powerful, and that from their posterity should spring puissant and mighty monarchs and rulers, notwithstanding Sultan Maḥmūd afterwards regretted what he had done, still regret was of no avail, for regret cannot avert destiny.

Imām Abū-l-Fażl-i-Baihḵāi states in his Tārīkh-i-Nāsirī,

---

6 So in the text; but it must be presumed that the author meant the thumb of the right hand of all the males.
7 Also called Abīward; but, correctly speaking, Abīward is the name of the town, and Bāward the name of the district. Guzīdah states that the people of Khurāsān, in the parts where the Saljiiks were located, became attached to the brothers Ṭughrīl Beg and Jaghar Beg.
8 This portion of Baihḵāi's work has not come down to us. He mentions the names of these chiefs in one or two places in the part relating to the life of Masʿūd, and says that the people who entered Khurāsān under Yaghmūr and other chiefs were Turkmāns; and he always makes a difference between them and the Saljiiks.
that, at the time that Sultan Mahmud carried across the Ji̇hūn four thousand Saljūk families, their Mihtars, or chiefs, were four persons, Yagh-mūr, Būkah, Kūk-tāsh, and Kāzil, and in different parts of Khurāsān pasture-lands were assigned to them, and they were made over to [the guardianship of] the great nobles of Khurāsān, and instructions were given to them that the Saljūks should, in no way, and on no account, be permitted to carry arms. Their chief, who was the eldest son of Saljūk, and famous for his manhood, was sent to Multān, along with two of his sons likewise; and at Multān, after some time had passed away, they also died. The remainder of the Saljūk tribe, who had remained behind in Māwar-un-Nahr, were in the habit every year of migrating from Nūr of Bukhārā to Darghān of Khwārazm, to the pasture-lands therein. They entertained innate enmity towards the Malik [chief] of Jund, whose name was Shāh; and, in the reign of Sultan Mas'ūd, the Martyr, the Amir [Governor] of Khwarazm, the son of Altūn-Tāsh, rebelled against the Sultan's authority. The

9 Also written Yagh-mūr.

1 It will be doubtless noticed here that our author stated just a few lines above, quoting Baihākī, as he says, that the Saljūks, who crossed the Jīhūn into Khurāsān, had four chiefs, and immediately after says, "their chief, who was Saljūk's son," died at Multān. He evidently confounds those of the tribe who entered Khurāsān with the remainder who stayed behind. See p. 121. Ya'āfī states that their place of abode was twenty farsaks, or leagues, distant from Bukhārā.

2 All the copies of the work do not contain this last sentence about the sons.

Faṣīḥ-ī, Baizawi, and other authorities, mention the death of Isrā'īl, son of Beghū, son of Sulmān, son of Saljūk, at Kālinjar, in 426 H. His son had come with a party of followers from Māwar-un-Nahr to effect his release and carry him off. They had succeeded in getting him out of the fortress, but missed the road, were pursued, and overtaken. When his pursuers were in the act of securing him, he cried out to his son: "I shall never be released; do you seek to acquire territory." That same year Dā'ūd-i Jāghar Beg broke out into open rebellion, and took up his quarters at Marw.

4 Considered generally as belonging to Samarkand.

Altūn-Tāsh, the Hajib, was appointed viceroy of Khwārazm by Sultan Mahmūd in 407 H., after he [Mahmūd] had proceeded thither in person, and had defeated the rebels, who had slain his son-in-law, Māmūn, son of Māmūn, and had put Nīāl-Tīfīn to death, as related in the events of Mahmūd's reign. When the Sultan returned to Balkh, after his raid upon the Afghāns, Altūn-Tāsh-i Khwārazm Shāh, as he is styled, was sent for. He came and remained at Court three months. He then obtained permission to return; and, in the presence of Khwājah Ahmad-i Hasan, Maimandi, the Wazīr, and the Khwājah i-'Amīd, Abū Naṣr-i Mīshkān, gave his word, and swore, that he would never
Saljūks joined him in that outbreak; and, in the year 425 H., he bestowed upon them a tract of country belonging to the territory of Khwārazm, which they call Rabāt-i-Māsah, as grazing ground for their flocks and herds. The chief of Jund, having received information as to their situation, made a raid upon them, and slew about eight thousand of the males, and but few of them remained, and they became totally at a loss as to what they should do in this state of affairs.

The Governor of Khwārazm, Hārūn, the rebel, the son of Altūn-Tāsh [with whom the Saljūks had sided, as before stated] had [lately] been killed, and they found it impossible to continue to dwell in the territory of Khwārazm; and, through fear of the sons of 'Ali Tīgin, the late ruler of Bukhārā, who was one of the Afrāsiyābī Khāns, or chief-tains, they were unable to enter that territory. Out of necessity, therefore, they moved towards Nīṣā and Marw—in all about seven hundred horsemen—with their property, and their families and dependents.

Yagh-mūr, who was one of their chiefs, had died previously to this, and a son of his remained; and, when that portion of the tribe [who had escaped the sword of the Malik of Jund] came towards Nīṣā and Marw from Khwārazm, the son of Yagh-mūr was unable to cope with them, for, although they were weak in numbers themselves, other tribes, such as the Nīāls, and others, had joined them. The son of Yagh-mūr [with his tribe, who had first crossed the Jihūn] retired before them, and entered 'Irāk, and seized upon Rai; and the Saljūks took up their residence in the act contrary to the Sultan's wishes and commands; and he left two sons, Saibī (?) and Yūsuf, at Court. In 422 H., after the accession of Mas'ūd, the Martyr, Altūn-Tāsh presented himself at Court, and was soon allowed to return. After he had departed, a number of the Sultan's advisers worked on the mind of the Sultan so much about it, that he regretted he had allowed him to leave. A message was sent for him to return, but he made excuses, and did not do so. It was thought he had penetrated into the design against him; but subsequently he became satisfied, after receiving kind messages from the Sultan. No mention is made in Fāsiḥ-i respecting this grant of lands by the son of Altūn-Tāsh, to the Saljūks.

6 Here again our author says the son of Yagh-mūr, but does not give any name. This is his constant failing.

7 The Nīāls refer to the adherents of Nīāl-Tīgin, viceroy of the Panjāb, who had rebelled, and had been removed. See Baihaḵf.
grazing lands on the border of the desert [in the districts of Nisā and Marw].

The Almighty gave them strength and power, so that they possessed themselves of the territories of Khurāsān; and the east, and the west, and whatever the dominions of Islām were, wholly and completely came under the sway of their descendants, in such wise that their fame will remain upon the records of time unto the judgment day.

I. TUGHIRIL, SON OF MIKĀ'IL.

The author of the Tāriḵ-i-Nāširī, 1 Imam Abū-l-Faţl-i-Baihaḵī, relates after this manner: that, at this period when the Saljūks entered the skirt of the desert of Khurasān, and the son of Yaghmūr retired discomfited before them, their Mihtars [chiefs] were three persons—Tughrīl and Dā'ūd, two brothers, the sons of Mīkā’īl, and their uncle Beghū; and all three in accord determined to tender their services to Sultan Mas’ūd, and despatched a confidential agent to the Sultan’s presence—he, at that time, having come to Nishāpūr from Gurgān—and solicited that the districts of Nisā, Farawah, and certain places at the head of the desert might be assigned to them in rā. In the missive

8 The commencement of the outbreak of the Saljūks was in 423 H.; and, in the same year, Kadr Khān, the Turk, ruler of Mawar-un-Nahr, died. Jaghar Beg, son of Abū Sulṭān, seized Marw, and took up his quarters there in 426 H. The Saljūks made an attempt upon Hirāt in 428 H., but were repulsed, and forced to retire. They returned however in the following year, and compelled the place to capitulate, and the territory was annexed in the name of Sultan Tughrīl Beg; but Sulṭān Mas’ūd subsequently gained re-possession of Hirāt, and severely punished those who had, as he considered, so tamely capitulated to the Saljūks. See note 9, p. 129.

9 His correct name is Abū Talib, Muhammad, and his title, Rukn-ud-din, Tughrīl Beg, Yamin-i-Amir-ul-Muminīn, or “The Right Hand of the Lord of the Faithful.”

1 This work is styled Tāriḵ-i-Mukaddasi-i-Nāširī in two copies of the text at this place.

2 The word here used is “munhazim,” signifying routed, put to flight, discomfited in battle, dispersed, &c.

As from other writers, our author has not quoted Baihaḵī correctly. The text states that they sent a trustworthy agent to the Sulṭān. The following is condensed from what Baihaḵī says in this matter. Soon after Mas’ūd arrived at Gurgān, a despatch reached his minister from Bū-Faţl, Sūrī, Diwān of Nishāpūr, which had been brought by horsemen in two days and a half from that city, intimating an irruption of Saljūks and Nīlāfs from Marw, who had
in question they had written their own names in the following manner:—"Tughril, and Beghū, and Dā'ūd, who proceeded to Nisa, where they had joined the Turkmans [see note 8, page 119] there, and that they had been reinforced by other Saljūks and Khwārazmīs; and further, that he, Bū-Faʿl, enclosed therewith a communication addressed to him by Beghū, Tughril, and Dā'ūd, in order that the Sulṭān might give such orders upon it as he might deem fit. The communication began thus: "To his Excellency the Shaikh, the Illustrious Lord, the Sayyid Maulānā Abī-ul-Faṣl-i-Sūrf, from his servants, Beghū [it will be noticed that the uncle here takes precedence of the nephews], Tughril, and Dā'ūd, the Muwali or lieges of the Amīr-ul-Mūminīn;' and began, "We, your servants." They went on to state that they found it impossible to dwell in Māwar-un-Nahr and Bukhārā since the death of Ali-Tigīn, who had been kind and friendly towards them, as his affairs were now administered by his two sons, inexperienced boys, who were hostile towards them. On account of the distracted state of Khwārazm, through Hārūn, its ruler, having being killed, they found it impossible likewise to remove thither; and therefore they had come to put themselves under the protection of the Sovereign of the World and Lord of Beneficence, the great Sulṭān. They hoped the Khwājah [Abī-ul-Faṣl] would aid them at this juncture, and write on their behalf to the Khwājah, 'Abū Naṣr [the Wazīr], and advocate their cause as they were known to him. They farther solicited that, as through that minister's good offices [Khwājah Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad had previously been Wazīr to Hārūn and his father], the late Hārūn, Khwārazm Shāh, used to allow them to remove with their families and flocks into his territory in winter, he would assist them now. If the Sulṭān, they said, would accept their vassalage, one of them would constantly attend at Court [as a pledge of good faith], and the other two would serve him in such manner as he might command; and they would rest under his great shadow. They asked that the territories of Nīṣā and Farāwah, which lay on the edge of the Desert [between the mountains bounding Khurāsān on the north-east, and the Jībūn or Oxus], should be conferred upon them, in return for which they promised they would undertake to prevent any rebel from raising his head in Balkhān Koh, Dihistān, the direction of Khwārazm, or the Jībūn; and would assail the 'Irākīs [the Turkmen under Yaghşū-.mūr's son are here referred to] and drive them out. Their request was couched in civil words, to all appearance, but concluded as follows: "but if, which God forbid, the Sulṭān would not grant their request, and should refuse his permission, they did not know what the state of affairs might become, because they had no place on earth, and none remained to them. Not having the boldness to venture to address such an august person [as the Sulṭān's Wazīr], they had addressed the Khwājah [Abī-ul-Faṣl] to solicit him, Please God! to bring their request to a favourable issue."

Sulṭān Masʿūd wished to move at once against them, so wrath was he at this insolent demand; and bitterly complained of the injury and trouble his father had entailed upon the empire and upon him, through allowing any of those "camel-drivers," as he styled the Saljūks, to pass the Jībūn, in the first instance. The Wazīr and some others counselled the acceptance of the allegiance of the Saljūk chiefs; but another party at the Court advised the Sulṭān not to think of marching against them himself, or at the present time, as they would have it that the cattle of his army, after the late expedition, required rest. They advised that a reply should be sent to Abī-ul-Faṣl, telling
are the Mawāli [lieges] of the Lord of the Faithful, represent unto your presence," &c. The Almighty had been pleased to fill their hearts with much arrogance and contumacy; and, when the purport of their request was made known to the Sultān, he at once commanded that they should have a reply couched in courteous words, but a force of about 15,000 horse, under the command of the Sālār [general], Bak-Taghdī, was told off in the year 420 H.†, to proceed against them.

When that force reached the Saljūks, it fought a stubborn battle with them, and the Sultān's army sustained a defeat, and the Sultān, out of necessity, had to come to him to acquaint the Saljūk chiefs, in reply to their demand, "to be under no concern, as they had come to their own homes [as it were], and that they were in his dominions, and under his protection;" and to pretend that he was going to march to Rai, but instead to proceed to Nīshāpur, and get a force ready to send against them unawares. The Sultān was induced to follow this advice, and the upshot was the despatch of 15,000 horse to Nīsā, under the Hājjīb, Bak-Taghdī. He, on first coming upon the Saljūks near Sarakhs, defeated and routed them; but, soon after, his troops, who were already encumbered with baggage and women, having taken to plunder, he was himself overthrown, by the Saljūks, who had again rallied and attacked him. This took place in Sha'bān, 427 H., not in 420 H., as our author relates, and as is written in the ten copies of his work collated. After this affair, Mas'ūd had to agree to their demands, they being the first however to open negotiations, and Farāwah was given to Beghū, Nīsā to Tughrīl, and Dīhistān to Dā'ūd. Having obtained their demands, they became more insolent than ever.

† Several other writers differ here, not only from our author, but also from Baihaḵī, who is very particular respecting dates. In the beginning of 426 H., the Khāṣaḵ Khādīm, Nūṣh-Tīgīn, routed a body of Turkmāns near Marw; and in the same year, a force of 17,000 horse, under the Sālār, Bak-Taghdī, was sent against them. He was at first successful; but, the enemy having drawn him into the desert, where water was not procurable, and his troops being careless and over confident, he sustained a complete defeat in the eighth month of that year. In the following year, a force of 10,000 horse and 5000 foot was prepared to operate against the Saljūks, under the command of the Hājjīb-i-Buzār, Subāṣī. In the first month of 429 H., in fulfilment of a vow made during illness, Mas'ūd undertook an expedition against Hansī, captured it in the third month of that year, and in the fourth returned to Ghaznīn. In the same year, Mas'ūd, being unable from the state of affairs to proceed against the Saljūks as he was desirous of doing, despatched orders to the Hājjīb to expel them from Khūrāsān. Subāṣī sent a reply to the effect that they were far more than he could cope with. Mas'ūd imagined the Hājjīb was enhancing, or desirous of enhancing, his services, and sent him orders to march against them without farther delay. He did so, and his meeting them, and his defeat followed. The Hājjīb is styled Surbāṣī, and Surpāṣī by Guzīdah, Sanbāṣī in the Tārīkh-i-Aľf, and Subāṣī by our author. The name mentioned by Baihaḵī is no doubt correct.
an accommodation with them. He bestowed Nisā upon Tughril, and the Dihistān on Dā‘ūd, and gave Farāwah to Beghū. The Sultan then proceeded towards Balkh, and conferred the government of Hindūstān upon his son Maudūd.

In 429 H., the Saljuks possessed themselves of the towns on the skirt of the desert, such as Marw, Sarakhs, and other places besides, and solicited that Khurāsān should be made over to them. The Sultan thereupon despatched the Ḫājīb, Subāsī, with a large army to expel them. An engagement took place between the Sultan's forces and the Saljuks, and the Sultan's troops were defeated, and the Saljuks acquired power over the territory of Khurāsān. They sent Ibrahim, Niāliah, to seize upon Nishāpūr, and, subsequently, Tughril himself followed him thither. At Nishāpūr he ascended the throne, and became a sovereign; and the Khutbah was read in his name. He despatched Dā‘ūd to Sarakhs, and nominated Beghū to proceed to Marw; and they took possession of Khurāsān, and one-half of that territory passed from the sway of the servants of the Mas‘ūdī dynasty.

5 Not so: Majdūd was viceroy of the Indian provinces, Maudūd was left at the capital; and subsequently, when Mas‘ūd retired into the Panjāb, the latter was sent to Balkh, and he was with his father in the battle of Dandankād.

6 Farther on, our author, when mentioning the council held by the Saljuks when they thought of leaving Mas‘ūd’s dominions, says, "They are said to have been defeated by the Sultan’s troops several times." See p. 130.

7 Ibrahim, son of Niāl, was Tughril’s mother’s brother.

8 Tughril Beg assumed sovereignty over a portion of Khurāsān, and ascended the throne at Nishāpūr in 429 H.; and the Saljūk dynasty is considered by several authors to have commenced from that year. Others, however, with very good reason, say that the Saljuks only assumed independent sovereignty after the defeat of Sultan Mas‘ūd at Dae-kān or Dandankān, as stated by our author farther on. He acquired sway over a large portion of Western Asia, Khwārazm, Dihistān, Tabbs, Rai, Kazwin, &c., in 447 H., in which same year the Khalifah, Al-Ka‘īn, summoned Tughril to Baghdad, and ordered his name to be entered in the Khutbah, and impressed upon the coin. Fanakatī states that the Khalifah sent a commission with a robe of honour to Tughril.

9 A paradox of our author’s.

1 Tughril Beg died at Turushī [طرشی] near Rai, Friday, 8th of Ramażān, 455 H., at the age of seventy. His reign is variously computed: Fanakatī states that he died in 442 H., after a reign of ten years! From 429 H. to 455 H., however, is a period of twenty-six.
II. MALIK DÄ'ÜD-I-JAGHAR BEG, SON OF MÎKÂ'IL.

When Dä'üd, after leaving the presence of his brother Tughril, came for the purpose of taking possession of Marw and Sarâkhs, Sultan Mas'iid was at Balkh, and he sent an agent to him [Dä'üd] to see whether or not an accommodation could be brought about.

At that time Dä'üd was in the neighbourhood of Marw, with his forces, and it was he who was the mover in all this boldness and audacity. He advanced to the gate of Marw. It was at the dawn of the morning, and the Mu'azzin from the top of a Minârah was proclaiming this verse:—

"O Dä'üd, verily we have made thee a sovereign prince on earth: judge therefore between men with truth." Dä'üd, hearing his own name, inquired of a learned person what was the meaning of this. The signification was explained to him, upon which he again drew his sword, and pressed forward after the troops of the Sultan, which were in Marw, and put the whole of them to the sword.

At this period, when the Sultan's envoy from Balkh presented himself before him, a Mu'azzin at Marw was repeating this verse:—"Thou givest dominion unto whom Thou wilt, and Thou takest away dominion from whom Thou wilt."

2 Also written Jaghari Beg. Guzidah has both Jaghar and Chaghar Beg. His title is Amir 'Imam-ud-Daulah, Abû Sulîman-i-Dä'üd-i-Jaghar Beg. Guzidah, Faşihi, Fanâkâtî, and several others, do not consider Dä'üd as a sovereign, and Alb-Arsâlan is, by them, very properly, accounted the second monarch of the Saljuq dynasty, having succeeded his uncle Tughril. Dä'üd had died some years before. Fanâkâtî likewise says that on the death of Isrâ'il, at Kâlinjar, his son, Tughril, broke out into rebellion in 432 H., in the reign of Sultan Mas'iid. This would imply that Tughril and the Saljuqs had been quiet up to this time, but such is not the case; and Isrâ'il died in 426 H. See note 3, p. 120.

3 This is not correct. A person was sent, according to Baihaqi, to sound the Saljuqs, and, as if coming as a friend to them, to induce them to open negotiations. They appeared quite willing to do so, and at once sent an agent to the Wazîr. It was on this occasion that Mas'iid gave them the territory mentioned in note 4, page 122-3. The author makes great repetition through mixing up the events of Tughril's reign with Dä'üd's affairs.

4 Kur'an, chap. xxxviii.

The above sounds all very well, and may be true; but it is not contained in Baihaqi or any other historian with whom I am acquainted. The last sentence here, it would require the author himself to explain.

6 A portion of the 25th verse of chap. iii. of the Kur'an.
The envoy of Sultan Mas'ūd perceived Dā'ūd, who had spread his felt saddle-cloth under him, seated on the ground, with his saddle placed on one side of him. Sometimes he would rest his head upon the saddle, and stretch himself out [on the felt] on the ground, and then again he would sit up, and support himself resting on his elbow. His quiver of arrows was placed near him, and at times he would draw forth an arrow from the quiver, and he would sharpen the head of the arrow, and then again he would smooth out the feathers of it. The envoy of the Sultan, having concluded his message, asked for an answer. Dā'ūd replied:—"What was this Mu'azzīn calling out about 'Thou givest,' 'Thou givest'? Write that down." A scribe accordingly wrote down this verse on paper:—"Possessor of all power, Thou givest dominion unto whom Thou wilt, and Thou takest away dominion from whom Thou wilt; Thou exaltest whom Thou wilt, and Thou humblest whom Thou wilt," &c., and gave it to the envoy. When the envoy reached the presence of Sultan Mas'ūd, and made known to him the condition and mode of life of Dā'ūd, and placed before him the verse in reply to his message, he understood that the period of the sovereignty of the Maḥmūdī dynasty over the territory of Khurāsān had come to an end, and, in his heart, he relinquished all hope of holding it.

The Saljūks having acquired Sarakhs and Marw, and being left in undisturbed possession of the whole of those districts, Dā'ūd determined to attack Upper Khurāsān. Manifesting the utmost daring and boldness on that occasion, he again assembled together a force of 11,000 horse, and pushed on to the gates of Balkh, where the Sultan was at the time, with all his great nobles and his forces. An elephant was tied up in a place in the outskirts of the city, and an elephant-driver had fallen asleep upon the animal's back. Dā'ūd came during the night, unfastened

7 It is strange that all this is neither to be found in Baihākī nor in the other authors I have been quoting.
8 The author here contradicts himself, as is not unusual; for the battle of Dāe-kān [Dandānkād] had not yet been fought, even by his own account.
9 Most copies of the work have "he came with eleven horsemen," which is absurd.
1 Our author does not quote Baihākī correctly here, as the following extract, which I have made from the original, a good MS. copy in my posses-
the elephant, and drove it off, and, by the time the driver had awakened from his slumbers, the elephant had been sion, and the printed edition of his work edited by Morley, will show. It will be found rather different to the translation given in Elliot, vol. ii. p. 142,

"The Amīr halted to celebrate the festival of No-roz, on Wednesday, the 8th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhīr. On Friday, the 10th of the same month, other news arrived [the sentence following and part of next is not in my MS.] that Dā'ūd had come to Tāe-ḵān [Morley has Tāl-ḵān] with a strong force, and well prepared. On Thursday, the 16th of the month, farther information was received that he had reached Pār-ḵāb [Fār-ḵāb is equally correct—p and f are interchangeable], and that from thence he would speedily advance to Shīwar-ḵān [Shaburghān of course is meant—the name is spelt both ways : and our author, as well as Baiḥakī, is perfectly correct as to the name, notwithstanding the efforts of editors to make out otherwise. In the Persian, b is often interchanged for f, and f for gā, and so, in reality, both ways of writing may be, and were adopted ; but never with s for š, except through an error of a copyist. The Burḥān-i-Kaṭā'says, Shaburghān, in ancient times, was the name of the city of Balkh, but now it is the name of a kasbah near it. Compare Eliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 142], and that wherever they appeared [Dā'ūd and his troops] there plunder and slaughter followed. On Saturday [here the quotation which our author states he had taken from Baiḥakī follows], the 18th of this month, at night, ten Türkān [no such mode of spelling as Türkoman will be found in any lexicographical work : the derivation is from Türk, and mānind—Türk-like = Türk-main] horsemen came by stealth, close to the Bagh-i-Sūlṭān [the Sultan's garden—the garden in which the Sultan's palace was situated], and slew four Hindū foot soldiers. From thence they pushed on near the Kuhanduĵ [citadel], and there the elephants were kept. They espied one elephant, and on it a youth who had fallen asleep behind the neck of the animal [any one who has seen elephants and their drivers will know what is meant by this]. These Türkāns came up and began to drive the elephant, the youth being [still] asleep. The Türkāns passed on a farsang [or league] from the city, and then they awoke the youth, and said, ' Drive the elephant faster, otherwise we will kill thee.' He replied, 'I am obedient to your commands;' and began to urge the animal on, the horsemen following close behind, urging it onwards, and goading it with their lances. By the time day broke, they had gone a considerable distance ; and they brought the elephant to Shaburghān. Dā'ūd gave a present to the horsemen, and directed them to take it to Nīshāpūr. From this the troops [of Mas'ūd] acquired a very bad name, for people said, ' Among these men such neglect exists, that enemies are able to carry off an elephant from them.' The next day the Amīr heard of it, and became very much irritated thereat, and reproved the elephant-drivers severely, and commanded that 100,000 dirams should be deducted from them, for the price of the elephant, and several of them were castigated. [There is no mention of 'Hindū elephant-riders' in the MS., although Hindū Flībāns are mentioned in the printed text, but even then it would not follow that they were Hindūs in faith.]

"On Monday, the 20th of this month, Altī Sakmān, the Ḥājīb [Chamberlain] of Dā'ūd, with 2000 horse, came up to the [very] gate of Balkh, and took up a position at a place called the Band-i-Kāfārān, or the Infidels' Dyke, and plundered two villages. When the news reached the city, the Amīr became very angry because the horses were in the Darah-i-Gaz, &c. There is not one word
taken away some five leagues, and the driver dared not utter a word.

Da’ūd [then] advanced with his forces from Shafūrkān to ’Ali-ābād of Balkh, and fought an engagement with the Sultan, but, notwithstanding all the efforts and endeavours of Dā’ūd, he was defeated.

In the month of Shawwāl of the year 429 H. the whole of the Saljūks assembled together, Tughril, Beyhū, and Dā’ūd, and also the Niāls, and the Masūdī and Mahmūdī Turks3, some of whom had joined the Saljūks. The Sultan marched from Balkh with his forces, and led them towards Marw and Sarakhs4; and in the desert of Sarakhs an engagement ensued, which was contested from dawn until the time of afternoon prayer, when the Saljūks were overthrown⁴.

about Dā’ūd’s coming up to the gates of Balkh, for Sakmān was driven off in the afternoon by one of the Ḥajibs with a small body of troops, and some under the Sipah-sīlār; and the Turkmāns retired to ’Ali-ābād again, where they remained that night. He reported what had happened to Dā’ūd, who then advanced to ’Ali-ābād from Shaburgān. As soon as Amīr Masʿūd heard of his movements, he moved out to the Pul-i-Kārwan until troops arrived; and, on the 9th of Rajab, routed Dā’ūd and his troops as soon as they reached ’Ali-ābād from the direction of the desert.”

Several partial engagements took place up to the 5th of Shawwāl; and, whenever the Sultan’s troops could get at the Turkmāns, they overthrew them, and scattered them “like thin clouds before a Biscay gale,” but the difficulty was to bring them to close quarters: they would not stand. At last, the Wazīr contrived to come to an accommodation with the Saljūks, who appeared as willing as he was for that course, and tracts about Nīsā, Bāward, and Farāwhah, were assigned to them; but Masʿūd agreed to it, fully determined to attack them next year. He then returned to Hirāt. Our author, as on many other occasions, has misplaced events, putting those first which happened last, and vice versa, as Baihāki’s history shows; and in some cases, as in the following page, has mentioned the same events twice over.

2 The Turkish slaves who had been first entertained by Mahmūd and others, and since taken into pay by Masʿūd, are here referred to. They may have been in some way kinsmen of the Saljūks. Some of them had deserted some time previously.

3 The Sultan marched against them by way of Hirāt, because the Saljūks, after having been compelled to withdraw from that place in 428 H., as already stated, had returned in the following year, and had compelled the defenders to surrender it, and the Khutbah had been read there for Tughril. Sultan Masʿūd took the opportunity, on this occasion, when marching against the Saljūks, to punish the Hirātīs for surrendering so easily. He reached Hirāt in Zī-Kā’dah, 430 H., and proceeded by way of Mīhanah [००५ or ay it is spelt both ways: European writers have transformed it into Maimanah].

4 The author here is quite confused: he makes out a second engagement, but no other engagement took place than is mentioned in the preceding note ⁴,
The Sultan, after this, returned to Hirat; and the Saljûks, becoming aware of it, again sought an accommodation; and, as a matter of necessity [on the part of the Sultan], once more a peace was concluded. However, Sultan Mas'ûd summoned troops, with all requisite stores and war-material, from Ghaznin; but, when those reinforcements reached him, famine prevailed in Khuräsän, and there was a great scarcity of forage. The forces of the Sultan had become quite powerless and ineffective, and the horses and camels had grown weak and emaciated. The Sultan, with his whole army, advanced towards Tūs; and Tughril retired from Nishápûr, and fell back upon Sarakhs.

All the Saljûks now met together, and came to the unanimous conclusion, that they had no longer any power to oppose Sultan Mas'ûd and his forces; and, as they had been defeated several times, that it was advisable to make terms with the Sultan, or otherwise to move towards the territory of Irâk, and abandon Khuräsän altogether. The lion-hearted Amir Da'ûd, who had no compeer in loftiness of spirit and energy, said:—"Confidence is necessary in making conquests," even though it were necessary to devote [one's] life a thousand times over. I have no means or appliances to depend upon save war; so—Sovereignty or destruction!—Victory or death!" When the Saljûk chieftains beheld this bold and intrepid bearing on the part of Dâ'ûd, they coincided with him with one accord. Having come to this determination, they sent away all their families, and dependents, and effects, into the desert; while the horsemen, alone and unincumbered, took up a position on the skirt of the desert, at Dâe-kân, prepared for war and conflict.

In which also the accommodation is also referred to, but it took place before the Sultan's return to Hirat. From the description here, the reader would scarcely understand that the Sultan had advanced in the meantime from Hirat to Nishápûr. See note 7, next page.

Nearly all copies of the text have the words—"should not have confidence of heart;" but I read it as above, and the context proves the correctness of that reading.

There is nothing of this kind in Baihaḵî. What Dâ'ûd said was to the effect, that the heads of the tribe made a great mistake in imagining that they would be able to obtain territory so easily in Irâk and farther west; and, that if they should move one step out of Khuräsän, Sultan Mas'ûd would not allow them to rest upon the face of the earth, and would raise up powerful enemies against them everywhere. He ended by saying that, at least, they should try the upshot of another engagement before deciding upon abandoning Khuräsän.
When the Sultan reached the spot, the battle commenced; and for three days, from morning’s dawn to the setting of the sun, the conflict went on, until, on Friday, the 9th of the month of Ramazan, in the year 431 H., the troops of Sultan Mas’ūd became hard pressed, and his own Turkish troops even began to give way legion after legion. Sultan Mas’ūd was defeated; and the Saljūks gained the victory, and assumed independent sovereignty.

This was Mas’ūd’s second expedition in person against the Saljūks, although his officers had previously encountered them upon several occasions. He had passed the winter of 430-31 H. at Nīshāpur, with his forces encamped in and about Bāihāk [not Bāihāk’s native place], Khowāf, Bākhurz, Isfand, Tūs, and other places facing the desert. The utmost scarcity prevailed, and grain had to be brought from a great distance. On the 28th of Jamādī-ul-Akhīr of 431 H. was the vernal equinox [about the end of March, 1039 A.D.], and Mas’ūd prepared for a fresh campaign. He had really made no preparation for it; but the Saljūks had issued from the Balkhān mountains and the desert, and were assembled around Sarakhs. The scarcity was so great that the force could hardly be prevented from melting away; yet the Sultan determined to advance to Marw, notwithstanding his Wazir and nobles advised him against it [but Abū Naṣīr-i-Mīshkān, the only one who could venture to speak his mind and expostulate effectually, was dead], as the greater part of his men had lost their horses, and had to march on foot. The animals that remained also were nearly useless, whilst the Saljūks were in possession of Marw, and were well supplied with all things. He moved from Sarakhs on the 19th of Sha’ban towards Marw. The Turkmans soon appeared, and among them were many rebels who had deserted from the Turkish troops in India, and others; and, according to their usual mode of fighting, continued to harass Mas’ūd’s troops, who wanted for every thing. The details are far too long for insertion; but I may mention that Mas’ūd and his troops fought under the greatest disadvantages, for the enemy had either emptied or filled up the few wells which the desert tract contained, while they themselves wetted their clothes beforehand, and carried water along with them. Mas’ūd’s men and their cattle suffered from heat and extreme thirst; and some of his Ghulāms [Turkish slaves], who, on the march, had been obliged to ride on camels, in the confusion that ensued, made all the Tāzik horsemen they met dismount and give up their horses to them, after which a large body of them deserted to the enemy. Mas’ūd’s forces became separated and confused; order was at an end; and leaders became separated from their men. "The Turkish troops," says Bāihāf, who was present, "went one way, and the Hindī [i.e. natives of Hind, whatever their creed] another, and neither Kurds nor ‘Arabs could be distinguished. A few Khowāśifs or bodyguards, who remained near the Sultan, made several and repeated charges upon the enemy; and Mas’ūd himself, who carried a poisoned halberd or short spear in his hand, slew every one that came within arm’s length of him—man and horse. I saw Mawdūd [the son of Mas’ūd] myself, who was galloping his horse here and there endeavouring to rally men around him, but no one gave ear to him, for every one was for himself." This occurred on the 9th of Ramazān, 431 H., beyond the river Marw-ar-Rūd, two stages from Marw-i-Šāh-i-Jahān.
After the battle was over, a throne was set up upon the battle-field itself, and Tughril became sovereign. Beghū proceeded to Marw, and Amir Dāʿūd led a force towards Tukhāristān and Balkh, and subdued the territories of that region. Subsequently, Tughril and Dāʿūd marched into Khwārazm, and secured that country; and some time after they had brought those countries under subjection, Tughril died, and Dāʿūd entered into a treaty with the Māḥmūdis and the Sultāns of Ghaznīn, and became sovereign of Khurāsān and the territories of 'Ajam, and the universe was given up to him.

He reigned for a period of above twenty years, and died in the year 451 H., and the throne of sovereignty became adorned by the victorious Sultān, Alb-Arsalān.

III. SULTĀN ALB-ARSALĀN-I-GHĀZĪ, SON OF DĀʿŪD-I-JAGHAR BEG.

He ascended the throne of Khurāsān after Dāʿūd, in the year 451 H., and the territories of Khurāsān, 'Ajam, with

---

8 Baihaḵī does not say anything about a throne.
9 Yāfaʾī says that great discrepancy exists among chroniclers respecting the date of the first assumption of sovereignty by the Saljuḵs, and differs much from them. Guzidah, Fāṣīḥ-I, and other writers of authority, state that Tughril Beg assumed independent sovereignty over the greater part of Khurāsān, at Nīshāpūr, in 428 H., while some few writers say, in 429 H. In 431 H., after the defeat of Sultān Masʿūd, and his retreat to Ghaznīn, all Khurāsān fell into the hands of the Saljuḵs; and the two brothers, and Beghū, their uncle, divided the territory between them. In 432 H., Tughril, who had acquired territory farther west, in 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, obtained the Khalīfah's consent to his assuming sovereignty, and the title of Sultān. He made Rai his capital, and chose 'Irāk-i-Ajam, with its dependencies, as his portion. Khurāsān was reserved for the elder brother, Jaghar Beg-i-Dāʿūd, who made Marw [some say Balkh] his capital; and Beghū, the uncle, obtained Kirmān, Tabas, Harf [Hirāt], Bust, and as much of the territory of Hind as he could lay hands upon and filch from the Ghaznīn rulers. [See page 99, in which his and Daʿūd's defeat by Tughril, the slave of 'Abd-ur-Raḥīḍ, is mentioned by our author only.] He has made a complete muddle of Tughril's reign, as well as Daʿūd's proceedings, and it is difficult to separate them, without a much longer note than space will permit.

1 This is a good specimen of our author's random mode of writing history. Tughril, who was considered the head of the family, survived Dāʿūd some years, and died in 455 H., as previously stated. Guzidah says he died in 453 H., Fāṣīḥ-I 451 H., and some say 452 H. In nearly every copy of the text he is styled Alb-Arsalān-i-Tughril Beg, a blunder sufficiently apparent. His name was not Tughril.
2 Alb-Arsalān ascended the throne of 'Irāk and Khurāsān in Ramaḍān 455 H.
the whole of 'Irāk, Khwārazm, Tabaristān, Kirmān, Fārs, and Sistān he brought under his sway. He also led an army into Turkistān and Tūrān, and the Malik of Turkistān, and the Afrāsiyābī Amīrs, submitted to his authority.

The vastness of his forces, the immensity of his war-material, and the military resources of his empire, attained to such extent, that the intellect of the geometrician would remain in the labyrinth of helplessness, in an attempt to compute the quantity: as a poet—in all probability the Ḥākim Ṣanā'ī—who, after Alb-Arsalān's decease, composed a dirge, says of him, in the following strophe:

``Thou sawest the head of Alb-Arsalān elevated to the sublimity of the seventh heaven:
Come to Marw that thou mayest see the body of Alb-Arsalān buried in the dust.
Attended neither by train or guards, nor the moon-faced, dimple-chinn'd;
Nor the steed press'd by his thighs, nor the reins within his grasp.''

When Alb-Arsalān ascended the throne, he despatched ambassadors to the Court of Ghaznīn, and entered into the strongest terms of friendship and amity with Sultān Ibrāhīm, and did not interfere with the Ghaznīn dominions. He occupied himself in holy wars against Turkistān and Rūm, and in securing possession of the territories of Hijāz not before; but he succeeded to his father's dominions in Khurāsān, at his father's death in 451 H., subject to Tughrīl of course. His correct name and title is 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, Abū Shujā'-i-Muhammad, Alb-Arsalān.

3 Our author forgets to state, or did not know, that, by the will of Tughrīl Beg, Sūlīmān, son of Jaghar Beg-i-Dā'ūd, succeeded; but Kal-timīsh [also written Kal-mish], son of Isrā'īl, Tughrīl's uncle, with the aid of the Turkmāns, fought a battle with Sūlīmān, at Damghān, and overthrew him. On this Alb-Arsalān came against Kal-timīsh, and in the action which ensued, near Damghān, Kal-timīsh was killed by a fall from his horse, and Alb-Arsalān was left without a rival. The Khalfān, Al-Kā'im Bi-amr-ullāh, conferred upon him the title of Burhān-ul-Mūminīn. Yāfā'ī, however, says that as no successor had been named by the will of Tughrīl, Sūlīmān, half-brother of Alb-Arsalān, ascended the throne, and that Kal-timīsh joined Alb-Arsalān against him.

4 This verse, minus the last half, is what Gibbon would lead us to believe was the inscription on Alb-Arsalān's tomb. The third line is different in some copies, and might be rendered:—''Neither with the glittering blade at his side,' &c., or, ''Neither attended by his train with the star [one of the emblems of royalty], nor the moon-faced,' &c.

5 See page 103, and note 9.
and Miṣr; and, influenced by the sense of pure faith and belief, he began to render services to the Court of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Ḵāʾīm. He was distinguished upon several occasions with honorary dresses from the Khalîfah's Court, and the lieutenancy of the capital, Baghţâd, was conferred upon him.

The writer and author of this Ṭabaḵât, Minhâj-i-Sarāj, Al-Jirjānî, intimates that, in the year 613 H., he was at the Court of Sijistān, and in that capital there was an Imām \[Patriarch\], the teacher of the doctors in wisdom and philosophy, and the asylum of the learned of the time, whom they called Imām Râshîd-ud-Dîn-i-ʿAbd-ul-Majîd. I heard him, when speaking of the magnificence and majesty of Alb-Arsalân, state, that that monarch, in the year 453 or 454 H., had undertaken the subjugation of the territory of Turkistān. When he reached the frontiers of Kāsh-ghâr and Balâsâghûn, messengers followed him thither, bringing intelligence that the Lord of the Faithful, the Khalîfah, Al-Ḵāʾīm Bʾillâh, had sustained a great mis-

It will, doubtless, be noticed that our author seldom quotes the writings of others, and that most of his information is hearsay. The value, or otherwise, of his statements may be judged of accordingly. How he had been deceived by his "asylum of the learned of the time," may be seen from note 8, page 135. He only quotes Abî-l-Fazîl-i-Baihâkî for the Saljûq dynasty, a very good and trustworthy authority, but often quotes him incorrectly, as shown in the preceding notes.

The meaning of which is, that he was, by our author's account, one of the most learned men of his time.

A city of Mâwar-un-Nahr, near Kāsh-ghâr, and the capital of Afrâsîyâb, which continued the seat of government of his descendants until the time of Gûr Kʰân [not Kor Kʰân, as Europeans generally write it]. \ stands for as well as \ in Persian, unless explained to the contrary.

Al-Ḵâʾîm Bi-amr-ʾullah. The Kāṣâr of Rûm, Armânûs [Romanus], entered the dominions of Alb-Arsalân with the intention of invading Irân, but the greater part of his army perished through the excessive heat, and the Kāṣâr retired. Subsequently, Armânûs again invaded Alb-Arsalân's dominions, and the latter, with 12,000 horse—a rather improbable number—marched to encounter him. They met at a place named Malâzâh-gîrd [the ancient Mauro—Castrum], in Aṣarbâţjân, in the vicinity of Aḵhâlât, in which action the Kāṣâr was taken captive by a Rûmî [Roman] slave in Alb-Arsalân's army, whose person was so weak and so contemptible, that at the time of mustering the army the 'Ariż [muster-master, not a "general"] refused to take his name down, when Saʿad-ud-Daulah, the Shâhnâh or agent of Alb-Arsalân, at Baghţâd, said:—"Write down his name; who knows but that he might take the Kāṣâr prisoner!" Guzâdah states that Alb-Arsalân himself ordered that his name should be taken down. The emperor Armânûs [Romanus] was defeated and taken prisoner in 459 H. [after the death of Al Ḵāʾīm], but was set at liberty the same year, on undertaking to pay "a yearly tribute at the rate of 1000 dînârs a-day, or 360,000 dînârs every year."
fortune—that an action had taken place between him and the Christians of Rūm, and that the troops of Islām had been overthrown; and further, that the Khalifah himself had been taken prisoner, and had been immured within the walls of a fortress, situated in the lofty mountains of the territory of Anbār and the Jazirah [Mesopotamia] on the frontiers of the empire of Rūm. The fortress in question is situated on a high hill, or mountain, on the bank of the river Furāt [Euphrates].

Alb-Arsalān, with a force of 180,000 horse, all brave and veteran soldiers, returned with the utmost expedition, in order to release the Lord of the Faithful, and revenge the defeat of the army of Islām. He pushed on with such speed, and made such long marches, that in the space of sixteen or seventeen days—God knows the truth of the statement—he appeared at the foot of the walls of that fortress, which was situated on the bank of the Furāt, from Balāsāghūn. Adopting such means of procedure as the occasion demanded, he called upon the governor of that fortress to embrace the Muhammadan faith, and caused him to be ennobled with the robe of Islam; and, with the aid of Almighty God, he released the Khalifah from confinement. He accompanied the Khalifah's sacred caval-

1 There is a place of this name on the Euphrates, Felugia or Anbar, mentioned in Julian's campaigns as Pirisabur, and called the second city in Assyria. The Khalifah was confined at 'Ānah. See next note over leaf. A copyist might write ॐ for ॐ.

2 Our author has made a muddle of the reigns of these Saljiük monarchs, and betrays such complete ignorance here, that we may doubt his correctness in many other cases after and before. Both in the text above, as rendered faithfully, and word for word, and in the six lines devoted to the history of Al-Kā'īm's Khilāfāt, in Section IV., our author plainly asserts that the Khalifah's troops were defeated by the Nasaranīs or Christians, and that the Khalifah was made prisoner by them, and confined in a fortress on the frontier until released by Alb-Arsalān. The author, apparently, had either no written authorities to refer to, or did not trouble himself to do so, and composed his work chiefly on hearsay, hence the woful blunder he has herein made. The Lubb-ut-Tawarikh, strange to say, has made the same error. The Khalifah Al-Ka'm never fell into the hands of the Romans, and was never confined in a fortress by them.

Our author has confounded the events of Tughril Beg's reign with those of Alb-Arsalān's. In 448 H. [Muntasāb-ut-Tawārijīh says in 447 H.] Al-Ka'm summoned Tughril Beg to Baghdād, and directed that his name should be read in the Khutbah after his own, and also be impressed upon the coin; while the name of the Malik-ur-Raḥīm-i-Abū Naṣr, son of 'Imād-ud-dīn, son of Sultan-ud-Daulah, Bawīlah, was to come in after Tughril's. Tughril finding his oppor-
cade to the precincts of the capital of Islam, and then solicited permission to return [to his own dominions]. Having obtained it, at the time of taking leave, Alb-Arsalân dismounted from his horse, and honoured his imperial lips by placing them to the hoof of the animal which bore the Lord of the Faithful, and kissed it. On this occasion, in return for these signal services rendered by him, during all this time, to the Court of Islam, he received this much commendation and esteem, that the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Kâ'im Bi-amr-'ullah, thus expressed himself:—"Thou hast saved the servants of God from slaughter, and the country from destruction." Let those who read these words calmly ponder in their minds between the extent of the services of Alb-Arsalân-i-Ghâzi, and on the sublime fortitude and high resolve expressed in the words of the tunity, after pretending friendship towards, and alliance with, the Buwîlah ruler of Baghâdâd, seized and imprisoned him. In 448 H. Al-Kâ'im espoused the daughter of Tughril's brother [daughter of Dâ'ûd-i-Jaghâr Beg], Khâdijah by name. In 450 H. Basâsîrî rose against the Khalîfah, and put him in confinement in the fortress of 'Anah, a town of Diyâr-i-Bakr, or Mesopotamia, on the east bank of the Furât, four miles from Râwâ, and seven days' journey from Baghâdâd by kârwân route. The Khalîfah appealed to Tughril Beg, not to Alb-Arsalân, who did not come to the throne until nearly five years after. Tughril reached Baghâdâd in 451 H., Basâsîrî fled, the Khalîfah was set at liberty, and Tughril went to meet him, and walked, on foot, at the head of the Khalîfah's horse. On that occasion Al-Kâ'im hailed him—"Ya Rukn-ud-dîn!"—"O Pillar of the Faith!"—and his title, which had been Rukn-ud-Daulah, or Pillar of the State, was changed to Rukn-ud-dîn. Tughril entered Baghâdâd on the 14th of the month of Safar; and in that same year also Dâ'ûd-i-Jaghâr Beg, his elder brother, died. Some few authors say these events happened in 452 H. Basâsîrî was soon after captured and put to death, but Faşîh-î says he was captured before the Khalîfah's release. In 455 H. Tughril espoused a daughter of the Khalîfah's. The betrothal took place at Tabrîz, but Tughril was desirous that the marriage should be consummated at his capital, which was Rai, and he set out for that city; but before he reached his palace, having halted a short distance from the city, to enjoy the cool air, haemorrhage came on [not "dysentery"] and could not be stopped. He died 8th of Ramaşân; and the Khalîfah's daughter hearing of his decease, when on the way to join him, returned, a virgin bride, to her father at Baghâdâd.

I may mention that the Târîkh-i-Yâfâ'î, which is generally so very correct and minute in the description of important events, says not a word respecting any hostilities between Alb-Arsalân and the Romans, and nothing whatever about Armânûs [Romanus] having been captured.

The Khulasât-ul-Akhbar turns the two expeditions of the Romans, in the last of which Romanus was taken captive, into one, and again makes the same Romanus a prisoner in Malik Shâh's reign. There is much similar discrepancy in some other authors, which I have not space to notice here.
Lord of the Faithful, and what amount of eulogium every one of them conveyed.

Alb-Arsalan’s reign extended over a period of fourteen years. He ascended the throne in the year 451 H., and in the month of Safar, 465 H., he was martyred. May the Almighty again raise up their pure souls with like glory, and reserve them to Himself in Paradise above!

IV. SULTAN JALAL-UD-DIN, MALIK SHAH, SON OF ALB-ARSALAN.

Sultan Malik Shāh ascended the throne at Marw, after the death of his father, and took possession of the whole of the territories of I-rān, Tūrān, the Jībāl [Highlands of Irāk], Irāk, Dilam, Šabaristān, Rūm, Miṣr, and Shām, besides Diyār-i-Bakr, Arman, Sistān, and Fārs; and in all the pulpits of Islam the Khutbah was read in his name, and the coin, both diram and dinār, became ennobled by his titles.

He was, himself, a victorious and a conquering monarch, and governed with a firm hand; and was sagacious, brave, and just, and endowed with all the accomplishments befitting a sovereign and empire. He brought under his sway the whole of the countries of Turkistān, and sub-

---

* The length of his reign depends upon how it is computed. If his accession to his father’s territory be reckoned, of course it is considerably longer; but he succeeded as an independent sovereign in the tenth month of 555 H.

* Our author does not say how his martyrdom took place. Perhaps his authority for the Khalifah’s captivity in the Roman territory did not inform him. It is very interesting, but much too long for insertion here; but his assassin was Yūsuf, a native of Khwārazm, the governor of the fortress of Barzam [on the Jībūn], which Alb-Arsalan had taken. The murderer was nearly escaping, when a Farrāsh, or tent-pitcher, beat in his head with a wooden mallet, used for driving tent-pegs. This took place in Rabi’-ul-Awwal, 465 H. Other authors state that the name of the fortress in question was Firbad, or Firbaz.

* His title, according to most writers, was Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, and his patronymic, Abū-l-Fatḥ. The Niẓām-ut-Tawarīḵh and Jahān-Ārā say his title was Jalāl-ud-Daulah. The correct titles appear to have been Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mu’izz-ud-Daulah, Malik Shāh, Yamin [some say Kasim]-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminin.

* In 468 H. Malik Shāh entered Mawar-un-Nahr, and subdued that territory, and took the Khān of Samrākand captive. He was taken all the way from Samrākand to Īsfahān on foot; but, subsequently, he was taught better behav iour, and restored. In 471 H. Malik Shāh again entered Mawar-un-Nahr, and
due the territory of Rüm; and the vice-royalty and sovereignty of Baghdad, subordinate to the Dar-ul-Khilâfat, were conferred upon him. In Makkah and Madinah, and in Yaman and the country of Hijâz, in the whole of the pulpits of Islâm, the Khutbah was read in his name.

He carried on various hostilities, and undertook many holy wars in various parts of the country of the Turks and the territory of Rüm; and, on every side of the territories of the east and of the west, he acquired a kingdom, and placed viceroy of his own therein. He conferred the kingdom of Rüm upon one of his brothers, and, after him, he gave it to his own son, Mahmid; and, up to this period, that territory is still in the possession of his descendants, as will, hereafter, please God, be mentioned.

removed, for the second time, Suliman Khan from the government. He was subsequently sent to the fortress of Uz-gand [Ur-ganj of the present day], and there immured. This is, no doubt, the same event as is referred to in the Jami'ut-Tawârîkh, and in Alfi, but under a wrong year. In those works it is stated that Malik Shâh, in 482 H., annexed the territory of Samrâkân, taking it from Ahmad Khan, son of Ja'far Khân, who was a great tyrant. He was the brother of Turkân Khâtûn, the consort of Malik Shâh, who was mother of Sulţân Sanjar.

This is totally incorrect: Mahmid, son of Malik Shâh, was never ruler of the territory of Rüm. See note 7, page 157.

Our author's account of this reign is much the same as the tragedy of "Hamlet" would be with the part of the Prince of Denmark left out. I must give a brief outline of the chief events that occurred to make it intelligible:—

The year following his accession, 466 H., his brother, Takish [Tughan Shah], rebelled at Hirât. He was taken and imprisoned at Isfahan, the capital. Then followed the rebellion of his uncle, Kawurd, according to Guzidah; but he was the founder of the Kirmân dynasty of the Saljûks, which our author says not one word about. They met in battle at Karkh, near Baghdad, and Kawurd was defeated and slain; but his son succeeded him in Kirmân, and was allowed to hold that territory. In 467 H. [Jami'-ut-Tawârîkh and Alfi, mistaking the dates, or wrongly written in the copies of those works, say in 473 H.] his brother, Takish [this name is written by our author Takish; in the Shams-ul-Lughat, Tagish [Takish?]; and in the Burhin-i-Kâtî, Takagh] rebelled, and seized several districts in northern Khurasân, and shut himself up in Nishâpûr. Malik Shâh sent an army against him [Jami'-ut-Tawârîkh and Alfi say he went in person, and that it was in 476 H.]. In 468 H. he subdued Mawar-un-Nahr for the first time, previously mentioned. In the following year Antakiah [Antioch] was taken, and the territory as far as the sea-coast. In 471 H. Samrâkân was taken, and Suliman Khân, the ruler, again deposed, and confined in the fortress of Uz-gand. On this occasion, Malik Shâh demanded the hand of Turkân Khâtûn, daughter of Tumghâsh [also written Tugmakh] Khân, a descendant of Bughra Khân. In 475 H. Khwarazm was subdued, and conferred upon Nush-Tigîn, who founded the Khwârazm-Shâhî dynasty. [See note 7, page 169.] The follow-
In the Muntakhab-i-Tarikh-i-Nāširi, which work was composed by one of the great men of the Court of Ghaznin, I read that, upon a certain occasion, Sultān Malik Shāh requested his Wazir, Niẓām-ul-Mulk, to make ready his forces, as he had resolved upon proceeding into the territory of Miṣr [Egypt]. The Wazir, Niẓām-ul-Mulk, represented, saying:—"It is right for the Sultān to ponder well over this undertaking, because that country contains the Ḳarāmīṭah sect, and other heretics, and something of the profanities of their creed might come to the hearing of an orthodox monarch like his Majesty; and I do not consider it right that such depravity should find access to the royal mind." Sultān Malik Shāh enjoined that they should be diligent in making due preparation for the expedition, as for him to repudiate that determination of his was impossible: Niẓām-ul-Mulk [consequently] made great preparations, and got all things in readiness; and the Sultān, with a numerous army, set out in the direction of Miṣr.

When he arrived in the vicinity of it, the people of Miṣr hastened forth to perform the duty of receiving the Sultān; but he paid no regard to any one, neither did he turn his eyes towards any thing, until he arrived before the gate of

ing year saw the rise of Ḥasan-i-Ṣabbāh, and the heretic sect of Mulāḥidahs.
In 480 H. Malik Shāh gave the territory of Rūm to Sulmān, son of Ḳalṭimish, which his descendants held for a long period of years. Shām he bestowed upon his brother, Tutash [not "Tunish"], who gained successes over the 'Arabs, Rūmīs, and Farangs. Other territories were conferred upon some of his Mamlūks or slaves, as will be mentioned hereafter.
In 482 H. [the period assigned in Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīkh and Alīf for the expedition into Māwar-un-Nahr, just referred to.] Malik Shāh undertook a campaign against the Kaṣar, as the Greek emperors of Constantinople are termed by Muḥammadan writers; upon which occasion, as related by all authors of repute, Sultān Malik Shāh fell into the hands of a party of the Kaṣar's soldiers; but, not having been recognized by any one, he was released through the great tact of his minister, Niẓām-ul-Mulk. Next day, a battle took place between them, when the Kaṣar was taken prisoner, on which occasion Malik Shāh set him at liberty. In 481 H., as has been mentioned farther on, Malik Shāh went on a pilgrimage to Makkah. In 484 H., Niẓām-ul-Mulk was deprived of the Wazirship through the intrigues of Türkān Khāṭīn. In 485 H., Malik Shāh sent a force against the Mulāḥidahs, but it was defeated by those schismatics; and, in that same year, Niẓām-ul-Mulk was assassinated by them. He was the first that fell beneath the daggers of that sect; and, within a few days over a month, Malik Shāh himself departed this life at Baghdād.

1 Ḥaṣrat, signifying the Court, the presence of the sovereign.
the city of Miṣr. When he had passed over the ferry of Miṣr, and the river Nīl, he inquired which was the palace of Fir‘awn [Pharaoh].

On being told where it was situated, he turned towards that direction, and ordered his army to halt on the spot where it then was. Sulṭān Malik Shāh, attended only by a single stirrup-holder, set out alone towards the place indicated. He then dismounted from his horse, and, at the place where was the palace of Fir‘awn, performed a prayer of two genuflections. He then laid his forehead in the dust, and lifted up his voice in supplication, saying:—“Oh God, Thou didst bestow the dominion of Miṣr upon one, Thy servant, and he proclaimed, saying:—‘I am your most supreme Lord’; but this Thy erring servant, having been exalted [by Thee] to the sovereignty of the countries of the east and the west, has come hither, and, bowing his forehead in the dust, says:—‘Great God! O Lord most High! be pleased of Thy grace and goodness to have mercy upon this Thy servant.’”

Then, raising his head from his posture of adoration, he came back, and, without entering the city of Miṣr [at all], returned to Khurāsān. This anecdote is related to show the exalted nature of the faith of that just and victorious sovereign.

2 Al-Miṣr—The City—Old Cairo, as it is called by the Chroniclers of the Crusades. Its inhabitants, in ancient times, were rated at two millions; and those of New Cairo [Kāhirah] at four millions. The old city stood on the east bank of the Nile, and was some twenty-two miles in extent. Some say its extent was thirty miles. Old Cairo, or The Miṣr, was, perhaps, deducting exaggerations, the largest and most densely populated city the world ever contained, after Kāhirah, ancient Thebes, and Babylon on the Euphrates. The name Miṣr is generally applied at present to the whole of Egypt, but should be Diyar-ul-Miṣrīah, as in ancient 'Arab writings.

3 Lit. “Where was the place of Fir‘awn’s throne,” signifying his Court, residence, &c.

4 Kur‘ān, chap. lxxxix.

5 Whatever the author of the Muntakhab-i-Tārīkh-i-Nāṣirī may have said on the subject, I may here mention that this statement of Malik Shāh’s having made a journey, accompanied by a “large army,” into Egypt and crossed the Nile, is not confirmed, in fact, is not recorded in any history with which I am acquainted. Malik Shāh certainly made a tour throughout his dominions, “from Anṭākīyah of Shām and Lādāğıyah of Rūm to Māwar-un-Nahr, the frontiers of Khūṭāt and Khiṭān; and from the Bahr-i-Khūrū [the Caspian] to Yaman and Tāyif.” He also performed the pilgrimage to Makkah and Madīnah; but there is no mention of Miṣr or the Nile. Some of the story-
Another anecdote, respecting the same monarch, is narrated in the Muntakhab-i-Tārīkh-i-Nāṣiri; that some persons in Kūhīstān sent in a memorial to the Wazīr, Niẓām-ul-Mulk, to the effect that a wealthy person had died, leaving no other heir behind him than a sister's child, and that he had left great wealth, and further that it ought to go to the Bait-ul-Māl [the royal treasury]. Niẓām-ul-Mulk, at a convenient opportunity, represented the matter to Malik Shāh, but he obtained no answer, and did not receive one, until after mentioning it three times. Malik Shāh said he would give him a reply respecting it on the following day; but, when it came, he set out for the chase.

Niẓām-ul-Mulk, in his eagerness to augment the royal treasury, followed after the Sultan [to obtain the promised reply]. Malik Shāh had to pass the camp bāzār on his way; and, when he returned from the hunting-ground, gave directions to one of his attendants, saying:—“I am hungry; and in the bāzār I saw some wheaten cakes’ and my appetite has a mind for some. Go and purchase as many as you can procure, and bring them hither.”

When Malik Shāh approached the precincts of the camp, he ascended a rising ground, and sat down, until such time as they brought the wheaten cakes. He then made all the nobles with him sit down to partake of the cakes. There was one very large dish full, which sufficed for more than fifty Maliks and Amīrs, with their attendants. After he had eaten, Malik Shāh arose and inquired of his attendant:—“For how much didst thou purchase these?” The man, with eyes bent on the ground, replied:—“For four and a half dāngs [little pieces] of coin.” The Sultan then asked the whole of those present, whether they had had sufficient, to which they replied, that through the Sultan’s liberality they had eaten all that they desired. Malik Shāh, on books mention it, but the account is evidently copied from our author. The Iṣmāʿīlī Khalifahs were independent of Malik Shāh.

* See note 5, p. 62.
7 Thin cakes of paste called “tutmaj.”
8 All the copies of the work but two say there were ten large dishes full. One copy says two; but, as one large dish is mentioned in another work, which gives this same anecdote, I have adopted that reading.
9 A dāng signifies a grain in general, either of wheat, barley, or the like, and is used to signify the fourth part of a dram. It is also used to signify the sixth part of a city, and the like.
hearing the price, defrayed the amount out of his own private purse; and, turning towards Nizām-ul-Mulk, he said:—"A poor frail creature like Malik Shāh, and a minister such as Nizām-ul-Mulk, and so considerable a number of followers, have eaten their fill at the cost of four and a half little pieces of coin; therefore it would be the height of inhumanity to covet the property of orphans. Whosoever hath amassed wealth, and hath accumulated both lawful and unlawful gains, did so in order that, after his decease, his property should go to his progeny and his dependents, and not that I should take possession of it arbitrarily. Therefore give up the matter, and say no more on the subject." The mercy of the Almighty be upon him! and may those, who read this, utter a benediction to his memory and to mine.

Many monuments of the goodness and wisdom of that excellent monarch remain in the world, among which one is, that the astronomical calculations were, during his reign, tested anew, and the calendar reformed; and it was after the following manner:—It had been discovered from observations, that, from the want of an intercalation, very great confusion existed with regard to the lunar months, and that calculations had fallen into disorder, and that the zodiacal signs in the almanac had become involved in error. Sultan Malik Shāh commanded that the most learned men in the science of astronomy, and the most profound arithmeticians, should make fresh observations, and that the seasons and months should be again tested and adjusted; and the first day of spring, which is the first degree of the sign Aries, became named, after that monarch, the No-roz-i-Jalālī.

Nizām-ul-Mulk, Țūsī, who has left in the world so many proofs of his goodness and nobleness, was his Wazir; and Shaikh Abū Saʿīd-i-Abū-l-Khayr, and Imām Ghazzālī lived in his reign. Sultan Malik Shāh's reign extended over a period of twenty-six years, and, in the year 491 H., he died. God alone is immortal.

1 Sic in all copies of the work. Our author is greatly out of his reckoning here. According to the Jāmiʿ-ut-Tawārīḵh, Guzīdah, Alīf, Fāṣīb-ı, Lubb-ut-Tawārīḵh, and all others of authority, Malik Shāh died at Baḡdād in the month of Shawwal, 485 H., six years before the date our author gives; and, according to the Nizām-ut-Tawārīḵh and others, in 471 H.
V. MUḤAMMAD, SON OF MALIK SHĀH.

When Sultan Malik Shāh took his departure from this world, three sons survived him. Muḥammad, the elder,

Here we have a specimen of our author's mode of writing history; and, if we may judge of the rest of his work from this part, but little dependence can be placed in him. He leaves out the reigns of MAḤMŪD and BARKĪĀRŪK, the successors of Malik Shāh, entirely, a period of thirteen years! Space will only permit me to give a brief summary of those events.

After Malik Shāh's death, at Bagdad, his consort, Turkan Khātūn, who had previously been plotting to secure the succession of her son, Mughīs-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, set him up at Bagdad, and had the Khutbah read for him. She sent off swift messengers to Isfahan to secure the person of Barkīārūk, the eldest son, who had been nominated heir and successor by his father. Having succeeded in securing him, Turkan Khātūn, with her son Maḥmūd, advanced towards Isfahan, the capital. Barkīārūk, aided by the slaves and partisans of the late Wazīr, Nīgām-ul-Mulk, who had been removed from office at Turkan Khātūn's instigation, because he opposed her views, succeeded in escaping from Isfahan to Rai, where forces flocked around him from all parts. He defeated bodies of troops sent against him upon two occasions, but was not powerful enough, as yet, to attempt to regain Isfahan, and so he remained at Rai. Turkan Khātūn having died in Ramāzān, 487 H., he moved against the capital, and Maḥmūd, his brother and rival, came forth to submit to him, and the brothers embraced each other. Some of Maḥmūd's partisans, however, succeeded in seizing Barkīārūk, and were going to deprive him of his sight, when Maḥmūd was seized with small-pox, and died on the third day. There is some discrepancy here, among a few authors of authority, who state that Barkīārūk's escape took place in 488 H., and that he again retired to Rai, where he was crowned and enthroned, and that he was again seized and imprisoned in 489 H., at which time his brother Maḥmūd died, as above related. However, on the death of his brother, Barkīārūk was brought forth from his prison, and raised to the throne; and, from this date, his reign properly commences. The Khilīfah acknowledged him, and the titles he conferred upon him were, according to Yāfa'ī, Guzīdah, and others, RUKN-UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR, BARKĪĀRŪK; but Faṣīh-ī and others say, RUKN-UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-FAWARIS, were his titles. There was no peace for him still, and he had constantly to take the field. In 488 H. his uncle, Takīsh, revolted, but he was defeated; and, in the following year, he was moving against another uncle, Arsalān-i-Argū, when a slave of the latter put his master to death, before Barkīārūk arrived. On the death of Arsalān-i-Argū, who had held the greater part of Khurāsān, in 489 H., Sanjar, the third son of Malik Shāh, and full brother of Muḥammad, was set up in Khurāsān; and, in 490 H., when in his eleventh year, his brother, Sulṭān Barkīārūk, nominated him to the government of Khurāsān as his deputy. In 492 H., the year in which Jerusalem was taken by the Crusaders, and Sulṭān Ibrāhīm of Ghaznī died, Barkīārūk's troops revolted against him, and he retired into Khūzistān. On this, his other brother, Muḥammad, who appears to have been in revolt since 489 H. [some say 490 H.], moved from Arrān of Aṣharāfīān to Hamadān, during Barkīārūk's absence, and assumed the throne. In Rājāb of the following year, Barkīārūk marched against him, but was defeated, and had to retire into Khūzistān again.
they called by the name of Tir, and the second son was named Sanjar, and the youngest, Maḥmūd. Muḥammad Tir, the eldest, ascended the imperial throne, however, regained sufficient strength during the next year to be able to march against Muḥammad again; and, in Jamāʿī-ul-Ākhir, he defeated him in Irāk, and Muḥammad fled to Rai, at which time, according to Faṣīh-i, Sanjar joined him from Khurāsān. In 493 H., according to Faṣīh-i, Barkārūk was again defeated by Muḥammad; and, in the same year, the former had to encounter Sanjar in Khurāsān, but he was again unsuccessful, and had to fly. Barkārūk, notwithstanding he was exceedingly weak from severe illness, set out from Baghdād to oppose Muḥammad; but the great nobles on either side succeeded in effecting an accommodation between the brothers, and Muḥammad returned to Kazwīn, of which part he had held the government previously. Muḥammad, however, soon regretted what he had done, and further hostilities arose. Barkārūk again marched against him, and, in Rabīʿ-ul-Ākhir, 495 H., a battle took place between them near Sāwah, in which Muḥammad was defeated and routed, and he fled to Iṣfahān, followed by Barkārūk, who invested him therein. Muḥammad ventured out to try and raise the investment, but was again overthrown, and fled towards Khūe. Barkārūk followed, and came up with him near Ganjāh, and again defeated him. In Jamāʿī-ul-Ākhir, 496 H., a peace was brought about, on the agreement that Muḥammad should have the western parts of the empire, Azarbājān, Shām, Arman, Gurjistān, and a part of Irāk, and Barkārūk the remainder of the empire. This having been agreed upon, Barkārūk set out on his return to Baghdād; but his illness assumed a more dangerous form on the way thither, and he died on the 12th of Rabīʿ-ul-Awwal, 498 H., after a stormy reign of twelve years, having nominated his son, Malik Shāh, his successor. This is a mere outline of the events entirely left out by our author; and, in the account which he gives of Muḥammad's reign, he makes still more serious errors than before. Gibbon [chap. lvii.] destroys the empire of the Saljūqs in a few words. He asserts that "The greatness and unity of the Turkish empire expired in the person of Malek Shah," and of course never mentions his successors, Maḥmūd, Barkārūk, or Muḥammad. A little farther on he does say that "Sangiar, the last hero of their race," was unknown to the Franks, and that he "might have been made prisoner by the Franks, as well as by the Uzes." He means the Ghuzz tribe probably; but he omitted to state that the first Crusaders were opposed, really, by about the least powerful of the Satraps of the Saljūq empire. The eight successors of this "the last of his race," as well as himself, will be mentioned farther on.

5 Our author is totally incorrect here again. Muḥammad did not succeed his father, as already shown, neither did three sons [most of the copies of the work say "two"] only survive Malik Shāh. There were four, the eldest of whom was Barkārūk; the youngest, Maḥmūd, an account of, whom I have just given. The other two sons were Muḥammad and Sanjar, who were full brothers: an adopted son is also mentioned. The name Tir and Tabr [Taba], for some copies say one, and some the other, given to Muḥammad by our author, is not mentioned in any other work, and the significations of either do not appear applicable. I am inclined to consider that he has confounded the name of Muḥammad with that of his uncle Tutish,[Tutish], the progenitor of the Saljūq dynasty of Shām, out of whose hands the Franks wrested Antioch, in the first Crusade.
and all the Maliks and great nobles, with their loins girded, stood before him ready to do his bidding. The Wazîrs, or ministers of the east and the west, by their tact and experience, succeeded in securing possession of the whole of the territories of the empire; and the Sultâns of the neighbouring countries submitted to his suzerainty.

Sultan Muhammad Tir, however, was a person wholly given to pleasure; and, having found his dominions tranquil and undisturbed, he was in the habit of abandoning himself wholly to wine. He never led his forces in person towards any part of the frontiers of his empire, neither did he nominate any forces [under others for that service]; consequently, no event worthy of record took place during his reign, nor did his territories acquire any extension. His life of pleasure soon terminated; and, after passing two years in gaiety and jollity, he died; and the sovereignty passed to Sultan Sanjar.*

* Muhammad, born 474 H., whose correct titles are Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn, Abû Shuja', Muḥammad, Kasîm-i-Amîr-ul-Munîîn, whom our author calls a wine-bibber, and wholly addicted to pleasure, and who, according to his account, but on what authority he does not mention, never led his troops or despatched any under his nobles upon any expedition whatever, was, on the testimony of authors of undoubted authority, one of the most intrepid of the Saljûk sovereigns, of high principle, faithful to his engagements, truthful, just, a cherisher of his subjects, and moreover pious and temperate. See Rau'zat-ul-Ṣâfâ for his character. At the very outset of his reign, having claimed the whole empire as his right, he moved to Baghdad, against the adherents of Malik Shâh, son of Barkârîq, who had been set up as successor to his father's dominions, according to the terms arranged between Barkârîq and Muhammad already explained. Ṣâdaqâh and Ayâz were defeated, Ṣâdaqâh slain [Fasîh-i, however, says he was put to death in 501 H.], Ayâz taken prisoner, and Malik Shâh was seized and kept in confinement. In 504 H. Muhammad defeated the Mulâhidahs, who had acquired great strength during the stormy period of Barkârîq's reign, and had occupied a strong fortress of Iṣfahân, named Kala'-i-Shâh. The place was reduced, and the leader put to death. After this, an expedition into Hindûstân—the western frontier must be referred to—the destruction of a famous idol-temple, and the removal of the idol to Iṣfahân, is mentioned in some authors of authority. It seems improbable, but is distinctly mentioned, and further research may throw some light upon it. Fasîh-i, however, does not mention it. Subsequently Muḥammad despatched an army, under the command of one of his great nobles, against Almût, the stronghold of Hasan-i-Ṣâbîâh, the head of the sect of Mulâhidahs, but the Sultân's death happening soon after prevented the expedition succeeding. Muḥammad died in 510 H., but some authors say in 511 H., so that he reigned twelve years and nine months.
VI. SULTĀN-UL-A'ZAM, MU'IZZ-UD-DUNYA-WA-UD-DĪN, SANJAR, SON OF MALIK SHĀH.

Sultān Sanjar was a great, dignified, and mighty monarch. His birth took place in the country of Sanjar, in the year 479 H., at the time when his father, Malik Shāh, was engaged in the service of the Court of the Khilāfat, and occupied in the disposal of the affairs of the Lord of the Faithful.

When his father died, Sultan Sanjar was in his tenth year, and his brother Muhammad ascended the throne. After his brother's death, Sanjar was raised to the sovereignty; and was distinguished by the Court of Baghdād with a dress of honour, a standard, and a commission of investiture. At the capital, Marv of Shāh-i-Jahān, and throughout the whole of the territories of Islām, over which his father and grandfather had held sway, the Khutbah was read for him, and his name was impressed upon the coin.

When he attained unto years of discretion, the flower of youth, and the bloom of manhood, the dominions of the east and of the west came under the control and administration of the slaves and vassals of his empire. His first

6 Yāfa'ī says his titles were Sultān-ul-A'zam, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, and his patronymic Abū Ḥāris-i-Sanjār. Fanākatī calls him Mu'izz-ud-Daulah; Faṣīḥ-i, Saif-ud-Daulah; Mirāt-i-Jahān Numā styles him Sultān-Is-Salāṭīn, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Abū-Ḥāris, &c.; and Niẓām-ut-Tawārīkh and Muntakhab say his patronymic was Abū-l-Ḥāris-i-Aḥmad.

7 Sanjar did not succeed to the sovereignty over the whole empire until the death of his elder brother, Muhammad, in 511 H. [Faṣīḥ-i says in 510 H.], although he had held great part of Khurāsān, almost independent, for some time previously. In 511 H., he was just thirty-one years old, and he then assumed the title of Sultān.
hostile operations were directed against Muḥammad, Khān of Samrākand, whom he defeated; and, subsequently, Sultān Sanjar fought sixteen different engagements on different frontiers of his territories, and came forth victorious from the whole of them.

His reign extended over a long period of time; and public affairs went on in the highway of legality, and on the beaten track of equity and justice. The ordinances of the sacred law of Muḥammad, and the canons of the faith of Islām, conformable with the Divine commands, acquired fresh vigour and newness.

The countries of Khurāsān, Irāq, and Māwar-un-Nahr, became exceedingly populous and flourishing; and, at Baghhdād, royal palaces were erected in his name. The viceroyalty, and the command of the troops of Baghhdād, under the same conditions and provisions as those under which his forefathers had held these offices, indeed upon even more favourable terms, came into the possession of him, and of his representatives.

He installed his slaves in the government, and administration of every country. Arrān, Irāq, and Āzarbāijān he conferred upon Iladd-giz, who was his slave; and he

8 Sanjar fought several battles before he became supreme ruler, on the death of his brother, Muḥammad. His first was with Daulat Shāh, Wālī of Balkh, who was his cousin-german. This took place in 491 H., but, as Sanjar was only then in his twelfth year, he could not have taken part in it. He may have been present with the army. The second encounter was with his elder brother, Barkfārūk [who had nominated him to the government of Khurāsān in 490 H.], in 493 H. The third was with Kūndūz Khān, near Tirmiz, in 495 H. The fourth with Arsalān Shīh, Ghaznawi, in 511 H. The first battle fought, after he became supreme sovereign in 511 H., was against his nephew, Maḥmūd, in the neighbourhood of Sāwāh, in 513 H., which appears to be that said to have been fought with Masʿūd. See page 151, and note ⁹. Sultān Sanjar fought nine battles, in the whole of which he was victorious; and was defeated in two, as our author himself allows a few pages farther on. The expedition against Aḥmad [also called Muḥammad] Khān, son of Sulamān Khān, styled Bāḏshāh of Māwar-un-Nahr, took place in 524 H. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh mentions an expedition against “Muḥammad Khān, Wālī of Samrākand,” in 514 H. It appears to be the same which Faṣhīb, Guzīdah, and Jahān-Ārā place ten years after. Aḥmad Khān was taken prisoner, but he was restored to his sovereignty in 530 H.

9 Our author’s statements here are contrary to facts. See note ⁹ at page 168.

1 This name is wrongly given here in all the copies of the work but one, although, subsequently, when giving an account of him, the author calls him by his right name. As d is interchangeable with t, it can be, and sometimes is,
was the father of the Atā-bak, Muḥammad; and the Atā-bak, Ūz-bak, and the Atā-bak, Akhtān, are both descendants of his. The territory of Fārs was given to Sankur, who was the ancestor of the Atā-baks of Fārs; and the Atā-bak, Zangī, the Atā-bak, Duklah, and the Atā-bak, Saʿd, and his sons, are all his [Sankur’s] descendants. The country of Khwārazm he conferred upon the son of Khwārazm Shāh, who was one of his [the Sultan’s] servants, who was the father of I-yal-Arsalan, who was the father of Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, father of Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh.

The Sultan of Ghaznin, Masʿūd-i-Karīm [the Beneficent], son of Sultan Razzi-ud-Din, Ibrāhīm,—May the light of the Almighty illumine their resting place!—took the sister of Sultan Sanjar to wife. During the reign of the last, through the death of Sultan Masʿūd-i-Karīm, it is said that dissension arose between the Sultāns of Ghaznin. Malik Arsalān, son of Sultan Masʿūd, ascended the throne at Ghaznin, and Bahram Shāh, another son of Masʿūd, was with his father, in the district of Tigīn-ābād of Garmsīr, at the time of his father’s decease; and, from that place, Bahram Shāh proceeded to the presence of Sultān Sanjar [his maternal uncle], and for a considerable period continued in attendance at his Court.

After some time had elapsed, Sultān Sanjar came to Ghaznin to the aid of Bahram Shāh, and set Bahram upon the throne of Ghaznin; and in that territory, and in Hindūstān likewise, the Khutbah was read and the coin stamped, in Sultan Sanjar’s name.

This dominion and power which Sanjar possessed was more extensive than had been possessed by any of his ancestors. He conferred the territory of Mausil upon one written Ilatt-giz. This person’s name has been incorrectly written “Atlakīn,” and “Ildekuz,” in many translations. See page 170, and note 8.

2 No Atā-bak of this name occurs elsewhere.

3 See note 9, p. 107.

4 At this period Sanjar was merely ruler of Khurāsān, subordinate to his brother, although he succeeded to the whole empire shortly after.

5 Sanjar imposed a tribute of one thousand dinār per day upon Bahram Shāh; and, in 530 H., had to march to Ghaznin to enforce payment, and reduce him to submission.

6 It is beyond a doubt that the Saljuq empire was of the greatest extent in Malik Shāh’s reign. See latter part of note 5, page 140.
of his slaves,—and the Atā-baks of Mauṣil, who have been up to nearly this present time, are the descendants of this slave of his, who was a Turk of Khīṭā-i,—and the whole of the territories of Shām were held by his slaves. Sultan Nūr-ud-Dīn, of Shām, likewise, was one of the descendants of the Atā-baks of Mauṣil, as will, please God, be hereafter mentioned. The Malik of Ghūr, and the Sultāns of the Jībāl, were all subject to Sultan Sanjar.

During his reign hostility arose between the Sultāns of Ghaznin and the Malik of Ghūr, and the latter were overcome. When, however, the territory of Ghūr came under the rule of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Hūsain, he refused to pay submission to the Sultan; and an engagement took place between him and Sultan Sanjar in the neighbourhood of the mountain tracts of Hirāt, at a place named Sih Goshah-nāb, and the forces of Ghūr were routed, and Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn was taken prisoner. After some time he obtained his release, and became one of the especial confidants and intimate companions of Sultan Sanjar.

About the time of the troubles consequent on the outbreak of the Ghuzz tribe, when 'Alā-ud-Dīn was in company one day with Sultan Sanjar, and engaged in a carousal, Sanjar, who was seated upon the throne, thrust out one of his august legs, and let the foot, on the sole of which there was a black mole, dangle over the throne. Our author, being such a warm partisan of the Ghirians and their Turk successors, would not probably mention, if he knew of it, the circumstance of Bahram of Ghaznin sending the head of Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, son of Hūsain, son of Sām, to his uncle. Sultan Sanjar encountered the Ghurians upon two occasions. The first time, in 501 H., in which affair Hūsain, son of Sām, was made captive, and Sanjar gave orders to put him to death, but he was saved at the intercession of Shaikh Ahmad, Ghazzālí; and, it is stated, that for two years Hūsain used to light the fires for the cooks of the Sultan's army, to such misery was he reduced. For further details see Section XVIII. The second occasion, when, according to our author, "'Alā-ud-Dīn Hūsain, refused to pay submission to the Sultan," was in 547 H., just before Sanjar moved against the Ghuzz tribe, in which affair he was taken prisoner, and at the time when the Sultan's power was almost at the lowest ebb. See note, page 155.

This statement is much more probable than that of the Kauṣat-uṣ-Ṣafā,
Din's noticing this mole, he stood up and solicited that he might be allowed the honour of kissing it; and repeated these lines suitable to the occasion:—

"Verily the dust at the gate of thy palace is [my] diadem, 
[And] this, the collar of thy service, is my adornment. 
In the same manner as I kiss the mole on the sole of thy foot, 
Even so good fortune [likewise] salutes my head."  

Sultan Sanjar acceded to his request; and, when 'Ala-ud-Din knelt down and kissed the mole, the Sultan contrived to twist his toes in the hair about the face of 'Ala-ud-Din, and to keep him on the floor. 'Ala-ud-Din desired to raise his head from the ground, but was held down by his hair. Those present laughed, and 'Ala-ud-Din became disturbed, and his countenance changed. Sultan Sanjar, noticing his mortification, out of his princely beneficence and sympathy, said:—"'Ala-ud-Din, this jesting hath hurt thy feelings; let the dominion of Ghūr be [my] amends to thee. I congratulate thee! Return again to thy capital and throne: thou art my brother! Now that the troubles with the Ghuzz tribe have arisen, take along with thee all the flocks of sheep and herds of horses and camels belonging to me, my own private property. If victory aid my efforts against them, and the outbreak of this tribe should be quelled, send them back to me again; but, if not, let them be. It is far better that they should remain with thee, than that they should fall into the hands of such ingrate rebels."

Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din returned to Ghūr, and through the magnanimity and generosity of Sultan Sanjar regained his throne. This was a tradition of Sanjar's beneficence and kindliness; but the author of this Ṭabākāt will here relate that which sets forth his sovereignty. I, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the year 611 H., when at Firūz-koh, which was the capital and seat of government of the Sultāns of Ghūr, heard [the following] from Amir 'Ali, the Chā-ūsh [pursuivant], who said that his grandfather was the Marshal of the retinue of Sultan Sanjar: and that his grandfather stated, that, when Sultān Mas'ūd of 'Irāk, who was one of Sultān Sanjar's...
brothers’ sons, broke out into rebellion, and Karajah, the Saki [cup-bearer], who was one of Sanjar’s slaves, became his supporter in that revolt, the Sultan marched an army from Marw, with the object of falling upon the rebels unawares.

He reached the summit of the Sāwh Pass, at the foot of which, on the ‘Irāk side, the rebels were encamped, and issued from it with a few followers; but, when his eye caught sight of the forces of the enemy, he reined in his horse, and came to a halt. A party of nobles, who had reached the spot where he was, he summoned to his side, and said to them:—“We have come upon this gathering,

Some discrepancy exists among historians respecting the sons of Muḥammad, son of Malik Shāh, the nephews of Sultān Sanjar. Guzidah and others mention an encounter between Sanjar and his nephew, Maḥmūd, in 513 H., in ‘Irāk, who was defeated and fled to Sāwha, but mention no revolt on the part of Masʿūd, who only succeeded to the subordinate sovereignty over ‘Irāk-i-‘Ajam, on the death of his brother Tughril, in 529 H., who succeeded Maḥmūd, the other brother. In the enumeration of the different victories obtained by Sultān Sanjar during his reign, the Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh mentions one gained over his nephew, Maḥmūd, in the neighbourhood of Sāwha, in 513 H., and a second gained over another nephew [?], Masʿīd, near Dinawr, in 526 H.; but Masʿūd only succeeded his brother in 529 H. He may have been, however, rebellious before he succeeded. The cause for such discrepancy appears to have arisen from there having been two Masʿūds and three Tughrils, who held ‘Irāk-i-‘Ajam under Sanjar, on the authority of Faṣih-I, who gives the events of each year in chronological order. That work states, that ‘Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad, Sanjar’s brother, at his father’s death in 510 H. [some say it took place in 511 H.], notwithstanding he had opposed his uncle in battle, was allowed to retain the government of ‘Irāk-i-‘Ajam,” but that he died in that same year. Tughril, his brother, succeeded him, but in that same year Tughril likewise died. On this, Masʿūd, the third brother, succeeded, and he became disaffected towards his uncle, who marched against him, and defeated him in 513 H. in sight of Hamadan [a long way from Sāwha]. Masʿūd fled to Jurjān; but he was permitted, shortly after, to resume his government, but under supervision. There is no mention of his having been taken prisoner, yet this is the account which agrees best with the statement of our author. This Masʿūd died in 525 H. The Jahan-Ārā, and Muntakhab-ut-Tawarīkh state, that Maḥmūd died in that year [Ibn-i-Khalkān says in 524 H.], and was succeeded by his brother, Tughril, who died in 529 H., and was succeeded by Masʿūd; but, if Masʿūd only succeeded in 529 H., how could he, according to the same authors, have been defeated by his uncle in 526 H.? According to Faṣih-I, Masʿūd was succeeded by Tughril, his brother, but probably his son, as the same author states that his brother Tughril died in the same year as Maḥmūd, who died in 525 H. [this date agrees with Jahan-Ārā and the Muntakhab-ut-Tawarīkh above quoted], when Masʿūd, son of Maḥmūd [son of Muḥammad], Sanjar’s nephew, succeeded. He died in 547 H., and is said to have always been loyal to Sanjar. He was succeeded by his brother, Muḥīs-ud-īn, Malik Shāh.
but we have but a weak following, while the enemy are very numerous: what is it advisable to do?” Some among the nobles replied, that whatsoever, in accordance with his Majesty’s opinion, he might be pleased to command would be most advisable; but, if his Majesty would defer any movement until such time as the whole of the force should come up, and then dash upon them, it would be still more advisable. Others of the nobles said:—“These people too are his Majesty’s servants: it is necessary that he should be pleased to show clemency towards, and have compassion on them, and give them intimation of the arrival of the imperial standards, so that the whole of them may be able to come and tender their services, and rest in safety under the shadow of the imperial protection and pardon.” In short, each one of the great lords and nobles made representation of such opinions as entered their minds.

Sultān Sanjar [then] turned his face towards the Amir-i-Chā-ūsh, who was also Marshal of his retinue, and said:—“Chā-ūsh, what is it advisable to do?” The Chā-ūsh dismounted from his horse, and, bowing his head to the ground, repeated the following lines:

"Great monarch! we ought to give battle:  
We should close with the foe.  
All the fierce lions of the forest  
Must be brought into the field,  
All the huge elephants of war  
Should doubtless be brought into the fray.  
It is the day of battle: it is meet to engage.  
It is the hour for action: it is well to be doing.  
If thou wouldst render the kingdom stable,  
It is essential that the sword should be plied."

The Sultān replied:—“It is necessary to act as the Chā-ūsh advises;” and at once, without any further delay, with as many cavalry as had come up, Sultān Sanjar dashed upon the rebel forces. Karajah, the cup-bearer, and Masūd of Irāk were both taken prisoners, and the forces of this gathering were defeated and put to the rout, and the countries of Irāk and Āzarbāijān were recovered anew.

The Sultān returned to Khurāsān; and it was a constant practice with him to pass the hot season at Bukhārā, and the winter at Marw of Shāh-i-Jahān. It so happened, one year, that he remained longer than was his wont at Marw.
The temperature began to rise, and not one of his Court had the courage to represent that it would be well to return to the land of Bukhāra. The climate of Bukhāra agreed with a number of the nobles and great men. They urged Amir-i-Mu'azzī that he should, by means of verse, bring the charms and beauties of the villas and gardens of the city of Bukhāra to the imperial hearing, so that Kamāl-uz-Zamān might, at an opportune time, sing it, accompanied with lutes.

Amīr Mu'azzī, who was the Chief of Poets, or Poet-Laureate, and who, along with forty other adepts [in the art], was in the habit, on days of entertainment and at banquets, of recounting the deeds of the Sultan, and [of whom] it is related, that the whole of these [poets] were of his clan and followers, accordingly composed the following strophe⁷: and the Minstrel, Kamāl-uz-Zamān, early one morning, when the Sultan had taken his morning draught of wine, played⁸ it with such feeling and touching effect, that the Sultan, half-dressed as he was and in his slippers, came forth, mounted on horseback, and took neither

⁷ Our author is unfortunate with regard to his quotations very often. These lines were neither composed by the poet Mu'azzī, nor were they composed to influence Sultan Sanjar to return to Bukhāra. It was neither his capital, nor did he "use" to pass the hot seasons there. The lines were composed more than two hundred years before Sanjar was born, with the title "Mir" instead of "Shah," by Farīd-ud-Dīn, Abū 'Abd-ullah, Muḥammad, born at Rūdkāk of Samarkand, and hence known as Rūdkāk, a famous poet, blind from his birth, but endowed with a very melodious voice, and he played enchantingly on the barbat, a kind of lute. He was also the first native of 'Ajam who composed a Diwān. The lines in question were composed to try and influence the Amīr, Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, Sāmānī, to return to his capital, which was Bukhāra. One author states that he went to Hirāt, and was so delighted with the place that he remained a long time, and even thought of taking up his residence there. His ministers, nobles, and troops, who longed to return to Bukhāra, were much put out at this, so much so that they, finding all remonstrance useless, even contemplated rebelling. Another writer, who gives a biography of Rūdkāk, states that the place was Marw with which Naṣr was so much taken up. But, be this as it may, the poet, Rūdkāk, was induced to use his efforts upon the Amīr. He accordingly composed these lines, and in the Sarie or villa, in which Naṣr had taken his morning collation, the poet sang them accompanied by his lute. Naṣr became so enchanted on hearing some of the lines, that he did not stay to hear all; but, without either turban or shoes, he at once mounted and rode off the first stage on the way to Bukhāra.

⁸ "Lutes" are mentioned above in all the copies; whilst here, it appears, the minstrel sang it, accompanying it with his lute.
rest nor repose until he reached the appointed destination:

"The breeze from Mulian's rivulet reacheth me the same,
Even as cometh the fragrance of a loving friend.
The gravel of the Amā, and the roughness thereof,
Appeareth like as the softest silk beneath my feet.
The river Jībūn, with its wide-spread surface,
Reacheth, even now, to my white steed's very girths.¹
O Bukhārā! rejoice, and be thou glad once more,
For the Shāh even now cometh a guest unto thee.
The Shāh is a moon, and Bukhārā a firmament;
The moon likewise riseth the celestial vault within.
The Shāh is a cypress, and Bukhārā a garden;
The cypress also cometh unto the garden now."

After a great part of his reign had elapsed, a body of people from Karā-Khatā-i, from Tamghāj, and the dependences of Chin, entered the confines of Karā Kuram of Turkistān, and solicited Sultan Sanjar to assign them grazing-lands; and, with the Sultan's permission, they took up their quarters on those confines, in Bilāsāghūn, Kābālik, and Almālik, and made those parts their grazing-grounds.

When their progeny became very numerous, during the Sultan's reign, they rebelled against his authority, and fought a battle against him. Taniko of Tarāz, at the nomination of Sunkam and I-mā, was at the head of the Khaṭā'is. The Sultan's forces, from a long period of inaction, and enervated by protracted ease and luxury, were unable to cope with or stand before the enemy, and were overthrown; and they took Turkān Khāṭūn, who was the Malikah-i-Jahan [Queen of the Universe], and consort of Sultan Sanjar, captive.²

¹ The only other signification the word used will admit of is a boat, which does seem more appropriate, for I do not think the Jībūn can be forded on horseback. I have doubts whether the word is correct in the original.
² In 534 h. Sanjar marched to Samrkand, and fought a battle with Āṭ Khān; but he was defeated, and had to retreat to the fortress of Tirmiz, or Tirmid, as it is also called. Turkān Khāṭūn, and the Malik of Nimroz, and many other great men, were left in the hands of the enemy. These infidels of Khaṭā'ī, and Mughals likewise, overran Māwar-un-Nahr, slaying, devastating, and making the people captives; and, included in the numbers put to the sword by the invaders, were many great and learned men. The Khaṭā'ī's and Mughals remained in Māwar-un-Nahr until driven out by Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārzm Shāh. Guzīdah and Muntakhāb-ut-Tawārlkh state that this reverse took place in 535 h.

As soon as this disaster befell Sanjar, his vassal, Utsuz [it is written "Itisz"
This was the first reverse the Sultan had ever sustained; and, subsequently, he concluded a peace with them, and the pasture-lands of Turkistan and Bilasaghiin, along with the cities and towns included in those frontier tracts, were left in the hands of the Khata-i invaders. After the peace was concluded they sent back Turkän Khätün to the Sultan again. The Hakim [philosopher] Koshaki has written much satire upon this unfortunate event, which is contained in Diwāns and [other] books.

When this reverse became public, the affairs of the empire began to decline, and to grow weak; and, of the reign of Sanjar, sixty years had passed away. A body of the Ghuzz tribe, from Khandän, now rose in revolt against the Sultan's authority, and withheld the yearly tribute which had been previously fixed. The Sultan marched an army against them, and the Ghuzz were willing to pay a kalâh [ingot] of silver for each family, but the Sultan would not

in Būrḥān-i-Kāta', and in the Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī, "Utsīz," and by our author, "Utsuz"); son of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Nūḥ-Tīgin, upon whom Sanjar's father conferred the rule over Khwārazm, threw off his allegiance. Sanjar invested him in Ḥazar-asp in 535 H., which was taken; but he treated the rebel leniently, and still allowed him to retain that territory. In 537 H. [Guzidah says in 535 H., while the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh says it happened in 536 H.] Gūr Khān, who, in concert with Āl Khān, defeated Sanjar in the Dāshī, or Desert of Katrān [७१४५], on the frontier of Samarkand, died; and, after this happened, Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh expelled the infidels from Mawar-un-Nahr.

It was, according to Guzidah and others, after Sanjar's defeat by the Khafi-i's and Mughals that 'Ald-ud-Dīn, chief of Gîr, ventured to show hostility towards him. Sanjar defeated him before Abū Ābāh in 547 H., and 'Ala-ud-Dīn was taken prisoner, but was subsequently released. Our author has mentioned this as about the first event of Sanjar's reign.

A tract of territory on the frontier of Chin. A few MSS. have Khutlān.

Fanākafī says that, when the Ghuzz tribe crossed the Jihūn, Badr-ul-Mulk, 'Ajami, the Sultan's Wazīr, advised Sultan Sanjar to attack them. This he did, and was overthrown and taken prisoner, and Khurāsān, Kirmān, and Fārs were seized by them!

The Sultan marched against the Ghuzz in 548 H. The details are far too long for insertion here. Upwards of a hundred thousand persons, not including women and children, were afterwards massacred by the Ghuzz, and the territory of Khurāsān was devastated. In the following year was born Tāmūchīn, afterwards known by the name of Chingīz Khān.

7 Guzidah says "a maun [which signifies two pounds of twelve ounces each] of silver." Price, quoting the Khulasat-ul-Akhbār, says "a quarter of a hundredweight of gold, besides 109,000 dinārs," which is ridiculous. Our author's account is the most probable one.
agree to it, and, on this account, gave battle to them, and was defeated and taken prisoner.

On the Sultan falling into their hands, the whole of the Ghuzz dismounted before his stirrup, and saluted him, and tendered their services. The Ghuzz chieftains, such as Titî, Kurgharat, Malik Dinär, Ibrâhim, and Khutali, besides others, girded up their loins before the Sultan’s throne [to serve him], and began themselves to issue mandates [in his name]; and they divided Khurâsân among themselves. Whatever it was requisite to do they did, and they used to state, “The Sultan commands this and that.” The slaves and servants of the Sanjari dynasty became dispersed and separated; and the affairs of the country became disorganized, and the thread of sovereignty snapped asunder.

After some time had passed—about a year, more or less—one of the slaves, who was one of the Sultan’s nobles, proceeded to the Sultan Sanjar’s presence, and presented himself, and, as if going out on a hunting excursion, mounted the Sultan on horseback, and brought him away [out of the hands of the Ghuzz], and restored him to liberty once more. He conducted the Sultan to Marw, and placed him on the throne again, and some of the still remaining adherents of the dynasty collected around him; but the Sultan’s days had now drawn towards their close, and the sovereignty had grown antiquated and gone to decay. On Monday, the 24th of the month Rabî’-ul-Awwal, in the year 552 H., Sultan Sanjar died at Marw, and was there buried. His age was seventy-three years.

Our author generally eschews dates. Here again we have a specimen of his mode of writing history, when he asserts that Sanjar remained in captivity “about a year, more or less.” Sanjar remained nearly four years in the hands of the Ghuzz, and, during this period, no efforts were made to effect his escape, lest his consort, Turkin Khatîn, who appears to have again fallen into captivity, might remain in their hands. She having died, however, in 551 H., Sultan Sanjar succeeded in gaining over the Ghuzz chief who had charge of him, so far as to get him to take him out on a hunting excursion to the banks of the Jîhân. Arrangements had been made for the occasion, and Amîr Ahmad-i-Kamâj, governor of Tîrmîz, was awaiting him on the bank, where he had got boats in readiness. The Sultan succeeded in throwing himself into one, and his people got into others, and then made their escape. In Ramazan of that year, the Sultan succeeded in assembling a force at Tîrmîz, and he then set out, under its escort, to Marw.

See latter part of preceding note.
and a little over, and his reign lasted sixty-two'. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

ACCOUNT OF THE SULTANS OF RUM, OF THE SALJUKIAH DYNASTY.

The Sultans of Rum were of the race of Saljuk, and were great and powerful monarchs; and, in the territories of Rum and the country of Afranj, numerous signs and marks of their goodness and benevolence, their expeditions and holy wars, their conflicts with unbelievers, buildings of public utility and charity, in the shape of colleges, mosques, monasteries for darwešhis, karwānsarāes, bridges, and charitable and pious foundations, remain to this day; and the accounts of their descendants, their Maliks, and their Amirs, and of their heroic achievements in that country, are recorded in trustworthy books.

When the Sultan of Sultans, Sanjar, on whom be the mercy of the Almighty, ascended the throne of his father and became established in the sovereignty of the world, and when the territories of Islām, both east and west, were taken possession of by his servants, and the Khutbah was read for him from all the pulpits of Islām, and the money of the world became adorned with his name and titles, he conferred the kingdom of Rum upon his brother, Maḥmūd, son of Malik Shāh. The whole of the Sultans [of that country]
are his [Mahmûd's] descendants, an account of every one of whom is recorded in this Tabakat, in order that its readers may call to remembrance, with a blessing, those who have passed away, and acquire some information respecting that dynasty.*

* I will now demonstrate what I have referred to by giving a brief account of the rulers of Rûm, of the Saljûk dynasty.

Kîl-tîmîsh [کیل تیمیش]—written likewise Kîl-tîmîsh [کیل تیمیش] and Kat-lîmîsh [کات لیمیش]—but the last syllable is evidently the same as occurs in the name of the Turkish slave-sovereign of Dîhilî, “I-yal-tîmîsh,”] son of Isrâ‘îl, son of Saljûk, Alb-Arsâlân’s great uncle’s son, according to the Muntakhab ut-Tawârîkh, rebelled against him [Alb-Arsâlân]; but, in an action near Dâmghân in Muḥarram, 456 H., Kîl-tîmîsh was defeated, and was found dead on the field. Alb-Arsâlân desired to put Kîl-tîmîsh’s sons to death, but was dissuaded from doing so by his Wâzîr, and was induced to make Sulûmân, son of Kîl-tîmîsh, vicerey of certain territories of Sham, and he was the founder of the Saljûk Sultans of Rûm. Gûzîdah states that Kîl-tîmîsh received the investiture of the government of Damasîk, from Malik Shâh, at the time when he conferred so many territories upon others. See note 3, page 168. Sulûmân, who was employed against the Christians in 467 H. [A.D. 1074-5]—but Ñâsib-î and a few others say in 469 H.—succeeded by stratagem in wresting Antakfîh out of the hands of Firdaus [Philaretus], Rûmî, after it had been in the hands of the Christians

his tenth year, in 489 H., only twenty-one years before Sanjar succeeded to the throne, and when Sanjar was about the same age. The first two sovereigns here mentioned as rulers of Rûm, who undertook expeditions against “the infidel Afranj,” were the first two rulers of ’Irâk, subordinate to Sanjar, as will be seen on reference to the second Rûmî sovereign, so called, and Sanjar’s reign where Kârâjâh, the cup-bearer, is referred to, page 151. From the third to the ninth, the rulers mentioned in this Section are correctly given as far as their names and a very meagre account of their reigns go; but the tenth ruler, again, was the last ruler of ’Irâk, not of Rûm. I noticed, when reading the work, that, at the latter part of the reign of Mas’ûd, all the copies of the original contained matter totally unintelligible with regard to that sovereign. It is strange too that all the copies of the work should be the same, for some of the MSS. I have collated, one in particular, are certainly five or six hundred years old. Still more strange is it, however, that, not only should the author in his preliminary notice of the Sultân of Rûm mention Maḥmûd, brother of Sanjar, as the first, but, that he should subsequently mention his undertaking expeditions against the Christians; and, with reference to the second ruler, Mas’ûd, Maḥmûd’s son, he says that Sanjar, at first, conferred the throne of ’Irâk upon him [Mas’ûd], thus inferring that, subsequently, that of Rûm was given to him. The heading of a chapter or paragraph might be put in incorrectly by a copyist, but the sense of the matter cannot be, nor could Rûm have been inserted for ’Irâk. It is therefore evident that our author himself made a muddle of his work, and confounded the rulers of ’Irâk with those of Rûm, which, from other errors he has made, is not improbable. It will also be noticed that he makes no mention whatever of the Saljûks of Kîrmân, consisting of eleven sovereigns, whose dynasty outlasted all the others—but he has also left out all the other ’Irâkî rulers, except the two first and the last, who do duty for the Rûmîs—neither has he given any account whatever of Sanjar’s successors, nor does he notice at all other less powerful dynasties.
I. MAḤMUḌ, SON OF MALIK SHĀḤ.

On the throne of the territory of Rūm having been conferred upon him by Sultān Sanjar, his brother, he undertook many holy wars in that region, and on the frontiers of Islām. He marched armies against the infidel Afranj, and carried on holy war according to the canons and ordinances of the sacred law. He captured fortresses and cities, and ruled over the servants of Almighty God with justice and beneficence. After he had reigned for a considerable time he died.

II. MAṢŪḌ, SON OF MAḤMUḌ SHĀḤ.

Sultān Mas'ūḍ was the son of Maḥmūd, son of Malik Shāh. At first, Sultān Sanjar conferred the throne of 'Irāk upon him; and, on one occasion, through the power and authority which he had acquired in that territory, he combined with Karajah, the Sāḵī [cup-bearer], and they rebelled against the Sultān.

The Sultān came upon them suddenly, and attacked them⁴, and took both Mas'ūḍ and Karajah, the cup-bearer, prisoners. After that occurrence the affairs of Mas'ūḍ went to ruin, and he never ascended the throne again; but, in the person of his son, Kazil-Arsalān by name, he acquired considerable power, and became sovereign, and carried on the government⁶.

*  *  *  *  *  *  *  *

[Twelve copies of the original are all hopelessly defective here, and no two copies are alike. No break occurs in either MS. to indicate that any portion whatever has been lost or misplaced, or that any omission has been made in copying⁷.

since 358 H. This was effected during the reign of the Greek emperor, Alexius Comnenus. I. SULĪMĀN [the Solyman of Tasso] acquired great renown by this, and, in 480 H., Malik Shāh [not Sanjar, as our author states, for he was then only an infant in his first year], conferred the sovereignty on him. He reigned twenty years, and was succeeded by his son, II. DA'ŪḌ, who

---

⁴ See the particulars, at page 151.
⁶ This is the only sense that is to be gathered from the original, and the statement is incorrect. See note ⁴, page 157.
⁷ Not even in the precious Paris copy, which M. Tascherau so fondly imagines to be in our author's own handwriting.
The context, in fact, proves that Minhaj-i-Saraj considered Kazil-Arsalân to be the son and successor of Mas'ûd; and, such being the case, the extent of our author's knowledge of history is impressively indicated.

III. KAZIL-ARSALÂN, SON OF MAS'UD, SON OF MAHMÚD, SON OF MALIK SHÁH.

After the decease of his father, Kazil-Arsalân acquired some little power, and possessed himself of some of the frontier districts of the territory of Rûm. He ruled for a short period and died.

IV. KULIJ-ARSALÂN, SON OF KAZIL-ARSALÂN.

Kulij-Arsalan was the son of Kazil-Arsalân, who was the son of Mas'ûd, son of Maḥmûd, son of Malik Shāh. He assumed the sovereignty of Rûm after the death of his father, and became a very great and powerful monarch. He possessed himself of the territories upon the confines of Rûm, captured many fortresses and strongholds, performed many heroic exploits, and acquired a great name on account of the infidel Afranj having been often worsted and overthrown by him.

All the Sultâns of Rûm glory in their connexion with him; and he obtained the felicity of martyrdom. He was interred at Kûniah, which is a large city in Rûm.

ascended the throne at Kûniah. He gained some successes over the Christians, and, after a reign of eighteen years, died in 518 H. His brother, III. KULIJ-ARSALÂN, succeeded, who is said by one author to have fought a naval battle with the Christians, and, after an arduous struggle, to have been victorious; but there is some discrepancy with respect to the date, and the story may refer to the previous reign. He reigned until 539 H., but some say until 537 H.; but, having been defeated in a battle with the Irâ̄kî Saljiûks, he was drowned whilst crossing a river, when retreating before them. His son, IV. SULTÂN MAS'ÛD, succeeded, who, after a reign of nineteen years, died in

---

8 Mas'ûd, brother of Maḥmûd, son of Ghiyas-ud-Dîn, Muḥammâd, Sanjar's brother, had no son so named. The lines which follow are meaningless, but are alike in all the copies.

9 Called Konia by Europeans.
V. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KĀ-ŪS, SON OF KULĪJ-ARSALĀN.

Sultan 'Izz-ud-Din, Kai-Kā-ūs, ascended the throne after his father's death, and brought the country under his rule. He carried on holy war against the infidels of Afranj, and fought several battles with them in that country. He founded colleges and masjids, and left many monuments of his goodness and bounty behind. He was interred by the side of his father in the city of Kūniah.

VI. KAI-KUBĀD, SON OF KAI-KĀ-ŪS.

Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Kai-Kubād, ascended the throne on the decease of his father, Kai-Kā-ūs, and brought under his sway the territories of Rūm, and parts adjacent.

558 H. He was succeeded by his son, V. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KULĪJ-ARSALĀN, who ascended the throne at Kūniah. He annexed some of the territories of the Christians, and, after a reign of twenty years, died in 578 H. After him came his son, VI. RUKN-UD-DĪN, SULĪMĀN SHĀH, the eldest, and, between him and his brother Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau, who had been nominated successor by his father, hostilities arose, which went on till 588 H. Kai-Khusrau fled to the Christians. Sulīmān annexed Arz-i-Rūm and Kārš (Kars), with their dependencies. He reigned twenty-four years, and died in 602 H. His son, VII. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KULĪJ-ARSALĀN II., son of Sulīmān, succeeded. He was an infant, and his uncle, Kai-Khusrau, having been recalled from the Farang, in 603 H., succeeded, after a year, in depriving him of the sovereignty, and Kūnij-Arsalān was shut up in a fortress, where he died in 609 H. VIII. GHIYĀS-UD-DĪN, KAI-KHUSRAU, after dethroning his young nephew in 603 H., assumed the sovereignty. He took Antakiah from the Christians, into whose hands it had again fallen, in 603 H., and was himself killed in a battle with the ruler of Istanbūl (Constantinople), after a reign of six years, in 609 H., but some authors say in the preceding year, and some, 610 H. This probably is the fifth monarch referred to by our author, under the name of Kūnij-Arsalān, as he is the only one mentioned who attained the felicity of martyrdom in having been slain by the Christians. His brother, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kubād, rose against him, but had to submit, and was confined in a fortress.

Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau, having been slain in battle with the Christians, was succeeded by his son, IX. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KĀ-ŪS, but he died after a short reign of about a year. Most authors do not mention this prince at all. He was succeeded by his uncle, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kubād, who is about the first of the sovereigns of this dynasty that can be traced by his correct name and title, from our author's account of them. X. 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KUBĀD, who had been immured in a fortress, succeeded his nephew, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kā-ūs, in 610 H., and is accounted one of the greatest sovereigns of the dynasty. Hostilities arose between him and the
He fought battles with the infidels of Afranj; and many indications of his goodness exist to this day.

He had sons, who acquired great renown, and became great men. He died on the 5th of the month Shawwal, in the year 633 H., and he, likewise, was buried at Ḳūniah.

VII. KAI-KHUSRAU, SON OF KAI-KUBĀD.

Ṣulantān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau', was a great monarch of noble disposition and excellent qualities, just and impartial. Having ascended the throne after the death of his father, he took possession of the territories of Rūm, and assumed the government of them.

In this reign, the disturbance and disorder consequent upon the irruption of the army of infidel Mughals had reached the frontiers of Rūm. The Sultan, in such manner as he was able, entered into friendly relations with the Farang. He was assembling an army upon the frontiers bordering upon the territory of Islām, when, suddenly, unfortunate but gallant Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the last of the Khwārazm Shāhīs. They fought a battle, in Ramaṣṣān, 627 H., in which Kai-Kubād was victorious. The Mughal, Uktae Ka'an, sent him a Yarligh [diploma] congratulating him, and the Khalīfah [for overthrowing a good Musalām perhaps] conferred upon him the title of Sultān-i-A'gam, wa Kasim-i-Mu'aggam. He reigned twenty-six years, and died in 634 H., having been poisoned, by mistake some authors say, by his son, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau, who assumed the throne.

1 Our author is correct here as to the name and title. GHIYĀṢ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KHUSRAU, the eleventh of the dynasty, is the man who poisoned his own father, of whom our author gives such a glowing account.

2 An army of Mughals marched against him, under Tājū, Nūyān, and the Mughals obtained sway over the territory of Rūm, after an engagement at Koshah-dāgh, in 641 H. Kai-Khusrau died in 642 H., but Guṣīdah says in 644 H., and Jahān-Ārā and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh say in 643 H., but Rauzāt-uss-Safā says in 640 H., which is certainly incorrect. His son Sulmān succeeded.

3 The word “Farang” is used here in all the copies, but Afranj is the word previously used. This, doubtless, is what Gibbon refers to in grandiloquent style, which often covers great errors:—“Flying from the arms of the Moguls, those shepherds of the Caspian [whom he styles the strange and savage hordes of Carismians,” thus indicating the extent of his knowledge of the matter] rolled headlong on Syria; and the union of the Franks with the Sultans of Aleppo, Hems, and Damascus, was insufficient to stem the violence of the torrent.” The “torrent” of course signifies the fugitive Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn flying from the Mughals, who was defeated by Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kubād, as related in a previous note.
he was deserted and left alone by his troops. The Mughal forces made an inroad into that territory; and, after they again retired, Kai-Khusrau died in the beginning of Muharram, 643 H.

He reigned for a period of eleven years, and named his son, 'Izz-ud-Din, Kai-Kā-ūs, his heir and successor.

VIII. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KĀ-ŪS, SON OF KAI-KHUSRAU.

According to his father's nomination as successor to the sovereignty, Sultan 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kā-ūs, ascended the throne of Rūm in the beginning of the year 643 H., and the Maliks and other great nobles submitted to his authority.

As he was celebrated for his energy, his warlike accomplishments, and his nobility of mind, he strengthened his frontiers on the side of Afranj; and, as a matter of necessity,

4 Died in 644 H. according to Guzidah and Fasih-I, and in 642 H. according to the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh.

5 As is often the case towards the termination of a dynasty, authors here are at variance one with another respecting the succession. Some say that Ghiyas-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusras, was succeeded by his son, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kā-ūs, and that he, as our author states, despatched his brother Rukn-ud-Dīn, Kūlij-Arsālān [called by others Rukn-ud-Dīn, Sulīmān], to the camp of the Mughal Ka'an. The facts, however, appear to be as follow. On the death of Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusras, in 642 H., his son, XII. RUKN-UD-DĪN, SULĪMĀN, succeeded. It was he who despatched his brother, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khād, to the Court of Ab-ghā [called also Ab-kā] Khān, where he continued for a considerable time in distress and trouble. Having at length succeeded in his mission, he set out on his return, but Rukn-ud-Dīn, Sulīmān, suspecting he was coming with designs against him, had him put to death as soon as he entered his territory; and another brother, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kā-ūs, fled to the camp of Barkā Khān. After a reign, so called, of twenty years, Sulīmān was himself put to death, by order of Ab-ghā Khān, in 664 H.

Others, on the contrary, say that Rukn-ud-Dīn, having succeeded in obtaining from the Mughal Ka'an, a grant of investiture for himself, on his return into Rūm, was the cause of great disorders; and that 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusras, fled to Istanbul, and was proceeding to the Dagh-i-Kabčak to lay his case before the Ka'an, but died on the way, Rukn-ud-Dīn having in the meantime, with Mughal aid, assumed the sovereignty; but, after a short time had elapsed, Rukn-ud-Dīn [called Kūlij-Arsālān by some and Sulīmān by others] found to have been intriguing with the ruler of Miṣr, and was put to death in 664 H.

As our author finished his history in 658 H. I have no occasion to say more than that he records events respecting the Mughals which, evidently, belong to the reign of Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusras, the seventh ruler, by his account, and has confused the events of the following ones.
consequent upon the power and predominance of the infidel Mughals over the dominions of Islam, he, in order to ward off [the inroads of] that race, despatched his younger brother into Turkistan to the Court of Mangü Khan, the Mughal, so that he might, under terms of peace, be left in possession of his dominions.

On Rukn-ud-Din, Kulij-Arsalan, the envoy and brother of Sultan Kai-Ka-üs, reaching the presence of Mangü Khan, the Mughal, he preferred requests, and made solicitations contrary to the mandate of his brother. He sought from Mangü Khan the territory of Rüm for himself, and likewise assistance from him to enable him to liberate that country from the hands of his brother. Mangü Khan gave him the daughter of the Nü-in* [a Prince, or a great noble,] Aljakta, the Mughal, and despatched Aljakta, with his troops, to aid Rukn-ud-Din, Kulij-Arsalan [against his brother].

When they reached the Rümi territory, 'Izz-ud-Din, Kai-Ka-üs, retired before them; and Kulij-Arsalan and the Mughals became dominant over Rüm. Kai-Ka-üs went to Aor Khan of Rüm, and, having obtained aid from him, came and suddenly attacked the Mughals, and overthrew them'. He captured his brother, and immured him in a fortress.

After some time, he, Kulij-Arsalan, succeeded in escaping, and went to the Mughals; and, as what has happened since has not become known to the author, this [notice of him] has been thus much abridged.

IX. KUTB-UD-DIN*, KULIJ-ARSALAN.

Trustworthy persons call him Rukn-ud-Din, Kulij-Arsalan, and say that he is among the Mughals, along with Huläu, the Accursed, in the direction of the territory of Azarbajjan. What the upshot of his affairs may be no one can say; but, please God, may they end well*!

* Also written Nüyan.
7 Who Aor [in one copy Üz] Khân of Rüm might have been, it would require our author to explain. No overthrow of the Mughals by the Saljûks of Rüm is mentioned by other writers.
8 One copy has Rukn-ud-Din.
9 This short account varies, and is somewhat less in some of the copies of the work. Huläu is also styled Hulâkû.
X. TUGHRIL, SON OF TUGHRIL.

Respecting the descent of this Prince two different accounts have been given. Some relate that he is Tughril, the son of Tughril, son of Kazil Arsalan.

Sultan Tughril was a sovereign, and the son of a sovereign, and a person of great magnificence; and his reign was contemporary with that of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Takish, Khwārazm Shāh.

His strength was so very great, that not a warrior of his day could lift his mace from the ground, and he was a man of great stature and of awe-striking presence. Persons of credit relate, that the hair on his upper lip was so long, that he used to draw his moustaches back, and put them behind his ears.

He was one of the brother's sons of Sultan Sanjar, and was [left] very young in years on the decease of his father. The sons of the Ata-bak İladd-giz—who was one of Sanjar's slaves, and had, previously, been ruler of that territory, and had espoused Tughril's mother [grandmother of Tughril, widow of Arsalan, Tughril's father], after his father's death—had acquired power over 'Irāḵ; and, when their father died, they immured Sultan Tughril in one of the fortresses of 'Irāḵ, and took the country into their own possession.

1 All the copies are alike in this respect, and no hiatus whatever occurs in the different MSS. to show it. I merely discovered it from the names and events mentioned.

2 Not so: Tughril, the last of the dynasty, was son of Arsalan Shāh, and his title was Rukn-ud-Din. There are no contrary accounts that I know of. One copy has Tughril, son of Arsalan, son of Kulij-Arsalan.

3 In some copies this paragraph is placed at the end of his reign.

4 See note 9, page 91.

5 He was Sanjar's brother's great-grandson, if not one generation farther removed.

6 I have been obliged to take a little liberty with the text of this paragraph, which, in all twelve copies, is in a hopeless state of muddle. No two copies are alike; and, as the text now stands, it is a mere jumble of words without any observance of grammatical rules. The literal translation of this passage, as it now stands, is as follows:—"He was one of the brother's sons of Sultan
When Sultan Tughril reached man's estate, and became famous for his vast strength, his great bodily vigour, his nobility of mind, and his warlike accomplishments, a party of adherents rendered him aid, and set him at liberty from imprisonment. He came forth, and great numbers of the servants of his father and grandfather flocked around him. He assumed the Chatr [canopy of royalty], and became Sultan. The following are two lines from a poem composed on his escape from confinement, and his rise to dominion and power 7:

"The tidings reach'd Rai—'The Sultan is come!'
And that august canopy of his is to Hamadan come."

After Sultan Tughril had acquired supremacy over the territory of 'Irāk, and had reigned for a considerable period, a number of his servants despatched letters to Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, and invited him to come into that country. In accordance with that request, Sultan Takish invaded 'Irāk with a large army. When the two armies came into proximity with each other, one or two ingrate slaves acted treacherously towards Sultan Tughril, and came up behind his august back and martyred him.

At this period his other followers were engaged in front, at the head of a pass, fighting bravely, and did not become aware of this piece of treachery, until those treacherous ingrates brought the august head of their sovereign to Sultan Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, who despatched it to that staunch and steadfast band of Tughril's followers.

Sanjar, and had been left, after his father [s death] very young [in years]. The sons of the Aṭā-bak Iladd-giz, who was a slave of Sanjar's, having acquired power over 'Irāk, because his [sic] father was ruler of 'Irāk; [and], when he died, they imprisoned Sultan Tughril in one of the fortresses of 'Irāk, took his mother to wife [sic], and possessed themselves of the country." For a correct account of these matters see the following note, and note 7, page 169.

7 Jahān-Pahlawān, the Aṭā-bak, on the death of his half-brother [see under Aṭā-baks of Āzarbājān and 'Irāk, page 171, and note 8] Arsalān Shāh, set up the latter's son, Tughril, as sovereign of 'Irāk, who was then seven years old. While his maternal uncle, Jahān-Pahlawān, lived, Tughril's affairs prospered, and he reigned in some splendour. Jahān-Pahlawān, however, died in 582 H., and Ḵāzil-Arsalān, his full brother, desired to take his place as Aṭā-bak to Tughril. The latter, being impatient of restraint, would not brook it, and, accordingly enmity arose between them. For further particulars respecting Tughril and Ḵāzil-Arsalān, see note 9, page 171, and note 8 page 172.
When they found what had happened, they declared that they would not cease fighting and using the sword, until he, Sultan Takish, should deliver up to them the murderers of their sovereign, whereupon they would yield to him. Sultan Takish complied, and delivered up the murderers, whom they sent to the infernal regions. Then, taking along with them the head of Sultan Tughril, they proceeded to the presence of Sultan Takish, and submitted to him. He took the head in his arms, and, along with them, performed the customary mourning [for the deceased]; and Sultan Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, took possession of 'Irāk.

Tughril's death occurred in the following manner:—Takish of Khwārazm, having invaded 'Irāk at the instigation of Kutlagh Inanaj, encountered Tughril's forces within three farsakhhs of Rai, where Tughril had pitched his camp. According to several authors Tughril and Kutlagh Inanaj were engaged hand to hand, when Tughril struck his own horse a blow with his mace, which was intended for his opponent, and the horse fell with him, and Tughril was slain by Kutlagh Inanaj. I prefer, however, the circumstantial account of Ya'fā, who says that whilst Tughril was leading his troops in a charge, his horse stumbled, and Tughril was thrown to the ground. At this moment Kutlagh Inanaj reached the spot, and desired to give Tughril a finishing blow, and slay him before he was recognized. This he accomplished, and the body was then placed upon a camel and taken to the presence of Takish, "who, on seeing his enemy in this condition, knelt down and gave thanks to the Almighty for the mercy vouchsafed to him." His head was sent, as an insult, to the Khalifah at Baghdad, and his body was exposed upon a gibbet in the bazar of Rai, on Thursday, the 29th of Rabī' ul-Awwal, 590 H. Thus ended the first dynasty of the Saljūks, who ruled over Khurásan and 'Irāk for a period of 161 years. This account of Tughril and his death is widely different from our author's. The Khalifah was hostile to Takish. See under his reign, Section XVI.

Our author does not give any account of the Saljūk dynasty of Shām, or of that which ruled so long in Kirmān.
SECTION XIII.

ACCOUNT OF THE SANJARĪYAH RULERS.

The humblest of the servants of the Almighty’s Court, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī, states, that, when the period of the dynasty of the Sanjariyah expired, and no son remained unto Sulṭān Sanjar, nor brother’s sons [likewise], every one of his slaves held some territory among the dominions of Islam. These slaves assumed the title of Atā-baks [guardians and preceptors], and, to the brother’s sons of Sulṭān Sanjar, they accorded the title of Sovereign, whilst they possessed themselves of the different territories of the empire.

These Atā-baks were of different races. One was the descendant of the Atā-bak, Ilatt-giz, to whom Sulṭān Sanjar had given the territories of ‘Irāq and Āzarbājān; the second, the Atā-bak, Sankur, to whom he had given

1 So in all the copies, but a few lines under our author contradicts himself.
2 Our author appears quite as much in the dark with respect to the Atā-baks, if not more so than he is with regard to the Sulṭāns of Rūm. It was Sulṭān Malik Şhāh, the father of Sulṭān Sanjar—not Sanjar himself—who made several of his Mamlūks or slaves, as well as some of his relatives and nobles, rulers over different parts of his vast empire [see page 138], as the dates which I shall give will prove, and on the authority of authors of undoubted authority, such as have been already mentioned. For the information of the general reader uninitiated in Oriental lore, I would mention that the words Mamlūk and Ghulām, signifying “slave,” must not be understood in the sense “slave” conveys in our language. These slaves were sometimes captives, but more often boys of Turkish origin, purchased by kings and their great nobles of traders—slave-dealers—and trained for the highest offices. They were sometimes adopted by their masters, and were frequently made governors of provinces, and leaders of armies. Numbers of these Turkish slaves possessed the throne of Dihlī, as will hereafter be mentioned in these pages.

The Atā-baks, it must be remembered, notwithstanding our author’s assertions, were, at the outset, more or less, subject to the sovereigns of the house of Saljūk, and acted as tutors and guardians of various young princes, which the word Atā-bak means, from the Turkish atā, father, and bak, a lord, a great man. Sanjar himself was put in charge of Khurāsān in the thirteenth year of his age, which signifies that the government was administered in his name, and that his Atā-bak carried on the administration.
the territory of Fārs; and, third, the Atā-baks of Mausil, and the Maliks of Shām. Trustworthy authorities have related some little respecting the events [in the lives] of two of these dynasties, as has been [herein] recorded; and, with regard to the Atā-baks of Mausil, as much as has been written respecting the affairs of Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Din of Shām is all the information that has been obtained, with the exception of that of which the Khudāwand-Zādah [son of a lord or great man] of Mausil informed me, which was this much, that his eighth ancestor was a Turk of Khata-i, and the slave of Sulṭān Sanjar. Such being the case, this dynasty [of Atā-baks] has been classified into three sections.  

FIRST DYNASTY.  

THE SANJARĪYAH MALIKS OF 'IRĀK AND AẒARBAĪJĀN.  

Be it known that one night, at a convivial entertainment, Sulṭān Sanjar conferred sovereignty upon three persons—to Malik Utsuz he gave the throne of Khwārazm; to the Atā-bak, Ilatt-giz, the throne of Aẓarbāījān; and the throne of Fārs to the Atā-bak, Sanḵūr.  

Respecting both of which dynasties he gives no account. From the remarks which follow, our author seems to have been at a loss for materials, and his statements fully prove it.  

A vast deal of information, certainly.  

It will be noticed that our author, who generally eschews dates, never gives a single date throughout his account of the three following dynasties, so called.  

Also written Utsiz, and in the Burhān-i-Ḵaṭa', Itsiz.  

Sanjar's father, Malik Shāh, who certainly held a greater extent of territory than any other of the Saljuḵ sovereigns, bestowed territories, that is the viceroyalty over them, upon his Mamlūks and officers. Khwārazm he gave to Nūsh-Tigīn-i-Gharjah, who was also a slave, on his conquest of that territory, in 475 H. [He was the progenitor of that dynasty], and this happened five years before Sanjar was born. The latter, during his reign, in 535 H., endeavoured to reduce Itsiz, the grandson of Nūsh-Tigīn, who died when Sanjar was in his twelfth year, but was unable, and Itsiz became an independent sovereign. On Āḵ-Sanḵūr, the progenitor of the Atā-baks of Fārs and of Dīyār-i-Bakr, Muḥammad, Sanjar's predecessor, bestowed the government of Ḩalab, in 487 H., upwards of five years before Sanjar came to the throne of the empire: he had only held Khurāsān before. It was Maḥmūd, nephew of Sanjar, who gave Iladd-giz the widow of his brother in marriage, and the government of Aẓarbāījān, as mentioned farther on. I have been thus particular here in order to show the value of our author's statements with respect
When the next day came round, a number of his Wazîrs, confidants, and advisers, represented to the Sultan, that, on the previous night, his Majesty had given thrones away to three different persons, out of whose hands he would not, hereafter, be able to disengage them. He inquired what three persons they were, and, when they informed him, he confirmed the appointments, saying:—"Those two first mentioned are my slaves, and the other is in my service. As there is no son to interpose, who would be heir to the sovereignty, it is better that my slaves should be paramount."

I. THE ĀTĀ-BĀK, ĪLÂT-GÎZ, US-SANJÂRÎ.

The Ātā-bâk, Īlât-gïz, was a slave of Sultan Sanjar's, and he was possessed of great strength and nobility of mind. Having brought the territory of Āzarbâjân under his sway, he performed many great acts; and many monuments of his goodness still remain in that country.

to the Ātā-bâks, whatever may be the value of what he says about Hindûstân. As the other slaves, who were appointed rulers at the same time, are not mentioned by our author, I need not refer to them here. 8 The Ātā-bâk, Īlât-gîz [or Īlât-gîz, t and d being interchangeable], was the slave of Kamâl-ud-Dîn, 'Alî, Samairâmî, the Wâzîr of Sultan Mâhmûd, son of Sultan Mûhammâd, son of Sultan Mâhâmîd Shâh. [See note 6, page 146. As the author leaves out Mâhmûd's reign, it is not surprising that he makes errors with respect to Īlât-gîz.] Samairâm is one of the dependencies of Iṣfâhân, and is said to have been founded by Sâm, the son of Nûh [Noah], who gave it the name of Sâm-Ārâm—Sâm's resting-place [or place of rest]—but, from constant use, in course of time, the name got corrupted into Samairâm. After the Wâzîr, Kamâl-ud-Dîn, was put to death, in the month of Şafar, 516 H., Īlât-gîz became the servant of Sultan Mâhmûd, during whose reign he rose to the highest rank and dignity, and great power. Mâhmûd gave the widow of his brother Tughîrîl, the mother of Arsalân Shâh [see page 165, where the author falls into utter confusion: this note tends to throw some light upon his statements there], in marriage to Īlât-gîz, and bestowed upon him the government of Āzarbâjân. He became very powerful, and annexed Ganjâh and Shîrwân to his territory. He set up Arsalân Shâh, son of Tughîrîl, his wife's son, as sovereign, and, at once, assumed the entire direction of affairs, and all the power, Arsalân possessing nothing of sovereignty except the bare name. Īlât-gîz died at Hamadân, according to Fâşîh-i, in 567 H., but some say in 569 H. In 557 H., an army of 30,000 Gurjîs [Georgians] invaded Āzarbâjân, destroyed the city of Dû-în, and slew 10,000 Musalmânîs, carried off a number of captives, and burnt the great Masjîd. SAMS-ud-Dîn, Īlât-gîz, took the field with 50,000 horse, at Tâbrîz, in order to aid the ruler of Akhlat and the lord of Marâghâh, and to revenge this invasion, which he effected in the following year.
The Almighty gave him worthy and accomplished sons; and he carried on wars with the infidels of Afranj and Karkh, and reduced the country, as far as the frontiers of Rüm, under his subjection, and conquered a great part of 'Irāḳ. He died after reigning a considerable time.

II. THE ATĀ-BAK, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF ĪLATT-GIZ.

The Atā-bak, Muḥammad, was a great monarch, and succeeded his father on the throne. He took possession of the territories of 'Irāḳ and Āzarbājān, and performed many illustrious deeds. He was just and of implicit faith, he founded colleges and masjids, and undertook many expeditions against the unbelievers. He likewise performed many gallant exploits in the direction of Karkh, and reduced the territory, as far as the frontiers of Rüm and Shām, under his sway.

He reigned for a considerable period, and had slaves who attained great eminence and grandeur, who, after him, took possession of the territories of 'Irāḳ, such as I-taghmish, and Ada-mish, and others besides them, the whole of which they held up to the time of Khwārazm Shāh, when the territories of 'Irāḳ passed out of their hands, and they died.

In the length of his reign, his justice, and his beneficence, the Atā-bak, Muḥammad, was a second Sanjar.

9 Īladd-giz was succeeded as Atā-bak by his son, Jahān Pahlawān, Muḥammad, by the widow of Sultan Tūghril, and half-brother of Arsalān Shāh. The latter having died in 571 H., the Atā-bak set Arsalān's son, Tūghril, a child in his seventh year, upon the throne of 'Irāḳ; but he was a mere puppet, and, except in name, the Atā-bak was sovereign. Jahān Pahlawān then despatched his full brother, Ḵazīl-Arsalān, as his deputy, to Āzarbājān. Jahān Pahlawān died at Rai in 582 H. There is a good deal of discrepancy among authors as to the dates of the deaths of these two Atā-baks.

1 As the Atā-bak, Muḥammad, Jahān Pahlawān, had several sons, who succeeded to his territories, the mention of his "slaves," who held them "up to the time of Khwārazm Shāh," is, like many other statements of our author, inexplicable. No other writer makes such a statement.

2 The Atā-bak, Īladd-giz, died in 567 H., some say in 568 H., and others, 569 H. He held sway about 35 years. The Atā-bak, Muḥammad, who, our author says, was "a second Sanjar in length of reign," only held power from the date of his father's death, until 582 H., just 15 years. He has confounded the father with the son.
III. THE ATĀ-BAK, YŪZ-BAK, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, US-SANJARĪ.

The Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, was sovereign of Āzarbāijān. Some have said that he was the brother of the Atā-bak, Muḥammad, son of the Atā-bak, Ilatt-giz, the Sanjarī.

Yūz-bak was a man of energy and experience, and reigned over the territory of Āzarbāijān for a considerable time.

An absurd way of writing history, when he is not even certain of the names and descent of the people he pretends to write about, who flourished only a short time before he compiled his work. The Atā-bak, Jahān Pahlawān, Muḥammad, was succeeded by his brother, ʿKazīl-ʿArslān, not by Yūz-bak. At the decease of the former, ʿKazīl presented himself before Sultān Tūghrīl, in expectation that he would permit him to act as his Atā-bak; but he, having experienced severity from Jahān Pahlawān, and having now grown older, was not inclined to have another master, and would not consent. ʿKazīl, becoming hopeless of gaining his object, retired into Āzarbāijān, and rebelled; but was defeated in an engagement with Tūghrīl's partisans. In 583 H., ʿKazīl had gained sufficient strength to be able to renew hostilities; and, in 586 H., he made Tūghrīl prisoner, with his son, named Malik Shāh, and immured them in a strong fortress in Āzarbāijān, and ʿKazīl-ʿArslān assumed independent sovereignty. ʿKazīl-ʿArslān was assassinated by the disciples of the Mulāhidāh in 587 H., after reigning five years. See pages 165 and 166.

He was succeeded by his nephew, Nuṣrāt-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bīkīr, the son of Jahān Pahlawān, in the territory of Āzarbāijān only, and ʿIrāk passed to his brother, Kutlāgh ʿInānāj. In 587 H., the year after Abū-Bīkīr's death, Sultān Tūghrīl effected his escape from imprisonment, and succeeded in reaching ʿIrāk. Kutlāgh ʿInānāj, after marrying his mother to Tūghrīl, combined with her to administer poison to Tūghrīl in his food; but, having received a warning, Tūghrīl compelled his wife to take it, upon which she almost immediately died. Kutlāgh ʿInānāj was imprisoned for a time, but was subsequently set at liberty. He went to the Court of Takīsh, Sultān of Khwārazm, and brought him with an army upon Tūghrīl, and, in a battle which took place between them, Tūghrīl was slain, and the first dynasty of the Saljūḳs terminated. This will throw some light upon the almost unintelligible and confused account given by our author respecting the reign of Sultān Tūghrīl, at page 166, and the very romantic, but not very authentic account of his death. It will be noticed that, up to this time, even the Atā-baks were nominally but the ministers of the Saljūḳ sovereigns, and not “great monarchs” who ascended “thrones,” as our author asserts.

The Atā-bak, ʿŪz-bak, or Yūz-bak [the name is written both ways], son of Jahān Pahlawān, was the last of the Atā-baks of Āzarbāijān, and succeeded Nuṣrāt-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bīkīr, in the government of that territory. He was the Atā-bak whose city of Tabrīz, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the last of the Khwārazmī Sultāns, invested. Yūz-bak had left it, and had placed his consort in charge; and she, having fallen in love with Jalāl-ud-Dīn, became his wife, and surrendered the city to him. Yūz-bak died of grief and chagrin. For an account of this circumstance, see the reign of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Section XVI.
He continued in possession of it until the reign of Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. Upon several occasions the forces of Khwārazm Shāh were appointed to act against him, but he did not fall into their hands, until he advanced into 'Irāk, being eager for the possession of Isfahān, and hostilities were going on between him and the Atā-bak of Fārs, Sa'd [son of Zangi].

Unexpectedly, Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, came upon them. The Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, was defeated and completely overthrown, and Āzarbāijān passed out of his possession, and he died.

IV. THE ATĀ-BAK, ABŪ-BIKR, SON OF MUḤAMMAD.

The Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, was a great monarch; and the territory of 'Irāk, and the Jībāl [the mountain tracts of 'Irāk] came into his possession. He ruled his subjects justly and beneficently, and cleared the frontiers of his territory of enemies. He founded colleges and masjids in 'Irāk, Arrān, and Āzarbāijān, and a very large college at Marāghah; and was the patron of ecclesiastics and learned men. He had numerous slaves, both of his father's and of his own, each of whom was Malik [ruler] in one of the cities of 'Irāk. He was the elder brother of the Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, and he reigned for a considerable time, and died, leaving no children behind him.

SECOND DYNASTY.

THE SANJARIYAH MALIKS OF FĀRS.

I. THE ATĀ-BAK, SANKUR 4, US-SANJARI.

As soon as the throne of Fārs 5 was conferred upon the Atā-bak, Sanḵur, by Sultan Sanjar, Sanḵur brought that

4 Guzīdah says that Ak-Sankur [turned into "Ascansar" by Gibbon], who held Ḥalab of Sultan Malik Shāh, is the progenitor of these Atā-baks of Fārs.
5 We now come to the Atā-baks of Fārs, whom our author continually styles "great monarchs," who ascended thrones, although, at the very outset, he says the brothers' sons of Sanjar retained the title of Bāḏghā. He begins with the Atā-bak, Sanḵur, and would lead his readers to imagine that he was the first of the rulers of Fārs who bore that title, and that Sultan Sanjar bestowed the
territory under subjection, and acted with justice and beneficence to the people under his sway.

On the death of Sultan Sanjar, some of the brothers' sons of that monarch came into the territory of Fars from 'Irāḵ. Sanḵur sent them to Iṣṭakẖur, in that territory, sovereignty of that territory upon him, as he did upon others of his slaves. Such, however, is not the case. The Atā-baks of Fars were of the race of Salghur, a Turkmān chief, who, about the time of the great movement of the Saljuḵs towards Khurāsān, made raids into that territory, and committed great ravages, until the Saljuḵs became complete masters of it, when that chieftain is said to have taken service under Sultan Tughril Beg, and Salghur and his tribe took up their quarters in Fars, Khuzistān, Luristan, and parts adjacent. From the downfall of the Dālamah dynasty to the rise to independent sovereignty of the Sanḵurfah, of whom our author's Sanḵur is the first, seven persons ruled over Fars, six of whom were governors on the part of the Saljuḵ sovereigns. The first of these was Fazl, son of Hasan, who in 459 ḫ., after Alb-Arsalan, the previous year, had inflicted chastisement upon the Shabankarah, seized Mansūr-i-Fulān [Pillar of Steel], who reduced the power of the Shabankārāh. He was succeeded in the government by the Atā-bak, Jawlī [also written Chawli], who reduced the power of the Shabankārāh. He was succeeded by the Atā-bak, Karajah, who was slain at Hamadān [Guzidah says in Fars]. He was followed by the Atā-bak, Mangū [also called Mangūs], his son. Subsequently, the Atā-bak, Būzābāh [also written Fūzābāh, being interchangeable with it], was made governor by Sultan Mas'ūd, son of Muḥammad, son of Malik Shāh, Saljuḵī. He rebelled against Mas'ūd, son of Maḥmūd, and was taken in an engagement with him, and put to death in 542 ḫ. After this, Sultan Mas'ūd made his brother's son, Malik Shāh [Guzidah says, Muḥammad], ruler of Fars. He was a youth wholly given to pleasure; and, after a time, he put to death, without cause, the Atā-bak [his own Atā-bak in all probability], Salghur. On this, Sanḵur-Tigīn, son of Mawdī, son of Zangi, son of Ak-Sanḵur, son of Salghur, rose against Malik Shāh, and expelled him from the territory of Fars. Malik Shāh went to his uncle's court, obtained assistance, and again entered Fars, but was unable to effect any thing; and, in 543 ḫ., Sanḵur assumed independent sovereignty. The account given in Guzidah is somewhat different, but to the same purpose. It says,"Būzābāh, having rebelled against Sultan Mas'ūd in 541 ḫ., was defeated before Hamadān, taken prisoner, and put to death in 543 ḫ. The brother's son of Būzābāh, Sanḵur, son of Mauḏūd, in revenge for his uncle's death, seized upon the territory of Fars." All these events took place in Sanjar's lifetime. Sanḵur assumed the title of Muqaffar-ud-Dīn, and ruled for a period of thirteen years, and died in 556 ḫ. He was succeeded, not by his son, but by his brother, Tuklah. It must be borne in mind that all these Atā-baks were, more or less, subject to the successors of Sultan Sanjar, while the dynasty lasted. Mas'ūd died in 547 ḫ., and Malik Shāh succeeded. See latter part of previous note, and note 6 page 146, and note 6, page 151.

The constant recurrence, throughout the work, of this stock phrase of our author's, may be partly accounted for from the fact that confusion, more or less, arose on the death of each ruler.
and assigned a stipend, and furnished them with all things necessary for their support. Those princes were allowed to retain the empty title of Badshah, whilst Sankur, under the name of Ata-bak [guardian and preceptor], ruled over the territory of Fārs. He reigned for a lengthened period, and died.

II. THE ATA-BAK, ZANGI?, SON OF SANKUR.

The Ata-bak, Zangi, ascended the throne of Fārs after the death of his father. He was a great monarch, and was just, and ruled with a firm hand; and he brought the dominions of his father under his control and government.

With respect to the rulers of the countries around, he guided his policy as the circumstances of the times rendered feasible; and he held the sovereignty of Fārs for a long period, and died.

III. THE ATA-BAK, DUKLAH, SON OF SANKUR.

The Ata-bak, Duklah, after the decease of his brother, ascended the throne of Fārs. He was an energetic and rigorous monarch, and brought the territory of Fārs under his control.

Hostilities broke out between him and the Maliks of 'Irāk; and he collected together, from all parts of the country, a vast quantity of material and munitions, the like of which, to such an amount of wealth and treasure, none of his predecessors in the rule of Fārs had ever possessed.

He reigned for a long time, and died.

7. Our author here again has made a great blunder. There were two Zangi's and two Tuklahs [or Duklahs, d being interchangeable with t]. The first, according to the Muntakhāb-ut-Tawārīkh, Sankur's brother, Tuklah, having become suspicious of his brother's intentions, retired among the Faqīh-Salāhs. The chief rendered Tuklah assistance, and he, one night, suddenly fell upon Sankur by surprise, seized him, and immured him in the Kala'i-Safid. Tuklah then assumed the authority, and held it four years. He died in 553 H.; after which Sankur again obtained power, and in 556 H. he died. He was succeeded by his brother, Zangi, son of Maudūd.

8. Zangi, son of Maudūd, only reigned for a short period, and died in the following year, 557 H. He was succeeded by his son [not his brother: our author confounds the two Tuklahs into one], Tuklah, or Duklah, as our author now states. He was confirmed in possession of Fārs by Sultan Arsalān, son of Tughril, son of Muhammad, son of Malik Shāh.

9. Tuklah died in 590 H., but the Muntakhāb-ut-Tawārīkh says in 591 H.
IV. THE ATĀ-BAK, SA'D, SON OF ZANGĪ.

The Atā-bak, Sa'd, was a great monarch, and ascended the throne of Fārs after the decease of his uncle [the Ata-bak, Duklah], and brought the different parts of that country under his rule, in the manner which has been described.

He was a most just and intrepid sovereign; and trustworthy authorities have related this, that the weight of his arms and armour was so great, that a powerful man could not lift from the ground the armour he used to wear.

He led armies against ′Irāk upon several occasions, and in some engagements he was victorious; but, in others again, he was defeated, as happened when a battle took place between him and Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, undesignedly, and in the following manner. The Atā-bak, Sa'd, was marching an army into ′Irāk, with the object of capturing Iṣfahān; and the Ata-bak, Yūz-bak, son of the Ata-bak, Muḥammad, had come out of Āzarbājīān also, with the object of gaining possession of that city.

The two armies, of Fārs and of Āzarbājīān, were marching towards the same point from opposite directions, when Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, arrived [with an army] upon the frontier of ′Irāk. He obtained information that the Ata-bak, Sa'd, was marching an army from Fārs, towards the gate of Iṣfahān, in order to give battle to the Ata-bak, Yūz-bak, and he [Sulṭān Muḥammad] advanced with his troops towards the Ata-bak, Sa'd.

When the troops of Khwārazm Shāh came in sight, the Ata-bak, Sa'd, imagined that this was the army of the Ata-

---

1 Duklah was succeeded by his cousin, the Ata-bak, Tughril, brother of Zangi, and son of Sanḵur, son of Maudūd, son of Zangi, son of Ak-Sanḵur, the other brother of the first ruler; and hostilities went on between him and Sa'd, son of Zangi, for a considerable time, during which Fārs suffered great desolation. At length Tughril was taken captive by Sa'd, who deprived him of his sight, and immured him within the walls of the fortress of Iṣṭāḵur, where he died, 599 H. He was succeeded by Sa'd, son of Zangi, son of Maudūd, who is fourth according to our author.

2 Not mentioned in any other place in the work.

3 Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad.

4 The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārisḥ and Jahān-Āra say this affair took place on the confines of Rāi.
bak, Yüz-bak, and at once marshalled his ranks in order, and attacked the Sultan's army, and threw it into confusion. Suddenly, one of the champions of Khwārzm Shāh's army joined spears with him; and the name of that champion was Kashkah, who was the [Sultan's] Amir-i-Ākhūr [lord of the stables]. The champion hurled the horse of Sa'd to the ground, and wanted to slay him; but the Ata-bak cried out to him:—"I am the Ata-bak, Sa'd; do not slay me. Say, Whose army is yours?" The champion replied:—"The army of Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārzm Shāh." The Ata-bak rejoined:—"Take me to the Sultan's presence."

On reaching the Sultan's presence, Sa'd kissed the ground, and said:—"King of the Universe, by the great God, this your servant knew not that this was the king's army, otherwise he would never have drawn his sword." The Sultan comforted and encouraged him, and forthwith had him remounted; and, on account of what had reached the ears of the Sultan respecting the great energy, manliness, and intrepidity, of the Ata-bak, Sa'd, he treated him with honour and reverence, and restored to him the dominion of Fārs, upon this stipulation—that one half of that territory should be held by the Maliks, or great nobles, and trusty retainers of the Khwārzm Shāhi dynasty, and the other half should belong to the Ata-bak.

The Sultan likewise appointed a force to accompany him, for this reason, that, on the Ata-bak, Sa'd, having been taken prisoner, his son, the Ata-bak, Abū-Bikr, had taken possession of the territory of Fārs, and had read the Khutbah in his own name.

When the Ata-bak, Sa'd, with the forces of Khwārzm Shāh, and the Sāhib [lord] Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Amir-i-Ḥājī, who was despatched along with Sa'd by Khwārzm Shāh,

---

5 In some few copies Kashīf, in others Kashīfī.

6 In the year 603 H., Sa'd was taken prisoner on the confines of Rai by the troops of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Khwārzm Shāh. He was released on the stipulation "that he should pay four dangs [a dang is the fourth part of a dram, and the meaning here signifies a fourth part of any thing: some writers say a third] of the revenue of Fārs and 'Irāq, which he appears to have then held, into the Sultan's treasury," and, upon these terms, he was allowed to retain these territories. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh calls the Sultan by the title of Kutb-ud-Dīn, and says that Sa'd was released on the intercession of the Malik of Zawzan.
reached the frontier of Fārs, the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, advanced to oppose them, and the father and son came to blows. The Atā-bak, Sa’d, wounded his son, Abū-Bikr, in the face with his sword, and the ranks of the Fārsi army became disorganized.

The Atā-bak, Sa’d, again ascended the throne of Fārs, and imprisoned his son. After this, Sa’d reigned for a considerable period over [half of?] that territory, and died after the misfortunes attending the irruption of the infidel Mughals.

The Atā-bak, Sa’d, was endowed with many distinguished virtues, and excellent qualities. In the first place, the flag, which, every year, he used to send along with the caravan of pilgrims on the journey to the Ka’bah [at Makkah], when the pilgrims returned, he used to have kept constantly set up before the entrance of his palace or pavilion; and, every time he came to the hall of audience, or his private apartments, he used to perform a prayer of two genuflexions under the flag in question, after which he would mount his throne. This circumstance indicates how excellent was his faith; but, respecting his ostentation and pomp, a trustworthy person has related, that the revenues of one of the provinces of the territory of Fārs was set apart for the expenses of his own wardrobe. The revenue of the province in question amounted, every year, to three hundred and sixty thousand golden dinārs, and, every day, one thousand dinārs of red gold used to be expended upon his attire, in the shape of head-dresses, tunics, mantles, robes, and expensive fabrics, girdles, jewel-studded collars, and the like.

If any surplus remained over and above the necessary expenses of his wardrobe, he would purchase therewith

---

7 Sa’d died at Baiza in 625 H., but the Muntakahut-Tawāriḵh says his death happened in 628 H., which is evidently incorrect. His Wazīr, Khwājah Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, kept his death secret, and sent Sa’d’s signet-ring to the Kala’-i-Saffād, and released Sa’d’s son, Abū Bikr, who had been confined in that fortress for a considerable time, had him brought into the pavilion, and then said, as though Sa’d were still alive, “The Atā-bak is pleased to command the Atā-bak, Abū Bikr, is his heir,” and he succeeded accordingly. The Muntakahut-Tawāriḵh says that Abū-Bikr was confined in the fortress of Ištākhr. Guzīdah, on the other hand, says that, when Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the last of the Khwārazm Shāhīs, entered Fārs, on his return from Hind, he set Abū-Bikr at liberty. Yāfā-ī says much the same.

8 I rather expect this is much more than all the revenues of Fārs at present.
valuable gems and jewels, which used to be arranged about his head-dress, his tunic, and girdle. He never wore a suit but one day; the next day he would invest one of his nobles or grandees with it. May the Almighty have mercy upon him, and pardon his sins!

V. THE ATĀ-BAK, ABŪ-BIKR, SON OF SA’D.

The Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, is a great monarch, and he has brought under his sway the territories of Fārs.

When the Atā-bak, Sa’d, was sent back again to ascend the throne of Fārs by Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, under the agreement that one half the territory of Fārs should remain in the possession of Sa’d, and the other half be held by the Sulṭān, the latter despatched [a body of troops] along with the Atā-bak, Sa’d, under the Amīr-i-Ḥāji, Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Niṣḥāpūrī, to enable Sa’d to re-possess himself of that half.

The Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, and his two brothers, Tahamtn and Sankur Shāh, with the troops of Fārs, advanced against their father, determined that they would not give up their dominions into the hands of their enemies. When the battle on both sides had been duly ordered, the Atā-bak, Sa’d, issued from the ranks of his forces, while his son, the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, came forth from the ranks of the troops of Fārs to encounter his father. Sa’d struck and wounded his son in the face with his sword, [and, seeing this,] the ranks of the Fārsi army gave way. Sa’d took his son, Abū-Bikr, prisoner, and put him in confinement.

When Sa’d departed this life, they brought forth Abū-Bikr from his place of confinement, and raised him to the throne of Fārs; and he brought under his rule the territories of his father, and his grandfather, and chastised his enemies.

After some time, he sent an army towards the sea [of Fārs], and took the capital of the country of Kīsh.
[together with] Bahrain and Hurmüz. He also despatched one of his brothers to the infidel Mughals, and entered into a treaty of peace with that race. He engaged to pay tribute and revenue to them, and brought reproach and dishonour upon himself by becoming a tributary of the infidels of Chin⁴, and became hostile to the Där-ul-Khilāfat.

Up to the time this history was written, affairs are in this state⁶. May the Almighty God continue the Sultan of the Sultāns of Islām, and the great nobles and lords of his Court, in sovereignty, and in rendering bounden duty to the Där-ul-Khilāfat, and the house of 'Abbās, for the sake of Muḥammad, his family, and the whole of his companions and friends!

THIRD DYNASTY.

THE SANJARIYAH MALIKS OF NĪSHĀPŪR.

I. MALIK MU-AYYID, US-SANJARI.

Malik Mu-ayyid was a slave of Sultan Sanjar's, and a Turk⁷. He held the government of the territory of

island, in the sea of Fārs, called Hurmüz; and is said to be so called from its resemblance, when viewed from the hills, to a quiver for arrows, which Kish signifies. The word is sometimes spelt Kish, and sometimes Kesh. See note ⁴, p. 46.

⁵ At the time of the interregnum after the death of Changiz Khān, Abī- Bīkr sent his brother, Tahamtan, to the presence of Üktāe Khān with rich presents, and received from him a charter, and the title of Kūdlaḵ Khān. He likewise obtained a charter from Hulāḵū Khān, and reigned for a period of thirty-three years.

⁶ The Ata-bak, Abī-Bīkr, died in 558 H., the very year in which our author completed his History. The dynasty did not terminate for several years after; and three persons, including a female, ruled over the territory remaining to them, tributary to the Mughals, until 685 H.

⁷ The first of the Mu-ayyidīah dynasty was Mu-ayyid-ud-Dīn, who was one of the slaves of Sultān Sanjar. As he was the Ā’īnah-dār, or mirror-bearer, to that monarch, he became known by the name of Mu-ayyid-i-Ā’īnāh. After Sultān Sanjar's death, he for a short time pretended to be obedient to Rukn-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, the son of Muḥammad Khān, son of Bughra Khān, who had married Sanjar's sister, who, when Sanjar fell into the hands of the Ghuzz tribe, was raised to sovereignty in Khurāsān; but he soon threw off his disguise, and, having seized Maḥmūd, in the fifth year of his sovereignty, deprived him of his sight, and assumed the sovereignty over the tract of territory extending from Hirāt to Rai. In 569 H., he undertook an expedition against Māzandarān, and made great bloodshed and devastation therein. He subsequently
Nishāpūr, and the parts adjacent, such as Jām, Bākhurz, Shangān, Sabrās*, Jā-jurm, Shāristānah, Khūjān, and other cities and towns which are dependencies of Nishāpūr.

He was a Malik of good disposition; and, when the Sanjari dynasty passed away, Malik Mu-ayyid, the sovereign of Khwārazm, the Maliks of Irāk, and the Sultāns of Ghūr, entered into terms of friendship and amity together for mutual support and security. Under the shelter and support of this arrangement, Malik Mu-ayyid continued for some years, and died.

II. MALIK TUGHĀN SHĀH, SON OF MU-AYYID.

Malik Tughān Shāh was a monarch of blooming prospects, and of handsome person, and greatly addicted to pleasure and gaiety. He used to spend his days in pleasure, in singing, and convivial meetings, along with his confidants and favourites, minstrels and singers and boon companions.

When the territory of Nishāpūr passed from his father under his own control, he entered into relations of amity and dependence towards the neighbouring Maliks and Sultāns, and rendered homage unto them; and, as he was incapable of injuring or molesting them, they all refrained from troubling him.

He passed his whole time in pleasure and jollity, dancing* [but, according to Faṣīḥ-ī, in the same year], in concert with Sultān Shāh, Khwārazmī, the rival of Sultān Takīgh, encountered the latter in battle, was taken prisoner, and put to death by Takīgh. A portion of the territory of Sanjar's nephew, on the usurpation of Mu-ayyid, had passed into the possession of the Khwārazmī sovereign. See reign of Takīgh, V. of the Khwarazm Shāhs.

* Some of these names are rather doubtful. Some copies have Sangān, and Shagān, and Sabrāsh, Bihrās, Sīrān, and Shihrān. Possibly, Sunkhās and Samnakān are meant.

9 The accounts of other writers differ considerably from our author's as to this prince and his doings. Tughān Shāh, in 576 H., fought a battle with Sultān Shāh, the Khwārazmī, and rival of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Takīgh, near Saraḵhs, after Sultān Shāh had returned from Gūr Khān's territory, whither he had fled after his previous defeat in which Tughān's father was made prisoner. Tughān was routed, and sought protection from Sultān Takīgh, and also from the sovereign of Ghūr, but without avail; and Sultān Shāh possessed himself of Tūs and Saraḵhs. Tughān died in 581 H.
and wine-drinking; and, for the sake of his own pleasure and merriment, he had the sleeves of his vest made each about ten ells in length, to which small golden bells were fastened, and he would himself join in the dance. He soon took his departure from this world.

III. SANJAR SHAH, SON OF TUGHAN SHAH.

When Tughan Shah ascended the throne of Nishapūr, he entered into connexion with the Maliks of Ghūr, and despatched a confidential agent, and demanded the hand of the daughter of Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad Sām, for his son, Sanjar Shāh. The chief men among the ecclesiastics and theologians of Nishapūr accordingly came [into Ghūr], and the knot of that marriage contract was tied.

When Tughan Shāh died, Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, marched an army from Khwārazm, and advanced to Nishapūr, and possessed himself of that city and territory, seized Sanjar Shāh, and carried him away to Khwārazm. Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din released his daughter, Malikah-i-Jalāli, from her betrothal; and, according to the statement of Imam 3170, he gave her in marriage, in Ghūr, to Malik 'Ala-ud-Din. Sanjar Shāh died in Khwārazm.

1 Sanjar Shāh succeeded to his father’s territory; and Manguli Beg, a slave of his grandfather’s, through the youthfulness of Sanjar, acquired the whole power, and was in consequence put to death by Sultan Takish. After this, Takish married Sanjar’s mother, and gave a daughter of his own to Sanjar in marriage. In 591 H., Sanjar was accused of meditating rebellion, and was deprived of his sight. He died in 595 H., and his territory was taken possession of by the Khwārazm Shāh sovereign.

2 A title, not her name.

3 In three copies Ziya-ud-Din.
SECTION XIV.
THE MALIKS OF SIJISTAN AND NIMROZ.

As this Tabakat¹ is being written in the name of the great Sultan, the king of kings [over] both Turk and 'Ajam, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muẓaffar, Maḥmūd, son of Sultan I- yal-timīsh—May his sovereignty endure!—and, as an account of all rulers and their Tabakat is being penned, the author, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jirjani, would state that he desires, to the extent of his capability, to commit to writing what has come to his hearing, and what he has himself seen respecting the Maliks of Nimroz.

They were able and just monarchs, virtuous, and cherishers of the indigent, whose country, from the Sanjari era up to this time, when the territories of Irān have, through the cruelty and rapine of the infidels of Chin, become ruined, was adorned by the grandeur, the justice, the munificence, and the nobility of mind of those monarchs, and, therefore, the author desires that he himself, and those Maliks, may continue to call forth the favourable mention of those under whose notice this [account] may come, and, that a benediction may be offered for the sovereign of the present time.

The origin and lineage of these rulers from the previous Amirs, did not seem clearly deducible in History².

¹ The word Tabakat being a portion of the title of the original work, it has been used here, for convenience, in the singular form, although really the plural of Tabakats.

² As in scores of other places, our author is also very incorrect here. He has already given us a Section on the Suffarīāns of Sijistān or Nimroz, and has mentioned the names of the other sons of Laīg, the Brazier; but he does not appear to have known that the descendants of 'Umro, son of Laīg, subsequent to his captivity, ruled over Fārs [for a time] and Sijistān, although these events took place some three centuries before our author composed his work. There is consequently an hiatus of the reigns and struggles of no less than six princes of this family, and the events of just one century are entirely passed over; and two Sections are given, and two dynasties made, of one and the same family, whatever claims Khalaf may have had to descent from the Kai-
I. TĀHIR, SON OF MUḤAMMAD.

Trustworthy persons have related, that, when the dominion and sovereignty of the Māhmūdī dynasty passed ānfāns. Our author appears here to greater disadvantage, as an historian, than even in his accounts of the Saljūqs and the Kurds, which are sufficiently incorrect.

I will here briefly supply an account of the Ṣūffārfāns, passed over by our author, in order to make the subject intelligible to the reader.

When 'Umro, son of Lāiṣ, was defeated under the walls of Balkh by Iṣmā'īl, Sāmānī, in 287 h., as related at page 25, his grandson, TĀHIR, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Umro, was set up as his successor. His career was a chequered one. He at first possessed himself of Fārs, and drove out the Khalīfah's officers, but was subsequently obliged to relinquish it. Subsequently, however, the administration of the affairs of Fārs was conferred upon him by the Court of Baghdād; but, shortly after, a slave of his grandfather's rose against him, in that territory.

[In nearly every history in which this slave is referred to, his name is said to be Saīkžī, Sabkrī, Sankrī, and the like; but further research, since note ⁴, page 34, was written, tends to show that this could not have been intended for the name of the slave, but of his race. He was a Sigizī, one of a people often mentioned in the following pages. "Sigiz, and Sigizī, is the name of a lofty mountain [range of hills?] in Zābulistān, and the people dwelling thereabout are called after that mountain, Sigizīs and Sigizīfān. Rustam-i-Zāl is also called Sigizī on the same account. Some consider, however, that the meaning of Sigizī is Sīstānī, because the 'Arabs change the g into j, and call Sīstān, which is the proper name of that country, Sājistān, and Sigizī, by the same fashion, Sījizī." The Sigizīs are not Afghāns, so must not be turned into Pāṭāns, but there is a small tribe of that people called Sekarī.]

A battle took place between Tāhir and the Sigizī slave, and Tāhir was worsted, and fell into the hands of the rebel, who sent him, together with his brother Ya'qūb, to Bagdad, through which city they were paraded on a camel [one author says on two elephants]. This happened in the year 293 h., and Tāhir died after having ruled for a period of six years. Some say he died in 296 h.

On this, in the same year, LĀIṢ, son of 'Alī, entered Fārs [from Sijistān], and the rebel Sigizī slave fled; but, being supported by an army sent by the Khalīfah under his general, Mūnis-i-Khādīm, he was enabled to march against Lāiṣ. Although Lāiṣ made a gallant and vigorous dash upon their forces near Ujān, he was unsuccessful, and fell a captive into their hands, and the Sigizī again acquired possession of Fārs. Soon after, however, the Khalīfah had to despatch Mūnis into Fārs again, as the Sigizī withheld the revenue [the Khalīfah's share], which amounted to 400,000 dirams. The Sigizī now offered to pay 1,000,000 dirams, but this offer was not accepted, and, after several encounters with Muḥammad, son of Ja'far, the Khalīfah's general, the Sigizī fled to the fortress of Bamm, in Kirmān; but, as he was followed by that officer, he fled from Bamm, and retired into the wilds of Khurāsān; and Muḥammad was entrusted with the administration of the affairs of Fārs and Kirmān.
over to the family of Saljük, the nobles who were exercising authority in the country of Sijistân acquired power, and,

In that same year, Abû Naṣr-i-Âḥmad, Sâmâni, took possession of Sijistân, and, as he had succeeded in making prisoner of Muḥammad, son of 'Ali, brother of Ya'ḳûb, 'Umro, and Mu'addil, sons of Laiş, and the Sigizi also, they were despatched to Baghdâd, by the Khalifâh's directions, and entered it paraded on elephants; and rich presents were sent by the Khalifâh to the Sâmâni prince, in return for this service.

In 299 H. [some say in 298 H.], Laïs, son of 'Ali, died in Fârs, and his brother, Mu'addil, assumed the sovereignty over Sijistân, and drove out the Sâmâni governor, Abû Ṣâliḥ-i-Manṣûr, Sâmâni, cousin of Amîr Abû Naṣr-i-Âḥmad, on which, the latter despatched a large army under some of his greatest nobles, such as Ḥusain 'Alî, Marw-ar-Rûdî, Âḥmad, son of Sahl, Muḥammad, son of Muẓaffar, Simjûr-i-Dowâtî, &c. Mu'addil, on becoming apprized of this, sent his brother Muḥammad for supplies, to enable him to stand a siege, into Zamîn-i-Dâwâr; but, as he happened to fall into the hands of the Sâmâni forces, Mu'addil, on receipt of the news of this disaster, came and surrendered on terms to those leaders, and was taken to Bukhârâ, from whence he was sent to Baghdâd. See page 34.

In the year 300 H., 'Umro, son of Ya'ḳûb, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Umro, son of Laïs-i-Ṣûfâr, rose in Sijistân, and assumed the sovereignty. Amîr Abû Naṣr-i-Âḥmad, Sâmâni, again despatched a force under Ḥusain 'Alî, Marw-ar-Rûdî, against him. After defending the capital for a period of nine months, 'Umro surrendered on terms of capitulation, and the territory of Nimroz received a Sâmâni governor.

In the year 309 H., Âḥmad, said by Guzîdah to have been the grandson of Tâhir, but by others to have been the son of Muḥammand, son of Khalaf, son of Abû Ja'far, son of Laïs [which Laïs is not mentioned, but, if the Brazier be meant, Abû Ja'far must have been a grandson, but no doubt he was a grandson], who was living in great distress and misery at Hirât, chanced to come under the notice of Amir Abî-l-Hasan-i-Nâṣr, son of Âḥmad, the fifth of the Sâmâni rulers, who bestowed upon Ahmad-i-Ṣûfâr the government of Fasîh-î, among the occurrences of the year 310 H., says, that by command of the Khalifâh, Al-Muktadir, honorary dresses were bestowed upon Tâhir and Ya'ḳûb, sons of 'Umro, Laïs; but this must refer to Laïs, son of 'Alî, son of Laïs the Brazier, as Tâhir, son of 'Umro, the second of the dynasty, died at Baghdâd many years previous to this. In 311 H., according to Fasîh-î, Shâh Malik, son of Ya'ḳûb-i-Laïs, Šûfârî, with a body of Sigizâs, attempted to gain possession of Hirât, but after a time left, and proceeded to Fûghânî. He returned to the Daqht of Malân of Hirât again, and invested Hirât for four months, but had to abandon it, and he and his party retired discomfited. Simjûr held Hirât on that occasion.

Âḥmad was succeeded as ruler of Sijistân by his son, Khalaf, but the date of the former's death or the latter's accession is not mentioned—it was probably in 331 H.—but, in 353 H., Khalaf set out on a pilgrimage to Makkah, leaving as his deputy, his son-in-law, Tâhir, son of Al-Ḥusain, to administer the government of Sijistân. Tâhir coveted his dominions, and, when Khalaf returned from the pilgrimage, he would not allow him to resume his authority. Khalaf proceeded to the Court of Manṣûr, son of Nûḥ, Sâmâni, the eighth of that dynasty, who sent a force with Khalaf, which, after ousting Tâhir and reinstating Khalaf, returned to Bukhârâ.
having tendered their allegiance to the Sultans, Alb-Arsalân and Malik Shâh, the states of Nimroz came under their sway, and they took possession of those territories.

Tahir now returned, and again dispossessed Khalaf, who, a second time, received aid from Mansûr, Sâmâni; but, by the time the Sâmâni forces reached Sistân, Tahir was dead, and Hüsain, his son, had succeeded to the authority. After considerable fighting, Hüsain retired to one of the fortresses of that territory, and was therein invested. He despatched an envoy to Amîr Mansûr's presence, who sent a mandate directing him to appear before him, and so Hüsain was allowed to proceed to Bukhârâ. This was at a period when the Sâmâni power was much weakened, and in the same year that Is-hâk, son of Alb-Tigin, the Turk, encountered Abû-Alî-i-Lawîk, previously ruler of Ghaznîn.

Nothing more is mentioned about Khalaf except his rebellion against Nûb, Sâmâni, and the seven years' investment of his capital, until the year 390 H., in which year, Bughrajak, the uncle of Maḥmûd of Ghaznîn, was slain by Khalaf's son, Tahir, at Fûşhanj. On this, Maḥmûd marched against Khalaf, who retired for shelter within the walls of the fortress of Taḵ, and he was invested therein. In 393 H., Khalaf again withdrew from public life, and gave up the government of Sijistân to his son Tahir, but, soon after, he regretted what he had done, resumed the authority, and put his son Tahir to death. Some say he put two sons, Tahir and 'Umro, to death with his own hand. This ruined Khalaf's affairs, and his nobles rose against him on account of this abominable conduct; and they invested him in the city which he had made his capital, and read the Khutbah, and coined money in the name of Sultan Maḥmûd of Ghaznîn.

Maḥmûd, on account of this last act of Khalaf, again entered Sijistân, and Khalaf was defeated and retired once more to the fortress of Taḵ, but it was taken by assault and Khalaf was captured. It was on this occasion that Khalaf, when brought before Maḥmûd, addressed him by the name of "Sultân" [see note 8, page 76], and his life was spared. The district of Jûjânân was assigned for his future residence, and, with his family and dependents, he left Sijistân for ever and proceeded thither. Sijistân was conferred by Maḥmûd upon his brother Naṣr, and that territory continued for a considerable time in the possession of the Ghaznawîs.

In 398 H. Khalaf was found to have been intriguing against Maḥmûd with I-lak Khân, ruler of Turkistân, and was, in consequence, confined within the walls of the fortress of Juzdez. He died in the following year; and Maḥmûd directed that his property and effects should be made over to his son, Abû-I-Hîf. Khalaf was a learned and intelligent man, and, by his command, the learned men of his time compiled a commentary on the Kur'ân in one hundred volumes, and at the expense of 100,000 dinârs; yet, with all this, he committed the cruel act of slaying his own sons. See also note 8, p. 76.

The sovereignty of Sijistân, or Nimroz, having been taken from Khalaf, remained in the possession of the kings of Ghaznîn for a considerable time. At length, by the support of the Sultans, Alb-Arsalân, and Malik Shâh, a great grandson of Khalaf, Taḥîr, son of Muḥammad, son of Taḥîr, son of Khalaf, obtained the government of his native country; and the ruler's palace in Sistân is called the Sarâ‘î-Taḥîrî after him. This is the first of the rulers of Nimroz by our author's account, but the sixth of chroniclers of authority, after Yaḵûb an-I 'Umro, the founders of the Šaffârîn dynasty. A few authors
When the throne of sovereignty became adorned by the phoenix-like splendour of Sanjar, the territories of Nimroz passed to Amir Tahir; and, in the service of that monarch, he gave proofs of his loyalty and good faith. The Sarāe-i-Tāhirī, or Tāhirī Palace, in Sīstān, which was the seat of government, was founded by him. He instituted regulations and precepts of government, brought under his control the different districts and dependencies of the country of Nimroz, reigned for a considerable time, and died. These Maliks claimed descent from the race of Kai-Kā'ūs. May the Almighty reward them!

Trustworthy persons have related that Sījistān is called Nimroz for the reason that, in ancient times, the whole of that tract was a sea; and, when Mihtar Sulimān, reclining on the couch which the winds used to bear, had to pass over that country on his way from Fārs to the mountains of Sulimān, which are opposite Multān, he commanded that that sea should be filled with sand. The Dīws, in the space of half a day, completed the task, and the sea became dry land; and the name by which it was called was Nim-roz, signifying mid-day, and that designation continued to be applied to that country. God alone is eternal, and His kingdom only is eternal, without intermission and without wane.

II. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, ABū-L-FATH, SON OF TĀHIR.

Tāj-ud-Dīn was a great and a just monarch, and, when his father departed this life, in conformity with the mandate of Sulṭān Sanjar, Saljūḵī, he assumed authority over the territory of Nimroz, and brought it under his sway. He spread the carpet of justice, and the people became obedient to his authority; and, both in the city and round about Sījistān, numerous monuments of his goodness remained.

mention that some writers consider Khalaf to have been a descendant of the ancient kings of Iran.

3 See the short account of the descent of the Afghāns in the Introduction to my Afghān Grammar, last edition, page 7, respecting Mihtar Sulimān and the Sulimān mountains.

4 Styled Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fażl-i-Naṣr, son of Tāhir, by others. He succeeded to the sovereignty in 480 H. He was just, valiant, and beneficent; and was loyal to the utmost degree towards Sulṭān Sanjar.
He accompanied Sultan Sanjar in the campaign against Khitaé, and took along with him the troops of Sijistán; and, when Sultan Sanjar's army was defeated, Malik Taj-ud-Din, Abü-l-Fath, was taken prisoner. When they had taken him to the place where the camp of the Khita-is was situated, his feet were confined in a pair of wooden stocks* and secured with a heavy chain, and he was kept in imprisonment.

A number of trustworthy persons* have related, that one of the ladies of the Great Khán [of Khita] got a sight of Malik Taj-ud-Din, and, secretly, used to entertain great affection for him, and to have all his wants, and even more, liberally supplied, and have great care and attention paid to him. That lady left not the least thing undone, or a moment to be lost, until, by her endeavours also, Malik Taj-ud-Din was suddenly set at liberty, and was enabled to fly from the camp of the Khita-is; and he brought back his chain and the stocks along with him to Sistán.

The territory of Nimroz, which, during his captivity, had been deprived of his comeliness and munificence, now began to acquire fresh grace and elegance. The stocks and chain, which he had brought away with him [when he escaped], were, by his orders, hung up in the most sacred place in the great mosque [where the Imam stands during the prayers]; and Minhâj-i-Sarâj, the writer of this Tabakât, in the year 613 H., arrived in the city of Sistân*, and, in

---

* This battle having taken place in 534 H. [some say in 536 H.], and Taj-ud-Din being above a hundred when he died in 559 H., he must have been about eighty years of age when taken prisoner.

* "Trustworthy persons" are constantly mentioned by our author, but it is strange that they are nameless.

* I have constantly noticed, in several authors, that, when mentioning the country, the names Nimroz and Sijistán are applied; and that Sistán almost invariably signifies the city, the capital of the country; but I have also noticed that the latter name is sometimes, but not often, applied to the country also. There is one rather astonishing thing, however. Our author invariably says the city of Sistán was the capital; while travellers, such as Pottinger and Christie, and other European authors also, say that Dooghak, or Jalâlâbâd, is the capital. "Who shall decide when doctors disagree?" The author of the Masâlik wa Mamâlik, who visited it before our author wrote, says that Zaranj is the capital, and that there is no city in the territory of Nimroz so large; and, further, describes the buildings and gates and other matters in such manner, that there can be no doubt whatever but that Zaranj was the name of the capital of Sijistán, or Nimroz; and no such city as Sistán is ever mentioned in that work.
the great mosque there, saw that chain and stocks; and whoever may have reached that great city, will also have seen them.

Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Abū-l-Fath, was a learned and enlightened sovereign; and they relate that, sometimes, he would himself read the Friday's Khūṭbāh; and this fact is an indication of the extent of his wisdom and knowledge.

He reigned for a considerable time⁸, and died; and his mausoleum is at Sīstān.

III. MALIK-US-SĀ'ĪS⁹, SHAMS-UD-DĪN MUḤAMMAD, SON OF TĀJ-UD-DĪN.

When Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fath¹, passed away, several sons survived him, and the eldest of them was Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. He succeeded to the sovereignty, and brought the territory of Nimroz under his sway. He deprived one of his brothers, 'Īzz-ul-Mulūk, of his sight, and put the rest of them to death; and he caused a great number of the Amīrs and Maliks of Nimroz and Sīstān to be executed.

He was a sanguinary man, and it is related of him, that, at the outset of his reign, he killed eighteen of his brothers in one day. The royal palace, which he founded in Sīstān, is [on this account] called by the name of Sarāe-i-Sīsātī, or Palace of Slaughter; and, through his excessive murders and executions, the people's hearts became filled with terror.

At the time when the reign of Sultan Sanjar came to a termination, and the territories of Khurasān, Ghaznīn, and Kirmān fell into the hands of the tyrannical tribe of Ghuzz, Malik Shams-ud-Dīn had already established his authority over Nimroz. On several occasions the Ghuzz forces resolved to subvert his rule, but they did not succeed in their design.

The grandfather of the author of this work, Maulana

⁸ He died in 559 H., after having reigned over Nimroz, subordinate to the Saljūk Sulṭāns, for just eighty years, and his age was above a hundred. It seems strange our author did not know the year of his de..th.
⁹ Torturer, executioner.
¹ It was with this ruler that Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, the conqueror of Hindūstān, passed one cold season, after he and his brother, Ghūyās-ud-Dīn, had been released from confinement.
Minhāj-ud-Din, 'Uṣmān, Jūrjānī, who was on his way to Ghaznīn and Lohor, on his return from the pilgrimage to Hījāz and the sacred Ka'bah [at Makkah], reached Sīstān during the reign of Malik Shams-ud-Dīn. At that time there was residing there one of the great theologians, whom they called Awhād-ud-Dīn, Bukhārī, one of the most eminent men of Khūrāsān. He was also one of the incomparable ones of the world, and one of the colleagues of the Khwājah—a second Imām Nu‘mān—Abūl-Faẓl, Kirmānī. There was likewise there another man of learning, who went by the name of Imām Kawām-ud-Dīn, Zawzanī, a talkative, open-mouthed, staring-eyed fellow, who was in the constant habit of annoying Imām Awhād-ud-Dīn, and of behaving insolently towards him in public.

Imām Sharaf-ud-Dīn, 'Aṭṭār, related this anecdote, which was told to him, respecting this man: that, when Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn arrived at Sīstān, it was customary with the rulers of Nimroz to treat strange 'Ulamā with respect and kindness; and they used to command them to deliver a discourse, and expound some religious dogma, in their presence, at the Court. Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, accordingly, commanded that Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn should expound a dogma at the Court.

The 'Ulamā of that city having presented themselves there, Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn expounded the dogma of defiling emissions. When the exposition was concluded, Kawām-ud-Dīn, Zawzanī, wishing, by his insolence, to annoy and mortify Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn, and to clash with him, said:—"We had heard great report of thy eminence, of thy learning and thy reputation; but this much was incumbent on thee, that, in the presence of such a great monarch, thou shouldst not have mentioned the precept of defiling emissions." When Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn perceived that he intended insolence and rudeness, he replied, saying:—"Maulānā Kawām-ud-Dīn, it is not necessary to make a long story of it; thou art filthiness itself. I beheld thee, and that precept came to my recollection."

At this rejoinder, Maulānā Kawām-ud-Dīn was com-

2 The celebrated Imām, Abū Ḥanīfah of Kūfah, was called Nu‘mān.
3 Emissions in sleep, &c., requiring ablution afterwards.
pletely silenced, and Malik Shams-ud-Din was so overcome with laughing, that he rolled over and over, almost beside himself, on his couch. That day Imam Awhād-ud-Din was made himself again by this rejoinder of Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Din, who also gave éclat to that dogma likewise; and that monarch showed abundant kindness and consideration towards Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Din.

Malik Shams-ud-Din reigned for a considerable time, and was put to death, and passed away.

IV. MALIK-US-SA’ID, TĀJ-UD-DĪN-I-ḤARAB, SON OF MUḤAMMAD.

Malik Tāj-ud-Din was a great, learned, and just sovereign, and a cherisher of his subjects. He had a number of children, and, during his lifetime, two of his sons succeeded to the throne of Nimroz, as will, please God, be hereafter mentioned.

The first incidents in his career were these. When Malik Shams-ud-Din, his uncle, came to the throne, he deprived his, Tāj-ud-Din’s, father of his sight, and put the rest of his brothers to death. Malik Shams-ud-Din had a sister, who was aunt to Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Ḥarab, who possessed great influence; and, when the tyranny and oppression of Shams-ud-Din became unbearable, the people became quite sated of his rule, and prayed the Almighty to grant them redress.

A party of the nobles and chief men of the country of Nimroz sought the aid and assistance of that Malikah, the aunt of Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Ḥarab; and they held counsel

---

4 A couch or sort of throne or seat spread with four cushions.
5 Our author, who has a peculiar way of his own for relating important events, says this ruler was martyred. He was such a blood-shedder and tyrant that his troops rose against him, attached themselves to his sister, and put him to death. Our author relates it among the events of the following reign instead of here.
6 Styled Tāj-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, son of 'Izz-ul-Mulūk by Faṣīḥ-i, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab, son of 'Izz-ul-Mulūk, by others. Why he and some others are styled Ḥarab [in the very old MS. I have previously referred to the vowel points are given], and what the real signification of the word may be, it is difficult to tell; but some of the Mughal officers—not Mughals probably—are designated by this same appellation.
7 How could they possibly “attain the throne during his lifetime,” unless they previously dethroned him?
together, and made arrangements for a change [of rulers], and fixed upon Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn by general consent. At that time he was sixty years of age, and none else remained of the descendants of the Maliks who was eligible for the sovereignty.

There is a place, outside the city of Sīstān, where, in ancient times, there was an old city, which place they call Ḥāshnūē. At night, all the populace of Sīstān and the soldiery assembled there, and, in the morning they rose against Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, and put him to death with eighteen of his sons; and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab was raised to the throne. His father, 'Īzz-ul-Mulūk, was still living, but deprived of the blessing of sight.

When Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn ascended the throne, he governed the people with equity and justice, and all submitted to his authority. He entered into communication with the Sultāns of Ghūr and Khurāsān, and became feudatory to them, and read the Khutbah1 in the name of the Sultāns of Ghūr. He used his utmost endeavours in the support and encouragement of ecclesiastics and learned men2, and in securing the rights of the weak and helpless; and it was a rule with that family to show great honour and respect to strangers and travellers. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, in this respect, greatly surpassed his ancestors. He commanded, likewise, that for every mosque of Bukhārā a prayer-carpet should be woven, according to the size of each, and despatched to that city; and for the sacred mosque at Makkah, and the holy Ka'bah, he despatched carpets, mats, and the like, as well as vessels of different kinds, in great quantity.

During the reign of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, the father of the author of this volume, Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dīn-i-Mīnhāj3

---

8 Rather doubtful, as the MSS. are all at variance here. Some have Ḥāshnūē, others Khūshūūdī and Ḥūshnūūdī, some Ḥāsūē and Ḥāshnūē. I do not find either of these names in the ancient accounts of Sīstān.
9 Therefore he was precluded from the succession.
1 The coin also was stamped with the titles and name of the Sultan of Ghūr.
2 It must have been in this reign, not during that of the Blood-Shedder, that our author's grandfather met with such a good reception at the capital of Sīstān, as blood-thirsty tyrants are not generally those who patronize priests and learned men. This seems confirmed by the author's own remarks a little farther on.
3 Sometimes he writes Mīnhāj-i-Sarāj, and at others Sarāj-i-Mīnhāj.
came to Sistan on two occasions. The first time, he went there on a mission from the august Sultan, Ghiyāš-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām; and on the second occasion, when he was proceeding from the presence of that monarch to present himself at the Court of the Khalīfah, Ḥun-Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn ‘Ullah, by way of Mukrān, he likewise passed by way of Sistan, and received great kindness and benevolence at the hands of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarāb.

During his own lifetime, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn made his eldest son, Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, ‘Uṣmān, his heir-apparent; and, subsequently, when Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn died, he nominated another son, Yāmin-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh, as his heir and successor.

Towards the end of his reign, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn became totally blind. He had reigned for a period of sixty years, and his age was a hundred and twenty. He died in the year 612 H.

V. MALIK NĀṢĪR-UD-DĪN, ‘UṢMĀN-I-ḤARĀB, SON OF MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN.

Malik Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn was a just monarch, and ‘Ayishah Khātūn, the daughter of the Malik of Khurāsān, ‘Umr-i-Maraghanī, was married to him. He had good and worthy sons; and, upon several occasions, he marched from Sistan with numerous forces, and joined the Sultan Ghiyāš-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, in Khurāsān. At the time of the success at Nishāpūr, he was present with that monarch’s Court.

He was a Malik of good disposition, and the patron of learned men, and passed his life among men in [the exercise of] justice, beneficence, and humanity.

During the reign of his father, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, he acted as his representative and lieutenant, in the adminis-

---

4 See page 244. This was the occasion when the author’s father, whilst proceeding by way of Mukrān to Baghhdād, lost his life.

5 He died during his father’s lifetime; consequently, he is not entitled to be considered as one of the sovereigns of Sijistān, and he is not accounted such by other writers. He was a regent or lieutenant only; and, on account of the extreme age of his father, at his [Nāṣīr’s] death, his son, Yāmin-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh, became regent.

6 His suzerain. See account of Ghiyāš-ud-Dīn in Section XVII.
tration of the government of the territory of Nimroz; and, outside the city of Sistān, on the bank of the river Hīrmand, he founded a large and noble palace.

He ruled the country for a considerable period, and likewise died during his father's lifetime.

VI. MALIK-UL-GHAZĪ, YAMĪN-UD-DAULAH WA UD-DĪN BAHRĀM SHĀḤ, SON7 OF TĀJ-UD-DĪN-I-HARAB.

Yamīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāḥ, was a firm and stern ruler, very severe but strictly just; and he continued to observe the rule established by his ancestors, of treating learned men and strangers and travellers with respect and reverence.

During the lifetime of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, his father, he became greatly distinguished, and was famous for his valour, sagacity, activity, and magnanimity. He ruled over the territory of Nimroz for a considerable time during the lifetime of his father; and, when his father died, the sovereignty passed to him.

Both Bahrām himself and two other brothers were borne by a Turkish slave-girl; and, previous to his time, all the sovereigns and nobles, according to ancient custom, allowed their hair to hang loosely, and used to wear conical caps on their heads, with two or three fillets wound round them, with a black fillet over the others; but, when Malik Yamīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāḥ, came to the throne, his mother being of the Turkish race, he assumed the cap of sable, and camlet garments, and curling ringlets like the Turks; and both his brothers, one, Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn, 'Ali, and the other, Malik Shāḥ, likewise adopted similar costume.

The author of this work, in the year 613 H., set out from the city of Bust for the purpose of proceeding to Sistān. When he arrived within a short distance of that capital, where there is a place which they call by the name of Gumbaz-i-Balūch—the Cupola of the Balūch8—on the east side [of Sistān], at this place, a deputation received him, and

7 The grandson, not the son of Tāj-ud-Dīn. Bahrām Shāḥ was the son of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn. See note 6, preceding page.
8 One copy has Balūţ, but the rest have Balūţ and Balūch. The place is not mentioned in the ancient accounts of the country. Balūţ means an oak.
brought him to the city; and there, at a place which is named the Madrasah-i-sar-i-Ḥawz—the College at the head of the Reservoir—to the south of the city, which they call Dar-i-Ṭaʿām1 and Bāzār-i-Farod, he alighted and took up his quarters.2

The author delivered a discourse in the private audience hall of that dignified sovereign, within the Sarāe-i-Sīāsatī; and, upon two occasions, he was honoured with robes of distinction from that beneficent monarch, consisting, each time, of three dresses; and, as long as the author remained at Sistān, every month, Malik Yamin-ud-Din sent him a liberal allowance in money and grain, and treated him with the utmost kindness and respect. After sojourning there for a period of seven months, the author returned again to Khurāsān.

Malik Yamin-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, ruled with great firmness and sagacity. It had been a practice of old, in the territory of Nimroz, among the tribes therein, to be constantly quarrelling and fighting among themselves; and no person entered a city or town without being fully armed. When the sovereignty devolved upon Bahram Shāh, he made every tribe give hostages, and kept them shut up in different fortresses, so that, in whatever tribe blood might be shed unjustly, the chiefs and head men of the tribe were held responsible for the crime. Through this stringent order such acts of bloodshed decreased.

Yamin-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, on two occasions waged holy war against the heretics of Kuhistān3, and carried on hostilities against them for a long time. Imām Sharaf-ud-Din, Ahmad4 of Farāh, who was the most eloquent man of his time, composed these lines on those successes, and in praise of them:—

9 One or two copies omit the “and.”
1 See page 20, and note 3.
2 The places noticed here were at Zaranj, and their mention proves the statements of the author of the Masālik wa Mamālik to be correct. See also note 7, p. 188.
3 The chief place of which is Kāʾīn, formerly of considerable importance. He led troops against those heretics upon several occasions.
4 Several other authors, and among them the author of the Nusakh-i-Jahān-Ārā, say, that Abū Naṣr, Farāḥī, was the composer of these lines. He was the author of the celebrated lexicographical work entitled “Niṣīb-i-Niṣābūn.”
"August and auspicious unto the world's people
Is the revered countenance of the Šāh of exalted descent.
At this warfare, which thou didst in Kuhistān wage,
The globe is with justice, with equity, and requital, full.
Thou art the king of mid-day 4, and of thy day's reign
'Tis as yet but the propitious early dawn thereof.
Like as the warriors of Muḥammad exult in thee,
In such wise the soul of Muḥammad in thee rejoiceth.
Continue in the world whilst the world hath freshness
From water and from fire, from earth and from air.
From the remembrance of the great king will not be obliterated
The encomiums of the Farāh-ī, if aught of memory remain 6."

After Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, had reigned for a considerable time, the calamities attending the irruption of the infidel Mughals arose, and Khurāsān became desolated by them, and the kingdoms of Īslām fell.

There is a fortress on the confines of Neh, in the territory of Nimroz, which they call the castle of Shāhanshāhī; and the nephew of Bahrām Shāh, the son of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, had sold the fortress of Shāhanshāhī to the heretics of Kuhistān, and it was in their possession. Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, at this time, despatched an agent to demand the restoration of that fortress, and further, to intimate that, in case any difficulty should arise, a force would be speedily brought against it.

On this account, disciples were nominated by the heretics of Kuhistān to remove him; and, in the year 618 H., on a Friday, when proceeding on his way to the mosque to perform his devotions, in the middle of the bāzār, four fidā'īs, or disciples, surrounded him and martyred him.

VII. MALIK NUSRAT-UD-DĪN, SON OF MALIK YAMĪN-UD-DĪN, 
BAHRĀM SHĀH.

On the death of Malik Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, the great nobles and chief men of Nimroz agreed together and raised to the throne Nūsrat-ud-Dīn, the middle son of the late ruler. This caused agitation and commotion to

5 A play upon the word Nimroz, signifying mid-day. See p. 187.
6 Like all translated poetry, these lines, which are fine enough in the original, lose by translation, and the play upon words is generally lost. Two copies of the text contain one distich more, but the second line is precisely the same as the sixth line above, and therefore it must be an interpolation, or the first line has been lost.
arise in the country of Nimroz, and, in every direction, disorder and confusion occurred.

The eldest son of Bahram Shah, named Rukn-ud-Din, was detained in confinement\(^7\) [as a state prisoner]. The orthodox people of both parties were all partisans, well-wishers, and under allegiance to Amîr Nuṣrat-ud-Dîn, while the whole of the heretics of the districts of Nimroz were friendly towards, and submissive to Rukn-ud-Dîn\(^8\). After some months had passed away from the accession of Amîr Nuṣrat-ud-Dîn, the heretics broke out into rebellion and brought forth Rukn-ud-Dîn; and, between Amîr Nuṣrat-ud-Dîn and his brother, Rukn-ud-Dîn, an encounter ensued, in which Nuṣrat-ud-Dîn was defeated, and he retired into Khurāsān and Ghūr.

He returned a second time to Sīstān, and liberated the country from the hands of Rukn-ud-Dîn; but, at last, as a body of troops of the infidels of Chin and Mughals\(^9\) advanced against Sīstān, it fell into the hands of those infidels, and Nuṣrat-ud-Dîn obtained martyrdom, and died\(^1\).

VIII. MALIK RUKN-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD, SON OF YAMĪN-UD-DĪN, BAHRĀM SHĀH.

Malik Rukn-ud-Dîn, Maḥmūd, was a prince harsh, sanguinary, and cruel. The author of this work saw him, during the lifetime of his father, in attendance upon that sovereign. Rukn-ud-Dîn was a person of middle height, ruddy, and fair; and his mother was a Rūmī slave-girl. During the lifetime of his father he had been guilty of several perverse and contumacious acts; and his father, Malik Yamin-ud-Dîn, Bahram Shāh, on two occasions, had imprisoned him on account of his misdeeds.

Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, sent a mandate from Khwārazm to Bahram Shāh, rcquesting him to despatch a force from Nimroz to join him. In conformity

\(^7\) Rukn-ud-Dîn had been kept in confinement by his father, and was still imprisoned when his brother succeeded, for reasons afterwards explained. He soon after made his escape.

\(^8\) This accounts partly for his being kept imprisoned in his father's reign.

\(^9\) Sic in MSS., and this difference between Mughals and infidels of Chin often occurs in the text.

\(^1\) Nuṣrat-ud-Dîn was slain early in the Mughal troubles by those infidels.
with this command, Malik Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, nominated his son, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, to proceed with this army, and despatched it towards the confines of Khurāsān along with the applicant for assistance, who had come from Khwārazm Shāh, to the presence of that Sultān [Bahrām Shāh].

When he had reached the limits of Fūshanj, and arrived near Hirāt, Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, while engaged in a drinking bout, slew the applicant in question, who was a Turk of distinction, and, out of fear for what he had done, returned towards Sīstān again. Malik Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, on account of this misconduct, put him in durance, and despatched a numerous force under Amir Shams-ud-Dīn, together with presents of silks and fine linen, and numerous expressions of obligation, with many apologies, to the presence of Khwārazm Shāh.

In that same year the calamities caused by the infidel Mughals happened, and those troops of Nimroz were ordered to the [frontier] fortress of Tirmiz. Chingiz Khan, the Accursed, advanced with his forces against it in person, and took Tirmiz; and the whole of the troops of Nimroz were martyred therein.

When Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, after overcoming his brother, assumed the sovereignty over Sījistān, he began to tyrannize, and stretched out the hand of violence and oppression; upon which, at the solicitations of the inhabitants of Sīstān, his brother, Amir Nuṣrat, returned from Khurāsān, and between the brothers contention again ensued.

At this crisis an army of Mughals unexpectedly reached Sīstān, and the whole were either slaughtered, exterminated, made captive, or martyred. The city of Sīstān became desolate, and its inhabitants obtained martyrdom.

IX. MALIK SHIHĀB-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD, SON OF ḤARAB.

When the army of infidels, after having reduced it to desolation, turned their backs upon Sīstān, Malik Shihāb-

---

3 Sometimes spelt Tarmaz, but incorrectly.
3 Chingiz and also Chingiz. The word is spelt both ways; the latter appears to be the most correct.
4 Killed in battle with the Mughals, or slaughtered afterwards.
5 He is said to have been the son of Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, brother
ud-Din, who had kept in concealment, came forth and took possession of Sistān; but, as it was in a very ruinous state, and no inhabitants remained, he did not acquire much strength or power.

A party of heretics gathered together in some force, and besought Shāh 'Uṣmān, the grandson of Nāṣir-ud-Din, 'Uṣmān', Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab, to come from the city of Neh, and occupy Sistān. He called in the aid of a force of Khwārazm-Shāhī troops, from the Malik of Kirmān, whom they styled Burāḵ, the Ḥājib [chamberlain]. When that body of troops, from Kirmān, joined Shāh 'Uṣmān and came to Sistān, Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, was martyred, and his brother, Amir 'Alī-i-Zāhid' [a recluse, a holy man], ascended the throne. Still the government did not acquire stability, and he died.

X. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, BINĀL-TĪGIN⁸, KHWĀRAZMĪ.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tīgin, was of the same family as the Maliks [sovereigns] of Khwārazm, and was a son of one of the maternal uncles of Sultan, Khwārazm Shāh⁹; and, at the period that the Sultāns of Ghūr took Nishāpūr', Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tīgin, with his cousin, Malik Firūz-i-I-yal-timish, came into Hindūstān.

At the time of the irruption of the infidels of Chīn, and consequent calamities, this Tāj-ud-Dīn was in the service of Bahrām Shāh. In some copies of the text he is styled son of Ḥarab, and simply Maḥmūd-i-Ḥarab in others.

⁶ See page 196.
⁷ Neither of these persons is mentioned in Jahān-Āra as ruler in Sijistān, but Bināl-Tīgin is. Rauḍat-uṣ-Ṣafā, copying from our author, of course mentions the two first, but not the last. Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, encountered Shāh 'Uṣmān and Bināl-Tīgin, and was slain in battle; but Faṣih-ī, under the events of the year 646 H., mentions a Malik 'Alī, ruler of Nimroz, having been put to death by Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Kurt.
⁸ Niāl-Tīgin, in some copies and in some other works, is totally incorrect. The name, as above, is corroborated by other writers; and, in the old copy of the text, the vowel points are also given. It appears to be an error of copyists writing یا for ی.
⁹ Which is not said. Some copies have Sultāns. Rauḍat-uṣ-Ṣafā says Sultān Muḥammad. He certainly was of the same tribe as the Khwārazm Shāhī rulers.

¹ See under reign of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, Section XVII.
of Malik Karim-ud-Din, Hamzah, at Nag-awr of Siwalikh. All at once he sought an opportunity, slew Khwajah Najib-ud-Din; and an elephant, which was there, he sent on in advance, and then set out towards Uchchah, and joined Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Kubajah. When Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mangabarni, Khwarazm Shâh, reached the territory of Sind, Taj-ud-Din, Binâl-Tigin, left Uchchah and went and joined Sultan Jalal-ud-Din. He accompanied him into the territory of Kirman; and, in that country, the district of Khûk and Lûk was entrusted to his charge.

As the rival Maliks of Nimroz were struggling against each other, the grandson of Nâsir-ud-Din, Usman, whom they styled by the name of Shâh, sought assistance from the Malik of Kirman, who was the chamberlain, Burâk, Khita. He despatched Malik Taj-ud-Din, Binâl-Tigin, to Neh, to his aid, in the year 622 H., and, when he reached that place, he rendered him assistance, and assumed the authority himself, and took possession of the territory and city of Neh on his own account.

A body of people from the city of Sistân presented themselves before him, and sought his help and assistance, saying that, as they had killed Malik Shihâb-ud-Din, and

2 The proper mode of spelling this word, on the authority of the Shams-ul-Lughat and others, is —Nâg-awr; and Siwalikh is said to have been the name applied to the territory. Karim-ud-Din was the governor of the province.

3 This sentence is the same in all the copies of the text on which dependence can be placed. He slew Karim-ud-Din, and carried off a number of horses and several elephants.

4 Written —Uchchah, and at times —Uchchah, according to native authorities; but which English writers have turned into Uch and Ooch.

5 Written —Berak, and at times —Berak, according to native authorities; but which English writers have turned into Burâk and Bûrâk.

6 In the majority of copies these words are thus written, but in some copies they are Jûk and Kûk, Jûk and Lûk, and Hûk and Kurk or Kûrk, and Khûk and Kûk. These places are not mentioned in Masâlik wa Mamâlik. The Gónok of modern maps probably.

7 Styled Burâk Khân in one or two copies of the text. He was the brother of Tâniko of Tarâz, the Amîr-ul-Umrâ of Gûr Khân, who was defeated in battle and taken prisoner by Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shâh. See under the tenth sovereign, Section XVI.

8 All the copies of the text, with two exceptions, say he did render assistance to Shâh Usman; but the only assistance he appears to have afforded was in joining Shâh Usman to overcome his rival, Shâh Maftûd; and, after the latter’s defeat and death, Binâl-Tigin showed no further regard or respect to Usman, but took possession of the country for himself.

9 See note 7, p. 199.
Sistan remained without a ruler, he should take Shāh 'Usmān to Sistan and set him up there. Tāj-ud-Din, Bināl-Tigīn, accordingly moved to Sistan, took possession of the city, and brought the territory of Nimroz under his own sway.

At this juncture, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, of Khāesār of Ghūr, despatched this, his dependent, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, from Ghūr, on a mission to Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Bināl-Tigīn. The author found him at the city of Farāh, in Dāwari, and waited on him; and a firm compact was concluded.

After returning from thence, and reaching Ghūr again, between Malik Tāj-ud-Din and the Mulāhidah heretics hostility arose, and an engagement ensued between them, and he was defeated. After this, he returned to Sistan again, and overthrew a body of Khārijī schismatics who had revolted against him.

In the year 623 H., the author of this work was despatched a second time, and he proceeded again to his presence; and, after that, Tāj-ud-Din came himself into Ghūr, and took possession of the fortresses of Tūlak and Isfrār; and, in this same year, after his return from Nimroz, the author had occasion to undertake a journey into Hind.

In the year 625 H., an army of Mughals advanced into the territory of Nimroz a second time; and Tāj-ud-Din, Bināl-Tigīn, was invested within the walls of the fortress of Arg of Sistan. For a period of nineteen months he

1 This journey is again referred to by our author towards the end of his work, under the heading "Downfall of the Mulāhidahs," Section XXIII.; and this place is again mentioned, but is there written in two different ways—Khāesār and Khaisār.

2 This word is used in all the copies of the text, with one exception, which has دارو [dārū or dārū-ʃ]. This can scarcely refer to the district of Dāwar [not Dāwar], which lies more to the east. In the ḌAŠALIK WA AMALIK the ʿawādī [wādī is a valley, low-lying ground, &c.] of Farāh is mentioned; but this is an Arabic term, not a proper name. The "compact" here referred to could not have been very "firm," as may be seen from a more detailed account of these journeys of the author, under the head of "Downfall of the Mulāhidahs," towards the end of the Section above mentioned.

3 The author contradicts himself, not an unusual thing, in the Section referred to in the previous note, which see.

4 The Burḥān-i-Ka-ti' says, one of the meanings of the word Arg is "a citadel," but that it is also the name of a fortress in the territory, not the city, of Sistan. See note 4, p. 34, and the account of the investment of Sistan [as our author calls it] by the Mughals in Section XXIII., where the situation of this fortress is mentioned.
defended the place; and the whole of his followers with him in that stronghold, consisting of Ghūris, Tūlakīs, Sigizīs, and Turks, all perished. Tāj-ud-Dīn himself received an arrow in one of his eyes, and he straightway fell from the battlements to the ground, and became a captive to the Mughals.

The fortress was taken, and the remainder of the people within the walls were martyred; and Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tīgin, was brought from Sīstān to the fortress of Ṣafshed Koh⁶, and at the foot of the walls of that castle they martyred him. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

⁴ See fourth paragraph to note ², pp. 183-4.
⁶ Also called Sufed-Koh. Our author was once detained within the walls of his fortress by Bināl-Tīgin.
SECTION XV.

THE KURDIAH MALIKS OF SHĀM.

MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ, Jürjānī, the humblest of the servants of the threshold of the Most High, begs to mention, that, as an account of the Maliks of the East and West, both infidel and of the true faith, has been detailed and recorded, to the best of his ability and power, and a small portion, in a condensed form, has also been related from the annals of the Maliks of 'Ajam and the East, this work has been embellished [!] with a description of the Maliks of Shām, Miṣr, Ḥijāz, and Yaman, who were Sulṭāns in Islām, and Maliks and warriors of the true faith, of great renown, and who, subsequent to the Sanjari and Saljūkī dynasties, held sway over those countries. He has done so in order that the readers of this Tabakāt, when these pages come under their observation, may remember the author with a pious benediction, and the Sultan of the Musalmāns with a prayer for the stability and permanency of his sovereignty and dominion, and the increase of his conscientiousness and beneficence.

I. SULṬĀN NÛR-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD-I-ZANGĪ.

Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd-i-Zangi, was one of the Atā-baks of Mauṣīl; and the Atā-baks of Mauṣīl were

1 Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn was not the first of this dynasty, neither was he a Kurd, nor one of the Atā-baks of Mauṣīl, but, by our author’s own account, “the descendant of a Turk of Khita;” and yet he places him at the head of the dynasty which he calls the Kurdiāh Maliks of Shām! In this Section, above all the others in his work, and that is saying a good deal, he has greatly exposed his ignorance; and appears to have concocted, out of his own fertile imagination, the greater part of what he has here adduced, beyond what he heard of the rulers of Mauṣīl and Shām from a fugitive at Lakhnautī, in Bengal, who called himself one of their descendants. The first of this dynasty was ABŪ SAĪD-I-ĀK-SANKUR [turned into ASCANSAR by Gibbon], son of 'Abd-ullah, styled the Ḥājib, and Ibn-i-
descendants of slaves of Sultan Sanjar; and this bondman of Sanjar, who was the first Malik of Mausil, was a Turk of Khitā.

This relation the author heard, in the city of Lakhnautī, from one of the descendants of that family, and the son of one of the Lords of Mausil himself. In the country of Hindūstān, and at the capital, Dihlī, he was known as the Khudāwānd-Zādah of Mausil. He was of the same progenitors as the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn [I-yal-timish].

Hājib, according to some. In 478 H., the year before Sanjar was born, Tāj-ud-Daulah, Abī Saʿīd, surnamed Tutīsh, son of Alb-Arsalān, the Saljuqī, gained possession of Ḥalab and its dependencies. Āḵ-Sankūr, who was one of his brother's slaves, in whom he placed great dependence, he made his Deputy there. Tāj-ud-Daulah-i-Tutīsh at this time resided at Damashk. Āḵ-Sankūr became disaffected, and Tutīsh marched against him; and, in a battle which took place between them, near Ḥalab, in 487 H., Āḵ-Sankūr was slain.

He was succeeded by his son, 'Īmād-ud-Dīn, Zangī, who had previously held the government of Baghdaḏ under Sultan Māhmūd, son of Muḥammad, son of Malik Shāh, Saljuqī; but, in 521 H. [some say 522 H.], through the efforts of the Khalifāh of Baghdaḏ, Mustarshid, 'Īmād-ud-Dīn, Zangī, was appointed to the government of 'Irāk-i-ʿArab, the capital of which was Mausil—so called from being situated between 'Irāk and the Jazīrah [Mesopotamia], and derived from the 'Arabic جزيرة; and Sultan Māhmūd sent two of his sons, Alb-Arsalān and Farrukh Shāh, to Zangī to be brought up; hence he was styled Atā-bak or Preceptor. In the same year he took Ḥalab, and, in 523 H., the fortress of Ḥīmār, in Kūrdistān, which he razed, and erected a fortress in place of it, which he named after himself, and it is still known as 'Īmāḏ-āfāh. He acquired sway over the greater part of Shām, Diyar-i-Bakr, the Jazīra, and Mausil. Zangī was slain while besieging the fortress of Jaʿbar. He was killed, some say, by his own slaves, in Muharram [Yāqūt says in Rabīʾ-ul-ʿĀhīr], 541 H. We now come to Nūr-ud-Dīn, whom our author places as first of the Kūrdish sovereigns of Shām.

On the death of Zangī, his two sons, Saʿīd-ud-Dīn-i-Qhāzī, and AʾBū-I-Kāsim, Nūr-ud-Dīn, Māhmūd, styled al-Malik-ul-ʿĀdil [the Just Malik], divided their father's dominions among them. The former took Mausil and its dependencies, and the latter Shām and its dependencies. Nūr-ud-Dīn proceeded to Ḥalab, and began to extend his authority. In 549 H. he gained possession of Damashk, and his power and dominions were greatly extended. He also gained possession of Ḥīmā, Ḥīmāh, Manbij, Baʿalbak, and other fortresses in the territory of Rūm, and numerous strongholds in the country of the Farangs [the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem], more than fifty in number in all. He sent the Amir, Asad-ud-Dīn, Sher-i-Koh, on three different occasions into Mīṣr; and, on the third occasion, ʿṢalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsūf, became the Deputy of Nūr-ud-Dīn in that country. See under ʿṢalāḥ-ud-Dīn, p. 214.

3 The word used is سالو. It another signification of which, but not applicable here I think, is the affinity between two men who have married two sisters.

3 And so the first—the Turk of Khitā—is here made “a Kūrd,” while his
This Khudawand-Zadah stated to the author, that the whole of his ancestors were descendants of a slave of Sanjar Shâh; and, that he himself was the eighth in descent from that Turk of Khita previously mentioned.

In short, Sultan Nûr-ud-Din, who was Malik of Shâm, was a just and conscientious monarch, and did a great deal of good. He undertook many expeditions against the infidels, and engaged in many conflicts with them. A number of Maliks [chieftains], Kurds, Turks, 'Ajamis, and 'Arabs were in his service.

Sultan Nûr-ud-Din left numerous marks of his goodness behind him in the territory of Shâm⁴, and reigned for very many years⁵.

At the time of his death he left one son, named 'Ali, who succeeded him.

II. MALIK-US-SALIH, 'ALI*, SON OF MAHMUD-I-ZANGI.

Malik-us-Salih, 'Ali, ascended the throne of Shâm at the city of Damasbk; and the great nobles and chieftains paid brother Turk—the slave king of Dihlî—is turned into "a Patân," i.e. an Afgânn, by Dow and his copyists.

⁴ Nûr-ud-Dîn reigned for a considerable time in great grandeur and glory, and the laudable course of his life, and his conduct towards his people, were such that he was accounted, by them, as one of the saints; and it is said, that prayers, offered up before his tomb, are effectual. He founded a great hospital at Damasbk, and a university or college, and died in the month of Shawwâl, 569 H., but some say in 568 H., when leading an army towards Mîsr against Salah-ud-Dîn, who had become disaffected. Ibn-i-Khalkân says he died in the citadel of Damasbk.

⁵ His descendant, apparently, did not know how long his ancestor reigned.

⁶ Nûr-ud-Dîn does not appear to have had any son called 'Ali; but certain it is that he was not succeeded by one of that name, as our author states, but by his son ISMÂ'IL, entitled MALIK-UŞ-SÂLIH, then a mere child, being only in his eleventh year. Salah-ud-Dîn, at first, read the Khûbah for him, and coined the money in his name, as he had done for his father previously; but in 570 H., the year after his accession, when in his twelfth year, Salah-ud-Dîn, taking advantage of his extreme youth, brought an army before Damasbk, and seized upon it and the greater part of Shâm, leaving nothing to his benefactor's son but the city of Halab and its environs, to which place Malik-us-Sâlih retired. He dwelt there till 577 H., when he died in his nineteenth year, much regretted by the people for his virtues; and, with him, this branch terminated.

If this account be compared with our author's, the absurdity and incorrectness of his statements will be sufficiently apparent, more particularly those contained in the last paragraph of his account of them. Of the Atâ-baks of Mauṣîl and several other dynasties, he gives no account.
allegiance and submission to him; and the districts around Shām, and Ḥalab, and Diyar-i-Bakr, came under his sway.

When intimation of the decease of Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn reached Misr—and at this time the sovereignty of Misr had passed to Sultān Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūṣuf—as he owed a heavy debt of gratitude for favours conferred, Sultān Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn determined to proceed from Misr to the presence of Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ, pay his obeisance to him, and perform the forms of condolence, and congratulate Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ on his succession to the dominion of Shām, and then return again.

He set out from Misr [accordingly] with a body of troops and conducted it to Shām; and, as soon as he reached the frontier of that territory, information of his arrival was brought to Damāshk. The heart of Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ was filled with affright and consternation, and he asked advice of everybody as to what he ought to do. There was a servant of Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ, who had also been an old follower of his father, Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn, who was named Aymin, and he said to Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ:—“It is advisable, when Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn comes, to turn your face towards Ḥalab and proceed thither, and relinquish Damāshk and Shām to him, since fear of him has taken root in people's hearts.

7 A novel mode of expressing his gratitude. A traitor in Damāshk, who had been gained over by Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn, gave out that Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn was coming merely to adjust the affairs of the child. Our author either forgets to allude to, or did not know of, the hostilities that took place between Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn and Saif-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāżī, the latter of whom sent his troops to aid his brother 'Īzz-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd [they were sons of Maudūd, sons of Zangī, cousins of Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ], who advanced to Ḥalab, and, taking his cousin Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ and the latter's troops with him, marched to give battle to Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn. The latter offered peace, which 'Īzz-ud-Dīn refused; and, in Ramāżān of 570 H., a battle took place near Ḥāmah, in which Ṣulāḥ-ud-Dīn was victorious. After this, Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ entered into terms with him for Ḥalab and some other places. Further hostilities took place between Saif-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāżī, supported by his brother, and—but I might fill a volume by merely naming our author's misstatements, and other important matters which he has left out, without giving any details of the facts. He omits nothing that is childish and ridiculous; the ball, for example, overshadowing the sun [p. 215], the rings for the Christian captives [p. 221], and such like nonsense: it is the important events only that he eschews. Šulāḥ-ud-Dīn subsequently endeavoured further to "express his gratitude," by attempting, in 571 H., to gain possession of Ḥalab. He remained a long time before it, without being able to take it. At last, a daughter of the late Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn was made over to him, and, for her sake, he left Malik-uss-Ṣāliḥ unmolested.
He has great resources and a large army, and he is able to reduce the territories under his sway. He is likewise legitimately born, and has a well-disposed mind, and will respect your rights and the gratitude he owes to your father. If you should enter into hostilities with him, you have neither the means nor the power to oppose nor to resist him." The opinion of Malik-us-Salih was in accord with this fact; and he left Damashk, and retired to Ḥalab, and consigned the territory of ʿS̄ām into the hands of ʿṢ̄āh-ud-Dīn.

Malik-us-Salih passed the remainder of his lifetime at Ḥalab; and ʿṢ̄āh-ud-Dīn served him in all honour and reverence, guarded his rights, and, in the observance of the laws of good faith, and the fulfilment of his engagements, he failed neither to observe nor to neglect the most minute thing.

III. MALIK AIYŪB, SON OF ʿSHĀDĪ.

This Malik Aiyūb, son of ʿShādī, and his brother, Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, were two brothers, and sons of one of the

8 The correct titles and name of ʿṢ̄āh-ud-Dīn's father were Malik-ul-Afgal, Najm-ud-Dīn, Abū-Lashkar-i-Aiyūb. ʿShādī, their father, son of Mardin, was born in a village of ʿĀzārbāljān, and belonged to a Kurdish tribe, which he left and proceeded to Bahgḥādād, with his two sons, Asad-ud-Dīn, ʿSher-i-Koh, and Najm-ud-Dīn, Aiyūb. The sons entered the service of Bahrūz, the prefect of Bahgḥādād, and were entrusted by him with the charge of the fortress of Takrīt, and there ʿShādī died. His tomb was still to be seen there when Yāfāʾī wrote; and within the walls of that stronghold ʿṢ̄āh-ud-Dīn was born. The brothers continued there for a considerable period; and, at the time when ʿImād-ud-Dīn, Zangī, in 526 ʿH., came to the aid of Sultan Masʿūd, Saljūk, and his brother Saljūk ʿṢ̄āh, and his Atā-bak, ʿKarājāh, the cup-bearer, were routed, Zangī passed the Tigrīs near the fort of Takrīt, by means of boats provided by the brothers. Subsequently, Asad-ud-Dīn having slain a person, they had to leave the fortress of Takrīt, and they proceeded to Mausīl, and presented themselves at the Court of Zangī. He received them with great favour, and bestowed fiefs upon each of them.

Subsequently, when Zangī was assassinated, and his son, ʿSaʿīf-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī, succeeded him as ruler over Mausīl, Najm-ud-Dīn-i-Aiyūb, who had been assigned the territory of Baʿalbāk by Zangī, finding ʿSaʿīf-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī unable to protect him, had to give it up, and went and entered the service of the then ruler of Damashk, named Majīr-ud-Dīn, Artūk [Artūksha], who gave him a fief. Asad-ud-Dīn, ʿSher-i-Koh, Aiyūb's brother, went to Ḥalab and took service under Nūr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, ʿSaʿīf-ud-Dīn's brother, who had seen the honour with which he had been treated in his father's time, and he raised Asad-ud-Dīn to the highest position among his nobles; and, at the
Kurdish chieftains in the territory of Shām; and they passed a number of years in the service of Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn. They performed great deeds, and on the confines of Maghrab and of Shām, with numerous forces, they waged holy war, and fought engagements against unbelievers.

When Malik Aiyūb, son of Shādī, departed this life, he left four sons behind him: first, Malik Šalāh-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf; second, Malik 'Adil-i-Abū-Bikr; third, Šāhānshāh; and fourth, Saīf-ul-Islām: and Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, son of Shādī, as before stated, was the brother of Malik Aiyūb.

When the latter died, his sons were in the service of their uncle, Malik Asad-ud-Dīn; and the first person among them [sic in MSS.] who became sovereign of Miṣr was this same Asad-ud-Dīn; and the first one who acquired sovereignty in Shām was Šalāh-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf, son of Aiyūb, as will, please God, be hereafter recorded.

IV. MALIK ASAD-UD-DIN, SON OF SHĀDĪ, IN MIṣR.

Trustworthy persons have related after this manner: that a body of Maghrabi 'Alawīs laid claim to the Khilāfat, taking of Damāshq, Asad-ud-Dīn, Sher-i-Koh, and Šalāh-ud-Dīn, were in Nūr-ud-Dīn's service; and the former held the government of Ḥims.

Abū Lashkar-i-Aiyūb had six renowned sons, the titles and names of whom, according to the years of their birth, are as follow:—1. Amir-Nūr-ud-Daulah, Šāhānshāh. 2. Malik-ul-Muṣammam, Šams-ud-Daulah, Turān Shāh. 3. Malik-un-Nāṣir, Šalāh-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf. 4. Malik-ul-'Ādil, Saīf-ud-Dīn [Daulah], Abū Bīkr, Muḥammad. 5. Malik-ul-'Azīz, Zahir-ud-Dīn, Abī Farās-i-Tūgh-Tīgīn, Saīf-ul-Islām. 6. Tāj-ul-Mulk, Majd-ud-Dīn— the least in years, the greatest in learning and accomplishments.

Any one reading this would imagine that Aiyūb had been an independent ruler in Shām, and one of the dynasty, and that he had died before Asad-ud-Dīn, and before Šalāh-ud-Dīn rose to power; but neither of these is the fact. Aiyūb merely held Ba'albak of Zangi and another fief under his son. See note 9, page 215.

Here is another specimen of an author who narrates his facts in a plain, straightforward manner, which induces a confidence in the sincerity of his statements, and the accuracy of his knowledge.” He begins this Section with an account of the Kurdish rulers of Shām and Miṣr, the two first of whom were Turks, and the third never reigned at all; while he himself states, subsequently, that the fourth was the first Kurd that ruled in Miṣr, and the fifth, the first Kurdish ruler of Shām!

His correct name and titles are Abū-l-Hāris, Sher-i Koh [the Lion of the Mountains], Asad-ud-Dīn, surnamed Al-Malik-ul-Manṣūr.

Nearly three hundred years before Nūr-ud-Dīn despatched Asad-ud-
and brought an army from Maghrib into Misr, and wrested it out of the hands of the governors and nobles of the 'Abbasi Khalifahs.

The chief of them was named Al-Muntasir; and some theologians regard them as Karämitahs. The territory of Misr had continued in the possession of his descendants up to the period that an army of Afranj set out towards Misr, and plundered and sacked the country. The 'Alawis of Misr had not the power to resist them, nor to drive out that host of infidels; so they solicited aid from Sultan Nur-ud-Din of Sham. He nominated Malik Asad-ud-Din, son of Shâdi, to proceed into Misr, and expel the Afranj infidels from that country.*

Din into Misr, viz. in 296 H. In 351 H. they removed from the territory styled Maghrib, and took up their abode in the former country.

5 Abû-Tamîm-i-Sa'd, Al-Mustansir B'illah, was the eighth of the Isma'ilians or Fatimites. They had been in Egypt, and had founded Kahirah upwards of sixty years before Al-Mustansir succeeded to the Khalifât. All the copies of the text have "Muntasir."

6 Our author's statements here are totally incorrect. Asad-ud-Din, Sher-i-Koh, was despatched into Misr—or more correctly Diyar-i-Misriah, for Misr is the name of the ancient capital of Egypt, and Yâfâ and others make this distinction—upon three different occasions. The first occasion was in this wise: Sha'ur, the Wazir of Misr, who held the chief power, for the Isma'îliuân Khalifahs appear to have possessed little authority, had been ousted from office by a powerful rival, Zir-ghâm by name, who obtained the chief authority, and put Sha'ur's son, Tae, to death. On this, Sha'ur came to the presence of Nir-ud-Din to solicit his aid in restoring him to power; and, in Ramazân, 558 H. [according to some in 559 H.], Nir-ud-Din despatched a numerous army into Misriah for the purpose, under Asad-ud-Din, Sher-i-Koh, and Salih-ud-Din, his nephew, accompanied him.

The objects of Nur-ud-Din, in sending this expedition, were twofold. One was to aid Sha'ur, and the second was his desire to know the exact state of the affairs of that country, as he had been informed that there was really no ruler in it, and that it might be easily annexed. Asad was therefore selected to command, as Nur-ud-Din had implicit confidence in him. He accordingly entered the Mîrîfah territory in Jamadi-ul-Akhir, 559 H. [some say in 558 H.], and Zir-ghâm was put to death, his head placed on a spear, and his body left to the dogs and jackals; but his remains were subsequently buried. Sha'ur again assumed the Wazîr-ship, but, finding the presence of Asad and his army irksome, and fearing treachery on Asad's part, he sought an alliance with the Farangs [Latin Christians of Jerusalem] to counteract it. Asad in consequence was unable to hold his own in the Mîrîfah territory, and he accordingly retired into Sham again and returned to Damashk, and entered it in Zi-Hijjah, 559 H. [some say in 558 H.] Asad-ud-Din's thoughts, however, were concentrated on Mîrîfah, and he was constantly pondering the subject. Sha'ur, becoming aware of his ambition and covetous designs, entered into a treaty with the Farangs to aid him, in case of need, against the ruler of Sham.

On the news of these negotiations reaching the ears of Nur-ud-Din and
Malik Asad-ud-Din preferred a request to the Sultan that he would appoint Salah-ud-Din, Yusuf, his nephew, to accompany him on the expedition. This was granted; and Malik Asad-ud-Din, along with Salah-ud-Din, set out from Sham towards Misr.

When they reached the frontier of that country, the infidel Afranj, having gained information of the arrival of the troops of Sham, reined in the bridle of their audacity, and they halted in that part of the country which they had then reached.

The troops of Sham entered the territory of Misr, and acquired predominance over it; and, as they possessed great power and magnificence, the 'Alawis of Misr became timid of them, and repented of ever having sought their assistance, as they were not sufficiently strong to hinder them [the Shamis] from the usurpation of power and authority over the country.

The Sayyid, who filled the masnad of the Khilafat in Misr, had a Wazir, who bore the name of Sha'ir, and he summoned him privily, and commanded that he should write a letter, secretly, to the infidel Farangs, and tell them "neither we nor our troops will render any help to the Shamis, and we will not send them sufficient succour. It behoveth you to advance upon them: put forth your strength, and drive them out of this country, and all the Asad, they consulted together, and the former, fearing lest the Farangs might gain a footing in Misrāf, and thereby acquire dominion over the whole of the parts adjacent, determined to despatch Asad with a large army against Sha'īr, which commenced its march in Rabī‘-ul-Awwal, 562 H., and Salab-ud-Din attended him, being in his service.

Sha’īr, on this movement, called in the Farangs; and, with those allies, encountered Asad and his forces in several engagements, but without decisive advantage on either side. Nūr-ud-Din now created a diversion by sending a force against the Farangi territory, and succeeded in taking Montreal [؟?]. The news of this having reached Almeric [عرش], king of Jerusalem, an accommodation was entered into by the contending parties, under the agreement that not a man of either the Shamis or Farangs should remain in the Misrāfah territory, and that both armies should retire into their respective countries.

Asad-ud-Din, Sher-i-Koh, in 564 H., again advanced into the Misrāf territory, accompanied by his nephew, Salah-ud-Din, and a large army, and sought to subdue it. Salah-ud-Din succeeded in getting possession of Iskandarfah, but Sha’īr invested him therein with the forces of Misr, and Asad had to evacuate Sa‘īd and march to his succour. At last a peace was come to, and Asad and Salah-ud-Din returned to Sham again. For an account of the third expedition see note 1, page 212.
spoil taken from them shall be yours." In short, the Miṣrīs sought, by such like treachery, to betray the army of Shām into the hands of the troops of the infidels of Rūm and the Farangs.

In accordance with the solicitation contained in the letter referred to, the Farang infidels advanced upon the forces of Shām to give them battle, and drive them out of Miṣr. The army of the infidel Farangs amounted to 80,000 men, and that of Shām numbered 700 horse.

When the two armies came into contact with each other and the conflict and struggle began, the troops of Shām, on account of the smallness of their numbers, were unable to withstand their opponents; and, as a matter of necessity, they were discomfited, and fled, fighting, from the gate of Miṣr until they reached a place which is called Talbis. This place had a fortified wall all round it, and a citadel; and, in it, they sought shelter, and they shut themselves up within the walls. The troops of the infidel Farangs completely surrounded it, pitched their camp, and commenced their preparations for taking the place.

When the Shāmī forces perceived the extreme danger they were in, and that they were completely invested, besides the treachery of the 'Alawīs of Miṣr, they all, of one accord, deliberated together, and discussed a plan of escape. Malik Asad-ud-Dīn and Șalāh-ud-Dīn told them, saying: "The plan of saving yourselves consists in staking your lives; in victory or death." They all, accordingly, agreed together; and, placing their hands within the open grasp of confidence, and with full trust in the Most High and Holy God, they, having quite resigned themselves to sacrifice sweet life if necessary; suddenly and unawares, issued from the place and commenced fighting the infidels, as by orthodox law prescribed: and heavenly succour came to their aid; and, according to the promise of Him who promised victory to

7 No troops whatever of the Greek empire were employed on the occasion; but, the fact is, our author was not acquainted with his subject at all, and has concocted much nonsense.
8 The words Afranj and Farang are often used here indiscriminately.
9 On the preceding page he says Asad-ud-Dīn's troops "acquired preponderance over the territory of Miṣr," and Shā'ūr had to call in the Christians to expel them, and immediately after tells this impudent falsehood. A very trustworthy writer certainly!
the true believers, He sent succour, and the army of the infidels was put to the rout, and the defenders of the truth gained the victory; and from that place to the gate of Miṣr¹, and in the vicinity, and in the parts round about,

¹ The cause of the third expedition was that, in 564 H., the Farangs [King Almeric and the Hospitallers, A.D. 1168] invaded the Miṣrāfah territory, intending to seize it for themselves. They marched to Balbis [the ancient Pelusium], took it, and put the inhabitants to the sword. Again Shā'ūr sought aid from Nūr-ud-Dīn, who, fearing the Farangs and their designs, and possessing vast resources, sent a countless army [not 700 horse probably] thither under Asad-ud-Dīn, who, on this occasion, took with him his brethren [sic in MS.] and kinsmen, including Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn. The account of the advance of this host having been conveyed to the Farangs, they desisted from further operations, evacuated Balbis, and retired from the country, pressed hard in their retreat by Nūr-ud-Dīn's Turkmāns. The author, from whom I have been taking these extracts chiefly, says, "Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn told me himself that he [Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn] did not accompany his uncle of his own choice; and further, that Shā'ūr used to promise to defray all the expenses of this expedition, undertaken on his account; but he did not fulfil his promises, and sometimes he would be with the Farangs, and at times he would be with the Amīr [Asad-ud-Dīn]. Fearing the perfidy and double-dealing of Shā'ūr, Amīr Asad resolved to seize him; and, one day, when Shā'ūr, attended with drums and trumpets and banners, as is the custom with the Wazīrs of Miṣr, mounted and set out with a cavalcade to visit Asad-ud-Dīn, the latter also mounted and rode forth to receive him; but, when they met, he seized Shā'ūr by the collar, and gave a sign to his own followers to secure him. This was done, and Shā'ūr was detained as a prisoner in a tent. Shortly after, a body-servant arrived from the sovereign of Miṣr [Abū Muḥammad-i-ʿAbd-ullah, entitled ʿĀṣid, the last of the Ismāʿīlīs of Egypt] signifying his desire that the head of Shā'ūr should be sent to him. This was in accordance with the custom of the country, that any one who, by force, seized the Wazīr's person, and cut off his head and sent it to the ruler, should have the robe of Wazīr-ship forthwith brought to him; and, according to that custom, Asad cut off the head of Shā'ūr [had it cut off] and sent it, and on the same day he assumed the robe of Wazīr-ship, and the supreme direction of the affairs of the country." This occurred 17th of Rābiʿ-ʿal-Ākhīr, 564 H.

Another account of the events ending in the death of Shā'ūr, quoted in Yāfāʿi, is not unworthy of a brief record here, and, in all probability, is the most correct. When Asad-ud-Dīn reached the Miṣrāfah territory, and entered Kāhirah on the 17th of Rābiʿ-ʿal-Ākhīr, 564 H., ʿĀṣid-i-ʿAbd-ullah, the last of the Ismāʿīlīs [Khalifs], on the Friday following, came forth and held an interview with Asad, and had him arrayed in a dress of honour, and treated him with great distinction. Asad now requested Shā'ūr to disburse the expenses incurred on his account, which he had agreed to defray; but Shā'ūr delayed. Asad sent a person to him with a message, saying, "My troops, through want of their pay, are much incensed against you; therefore be careful." Shā'ūr evinced no fear, and resolved to invite Asad to an entertainment in order to seize his person. This design having come to Asad's knowledge, Amīr ʿĪzz-ud-Dīn, one of Nūr-ud-Dīn's nobles, and Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn, agreed together to kill Shā'ūr, and communicated the design to Asad, who forbade them to do so. Shā'ūr, subsequently, in order to visit Asad, without any
they made heaps of the slain. Praise be unto God! May victory ever be theirs!

The troops of Islam having gained such a victory, at once appeared before the gate of Misr. The Wazir of Misr, who was named Shaûr, performed the ceremonies of going to receive them; but, as soon as the sight of that victorious Sulân, Salah-ud-Din, fell upon him, he, in the presence of Malik Asad-ud-Din, with his own august hand, struck off with his sword the wretched head from that accursed one's body.

The whole of the people of Misr and the forces of Shân agreed together, with one accord, to raise Malik Asad-ud-Din to the sovereignty; and he became sovereign of Misr accordingly, and obtained the throne of that country.

The 'Alawis of Misr, without molestation or impediment, were placed in seclusion, and the Khutbah was read for them in the same manner as before.

The news of this success was despatched to Shân; and the territory of Misr, together with its coasts and confines, was taken possession of by Malik Asad-ud-Din, who resided there for a considerable time; and he died.

suspicion, came to the bank of the Nil, where his [Asad's] tents were pitched to enable his followers to visit conveniently the tomb of Imam Shafiî. Amir 'Izz-ud-Dîn and Salah-ud-Dîn, after they had received Shaûr, and the usual salutation of "Peace be unto thee," &c., had passed—Asad was not present at the time—dragged him from his horse, upon which his followers fled. They then handcuffed him, and kept him a prisoner in one of the tents, but did not dare to put him to death without the permission of Nûr-ud-Dîn [Asad]. In the meantime, 'Azîd, the Isma'îlî, sent an order to put Shaûr to death [according to the custom before mentioned], on which his head was cut off [by two slaves of Nûr-ud-Dîn] and sent to 'Azîd on a spear. After this, 'Azîd summoned Asad-ud-Dîn to his presence, who went; and the Wazîr's robe was conferred upon him, with the title of Al-Malik-ul-Mansûr, Amir-ul-Juyûsî.

3 At this time this "victorious Sulân" was serving under his uncle, who was himself serving Nûr-ud-Dîn.

4 Asad-ud-Dîn was not raised to the sovereignty, and never occupied the throne of Misr. For the refutation of this absurd and untrue statement, see preceding note 1.

5 Asad did not enjoy his Wazîr-ship very long, for on the 22nd [some say 26th] of Jamâdî-ul-Âkhir of the same year, two months and five days after he obtained it—a "considerable time" truly—he died suddenly at Kâhirah. He was first buried there, but subsequently, according to his last wishes, his remains were removed to Madînah. The "Lion of the Mountains" left a son, 'Nâsir-ud-Dîn, Mu'ammad, Sher-i-Koh, entitled Al-Malik-ul-Kâhirah. When his father died, Sulân Nûr-ud-Dîn of Shân, deprived him of the fief of
Sultan Salah-ud-Din was a great and illustrious monarch, and he waged holy wars and undertook many religious expeditions; and the Kaisar of Rüm and the infidel Farangs, he encountered in many conflicts. It was most probable, that in all his doings, and throughout the whole of his career, the sword of heavenly success and divine victory attended him. The territories of Shām, Қudsi [the Holy Land], Miṣr, Ḥijāz, and Yaman⁶, all came under his rule.

As the Most High God willed that, at this, the end of time⁷, His true religion should be manifested, and that the empire of Islām should be victorious, from every illustrious family He made choice of one sovereign, His servant, and, by means of the key of holy war waged by him, caused the gates of conquest of the countries of the infidels to be thrown open. In the same manner as in the countries of the East He distinguished Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, Shansabī [Shansabānī], Ghūrī, by great victories in the country of Hindūstān, as far as the boundaries of Chin; in the territories of the West, and in the country of Shām, He made Sultan Salah-ud-Din, Yūsuf, the Kurd, exalted by the conquests of the territories of Maghrib, and of the Afranj⁸, so that great victories were achieved by him.

He brought back again the realm of Miṣr from the hands of his cousin, gained possession of Shām, he restored Ḥimṣ to him, and there he died in 581 H.

šalaḥ-ud-Dīn had an elder brother named Malik-ul-Muaggam, Shams-ud-Daulah, Tūrān Shāh, and greatly esteemed by that Sultan. He employed him in an expedition into Yaman, and subsequently sent him into Nūbah [Nubia of Europeans], and he was afterwards placed in charge of Damāshḵ. He died in 576 H., and was buried in the Madrasah in sight of Damāshḵ, which he had himself founded.

Our author has been as unsuccessful in foretelling the end of the world, as some others, his successors, who pretend to know the secrets of futurity and the will of Providence.

It is somewhat new to find that Salah-ud-Din made conquests in Europe. He does not mean conquests in Palestine or the Greek empire, for he mentions them a little farther on. This is merely another of his audacious falsehoods. The words he uses are,
of the Mişrî 'Alawîs, who were the chiefs and heads of the Bâţînah and Қârâmîtâh heretics, under the sway of the Khalîfâhs of the house of ʻAbbâs; and Қuds [the Holy City], 'Akkâh [Acre], and a great portion of the territories of Rûm, and Filîstîn, he liberated from the hands of the infidel Farângs.

The beginning of his career was this. When his father, Malik Aiyûb, son of Shâdî, departed this life, he was in the service of his uncle, Malik Asad-ud-Dîn, as has been already stated in what has been previously recorded, and used to be constant in his attendance at the Court of Sulṭân Nûr-ud-Dîn. He had acquired great fame for his manhood, his activity, and his sagacity. He had also become an associate with Sulṭân Nûr-ud-Dîn in the game of Chaugân, and playing at ball on the course.

One of the trustworthy has related after the following manner:—One day Šalâh-ud-Dîn was engaged with Sulṭân Nûr-ud-Dîn in the game at ball, and the ball fell between him and the Sulṭân. By his strength and agility, Šalâh-ud-Dîn, with one blow, bore away the ball from the Sulṭân in such a way, that, from the immense force with which his Chaugân struck it, the ball flew into the air so far that it became immersed in the light of the sun, and the shadow of it fell upon Nûr-ud-Dîn. When the Sulṭân noticed this circumstance, his heart became so overpowered with wrath, that he threw down his Chaugân in a rage and left the course. This circumstance filled Šalâh-ud-Dîn with fear and apprehension, and he began to conceal himself from

9 Here is another specimen of the false statements of our author, so “trustworthy.” Asad died in 564 H., and Šalâh-ud-Dîn’s father, Abû-Lâghkar-i-Aiyûb, joined his son in Egypt in the following year, when Šalâh-ud-Dîn had succeeded to the Wazîr-ship held previously by his uncle. Šalâh-ud-Dîn wished his father to accept the office, but Aiyûb refused, saying, “The Almighty hath chosen thee, my son, for this office, and consequently no one else is worthy of it.” Aiyûb was killed from injuries sustained by a fall from his horse, which threw him when he was viewing Šalâh-ud-Dîn’s troops file past before the Bâb-un-Nâṣr [the Naṣr Gate] of Kâhirah, on an expedition against Karak, in Zi-Hijjah, 567 H., about three years after Asad’s death. Aiyûb entered Kâhirah in Rajab, 565 H., and ‘Âzîd, the Ismâ‘îlîân Khalîfâh, in order to gratify Šalâh-ud-Dîn, came forth to receive his father, whom he treated with great reverence and distinction.

1 Sic in MSS.

2 Our author must have been a very simple-minded man indeed if he believed this; but many of his statements are equally childish and absurd.
the Sultan's sight, and seldom used to present himself to the Sultan's observation.

The author heard from Khwājah Muzhir, a merchant, that, at the period in question, one night Sultan Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn saw, in a dream, that he was in Miṣr, and that, at night, some people seized him, and took him away to the palace of the sovereign, and, having placed a tent-rope around his neck, they hung him up from the battlements of the palace. The terror which this produced awoke him from his sleep, and his apprehension became still greater than before, and he was constantly overwhelmed with anxiety*. Unexpectedly, the envoy from the 'Alawīs of Miṣr arrived to solicit aid from Sultan Nur-ud-Dīn, as has been related previously. The Sultan appointed Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn's uncle, Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, to proceed thither, and he solicited that his nephew, Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn, should be allowed to accompany him.

The latter was so overcome with fear, caused by this dream, that he went to an interpreter of dreams, and related the dream to him. The interpreter said:—"May the sovereignty of Miṣr be propitious! Allow no anxiety to find a way into thy mind, for the Almighty God will make thee a great king." On the strength of that interpretation, with a buoyant heart and with expanded hope, he reached Miṣr, where all those circumstances happened to him and to his uncle, as already stated.

When his uncle died, the people of Miṣr and the troops of Šāhām were agreeable to his assuming the sovereignty, but he would not in any way assent to it4. When the

* These are the exact words of our author; but the story is related somewhat differently. "One night, before he had gone to Miṣr, he saw in a dream that a party of people, having put a tent-rope about his neck, drew him up to the battlements of the metropolis of Miṣr by the neck. When Asad-ud-Dīn was about to proceed into that country, he used to endeavour to persuade Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn to accompany him; but the latter, on account of this dream, which he kept secret, used to manifest great disinclination to accede. At length, having communicated the dream to an interpreter of dreams, he was told that it signified he should become ruler of that country, and after this he was quite willing to go."

4 Another of our author's absurdities or wilful perversions of facts. After the death of Asad-ud-Dīn, his nephew, Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn, was chosen Wazīr, from among several candidates, by the Ismā'īlī Khalīfah, 'Azīd, as he considered Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn rather weak in intellect, and less to be feared than the others, in which he greatly deceived himself. Instead of seizing people's
importunity of people, however, exceeded all bounds, Sultan Salah-ud-Din commanded, saying:—“I will comply
property and effects, Salah-ud-Din began to appropriate their hearts, by
making them his own; and he likewise resolved to lead a new life, and
renounced wine and women, riotous living and amusements, and other vicious
practices. Having obtained the direction of the affairs of the country, Salah-
ud-Din issued commands to read the Khutbah for Nur-ud-Din; and the latter
addressed him in all his communications as the Amr-i-Sipah-salar ['Azid
having previously given him the title of Malik-un-Nasir}. As Salah-ud-Din
acquired the attachment of the people, 'Azid lost it; and he now sent for his
brothers, who were in the service of Nur-ud-Din, who would not allow them to
go, mentioning, as his reason, his fear lest either of them should become hostile to
his brother Salah-ud-Din, but the truth was Nur-ud-Din suspected his motives.
However, when Nur-ud-Din subsequently despatched his troops to operate
against the Farangs, who had invaded the Misriah territory, he entrusted
Salah-ud-Din's elder brother, Shams-ud-Daulah, Turan Shah, with a com-
mand in that army, but with orders that he was not to consider Yusuf [Salah-
ud-Din} as his younger brother, but as the lord of Misr, and his [Nur-ud-
Din's} lieutenant and representative; and this order Turan Shah agreed to
obey.
Ibn Asir says, that, when Salah-ud-Din had become firmly established, Nur-
ud-Din sent to command him to give up reading the Khutbah for 'Azid, and
to read it for the Abbasi Khalifahs. Salah-ud-Din excused himself by saying
that the people were well-inclined towards the present family, and he feared,
if he obeyed, that an insurrection would take place. Nur-ud-Din, however,
Wrote the second and the third time to order him to do so, and Salah-ud-Din, not
daring to disobey the reiterated commands of his suzerain, was in a dilemma,
but it so happened that 'Azid was about this time taken ill. Salah-ud-Din
now consulted with the chiefs and nobles as to what should be done; but
some said one thing and some another, and the difficulty was as great as
before. At this juncture, a person of some note, named Amir-i-'Alim [Guzi-
dah calls him Najm-ud-Din], an 'Amir, who had come to Miṣr, offered to
take the initiative, if permitted; and, on the first Friday in the month of
Muharram, before the Khatib [the preacher who pronounces the Khutbah]
entered the pulpit, this 'Amir got into it, and prayed for the 'Abbasi Khalif-
fhah, Imam Mustaṣi B'nur-Ullah. The Miṣrihs who were present made no
objection, and the next Friday Salah-ud-Din directed that the Khutbah for
'Azid should be discontinued at Kahirah and at Miṣr [the old capital], and that
for Mustaṣi B'nur-Ullah adopted, and also in other parts of the Diyar-i-Misrīah.
The disorder of 'Azid had increased, and this matter was, in consequence, not
communicated to him, because, in case he ever arose from his bed again, he
would soon hear of it, and if not, of what use was it to afflict him? Salah-ud-
Din took care, however, to separate the family, slaves, and dependents of 'Azid
from each other, and to provide for the security of the dying man's wealth and
effects. Before his death, 'Azid sent for him; but, fearing treachery, as he pre-
tended, Salah-ud-Din did not go, and regretted it afterwards. 'Azid died 1oth
of Muharram, 567 H. [Faṣīb-Ī says 565 H.], and the 'Ubaidī Ismā'īlī dynasty
terminated. [According to Vertot vol. ii. p. 209, Salah-ud-Din had the
Khālfah murdered in or out of his bath, and says it was narrated freely by
the Christians, but that the Moslems were silent on the matter.] When the
Abbāsī Khalīfah, Al-Mustaṣi B'nur-Ullah, received information that the
Khutbah had been read for him in Miṣrīah, he despatched İmād-ud-Din, a
with your solicitations. On the stipulation that you attend to a request of mine." To this demand of his they signified their assent. Sultan Salah-ud-Din commanded that they should assemble, on the morrow, in the great mosque, at which time he would make his request known to them, and accept the sovereignty of Miṣr. To this all pledged their faith; and the next day they all assembled in the great mosque of Miṣr, and solicited that he would mention his request.

Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din demanded that they should give their allegiance to the Khalifahs of the house of 'Abbās as the successors of the Prophet and chief patriarchs. The people all agreed to pledge their fealty to the house of 'Abbās; and, at that time, the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mustażāī B'amr-Ullah*, filled the office of Khalifah, and the Khutbah was pronounced in the name of the 'Abbāsi family. A despatch announcing this triumph was forwarded to Bagh-dād, the capital of the Khalifahs, together with the standard of the Farangs, inverted, and the flags of the Karāmiṭāḥ heretics, to the presence of the Khalifah, Al-Mustażāī B'amr-Ullah.

From the capital of Islām, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din received the title of Malik-un-Nāṣir*, and he became sovereign of Miṣr; venerable and illustrious dependent of the 'Abbāsī dynasty, to Şām, with rich dresses of honour for Nūr-ud-Dīn—to the sovereign, not to his lieutenant, Ṣalāḥ ud-Dīn,—but robes of honour were also despatched to Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, together with black hangings for the pulpits of Miṣrīah, as the Ismā'īlī colour was green.

In 569 H. Nūr-ud-Dīn directed Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn to assemble the forces of Miṣrīah, and march against the Christian territory, and invest Karak, and promised to come himself likewise. Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn reported his departure 20th of Muḥarram, from Kāhirah; and Nūr-ud-Dīn, on receipt of his despatch at Damashḵ, marched towards Karak, and, having reached it, fully expected the arrival of Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn and his forces. He was, however, too cunning to trust himself in the power of his master, and wrote excusing himself on account of pretended disaffection in Miṣrīah. Nūr-ud-Dīn repeated his commands without avail, and had serious intentions of marching into the country and removing his disobedient lieutenant. Ibn-i-Shadād gives a different account of this circumstance, which is too long for insertion here, and says it happened in 568 H. Nūr-ud-Dīn died in 569 H.

* This statement is totally incorrect: the title was conferred upon him by 'Āṣid, the Ismā'īlī Khalifah, when Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn became his Wazīr.
and, at this time also, Sultan Nūr-ud-Din died⁷. Sultan Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn marched into Šām, and assumed the throne of sovereignty, as has been previously stated. He conferred the [government of the] territory of Miṣr upon one of his sons, Malik-ul-ʾAzīz, and another son, Malik-ul-Afżal, he nominated to be his heir; and upon his brother, Malik-ul-ʾĀdil, he conferred the province of Diyār-i-Bakr.

One of the most distinguished [persons] of the trustworthy has related, that, when the news of the accession of Sultan Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn reached the territories of Rūm and the Ḷaṅgars⁸ of the Farangs, a countless army came from the country of the infidels, and advanced into Šām, and fought a battle with Sultan Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn before the gate of Damāshk⁹. The army of Ĩslām was defeated and overthrown, and the Sultan, flying before them, retired within the walls of the city of Damāshk. The infidels pitched their camp before the gates of the place, and the Musal-māns sustained great calamity and misery.

Sultan Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn assembled the inhabitants of Damāshk in a certain place, in order to induce them to pledge themselves to make holy war upon the infidels, and to attack them and drive them away. He deputed one of the godly 'Ulama to ascend the pulpit, to speak a few words in order to incite the people to holy warfare, and urge them

---

⁷ Nūr-ud-Dīn did not die 'until 569 H., and the Khutbah was read for the 'Abbāsīs in 567 H.
⁸ The plural form is used in all the copies of the text collated.
⁹ This assertion is totally false: during the whole of the reign of Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, and the numerous battles that took place therein, no battle was ever fought before Damāshk between him and the Farangs. The rest of our author's statement may be depended upon accordingly. It is something like 700 horse routing 80,000 Crusaders, and their dead lying in heaps for miles. Our worthy author probably considered, when he wrote this, that, as Hindūstān was such a far-off country, he might make any statement for the glorification of the Musal-mān faith with impunity. The great battles that took place during the reign of Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, of course, are not mentioned, and were probably unknown to Minhāj-i-Sarāj, who was "so industrious in collecting information from 'trustworthy persons,' and who often [very!] mentions his authority for the facts he records"—of which, probably, the matter of the rings for the ears of the Crusaders farther on is one. Our author has evidently been confused about the investment of Damāshk in the year 543 H., some years before Sultan Nūr-ud-Dīn obtained possession of it, when Šalāḥ-ud-Dīn was in his eleventh year, and in the defence of which city his eldest brother, Amīr Nūr-ud-Daulah Shāhan Šāh, so greatly distinguished himself, and died of the wounds he received on that occasion.
to enter into conflict with the infidels. The godly ecclesiastic, with all sincerity of heart, turned his face towards Şalāh-ud-Dīn, and said:—“Oh, Şalāh-ud-Dīn, from thy mouth, thy tongue, and thy person, emanateth the effluvium of Satan's urine! How canst thou expect that the Most High God will ratify thy vow? how can it be regarded as real and sincere?”

This reproof, by the grace of God, took effect upon the august heart of Şalāh-ud-Dīn. He got up, and on the hand of that godly ecclesiastic he expressed contrition, and renounced wine and all other sins. The people, with sincere eagerness and willingness, renewed to him their vows to undertake holy war; and from that very spot they turned their faces in the direction of the scene of holy warfare. The whole of the people issued from the city, and they fell upon the army of the infidels. The Most High God sent them heavenly assistance, and the enemies of the faith were defeated and overthrown, and such a vast number of them were sent to Hell by the stroke of the sword of the defenders of the true faith, as cannot be numbered or computed. The whole of the Malikś [princes], and

1 Şalāh-ud-Dīn was too wise to trust to “the people” to make holy war and defend his cities. He depended more upon his hardy troops, well knowing that rabble cannot be turned into soldiers at a nod of the head.

2 See beginning of note *, p. 216. Our author confounds both times as well as events.

3 Şalāh-ud-Dīn’s total overthrow, near ‘Aṣkālān, at the head of an immense force by the sick king Baldwin IV.—at the time that Şalāh-ud-Dīn marched against Jerusalem in Nov. 1179 A.D. = 575 H., when Odo de St. Amand, the Master of the Temple, at the head of eighty of his knights rode through Şalāh-ud-Dīn’s Mamlūk body-guard of a thousand picked men, in coats of mail and saffron coloured mantles, and penetrated to Şalāh-ud-Dīn’s own tent, from which he with difficulty escaped almost naked, and had scarcely time to scramble up the back of a fleet dromedary and make for the desert—is an event which our author would scorn to chronicle. On this occasion, pigeons spread over Egypt the triumphant news of a victory, in order, as the Arab chroniclers say, “to quiet the minds of the people,” although scarcely one of the Egyptian army ever got back to Egypt again. Neither would our author condescend to chronicle the crushing defeat, inflicted upon Şalāh-ud-Dīn and his immense host, by Richard Cceur-de-Lion, and his French and Burgundian allies, near Arṣūf, in 1191 A.D. = 587 H., nor the alacrity with which, soon after, he agreed to enter into a treaty with Richard [who had rebellion at home to crush], when his forces were in such a woeful plight, but the real state of his affairs unknown to the Christians.

4 The word Malik may mean king here; and our author might have desired his readers to believe that all the kings of the Franks were made captive.
nobles, and chief personages among the Farangs were made captives.

The Islamis having become victorious and triumphant, Sultan Salah-ud-Din directed every one to devise [means] for the disposal of the Farang captives. At last the Sultan determined to set the whole of them at liberty, and they were set free accordingly; and he made them signify their repentance, and conferred gifts upon them. After they had departed to the distance of a day's journey, they sent a representation to the Sultan, saying:—"We are all your servants, set at liberty by you: send to each of us a ring that we may insert it in our ears"; and then we will depart." The Sultan commanded that a sufficient number of rings should be prepared, of pure gold, sufficient to supply every one of them with one of the weight of one mişkâl; and they were sent to them, and the whole of the liberated captives inserted the rings in their ears, and they went away; and of that host not one person ever again came to fight against the Sultan's troops.

Sultan Salah-ud-Din became firmly established, and his illustrious deeds in Islam will endure. He reigned for a very long period, and died. He had six sons, whose titles were as follows:—Malik-uz-Zahir, Malik-ul-Afzal, Probably he heard something about Salah-ud-Din's encounters with the Latin Christians and the battle of Tiberias, just before the capitulation of Jerusalem in 583 H., and has confounded them with the investment of Damascus by the Emperor Conrad and Louis VII. in 541 H., some years before the death of Zangi, Nur-ud-Din's father, when Salah-ud-Din was about nine years old. He has made a precious hash of the account of the Kurdish rulers, and of Salah-ud-Din's reign in particular.

Rings in the ears are emblems of slavery. Bigoted Mutas, like our author, stick at no falsehoods in their endeavours to enhance the deeds of their confessionalists; but the 'Arab chroniclers of the Crusades are very different, and their writings, generally, bear the stamp of truth. I need scarcely say that their accounts are very different to our author's, and that such an absurd statement will not be found in any of their writings.

6 He knows all about the rings and their weight, but he does not know how long Salah-ud-Din ruled, or when he died. All his sovereigns reign "for a long period, and die;" and the same stereotyped expression answers for Asad-ud-Din, Salah-ud-Din's uncle, who never reigned at all, but was the Wazir of Egypt for sixty-five days, and for Salah-ud-Din, who reigned [after Nur-ud-Din's death] from 569 to 589 H.

6 Salah-ud-Din had a number of sons, but the names of six only have been recorded; the others may have died very young. The correct titles and names of the six referred to are as follows:—

1. Abu-l-Hasan-i-'Ali, Malik-ul-Afzal, Nur-ud-Din, who was the eldest

VI. MALIK-UL-AFZAL, 'ALI, SON OF SALAH-UD-DIN, YUSUF, SON OF AIYUB, AL-KURDI.

Malik-ul-Afzal, 'Ali, was the heir of Sultan Salah-ud-Din, Yusuf; and on the death of the Sultan he ascended the throne of the territories of Damashk and Shām.

All presented themselves before him, and paid him homage, and submitted to him, with the exception of Malik-ul-'Aziz, his brother, who was ruler of Miṣr. He led an army into Shām in order to claim the sovereignty from 'Aziz; and Malik-ul-'Ādil, Abū-Bikr, son of Aiyūb, the brother of [the late] Salāḥ-ud-Dīn, and who held the territory of Diyar-i-Bakr, took part with [his nephew] Malik-ul-'Aziz. They invested Malik-ul-Afzal within the walls of Damashk, and for a considerable time contention continued between them. At length it was agreed that Damashk should be given up to Malik-ul-'Aziz, and peace was effected. The territory of Sar-hadd, which is a tract of country in Shām, was assigned to Malik-ul-Afzal.

1 The word here used is unintelligible. It is written in different ways in nearly every copy and also Yāfāʾ says, which means "a place on the frontier." There is a place called "Sar-khad."
He was a learned and very enlightened man, and composed beautiful poetry. The situation in which he was placed, together with the condition of his brother, who was named 'Uṣmān [Malik-ul-'Azīz], and their uncle, Abū-Ḥakīm [Malik-ul-'Adīl], he depicted in the two following couplets, and sent them to the Court of Bagdad, to the Khalifah, Un-Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-Ullah; for the office of Khalifah had fallen to Imam, Un-Nāṣir. The two couplets are as follows:

« My lord! Abū-Ḥakīm and his companion, 'Uṣmān, Have, by the sword, deprived 'Alī of his right. Remark the fatality of the name; how it suffers, from the last, The same wrong as from the first [generation] it endured. »

After some time expired, Malik-ul-'Azīz died, and Malik ul-Afzal was entreated to come into Mīṣr. He proceeded thither, and from thence he brought an army into Shām. Malik-ul-'Azīz had made over Shām to his uncle, Malik-ul-'Adīl, and he and Malik-ul-Afzal came to a battle, and the latter was defeated. At length, however, Malik-ul-Afzal chanced to have a meeting with his uncle, who gave him Samisat. He remained there for a long time, and he died.

VII. MALIK-UL-‘AZIZ, ‘UṢMĀN, SON OF ŚALĀḤ-UD-DĪN, YūSUF, SON OF AIYŪB, AL-KURDĪ

The name of Malik-ul-'Azīz was 'Uṣmān; and, when Sultān Śalāḥ-ud-Dīn came to the throne of Shām, and the other writers say Afzal was a state prisoner when his brother died, and that he was invited to Mīṣr to act as Atā-bak to 'Azīz's son, Malik-ul-Manṣūr.

The celebrated historian, the learned Abū-l-Fath-i-Nagr-ullah, son of Ziya-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Shībānī, surnamed Iḥn Aṣīr, was Malik-ul-Afzal's Wazīr.

Yafā’ī has four lines more. The reference of course is to the Khalifah 'Alī and the two first Khalfahs.

All the copies of the text are alike here; but, as 'Azīz died in Mīṣr, Afzal was invited to come to Mīṣr. See last paragraph of the next reign, page 224.

After assuming the throne of Mīṣr after 'Azīz's death, Afzal invested his uncle, 'Aḍīl, within the walls of Damašk, and reduced him to great straits; but his son, Kāmil, having advanced from the eastern parts with an army, raised the investment, and the father and son overcame Afzal, and deprived him of Mīṣr, and he was fain to content himself with Samisat.

Some write this name Samisat, others, Shamsat, and some, Şamişat. The last, however, seems most correct.

In 622 H.
dominions of Şam and the territories of Miṣr, Diyar-i-
Bakr, Filistin, and Sikandarîyah came under his sway, he
conferred the throne of Miṣr upon his eldest son, who bore
the title of Malik-ul-ʿAzîz. He brought that country
under subjection, and was a man of tact and capacity, and
in the guardianship of that country, he showed many
laudable dispositions.

When his father, Sultan Salah-ud-Dîn, died, Malik-ul-
ʿAzîz led an army from Miṣr and appeared before Đamâshk; and his uncle, Malik-ul-ʿĀdîl, joined him. He
wrested the territories of Diyar-i-Bakr and Đamâshk out
of the hands of his brother, Malik-ul-Afżal, and gave up to
his uncle, Malik-ul-ʿĀdîl, Şam and Đamâshk and the
whole of that region, and returned again to Miṣr.

A short time afterwards the decree of destîny overtook
him, and he sustained a fall from his horse, and broke his
neck, and he died. After this occurrence, Malik-ul-Afżal
came into Miṣr, and took possession of that country.1

VIII. MALIK-UL-ʿĀDIL, ABÛ-BIKR, SON OF AİYÜB, SON OF
SHÂDI, AL-KURDI.

Some time subsequent to Malik-ul-ʿĀdîl’s having ascended the throne of the kingdom of Şam, and after he
had defeated Malik-ul-Afżal, who had brought an army
from the side of Miṣr, and he [ʿĀdîl] had reduced the
various provinces of the territory [entrusted to him] under
his sway, the daughter of a Kâïṣar of the Farangs entered

8 ʿAzîz was the second, not the eldest son. Afżal was the eldest of
Salâh-ud-Dîn’s sons, according to Yâfa’ī and other chroniclers. See note p. 221. ʿAzîz was merely his father’s lieutenant in Miṣr.
9 The first attempt on the part of ʿAzîz to depriye his brother of Đamâshk did not succeed; but on the second occasion he succeeded.
1 See page 223, and note 4.
2 His correct titles and name are, Malik-ul-ʿĀdîl, Saif-ud-Dîn, Abû-Bikr-i-
Muḥammad.
3 Our author has neglected—for a very good reason, doubtless—to name his
“trustworthy” authority for this statement, of a piece with the “rings,” and
the like. There is nothing whatever contained in any of the authorities I have
consulted to warrant such an assertion, not even that a Christian female had
had the misfortune to be his captive, and was immured in his Ḥaram, much
less a Christian princess. Such a circumstance, if true, was not likely to have
been passed over in silence.
his *haram*, and he married her, and that daughter bore him several children.

This Malik-ul-ʿĀdil was a sagacious, discerning, competent, experienced, and crafty man, and he ruled for a great number of years. He held possession of the different parts [of his territory], to the best of his judgment and ability; and his adversaries kept quietly and peaceably each within his own dominions, and hence he had but seldom to carry on hostilities*.

He had several distinguished sons, who acquired great

* Malik-ul-ʿĀdil accompanied his uncle, Asad-ud-Dīn, when the latter was despatched into Miṣr by Nūr-ud-Dīn, at which time Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn also went, as previously related. When Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn acquired power in that country, he sent his brother, ʿĀdil, as his representative into Shām; and, when Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn marched against Karak, in Rābīʿ-ul-Awwal, 579 H., ʿĀdil was left in Miṣr, but he was summoned from thence, with all the available troops, to join Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, as the Christians had assembled in strong force with hostile intent against the Musalmāns. ʿĀdil joined him there accordingly, with an immense army, in ʿAṣṣābiyyān of the same year. When Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn gained possession of Ḥalāb, in the same year, he bestowed it upon ʿĀdil, having taken it from his own son Malik-ūṭ-Ṭāhir, to whom he had just before entrusted it. Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn was in the habit of placing his strongholds in charge of his brothers and nephews and other kinsmen, and not of entrusting them to his sons. At last, Sulṭānān, one of the Amīrs [nobles] of Ḥalāb, an old friend of Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, expostulated with him on the subject and it took effect, and he at once gave back Ḥalāb to Ṭāhir. When Sulṭān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn went against Maʿṣūlīn, in ʿAṣṣābiyyān, 581 H., and was taken ill, and a peace was concluded between him and ʿIzz-ud-Dīn Maṣʿūd, of Maʿṣūlīn, he was joined at Ḥarrān, by his brother ʿĀdil, on whom he had conferred the fiefs of Ḥarrān, Ruhā [Edessa], and Miḥārīn [Martyropolis], after which the Sulṭān returned to Dāmāšḵ.

After the Crusaders, under Richard Cœur-de-Lion and Philip Augustus, took ʿAkkā [Acre], in Jamāḍī-ul-ʿĀkhīr, 587 H., when "the Musalmāns sustained such a great calamity," and the Christians were preparing to march against ʿAṣḵalān [Ascalon], Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, in consultation with the chiefs of his forces, determined to entrust his brother ʿĀdil with a portion of his army, to hold the Christians in check, whilst he himself, with the remainder, proceeded to ʿAṣḵalān to raze it, in order to deter the enemy from marching thither. Whilst engaged in this operation, during the same night, a messenger arrived from Malik-ul-ʿĀdil, saying that the Christians were willing to make peace, if the coast towns were ceded to them. Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, finding his troops so disorganized and dispirited, was under the necessity of agreeing, and he wrote to ʿĀdil to make an accommodation on the best terms he could. The authorities, from which these details are taken, agree generally with European chroniclers of the Crusades at this period, and their writings are free from such nonsense as our author writes.

ʿĀdil did not succeed to the sovereignty of Egypt and Dāmāšḵ until after the death of his nephew ʿAzīz, and ousting the latter's son, Malik-ul-Manṣūr, under pretence of serving whom he came into Miṣr, from the former country. The Ḳhūṭba was read for him there in Shawwāl, 596 H., and at Ḥalāb, in 598 H., when he obtained sway over it and other parts of Shām and the eastern provinces.
renown, such as Malik-ul-Kāmil, Malik-ul-Muazzam-i-ʻIsā, Malik-ul-ʻAshraf, Malik-ul-ʻAṣīr, Malik-ul-ʻAmjad, Malik-ul-ʻAshraf, Malik-ul-ʻAwhad, Malik-ul-Mamdūd, Malik-ul-ʻAmjad, and Malik-ul-ʻUs-Salih-i-ʻIsmaʻīl. Each one of them was a sovereign over a different tract of territory comprised within his dominions; and the annals of the good works, and the circumstances of the sovereignty of his sons, will remain [inscribed] on the pages of time, in the countries of Hijāz, Shām, and Yaman, until the resurrection at the last day.

Each of the different portions of his dominions Malik-ul-ʻAdil conferred upon one of his sons, whilst he himself continually moved about from one part to another with his forces, and, with equity and sagacity, guarded and watched over them.

He always had a bow at his side, and such was his great strength, that no one in that part, or at that time, could bend his bow on account of its great tallness. He was noted, both by friend and foe, for his truthfulness of word. The whole of the enemies of his country, who were the infidels of Rūm and the Farangs, placed implicit trust in his word; for the dust of falsehood had never soiled the skirts of the robe of his word and his promise. Throughout his dominions no human being suffered from tyranny or oppression.

He reigned in tranquillity and affluence for a period of thirty odd years, and died*. 

* 'Ābid, in one copy.  
6 Ghānī, in two copies. 
7 The word used by our author is “Bādshāhs,” but his sons were only his lieutenants charged with the administration, subject to his control. When he became firmly established in his dominions, he divided them among his sons, giving each of them charge of one or more provinces. To Malik-ul-Kāmil he assigned the Diyar-i-Miṣrī, to Malik-ul-Muazzam the territory of Shāmījah, to Malik-ul-ʻAshraf the Shārkīyah [the eastern parts], and to Malik-ul-ʻAshraf the territory of Mīfārkīn; and, in 610 H., after he had established his authority over Yaman, and Awḥad had been sent to Mīfārkīn, another son, Malik-ul-Masʻūd, was sent to Yaman. 
8 Malik-ul-ʻAdil died in Jamādī-ul-ʻĀkhīr, 615 H., near the village of 'Ālīn, in sight of Dāmashk, when moving against the Christians, who had entered the coasts of Shām. Hearing of his death, they gave up their designs on Shām, and turned their thoughts towards Egypt, and appeared before Dimyat [Damietta]. He was a man of great wisdom and intellect, of considerable judgment and conception, of good disposition and temperament, constant to his religious duties and attendance at public worship, a follower of the orthodox, inclined to learned men, and, altogether, a fortunate and august personage. He was alike abstemious in his food, and moderate in his passions.
IX. MALIK-UL-MUazziM, 'ISĀ, SON OF ABU-BIKR, SON OF AIYŪB, SON OF SHĀDI, AL-KURDI.

Malik-ul-Muazzam was a learned monarch, and endowed with great accomplishments, and Almighty God had dignified him with great attainments.

Among the sons of Malik-ul-'Adil, who observed the ordinances of the followers of the traditions of the sect of Shafi'i, Malik-ul-Muazzam was the only one who was of the sect of the great Imam, Abū Ḥanifah-i-Nu'mān, son of Ṣābit, Al-Kūf.

During the troubles in the territories of 'Ajam, when the 'Ulama of Khurasan, and Mawar-un-Nahr, became dispersed at the period of the inroad of the infidels of Chin, Imām Sharaf-ud-Dīn, Adīmī, who was a prodigy in the science of theology and religious jurisprudence, and Imām Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Ḥaṣīrī, who was a master in the science of physiognomy, came and presented themselves at his Court. Malik-ul-Muazzam became the disciple of these two great Imāms, and other eminent 'Ulama,—the mercy of the Almighty be upon the whole of them!—and assigned them emoluments and rewards, and fixed places for their abode. He, however, sought mostly to secure the presence of Muḥammad Husain, Shībānī.

The brother of Malik-ul-Muazzam, Malik-ul-'Ādil, was by the same mother as himself, and for a long time was

9 Most other writers place Malik-ul-Kāmil, the other son of 'Ādil, next after his father as ruler of Miṣr; but our author has reversed them. Malik-ul-Muazzam's proper titles and name are, Al-Malik-ul-Muazzam, Sharaf-ud-Dīn, 'Īsā. To read our author's account of him, one would imagine that he reigned over the whole of his father's territories, but such was not the case. He held a large portion of Shām, but never reigned in Miṣr at all; and, at his death, at Damāshq, in 624 H., his son, Malik-un-Nāṣir, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn-i-Dā'ūd, succeeded him as ruler of that territory. The latter died in 650 H.

1 One author says of him:—“He was a man of great firmness and resolution, bold and intrepid, of great stateliness and gravity, high-minded and endowed with many virtues and excellencies, the friend and patron of ecclesiastics and learned men, strongly attached to the doctrines of the Ḥanifāh sect, in fact, the only one of the race of Aiyūb who was a follower of Abū Ḥanifah. He had performed the pilgrimage to Makkah and Madīnah, and was, altogether, one of the best and the most inestimable of men.”

2 Also written, Ḥaṣīrī.

3 In two copies, Ḥasan.
his brother's associate and lieutenant in the territory of Damashk [?].

Malik-ul-Mu'azzam reigned for a considerable period, and died.

X. MALIK-UL-KAMIL 4, SON OF ABÛ-BIKR, SON OF AIYÜB, SON OF SHÂDÎ, AL-KURDÎ.

Malik-ul-Kâmil was his father's heir, and ascended the throne of Miṣr after his father's death. On the decease of his brother, Malik-ul-Mu'azzam, he brought the territories of Shâm under his jurisdiction. He conferred the sovereignty of the territory of Yaman upon his son, who was named Malik Mas'ûd, and also brought Hijaz under his sway.

His names are Abû-l-Ma'âlî, Muḥammad, entitled Al-Malik-ul-Kâmil, Nâṣîr-ud-Dîn. He was about the greatest of his family, and, of course, our author has said the least about him. He held the government of the territory of Miṣr during his father's lifetime, and at his death assumed the sovereignty over it. It will be remembered that his father, Malik-ul-'Âdîl, died when on his way to oppose the Christians, who, on hearing of his death, turned their arms against Miṣr. They had now reached Dimyat. Malik-ul-Kâmil assembled a large force to repel them, and was joined by his brother, Malik-ul-Mu'azzam, Lord of Damashk, who by his tact prevented Kâmil's being dethroned by his own nobles, and his brother Malik-ul-Fâ'îz, Sâbîk-ud-Dîn, Ibrâhîm. After the Christians had taken Dimyat, they determined to advance to Kâhirah and Miṣr; but the Almighty gave Kâmil success, and the Christians abandoned the strong position they had taken up in the prosecution of their design, and an accommodation was come to 11th of Rajab, 618 H., and the Christians returned to their own territories, after they had remained between Shâm and Miṣr for forty months [four?] and seventeen days.

Malik-ul-Kâmil raised a dome over the tomb of Imam Shâfi'î, on the banks of the Nile; and, when his brother, Malik-ul-Mu'azzam of Shâm, died, and the latter's son, Malik-un-Nâṣîr, succeeded him, Kâmil marched from Miṣr to deprive him of his territory. He was joined by another brother, Malik-ul-Ashraf, Muẓaffar-ud-Dîn, Mûsâ; and, having subdued Shâm in 625 H., he bestowed it upon Ashraf instead of the eastern provinces, which he resumed, and set out for those parts. It was at this time that Sultan Jalâl-ud-Dîn, Khwârazm Shâh, invested Khalât [also called Akhât]. Kâmil subsequently made his son, Najm-ud-Dîn, Abû-l-Muẓaffar, Aïyûb, his lieutenant over the eastern parts, and his youngest son, Saïf-ud-Dîn, Abû-Bikr, lieutenant in the Miṣrîah territory, and another son, Mas'ûd, he sent into Yaman. The latter annexed Makkah, and the Hijaz territory; and the empire of Kâmil became of vast extent. When the Khâṭîb of Makkah, on Fridays, prayed for him, he styled him, "Lord of Makkah, 'Ubaidsîn, Yaman, Baidân, Miṣr, Sa'idân, Shâm, Şanâdîn, the Jazîrah, and Wâlîdân, Sulṭân-ul-Kâlibâlatan wa Rabb-ul-'Alâmatala-igung-Shîrîf, Abû-l-Ma'alî, Muḥammad, Al-Malik-ul-Kâmil, Nâṣîr-ud-Dîn, Khalîl-i-Amir-ul-Mûmînîn." I have not space to say more. He died at Damashk in Râjâb, 635 H.
In the direction of Rūm and 'Arab, he undertook numerous expeditions against infidels, and waged holy war as by orthodox law required; and, after having ruled over the kingdom for some time, he died.

XI. MALIK-US-SĀLIH, SON OF AL-KĀMIL, SON OF ABŪ-BIKR, SON OF AİYÜB, SON OF SHĀDİ, AL-KURDİ.

Malik-us-Sāliḥ was his father's heir, and, when Malik-ul-Kāmil departed this life, Malik-us-Sāliḥ ascended the

* The nearer he approaches his own time, the more our author blunders, and the shorter and more confused his accounts become. Here, the ruler of Misr is said to be ruler of Shām, and vice verād. After the death of Malik-ul-Kāmil, his empire soon fell into utter disorder and confusion. His son, Malik-ul-Ādil, Abū-Bikr, who was a youth, succeeded; and his cousin, Malik-ul-Jawād, Muṣṭafār-ud-Dīn, Yūnas, son of Shams-ud-Dīn, Maudūd, son of 'Adil [Ṣāliḥ-ud-Dīn's brother, and father of Malik-ul-Kāmil], became his deputy with the accord of the nobles of Kāmil. Malik-ul-Ādil exercised the sovereignty, or held the name of sovereign rather, for about two years, when his nobles assembled together at Balbīs, seized him, and sent for his brother, MALIK-US-SĀLIH, NAJM-UD-DIN, AİYÜB, who was at Damascus, which he had promised to give up to Malik-ul-Jawād for other territory. On this, Salīh's uncle, also called Malik-us-Sāliḥ, ʿImād-ud-Dīn, Lord of Baʿalbak, being supported by Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, Asad-i-Sher-i-Koh, Lord of Ḥoms, when Salīh [son of Kāmil] set out towards Misriah, and remained encamped at Balbīs for some time, made a dash upon Damascus and gained possession of it. Malik-us-Sāliḥ's [son of Kāmil] adherents, fearing for the safety of their families and homes at Damascus, deserted him, and left him nearly alone in his camp at Balbīs, and went over to Salīh, the uncle. The younger Salīh, before he could fly to some place of safety, was pounced upon by Malik-un-Nāṣir, son of Malik-ul-Muṣṣagam [son of the first ʿĀdil], Lord of Karak, who carried him off to that stronghold; but he set him at liberty again the same year, 637 H., and at the request of ʿAdil's nobles, and attended by the same Nāṣir and his forces, Malik-us-Sāliḥ [son of Kāmil] entered Kāhirah in Zi-Ka'dah of the same year. The author from whose work most of these extracts have been taken, says, "I was present there at the time, and Malik-ul-ʿĀdil was brought forth seated in a covered litter, and under an escort, and immured in the fortress of Sultānāh."

Malik-us-Sāliḥ regained possession of Damascus in 643 H., and proceeded thither, and, when on his way back to Miṣrah, was taken dangerously ill, and had to remain at Shāmūm. The Christians had resolved to attack his territory, and they reached Dimyat on Friday, 20th of Safar, 647 H. The city was totally abandoned by its inhabitants, who fled. They gained possession of the place on the following Sunday. Malik-us-Sāliḥ was removed from Shāmūm to Mansūrah, and had to be kept there, so ill was he, until the night of 14th of Shābān, when he died. His remains were deposited in the Jadīdah Masjid, and for near three months his death was concealed, until his son, Malik-ul-Muṣṣagam, Tūrān Shāh, arrived there from his fief of Kaif [or Kayif] when the Khutbah was read for him, and the father's death was made known.
throne of Miṣr, and took possession of the dominions of his father and his grandfather.

According to the best of his capability, he provided for and advanced the sons of his uncles, and his own brothers, and took measures for the safety of his dominions; but his life was a brief one, and, after a short time, he died, leaving young children behind him.

Trustworthy persons have related, that, during the calamities and troubles which happened in Iran, when the irruption of Chingiz Khān took place, a body of Turks of Khwārazm, and [several] nobles of the Khwārazm-Shāhī dynasty, retiring before the infidels of Chin, after the defeat of Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, son of Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, reached the territories of Shām and Miṣr, and possessed themselves of the dominions of the 'Ādilī dynasty. Some they slew, some passed away, and some remained. May the Almighty have mercy upon the whole of them!

Turān Shāh did not get on with his father's slaves [nobles and chiefs], and, after he had put some of them to death for their rebellious conduct, the remainder combined against him, and put him to death in Muḥarram, 648 H.

Malik-ul-'Adil died in confinement in 646 H., and left a young son named Mughis-ud-Dīn, 'Umr. He subsequently had possession of Karak and its dependencies, but was invested therein by the rebel slaves, and capitulated on terms in 662 H., but was put to death by the usurper of the Miṣrīah throne. Most authors consider the Aiyūb dynasty to have ended with Malik-ul-Muṣ̄gam, Turān Shāh. There were other branches of the same family, who ruled in different parts until the irruption of the Mughals, but I have not space to mention them here.
SECTION XVI.

THE MALIKS OF THE KHWĀRAZM-SHĀHĪAH DYNASTY.

Respecting this notice of the Maliks of the Turks, and the Sulṭāns of Khwārazm, the Almighty's humble servant, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jurjānī, states, that, as the account of the rulers of the different nations, from first to last, is now being compiled in the name of his Majesty, the Sulṭān of Sulṭāns of both Turk and 'Ajam, Nāṣir-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din, Abū-l-Muẓaffar-i-Maḥmūd, son of the Sulṭān I-yal-timīsh—May the Almighty perpetuate his dominion and his sovereignty!—he thinks it expedient to enter here the account of the dynasty of the Sulṭāns and Maliks of Khwārazm, the standards of whose sovereignty, after the decline of the Sanjārī dynasty, began to float on high; into whose possession the whole of the territories of Irān came, after the extinction of the dominion of the Maliks of Ghūr and Ghaznīn; who undertook numerous expeditions against infidels, and waged many holy wars; the monuments of the goodness of whom abound in the land of Irān; and, who, in fact, were the last of the Sulṭāns of Islām.

I. KUṬB-UD-DUNYA WA UD-DĪN, I-BĀK, THE TURK.

The ancestry of these Maliks was related by Malik

1 What of the slave who reigned at Dihlī, who refused shelter to Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn—he who is, and whose descendants are, so often styled "Sulṭān over both Turk and 'Ajam," and "Sulṭān of Sulṭāns of Islām"?

2 Our author, in his account of the first two personages of this dynasty, differs wholly from other writers, and, as he has constantly made great blunders respecting other dynasties, and at times quoted authors incorrectly, his statements here, although obtained, as he asserts, from a descendant of those rulers, must be received at their worth.

Baihākī, quoting from Bü-Riḥān, mentions that the territory of Khwārazm always formed a separate sovereignty from the period when a kinsman of Bahrām-Gūr, the famous monarch of 'Ajam, acquired power over it, and also after its conquest by the 'Arabs; and further, that even after the 'Arab conquest it was not considered as a dependency of Khurāsān, like Khulān and
Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bīnāl-Tīgīn, who came from the border of Kir-

Chaghānīān were, even in the time of the Tāḥīrīs. Rulers bearing the title of Khwārazm Shāh are mentioned upwards of a century and a half previous to the dynasty now under notice, which I must briefly refer to. Our author himself adverts [page 38] to ‘Abd-ullāh, son of Aḡhān, Khwārazm Shāh, as early as 332 Ḥ.; and in the present Section farther on [page 233] again refers to them. In 386 Ḥ., mention is made of another ‘Abd-ullāh, styled Khwārazm Shāh, who in that year was made prisoner by the forces of Māmūn, son of Muḥammad, Lord of Jūrjānāh of Khwārazm. ‘Abd-ullāh was taken in fetters to Jūrjānāh, and subsequently beheaded; and the whole of Khwārazm passed under the rule of Māmūn, son of Muḥammad. The territories of Khwārazm and Jūrjānāh, had, for a considerable time, been in the possession of this family, who are styled Farīghūnī, subordinate to the Sāmānī sovereigns. In 387 Ḥ., the same year in which Nūḥ, son of Mānṣūr, Sāmānī, Amīr Sabuk-Tīgīn, and Fakhrid-Daulah, Dīlāmī, died, Māmūn, Farīghūnī, died also, and was succeeded by his son, Abū ‘Alī, who was married to a sister of Maḥmūd of Ghazānīn. ‘Alī died in 390 Ḥ., and was succeeded by his brother, Abūl-‘Abbās-ī-Māmūn [son of Māmūn]. He despatched an envoy to Maḥmūd, asking the latter’s consent to his [Abūl-‘Abbās] espousing his brother’s widow, the sister of Maḥmūd, which request was acquiesced in. This Abūl-‘Abbās was the patron of Bū-RIḥān, who passed seven years in his service. The Khālfāh, Kāḏīr Bīllāh, sent him a dress of honour, a title, and addressed him as Khwārazm Shāh; but, such was ‘Abbās’ attachment to [or fear of?] Maḥmūd, that he did not make this matter known. In 407 Ḥ. his nobles and troops rose against him, because he meditated acknowledging the suzerainty of Maḥmūd, put him to death, and set up his nephew in his stead. Maḥmūd marched into Khwārazm, to revenge his brother-in-law, slew Alb-Tīgīn [some call him Nāl-Tīgīn] ‘Abbās’ chamberlain, and other ringleaders, and the murderers of ‘Abbās, annexed the territory, and conferred the government of it upon his [own] Great Chamberlain, Altūn-Tāṣh, with the designation of Khwārazm Shāh. Abū Naṣr, son of ‘Abd-ul-Ḥirg, Farīghūnī, Wālī of Jūrjānān and the territory of Jawzjānān, of the same family, had died in 402 Ḥ., upon which Maḥmūd had annexed that territory, and had sent a Dīwān of his own to administer its affairs.

Altūn-Tāṣh, Khwārazm Shāh, presented himself at the court of his sove-

reign, Sultān Maṣʿūd, in 422 Ḥ., and died from the effects of a wound received in battle in 424 Ḥ. His son Hārūn, who succeeded, became disaffected towards Sultān Maṣʿūd, in 425 Ḥ., assumed independence, and intrigued with the Turk-
māns and Saljūks. This fact our author alludes to at pages 120 and 121, but says nothing further. Hārūn was killed in 426 Ḥ., and was succeeded by his brother, Ismāʿīl, who held Khwārazm for a short time; but he was soon after ousted by Shāh Malik, a neighbouring chief, upon whom Sultān Maṣʿūd con-
ferred it, provided he could drive out Ismāʿīl. Ismāʿīl, accordingly, having been driven out, took shelter with the Saljūks in Khurāsān. In 434 Ḥ. Sultān Ṭūghrīl annexed Khwārazm to his dominions; and but little is said about it afterwards until 475 Ḥ., when Malik Shāh, Saljūḳī, conferred the Intendancy of Khwārazm upon the slave, Nūḥ-Tīgīn-i-Ghārjāh, the father of Kūṭb-ud-
Dīn, Muḥammad, the first ruler of the dynasty mentioned by our author.

Balkā-Tīgīn [Guzdah and Jahān-Ārā style him Malikā-Tīgīn, but it is an error], one of the slaves and grandees of the court of Malik Shāh, who held the office of Tasht-dār, or Purveyor, purchased Nūḥ-Tīgīn, much in the same manner as Alb-Tīgīn, the slave of the Sāmānīs, purchased Sabuk-Tīgīn.
mān, in the year 622 H. 3, to the aid of the sons 4 of the Maliks of Nimroz, and arrived in that country, and the territories of Nimroz were left in his possession.

The author of this book came from Khāesār of Ghūr, on a mission from the august Malik, Rukn-ud-Din, Muḥammad, 'Uṣmān, Maragḥānī, in order to secure a compact, and arrived at Farāh of Sīstān, and proceeded to the presence of Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Bināl-Tīgīn.

During the conversation at the interview, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn mentioned that Malik Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bāk, the Turk, came, with his tribe and kindred, towards Jund and Khwārazm, from the side of Suḥārī 5 [or Ṣāḥārī], and from among the tribes of Kifchāk 6 and Ḥankanūli, and, for a considerable period, dwelt in those tracts, subject to the Khwārazm-Shāhī rulers, Ābū Ja’far and Māmūn 7, and their posterity, and used to subsist in the wilds and pasture-lands.

upwards of a century before, at Gharjah of Samrākand. Some consider he was of L-ghūr descent, and that he was of the Bekdālf [or Begdālf] tribe. After the decease of Bālā-Ṭīgīn, his slave, Nūsh-Ṭīgīn, who through his talents and sagacity had risen to distinction, succeeded to the office of Tāqī-dār; and as the revenues of the Khwārazm territory were assigned to defray the expenses of the Purveyorship, in the same manner as those of Khūristān were assigned for the expenses of the wardrobe, the government of the territory whence the expenses of the Purveyorship were drawn was conferred upon Nūsh-Ṭīgīn, with the title of Khwārazm Shāh.

He placed his eldest son, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, with a preceptor at Marw, to be educated in a manner becoming his station, and on the death of Nūsh-Ṭīgīn, his father, in 490 H. [some writers say in 491 H.], the lieutenant of Sultān Barkāfūrūk, in Khvāsān, at the recommendation of Sanjar, Barkāfūrūk’s brother—for Sanjar did not obtain the sovereignty until many years after—appointed Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Nūsh-Ṭīgīn’s son, after the removal of Aḥanjī, son of Tāqhdār [some call him Fāḥkār] to the government of Khwārazm; and the title which his father had held was also conferred upon him. See page 169, and note 8.

See page 199.

To the aid of one only; but all the copies have “sons of the Maliks,” as above. See page 200.

One copy has Hiṣārī [ Исарий ] which may be the most correct; but the majority of copies of the text have Suḥārī, or Ṣāḥārī [ سارий ]. Neither of these names occurs in the Masālik-wa-Mamālik. The latter word, if not a proper name, may be the plural of ‘Arabic ْسَارَ, signifying “extending, wide [as plains], wild, desert,” in which case the broad and extensive deserts of Turkistān would be meant. Yāfā-i mentions Suḥārā in one or two places.

In some few copies of the original, and in Yāfā-i, this name is written with Kḥīfchāk. It is the name of a tribe of Turks, and of a desert of Turkistān, commonly called Dasht-i-Kīpchāk.

These were of the Farīghūnī family mentioned in note 2, preceding page.
As Kutb-ud-Din was a spirited, enterprising, and high-minded chief, and of admirable temperament, the leadership of the forces of the Maliks of Khwarazm was entrusted to him, until, as Providence had decreed, the ruler of Khwarazm at that period died, and no son of his survived who could take his place, and his dominions were left without a sovereign. A daughter, however, survived him; and the whole of the great nobles of Khwarazm agreed among themselves, and gave that daughter in marriage to Malik Kutb-ud-Din. The espousals having been concluded, the name of sovereign was assigned to that daughter, and the viceroyalty was conferred upon Malik Kutb-ud-Din, the Turk, her husband.

He brought the whole of the territory of Khwarazm under his jurisdiction, and the tracts on the confines under subjection; and by his alertness, and his sagacity, restrained enemies and tyrants from violence and sedition. He also guarded the frontiers of Khwarazm Shāh from the infidels of Saksin, Bulghār, and Khishāk.

The Almighty so decreed that Malik Kutb-ud-Din had a son born to him by that lady [the daughter of the late ruler], and they gave him the name of Muhammad; and, after the termination of the lives of his mother and father, the sovereignty of Khwarazm devolved upon him.

II. MALIK TAJ-UD-DIN, MUHAMMAD, SON OF I-BAK.

When the mother of Taj-ud-Din, Muhammad, passed away, and his father died, he became ruler of the kingdom

8 From what our author says, the reader would imagine that Kutb-ud-Din was an independent ruler, but such was not the case. He was ever loyal to his Saljūkī suzerain, and was in the constant habit of attending the court of Sulṭān Sanjar every other year. When he returned to Khwarazm, his son, who succeeded him, Itsiz—called Utsuz by our author, and, by his account, Kutb-ud-Din's grandson—took his father's place at court, nominally as his representative, but in reality as security for his father's good faith. Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad, died in 521 H. [some say in 522 H.], and was succeeded by Itsiz. By no other writer is Kutb-ud-Din styled I-bak. Our author's account of him is confused, and he has evidently lost himself here again. At page 148 he says Sanjar "conferred" Khwarazm "upon the son of Khwarazm Shāh, who was one of his servants, who was the father of I-yal-Arsalān, who was the father of Takish, father of Muhammad;" and, at page 169, states that he gave the throne of Khwarazm to Malik Utsuz.

9 The father of Itsiz [Utsuz of our author], according to all authors of
of Khwarazm in succession to them. He also had a brother, and of his own father and mother, younger than himself; and upon him he conferred the government of the tribes of Kankuli and Kifchak, from which their own race had sprung, his brother having solicited it, and Malik Taj-ud-Din acceded to his request.

That same brother had sons\(^1\) who acquired great distinction, and became powerful Maliks in Khurasan and 'Irak. During the time of Sultan Takish-i-Khwarazm Shah, and his son, Sultan Muhammad, they were Maliks of Khurasan, like as was Ulugh Khan-i-Abi, Muhammad, Khan of Guzarwan\(^2\). Subsequently he became Khan of 'Irak under the name of Ata-bak, or preceptor, of the great Sultan, Rukn-ud-Din, Ghuri Shahanasti, son of Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah.

Ulugh Khan-i-Abi, Muhammad, had two sons, the eldest, Taj-ud-Din, Azabar\(^4\) Shah, and the younger, Nusrat-ud-Din, Kutlagh Shah; and there were likewise brothers' sons of Ulugh Khan-i-Abi, Muhammad, in Hindustan, such as Malik Firuz-i-I-yal-timish, son of Salar, and Malik Taj-ud-Din, Binal-Tigin, who left Hindustan, and became Malik of Sistan; and whose narrative this is,

This Malik Taj-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of I-bak, was an intrepid, just, and resolute sovereign; and he came to the Court of the Saljük sovereigns, and paid homage to authority—in fact, according to all writers but our author—was Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Nigh-Tigin-i-Gharjah, the first of the dynasty; and no person of the above name and title is mentioned by any other writer among the rulers of Khwarazm. I suspect our author has done much the same here as he has in his account of the Saljüks of Rüm—mixed up the affairs of two dynasties.

\(^1\) As other authors do not mention the name of any such ruler as Malik Taj-ud-Din, Itsiz being the second of the dynasty, and as our author himself gives no name to this said brother, although he gives names to his sons, it will be easily imagined that other authors do not name either the brother or his sons.

\(^4\) This name is somewhat doubtful, but the majority of copies have it as above written; and, in all probability, it is the place referred to by Yafa-i, up the valley of the Murghab river, which he writes Juzarwan. The other copies of the text have Gurdwan, Gurzawan, and Gurwan; and one, which is generally pretty correct, has Gujarwan—g and j are interchangeable, and ij is often used for z.

\(^2\) This name too is doubtful: there are scarcely two copies alike. One has Uruzlu, which is a proper name, as well as Hijzabr.
them. He performed great deeds, and ruled the people with equity and beneficence.

He reigned for a long time, subordinate to the Saljuqs, and died.

III. MALIK JALAL-UD-DIN, UTSUZ, KHWARAZM SHAH, SON OF TAJ-UD-DIN, MUHAMMAD.

Utsuz-i Khwarazm Shah, after the death of his father, Muhammad, brought the dominions of Khwarazm under his authority, and ruled over its people with uprightness, justice, and beneficence.

On several occasions he had to move from Khwarazm,

4 Written Itsiz and Itsiz by others [and Atsiz by Guzidah], signifying in Turkī "lean, fleshless, thin." His title was Muzaaffar-ud-Din, but some writers say it was Abī-1-Muzaффar, 'Alā-ud-Dīn. He succeeded his father by farman of Sultān Sanjār, his suzerain.

5 Kutb-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, son of Nišk-Tīgīn, and father of Itsiz, died in 521 H. [some say in 522 H.], after a reign of thirty years, and was noted for his loyalty to Sultān Sanjār.

6 He had really to fly, but our author softens it down. In the beginning of his career and government of Khwarazm, no one could have been more loyal towards Sultān Sanjār than Itsiz was, and Sanjār was also much attached to him, more particularly because Itsiz had once saved his life. This moved the envious to sow the seeds of distrust and suspicion between them. In 527 H. [some say when Sanjār marched against Bahram Shāh of Ghaznī, but this can scarcely be, as that event occurred three years after], Itsiz obtained permission to proceed to his government, although Sanjār suspected his loyalty; and in a short time after he openly showed his disaffection. Sultān Sanjār marched against him in 533 H., and invested Hazar-Asp, which was taken. Itsiz was totally defeated, and fled; and the Sultān installed his nephew, Sultān-ī Shāh, son of Muḥammad, as ruler of Khwarazm. As soon, however, as Sanjār returned to Khurasan, Itsiz again appeared; and Sultān-ī Shāh, not being sufficiently powerful to oppose him, evacuated Khwarazm, and returned to his uncle's court.

Itsiz now [535 H.] assumed independence and the title of Bāḏshāh, and coined money in his own name; and this may be partly, if not altogether, accounted for by the fact that Sanjār had sustained a defeat at the hands of the infidels of Karā-Khītā only the previous year. Some authors contend that Sanjār's defeat took place in 536 H., and that Itsiz assumed independence in 537 H. The Sultān again determined to attempt to reduce him in 538 H., on which Itsiz sought with entreaties, prayers, and costly presents, to propitiate the Sultān's anger, and was forgiven; but soon after he again showed disaffection, treated the Sultān's farman with contempt, and subsequently, in 541 H., despatched two criminals, released from prison for the purpose, to assassinate his benefactor, to show his gratitude, perhaps, for "the confidence and goodwill" of the Sultān towards him, as our author says, and for pardoning his past offences. Again [in 542 H.], or, according to Yāsīn, in 541 H.] Sanjār
sometimes out of necessity, and at others of his own free will. He marched forces against Jund, Turkistān, and Kīfchāk; and through his wisdom, abilities, and skill, he was exceedingly fortunate in all his affairs. The Court of Khwārazm, through his enlightened policy and beneficence, became the resort of the most learned men.

After obligations and stipulations had been entered into, he presented himself at the Court of Sultan Sanjar, and for some time, in conformity with his commands, Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Utsuz, continued in attendance at the Court of that Sultan until he gained the confidence and good-will of Sanjar Shāh [Sultan Sanjar], who gave him back the throne of Khwārazm.

After some period of time had elapsed, through the conduct of Malik 'Āli, Chātri, who was governor of Hirāt, with respect to Malik Utsuz, he [Utsuz] rebelled, and declined any longer to submit to the yoke, or to attend the Sultan's presence. When the dominion of the house of Sanjar came to an end, the sovereignty of Khwārazm, and the whole of the territory of Ṣuḥārī [or Ṣaḥārī] of Turkistān, and Jund, fell into his hands, and were left in his possession.

marched against him, and invested Hazār-Asp a second time. After taking it, the Sultan was about to invest the capital, when, at the intercession of a holy man, namely, the Zāhid-i-Āhū-poşh, and the Sayyids and heads of the religious bodies, Itsiz again succeeded in propitiating the Sultan, and solicited permission to present himself before him, and sue for forgiveness. This he did, after a fashion: he came forth, and appeared before the Sultan, and from his horse bowed his head and retired. This took place Monday, 12th Muḥarram, 543 H. Sanjar was not in a position to renew hostilities, so he passed his rebel vassal's conduct over, and allowed, or rather was obliged to allow him to continue in possession of the territory of Khwārazm. Soon after Sanjar became a captive to the Ghuzz tribe. See Sanjar's reign, page 154.

7 See page 169, where our author says that Sanjar bestowed the sovereignty upon "Utsuz"; but in this Section he has said that the throne descended to him from his ancestors.

8 This person, and what he did, are not mentioned by other authors that have come under my notice, with a solitary exception. Faṣiḥ-i refers to it, under the year 542 H., in these exact words: —"Rebellion of 'Ālī Jatrī, Wāli of Hirāt, during the absence of Sultan Sanjar, and his combining with 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Malik of Ghūr!" nothing more. See reign of 'Alā-ud-Dīn.

9 This is utter nonsense. See note 6 page 236. Itsiz merely acted according to the world's ways. When he found his suzerain weak and in difficulties he took advantage of it.

1 This name is plainly written in nearly every copy. See note 4, page 233.

Fasiḥ-i says that Gūr Khān, who, in concert with Āt Khān, defeated
The greater number of the most learned men of the Court had previously attached themselves to his service; and Imam Rashid-ud-Din, Watwāt, wrote, and dedicated to him, the work entitled "Ḥadāyik-us-Sahr fi Daḵāyik-ush-Shīr" ["Gardens of Enchantment in the Subtleties of Poesy"]. At the time, likewise, that Malik Utsuz was in attendance at the Court of Sultan Sanjar, he became greatly attached to Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, Ghūrī, Jahān-soz, on account of his learning and talents, to such a degree, that when Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, returned again to assume the throne of Ghūr, the Almighty blessed him with a son, and he gave him the name of Utsuz.

Malik Utsuz reigned over Khwārazm for a long period and died.

IV. MALIK I-YAL-ARSAḤAN, SON OF JALĀL-UD-DĪN, UTSUZ.

Malik I-yal-Arsalan ascended the throne of Khwārazm after the decease of his father, and assumed authority over the whole of his late father's dominions. He ruled his people with justice and benevolence, and concluded a treaty with Sultan Sanjar a few years before, died in 537 H., after which Sultan Itsiz reduced Māwar-un-Nahr, which Sanjar had lost, under his sway.

3 What court is not stated, but Sultan Sanjar's court, it is to be presumed. Courtier-like, finding Sanjar in difficulties, they sought a more powerful master.

4 This Rashid-ud-Din, Watwāt, was a lineal descendant of the Khalifah 'Umbr.

5 Al-Ḥusain [Izz-ud-Din], son of Sām, Ghūrī, it is said, was made prisoner by Sanjar in 501 H.; but the person here referred to is his son, Jahān-soz, 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Ḥusain, son of Sām, taken prisoner in 547 H. See note 2, page 149, note 3, page 155, and account of 'Ala-ud-Dīn.

6 As usual, he reigned for a long period and died, according to our author, "who rarely indulges in high-flown eulogy, but narrates his facts in a plain, straightforward manner, which induces a confidence in the sincerity of his statements and the accuracy of his knowledge." Itsiz ruled over Khwārazm for a period of twenty-nine years, sixteen of which were independent, and died in 551 H.; and in the same year Turkān Khātūn also died.

7 Styled Sultan by others.

8 How good all our author's rulers are! all so just and beneficent : never were the like known before or since. Immediately on assuming the throne, suspecting his younger brother, Sulmān Shāh, he seized and imprisoned him, and put a number of nobles, Sulmān's adherents, to death. I-yal-Arsalan was engaged in hostilities with the ruler of Samarkand, and subsequently, in 538 H., marched against Shad-yāşı of Nīshāpūr—Sanjar had lately died—and
treaty with the infidels of Karā Khīṭā, whereby he stipulated to pay a certain fixed tribute yearly.

He contracted an alliance with the Khāns of Kifchāk, and guarded his dominions to the best of his power and ability. He became involved in disagreements and hostilities with some of the slaves of Sultan Sanjar who were rulers of Khurāsān, and peace was brought about in the manner he could best effect.

He reigned for a long time, and died leaving sons behind him, such as 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Takīsh, and Sultan Shāh, Mahmūd.

V. SULTĀN TAKĪSH, SON OF I-YAL-ARSALĀN.

Sultan Takīsh was a very great monarch, and was endowed with considerable attainments, capacity, and engaged in hostilities with Rukn-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Khān, a grandson of Buγhra Khān on the father's side, and a nephew of Sanjar on his mother's; and, after an engagement with Mu-ayyīd-i-Ā'īnah-dār [see note 6 to page 180], returned into his own territory after effecting an accommodation. Subsequently, having, in the seventh year of his reign, neglected to pay the tribute to the ruler of Karā Khīṭā-ī, the former sent a force against I-yal-Arsalān, and the latter's troops, which moved to oppose them, were routed. I-yal-Arsalān died from the effects of a disorder contracted during the war with the Karā Khīṭa-īs.

9 If the Ata-bak, Abū-Bīkr [see p. 179], by becoming tributary to the Mughals, "brought reproach and dishonour upon himself," by bowing his head to circumstances which he could not remedy nor control, and when he was well aware that, at the nod of the Khān of the Mughals, his territory could be subdued and desolated; what is the conduct of I-yal-Arsalān here, and what that of the Khalifah, Un-Nāṣir, when he, some years before Abū Bīkr's day, sent an agent to the infidel Chingiz, and incited him to invade the territory of Islam out of hostility to the Khwārzm Sultan, because he would not give him, Un-Nāṣir, a slice of Irāk? Our author was too pious a Musalmin to name such a disgraceful act as this. See note 5, page 242, and page 265.

1 In this instance the "long time" was only eight years. I-yal-Arsalān died, according to most authors, in 567 h.; but one or two say it occurred in 568. As Takīsh rose against his brother, Sultan Shāh, in the former year, it is natural to conclude that he could have had no occasion to do so in his father's lifetime.

2 Styled 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Takīsh Khān. Some call him 'Alā-ud-Dīn. Other authors generally, with the exception of Yafā-Ī, place Sultan Shāh, Mahmūd, next after his father, Itsiz, and before Takīsh; and do not bring in Takīsh at all until after Sultan Shāh's death in 589 h. Sultan Shāh succeeded to the throne according to the will of his father; and, as he was a mere boy, his mother, Malikah Turkān, conducted his affairs. She sent an agent to summon Takīsh, the eldest son by a different mother, who held the govern-
understanding, and was a proficient in the science of music.

When he ascended the throne he brought under his sway the different tracts of the territory of Khwarazm, and likewise some parts of Khurasan, either by force of arms or by peaceful means.

He entered into union with the Khan of Kishak, who was named Akran [or Ikran], and married the daughter of that ruler. That lady acquired great celebrity in the world, and rose to great eminence, more particularly during the reign of her son, Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah. She was a woman of great firmness of character,
very impetuous, and of imperious temperament; and, during the reign of her son, she had the title of Khudawandah-i-Jahān [Princess of the Universe]. So great was her spirit, her haughtiness, and her resentment, when roused, that, on one occasion, she became enraged with her husband, Sultan Takish, on account of a female slave with whom he had formed a connexion, and followed him to the bath, and closed the door of the hot bath upon him, so that the Sultan very nearly perished. Information of the circumstance was conveyed to a party of the great nobles, and a number of lords and chiefs arrived, broke open the door of the hot bath, and took Sultan Takish out. He had been reduced to a state of lividness, and one of his eyes had been nearly destroyed.

Sultan Takish was a wise and sagacious monarch; and, with respect to his witticisms, they relate that on a certain occasion a necessitous person wrote to him a statement of his affairs, saying:—"If thou givest me one hundred dinārs, what difference will it make to the amount of thy treasures?" The Sultan, with his own hand, wrote at the head of the statement, "one hundred dinārs," and this reply, in the opinion of men of learning and talent, was exceedingly clever. On another occasion a person wrote to him, saying:—"In being a Musalmān I am thy brother: give me a portion of thy treasures." The Sultan commanded that ten dinārs of gold should be presented to him. When that gift reached the indigent person, he wrote another communication to the Sultan, saying:—"I am thy brother; and yet, with all the treasures that thou possessest, not more than ten dinārs of gold do I obtain." The Sultan wrote in reply:—"If the rest of my brethren should demand their shares also, thou wouldst not have received even this much." May the Almighty have mercy on him!

Sultan Takish reduced a half of Khurāsān under his sway by force, and the Maliks [kings] of Māzandarān acknowledged his superiority. He also subdued a part of

3 It is customary, in the East, to write orders, decrees, &c., at the head of documents.
4 This anecdote, or one very similar, is related of another before the time of Sultan Takish.
the territory of 'Irāk; and Sultan Tughril, of 'Irāk, who was the nephew of Sultan Sanjar, fell a captive into his hands.4

Hostilities arose between him and the Court of the Khalifah on account of some of the territories of 'Irāk,

4 At page 165, which see, our author was in doubt as to who Tughril was. In 558 H. Kutlagh Inanaj, son of the Ata-bak, Jahān Pahlawan, Muḥammad, sent envoys, one after the other, to Sultan Takhīsh informing him of the escape of Sultan Tughril, Saljūk, from the fortress in which he had been immured, and inviting him to invade 'Irāk, promising to support him. For further particulars of these events, see note 8, page 167, and note 3, page 172, where our author entirely contradicts this statement respecting Sultan Tughril.

5 The Khalifah, Un-Nasir, on Takhīsh overrunning and possessing himself of the strong places, was desirous that Takhīsh should let him have some share of that territory, and make over some portion of it to his Diwāns. Envoys came and went between them; but, as Takhīsh in the end refused to give up any portion, Un-Nasir, in 590 H., despatched Mu-ayyid-ud-Dīn, Ibn-ul-Kassāb, or the Butcher's Son, with robes of honour, valuable presents, and the like, in hopes that on his appearance at Hamadān he would be favourably received, and that Takhīsh would come out to receive him, and do him honour as the Khalifah's envoy, and humble himself before him; but, on his reaching Asad-ābād, the Sultan despatched a force to compel him to retire. Mu-ayyid-ud-Dīn fled, and speedily placed the river Dajlah between himself and Takhīsh's troops. After this, Takhīsh pushed on to Dīnawr, and plundered the place and country round, and returned to Hamadān laden with dirams and dinārs, and other booty beyond compute.

In 593 H., shortly after his son, Kutb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, had been entrusted with the government of Khurāsān, after the death of his elder brother, he was recalled to proceed at the head of an army against Ghāʾir Bukā Khan, the I-shūr ruler. He conducted the campaign successfully, and Ghāʾir Bukā was made prisoner, and brought to Khwārazm, in Rabīʿ-ul-Awwal of the following year. Another expedition was undertaken shortly after against the successor of Ghāʾir Bukā, which Takhīsh conducted in person.

At the end of the year 594 H. Takhīsh marched into Khurāsān again. After three months' halt at Shād-yāk he proceeded into 'Irāk against Miānjūk, the Ata-bak of his son, Yūnas Khan, who was disaffected. He passed the cold season in Māzandaran, and in the following spring pursued Miānjūk from one end of 'Irāk to the other. Miānjūk and his party were pounced upon and most of them put to the sword, and the rebel took shelter in Firūz-koh, from which stronghold he had ousted the Sultan's seneschal some time before. It was invested and taken, and Miānjūk was placed on a camel and brought to Kazwīn. He was imprisoned for a year, and subsequently exiled for life on the hostile frontier of Jund. After this Sultan Takhīsh is said to have received a dress of honour from the Khalifah, with the investiture [which he could neither give nor withhold] of 'Irāk, Khurāsān, and Turkistān.

In the following year, 595 H., the Wazīr of the Khalifah, who was at Hamadān with an army, drove out the Khwārazmī troops, upon which Takhīsh again entered 'Irāk from Khwārazm, and hostilities were renewed. The Wazīr, however, who commanded the Khalifah's troops, had died a few days before the forces came into contact; but the fact was kept concealed, and was not
THE KHVARAZM-SHAHIAH DYNASTY.

and Ibn-ul-Kaşšāb, who was the Wazīr of the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, entered 'Irāk [with an army] to repel Sultan Takīsh; but he was defeated, and retired to Bāḥdād again.

This disloyalty towards the Khalifah was a disaster to the empire of Takīsh, as Maulānā Žahir-ud-Dīn, Fāryābī, says in the following strophe:—

"Oh, Shāh! since 'Ajām, by the sword, to thee has been consign'd, Towards Muṣṭafā's place of repose, an army send. Then lay the Ka'bah desolate, and a fan bring, And like unto useless atoms, to the winds the dust of the Haram send. Within the Ka'bah the drapery crumbleth away: place it in thy treasury, And, for the Prophet's tomb, two or three ells of matting send. When thou shalt have a perfect infidel become, rush on Karkh, And, then, the Khalifah's head to Khiṭā send."

Although Sultan Takīsh had entered into a treaty with the Sultāns of Ghūr, nevertheless, through the hostility of [the Court of] Bāḥdād, Ibn-ur-Rabī' came from Bāḥdād into the territories of Ghūr and Ghaznī; and, on another occasion, Ibn-ul-Khaṭīb came to the Court of Firūz-kōh, and one Friday read the Khūṭbah, and, whilst reading it, he made use of these words in the presence of Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Ṣām:—"Ayyahu-l-Ghiyāṣ al-Mustagḥās min ul Takīsh ut-tāghī ul-bāghī." "Hail! prop of defence against Takīsh the traitor and the rebel!"

At the time of Ibn-ul-Khaṭīb's returning to Bāḥdād, made known until after the Khalifah's troops had been defeated and put to the rout. The body of the Wazīr was exhumed, and the head cut off, and sent to Khwārazm. Fāṣīb-I mentions this affair, but places it several years earlier, and calls the Wazīr, Abū-l-Fażl-i-Muḥammad, son of 'Alī, styled Ibn-ul-Baizā; and further states that, Takīsh being absent from 'Irāk at the time, the Wazīr, with the aid of Kuttāgh Īnānaj, drove out the Khwārazmī troops, and pursued them as far as Busṭām. After this Takīsh again entered 'Irāk, and overthrew the Khalifah's troops.

7 The ascendancy and power which Takīsh acquired by this success, instead of being a blow to the prosperity of his rule, had quite a contrary effect. It became noised abroad throughout both 'Irāks, and thereby his affairs attained a greater grandeur than before. Possibly our author may refer to the inveterate hostility of the Khalifah towards his son and grandson, and his refusing aid to the latter when hard pressed by the infidel Mughals.

8 The Malik-ush-Shu'ārā [Prince of Poets], Khwājah Žahir-ud-Dīn of Fāryāb, who died in 598 H.

9 A treaty with the Sultāns of Ghūr is out of the question; in fact the author's own words disprove it. See also following note, and note 4, page 265.

1 A correspondence found when the son of Takīsh acquired possession of
the father of the author, Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Din-i-Minhāj, was despatched to the Court of Bağhdād along with him, and, on the confines of Mukrān, the Maulānā was martyred. This intimation arrived from the Court of the Khalifah, Un-Nāšir-ud-Din Ullah, about it, saying:—

"Furthermore, Sarāj-i-Minhāj perished in an affray on the road: the Almighty recompense him!"

Sultān Takish-i-Khwārazm Shāh was in firm alliance with Khītā; and trustworthy persons have stated that Sultān Takish had enjoined his son, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, never to quarrel or embroil himself with Khītā, if he desired to preserve the safety of his dominions; and it turned out as this wise monarch had said. They also relate, with respect to this subject, that the Sultān often used to say that there would be two judgment-days—one, that time which Almighty God has ordained; and the other, that which would happen when he should be removed from this world, through his son's bad faith towards the infidels [of Chīn].

Sultān Takish reigned for many years, and died.

Ghaznīn confirms these hostile intentions. See note 4, page 265. In his account of the Khalifah, Un-Nāśir, our author states that three envoys arrived from the Khalifah's court to solicit aid from the two brothers, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn of Ghūr, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn of Ghaznīn; and that they were named respectively, Imām Shams-ud-Dīn, Turk, Ibn-ur-Rabbī, and Ibn-ul-Khāṭīb; and that his father was sent along with them when they returned to Bağhdād.

Some copies merely mention that he died.

Yāfa-ī says that Takīsh's last request was that his son should neither clash with, nor show resistance against, Gūr Khān, nor depart from the agreement previously settled [the tribute], because Gūr Khān was as a bulwark of defence in his rear against enemies in that quarter which he should not break down.

During his reign Takīsh became involved, upon more than one occasion, in hostilities with the Khītā-īs and the rulers of Turkistān; and, towards the close of his reign, waged war upon the Mulāḥидāh heretics in 'Irāk and Kuhistān. He gained possession of their stronghold of Arsalīn-Kushā, the strongest fortress in Asia, it is said. He then left his son, Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, in 'Irāk, with Isfahān as his place of residence, and set out on his return to Khwārazm, and reached it in Jamāḍī-ul-Ākhīr, 596 H. The heretics supposed the Wāzīr, Nīgām-ul-Mulk, to have been the author of their disasters; so they assassinated him. Sultān Takīsh resolved to avenge him. An army was despatched against them under his son, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who laid siege to Tūrshīz. Our author chronicles his own father's death. but says nothing of the time or place of the decease of the sovereign whose reign he is supposed to be giving an account of; and, although Takīsh reigned so near his own time, our author does not appear to have known that he reigned for twenty-five years and six months, the last six and a half years being over 'Irāk.
VI. SULTÁN JALÁL-UD-DÍN, MAHMÚD, SON OF I-YAL-ARSALÁN.

Maḥmúd, son of I-yal-Arsalán, Sultán Sháh-i-Jalál-ud-Dín, was a rash and impetuous monarch. When his brother, Takish, assumed the throne of Khwárazm, dissension arose between them, and he [Sultán Sháh] went from Khwárazm towards Khurásan, and from thence came into the states of Ghür, and presented himself at the Court of Sultan Ghiyáṣ-ud-Dín, Muḥammad-i-Sám. Sultán Ghiyáṣ-ud-Dín, and his Malik's, treated him with honour and deference.

Between the Sultáns of Ghür and Sultán Takish a firm compact existed; and some parts of Khurásan had fallen into the possession of the Amírs of the Ghuzz tribe, and some to the slaves of the Sanjari dynasty, whilst others had become dependencies of the Court of Ghür and Firúzkoh, and of Bámíán.

Sultán Sháh solicited assistance from the Ghürí Sultáns to enable him to liberate Khurásan from the hands of his brother and the Ghuzz Amírs. They assigned him a fief for the present, and he was furnished with all things necessary as a guest; but they continued to observe the treaty between themselves and his brother, Sultán Takish, and hesitated to furnish him with the aid he sought.

Also. Having despatched his son against the Mullábidáhs, Sultán Takish was organizing forces at Khwárazm to follow, when he was suddenly taken ill. He recovered, and was advised not to undertake so long a journey, but he would proceed. He was taken ill again, and died on the way, in Rámazán, 596 H. See note 4, page 254. Many eminent and learned men flourished during his reign, and numerous works on poetry, medicine, and other sciences, were written and dedicated to him.

5 Styled Sultán Sháh, Maḥmúd, by others.
6 In a few copies there is a slight difference in this clause of the sentence, which, in them, is—"and the Malik's of Ghür."

7 After his defeat along with Mu-ayyid-i-A'ínah-dár, and the latter had been cut in two [see note 6, page 180], and Sultán Sháh's mother had also been put to death by Takish, Sultán Sháh went to Shád-yák to Mu-ayyid's son, Tughán Sháh, who had succeeded his father, and took up his quarters in the territory of Nishápúr. As Tughán, however, had not power to help him, he left his territory and went to the Sultáns of Ghür [after obtaining written promises of favourable treatment], who received him well. Hostility having arisen shortly after between his brother Takish and the Kara Khitá-í ruler, Sultán Sháh was delighted, and entered into negotiation with that sovereign,
Sultan Shāh [consequently] left the territory of Ghūr, and proceeded to Māwar-un-Nahr and Turkistān, and sought assistance from the Great Khān of Khiṭā; and brought an army, and freed Khurāsān from the oppressive grasp and possession of the Ghuzz chiefs, and their tyranny. He made Marw his capital, and marched an

who, to spite Takīsh, invited him to his Court. On leaving the Ghūrīan territory he observed to the nobles of his party that it occurred to him, although he had had to put up with some annoyance and mortification from him, that man [Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī] would cause much sedition in Khurāsān; and so it turned out.

He stated to the Khiṭā-ī ruler that the Khwāramīs and the troops generally were well inclined towards him, and thereby induced the Khān to send forces along with him to reinstate him. On their arrival before Khwāram, the Khiṭā-īs were undeceived, and, finding that no advantage was likely to accrue by investing it, determined to retire again. Sultan Shāh now solicited that a portion of the Khiṭā-ī army might be sent along with him into Khurāsān, against Sarakhs. This was assented to, and Sultan Shāh and his allies suddenly appeared before it. Malik Dīnār, one of the Ghuzz chiefs, held it at that time; and most of his followers were put to the sword, and Malik Dīnār himself was dragged out of the ditch of that fortress, by the hair of his head. The rest of his followers sought shelter within the walls. After this, Sultan Shāh marched to Marw and there took up his quarters, and dismissed the Khiti-ī troops to their own territory. He continued after that to make constant incursions against Sarakhs, until most of the Ghuzz were dispersed and driven from it, but Tughān Shāh got possession of it.

In Zil-Hijjah, 576 H., hostilities arose between Sultan Shāh and Tughān Shāh about the possession of Sarakhs; and an engagement was fought between them, in which the former was victorious and obtained possession of that place, and Tūs likewise. From this success Sultan Shāh acquired considerable power, because he, contrary to Tughān Shah, was not taken up with cymbals and lutes, and such like frivolous pursuits. He made constant raids upon Tughān’s territory, until his nobles and troops became greatly harassed and distressed; and they had mostly gone over to Sultan Shāh, and no power was left to Tughān. He applied for aid both to Takīsh and to the Sultan of Ghūr, and once went to Hirāt, in person, to solicit assistance from Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī; but all was of no avail. Disappointed and depressed, he lived on miserably till Muḥarram, 581 H., when he died. See our author’s account of him at page 181, where he says “all rulers refrained from molesting him.”

The same night in which Tughān Shāh died, his son, Sanjar Shāh, was raised to his father’s masnad, and Mangūlī Beg, his slave, was made his ḏākā. The latter afterwards went over to Sultan Shāh, who acquired sway over the greater part of Tughān’s territory. Malik Dīnār, the Ghuzz chief, went off to Kirmān, and established himself as ruler therein; and everywhere the Ghuzz Turks were reduced to subjection, or rooted out. See page 182, note 1.

In the beginning of 582 H., Takīsh having entered Khurāsān, Sultan Shāh marched against Khwāram with a large army, in hopes of seizing it; but Takīsh, in return, marched to Marw, Sultan Shāh’s capital, and sat down before it. As Sultan Shāh found he could not gain admittance into Khwā-
army against Hirat, and invested Fushanj; and made raids

THE KHWARAZM-SHÄHIÀH DYNASTY. 247

razm, and that Marw was in danger, he abandoned the attempt; and, on
reaching Amûlah, left his army, and taking fifty picked men with him, made
for Marw, passed through Takish's army, and succeeded in throwing himself
into Marw. Next day, on hearing of this feat, Takish marched away to
Shâd-yâkh, and, in Rabî'-ul Awwal, 582 H., invested Sanjar Shâh, and his
Atâ-bak, Mangulî Beg, therein. After two months an accommodation was
entered into, and several men of rank were left there by Takish to carry out
the terms, and he departed for Khwârâzma. Mangulî Beg, as soon as Takish
had marched away, seized his officers and delivered them over to Sultan Shâh;
and they were kept in durance for a long time by him, until a truce was brought
about between the brothers, which, however, was but of short duration.

After the truce, Takish again moved against Shâd-yâkh, secured Mangulî
Beg, and then returned to his capital, Khwârâzm. Sultan Shâh, being
ambitious of possessing Shâd-yâkh, now seized the opportunity and marched
against it. He invested it for a time, but, finding the defenders had the best of
it, he raised the investment and set out for Sabzvâr, and invested that place.
It capitulated on terms on the intercession of a holy man, and Sultan Shâh, in
conformity with those terms, entered it, remained an hour, and departed for
Marw again. In Muharram, 583 H., Takish again appeared before Shâd-
[yâkh], and it was forced to submit, and Mangulî Beg came forth and capitulated.
Sultan Takish entered it in Rabî'-ul-Awwal of that year. Mangulî was compelled to disgorge the wealth he had deprived others of, and was
afterwards delivered over to the son of an Imam, whose father he had put to
death unjustly, to suffer death according to the law of kîsâs or retribution.

Three months afterwards, Takish having set out for Khwârâzm, Sultan Shâh,
finding the coast clear, made another effort to get possession of Shâd-yâkh;
but, although the walls were for the most part destroyed, the place was obsti-
nately defended. Takish marched into Khurasan again on becoming aware of
this movement on Sultan Shâh's part, and the latter, hearing of Takish's
entering Khurasan, burnt his battering-rams and made off. Takish remained
all the cold season in Khurasan, preparing for a campaign in Azarbâijân, and
nearly all the Amirs of Khurasan, who had hitherto not presented themselves,
now joined him. In the spring he returned from Azarbâijân, and encamped
in the plain of Râdakân of Tûs, an accommodation having been come to
between the brothers in 585 H., whereby Sultan Shâh was left in possession of
considerable territory in Khurasan, such as Jâm, Bâkhurz, and other districts.
Takish ascended the throne at Radakan of Tis [but not before], and soon after
set out for Khwârâzma. Peace continued between them until after the affair at
Marw-ar-Riûd with the Ghûrîs, with whom Sultan Shâh had previously been
on the most brotherly terms, in which Sultan Shâh was compelled to retire, and
his power became much broken, when, having infringed some of the stipu-
lations with his brother in 586 H., Takish again marched to Sarakhs, which
Sultan Shâh had made the depository of his treasures and military material.
It was taken; but, subsequently, another accommodation having been
arranged, it was restored to Sultan Shâh, who again repaired it. In 588 H.,
Takish having entered 'Irâk at the solicitation of Kutlugh Inânaj [see page
167, and note 8], against Sultan Tughril, Saljûkî, Sultan Shâh seized the
opportunity, marched with his forces against Khwârâzma, and invested it; but,
hearing of the return of his brother from the 'Irâk expedition, he abandoned
the investment, and retired into his own territory. Takish, having passed the
winter at Khwârâzma, marched against his brother, Sultan Shâh, in the follow-
upon the frontiers of the territory of Ghūr, and created tumult and disorder.

Some of the nobles and slaves of the Sanjari dynasty joined him—such as Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, who was governor of Hirāt, and used constantly to harass and afflict the frontiers of the kingdom of Ghūr. Sultan Ghiyāš-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, gave instructions so that his Sultāns, namely, Sultān-i-Ḡāзи, Muʿizz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, from Ghaznīn, Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad, from Bāmīān, and Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Ḥarab, from Sistān, all assembled, marched, and joined Sultan Ghiyāsh-ud-Din, after which they set out for the purpose of repelling Sultan Shāh.

They advanced into the valley of the river of Marw, and pitched their camp between Dazak [Dajzak ?] and Marwar-Rūd, while Sultan Shāh moved his forces from Marw farther up; and, for a period of six months, the two armies, Ghūris and Turks, were arrayed confronting each other. Sultan Shāh used to display great audacity and boldness, and was in the constant habit of cutting off the foragers [of the Ghūriān army], whence it arose that Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, the Turk, of Hindūstān, who, at that time, was Amir-i-Akhūr [lord of the stables—master of the horse] of the Ghaznīn [ruler], was taken prisoner by the troops of Sultan Shāh.

Matters went on in this manner, until, at the expiration of six months, an engagement took place, and Sultan Shāh had not the power to resist his opponents, for the troops of Ghaznīn crossed the river Murgh-āb and attacked the army of Sultan Shāh, who, unable to repel them, or make a stand ing spring. As soon as Takīsh reached Abīward, negotiations for a peaceable settlement of their differences were entered into, and letters passed between the brothers; but, through the folly and precipitancy of Sultan Shāh, the negotiations were in abeyance, when he was betrayed by Badr-ud-Din, Jaʿfar, an officer in his service, who held Sarakhs for him. Jaʿfar delivered up the fortress to Takīsh, together with his master's treasures; and two days after, at the end of Ramażān, 589 H., Sultan Shāh died. He had reigned for twenty-two years.

9 His brother, his kinsman, and his vassal.
1 To Muʿizz-ud-Din, Sultan of Ghaznīn, whose slave he was, and subsequently ruler of Dihīlī.
2 Five copies have "attacked the camp." Yāfā-i barely alludes to this affair on the Murgh-āb.
before them, was defeated; and, perplexed and distracted, he retired towards Marw again.

Malik Bahá-ud-Din, Tughrîl, of Hirát, who was with Sultan Sháh's army, fell into the hands of the troops of Bámíán; and they brought his head to the presence of Sultan Ghiyáš-ud-Din, and he commanded them to take it to Hirát. Sultan Sháms-ud-Din of Bámíán [likewise], on that day, was assigned a chatr [canopy]; and he was honoured with the title of Sultan.

When they brought the head of Tughrîl to Hirát, a Poet repeated these lines:

"The head of Tughrîl, which he carried higher than the altitude of the heavens,
And which possessed the jewel and diadem of haughtiness and pride,
Without a body, hath to Hari, a spectacle come,
For this reason, that he had an inclination for Harî in his head."

Sultan Sháh, having been thus defeated, and his army routed and dispersed, retired to Marw; and this affair and this victory took place in the year 588 H.

Sultan Sháh was [it appears] troubled with a complaint, for which every year he used to take a small quantity of a certain poison, in order to cure it; and, in that same year, the complaint increased, and as a remedy against it he took somewhat more of the antidote, and it killed him, and he died.

VII. Yúnâs Khán, Son of Takish, Khwârazm Sháh.

Yúnâs Khán was the son of Sultan Takish; and, when Sultan Takish subdued the territory of 'Irâk, and wrested it out of the hands of the Atâ-bak, Abû-Bîkr, the son of...

* The seventh ruler and successor of Takish was his son Sultan 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Mubammad; and neither Yúnâs Khán, Malik Khán, nor 'Alî Sháh, were ever rulers of Khwârazm, but merely held subordinate governments under their father. When Sultan Takish entered 'Irâk in the beginning of 590 H., and Sultan Tughrîl was slain in battle [see page 167, and note a], Takish, after securing 'Irâk, conferred 'Isfahân on Kutlabh Inânaj, son of the Atâ-bak Jâhân Pahlawân, leaving the Amîrs of 'Irâk with him, and the territory of Rai and its dependencies was conferred upon Takish's son, Yúnâs Khán, with Mîânjuîk as his Atâ-bak and the commander of his troops. The whole of 'Irâk he never held. Takish did not take 'Irâk from the Atâ-bak Abû-Bîkr, son of Mubammad, for a very good reason that no such Atâ-bak ever held it in the reign of Takish.
the Atā-bak, Muḥammad, and a second time caused its deliverance from Sultan Tughril, he conferred it upon his son, Yūnas Khān.

He was a monarch of good disposition, and used to live on good terms among his people, and brought Irāk under his subjection. He began to enter into contention with the troops of the Court of the Khalifah, and that untoward circumstance became a source of misfortune to the sovereignty of his father, and to their dynasty.

He reigned for a considerable time over Irāk, and died.

VIII. MALIK KHĀN, SON OF TAKISH, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH.

Malik Khān was the eldest son of Sultan Takish, and was a mighty and arrogant monarch*. He was endowed with great sagacity, wisdom, knowledge, and understanding, nobleness of mind, and intrepidity.

When his father wrested Nishāpur and other parts of that territory out of the hands of the Sanjari slaves, such as the descendants of Malik Mu-ayyid were, Sanjar Shāh, who was the son of Tughān Shāh, the son of Malik Mu-ayyid, he induced, by treaty, to come out of Nishāpur; and gave the throne of Nishāpur to his son, Malik Khān.

When he assumed the throne of that territory, he brought under his sway the tracts of country around as far as the

* Whilst his father was absent on the expedition against Ghār Būkā Khān, the I-ghūr, in 591 H., Yūnas Khān turned his arms [or rather his Atā-bak for him] against the Khalifah's troops in Irāk. Yūnas sought help to carry out this hostile purpose, from his brother Malik Shāh, who held the government of Marw and its dependencies. Yūnas, however, before being joined by his brother, had defeated the troops of Baghādād, and had acquired great booty. The brothers met at Hamadān, where they made some stay; and, after they had passed a jovial time together, Malik Khān—or Shāh, as he is also styled—set out on his return to Khurāsān.

* His title was Nāṣir-ud-Dīn.

* When Sultan Takish entered Khurāsān in 590 H. on his way back from Irāk, he heard of the illness of his son Malik Shāh, who held at that time the government of Marw. Takish directed that his son should be brought to him; and, when they reached Tūs, Sultan Shāh recovered. His father transferred him to the government of Nishāpur, which he had previously held, with Shād-yāk as his residence in place of Marw, from the unwholesome climate of which his health had suffered; and an appanage was conferred upon his other son, Kutb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, in Khurāsān; and he was made his father's companion and favourite.

* For the facts, see note 8 to Sultan Shāh's reign, page 246.
gate of 'Irāk; and a great number of eminent men assembled at his Court. He reigned for a considerable time, and died, leaving a son named Hindū Khān.

He [Hindū Khān] was an exceedingly intrepid, high-minded prince, and was endowed with a poetical genius. After the decease of his father and his grandfather, he began to collect forces in Khurāsān, and, in consequence, his uncle, Sultān Muḥammad, son of Takīsh, reprehended him. Hindū Khān composed a few elegant lines, and sent them to his uncle:

"A hundred treasure-hoards be thine: the keen poniard mine.
The palace thine: the steed and the battle-field be mine.
Shouldst thou desire that hostility cease between us,
Be Khwārazm thine, King! the country of Khurāsān mine."

Alike in all the copies. The Hulwān Pass may be called the "gate" of 'Irāk.

Malik Shāh having returned from Hamadān, as related in note 4, preceding page, as soon as he entered Khurāsān, despatched Arsalān Shāh, one of the nobles, to act for him at Shād-yāḵ, and set out himself for Khwārazm. During his absence great disorder and sedition arose in the Nishāpūr territory in consequence of disaffected persons inciting Sanjār Shāh, son of Tughān Shāh, who had previously been relieved of the cares of independent sovereignty, to rebel against Sultan Takīsh. He had been treated with the utmost kindness, the Sultān had married his mother, and after his daughter's decease, who had been espoused by Sanjār, he had also given him his sister in marriage, and was regarded as a son. He was accordingly summoned to Khwārazm and deprived of his sight, and his fief was taken from him. This was in 591 H., and in 595 H. he died. After Sanjār Shāh's threatened outbreak, Sultān Takīsh had to march into 'Irāk against the nobles, in consequence of his son Yūnas Khān's acts. It was on this occasion that the Khalīfah's troops, after the death of their leader, the Wazīr, were defeated. Takīsh returned into Khwārazm by way of Isfahān, and conferred the government of Khurāsān upon Malik Shāh, with directions not to go to Marw because of its unhealthiness. His partiality for it, however, was so great, that it drew him there. He was taken ill soon after, and returned to Nishāpūr; but his illness increased, and he died at the close of the year 593 H.

1 Yāsā-fā, which contains so much information respecting this dynasty, merely states that Sultān Takīsh had to delay his departure on an expedition against infidels [heretics], fearing an outbreak on the part of Malik Shāh's sons. Accordingly, the Wazīr, Shād-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, Harawa, was despatched to Shād-yāḵ to assume charge of affairs. He contrived to prevent any tumult, and sent the eldest son, Hindū Khān, to Khwārazm. Subsequently Sultān Takīsh conferred the government of Khurāsān upon his son, Kutb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who proceeded thither; and, two days after he reached Shād-yāḵ, the Wazīr set out to join the Sultān, in Zī-Hījah, 593 H. Hindū Khān subsequently took service with his country's enemies, the Ghūrīs. See note 7, page 255.

2 This line, according to two copies of the original, might be read: "Be Khwārazm thine: mine alone the realm of Khurāsān."
Sultān Muḥammad-i-Takish wrote the following lines in reply:

"Soul of thine uncle! this ambition takes the path of insanity:
This monition will take effect neither on thee nor on me,
’Till blood, to the hilt, shall the sword’s blade smear:
’Till, of one of us two, triumph’s fire shall the highest blaze."

Hindū Khān was not powerful enough to offer opposition to his uncle and his armies, and he came to the territories of Ghūr, and sought assistance; but he was unable to obtain it, and he pressed onwards for Khiṭā. He possessed mettle, but he was not favoured by fortune; and he was martyred on the confines of Bāmiān.

IX. ‘Āli Shāh, son of Takish, Khwārazm Shāh.

Sultān ‘Āli Shāh was a very great and illustrious prince; and, when the period came for his brother to assume the sovereignty, he made ‘Āli Shāh ruler of Nishāpūr. When the Sultāns of Ghūr conquered Nishāpūr, Malik ‘Āli Shāh, with other Maliks of Khwārazm, under terms of treaty, came out of that city, and presented themselves before Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and the victorious Sultān Mu’izz-ud-Dīn; and they brought Sultān ‘Āli Shāh [with them] to Ghaznīn. When Sultān Muḥammad [of Khwārazm] appeared, the second time, before the gate of Nishāpūr, and Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, under terms of convention, came out [and surrendered the city], the Sultan sent him back to Ghūr, and the Sultāns of Ghūr sent back Malik ‘Āli Shāh also, to his brother, Sultān Muḥammad.

3 His title was Taj-ud-Dīn. He had been placed in charge of a part of ‘Irāq, with Isfahān as the seat of government, some time before the accession of his brother Kūṭh-ud-Dīn, and when the Ghūrī Sultāns appeared before Shad-yāḥī, in Rajab, 597 H.—particulars of which are given under his brother’s reign—Taj-ud-Dīn, ‘Alī Shāh, who had recently left ‘Irāq, chanced to be there, together with a number of his other brothers’ nobles and officers.

Nishāpūr capitulated on terms only. They were not observed fairly; and ‘Alī Shāh and the Khwārazmī nobles and officers with him were treated with great indignity by the Ghūrīs. See note 7, page 255.

6 The titles Sultān and Malik are used here indiscriminately.

A kinsman of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and his brother.

Together with his garrison; and they had dresses of honour given to them, and were treated with the utmost consideration, in order to show the Ghūrīs how to behave to fallen foes.
The latter bestowed the throne of Șafahān and Ӏrāk upon his brother, ʿAlī Shāh, and, for a considerable period, he continued in that country; when, suddenly, he became overcome with fear and apprehension from some cause or other, and left it, and came into the territories of Ghūr, and presented himself at the Court of Firūz-koh.

At that period, the throne of Firūz-koh had passed to Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad-i-Sām; and Sultān Muḥammad despatched envoys from Khwārazm to the presence of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, so that ʿAlī Shāh was seized and placed in durance. At length, a party of ʿAlī Shāh’s followers devoted themselves to the cause of their master, and martyred Sultān Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad-i-Sām.

When the throne of the kingdom of Ghūr had passed to the sons of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, son of [Muḥammad-i-]Sām, an army from Khurāsān arrived there in order to take possession of Ghūr, as will subsequently be related; and the Ghūrīāns caused ʿAlī Shāh to be set at liberty, on the day that the Khwārazmī forces gained possession of Firūz-koh.

ʿAlī Shāh proceeded to Ghaznin, and there he continued as Malik for a considerable time. Subsequently, Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, despatched persons who entered into engagements with him on favourable terms; so much so that ʿAlī Shāh, placing faith therein, was induced to leave Ghaznin, and join the Khwārazmī army and reached Tigin-ābād of Garmsīr. A party was [subsequently] appointed and despatched from Khwārazm, and in the year 609 H., they martyred ʿAlī Shāh.

X. SULTĀN ʿALĀ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF TAKISH, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH.

Sultān ʿAlā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, had five sons; the

* Khwārazmī troops, though no doubt chiefly natives of Khurāsān—the Khurāsānī contingent.

* One copy alone of the original contains the word “Malik.” For a correct account of these matters, see the reign of Maḥmūd, in Section XVII., for our author seems to have been determined not to relate anything not tending to the glorification of the Ghūrīs, and often distorts facts to suit his purpose.

* Before he came to the throne his title was Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, but on his accession he assumed that of ʿAlā-ud-Dīn, the title borne by his father.
first, Har-roz Shâh; the second, Ghûrî Shânastî; the third, Jalâl-ud-Dîn, Mang-barnî; the fourth, Arzâlî Shâh; and the fifth, ʿÂk Sultan.

He was a great and potent monarch, wise, valiant, munificent, a patron of the learned, a conqueror, and impetuous; and, whatever qualifications it was desirable a great sovereign and just ruler should possess, the Almighty had endowed him with.

During the lifetime of his father, he bore the title of Kûtb-ud-Dîn; and, when his brother, Malik Khân, died, his father conferred upon him the throne of Nishâpûr, and Malik Sharâf-ud-Dîn, Masʿûd-i-Ḥasan, was appointed to be his Atâ-bak or governor; and, after some time, the command of the forces of Khwârazm was conferred upon him.

On the side of his mother, likewise, he was a prince of the house of Kifchâk and very great, his mother being the daughter of Kadr Khân of Kifchâk; and, from the days of his boyhood, the marks of intelligence and cleverness shone clearly and conspicuously on his brow. Every expedition on which his father sent him, in the direction of Jund and Turkistân, he brought to such a successful issue as was desirable, in fact even a better than could have been anticipated.

At the period when death overtook his father, Sultan Takish, Muḥammad was absent in the direction of Jund and Turkistân; and, when he obtained information of that
THE KHWAZM-SHÁHÍAH DYNASTY. 255

circumstance, he returned to Khwārazm, and assumed the throne; and, in the year 595 H., he brought the dominions of his father under his own jurisdiction.

He conferred the throne of Nishápūr upon his brother, 'Ali Shāh, as has been already stated; and despatched an envoy to the Courts of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and sought for peace; and I, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, heard from one of the trustworthy persons of the Malikhs of Ghūr the statement, that one of the messages and requests of Sultān Muḥammad was this:—"I, Muḥammad-i-Takīsh, who am their ser-

his father’s death was received, and another week would have been sufficient to have taken it. His father’s ministers kept the matter secret, and sent off to acquaint Sultan Mubammad of it. He concealed the matter from his army, and, feigning illness, prepared to retire. The Mulāhīdahs sent him valuable presents, and offered an additional sum of 100,000 dinārs as tribute. The Sultan proceeded to Sharistānāh, performed the funeral ceremonies of his father, and set out with all haste for Khwārazm. This is a most important reign, and such events as our author has related—a number of most important ones have been passed over—are either incorrectly stated, or moulded to the glorification of the Ghiris: hence the notes here will be found, I fear, voluminous, and, were I to notice every thing, I might almost fill a volume.

Not so: his father died in Ramāzan, 596 H., and Sultān Mubammad ascended the throne in Shawwāl of that year.

This statement is ridiculous, and totally unworthy of credit; moreover, the events which follow prove the contrary. No sooner had the Sultāns of Ghūr and Ghaznīn obtained information of the death of Sultan Takīsh, "than the devil," as one of the authors from whom this extract is taken says, "excited their envy and ambition; and they, without loss of time, despatched a force to Marw under Muḥammad-i-Kharmak, whilst they followed at the head of an immense force, including ninety great elephants like mountains in appearance." On reaching Tūs they plundered and devastated the country, and slaughtered the people, and then marched to Shād-yākh. The Sultan’s brother, Tāj-ud-Dīn, ‘Alī Shāh, who had lately returned from Irāk, happened to be there, and the Ghūrīs obtained possession of the place by capitulation, a tower having fallen from the number of spectators in it, which they took as a good omen. This our author turns into a miracle in the account of Ghiyād-ud-Dīn, who, by his account, was a miracle-worker. This was in Rajab, 597 H. The place was given up to plunder, and ‘Alī Shāh, the Sultan’s officials, and the chief men of the place, were inhumanly treated and sent off with the garrison to the capital of Ghūr. By the fall of this place the Ghūrīs acquired temporary possession of the whole country, as far as Bustām and Jūrjān. This effected, the brothers left a strong force at Nishápūr [Shād-yākh was a portion of that city, or rather a fortified suburb] under Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn; and Ghiyās-ud-Dīn repaired to Hīrāt, and Shīhāb-ud-Dīn into the Kuhistān against the Mulāhīdahs of that part, and afterwards returned to Hīrāt likewise. As soon as Sultan Muḥammad heard of these troubles in Khwārazm, he, in Zi- Hijjah of the same year [597 H.], set out at the head of his troops, and early in 598 H. encamped before Shād-yākh. After some skirmishing outside, the
vant, make this request, that the Sultans would be pleased to accept my services; and, although I am not possessed of the worthiness of being a son, it behoveth that the Sultan-i-Ghāzī, Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, should take to wife my mother, Khudawandah-i-Jahan, and that he should accept me, Muḥammad-i-Takīsh, as his son and servant, in order also that I, his servant, may, by the name on the coin* of that august monarch, and the Khutbah of that sovereign of exalted dignity, conquer the whole world; and, for the servants of the Court of the Sultāns—the asylum of the world—draw the sword, and become one of those servants."

When this overture had been delivered, the purport coincided with the inclinations of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Dīn, but did not accord with the sentiments of Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn [the person chiefly interested], and he declined to ratify it*. The latter Sultan assembled his troops, and marched into Khurāsān, and subdued the whole of that territory; but, when he subsequently set out on his return, Sultan Muḥammad brought an army, and again recovered Khurāsān.

Whenever the Sultāns of Ghur [and Ghaznin] used to march into Khurāsān, Sultan Muḥammad used to retire [as they advanced] to the distance of two or three marches before them; and when they fell back he would follow them up at the distance of two or three marches†. In

_Ghūrīs_ retired within the walls "like mice to their holes," and the battering-rams were placed in position, and the ditch filled, when the _Ghūrīs_ capitulated. They were treated honourably, and sent back to _Ghūr_ "with dresses of honour, in order to show the _Ghūrīs_ how to treat fallen foes." The Sultān, after this affair, directed that the walls of _Shād-yākh_ should be razed. All these events certainly look as though Sultan Muḥammad had solicited the Sultāns of _Ghūr_ to accept his vassalage. After this the Sultan proceeded to Marw and Sarakh, which last mentioned place was held by his nephew, Hindū _Khān_, and held by him for the Sultāns of _Ghūr_ and _Ghaznī_. On the approach of his uncle Hindū _Khān_ fled to _Ghūr_; but, as the governor in charge of _Sarakhs_ refused to open the gates, Sultan Muḥammad left a force to take it, and continued his march to _Khwārazm_ by way of Marw to prepare for a campaign against Hirāt. In Zī-Ḥijjah of that year he encamped in the plain of Rādakān; and having mustered his forces, both Turk and Tajzik, he commenced his march, and in due time his tents were pitched in sight of Hirāt.

* The text differs here in some copies. Some have "by the name and coin," others "by the name of the coin," &c., both of which are meaningless.
† Not desiring to be roasted in a bath. His first title was _Shihāb-ud-Dīn_.
‡ The reader would imagine, from the above, that the _Ghūrīan_ Sultāns were
short, he never sustained a complete overthrow, and he used to give proofs of his skill and bravery; but, as those Sultans were monarchs of great power and magnificence, he was unable to cope with them effectually.

When the Sultans of Ghūr died, Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, appeared before the gates of Hirāt, and in the constant habit of invading Khurāsān; but the facts are mentioned in the preceding note 7, page 255. Any one reading the above would imagine that Hirāt sustained one siege only by the Khwārazmī forces during this reign, and that one after Shīhāb-ud-Dīn’s decease; and our author, whose idea of epitomizing events appears to have been to leave out three out of four, or combine three into one, has done the latter here. Hirāt sustained no less than three sieges, and one of these occurred before the death of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and the second long before the death of Shīhāb-ud-Dīn. The first occurred at the close of 598 H., upon which occasion, the Khwārazmī army having invested it, after the battering-rams had been freely plied on either side, the governor, 'Īzz-ud-Dīn, 'Umr, Marāghānī, a man of experience, saw no other remedy than to submit. He sent his son to the Sultān’s presence, and the terms were agreed upon, and a large sum of money was paid as ransom.

Hearing of the investment of Hirāt, the Sultans of Ghūr and Ghaznī made all haste to endeavour to relieve it, and recover what they had lost in western Khurāsān; and Shīhāb-ud-Dīn, at the head of a large army, advanced by way of Tāl-kān for that purpose. Sultān Muḥammad thought it advisable to retire, which he did, and proceeded towards Marw by way of Marw-ar-Rūd. When he reached Sarakhs he halted, and negotiations went on between him and the Ghūrīs, who sought the cession of some portion of Khurāsān, the details of which are too long for insertion here. These events took place in 599 H.

Shīhāb-ud-Dīn, shortly after, however, heard of the death of his brother, and he hastily withdrew from Khurāsān, leaving Muḥammad Kharnak, the greatest of the Ghūrī nobles, and the champion of Ghūr, to hold Marw. The latter, however, having been overthrown by a body of Khwārazmī troops, threw himself into that place, but it was captured, and his head was struck off and sent to the Sultān at Khwārazm.

This success so greatly elated the Khwārazmī nobles and ministers that they advised the Sultān to march again against Hirāt, and to take possession of it, whilst the Ghūrīs were fighting among themselves about the late Sultān’s inheritance, as the Hirātīs would receive him with open arms. In the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 600 H.—Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn had died in the previous year [some say he died in 598 H., and others in 597 H.]; the Sultān appeared before Hirāt for the second time; and, after immense stones had been poured into the bāzārs and streets of the place, negotiations for surrender were again opened by Alb-i-Ghāżī, the governor, sister’s son of the two Ghūrī Sultāns; and after stipulations had been entered into for the safety of life and property, and the payment of a large sum of money, the place was given up.

Some years passed between this affair and the next investment of Hirāt, during which time Shīhāb-ud-Dīn invaded Khwārazm, and had to beat a precipitate retreat, particulars of which will be found under his reign farther on. Shīhāb-ud-Dīn had subsequently entered into a treaty of peace with Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and had been assassinated, Khwārazm Shāh had
Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain-i-Kharmil, Ghūrī, came out and paid homage to him; and the Sultan brought all Khurāsān under his sway. When, by his command, Husain-i-Kharmil was seized by his troops, a Khwājah of Hirāt, named Sa'd-ud-Din, a native of Tirmiz, succeeded in getting away from the [Khwārazm] army, and threw himself into

annexed the Ghaznin territory, and the successor of Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn had acknowledged Sultan Muḥammad's suzerainty before the next investment of Hirāt took place, on which occasion the waters of the Harī-rūd were dammed up; and 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain-i-Kharmil, one of the Ghūrīn nobles, had in the meanwhile become Wāli of Hirāt and its dependencies, which he held of Sultan Mahmūd, son of the late Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn. Kharmil, being suspicious of the upshot of the affairs of Ghūr, sent to the Sultan repeatedly tendering his allegiance to him. The Sultan was occupied with the affairs of Khita-i at the time, and could not proceed to Hirāt, as Kharmil solicited him to do, and to take possession of it and its dependencies. At length the Sultan set out for Khurāsān, and, having taken possession of Balkh by the way, he marched by way of Jazīrán to Hirāt. He entered it in Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 607 H. After this Mahmūd of Ghūr acknowledged his suzerainty, and read the Khutbah, and coined money in the Sultan's name, and sent him costly presents, including a white elephant. Kharmil was continued in the government of Hirāt with a salary of 250,000 gold dinars yearly out of the revenues of Khurāsān.

After the Sultan returned to Khwārazm, and became occupied in the affairs of Khita-i, and a rumour had spread abroad that the Sultan had been taken prisoner by the Khita-īs, Kharmil became disaffected, and began intriguing with the Ghūrī ruler, and again coined money in his name [from this it would appear that the governor of every province had a mint, or rather coined money, at the provincial capital], and apologized for the past; but the Ghūrīs, being enraged at his past conduct, resolved upon hostility, and determined to try and oust him from Hirāt, and advanced with an army towards it. Kharmil, who in the meantime had heard of the Sultan's safety, fearing the consequences of his acts, and in order to palliate them, called upon the Khwarazm nobles stationed in eastern Khurāsān to aid him in resisting the Ghūrīs. They came to his assistance with a body of troops, and, after oaths and stipulations of safe-conduct, Kharmil came out, and in combination they routed the forces of Ghūr; and this blow quite broke the little power still possessed by them. The Khwārazm nobles now wrote to Sultan Muḥammad, saying that Hirāt was like a forest, and Kharmil like a lion within it, and thought the time propitious for getting rid of him. They kept on good terms with him until the Sultan's reply reached them, after which they invited him to a consultation. When the council broke up, the Malik of Zawzan, Kawām-ud-Dīn, invited Kharmil to his quarters to a feast and drinking bout. He excused himself under plea of want of leisure. Kawām-ud-Dīn seized his bridle as though determined to take no denial, and gave a sign to the rest of the nobles and chiefs along with him, who drew their swords, dispersed Kharmil's followers, and dragged him on foot to their tents. He was sent away a prisoner to the fortress of Salomad of Khwāf [another historian says "of Zawzan:" it is probably the Salā-Mihr of our author; see page 283], and his effects were seized, and a short time afterwards his head was sent to Khwārazm.
the city, and, for a period of eleven months, he continued to hold the place.

The Khwarazmī army, by a contrivance devised by Husain-i-Kharmil, dammed up the water of the river of Hirāt above the city, and all round became like unto a sea; and matters assumed such an aspect, that, if the city had not been entirely surrounded by walls, the water, which rose higher than the housetops, would have overwhelmed it. As it was, upon one or two occasions the ground opened in the middle of the city, and water issued forth from the midst, but it was diverted and the danger obviated.

For a period of eight months hostilities continued between the defenders of the city and the Khwarazmī forces in boats; and, when eleven months of the investment had passed, Sultan Muhammad-i-Takish arrived from Khwarazm, and gave directions that the dyke [which kept the water in] should be opened; and, when the water flowed out, it carried along with it about three hundred 3

The steward or deputy in Kharmil’s employ, Zaydī by name, a man of acuteness and cunning, managed to throw himself into the fortress, seeing the state of affairs, and shut himself up there. He was joined by Kharmil’s followers and all the vagabonds and rascals of the city, among whom he distributed the wealth in Kharmil’s treasury, and defied the Khwarazmī forces. It so happened that the Sultan, on account of the disaffection of a relative of his mother, who held the government of Shād-yākh, had come into Khurāsān at this juncture, and had reached Sarakhs on his return. Zaydī now began to fear the consequences of his temerity, and to plead as an excuse that he could not place any confidence in the Khwarazmī nobles for his safety, and that he was merely awaiting the arrival of the Sultan at Hirāt to give it up. This the nobles communicated to the Sultan, and solicited him to come. He did so, and, on being made acquainted with Zaydī’s doings, his anger was so much kindled, that he ordered that the waters should be dammed up. When the waters had accumulated sufficiently the dam was opened, the waters rushed in, and one of the principal bastions fell. The ditch near was filled up with trees and rubbish, and rendered practicable for the troops; and one day, whilst Zaydī was entertaining his vagabond followers, the Khwarazmī soldiers planted the Sultan’s standards on the walls, rushed in, slew them, and carried the place. Zaydī sought to get away unnoticed, but was seized, and dragged before the Sultan by the hair of his head. After this the Sultan directed that plunder should cease, and the shops were again opened; and thus was Hirāt freed from the tyranny of Zaydī and his gang. As Kharmil had been put to death some time before, his having advised the damming up of the Hari-Rūd is, like many other of our author’s statements, purely imaginary.

3 The steward or deputy in Kharmil’s employ, Zaydī by name, a man of acuteness and cunning, managed to throw himself into the fortress, seeing the state of affairs, and shut himself up there. He was joined by Kharmil’s followers and all the vagabonds and rascals of the city, among whom he distributed the wealth in Kharmil’s treasury, and defied the Khwarazmī forces. It so happened that the Sultan, on account of the disaffection of a relative of his mother, who held the government of Shād-yākh, had come into Khurāsān at this juncture, and had reached Sarakhs on his return. Zaydī now began to fear the consequences of his temerity, and to plead as an excuse that he could not place any confidence in the Khwarazmī nobles for his safety, and that he was merely awaiting the arrival of the Sultan at Hirāt to give it up. This the nobles communicated to the Sultan, and solicited him to come. He did so, and, on being made acquainted with Zaydī’s doings, his anger was so much kindled, that he ordered that the waters should be dammed up. When the waters had accumulated sufficiently the dam was opened, the waters rushed in, and one of the principal bastions fell. The ditch near was filled up with trees and rubbish, and rendered practicable for the troops; and one day, whilst Zaydī was entertaining his vagabond followers, the Khwarazmī soldiers planted the Sultan’s standards on the walls, rushed in, slew them, and carried the place. Zaydī sought to get away unnoticed, but was seized, and dragged before the Sultan by the hair of his head. After this the Sultan directed that plunder should cease, and the shops were again opened; and thus was Hirāt freed from the tyranny of Zaydī and his gang. As Kharmil had been put to death some time before, his having advised the damming up of the Hari-Rūd is, like many other of our author’s statements, purely imaginary.

4 Boats are not mentioned in all the copies.

5 Two paragraphs before this our author states that Sultan Muhammad-i-Takish appeared before the gates of Hirāt and invested it, but now says quite differently.
ells of the walls of the city, and a breach was thereby effected; and, after fifteen days' fighting, the city was taken by assault.

After this success the Sultan marched to Balkh, and gained possession of that place likewise; and Malik 'Imād-ud-Din, 'Umr, Fiwārī* [native of Fiwār], who was governor of the province of Balkh, on the part of the Sultan of Bāmīān, was sent away [as a prisoner] to Khwārizm. From thence the Sultan set out towards Māwar-un-Nahr and Turkistān; and the whole of the Maliks and Sultan of the Afsāsiyābī dynasty, who held territory in the countries of Māwar-un-Nahr and Farghānāh, presented themselves before him.

He then turned his face towards Kulīj Khan of Khītā-ī.

* In some copies he is called Malik Imād-ul-Mulk, Āhwāżī; and in some it is stated that he went, in others that he was sent, and in others that he was taken. Balkh was surrendered before the last investment of Hirāt, as mentioned in the preceding note. Imād-ud-Dīn, having been found acting perniciously, instead of being put to death, was removed from the government of Balkh and sent to Khwārizm, and was employed elsewhere.

7 Our author has misplaced the order of these events and related them incorrectly, as well as confounded one with another. After the death of Sultan Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, in 602 H., Sultan Muḥammad, having no cause for anxiety respecting the safety of his dominions in Khurasān, turned his attention to Māwar-un-Nahr, which had remained in subjection to the infidels of Khītā-ī since the defeat of Sultan Sanjar. The chiefs of that territory had repeatedly solicited him to deliver them from the yoke of those infidels, and, being quite wearied and disgusted with the constant arrivals of agents from Gūr Khān demanding payment of the tribute, which he had purposely kept in arrears, and which his father, Takīsh, had agreed to pay to the sovereigns of Khītā-ī for assistance rendered to him against his brother, Sultan Shah, he now readily acceded to these requests, considering himself powerful enough to ignore all future payments, which he had long considered dishonourable to his sovereignty.

Bukhārā at this time was held by a mean upstart named Sanjar Malik. It was annexed, and the upstart met with his deserts. The Sultan then despatched an agent to 'Uṣmān, Sultan of Samarkand, of the race of Afsāsiyāb, and of the family of Bughrā Khān, the antagonist of the latter Samānī princes. He was already disaffected towards Gūr Khān, for he had solicited the hand of a daughter of the latter, and had been refused; so he became secretly a zealous ally of the Sultan. This was in 606 H.; and, after consulting with the Sultan of Sultan-āns—as 'Uṣmān had been hitherto styled—and his chiefs, Sultan Muḥammad returned to Khwārizm to prepare for the campaign.

In the eastern parts of Gūr Khān's dominions, his great vassals at this period began to act rebelliously; and Kojlak [called Koshlak and Kūshlak by some writers, but not Kašhū, as our author writes it], son of Tāc-nak [also written Tayā-nak] Khān, the Nāmān ruler, who had fled from the power of Chingis Khān, and had sought Gūr Khān's protection, was at his court, and ready to take advantage of any outbreak against his protector.
and, throughout the territories of Khiṭā-i and the country of Turkistān, as far as Bilāsā-ghūn and Kāshghar, the Khūṭbah was read for him; and the coin was impressed with his name. The forces of Khiṭā-i, which, in point of numbers, were beyond account and computation, advanced to encounter him. At the head of these forces was Bānīko of Ĥārāz, a Turk of great age and wisdom, but victorious in battle. He had fought forty-five engagements, in the whole of which he had been victorious; and he had defeated Sulṭān Sanjar, son of Malik Shāh, and overthrown Sulṭān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, before Andkhūd; and, at this time, he was at the head of that army.

When the battle ensued, Sulṭān Muḥammad received divine succour and heavenly assistance, and overthrew the host of Khiṭā-i, and took Bānīko of Ĥārāz prisoner, and he was converted to the true faith by means of the Sulṭān himself, and was treated with respect and honour. Sulṭān Muḥammad thought this opportunity propitious, and such as he had long sought. He accordingly marched to Samrākand, and, being joined by Uṣmān and other vassals, set out to invade Gūr Khān’s dominions, reached the Jīḥūn of Fanākat, and crossed. Having advanced into the territory of Ĥārāz, the Khwārazmī forces found Bānīko [several writers call him Tānīko], of Ĥārāz—famous as Jai-tīmūr, son of Kaldūz, elder brother of Burāk, the Chamberlain, who subsequently usurped the government of Kirmān—the commander-in-chief of Gūr Khān’s troops, at the head of a numerous, brave, and well-equipped army, drawn up to receive them. An obstinate and bloody battle ensued, in Rabī’-ul-Awwal, 607 H., which terminated in the complete overthrow of the Khiṭā-i forces. Bānīko, of Ĥārāz, was wounded and taken, as related on the next page, and booty to a vast amount fell into the hands of the victors. This victory filled all the neighbouring rulers with fear and awe of Sulṭān Muḥammad’s power, and he now assumed the title of “The Second Alexander.”

In the previous year Māzandarān had been annexed, and in this same year [607 H.] Kirmān was also added to his dominions. Who Kūlī Khān was it would be difficult to tell; he is a totally different person to Kojlāk [Koshlāk], by our author’s own account, and cannot be intended for Gūr Khān, as he mentions that ruler subsequently. Kāshrū is evidently mistaken for Kojlāk. Bānīko, of Ĥārāz, was Gūr Khān’s general, as stated above.

8 How absurd, or rather deceptive, our author’s statements are, compared with the accounts of writers who state facts, or who, at least, knew what they were writing about! Bānīko was wounded in this severe encounter, and was left on the field with only a slave-girl standing over him. A Khwārazmī soldier coming up was about to cut off his head, when the girl cried out to him not to slay him, for it was Bānīko. He was taken accordingly to the Sulṭān’s presence, and afterwards sent to Khwārazm as a trophy with the bulletin announcing the victory. When Sulṭān Muḥammad returned to Khwārazm, on the termination of this campaign, he ordered Bānīko to be put to death, and
A reliable person among the trustworthy has related, that, when Bānīko of Ṭarāz became a Mūsālmān, Sūltān Mūḥammad was wont to show him great deference and respect, and used constantly to send for him, and was in the habit of questioning him respecting the past events [in the history] of Khīṭā-ī, and the previous Maliks [kings] who had fought with him in the forty-five encounters he had been engaged in, the whole of which the Sūltān made inquiry about of him. Upon one occasion, when engaged in such conversation, the Sūltān inquired of him, saying:—

"In all these battles which you have fought, and amid the monarchs you have defeated, which among the whole of them was the most valiant and the sturdiest in battle?" Bānīko replied:—"I found none more valiant, more impetuous in battle, or more intrepid than the Ghūrī; and, if he had had an army along with him refreshed and not worn out, I should never have been able to beat him; but, he had retreated before the army of Khwārazm, and but a small number of cavalry remained with him, and their horses had become thin and weak." Sūltān Mūḥammad replied:—"You speak truly." The mercy of God be upon them!

Sūltān Mūḥammad having gained such a great success, the second year after, again assembled an army, and led a force of 400,000 effective cavalry, both horses and riders arrayed in defensive armour, into Khīṭā-ī, and completely his body was cast into the river. There is not a word as to his having been converted to Islam. This was the "deference and respect" he received. What follows, as to the conversations about the Ghūrīs, must be taken at its true value. See also note 9, page 283.

9 Here again we see the determination to glorify all things Ghūrīī. One of the oldest copies has "if his army and himself had been refreshed," &c. For a correct account of this affair, see the reign of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, otherwise Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, Section XVII.

1 After the victory gained over Bānīko, the Sūltān marched against the Malik of Utrār, who, notwithstanding the Sūltān had invited him to sever his connexion with Gūr Khān, refused. His chiefs, however, on the approach of the Khwārazm-Shāhī troops, forced him to submit. He came out clothed in a winding sheet, and with a sword hanging about his neck, but was pardoned on the understanding that he should be removed together with his family, kinsmen, and dependents to Nisā, in Upper Khurāsān, and Sūltān Mūḥammad placed a governor of his own in Utrār. After this, the Sūltān returned to Samrākand, and bestowed a daughter in marriage upon Sūltān 'Uṣmān, and leaving an intendant of his own at Samrākand, returned to Khwārazm. It was at this time that he gave orders to put Bānīko to death; and ambassadors
THE KHWAZM-SHAHIAII DYNASTY.

263

overthrew Gūr Khān, who was the Great Khān of [Karā] Khītā-ī. The whole of the horses, camels, and other from all parts hastened to tender their masters' submission; and it was at this period that disaffection showed itself at Jund among the remaining vassals of Kadr Khān [called Kadr Khān by our author, and some few other writers, who appear to have copied from him], and therefore Sultān Muḥammad did not rest long at his capital, but put his forces in motion and marched to Jund. After exterminating those rebels, Sultān 'Uṣmān and his family took up their residence in Khwārazm; and some authors state that he was soon after, in the year 609 H., put to death. Having disposed of the affairs of Jund, information reached the Sultān that 30,000 of Gūr Khān's troops had appeared before Samrākand, and invested the city.

The Khītā-ī forces used their utmost endeavours to take it, but their incessant attacks were of no avail. The Sultan was hastening his preparations to relieve it, when the Khītā-ī forces were recalled to act against Kojlak, the Naemān, who was now making head again. The Sultān marched to Samrākand, and, having been joined by additional forces from various parts, set out from Samrākand against A'nak [or I'nāk, or Ighnāk?], the ruler of which was in alliance with Gūr Khān. He had been summoned to submit to the Sultān upon very favourable terms, but, trusting to the strength of his fortress, refused. A force was detached against him, and he was compelled to submit.

The Sultān, who had heard of Kojlak's successes, became more ambitious than ever, and Kojlak entered into secret negotiations with him, and incited him to another invasion of Gūr Khān's territory. The agreement was, that whoever could first dispossess Gūr Khān of the territories of Kāshghar and Khūtan as far as the Jihiūn should have them; and, in case the Sultān did so, Kojlak was to have the remainder. Gūr Khān, having obtained information respecting the Sultān's movements, also prepared to oppose him.

The Sultān had traitors also in his camp. Two of his great vassals, the governor of Samrākand, and the Aṣfahed [also written Asfahed, the title borne by the Maliks of Tabaristan and Rustamdār], despatched agents to Gūr Khān secretly, and offered to desert the Sultān with their troops on the day of battle, if, in case of success, the former should have Khwārazm and the latter Khurāsān assigned to him as the price of his treachery. This was guaranteed; and on the day of the engagement, when the ranks of the two armies were drawn up in array, the left wing of the Khītā-īs attacked the right of the Khwārazmīs; and, as agreed upon, the two nobles with their troops, who appear to have been stationed in the right wing, retired from the field, and the Sultān's right wing was forced back and broken. In the meantime, the latter's left wing broke the right of the Khītā-īs and routed them, and the centres of both armies fell upon each other. The wings on either side began to plunder, and neither party knew whether they were the conquerors or conquered. It was usual with the Sultān to disguise himself on the day of battle, by dressing in the costume of the enemy: and on this occasion, in the utter confusion which ensued, the centres of both armies having become disengaged from each other, the Sultān got mixed up with the enemy's troops, and not being recognized by his attendants, for some days he was in the greatest danger in the very camp of the enemy. Finding an opportunity, however, he succeeded in getting away, reached the river of Fanākât, and restored fresh life to his troops. The news of the Sultān's disappearance, however, had spread into all parts of his dominions. Some said he had been killed, some that he had been
cattle, baggage, and followers of the army of Khitā-ī were captured, and the Great Khān retreated discomfited before him. Suddenly Kashlū Khān, the Tatār, who had come from Turkistān, fell upon Gūr Khān, attacked him, and made him captive; and the whole of the dominions of Khitāī were left in the possession of Sultan Muḥammadī-made prisoner; for no authentic account had been received, and the ambitious were ready to take advantage of it.

As soon as he joined his army, messengers were sent out into all parts to intimate his safety; and the Sultan returned to Khwarazm to prepare for a fresh campaign. It was on the occasion of the Sultan's disappearance, that Kharmīl of Hirāt became disaffected, and began intriguing with the Ghūrīs.

The Khitāī troops on their retreat through their own territory slew and plundered their own people, and devastated the whole country until they reached Bīlāsā-ghūn, called Ghū-bālīgh, by the Mughals. On reaching that city they found the gates closed against them, for the inhabitants made sure that Sultan Muḥammad would annex that part, and that he must be following Gūr Khān's troops with his army, and therefore refused to admit them. All the promises and oaths of Gūr Khān and his Wazīr were of no avail; and the place was attacked and defended for sixteen days, in expectation of the arrival of the Khwarazmī troops. At last it was taken and given up to plunder and massacre, which went on for three days and nights, and a vast amount of booty was taken by the troops.

Two or three writers mention these occurrences immediately after the first defeat of Gūr Khān's troops, when Bānīko was taken; but this is impossible, as, very shortly after the sacking of Bīlāsā-ghūn, Gūr Khān was seized by Kojlak, and his dynasty terminated after it had lasted ninety-five years. The cause of it was this:—Gūr Khān II.—for he was the second of the name—was desirous of enriching himself and replenishing his coffers, by making his nobles and chiefs disgorge the booty they had acquired by the sacking of Bīlāsā-ghūn and country round. This caused great disorders, which Kojlak becoming aware of, and finding that Gūr Khān had been almost deserted by his troops, suddenly surrounded his camp. Kojlak treated him with respect, but possessed himself of great part of his territory. This took place in 610 H., and two years after Gūr Khān was put to death—some say he died.

Most works, are, more or less, defective with respect to the Sultan's campaigns against Gūr Khān, and dates are not often mentioned. The Raṣūl-ṣaḥfa only mentions one battle, others mention two; but Gūzīdah says there were three battles in all, but gives no details. Here, I regret to say, my excellent guide, Yāfā, which gives full details of two battles, already mentioned, becomes somewhat abrupt with respect to the affairs of Gūr Khān, and, possibly, there may be an hiatus in the MS., as, from the context, a third and more decisive battle is implied; and it must have been after a third encounter that Bīlāsā-ghūn was sacked, and Kojlak was enabled to seize the person of Gūr Khān. The second encounter took place in 610 H., and Fāṣīb-i, under the events of 612 H., mentions that, in that year, Sultan Muḥammad acquired sway over the whole of Māwar-un-Nahr, which had continued in the possession of the infidels of Kārā-Khitāī, and the Mughals, since Sultan Sanjar's defeat. On the other hand, however, most writers state that Gūr Khān was taken prisoner in 610 H., and died in 612 H.

Gross exaggeration, as shown by the notes.
Takish. The Sultan of Samarkand, and the Afrasiyabi Sultan, he directed should be removed from Samarkand, and some of them were martyred.

From thence [Samarkand?] Sultan Muhammad advanced into 'Irak, and the territories of 'Irak, Azarbajjan, and Fars fell into his hands. He took the Ata-bak Sa'd captive in battle, as has already been stated, and the Ata-bak Yuz-bak was likewise put to flight. He placed his son, Sultan

All the copies, except one of the oldest, are minus the words "from Samarkand." Our author inverts the order of most of the events of this reign, as the previous notes show.

Our author, on a previous page, has mentioned the hostility existing between the 'Abbasi Khalifahs and Sultan Takish, Muhammad's father; and the arrival in Ghur of ambassadors from Baghdaad to negotiate with the brothers, Sultans Ghiyas-ud-Din and Shihab-ud-Din, and his own father's return to Baghdaad along with them; and, likewise, the Khalifah's continued enmity towards the son of Takish also. No sooner had Sultan Takish died, than the Sultans of Ghur and Ghaznin hastened to take advantage of the Khalifah's recommendation, notwithstanding our author's absurd statement at page 255.

He was too orthodox a Musalman, of course, to mention such a horrid circumstance as the Khalifah, Un-Nasir's, despatching an agent to the infidel Chingiz Khan, prior to the period of this expedition into 'Irak, inciting him to make war upon Sultan Muhammad—a Musalman, and of which faith he [Un-Nasir] was himself the patriarch and head! It was upon this occasion that, fearing to send a letter, the communication addressed to the traitor Muhammad, Yalwaj, the minister of Chingiz, was written or rather tattooed [there is a precisely similar story in Herodotus] on the agent's shaven head. The hair was left to grow over it before he was despatched, lest even that mode of communication might be discovered. Among other causes of hostility was this:—The Sultan's flag, borne by the kawwan of pilgrims to Makkah, was placed behind that of Jalal-ud-Din, Hasan, of Alamut, the Mulhidah heretic, lately turned orthodox; and another was that the Khalifah borrowed, so to speak, several Fida-Is [volunteers, or disciples rather, of the head of the Mulhidahs are so called] from the former, intending to despatch them to assassinate the Sultan; and had sent some of these disciples to murder the Sharif of Makkah, but, instead, they assassinated his brother. Further, when Sultan Muhammad acquired possession of Ghaznin, after the death of Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz [styled Yal-duz, and Yal-duz by some], in 611-12 H., and gained possession of the treasury of the late Sultan Shihab-ud-Din, Ghuri, a document was found therein, from the Khalifah to the Ghirian Sultans, urging them to hostility against him [Muhammad], which accounted for the persistent hostility of the brothers towards him, notwithstanding our author's ridiculous statement referred to above. At length, in 613 H., the Sultan, having sufficient excuse, obtained the necessary decree from the chief ecclesiastic of his dominions, issued a proclamation to the effect that as long as a descendant of Fatimah lived the Abbasis had no right to the Khalifat, and that the then Khalifah was to be considered dethroned. His name was omitted from the Khutbah and the coin, and the name of Sayyid 'Ala-ul-Mulk [some few call him 'Ala-ud-Din] of Tirmid, a lineal descendant of Imam Husain, was inserted instead, and he was to be considered as the rightful Khalifah.
Rukn-ud-Din, styled Ghūrī Shānasti, on the throne of 'Irāk, and appointed Ulugh Khān-i-Abī Muḥammad, his Atā-bak and Lieutenant; and the Malik of Ghūr were directed to proceed into that territory:

Sultān Muḥammad now left 'Irāk, and set out on his return to Māwar-un-Nahr; but, turning suddenly off from

The Sultan assembled an army accordingly for the purpose of proceeding to Baghdad, ousting Un-Nāṣir, and placing Sayyid ‘Ala-ul-Mulk in his place.

On reaching Damghan, Sultan Muhammad found that the Ata-bak Sa’d, ruler of Fārs, with an army, had reached Rai with hostile designs against the territory of 'Irāk. He pushed on without delay, and at once attacked him. The troops of Shīrāz were broken and overthrown at the first onset, and Sa’d was taken prisoner. The Sultan was for putting him to death, but Sa’d, having made interest with the Malik of Zauzan, was admitted, through him, to the Sultan’s presence. Sa’d was released on the agreement to give up two of the strongest fortresses of Fārs, one of which was ʻIṣṭakhr, and to pay one-fourth of the revenues as tribute. Fāsīh-i states that this took place in 603 H.; but Yāfā-ī and Guzidah say it happened in 613 H.; while Raqūt-us-Ṣafā, Khulāṣat-ul-Akhbār, and some others, say in 614 H. It is somewhat strange that Sa’d did not attempt to shake off the yoke and break the treaty after the disasters which befell the Sultan soon after, if the two latter dates be the more correct. Sa’d made over his son Zangī as a hostage and was allowed to depart, as already related; see page 176 and page 177, note 9.

At this same time the Ata-bak Yūz-bak, ruler of Ḍarbāaljān, had also marched from that territory with the object of invading 'Irāk, and had reached Hamadān. The Khwārazmī forces advanced against him, but, on their reaching Hamadān, Yūz-bak decamped. The Sultan’s nobles urged pursuit, but that monarch refused his sanction, saying that it would be a bad omen to take two kings in one year; so Yūz-bak got safely back to his own territory. As soon as he did so, however, he sent envoys with rich presents to the Sultan, and acknowledged his sovereignty.

In the meantime, the advance of the Sultan into 'Irāk had filled Un-Nāṣir and his people with terror. Un-Nāṣir despatched an agent to Hamadān to endeavour to deter him by remonstrances and threats, but found them of no use with the Sultan with 300,000 horse at his back, who was resolved to persist. When he reached the ʻHulwān Pass [the town of Asad-ābād] it was autumn, and, whilst there encamped, he encountered a heavy fall of snow, which rose even higher than the tent walls; and nearly the whole of the cattle of his army, and a great number of men, perished. This was the first disaster he had ever met with, and he had to abandon the expedition and return to Hamadān. When the cold season drew towards a close, he thought it advisable to retrace his steps. He returned to Rai, and remained in that part for a little while to repair his losses and reorganize his forces, and arrange the affairs of that territory. He was on his return from thence, where he had left his son, Rukn-ud-Dīn, in charge of the government, when a messenger reached him from the governor of Utrār, intimating the arrival there of a number of Tāṭār spies, as he termed them, with a large amount of valuable property. For details see farther on.

To serve with their contingents. They were subordinate then.
the banks of the river Jazār⁶, he pushed on towards Bāmiān, and, suddenly and unawares, pounced upon Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn 'Alī, son of Sām, ruler of Bāmiān, seized him, and martyred him, and then returned [to Khwārazm].

In the year 612 H., Sultān Mūḥammad advanced from Māwar-un-Nahr and came to Ghaznin, and suddenly and unexpectedly possessed himself of the Ghaznin territories likewise. Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, retired towards Hindūstān⁷ by the way of Sang-i-Sūrākh; and the countries of Ghaznin, Zāwulīstān, and Kābul, as far as the banks of the Sind, came under the jurisdiction of the Khwārazmī nobles. The Khān-sālār [the Sewer of the imperial household], Kurīz⁸, was stationed at Ghaznin; and the countries of Ghūr, Ghaznin, the Bilād-i-Dāwar [Zāmīn-i-Dāwar], Jarūm, and the throne of the two Sultāns, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and Muʻizz-ud-Dīn, sons of Mūḥammad-i-Sām, was conferred, by the Sultān, upon his eldest son, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mangbarnī, after which he himself returned to Māwar-un-Nahr.

In the year 615 H., he pushed on towards Turkīstān in pursuit of Kadr Khān⁹, who was the son of Yūsuf the Tatār, and penetrated as far as Yīghur⁴ [I-ghūr] of Turkīstān, so far to the north, that he came under the North Pole, and reached a tract where the light of twilight did not disappear at all from the sight; and, to the vision, in the direction of the north, the glow seemed merely to incline [change over] from the west to the east, and the light of dawn appeared and the day broke.

The matter was accordingly referred to the 'Ulamā and Muftīs of Bukhārā respecting the obligation to repeat the last prayer at night⁶, [question being asked] to this effect:—

⁶ In most copies this part of the sentence is left out altogether. The name is also written Jowār.
⁷ I-yal-duz [or Yal-duz] was taken prisoner and put to death by I-yal-timig̣h in 611 H., before the Sultān entered the Ghaznin territory.
⁸ This name differs considerably in some copies of the text.
⁹ There is no expedition against any ruler styled Kadr Khān mentioned by other writers at this period, for it was in this very year that the Sultān fled from the Mughal invaders. Our author has evidently lost himself again. At page 254, he says the Sultān’s mother was the daughter of Kadr Khān of Kīschāk, and he, incorrectly, styles the governor of Utrār by the same name; and thus no less than three Kadr Khāns are mentioned.

¹ All the copies of the text are somewhat at variance here with respect to this name; but it is mentioned again farther on, and is quite plain in several copies.
² Prayer before retiring to rest, repeated some two or three hours after sunset.
As the light of twilight did not disappear at all, whether the prayer before sleep was necessary or not? They, with one accord, wrote a reply, that the prayer before sleep was not necessary, when the prescribed time for it could not be found with the people inhabiting such region. 

Kadr Khan, the Tatar, having in this expedition been overcome, the calamity of the infidels of Chin arose, and the darkness of the night of sedition and tumult showed its head from the mantle-collar of actuality, and was the beginning of dire misfortunes to the true faith, and the commencement of calamities and afflictions upon the Muhammadan people. That circumstance occurred after this manner:—Chingiz Khan, the Mughal, had a son, the eldest of all his sons, Tushî by name. At this time, this

8 Having noticed in the month of June at St. Petersburg that the light did not leave the sky during the whole night, and being desirous of discovering as nearly as possible how far north of the Shihiin the Sultân may really have penetrated, as the territory of Taraz is the most northern tract reached by the Sultân, according to Yâqâ-i, I referred the paragraph to the Rev. Robert Main, M.A., Radcliffe Observer, at Oxford; and to the kindness of that gentleman I am much indebted for the following explanation:—

"It is usually considered that twilight exists as long as the sun is not more than 18° below the horizon, and hence we shall readily find that the lowest latitude which will have twilight all night, at midsummer, will be 48° 30' (= sun's solstitial N. P. D. — 18° = 66° 30' — 18°). As we go northwards, of course the twilight will continue longer, till, at the Arctic circle, the sun does not set on midsummer-day.

"I presume, therefore, that the Sultân's expedition was towards the north, and the time not far from midsummer; and, from the expressions used, he must have been getting into rather high latitudes, where the sun, after dipping for a little while, would soon transfer the twilight glow from the west to the east. It would appear also that the Sultân and his army had never seen this phenomenon before, by their apparent surprise at it, and by his sending for advice concerning the evening prayer."

From the above remarks it would also further appear, that Sultân Muham-mad could not have had any people in his army who had ever been so far north before, and he and they were so much surprised that they concluded [or, rather, our author concluded] that they must be "under the North Pole." It also seems strange that he should see the necessity of writing to Bukhâra for advice, since we might suppose that the people of Khwârazm would have been aware of the fact of this phenomenon.

The territory of Taraz lies between 46° and 49° N. lat.

4 Also called Jujî. This affair took place a considerable time after the merchants had been put to death, and subsequent to the Sultân's return from 'Irâq, and, of course, our author has put it before. See note 8, page 272. Whilst delaying at Samrâkand, intimation was brought to Sultân Muhammad that Türk-Tughân, one of the chiefs of Turkistân, of the tribe of Takrit, was retreating before the Mughals towards Karâ-Kuram, the locale of the Kankufl tribe, and that he,
Tūshī, by command of Chingiz Khan, his father, had come out of the territory of Chin, in pursuit of an army of Tatārs, and Sultan Muḥammad, from Māwar-un-Nahr and Khurasān, had likewise pushed on in the same direction; and the two armies fell in with each other.

A battle ensued between them, and the fighting, slaughter, struggle, and conflict, continued and was maintained from the beginning of the day until the time of

with some troops, had turned his steps in the direction of Jund. The Sultan now moved from Samrākand towards Jund, by way of Būkhārā, to guard his own territory, and prevent their entering it; but, hearing that they were pursued by a numerous army of Chingiz Khan's, under the leadership of his son, Jūjī or Tūshī, the Sultan again returned to Samrākand, and taking with him the remainder of his forces, previously left there, advanced with great pomp at the head of a large force to Jund, thinking, as the author from whom a portion of these extracts are taken says, "to bring down two birds with one arrow." [In the meantime, in 615 H., Kojlak had been overthrown by Chingiz, and slain.] He pushed on [from Jund] until he reached a place in Kāshghar, lying between two small rivers, where evidences of a late conflict, in the shape of fresh blood and numerous dead bodies, were discovered. Search was made, and one among those who had fallen was discovered to be still alive. From information gained from the wounded man, it was found that Chingiz Khan's troops had there overtaken Tūk-Tughān and his followers, who had been defeated and put to the sword, after which Jūjī and his Mughals had set out to rejoin his father. Hearing also that the Mughals had only marched that very day, the Sultan pushed on, and by dawn the next morning came up with them, and at once prepared to engage them. The Mughal leaders were not willing to fight, saying that they had been sent in pursuit of prey, which they had already entrapped, and had not permission from Chingiz Khan, but that they could not retire if the Sultan should attack them; and, at the same time, advised that he should not make matters worse than they were already between himself and Chingiz Khan, by any fresh act of hostility. Sultan Muḥammad's good star was on the wane, and he attacked the Mughals, who stood their ground manfully. The right wings of either army, as is often the case in eastern as it has frequently been in western battles, broke their respective opponents, and the Mughals at last attacked the Sultan's centre, and forced it back some distance. The Sultan was in some danger, when his gallant son, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, who had been victorious on the right, charged the Mughals in flank, and saved the centre from defeat. The fight was maintained with great obstinacy until night came, when each army retired to a short distance, confronting each other. The Mughals lighted an immense number of fires to deceive the Khwārazmīs, and decamped quietly during the night, and set out to join the camp of Chingiz, who was hastening his preparations for the invasion of the Sultan's territories. The Sultan halted on the field for a few days, and, after this occurrence, his mind, already much changed, appears to have given way entirely; and, having with his own eyes witnessed the vigour and tenacity of the Mughals, he became filled with apprehensions and misgivings, and retreated to Samrākand without attempting anything more. Irresolution and bewilderment now marked all his proceedings. For further particulars, see page 274 and note 1.
evening prayer, and the ranks of both the armies assumed the form of a circle. The right wing of the Musalman forces routed the left wing of the infidels, and pursued after them; while the right wing of the Mughal infidels routed the left wing of the army of Islam and pursued it, and, in this manner, the armies assumed the form of a circle. This battle was maintained from the dawn of day; and, when night came, the two armies separated from each other, and withdrew to a short distance. There was a small stream of water between them; and the two armies halted, facing each other, on the banks of that stream and bivouacked. When the morning broke [it was found] that the Mughal army had marched away. They had lighted great fires, and had decamped, and left them burning.

Sultan Muhammad having thus witnessed and beheld with his own eyes, in this encounter, the warlike feats, the activity, and the efforts of the Mughal forces, the next day retired from that place; and fear and dread of them took possession of his heart and mind, and he never again came against them. This was one of the causes of the miseries and troubles which befell the people of Islam.

The second reason was this. When Chingiz Khan broke out into revolt in the land of Chin, and Tamghaj, and the Greater Turkistan, and Altun Khan of Tamghaj, who was sovereign of Upper Turkistan, and the lineal monarch of Kara Khita-i, was overcome by him, and the territories of Tamghaj, Tingit, and Yighur [I-ghūr], and Tatār, all fell into his hands; the news of these successes having come to the hearing of Sultan Muhammad, his mind became filled with ambition [for the possession] of Chin, and he became desirous of obtaining authentic information respecting the forces of the Mughals, and the condition of Chingiz Khan. Accordingly, the most excellent Sayyid, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Rāzi2, with a party of other persons, were despatched on a

1 Or, Upper Turkistan: the original word will serve for either.
2 For our author's further and more detailed account of Chingiz Khan's proceedings, see last Section of this work.
3 Probably Aḥmad, Khujandi, is the person whom our author has mistaken here; but I am rather inclined to think that this 'excellent Sayyid' can be no other than the Badr-ud-Dīn referred to by Guzidah, who was the chief Diwān in Sultan Muhammad's service, and who became suspicious and disaffected on some account or other, and fled and took service with Chingiz. For account of further proceedings of this arch-traitor, see note 1, page 274.
mission to Chin; and, when these agents reached that country, Chingiz Khan sent trustworthy and confidential persons of his own, bearing numerous rarities as presents to Sultan Muhammad.

I heard from the Sayyid Bahá-ud-Din—the mercy of the Almighty be upon him!—[who said:—] "When we reached the presence of Chingiz Khan, the accursed, the Wazir of Tamgháj, and the son and the uncle of Altun Khan, were brought in, and we were summoned. Then, turning his face towards them, Chingiz said:—'Behold, my affairs and my sovereignty have attained to such a pitch of grandeur,

Be this as it may, our author differs wholly from other writers here. I have only space for a few details. A person named Ahmad, a merchant of Khujand, and two others, with a considerable quantity of merchandize suitable for the purpose, set out for the great camp of Chingiz Khan. At this time he had reduced under his yoke most of the nomad tribes of Mughalistan and Turkistan—Tatars, Mughals, I-ghirs, and others—and a portion of Chin and Ma-chin.
The merchants were well received and liberally treated. Subsequently, Chingiz directed his sons, the great nobles, and others, to despatch servants of their own with merchandize into the territory of Sultan Muhammad, to accompany Ahmad of Khujand and the others on their return journey. A large party of merchants, numbering about 450, Musalmans as stated, left Chingiz Khan's territory with property of immense value, and set out, accordingly, for the Sultan's dominions. At the same time, Chingiz Khan sent three agents of his own to the Sultan, intimating the despatch of these traders with the object of purchasing merchandize suitable for his camp; and, further, to state that he had reduced the refractory around him to subjection and considerable tracts under his sway, and that, in place of estrangement and distrust, intercourse and confidence might arise between them; that merchants and traders might be free to go and come; that their subjects and dominions might be secure and open to each other's people; and that they might aid and assist each other under any circumstances that might arise. When they reached Utrar on the Shihin, the frontier capital of the Sultan's dominions in that direction, the governor, Aníl-ju-k by name, a kinsman of the Sultan's mother, who bore the title of Ghá-ír Khan [not Kadr Khan, as our author states], being offended at the impertinence of one of Ahmad Khujandi's party,—said to have been a Hindi—who addressed him in too familiar a style; and his cupidity likewise being excited by the arrival of all this treasure and valuable property brought by the merchants, sent off a messenger to the Sultan, announcing the arrival of a number of spies of the Tatar, Chingiz, on their way into Iran, and asked permission to put them to death and confiscate their property.
The Sultan, whose mind was already disquieted at the successes of Chingiz, deceived by the perfidious message of Ghá-ír Khan, and his temper still ruffled at the disaster he had so lately sustained, without thought or consideration most unfortunately gave his consent. The merchants, numbering about 450 Musalmans, including Chingiz's messengers, were put to death, with the exception of one person, who eventually escaped, and told the tale to Chingiz; and the whole of their property was confiscated.

Most of the MSS. are defective here, and do not contain the last sentence.
that the monarch of the [empire of the] setting sun has sent envoys unto me.' In short," said the Sayyid, "when he sent us away, he requested that envoys on both sides, and merchants, and kārwāns, should constantly come and go, and bring and take away with them choice descriptions of arms, cloths, and stuffs, and other articles of value and elegance of both empires; and that between the two monarchs a permanent treaty should be maintained."

He despatched merchants along with the envoys of Sultān Mūḥammad, with about five hundred camel-loads of gold, silver, silks, and ṭarghū [a description of woven silk of a red colour], together with other precious and valuable commodities, that they might trade with them. They entered the territory of Islām by way of Utrār.

At that place, there was a governor named Kadr Khan, and he sent an account to Sultān Mūḥammad respecting the importance and value of the merchandize; and solicited permission from him, in a perfidious manner, to stop the party of merchants. Having obtained permission to do so, he seized the envoys and the whole of the merchants, and slew them, and took possession of all their property, and sent it to the Sultān's presence. Of that party, there was one person, a camel-driver, who had gone to one of the [public] hot baths, and he succeeded in making his escape by way of the fire place. He, having taken to the wilds, returned back to Chin, and made Chingiz acquainted with the perfidious conduct of Kadr Khan of Utrār and the slaughter of the party.

Chingiz Khan prepared to take revenge; and he caused
the forces of Chin and Turkistan to be got ready for that purpose. Trustworthy persons have related, that, at the place where he then was, seven hundred banners were brought forth, and under every banner one thousand horsemen were arrayed. Every ten horsemen were directed to take with them three dried Mughali sheep, and an iron cauldron; and he set out on his way.

From the place where Chingiz was at this period, to the boundary of Utrar, was a three months' journey through the wilderness; and, along with his hosts, he despatched horses, mares, and geldings, without number, to supply them with milk, and for riding. The journey through the wilds was got over in a short time, and he issued forth on the Utrar frontier; and that fortress and city was taken, and take revenge, and, according to a few authors, even despatched another envoy to announce his coming; but he took care in the first place to quell all disorders in his own dominions.

The Sultan having disposed of the affairs of Irak, and having left his son, Rukn-ud-Din, in charge of the government of the province—nominally, it must be understood, for Rukn-ud-Din was only in his fifteenth year—set out for the purpose of proceeding into Mawar-un-Nahr. On reaching Nishapur, on the 8th of Shawwal, 614 H., contrary to his wont, he gave himself up to wine and women. After delaying there more than a month, on the 10th of Shaban he marched to Bukhara; and, it being spring, pitched his tents in the pleasant meads near that city. Having given himself up to pleasure there also for some time, he assembled the troops of that part, and determined to move against Kojlak, who had been extending his dominions to the territories towards the head of the Sihun, and marched to Samarkand, after reaching which the same infatuated course of pleasure was followed. It was at this time that, hearing of the movement of Tuk-Tughan [the Takhna Khan of some European authors and translators] of the tribe of Makrit, the Sultan advanced towards Jund, and the engagement with the troops of Chingiz took place, which our author has related, out of its proper order, at page 268. For a correct account of that battle see note 4 to the page referred to.

2 In two or three copies "three," but seven hundred is the more correct number.

५ Sheep's or goat's flesh salted and dried in the sun, called "landaey" by the Afghans.

५ One or two copies of the text have "in three months," but the majority have "in a short time." Utrar was, however, taken after five months. When the Sultan retired to Samarkand, after the encounter with Tughlī, he had a force of 400,000 men. The greater part of these was left in Mawar-un-Nahr and Turkistan; 50,000 men were detached to Utrar to join Ghā-ir Khan; and when report followed report of the advance of Chingiz, 10,000 more were sent to reinforce Ghā-ir Khan, under the Hajib, Karajah. On reaching Utrar, Chingiz pushed on to Bukhārā, after leaving a force to invest the former place, which was not the first that was captured, as our author makes it appear. Faṣīh-i says he reached it on the last day of Zi-Hijjah, 616 H., and entered it the following day.
the whole of the inhabitants were martyred. From thence Chingiz Khan marched towards Bukhara; and, on the day of the Festival of the Sacrifice, 10th of the month Zi-Hijjah, in the year 616 H., he captured the city, and martyred the whole of the inhabitants, put the 'Ulamā to the sword, and gave the libraries of books to the flames. They have related that the Imam-zādah, Rukn-ud-Dīn—the mercy of the Almighty be upon him!—when they were martyring him, repeated the following lines:

"I said, that my heart said, 'It is murder committed by us.'
I said, my soul said, that 'It is the carrier away of us.'
I said, that 'Thy powerful dog has fallen on me.'
It [my soul?] said, 'Thou shouldst not draw breath, for it is brought upon ourselves.'"

Chingiz Khan, after the catastrophe of the city of Bukhara, marched towards Samarkand, in which city Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shāh, had stationed 60,000 horse, fully equipped and furnished, consisting of different races of Turks, Ghūris, and Khurāsānis, together with the Malik and troops of Ghūr, who were all included among that body of troops. After a few days, on the 10th of the month of Muharram, 617 H., Samarkand was also captured, and the whole of the inhabitants were martyred.

6 Abraham's offering up of his son Isaac.
7 That is "it [viz. this fact] is murder committed by us," in the sense, as it were, "we have done for ourselves."
8 These four lines are with difficulty translatable or intelligible, nor do the various texts enlighten us. Generally it seems a mere amplification of "we're undone," or "I'm undone." The first two lines are apparently the expression of the inner consciousness. The third line is the man's summary judgment. The fourth line is the reproof of conscience again, that he should spare his words. The latter part of the second line might be translated "the tearer of our curtain [honour]."
9 Yāfā says the Sultan only left 30,000 men to garrison Bukhārā, and that 110,000, among whom were some of the greatest of his nobles and leaders, were left at Samarkand; and that 60,000 Tajiks [the forces of Ghūr], each of them a Rustam in valour, were stationed in other fortresses.
1 When the Sultan left Samarkand, dispirited and hopeless, he set out, by way of Nakhshab, towards Khurāsān. As he proceeded, he told the people of the places he passed by the way, to shift for themselves and provide for their own safety. Swift messengers were also despatched to Khwārazm, to tell his mother, to take with her all his family and effects, and proceed towards Mazandaran. Before doing so she caused all the state prisoners there, and such as were supposed ambitious of sovereignty, to be cast into the Jihān. See page 279.

The Sultan's apprehensions and irresolution caused the utmost confusion in all state affairs; and, as if this was not enough, some astrologers began to
When the accounts of these disasters came to the hearing of Sultan Muhammad, the forces, then along with him before the gates of Balkh, consisted almost entirely of Tatar and Khitā-i troops, whilst his own old soldiers and vassals had been left behind by him in Mawar-un-Nahr; and those people, on whom the most implicit trust and confidence could be placed, were also all away in those parts. The troops who were along with him [now] conspired together to seize him, and to make that act of perfidy and treachery the means of their own deliverance; and, having seized the Sultan, to take him and deliver him over as an offering to Chingiz Khan.

declare that the stars prognosticated his downfall, and that he would be unable to apply himself to any measures for effective opposition to the enemy. His chief men and his sagest ministers were paralyzed at all these misfortunes. The most experienced among them in the world's affairs urged that it was hopeless to attempt to preserve any hold over Mawar-un-Nahr, but that the utmost efforts should be directed to the preservation of Khurāsān and 'Irāk; to concentrate all his available forces, and raise the whole people to arms; to make the Jihān their ditch, and defend the line of that river. Others, craven-hearted, advised his going to Ghaznin, there to raise troops and make a stand, and, if unsuccessful, make Hindūstān his rampart. The latter advice the Sultan proposed to follow, and he came as far as Balkh with this object, when Imād-ud-Mulk, who had great influence over him, arrived from 'Irāk, from Rukn-ud-Dīn, the Sultan's son. Imād-ud-Mulk, who was a native of that part, advised the Sultan to retire into 'Irāk, and assemble the forces of that country to oppose the Mughals. The Sultan's eldest son, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, who had often before entreated his father to adopt vigorous measures, now again protested, and entreated his father to concentrate his troops, as far as lay in his power, and advance to meet the enemy; but, if his heart would not permit him to do so, to proceed into 'Irāk, and leave the troops with him, that he might hasten to the frontier and attack the invading hordes, and see what Providence willed, that he himself, at least, might be exonerated before men.

"If fortune favour me," he said, "I will carry off the ball of desire with the Chaugān of Divine aid; but, if fortune favours me not, neither will the finger of reproach be pointed at us, nor the tongue of malediction curse; and the world will not be able to say:—'They have collected taxes and tribute from us for so long, and at a time like this they renounce our affairs, and abandon us to be captive to infidels.'" This counsel he continued to urge, and burned to receive his father's consent. All was of no avail: the Sultan's panic was so great that the sage advice of his son was considered the mere lispings of an infant.

The Sultan left Balkh with the object of retiring into 'Irāk; and with this intention was encamped on the bank of the Tirmid river [the Jihān], when news of the fall of Bukhāra reached him, and, very soon after, that of Samrākand also. He now gave up all hopes of preserving his dominions. The majority of the troops with him then—and they were not numerous, and were in a disorganized state—were Turks of the tribe of his mother and her kinsmen, called Īrānī; and, during the confusion and distraction which had now arisen,
One of the party, however, presented himself before Sultan Muhammad, and told him all about the plot. The Sultan kept his own counsel; and, at night, he left the camp, in order to test beyond a doubt the perfidy of the conspirators. At midnight the party drew near to the imperial pavilion, formed a cordon about it, and completely surrounded it. Not finding him within the tent, they came upon the camp at that untimely hour, and the whole army fell into utter disorder and confusion. Sultan Muhammad was forced to fly, and set out towards Nishāpur, and wrote mandates to the Amirs and Malikṣ in every part of his dominions, commanding them to put the fortresses of Khwārazm, Ghūr, Khurāsān, and Irāq in a posture of they conspired against him. One of the Sultan’s own ministers, the Diwat, Badr-ud-Dīn, previous to this, had fled, and had entered the service of Chingiz. Not satisfied with this, he had forged letters, as though the Sultan’s nobles had written, tendering their services to the Mughal chief, and urging him to hostility against their sovereign; and also forged replies, as coming from Chingiz, promising them aid and assistance. These letters were made over to a spy, with instructions to let them fall into the hands of the Sultan’s trusted followers. This caused suspicion to arise between the Sultan and his nobles; and, having been warned by one of them of the meditated treachery of the troops, he left his pavilion that very night, and changed his place of repose. The mutinous troops, in the night, took to their bows, and the next morning the pavilion was found like a sieve from the holes made by the volleys of arrows discharged into it. Finding, however, that the Sultan was safe, and their object discovered, these disaffected troops dispersed, and finally joined Chingiz. The Sultan now began to suspect his nobles, along with him, and they were mostly sent away, on some duty or other; and he then set out for Nishāpur with all haste, and the greater part of his forces dispersed. On the way, he urged the people of the places he passed through, to see to their fortifications and means of defence, which filled them with perplexity and fear, and rendered easy matters difficult. On reaching Kalāt, near Tus, he was induced to consent to make a stand there—it is a place of great strength, the upper part of which was said to be seven leagues round, and capable of an energetic defence [it is a valley, so to say, enclosed within lofty hills; Nādir considered the position so strong that he deposited his treasures there]—and to erect fortifications there. Some of the Sultan’s effects were removed thither accordingly, and provisions were collected. This, however, was also abandoned; and, on the 12th of Safar, 617 H., the Sultan reached Nishāpur, where he abandoned himself to pleasure—if such can be so called—more than ever, for he considered that fate was against him, and all state affairs were abandoned. Whilst thus occupied news reached him, in the following Rabī’-ul-Ākhīr, that an army of Mughals under Yamāh Nūyān, Sābtā, and Taghājār [some authors say Jabab Nū-yaṯ, Swidae Bahadur, and Türkār; the first some European authors call "Hubbe"], and other leaders, had, after the fall of Bukhārā, crossed the Jihūn at Tirmiz, in Rabī’-ul-Awwal, in pursuit of him. He left Nishāpur without delay, and fled by way of Isfārān to Raʾī.

3 The words "at that untimely hour" are contained in one MS. only.
defence; and throughout the empire of Islam disorder and tumult arose.

Chingiz Khan, having received information of the disorganization and dissolution of the army of Sultan Muhammad, after the capture of Samrukand, nominated a force of 60,000 Mughal horse, which was placed under the command of two Mughals, chiefs of high rank, one of whom was Yamah Nu-in, and the other Sahudah Bahadur, to proceed in pursuit of the Sultan. When this force had passed over the river [Jihun], the Sultan retired from Nishapur, and set out towards Mazandaran, and his camp was pitched at the top of the Darah or Pass of Tamishah⁴, when the Mughal troops came upon him. The Sultan was obliged to fly from thence, and entered the hills on foot, and got away; and, going from one range of hills to another, entered Mazandaran⁵. The son of the chief of Mazandaran,

⁴ Only a single copy of the texts collated gives this name correctly.
⁵ Any one reading the above would imagine that the Sultan proceeded direct from Nishapur into Mazandaran, but such was not the case; he took a much longer circuit, as already shown. When he reached Rai news came to him from Khurasan that a strange army had reached it, which report made him regret the haste he had shown in coming into Iran. He left Rai accordingly, and proceeded to the fortress of Kazwin [some say Karun], at the foot of which his son, Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, was encamped, with an army of 30,000. The Sultan sent his other son, Ghiyas-ud-Din, and his mother, and some of the ladies of his family, to the fortress of Karin-dujz for safety, and his own mother and the rest of the family to I-lal, a fortress of Mazandaran. He was advised by the Amir of Iran to take shelter at Shiran-koh, and there concert measures and assemble troops, and oppose the Mughal army which was in pursuit of him. Again he declined, saying that it was not safe, and could not be defended against the Mughals; and this disheartened his followers still more. He was advised by some to start that very hour. Between Luristan and Fars, they said, was a range of mountains, called Tang-Tali, after they had passed which they would enter a rich country, and could take shelter there, collect troops, and, in case the Mughals should arrive, be ready to encounter them. Whilst considering this advice, which he thought good, news arrived from Rai of the Mughals having reached it; and now his followers began to desert him, as is the nature of the world, and to seek their own safety and interests. Almost deserted, the unfortunate monarch set out with his son, Jalal-ud-Din, and with scarcely any followers, for the fortress of Karin-dujz, whither he had previously sent Ghiyas-ud-Din and his mother and the ladies of his family. On the way he was actually overtaken by the Mughal advance; but the smallness of his party led to their not recognizing him. They gave them, however, a volley of arrows, which wounded the Sultan's horse, but it brought him safely to Karun. He only stayed one day, and, after providing a fresh horse, made off in the direction of Baghdad. The Mughals appeared before Karun, which they attacked, and fighting went on as long as they thought the Sultan was there; but, finding this was not the case, and that he
who had joined him, was in attendance on the Sultan, and his own son, Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mang-barni, was also with him. Sultan Muhammad embarked on the Sea of Khurz [the Caspian], and for a considerable time he continued on an island therein, in distress and affliction.

had set out towards Baghdad, they followed on his tracks. They came up with a small body of his party, who acted as a rear-guard, and slew them; but the Sultan having changed his route—he had found shelter in a fortress—they missed him, and at last gave up the pursuit. Having remained a few days at the latter place, the Sultan set out towards Gilân, and then on to Asîr, where what remained of his treasures was lost. He then entered the district of Amul. His family had reached that part, and had taken shelter in its strongholds. The Mughals were in pursuit, however; and he, having consulted with the chief men of those parts, it was determined that the Sultan should seek refuge for a time in one of the islands of the Sea of Khurz, named Ab-i-Sugiin.

[A few words may not be out of place here respecting this island and its name. An old writer states that it was the name of an island [one of several], and of a small town of Tabaristan, in the district of Astarâbâd, three days' journey from Gurgân or Gûrgân, called Jurjân and Jûrjân by Muḥammadans, who change the g's to j's according to the 'Arabic custom; and that it was also the name of a considerable river, which formerly came from Khwârâzm [the Oxus; but more probably the river of Gurgân or Jurjân], and fell into the Sea of Khurz—the Caspian. When this river approaches the sea, it flows very slowly and quietly; hence its name, Ab-i-Sugiin, the tranquil or quiet river. Some, however, say the place where the river enters the sea was called by this name. The islands in question, for there were several, were situated near the river’s mouth. That on which the Sultan took refuge, and where he died, has long since been swallowed up by the sea. The Introduction of the Zafar-Nâmah says the sea is called Ab-i-Sugiin, and the island on which the Sultan took shelter, Ab-gûn].

The Sultan, having taken shelter on one of them, moved occasionally, for safety’s sake; and well he did, for a party of Mughals did actually come to the first island in search of him after he had left it. The army of Mughals under Yaḥyâ Nû-yân and others, who had reached Rai in pursuit of him, had returned on not, finding him there, and invested the fortresses of Kûrûn and I-lâl, in which his mother and wives and children had taken refuge, and soon took them. The males were all slaughtered, even the infants, and the females were sent to Chingiz’s camp. The thoughts of the dishonour of the females of his family, the slaughter of his children and his servants, and the miseries of his country, afflicted him to such a degree that he died of a broken heart, and in great misery, in one of the islands above mentioned, and was there buried. So great was the distress of the party, that his son, Jalâl-ud-Din, could not procure even a winding-sheet to bury him in, and he had to be consigned to the grave in part of the apparel which he had on at the time of his death. Subsequently, however, Jalâl-ud-Din removed his father’s remains from the island to the fortress of Ardas [?]. The Mughals, some time after, gained possession of this place likewise, and they exhumed his remains, and burnt them. That the Sultan died on his way to Khwârâzm is like many other of our author’s statements. He never left the island alive. His death filled Islâm with distress; and this event took place in Shawwâl, 617 H.
The Mughal troops, not finding the Sultan in the province of Māzandarān, passed out of it, and entered 'Irāk, on which Sultan Muhammad, with the few horsemen who still continued with him, left the island; but he was prostrated with disease of the bowels, and melancholy supervened, and he became quite out of his mind. He urged his son, Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, saying:—“En-deavour to take me to Khwārazm; for from thence was the commencement of our dominion.” These lines, also, he often repeated:—

“When men become distracted about their own affairs,
Than that, it will be better that the thread of life were sever’d.”

When his disease increased, he was totally unable to ride on horseback, and camels were procured for him; and he was placed in a camel-litter, and they sent him off towards Khwārazm. He died on the road, in the year 617 H.; and Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn brought his father’s remains to Khwārazm, and buried them by the side of Sultan Takish, his father. Sultan Muḥammad’s reign extended over a period of twenty-one years. May the mercy of God and His pardon be on him!

XI. KUṬB-UD-DĪN ARZALŪ SHĀH, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, SON OF TAKISH, KHWAṬAṢM SHĀH.

Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, was the son of Sultan Muhammad, and his mother was a kinswoman of his father’s mother, and of the family of Kadr Khān of Kishāk; and he was the heir-apparent to the throne of Khwārazm.

When the calamities consequent on the irruption of

The name of this young prince is written in various ways—not only in our author’s text, but also by other writers—Azīlāk, Arzāk, Üzlāk, Arzalu, and Arzalāk; the last seems the most correct. Certain it is that he was not heir-apparent to the Khwārazmī empire. The word Shāh or Sultan affixed to his other name signifies that it was not his title as sovereign, but merely one of his names. Other writers, with whom I am acquainted, do not account him as a ruler at all. It was through the influence of Turkān Khātīn, Sultan Muḥammad’s mother, that this boy, of very ordinary intellect, was set up at Khwārazm, during Jalāl-ud-Dīn’s absence with his father. Arzalāk’s supporters imagined, that, in case Jalāl-ud-Dīn should ascend the throne and establish his power, they would not be permitted to do as they liked, as was likely to be the case with Arzalāk Sultan as sovereign; and, as long as their objects were gained, they cared nothing for their country. Under such circumstances, it is not surprising that the Mughals met with little or no opposition.
Chingiz Khān arose, and Sultan Muḥammad was obliged to fly from the banks of the Jihūn and the vicinity of Balkh, and retired to Nīshāpūr, the grandmother of Arzalū Ṣāh, the mother of Sultan Muḥammad⁷, and the people of Khwārazm, the Malik, and the Amīrs, concerted together, and raised Ḵūṭb-ud-Dīn, Arzalū Ṣāh, to the throne of Khwārazm, and the whole of them applied themselves to his service.

The Sultāns and Malik, from both the east and west, and of the countries of Īrān and Tūrān, who were imprisoned at Khwārazm, were all drowned in the Jihūn; and not one of them was left alive, by the time that one of the sons of Chingiz Khān, Tūshī by name, with a numerous army, from Māwar-un-Nahr, was nominated to march into Turkistān and Khwārazm⁹ and arrived before the gates of the latter-named city.

As Arzalū Ṣāh did not possess the power to oppose him, he took along with him his dependents, his sisters, and mothers, the ladies of the Haram of Sultan Muḥammad, his father, together with the Khudawandah-i-Jahān, his father’s mother, and brought them into Tabaristān and Mazandaran, and threw himself into the fortress of Lāl in Tabaristān⁸.

⁷ Turkān Ḵhātūn, the consort of Takīsh, the strong-minded woman, who roasted her husband.
⁸ All the copies of the text collated, with one exception, are defective here.
⁹ When Chingiz arrived at Utrār, he left a force to invest it, but pushed on with the bulk of his forces to Bukhārā; and it was only after the fall of Samarkand that troops were sent against Khwārazm. In the first place, he despatched his three sons, Tūshī [Jūjī], Uktāe, and Chaghatāe, with several tumāns or hordes thither; but, having quarrelled on the road, they came to blows, and a number of the Mughal troops were slain by each other. Chingiz then recalled them, and Tūlī, his other son, was sent in command in their stead.

¹ Other writers state, that after Jalāl-ud-Dīn left Khwārazm for Khurāsān, as mentioned in note ⁶, page 286, which see, his brothers, Arzalāk Sultan, Āk Sultan, and two others, followed after him, escorted by a body of troops, to endeavour to induce him to return. They did not overtake him, but encountered on their way the same body of Mughals their brother had so recently opposed and escaped from. They were all taken and, with their followers, put to the sword.
² The mothers of the different brothers of Arzalāk [Arzalāk Sultan]—the other wives of his father, Sultan Muḥammad, and his grandmother are meant here.
³ See latter part of note ⁴, page 277. Alī calls it the fortress of Lār-jār.
When Tūshī, son of Chingiz Khān, appeared with his troops before the gates of Khwārazm, the people of the city [the troops quartered there] came forward to resist them, and fighting commenced; but, in the course of a very few days, Khwārazm was taken, and the inhabitants were martyred, and the whole city was razed to the ground, with the exception of the Kūshk-i-Akhjuk, which was the ancient palace, and the sepulchral vault of Sultan Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, which was allowed to stand; but all else was overthrown.

After this, Tūshī pushed on in pursuit of the dependents and ladies of Arzalū Shāh's family, captured them all, and martyred the whole of them. The mercy of the Almighty be upon them!

XII. SULTĀN RUKN-UD-DĪN, GHŪRĪ SHĀNASTĪ, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH.

Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn was another of Sultan Muḥammad's sons, and his birth took place on the night preceding the day on which Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām, Ghūrī, retreated from before the gates of Khwārazm in the year 601 H.; and, on that account, he was named Ghūrī Shānastī, that is to say, "The Ghūrī Breaker."

When the territory of 'Irāk fell under the sway of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, he conferred the throne of that country upon Rukn-ud-Dīn*. The daughter of Malik Ulugh Khān-i-Abī Muḥammad, who was

---

* Most of the copies of the text are defective here; only three have the last paragraph, and, of these, but two appear correctly written.

* Rukn-ud-Dīn was younger than his brothers, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and Ghīyās-ud-Dīn; but, having acquired greater ascendency, the government of 'Irāk was conferred upon him, when his father left 'Irāk on his last expedition into Mawar-un-Nahr. Yaḍa-ī says he gave himself up to excess—he was only fifteen—and his father had just become aware of his misconduct, when the Mughal troubles began. On the death of his father, the Amirs of that territory became disaffected. He moved against them, reduced them, and gave them their lives, and overlooked their misdeeds, thinking kindness would be returned with gratitude. But, after a short time, finding he could not hold his own, he retired, after his father's death, accompanied by only a few followers, towards Kirman. He reached Gavāshīr, and was subsequently joined by the chiefs and partisans of the Malik of Zawzan [Kawām-ud-Dīn, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Abī-Bikr, son of 'Alī, Az-Zawzānī. His son, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, held Kirman and its dependencies after his father's death but he was removed,
a descendant of one of the paternal uncles of the Khwārazm Shāhs, was given him in marriage, and the father-in-law was made the Lieutenant of Sulṭān Rukn-ud-Dīn, by Sulṭān Muḥammad; and the whole of the Maliks of Ghūr, and the troops of the Jibāl [of Khurāsān], were left to serve under him. When [his father], Sulṭān Muḥammad, retired from the territory of 'Irāk, the Turks of 'Irāk, who were slaves of the Atā-baks, assembled [their troops] together, and gave him battle, but the Khwārazm Shāḥīs gained the victory, in the year 614 H.

Rukn-ud-Dīn reigned in 'Irāk for a considerable period; and, when the Mughal troops reached that country, and tribulation befell the Musalmāns, the whole of the Khwārazm Shāḥīs fell into captivity, in the year 617 H., and were, in all probability, martyred.

XIII. MALIK GHIYĀŚ-UD-DĪN, ĀK SULTĀN?, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH.

Āk Sulṭān was another of the sons of Sulṭān Muḥammad; and, when the latter obtained possession of the throne of

and the government was conferred upon Rukn-ud-Dīn,] who were in those parts. He divided the treasure, accumulated by the Malik referred to, among his followers, and advanced to Isfahān to endeavour to gain a footing in 'Irāk again. When he entered it, the Ķāzi kept aloof, and Rukn-ud-Dīn thought it advisable to leave the city, and pitch his tents outside. He was soon attacked by the Ķāzi's adherents, on a hint from their master, who slew 1000 of Rukn-ud-Dīn's followers, and lost many themselves. When the Mughals had disposed of other matters in Khurāsān, a force was sent against Rukn-ud-Dīn. He had given up all hope of acquiring possession of 'Irāk, and had retired to Firūz-koh, and the Tatār forces invested him therein. He held out for six months, at the end of which period he had to come down and yield. All the threats of the infidels could not induce him to bend the knee to their leader, and he was put to the sword, along with his followers and dependents, and the people of the fortress. This took place in 619 H.; but some writers say it happened in 618 H., and others, in 620 H.

6 Here, also, considerable difference occurs in the various copies of the text, and the style is different, as in several other places. Some have, "and the whole of them were martyred."

7 Pir Shāh bore the title of Ghiyāsh-ud-Dīn, and he was ruler [nominally] of Kirmān, after the Malik of Zawzan, and his son. Āk Sulṭān was never put in charge of any territory whatever. Our author has perpetrated another great blunder here. Āk-Sulṭān was killed at the same time that Sulṭān Arzalāk and two other younger brothers were massacred by the Mughals. See note 4, page 286.
Kirmān, and the masnad of Gawāshir, he placed the Khwājah of Zawzan upon the throne of Kirmān. After some years, the Khwājah of Zawzan died. He was an excellent man, and founded colleges of great repute, and rabāts [hostels for travellers], and erected the fortress of Salā-Mihr of Zawzan.

When he died, Sultan Muhammad had conferred the throne of Kirmān upon his own son, Āk Sultan; and he proceeded into Kirmān, and brought under his jurisdiction that territory as far as the sea-shore, and the frontiers of Mukrān. When the calamities caused by the Mughal...
irruption befell the empire of Islam, and Chingiz Khan became triumphant over Iran, a body of Khitā-is, and some troops of Sultan Muḥammad, along with Burāk, the Chamberlain, a native of Khitā, a newly converted Musalman, proceeded into Kirman, and contention and strife arose between them and Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din-i-Āk Sultan. The latter, not being powerful enough to repel the Khitā-is, out of necessity, left Kirman and proceeded into 'Iraḵ to his brother, Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, leaving the Amir, Shuja'-ud-Din, Abū-l-Ḵāsim, in the city of Gawāshīr, which was the seat of government and capital of Kirman, with the name of Deputy and Seneschal of the city.

Burāk, Khitā-i, the Chamberlain, with a numerous army, appeared before the gates of Gawāshīr, and took up his position there; and contention went on between them, which continued for a considerable length of time, until the period when Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din, Mang-barnī, marched from the land of Sind, by way of Mukrān, into Kirman. As soon as he arrived in the vicinity of the latter territory, Burāk, Khitā-i, the Chamberlain, having obtained news of the coming of Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din, proceeded to wait upon him, and pay him homage; and Shujā'-ud-Din, Abū-l-Ḵāsim, likewise, came out of the city of Gawāshīr to pay homage to the Sultan.'

When Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din reached the city, he had but a small following with him, and, therefore, he became anxious with respect to Burāk, the Chamberlain, and made over the country of Kirman to him as governor, and proceeded into 'Iraḵ himself. After Burāk, the Chamberlain, had acquired possession of Kirman, Āk Sultan, having mises had been entered into by both parties, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din set out for Kirman with about 500 followers, and Burāk came forth to receive him with a large following. They got on well together for some time, until Burāk began to treat the Prince with great arrogance, and finally demanded his mother in marriage. She gave a reluctant consent for the sake of her son. Two kinsmen of Burāk's now became partisans of the Prince, warned him of Burāk's designs against him, and asked his permission to kill him. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, remembering his promises and oaths, refused. A few days after, Burāk became aware of all this; his two kinsmen were cut to pieces, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din strangled, and his mother and all their followers and dependents were put to death, every soul, even to the infant at the breast. Burāk sent the head of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din to Uktāe, son of Chingiz, and obtained from the Mughal the investiture of Kirman, which he held for eleven years, when it passed to his descendants.

1 His son came out and presented the keys of Gawāshīr to the Sultan.
quarrelled with his brothers, in 'Irāk, returned again into Kirmān, and obtained martyrdom at the hand of Burāk, Khiṭā-ī, the Chamberlain, and died².

XIV. SULTĀN JALĀL-UD-DĪN, MANG-BARNĪ⁴, SON OF SULTĀN MUḤAMMAD, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH.

Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, was the eldest son of Sultān Muḥammad, and was endowed with great heroism, valour, and high talents and accomplishments. When his father, Sultān Muḥammad, acquired possession of the territories of Ghūr and Ghaznin, he conferred them on Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and made over both those kingdoms to his charge; and deputies of his were placed in those countries. Ghaznin was given to Malik Kuriz⁴; Firūzkoh was entrusted to Mubāriz-ud-Dīn, Sabzwārī; and the Wazārat was entrusted to Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Alb, Saraḵhsi. Karrmān was given to the Malik-ul-Umra [Chief, or Noble of Nobles], Burshor⁴ [Peshāwar ?] and Bū-bikrāpur [or, Abū-

² Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn was murdered in the fortress of Gawāṣhir in 627 H. There is some discrepancy as to dates, which I have not space to discuss, but the former appears the most correct, as Burāk evidently took advantage of Jalāl-ud-Dīn’s defeat, mentioned in note ¹, page 297, to make himself independent, and would scarcely have dared to put his brother to death while Jalāl-ud-Dīn had the power to chastise him.

³ In one of the oldest copies of the text where the vowel-points are given, he is called Mang-barnī, and was so styled from having a mole on his nose. He was, according to Yāfa-ī, and other trustworthy writers, the greatest, the most noble-minded, the most warlike, and the most devout of the sons of his father, and most worthy of the diadem of sovereignty. His valour rivalled that of Rustam and Isfandiyār, and he was able, skilful, and sagacious. If there was any man in those days capable of coping with Chingiz successfully, it was he; and, from his subsequent heroic actions, there can be little doubt but that his efforts would have been crowned with success, if his advice had been acted upon, or he had had the direction of affairs, and had been seconded by his brothers, nobles, and subjects, with that unity of purpose so essential in the hour of danger. His brothers, however, were selfish beyond measure, and cared for naught but their own interests and worldly pleasures and excesses, whilst Jalāl-ud-Dīn was kept in constant attendance upon his father, contrary to his own inclinations.

⁴ Possibly, Kurbuz. The majority of copies are as above, but others have [؟] all of which seem meaningless.

⁶ This may refer to Peshāwar, which was called Bagrām up to Bāhār’s time, but there is a place named Burṣhor [Burshor], much farther south, between Kandahār and the Indus; and our author, in his account of Maḥmūd of Ghaznin, when referring to the idol-temple which fell at his birth, says it was near Barshābur [Barshābur]—quite a different mode of spelling. See page 76.
Bikrpür] were conferred upon Malik Ikhtiyär-ud-Din, Muḥammad Ali-i-Khar-post.

When the irruption of Changiz Khān occurred, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din, Mang-barni, was in attendance upon his father, as has been previously recorded; and, when he brought his father's remains to Khwārazm and interred them, his brother [Arzalū Shāh] was seated on the throne of Khwārazm, although he was a [much] younger brother; and both the brothers were apprehensive of each other. Kutb-ud-Din, Arzalū Shāh, conspired against Jalāl-ud-Din, who, having obtained information of his design, came out of Khwārazm, and departed by the route of the wilds of Shāristān. From thence he proceeded to the westward of Nishāpūr, and entered the desert between Khurāṣān and Kirmān, with the determination of proceeding to Ghaznin.

After his father had breathed his last and had been buried, Jalāl-ud-Din left the island of Ḍū-i-Sugiin with a few followers, and set out for Khwārazm, where were his younger brothers, Arzalāk Sultān, Āk Sultān, Timūr Malik, Aqhāl Śāhib, and Kajāe Tīghn, with 90,000 Kankulis. He had vast difficulties to encounter from the confused state of affairs at that time, the successes of Chingiz and his sons, and from his own countrymen, who considered that the glory of the house of Takish had departed. It may be as well to mention, that the following notes give a consecutive account of Jalāl-ud-Din's life.

All men of experience, and the soldiery generally, were desirous of the sovereignty of Jalāl-ud-Din, and, although the most solemn agreement had been entered into by the two brothers not to injure or molest each other, the ill-disposed Amīrs of Arzalāk's party, who desired a weak and inexperienced Prince at the head of affairs for their own selfish purposes, combined to fall suddenly upon Jalāl-ud-Din and slay him. He, finding such acts could be contemplated at such a time, and knowing the state of utter misery in which the country was now overwhelmed, considered it advisable to leave Khwārazm in the hands of his brother and his party, rather than weaken the little power still remaining by civil strife. He determined to proceed, attended only by a small following, by way of Nīsā to Shād-yākh [of Nishāpūr]. As it was, an army of Mughals had already reached the Khwārazm territory, and Jalāl-ud-Din was closely pursued [near Astawah, according to Alff.] by a portion of that horde, on his way to Shād-yākh, and had great difficulty in effecting his escape. His brothers—four in all—who had followed after him to try and induce him to return, or, more probably, because they could not stay any longer, fell into the hands of this band, and were all put to the sword. See note 6, page 280.

Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din only remained two or three days at Shād-yākh, in order to get together as many men as possible; and, on the 12th of Zhī-Hijjah, he set out quietly at night, by way of Zawzan, towards Ghaznin, to the government of which part he had been nominated by his father. The Mughals were close at hand, and he had not left more than an hour before they appeared before the place. As soon as they found he was not there they set out in pursuit, and pushed on until they came to a place where two roads branched off. At
Trustworthy persons have related, that Jalâl-ud-Dîn, in that desert, saw Mihtar Khîzr, who foretold his sovereignty, but, under this compact, that the blood of no Musalmân should be shed by his hand. From thence, Jalâl-ud-Dîn proceeded into the territories of Nimroz, Bust, and Dâwar, and came to Ghaznîn.

Malik Khân of Hirât, who formerly bore the name of Amin-i-Hâjib, and had killed Muhammad Kharnak, Ghûrî, and who had, before the arrival of Jalâl-ud-Dîn, set out towards Hindûstân, at this time, that the Sultan came to Ghaznîn, likewise, joined him. Chingiz Khân detached an army, from his Mughal following, in search of Sultan Jalâl-ud-Dîn, towards Ghaznîn, and Fîkû Nû-yân, this place the Sultan had left a small party of his followers, under an Amir, with directions, in case of his being pursued, to resist the Mughals for a short period, to give him time, and then to take the other road. This was done; and the Mughals, thinking they were on the Sultan's track, took the wrong road. The Sultan on this occasion is said to have made a march of forty farsakhs without a halt.

On reaching Zawzan he wished to enter and take some repose, and give rest to his horses; but admittance was refused, the excuse being, that, in case of attack by the Mughals, the people could not hold out the place for an hour, and that any attempt at opposition would bring vengeance upon them. He, therefore, continued his route as far as Mâbarn-âbâd. He left that place at midnight, and at dawn the next morning the Mughals reached it. They followed in the track of the Sultan as far almost as Yazdawiah, a dependency of Hirât, and then abandoned the pursuit.

* Another of our author's childish tales, certified by "trustworthy authorities."

The Sultan, without further trouble, reached Ghaznîn, on the 17th of Zi'Hijjah, 617 H. Amin Malik, called also Amin-ul-Mulk (he is styled Yâmîn-ul-Mulk in Raugat-us-Safa and Habib-us-Siyar, and Yâmîn Malik by Alfl), the governor, who had 50,000 men with him, came out to receive the Sultan, and both the troops and people rejoiced at his arrival, for the government of the territory formerly possessed by the Sultans of Ghûr had been previously assigned to him by his father. He encamped on the Maidan-i-Sabz of Ghaznîn; and, as soon as the news of his arrival spread abroad, chiefs and troops [who were in those parts previously, no doubt] began to flock to his standard from all parts around, and among the number was Saif-ud-Dîn, Ighrak, with 40,000 men, Kankulis, Khalj, and Turkmâns; and the Amirs of Ghûr also joined him from the parts adjacent. His affairs now assumed considerable grandeur and magnificence, and a large army assembled around him.

1 Some copies of the text, but they are least to be depended upon, differ considerably here. They have,—"Malik Khân of Hirât, who was named Amin-i-Hâjib, at the outset of the events respecting Muhammad Kharnak, Ghûrî, before Jalâl-ud-Dîn had come into Hindûstân," &c. The correct name of this chief was Amin Malik, and he is also called Amin-ul-Mulk.

2 In some copies Fitkû.
who was Chingiz Khan’s son-in-law, was the commander of that force.

Sultan Jalal-ud-Din advanced against the Mughal army as far as the limits of Barwan, and overthrew the Mughal

Early in the spring of 618 H. he put his forces in motion, and advanced to Barwan. Having encamped there, he received intimation that a Mughal army, under Bak-chak and Yam-ghir [these leaders are somewhat differently called by some writers—Kam-chak, and Yighur, and even Balghir], was pressing the siege of Wāmīān [Bāmian, w and b being interchangeable]; and that it was in danger of falling into their hands, if not speedily relieved.

With regard to these places—the town and fortress referred to—I must here make a few remarks. The town, or position, of Barwan, is likewise called Parwan, Farwan, Bārān, and Barwan on the Āb-i-Bārānī, by as many different writers. The letters b, p, and ā are interchangeable. The two first are undoubtedly incorrect. Bābar and Abū-l-Faql call the upper portion of the Kābul river the “Āb-i-Bārānī,” and, in my humble opinion, this proves the correctness of the situation of this place, as given by Bāhaiḵī, Yāfā-ī, and Jāmi’ī-Tawārīkh—which latter work also states that it lies on the “banks of the Āb-i-Bārānī”—as situated between Ghaznī and Wāmīān, but nearer Ghaznī. What modern writers and travellers in Afghanistān call the Logurh [the Lohgar] river, the historians above quoted, and many others, call the Āb-i-Bārānī, and consider it, very properly, as the main stream of the upper portion of that river which, ultimately, enters the Indus above Atāk. Barwan is also to be found in many maps, although the position may not be quite correct, at about five or six stages north of Ghaznī. With respect to the fortress invested by the Mughals, the Introduction to the Zafarnamah, an excellent and trustworthy authority, says it was “Bāmīān, also called Wāmīān;” and this last seems to be the name which some writers have mistaken for Wālīān. Certainly there is a place mentioned in the Masālik-Wa-Mamālik named Wālīān, but one syllable less than Wālīān and Wāmīān, as being “the same distance from Khulūm as the latter is from Balkh.” There is also a Parvān or Parwan, on the Panj-hār river; but those who have seen the Parwan valley, north of Kābul, describe it as very tortuous, and, in many places, a mere rocky defile; and there is also the pass of the same name over Hindū-Kush, not the easiest by far. If Barwan, or Parwan, north of Kābul, could possibly be the place referred to, and Wālīān—the Wālīān of Masālik-Wa-Mamālik, and which Mr. Thomas, R. A. S. J., vol. xvii. p. 86, calls “Wāwālīn,” and considers to have been situated near the “modern Kundūz” [Kundus, by ’Arabs, Konduz, is described as a very ancient place, by oriental writers, who say the correct name was Kuhanduj, signifying a fortress, but by constant use shortened into Kundus. Bāhaiḵī repeatedly refers to Kuhanduj, and constantly mentions Walwalīj also, but neither “Wāwālīn” nor Wālīān]—be the place to which the Mughals were laying siege, Jalāl-ud-Dīn would have had to cross and re-cross the Hindū-Kush on this occasion, a rather difficult matter at any time, even for travellers, much more for an army of about 100,000 horsemen, in early spring, and a dangerous one too, considering that Chingiz, with his main force, was before Tae-kān, only about twenty miles from Kundus, while the Parwān Pass, and Sar-i-Ulang Pass, connected with it, and the other passes of Hindū-Kush, were no less than eighty miles off, or more. Jalāl-ud-Dīn might have been cut off from the passes easily by a force from Chingiz’s army whilst he was engaged with the
infidels. He encountered them upon three different times in that quarter, and on all three occasions success and victory

Mughal forces before Wāmīnān, or Wāliān so called. Besides, we are plainly told that Barwān, on the banks of the Āb-ī-Bārānī, was a town or city between Ghaznīn and Balkh. Chingiz himself came in pursuit of the Sultān, by way of Andar-āb, Kābul, and Bāmīlān.]

Leaving his heavy material and baggage at Barwān, Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn marched to the relief of the fortress; and, having come upon the advanced force of the Mughals in that direction, made a dash upon them, and inflicted a loss of 1000 men. The Sultan's troops being the most numerous, the Mughals retired across the river, destroying the bridge after them [this shows the river, whatever it was, was not fordable], and took up a position on the opposite side. Vollies of arrows were discharged on either side until night closed, and during the darkness the Mughals, according to their favourite manœuvre, seemingly, decamped. [If Wāliān lay where Kundus does now, a messenger would have brought Chingiz with his whole army, or a large portion of it, from Tāe-kān before night.] The Sultān now caused a great quantity of food and other necessaries [scarcely brought over the Parwān Pass] to be sent to the fortress of Wāmīnān, after which he returned to his camp at Barwān.

Chingiz, having heard before Tāe-kān of this reverse, despatched another force of 30,000 picked troops, under Shābki Kūtū [according to Yāfā, but by our author and some others, Fīkūh Nū-yān; by the Zafar-Nāmah, Kākū and other leaders; and by others, Kūbūr] to take revenge, and prepared to follow in person; and one morning, in the early forenoon, about a week after his return to Barwān, intimation reached the Sultan that the Mughals were approaching. He at once put his troops in motion, and advanced about a league to meet them, and drew up his ranks in readiness to receive them. [If the modern Parwān be the place, a position they were not likely to venture into with such a large force able to attack them within it, and a strong fortress in their rear, the Mughals must have been about to issue from the pass, and the Sultan must have advanced towards its entrance to receive them; but I doubt very much whether those who have seen those passes would consider such to be probable or possible.] Amin Malik had the right wing, and Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāy, the left, while the Sultan took post in the centre. He gave orders for the troops to dismount, and hold their horses' bridles in hand. [Thrown over the arm probably, but scarcely to "bind the reins of their horses round their waists." What if the horses had taken fright? Even with the reins thrown over their arms, the men would have had to fight in a single rank—a strange mode of fighting. The probability is that the bridles of the horses were fastened at the saddle, to, or round, the horses' waists, which would enable a few men comparatively to look after them.] This they obeyed, determined to do or die. The right wing, under Amin Malik, being the strongest division of the Sultan's army, the Mughals directed their chief efforts against it, and it was forced back; but, prompt aid being afforded from the left and centre, the Mughals, in their turn, were compelled to give way. Not a man on either side turned his back: great valor was shown on both sides, and the fighting only ceased with the light.

Next morning preparations were made to renew the engagement, but the Sultan's troops, having noticed the ranks of another division [the "wood and felt" ranks of the Rauẓat-uṣ-Ṣafā], apparently drawn up in rear of the Mughal ranks, conceived that reinforcements must have reached them during the night, and they seemed disinclined to encounter them. Counsel was taken as to the
rewarded him; but, on the news of these successes of his reaching Chingiz Khan, he, being at Tal-kan of Khurasan [Tae-kan of Tukharistan?] at the time, marched his armies towards Ghaznin. Sultan Jalal-ud-Din was unable to offer advisability of falling back and taking shelter near the foot of the hills, and retiring to the high ground and spurs; but the Sultan would not hear of such a prejudicial movement. The troops were directed to dismount as on the previous day [ordering them to dismount would indicate ground impracticable for cavalry, but dismounting to fight also indicates a determination to conquer or die]; and, on this occasion, the enemy's efforts were directed against the left wing under Saif-ud-Din, Ighrāḵ, the valour and spirit of whose men they had had such recent proof of, and their best men were pitted against it. The troops of the left wing, however, stood their ground so determinedly, and plied their arrows with such effect, that the Mughals were hurled back. They having turned their backs without venturing to renew the attack, the Sultan directed that the tymbals should sound the charge, upon which the whole force mounted and charged the Mughals [I fancy the Parwan Pass is not a nice place for a general charge by a numerous army of cavalry], who turned their backs and made off. Again they rallied, charged the Sultan's advanced troops, and inflicted a loss of 500 warriors; but the Sultan flew to the rescue, and again charged the Mughals and put them to final rout, making great slaughter among them. The two leaders returned with the remnant of their forces to Chingiz's camp at Tae-kan.

The Sultan's troops, having defeated the Mughals, took to plunder; and, most unfortunately, a dispute arose between Amin Malik and Saif-ud-Din, Ighrāḵ, about a horse, and Amin Malik, in the heat of the dispute, struck the latter over the head with his whip. The Sultan was unable [not "unwilling"] to investigate the matter, because he doubted whether the Kankulis [Amin Malik's followers] would submit to any decision. In consequence of this untoward event, Saif-ud-Din, Ighrāḵ, smarting under the insult, stayed with the Sultan but for the day; and, when night set in, "with the instinct [and cunning] of the wild beasts," he marched away with his whole force towards the mountains of Kārṭmān and Saŋkūrān [some say, Shānužān].

This event completely broke the power of Jalāl-ud-Din, having deprived him of nearly half his army; and, under the circumstances, he thought it advisable to retire to Ghaznin.

Chingiz Khan, who had now disposed of Tae-kan, having become aware of this division among, and partial dispersion of, the Sultan's army, hastened to take revenge. Leaving his heavy material behind at Buklān, he advanced with his whole available force, by way of Andar-āb, it is said, against Wāmān or Bāmīān. [This certainly must be the Walian, as he would scarcely have left it unmolested.] He was detained a month before it, and, having taken it, he put every soul to the sword, and then set out against Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din.

The Sultan, on becoming aware of Chingiz's intentions, being far too weak to make a stand against such forces, which no ruler of that time could outnumber, resolved to cross the Sindh, and retire into Hindūstān [the reason probably was, that he claimed the western parts of the Panjāb, and also of Sindh, as successor to the dominions of Mu'izz [Shihāb]-ud-Din, Ghūrī, and, leaving a garrison at Ghaznin, he set out. Uz Khan was left at Kajlah [Kajla, probably, the name of a place on the route to the Indus by the Paiwar Pass], with the rear-guard of the Sultan's small force, to endeavour to
resistance to these forces, and retired towards Burshor [Peshā-
hold Chingiz's advance at bay, and give him time to send his family and effects across, and to get his followers across also, on the appearance of the Mughals, but Üz Khān was defeated and forced back. Chingiz, who saw through the Sultan's object, and knew that he had left Ghaznin fifteen days before his reaching it, pushed on with all possible celerity, and, after crushing the Sultan's rear-guard, made a forced march during the night. It was in the month of Rajab, 618 H. [corresponding to September, 1221 A.D., although a few writers mention Shawwāl—December]; and, when the morning dawned, the Sultan, who was encamped near the bank of the river nearly opposite the Nīl-āb ferry [the place where Timūr is said, subsequently, to have passed the Indus, but he crossed at Dīnkot], and who had along with him his family, dependents, and treasures, found the Mughals on three sides of him—they were in his front and on both flanks, and the river was in his rear. Notwithstanding the extreme danger of his situation, he was not to be daunted, and determined to stand his ground. The Mughals began by attacking his right wing [the odds were more than fifty to one], under Amin Malik, a body of them having advanced along the river's bank to take him in flank; and they overpowered him, and most of his party were slaughtered. Amin Malik, with the few men remaining of the right wing, made for Bārgāwār; but, as the Mughals had occupied the route, he and they were all slaughtered by the way. The left wing, under Khān Malik, was likewise overwhelmed. The Sultan had kept up this unequal combat from dawn to noon, and was now left with the remains of his centre reduced by this time to about 700 men [some say 100 only]. He flew from the flank to the centre, and centre to flank of the enemy, and fought like a lion at bay, charged them repeatedly [the Mughals were commanded not to kill him, but to take him alive if possible], overthrowing numbers, and clearing a space around him at every onset, and filling them with amazement at his valour. All was of no avail; it was like attempting to stay the ocean's billows, for the Mughal forces increased every moment by the arrival of fresh troops, and pressed forward, every instant contracting the area round the gallant Sultan. [If the reader will examine one of the Panjab survey maps of this part, he will find that the nature of the ground was of some advantage to Sultan Jalal-ud-Dīn, by rendering it difficult for the Mughals to show an extended front.]

When he perceived that his situation was become desperate, and had gone beyond name and fame, he surveyed the scene with tearful eyes and fevered lip. At this crisis Ujāsh Malik [also Akha], son of Khān Malik, his maternal uncle, seized the bridle of his horse, and dragged him away. With weeping eyes, and his heart filled with a thousand pangs, he bade adieu to his wives and children, his mother, and other relations and dependents, called for his state charger to be saddled and brought forth, and, having mounted him, once more, like the crocodile, he plunged into the sea of conflict, and, having forced back the foremost of the enemy for a short distance, turned round, divested himself of his armour, slung his shield at his back, and, seizing his canopy without its staff, and urging his charger with his whip [spurs not used], he plunged into the Sindh, although the water was at a distance of eight or ten yards below the bank; and, armed with his sword, spear, shield, and quiver of arrows, "like unto a fearless lion rushing along a plain, he passed the Jībūn, and reached the opposite bank in safety, after having been carried down some distance by the force of the current, and before reaching a spot favourable for landing." [A camel does not look very "proud" when crossing a river, much less the Indus, even in a boat. See Elliot, vol. ii., note 2, page 552.
war?; and, on the banks of the river Sind, an encounter

Between a lion and a camel there is a vast difference, although they are but two points—but who could mistake them, the camel being a very model of awkwardness? The word "Jihun," used by one of the authors from which this is taken, seems to signify any mighty river, as the Jihun of Sindh; and, in this sense, Ibn Khurdabih appears to use it. There is a place, on the west bank of the Indus, a little below Nil-âb, called Ghora-Trap, or the "Horse's Leap," and very probably the name is derived from the Sultan's feat above recorded. Chingiz Khân caused a monument to be erected where the battle took place. It has been said, [ELLIO.T, vol ii., App. page 571], that "the passage of the river [Indus] would have been no such very gallant feat [Columbus and the egg to wit: nothing is after it has been accomplished!] in that month [December] when the river was at its lowest," and reference is made to "Altamsh" [I-yal-timish] and old Ranjit Singh; but where did they cross? Where the river was broad and shallow, and the current not rapid; but where Jalâl-ud-Dîn is said to have plunged in from the overhanging bank, some 25 to 30 feet above the water, was at a place a few miles below Nil-âb, where the river is about 180 feet deep, 250 yards wide, and running at the rapid rate of nine or ten miles an hour. The whole distance between Nil-âb and this place may be described as one immense and irresistible rapid. See WOOD: "Oxus."] Chingiz, seeing the Sultan in the act of crossing, galloped to the bank; and some of his Mughals would have thrown themselves in after him, but Chingiz forbade them, and they took to their bows. A group, who witnessed the scene, relate that, as far as their arrows could reach, the water was red with blood, for several of his followers followed his example. Some idea may be formed, from what has been noticed above, of the value of the "UNIVERSAL History," the best authority for the English reader to consult, when it is therein stated, that Jalâl-ud-Dîn, when in the middle of the river—running about nine miles an hour—"stopped to insult Jenghiz Khan, who was come to the bank to admire his courage, and emptied his quiver of arrows against him"! 

Having reached the opposite side, the Sultan, slowly and sorrowfully, rode upwards along the bank until he reached a spot facing his own camp, and beheld the plunder of his family, kinsmen, dependents, his treasures, and all his belongings, without being able to render them succour, while Chingiz continued astride his horse on the opposite side, pointing out the Sultan to his sons. The Sultan now dismounted from his charger, loosened the girths, took off the felt saddle-cloth, together with his own tunic and cloak, and his arrows, and laid them in the sun to dry, and spread his canopy on the head of his spear, which he stuck into the ground to shade him from the sun. He remained all alone until the time of afternoon prayer, when about seven of his followers joined him, and a small tent was pitched for his convenience. Whilst the light permitted, he watched the proceedings of the Mughals, "whilst the heavens above looked down upon him with wonder and amazement, as though they said,—

'Never hath the world beheld a man like this,
Nor heard of one among the heroes of ancient times.'"

Chingiz Khân and the whole of the Mughals, who witnessed this wonderful feat, placed their hands to their mouths [denoting amazement]; and Chingiz himself, when he beheld the Sultan's lofty bearing, turned his face towards his sons, and said,—"Such a son as this is worthy to survive his father! Since he has escaped the vortex of fire and water, and reached the shore of escape,
took place between them. Sultan Jalal-ud-Din was defeated and overthrown, and he threw himself into the river, and retired, discomfited, into Hindustan.

The august Sultan, Shams-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din, despatched a force from his armies against him, upon which Sultan Jalal-ud-Din turned aside, and proceeded towards Uchchah and Multan*. From thence he entered the countless deeds will be achieved by him, and vast trouble caused; and, as long as he lives, it is fallacious for us to entertain the hope of dominion and empire, and how then is it possible for any prudent man to be heedless of his actions!"

Several historians say, that this event occurred in the vicinity of Barshawar; and, from this, we may judge how far Waihind or Bahind, mentioned under Mahmid of Ghaznin [page 76], may have been distant from that place. See also note 5, page 285.

Here we have a good specimen of our author's wilful concealment and distortion of facts: he could not have been ignorant of these events, which happened during his own lifetime, in the country in which he was residing, and at Court, where all these matters were perfectly well known. He came first into Sindh in 624 H., not long after they happened. I must only give a brief summary of the principal events to elucidate Jalal-ud-Din's Indian career, and correct our author's blunders and misstatements. The Sultan, having crossed the Indus in safety, as soon as night came on, entered the Chul [uncultivated or desert tract] of Jarük—called to this day, the Chul-i-Jalalī—with his few followers, and was joined, by degrees, by stragglers from his army, until they numbered about 50 or 100 men, some badly armed. With this handful of followers he attacked a town, where there was a considerable force of Hindiis, defeated them, and captured the place, and in it obtained some horses and arms. Shortly after, others of his men, who had escaped from the banks of the Indus, also joined him. He sent a force of 500 horse against another place in that vicinity, and again defeated the people of those parts, who showed hostility towards him. By degrees his force increased to between 4000 and 5000 men; and Chingiz, who was still in the vicinity of the Indus, on hearing of it, and fearing the energy of Jalal-ud-Din, despatched a force against him under a leader named Tirtaee. The Sultan, not being strong enough to oppose the Mughals, retired through a part of the Panjab towards the frontier of the kingdom of Dihli. On this the Mughal leader again retired, after plundering the neighbourhood of Malkapur. The Sultan despatched an envoy to I-yal-timish, the slave-king of Dihli, on arriving near his frontier, requesting that the latter would assign a place for his residence for a short time, and urged this request upon the previous good understanding, which had existed between them as neighbours [his father's officials and the ruler of Dihli probably], and further urged the great advantage of mutual support, and that, even for humanity's sake, he would grant this favour of an asylum. "The base nature of the slave, however, was," as one author says, "unchanged in the king; and, sprinkling his head with the dust of churlishness and ill-nature, he, after taking a long time to consider on the subject, put the Sultan's envoy to death [some say he had him poisoned], under pretence that the envoy had been conspiring against him, but, in reality, fearing the effect upon his own Turkish followers, and probably the Sultan's superiority over himself, his warlike character, his nobility of mind, and great energy. The manumitted slave
territory of Kirmān, and afterwards Fārs. The Atā-bak,
excused himself by saying, that the climate of the country would not agree with
the Sultan's health, but that, if he would accept a place in the environs of
Dihlī, one should be assigned to him. This, of course, was to get him into
his power, if possible. As to I-yal-timīsh sending "an army" against the
Sultan, it is absurd: he knew better than to do that. He did send a great
man as envoy, with rich presents and supplies, and false excuses, for the murder
of the Sultan's envoy. The Sultan, having returned to Balālah and Nikālah,
near Lāhor, and his forces having now increased, by the arrival of many of his
old soldiers, to the number of about 10,000, but by no means sufficient to bring
the ruler of Dihlī to account, despatched a portion of his army against the
Hills of Jūd. That force defeated the Khokar [or more correctly, Khokhar] chief,
erroneously styled Rāe Kokār and Kokar by most writers [the Ghakhars
are quite a distinct race], and returned with great booty. The Sultan demanded
the chief's daughter in marriage, which was readily acceded to; and, moreover,
the Rāe sent his son at the head of a considerable body of his tribe, to join the
Sultan's troops, and the title of Kutlagh [some say Kulij] Khān was bestowed
upon the latter.

Hostility of long standing existed between the Khokhar chief and Kubāchah,
governor of Sindh [the whole valley of the Indus, below the Salt Range, was
called Sindh in those days], who had now begun to consider himself an
independent sovereign. He was encamped near Üchchah with 20,000 men,
and a force of 7000 was despatched against him, by the Sultan, under Jahān
Pahlawān, guided by the chief's son. They made a forced march, and, falling
suddenly upon Kubāchah, in the night, totally overthrew him. Kubāchah
got on board a vessel, and made for his stronghold of Akar and Bakar [Sakar
and Bhakar? Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says, "two fortresses on one island"],
"which are two islands in the river Sindh" [more on this subject anon], and
the Sultan came to Üchchah. Kubāchah now managed to get back to
Multān, after having, on the Sultan's demand, paid him a considerable sum
of money as tribute. The hot season coming on, the Sultan returned to the
Salt Range hills again, and, on the way, took a fortress called Bisīram or Bisrām
[Bisrām-pūr?], where he was wounded in the hand by an arrow.

Chingiz had despatched another army against him, and the Sultan was
obliged to move towards Lower Sindh. On his arrival in sight of Multān,
he sent an agent to Kubāchah and demanded a contribution; but he, knowing
the Mughals were on the move, refused, and showed determined hostility.
The Sultan did not tarry in the vicinity, but proceeded to Üchchah, which,
proving hostile also, he remained before two days, and set fire to. From thence
he advanced to Sindustān [the name given by the generality of historians is
Śīvastān—Alfī says, "Sadūsān, which is Śīvastān"]—the present European-
ized Sehswān. The city and fortress were held by a deputy of Kubāchah's,
Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Sālārf. A force sent out by him, under Lāčhīn, a native of
Khītā, having been overthrown by the Sultan's vanguard under Üz Khān,
Fakhr-ud-Dīn, on the Sultan's arrival, came forth, and delivered up the place.
Jalāl-ud-Dīn entered the city, and remained there a month, after which he con-
ferred a dress of honour upon Fakhr-ud-Dīn, left him in charge as his lieutenant
in Sindustān, and marched to Dīval and Damrīlah. A Habagh [Abyssinian
or negro], who was ruler of that part, fled, got on ship-board, and escaped.
The Sultan encamped near those places; and, from thence, detached a force,
under Khās Khān towards Nahrainālah, from which he returned with immense
booty. Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn founded a Jāmi' Masjid at Dīval or Dībal, as it
Abū-Bikr, ruler of Fārs, gave the Sultan his sister in
is also called, on the ruins of an idol-temple. [The situation of this place
seems to have puzzled many. Ḥṣṭakḫurī says it lies west of the river
Mihrān; Abī-l-Ḵāsim, Ibn Ḥūkal, says, in one place, that it lies on the
sea-coast on the eastern bank of the Mihrān; while, in another place, he
says the waters of the Mihrān fall into the sea east of Dībal. Abū l-Ḵāsim-i-
'Abd-ullah, son of Khūrdād, Khurāsānī, author of the Masālik-wa-Mamā-
lik, also says the Mihrān passes Dībal on the east; but Abī-l-Faṣl says,
plainly, that Brāhmanābād was subsequently styled Dībal or Dīwal and
Ṭḥāṭḥāh, and so does the Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīkh and others also. Extensive ruins
exist for miles around Ṭḥāṭḥāh; and, in endeavouring to fix the site of Dībal,
which the ancient geographers say was situated on the coast, and modern
writers expect to find there still, the latter do not make allowance for
alterations and changes in the course, and for the deposits at the mouth of
the Indus, which, during the lapse of many centuries, have increased the
distance of the present Ṭḥāṭḥāh from the sea many miles. The mouth
[or mouths] of the Indus must have changed considerably within the last 250
years, if Ṭḥāṭḥāh and Dīwal be one and the same place; for Paynton, in his
account of the voyage of Captain Christopher Newport, who took out Sir
Robert Shirley as envoy to Persia in 1613, says Sir Robert was landed there.
He remarks, —"We came to an anchor near the city of Diul, in the mouth of the
river Sinde, in 24° 30' N. Lat., and our varying at the same place 16° 45';"  Thāṭṭāh is in Lat. 24° 44', and Karachi, which is also supposed by some to
be the site of Dībal, lies in 24° 51'.'

Whilst in Lower Sind, information reached the Sultan, that his brother,
Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Pir Shāh, was established in Irāk; but that the troops,
generally, desired his [Jalāl-ud-Dīn's] presence, and were calling for him to
head them; and, further, that Burāḵ, the Ḥājib, was in Kirmān, and was then
investing the town [city] of Bārdāsīr. [Ibn Ḥūkal says—"Bardasir, which
is to say, Gawāšīr." These things, together with information respecting the
movements of a large Mughal force [the one previously alluded to, which was
despatched into the Mukrānāt—the Mukrans], and the return of Chingiz to
his own country again, determined the Sultan to set out for Irāk by way of
Mukrān, which he did in 621 H.; and, like Alexander before him, lost a
number of his followers from the unhealthiness of the climate.

From this point, in order to save space, I must greatly curtail the notes I
had written, although the remaining events in the career of Jalāl-ud-Dīn are very
interesting. The Sultan entered Kirmān, and Shuja'-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Ḵāsim's
son, who held out Gāwāšīr [also called Bardasdr] for Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, the
Sultan's brother, and who was then holding it against Burāḵ, the Ḥājib,
came out and presented the keys to the Sultan. Burāḵ pretended to submit
and to be most loyal, and gave his daughter to the Sultan, but, subsequently,
shut him out of the capital, and sent out his followers, although he pretended
merely to hold it, and the territory of Kirmān, as the Sultan's deputy. Jalāl-
ud-Dīn had matters of greater importance to engage his attention at that time,
and he accordingly set out for Irāk by way of Shīrāz, and sent an envoy to the
Aṭā-bak Sa'd to announce his coming.

Not so: the Aṭā-bak Sa'd still ruled in Fārs, and Abū-Bikr did not
succeed him until 628 H.—seven years subsequently. How different was the
behaviour of Sa'd to that of the "august Sultan" of our author! As soon as
the Sultan's agent came, he despatched his son, Salghur Shāh, with 500 horse,
to do him honour, and to apologize for not coming himself, because, some time
marriage, and entertained him as a guest. From Fars, Jalal-ud-Din entered the country of Azarbajjan, and defeated the infidels of Gurj [Georgia], and reduced that country under his jurisdiction.

Previously, he had taken an oath which he could not break, that he would never more go forth to receive any one soever. Jalal-ud-Din accepted his apology, received his son with great favour, and conferred the title of Farzand Khan upon him. On the Sultan reaching the neighbourhood of Sa'd's capital, he supplied him with every sort of thing that could be desired—clothes, arms, horses, supplies of all descriptions, and even Habashi, Hindi, and Turkish slaves to serve him. After certain agreements and stipulations had been concluded between them, the Ata-bak Sa'd gave a daughter of his own in marriage to the Sultan, the ceremonies of which were duly celebrated, and a thoroughly good understanding was established between them, and Sa'd was confirmed in his possessions. On his departure for Isfahan, the Sultan induced Sa'd to release his son Abi-Bikr, who had long been imprisoned for hostility towards his father [see page 178], and Abi-Bikr was released and allowed to follow in the train of the Sultan.

Having entered 'Irak, the Sultan proceeded to Rai; and his brother, Ghiyas-ud-Din, Pir Shah, pretended to submit to his brother's authority. On the way to Isfahan, the Sultan was joined by the venerable 'Ala-ud-Daulah, who bore the title of Ata-bak, and, for the last sixty years, had held the government of Yazd. He was the lineal descendant of the last of the Dilamah rulers of the family of Buwiah. See page 66, and note 7.

Jalal-ud-Din's affairs now began to acquire some stability. He determined to proceed to Shustar for the winter of 621 H., and afterwards, having previously despatched an envoy, to proceed to Baghdad and endeavour to establish friendly relations with the Khallifah, and solicit his aid and support against the common enemy of their faith, or at least to obtain the countenance and sanction of the Khallifah for his own efforts against them. All was to no purpose: the hostility of Un-Nasir towards the father was continued towards the son, although the common enemy of their faith was, so to speak, at his own gates. He not only refused to hold any communication with him, but sent two armies to expel him from his territory; but the Sultan, who was compelled to fight in his own defence, defeated and routed both armies in detail, with much inferior numbers. Un-Nasir died in the following year, 622 H.

The Sultan, unsuccessful at the court of Baghdad, determined to bring under his jurisdiction the subject province of Azarbajjan, in which the Ata-bak, Yuz-bak, the son of the Ata-bak, Jahân Pahlawan, ruled. Yuz-bak fled from his capital, Talvîz, on the Sultan's approach, and retired to his stronghold of Alanjûk, leaving his consort, the daughter of Sultan Tughril [not Sanjar], Saljûkî, in charge of the capital. She was aggrieved with Yuz-bak on some account, and stated that he had divorced her; and, having obtained a dispensation from the chief Kâshī to that effect, she, after consulting with and obtaining the sanction of the chiefs and great men, agreed to deliver up Tabrîz to the Sultan, if he would, after the prescribed period, marry her. The Sultan agreed, and the capital was delivered up to him, and he entered it in 622 H. Subsequently, he went to Nakhjuân, and espoused Shams Malikah Khâtûn, as agreed; and, a few days after the news reached her former husband, the Atâ-bak Yüz-bak, he died of grief and chagrin.

7 Soon after Jalâl-ud-Dîn engaged in hostilities with the Gurjis, and was
He also fought engagements with the armies of Rûm and of Shâm, and was defeated and overcome; but, at length, peace was concluded between him and the army of Shâm. Tûrtî, the Mughal, who had invested Multân, left Chingiz Khân, and came and joined Sultân Jalâl-ud-Dîn, and became a convert to the Muḥammadan faith.

The Mughal forces, upon several occasions, went in pursuit of Sultân Jalâl-ud-Dîn, but victory always attended him. At last, in the year 628, or 629 H., the Sultân was successful against them; but was impeded in his operations by Burâk, the Hâjib, throwing off his allegiance. He determined to move against the rebel at once, and acted with such celerity, that on the eighteenth day he reached Kirmân from Tifîfs, only 300 horse having kept up with him. Burâk hastened to make submission, by sending apologies, rich and costly presents, and protestations of loyalty for the future, but did not, of course, venture into the Sultân's presence. The latter could do nought else than accept his submission, for during his absence, Malik-ul-Aṣhrâf, ruler of Shâm, instigated by Burâk to create a diversion in his own favour, sent an army into the Sultân's territory, under the governor of Akhlât, who carried off Shâms Malikah Khâtûn from Khûe, and dishonoured her [Jâmi'-ut-Tawârîkh says, Malik-ul-Aṣhrâf dishonoured her, and Râzât-us-Ṣâfâ says, it was the Hâjib, 'Alî; and the Gurjûs also rose. The Sultân lost no time in taking revenge, and carried slaughter and devastation up to the very gates of Akhlât. He had, however, to abandon his operations against it, from intimation that two Mughal armies had entered 'Irâk. One of these supposed armies turned out to be Jahân Pahlawân, Ir-bak [Thus in one copy of Guzîdah, with the diacritical points; in others, Ir-lak and Ir-lik; and in other writers, Uz-bak and Ûz-bak and Ûz-bak Khân, but I do not account the last three correct], and his followers, who had been left by the Sultân as governor of his conquests in the valley of the Indus. Jalâl-ud-Dîn, however, broke up his camp before Akhlât, and retired into 'Irâk to oppose the Mughals. Nearly every copy of the text has Karkh instead of Gurj.

* This statement is not mentioned by other authors quoted herein, and is very doubtful.

† In Ramazân 624 H. [Jâmi'-ut-Tawârîkh and some others say, in 626 H., and others, 625 H., but the first, from other circumstances and data, is correct], he encountered the enemy between ʻIsfahân and Rai. The right wing of the Sultân's army, led by Ûz Khân, overthrew the opposing force of Mughals, when the Sultân's brother, Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn, who had charge of the other wing, deserted during the action, with all his adherents, and fled into Lûristân. [It was subsequent to this that he was put to death by Burâk. See page 285, and note†.] This dastardly act on the part of his brother caused the Sultân's overthrow, and he had to cut his way out of the fight. He succeeded in reaching the neighbouring hills, and, after some days, reached ʻIsfahân, to the joy and surprise of the troops and people, who feared he must have perished. The Mughals, after this, retired into Khurâsân again. Their object, at this period, seems to have been to prevent the Sultân's government from acquiring any stability, to ravage the country they passed through, and to endeavour to surprise him. In consequence of their retreat, the Sultân had time to renew
encamped on the confines of Āzarbājān, on the side of Shām and Diyar-i-Bakr, when an army of Mughals came unexpectedly upon him, and he was obliged to fly.1

his operations in Gurjistān and Arman. He marched from ʻIṣfahān, in 625 H., and, having succeeded against the Gurjīs, marched to Akhūt once more, took it by storm, captured the governor's [Hājjib 'Alī's] wife, whom he made his slave, and amply revenged the outrage Shams Malikah Khātūn had suffered at her husband's hands.

Jalāl-ud-Dīn now turned his arms against the Sultan of Rūm, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, son of Kai-Kubād, Saljūkī [see bottom of page 162], and Malik-ul-Ashraf, ruler of Shām, who had combined against him [all the Muḥammadan rulers at this time, with few exceptions, seem bent on their own destruction, and played into the hands of the Mughals], and had been joined by forces from Arman, Gurjistān, and Kīchāk [Krim?]. In the first action, the Sultan overthrew a portion of them; but in a second engagement, having to dismount from his horse through illness, his troops, thinking he had retired from the field, became dispirited and gave way. They were not pursued, because the enemy considered their flight a mere stratagem of the Sultan's to draw them into an ambuscade. This is said to have taken place in 627 H. Jalāl-ud-Dīn had endeavoured [in 627-8 H.] to induce the rulers of Rūm and Shām to join him against the common enemy, but jealousy and suspicion on their part prevented so advantageous an alliance.

The end of the gallant Sultan's eventful career, however, was approaching. He had passed the winter of 628 H. in the neighbourhood of Irmānīfah, when intimation reached him of the despatch of a fresh and numerous army of Mughals, under Jarmāghām, and of their early approach. He despatched ʻUz Khān, with a strong patrol, to make inquiries. He proceeded as far as Tabrīz, where he was told that they had retired from the country again, and, without satisfying himself as to the truth of this report, he returned to the Sultan's camp with it. Thrown off his guard by this false report, the Sultan and his troops gave themselves up to festivity and carousal. After some time had elapsed, one night, in the month of Shaʿwāl of the above year, the Mughals came suddenly upon him. The Sultan, who was sound asleep at the time from the effects of his potations, was aroused by ʻUz Khān, who urged him to fly. The Mughals had already got into his camp, and were slaying all who came in their way. ʻUz Khān kept them at bay for a short time, during which the Sultan was able to mount his horse, and fly towards the hills of the Kurds. He wandered about for some time, when sleep overcame him; he lay down, and fell fast asleep. A Kurd, attracted by the richness of his dress, seized him. The Sultan made himself known to him, and requested the man to conduct him to Malik Muṣṣafar, the then governor of Akḥāt. The Kurd conducted him first to his dwelling, and then went back to the place where he had found the Sultan asleep to search for his horse, which had strayed whilst his master slept. Another Kurd, whose brother had been killed in the storming of Akhūt—some say by the Sultan's own hand—having heard where he was, came, during the absence of his clansman, and slew him in revenge for his brother's death.

With Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Khwārizm Shāhī dynasty terminated. Some authors relate that he was not slain on the above occasion, but that he changed clothes with the Kurd, and turned devotee, and wandered about the world. Curiously enough, I have accidentally met with a confirmation of this. It is
He succeeded in reaching a place in the territory of Akhlät, and halted to rest near a village, the chief of which recognized him. In a battle, which had taken place between the Sultan and the troops of Shām, he had slain the brother\(^3\) of that chief. Having the Sultan thus in his power, that chieftain martyred him. The next day, information was conveyed to the sovereign of Shām, who was greatly grieved [at his fate]; and he commanded that the murderer should suffer condign punishment.

On the occurrence of this misfortune, the sister of the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, ruler of Fārs [Jalāl-ud-Dīn's consort], reached Shām. She was treated with honour and reverence, and was conducted back to Fārs.

Thus the dominion of the Khwārazm Shāhs terminated; and their remaining Maliks, and their followers, took up their residence in Shām and in Mīr.

most interesting, and from one who attended him in his last moments. Shaikh 'Alā-ud-Daulah, Al-Byābānkf, us-Simnānī relates as follows:—"When at Bāghdād, I used daily, at noon, to wait upon the pious and venerable Shaikh, Nūr-ul-Hākk wa ud-Dīn, 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān-i-Isfārāīnī—may his tomb be sanctified! I happened to go upon one occasion, at the usual hour, and found him absent from his abode, a rather unusual occurrence at that time of the day. I went again on the following morning to wait upon him, and inquired as to the cause of his absence on the previous day. He replied, 'My absence was caused through Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, having been received into the Almighty's mercy.' I inquired, 'What, had he been living all this time?' He answered, 'You may have noticed a certain aged man, with a mole upon his nose, who was wont to stay at a certain place,' which he named. I had often remarked the venerable devotee in question;" and that was the heroic, but unfortunate Sultan, Jalāl-ud-Dīn. According to this account, Jalāl-ud-Dīn could not have died until 688 H., above sixty years after the period above mentioned.

\(^3\) The most reliable copies have "brother;" others, "brothers and sons;" and some again, "sons" only.
SECTION XVII.

THE SHANSABĀNĪAH SULTĀNS, AND THE MALIKS OF GHŪR.

MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ, Jūrjānī, the servant hopeful of the Divine mercy—the Almighty guard him from negligence and inadvertency!—says, with respect to this account of the Shansabānīah Maliks of Ghūr, after this manner:—That the following pages are illumined with the sun of the illustrious race of the Sultāns of Ghūr, together with that of the offset of the fragrant tree of the Maliks of Ghūr—may the Almighty God render their dust fragrant, and assign to them a habitation in Paradise!—in the manner of a record, from the dawn of the morning of their dominion, and the noon-day splendour of their sovereignty, together with the genealogy of their family, until the expiration of the empire of that princely house, and the last of the Maliks of that kingly dynasty—the mercy of the Almighty be upon those among them who have passed away!1—in such wise as masters have, in histories, made mention of them, in order that the robe of this chronicle may be adorned with an account of them, and also, in order that this [their] servant, and his priestly family, may acquit themselves of some portion of the debt of gratitude for benefits received, due unto those Sultāns—the light of the Almighty illumine their tombs!—and, in order that such as may inspect these pages may, please God, derive profit and instruction.

Be it known, that that master of eloquence, Maulānā Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubārak Shāh, of Marw-ar-rūd—the light of the Almighty illumine his tomb!—has strung the genealogical pearls of the Sultāns of this dynasty on the thread of poetry, and, having arranged those pearls in perfect

---

1 When this flourish was penned they had ceased to hold any territory for nearly half a century.
order, has affixed the head pearl of that string to the oyster-shell of the illustrious dynasty of Zuḥāk, the Tāzi; and, from the time of those Sulṭāns up to the first commencement of the sovereignty of Zuḥāk, he has mentioned the whole of them, father by father.

This book, their servant, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, inspected in the year 602 H., before the exalted throne in the sacred haram [private dwelling] of that lady, the Princess of the Universe, and the most excellent of her day and of the age, the glory of the world and of the faith, the sovereign of all good qualities among the race of mankind, Māh Malik, daughter of the august Sulṭān, Ghiyās-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abi-ul-Faṭḥ, Muḥammad, son of Sām, Ḵāṣim-i-Amir-ul-Mūminin—may the light of the Almighty illumine them! This Queen of the Universe used to bestow her fostering care and protection upon this frail creature [Minhāj-i-Sarāj], and, in her own princely hall, as though he had been a child of her own, he was brought up; and, in his younger years, he used, day and night, to dwell within her haram, and, under her blessed sight, he used to receive instruction.

That princess was possessed of many virtues and endowments. First: she departed from this transitory sphere, and passed to the eternal mansion, within the veil of maidenhood. Second: she knew the whole of God’s word [the Kur’ān] by heart. Third: she was a depository of all the traditions of martyrdom. Fourth: she used, once a year, to devote a certain period to religious exercises, and would repeat the whole Kur’ān in two genuflexions of prayer. Fifth: when her father, Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, went to the mercy of the Almighty, for a period of seven years the light of the sun and of day never shone upon her, and she continued in constant and solitary prayer. The mercy of the Almighty be upon her, and may her happiness and her reward be ample in heaven!

In short, that master of eloquence, Maulānā Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mubārak Shāh, has composed that genealogical list in verse, in the name of Sultan ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Jahān-soz; and, at the outset, I heard from the sacred lips of that

* One historian quotes a portion of Fakhr-ud-Dīn’s work, but it is too long for insertion here. He was a Saiyid, hence he is styled Shāh.
most excellent of her time, and Khadijah\(^8\) of the age, the Malikah-i-Jalālī\(^4\), that, when some portion of the book and chronicle in question had been composed in verse, through a change which had showed itself in the temperament of Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubarak Shāh, this poem was neglected by him until the time when the throne of the kingdom became adorned and beautified with the majesty and august splendour of Sūltān Ghiyās-ud-Din\(^4\), Muhammad-i-Sām, when this chronicle became graced with his name and titles, and was brought to completion.

The Chronicler relates after this manner:—The Almighty knoweth the truth!—that this dynasty are called Shansabāniān with reference to their paternal ancestor [Shansab by name], who, after the removal of the sons of Zuhāk, grew up in the country of Ghūr, and attained great authority, power, and superiority, and acquired a name. The great probability is, that this personage lived in the time of the Khilāfat of the Lord of the Faithful, 'Ali—may God reward him!—and that he received conversion to the faith at the hand of 'Ali himself\(^6\), and that he took, from that Khalifah, a mandate and a standard; and to every one of that family, who used to sit upon the throne, that covenant which the Lord of the Faithful, 'Ali, had written, used to be presented to him, and he would agree to abide by it, after which he would become [legally] king. The family likewise were among the clients of the Khalifah 'Ali; and affection towards the High Priests of the family of the Chosen One used to be a firm tenet in their creed.

ACCOUNT OF THE FIRST [ANCESTORS] OF THE FAMILY, THEIR GENEALOGY, AND THEIR PROGENITORS, UP TO ZUḤĀK, SURNAMED TĀZĪ.

Zuḥāk has been mentioned in the section on the ancient kings of Irān; and the duration of his reign was a thousand years less one day and a half.

---

8 Muhammad's first wife.
4 The same lady he previously referred to under the name of Mah-Malik.
6 One of the oldest MSS. has Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, the younger of the two brothers.
6 Jahān-Ārā, and some other histories distinctly state that Shansab, son of Khamrak, was contemporary with the Khalifah 'Ali, and that he was converted to the Muḥammadan faith by him. Compare our author's statement above with that at page 312.
The learned in chronology differ considerably with respect to his ancestry and his forefathers, from Mihtar Ādām down to Mihtar Nūḥ, on account of the great lapse of time. The fraternity, who account Zuḥāk among the descendants of Sām, son of Mihtar Nūḥ, relate as follows:—Zuḥāk, son of 'Anwān (Ulūn), son of 'Amlāk (Amlāt and 'Alāk), son of 'Ād, son of 'Ās (Awāṣ and Awāṣ), son of Iram, son of Sām, son of Nūḥ, son of Lamak; while others again have related that his name was Biwar-āsp, son of Ārwand-āsp, son of Tūḥ, or Tawaḥ (Tarḥ), son of Kābah (Kāyah?), son of Nūḥ.

Some, on the other hand, have stated:—Biwar-āsp, or Biwar-āsp, son of Ārwand-āsp, son of Zankabā (Ranbakā), son of Tāżio-barsed (Tāżio-barsid, Tāżio-barsed, Tāżio-

7 The Mubammadan historians are at variance respecting the descent of Zuḥāk. Our author, in his account of him in Section V., says he was called Biwar-āsp, and that God sent Nūḥ to him to exhort him to repent of his misdeeds, and that Nūḥ continued for ages to do so. He would not repent, and the Flood followed. Our author then copies Tabarī [tolerably correct], and says that that author [the most trustworthy perhaps of any] states that Biwar-āsp lived before the Flood, in which he perished; and, one thousand years after the death of Nūḥ [compare with his statement here and at page 312], a king arose of the seed of Sām, son of Nūḥ, named Zuḥāk, who was a sorcerer.

Immediately after quoting Tabarī, our author again says that Pesh-dād, son of Ḥosḥang, had a son, Tāżio by name, who is the father of all the 'Arabs. He had a son Zankabā, who had a son Ārwand-āsp, who was father of Zuḥāk. The Tarikh-i-Mukaddasi, there quoted by him, says Zuḥāk's name is Biwar-āsp, son of Ārwand-āsp, son of Tāraḥ, son of Kāyah, son of Nūḥ.

The Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīkh, Tarikh-i-Ibrāhīmī, and some others, say the 'Ajāmis call Zuḥāk, Biwar-āsp, and that the Patriarch Ibrāhīm lived during his reign; but further state that great discrepancy exists among authors as to his descent. The 'Arabs say he was brother's son of Shadād-i-Ād, and trace his descent to Iram, son of Sām, brother of Arfakhshād, while the Īrānīs say his name is Ārwand-āsp, son of Rīnḵāwar (Zankabā?), son of Sāhirah, son of Tūḵ, son of Farāwal, and that Tūḵ was Ḥosḥang's brother. Guzīdah and others trace his descent from Jamāḥed, and say he was his sister's son; but the greater number of chroniclers agree that he was sixth in descent from Kaitimūr, also written Kaiūmurṣ. The people of Yaman, again, say Zuḥāk was of Yaman, of the tribe of Tubba' [the royal tribe of Arabia Felix, of whom Balkis, Queen of Sheba (Sabā), was one], and that he was the first of the Fir'awns of Miṣr.

8 It will be well to mention here that the first name given in the following pages is the one considered most trustworthy from comparison, and in which the greater number and best copies of the text agree; and that those within brackets are less so according to position.

9 Ārwand-āsp and Ārwand-āsp are also the names of the father of Luhr-āsp, also called Ārwand Shāh.
narsad, Tābūr, Tāzbū, and Tāzbūr], son of Farāwwal [Farāwal, Kạrāwal?], son of Siā-mak, son of Mubshī [Mushbī], son of Kāiũ-murs, son of Ādam—peace be unto him!—while others again say :—Kāiũ-murs, son of Lāwad, son of Sām, son of Nūḥ.

The writers of chronicles [other than those above ?] relate after this manner, that Ārwand-āsp was the father of Zuḥāk¹, and son of the son of Tāzio-barsed [Tāzio, Tāzbū, and Tāzbūr]; and, with the concurrence of historians, Tāzio-barsed, likewise, was the father of all the 'Arabs, and brother of Hoshāng Malik²; and the 'Arabs are called Tāzī through affinity to him. He held dominion and sovereignty over the nomad tribes of 'Arabs, as did his descendants after him. From him the authority passed to his son, Zanbakā [Zankaba ?], and from him to the latter's son, Ārwand-āsp [Āwan-āsp], who was a just, wise, and God-fearing man. He had a son, Zuḥāk by name, who was exceedingly malicious and factious, a blood-shedder, and a great tyrant, and a cruel man, whom Shaitān [Satan] had led astray from the right way⁴. He dug a well in the

¹ According to Tabarî he [Zuḥāk] was a descendant of Ĥām, son of Nūḥ, and after the Flood there was no king upon the earth for a thousand years, until Zuḥāk, the sorcerer, arose; but there are different accounts of him, and great discrepancies exist among authors concerning him. There are the remains of an immense fortress near Bāmīān, still known as the castle of Zuḥāk-i-Mārān, or Zuḥāk of the Snakes.

² Hoshāng is considered the fourth in descent from Ādam, and was the son of Siā-mak, who was son of Kāiumurt. Some consider him to be Arfakhshād, son of Sām, who composed the Jāwīdān-Khirad. He is said to have founded Īstākhūr—Īstākhūr is the 'Arab form of writing it—of Fārs, Bābāl, and Sūs.

³ Called also Tājī by 'Ajamīs, and hence the name Tājīk [ā added to 'Ajami names forms a diminutive], by which the descendants of 'Arabs were styled who were born in and had grown up in 'Ajām. At present the term is used with respect to Persian-speaking people who are neither Turks nor 'Arabs, and of which race the inhabitants generally of towns and cities in Afghānistān, and several districts likewise under Afghān sway, and also of several independent states to the north, consist. The Afghāns often style them "Tājīk-Mājīk." Numbers of 'Arab tribes, or parts of tribes settled in different parts of 'Ajām, after its conquest by the first Musalmān invaders, and several tribes dwelling among the Afghāns, and often confounded with them, claim 'Arab descent. In my proposed history of the Afghān tribes, I shall be able to enter into more detail on this subject. Modern philosophers, however, are, as a matter of course, divided in opinion about the derivation of the name, and also as to the descent of the people; but why should we begrudge them the infinite pleasure of still speculating upon the matter, and trying to make every other account fit that of certain Greeks? See page 309.

⁴ A few copies have "from the right way, so that he dug a well," &c.
path which his father was wont to pass, and Ārwandāsp, who had become old and infirm, fell into it, and was killed.

Zuhāk now became sovereign over the 'Arabs, and, after Jamshed [Jamshed's time?] conquered the whole world, and by sorcery and tyranny brought the whole of it under his sway. The author of the Tārikh-i-Mukaddasi states, that Zuhāk possessed a cylinder, made of gold, in which were seven apertures, each of which was named after one of the seven climes of the four quarters of the earth. When the inhabitants of either of these climates happened to rebel against his authority, he would raise incantations in the aperture named after such climate, and breathe into it, and famine, pestilence, and calamity would arise in it.

After a thousand years of his sovereignty passed away, Almighty God was pleased to release the world from his tyranny and oppression, and the kingdom came to Farīdūn. He seized Zuhāk, and confined him in a pit on mount Dimāwand, in 'Irāk.

ACCOUNT OF BUSTĀM, MALIK OF HIND AND OF SIND.

This Bustām Malik held the dominion of Hindūstān at the hand of Zuhāk, and he was one of Zuhāk's descendants,

---

6 According to trustworthy authorities, this Bīwar-āsp became styled Zuhāk, from the old Persian words జ = дах-āk, signifying "ten vices and defects;" and the 'Arabs, in copying the name, used ١ for ١ and transformed it into ١ by changing the ١ also into ١. With this change of letters, the original meaning of the word became changed, for ١ [Zuhāk ] signifies "a mocker," "laughing."

His vices and defects were hideousness, dwarfishness, excessive arrogance and pride, shamelessness, audacity, gluttony and voracity, a foul tongue, recklessness, lying, injustice, ferocity and tyranny, depravity of heart, and stolidity. These are rather more than ten however. Raużat-uṣ-Ṣafā says Bīwar is from the Pahlawī, and in Dari means ten thousand; and, therefore, Dah-āk received the name of Bīwar-āsp because he had always ten thousand 'Arab horses in his stables.

6 Ţabarfi says his age was a thousand years, while other writers state that he reigned for that period of time.

7 Nine copies of the text have "Malik of Hind and of Sind," and others have "Hind and Ghūr." In the map, if such may be so called, accompanying the account of Sījistān and adjacent parts, in the "MASALIK-WA-MAMALIK," the river of Hind and Sind adjoins Ghūr on the north-east.

8 Sic in all copies of the text.
namely*:—Bustâm, son of Mihshâd [Mîshâd, Mamshâd, Shamâd, Shâd, Shihâd, and Shihâdan], son of Narîmân [also called Nadîmân], son of Afrîdûn [or Farîdûn], son of Sâhind [Sadîm and Sâmid], son of Sîfand-âsp [or Isfand-âsp], son of Zuhâk, son of Suhûb, son of Shâid-âsp, son of Sîâmak, son of Marnîâs [Marsâs and Marrâs], son of Zuhâk the Malik.

When Zuhâk was made captive, Afrîdûn despatched an army to take possession of Hindûstân; and Bustâm, who did not possess the power to oppose the forces of Afrîdûn, retired towards the mountain tracts of Shaḵnân [Shaḵnân] and Bâmîân, and therein took up his residence. On a second occasion the forces of Afrîdûn were directed to proceed in search of him; and Bustâm had several times, for the purpose of hunting and in his rambles, come from the mountains of Shaḵnân and Tûkhâristân into the mountain tracts of Ghûr. That district was called Hazâr-Chashmah [the thousand springs] on account of the number of rivulets in it; and Bustâm, at this time, retiring before the army of Afrîdûn, came into Ghûr, and at the foot of the mountain of Zar-i-Margh [the place where Margh grows] he fixed his residence.

9 Other writers say that Bustâm was one of the descendants, not sons, of Zuhâk, and that his progeny increased in Ghûr up to the time of Shansab, who was contemporary with the Khalîfâh, 'Alî. Shansab was the son of Kharnak, and from him descended Bustâm, as well as Pûlâd. See page 311.

1 Jahân-Ârâ has Shahân.
2 The letters k and gh are interchangeable. A few copies have for گریسین گریسین.
3 Not Hwen Thsang's "Tukhâristân," extending "ten days' journey by thirty," but a much smaller Tûkhâristân is meant here.
4 Zâr signifies a place of growth, and "margh" is the name of a species of verdure called also sare, which any browsing animals feed on with great avidity. It is odoriferous, the reed scoreanthemum.
5 Other authorities state that when Farîdûn overcame Zuhâk, a number of his descendents fled, and took shelter in the mountains of Ghûr; and that Bustâm, who was one of his progeny, and who held Hindûstân, being unable to cope with the forces of Farîdûn, he [Bustâm] also took shelter in Ghûr. The place he took up his residence at was, from the number of its springs and rivulets, called Hazâr-Chashmah, and was an exceedingly pleasant and strong spot, and therefore he chose it, saying to himself "baro; ma-andesh!"—"Go to; don't be concerned!" and that spot was subsequently called Mandêsh. Bustâm prospered there, and his descendents multiplied, and they were rulers, one generation after the other. Other writers say he first fled for shelter "to the mountain tracts of Bāmîân, which lie between Balkh and Kâbul, and from thence entered the difficult country of Ghûr, in which he founded several strong fortresses. He had wandered about in several parts previously before reaching
At this point in the account of Bustām, the masters of history have two traditions, one of which is that just related. The other tradition is from the Muntakhab-i-Tarikh-i-Nāširi, which one of the great men of Ghaznīn composed in the time of the Sultan i-Ghāzi, Mu‘izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Sām—the Almighty illumine his tomb!—which is as follows:—

“When Afrīdūn overcame Zuḥāk, and took the dominion from him, two brothers, his sons, reached Nihāwand. The elder brother bore the name of Sūz⁶, and the younger was called Sām. The elder brother, Sūz, became Amīr [chief or ruler], and the younger, who was named Sām, became the Sipah-sāliār [leader or commander of his forces].⁷

“Amīr Sūz had a daughter, and the Sipah-sāliār, Sām, a son; and these two cousins had, in early childhood, been betrothed to each other, and they had fixed their hearts upon each other. The Sipah-sāliār, Sām, died; and his son had become valiant and a great warrior, so much so, that in that day he had no equal in manliness and valour. After the decease of his father, certain envious and malicious persons arose, who slandered him to his uncle, Amīr Sūz, in consequence of which his uncle became irritated against him, and he determined to bestow his daughter upon the son of some one of the Maliks of the parts round about.

“When his daughter became aware of this, she made her cousin acquainted with it, so that, one night, he came and unfastened the gate of the fortress, and, having loosed and brought out ten chosen horses⁸ from the stables of Amīr Ghūr; and, as soon as Farīdūn became aware of his whereabouts, he despatched large forces against him, but, after protracted hostilities, the forces of Farīdūn were glad to accept terms, on account of the difficult nature of the country, and the strength of Bustām’s castles. Tribute and taxes were imposed upon him [Bustām], and he had to content himself with Ghūr, and not to molest other parts of the country. His descendants increased and multiplied up to the time of Shansab, who is said to have been converted by ‘Ali. The Jami‘ut-Tawārīkh states that the Ghūirs are styled Banī Rasib, otherwise famous under the name of Uz-Zuḥāk.

⁶ Some copies have Sūr, but the oldest have as above. One has Sawār!

⁷ Such being the case, wherefore any cause of dispute afterwards, and appeal to the Khilafah, as to who should be ruler and who commander of the troops? See page 313.

⁸ Two copies of the text, which are reliable, have “ten chosen horses of his father, from the stables of Amīr Sūz.”
Sūz, he set the damsel and her servants upon them and made off, taking away as much coin as he was able to remove. With all diligence possible he made for the foot of the mountains of Ghūr, and there he took up his quarters. The girl and her cousin said [to each other], ‘Za-o [i. e. Az-o] ma-andesh’—be not afraid of him—and the name of that place became Mandesh⁹; and there their affairs assumed stability¹.

According to the first tradition, however, when Amīr Busṭām, with his followers, took up his residence in that locality, information was conveyed to Afrādūn. He was desirous of sending forces, for the third time, for the purpose of destroying and exterminating Busṭām and his followers, or to take him [alive] if possible. The sons of Afrādūn, Tūjz and Salm, by means of treachery, killed their brother, I-raj, who was on the throne of Īrān²; and,

⁹ "Lamandesh" in most copies of the text, but impossible from what he has just stated. Some copies are very different here, in style as well as words, and have, "They said that the name of that place was Dū-mandesh, and at this time, on account of that great personage's coming thither, the name became Bulandesh." The I. O. L. MS., and R. A. S. MS., both agree that the name was "Roz-mandesh, and the name became Bulandesh," but omit the first clause of the last sentence. Mandesh is mentioned by some old writers as the name of a stronghold in Khurāsān. Desh must not be confounded with the Sanskrit word Des—a country, &c. See note ⁴, page 306.

¹ i. e. There they settled down permanently.

² In his account of Farādūn in Section V., our author says I-raj, the youngest son, held the countries of 'Irāk-i-'Arab, and 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, and Hind and Sind. Salm signifies peace, Tūj [also Tūj], boldness, daring, and I-raj, wisdom with tact. The Raugat-ut-Tahirūṁ states that he held Khurāsān, and only a portion of Hind and Sind.

The Raugat-ut-Ṣafā and some others say that a sept of the descendants of Zuḥāk, not the sons of Zuḥāk, finally took up their residence in the mountain tracts of Ghūr, and that they were hard pressed for some time by the forces of Farādūn, and became as desirous of accommodation as Farādūn's general was of granting it; and the Zuḥākīs agreed to pay taxes and tribute, and not to encroach on other territory. See note ⁴, page 306-7.

In the account of the ancient kings of Asia, contained in the Raugat-ut-Tahirūṁ, taken from the work compiled from ancient records in the Pahlawi language in 259 H., and which work, subsequently, was partly put into verse by the poet, Dakīki, in Iṣmā'īl Sāmānī's reign, and afterwards resumed by Anṣārī, and completed by Firdauṣī, in Maḥmūd of Ghaznī's time, but of course greatly embellished by the poets; and also in Ta’barī, and Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh, there are detailed accounts of the reign of Farādūn; but although the death of I-raj is given therein, and agrees with what our author says [he doubtless took his short notice from Ta’barī], of course, nothing whatever is mentioned about Busṭām. Karṣh-asp, ancestor of Rūstam, held Kābul,
on that account, Shāh Afrīdūn was greatly afflicted in heart, and distressed in mind, and he did not obtain his revenge upon Bustām. The latter, having found time and opportunity, turned his attention to populating and rendering habitable the mountain districts of Ghūr, and parts adjacent.

He despatched trustworthy agents to the presence of Shāh Afrīdūn, and sought for peace. Afrīdūn complied with the request of Bustām, and, as he had now obtained security and safety, the followers, dependents, and partisans, and the 'Arab tribes akin or related to Zuḥāk, from all parts around, turned their faces towards the mountain district of Ghūr, and took up their residence in that country, and the number of those tribes became very great.

As Almighty God had willed that from that race pious kings and potent sovereigns should arise, He prospered and blessed those tribes so that they attained unto the faith and covenant of Islām; and from the mine of the seed of Zābul, and Sijistān for Farīdūn, and any petty chief would naturally have been tributary to the former. The nephew of Karsh-asp, Narlmān, had a son named Sām, who was father of Zāl, father of Rustam. Sām is said to have held Zābul, and Kābul, as far as Hind, in feudal sovereignty from the rulers of Īrān. What I wish here to draw attention to, however, is the following: "Zāl, having succeeded to his father's fief, went to Kābul [Zābul?] from Zaranj [founded by Karsh-asp], and Mihrāb Shāh, of the race of Zuḥāk, the Tāzī, the tributary ruler, came forth to receive him, and acknowledged his supremacy. Mihrāb Shāh gave his daughter to Zāl, and she was Rustam's mother." Subsequently, this same Mihrāb Shāh is said to have led the right wing of the army of Kai-Kubād, the first of the Kaianīan dynasty, in the expedition against Afrāsiyāb, the Turk. The Jāmi’-ut-Tawārīkh also states that, when Afrāsiyāb crossed the Jībūn into Khurāsān, he detached a force to intercept Sām, or keep him in check; and, when the force reached the Hirmand, Mihrāb Shāh, who held the city and fortress of Zābul, as deputy of Zāl, sent a message, as a ruse only, to its commander, saying, "I am neither Zābulī nor Īrānī, but of the race of Zuḥāk; and am loyally inclined to Afrāsiyāb." These accounts are, at least, equally as trustworthy as the legends of Greeks about themselves, and perhaps more so. I hope very shortly to give them in detail. I am one of those [weak-minded persons perhaps] who consider the historians of a country best qualified to write its history—its early history at least—and prefer the accounts of ancient Persia, given by the old Īrānī and 'Arab writers after the time of its conquest, to those of Greeks who do not even know the names correctly, just as I should esteem the history of England, from the pen of a Hume or a Lingard, superior to one written by a native of India who had sojourned three months in London, or by a Chinaman who had never visited it.
them the gems of sovereignty were arranged upon the thread of dominion. Some thousands of mosques were founded in place of ancient idol-temples; and the laws and canons of Islam were promulgated to the very extremity of the region of Hindustān which adjoins that of Chin—the mercy of the Almighty be upon them! These Sultāns likewise acquired slaves, every one of whom spread the carpet of justice upon the surface of the world, and raised palaces of beneficence and munificence; and, up to this present time, the heir of that sovereignty and successor to the functions of that empire, is the pearl of the oyster-shell of ascendency, out of the ocean of dominion, the Great Sultān, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abī-l-Muqaffār, Māhmūd, son of the Sultān, Ḫāsim-i-ʿAmīr-ul-Mūmīnīn— the Almighty perpetuate his sovereignty and dominion, and may he long reign!

The Sultāns of the Shansabī dynasty have been divided into four groups:—I., that class, the mention of which will now be recorded, of which Sultān Ḫirīz-koh was the seat of government; II., the dynasty of the Sultāns of Bāmiān, who were a branch from this great tree of sovereignty; III., the dynasty of the Sultāns of Ghaznīn, which was the capital of Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Ghāzi, son of Sām, and his own particular slaves, every one of whom, after him, ascended the throne; and IV., the dynasty of the Sultāns of Hindūstān, the heritage of which dominion, and the sovereignty of which monarchy passed to them, and after whom the race of Shamsi became established upon the throne of royalty. May the Almighty purify the tombs of those who have passed away, and prolong the sovereignty of those remaining to the judgment day!

As much as was discoverable respecting this race in chronicles has been recorded [here], although, in the com-

---

4 Some of the best copies of the text have, “son of the Sultān of Sultāns,” and omit the Ḫāsim altogether. If the Shansabāne Sultāns had any right to assume such a title [explained farther on], neither the slave, nor the slave’s son, this “pearl of the oyster-shell of ascendency,” the poor puppet to whom our author dedicated his work, had the most remote right to assume it.

6 Only a single copy has this passage correct. The slaves here referred to were not relatives nor kinsmen of each other. Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timiš, however, married a daughter of Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, his owner, who ruled in Hindūstān; and the dynasty of the former, from his name, Shams-ud-Din, is styled the Shamsī or Shamsīah dynasty.
pilation of it, there was not an uninterrupted succession to be set forth.

I. AMIR PÜLÄÄD [OR FÜLÄÄD], GHÜRî, SHANSABI.

Amir Püläd, Ghürî, was one of the sons of Malik Shan-
sab', son of Kharnak; and he brought under his jurisdic-
tion the districts of the mountain tracts of Ghür. He
rendered the names of his fathers immortal; and, when the
advocate of the cause of the house of 'Abbās, Abū-Mus-
lim-i-Marwazi, arose, and considered it expedient to oust
and to expel the Amir of the family of 'Ummiah from the
territory of Khurāsān, Amir Püläd led the forces of Ghür
to the aid of Abū-Muslim-i-Marwazi, and greatly distin-
guished himself in supporting and assisting the house of
'Abbās and the family of the Prophet.

For a long period the dominion over Mandesh, and the
authority over the mountain tracts of Ghür was exercised
by him. He died; and his dominions remained in the
possession of the sons of his brother, and, subsequently,
their affairs [and proceedings] were not to be discovered,
up to the time of Amir Banji, the son of Nahārān.

II. AMIR BANJI, SON OF NAHĀRĀN, SHANSABI.

Amir Banji, son of Nahārān, was a great lord, and, in
Ghür, his memory is undying; and he is accounted among
the greatest and most famous of the Maliks of that country.

At this place, in some copies, a totally distinct idiom is used to express the
same sense.

Some copies have "came" under his jurisdiction, and others "were"
under, &c.

It is something new, certainly, to find that "Şāhib-i-Da'wat" means
"a founder."

That is, a native of Marw.

In the accounts of Abū-Muslim, the quondam "founder" of this house of
'Abbās, and in the accounts of those transactions in the history of the Khalī-
fahs, there is no mention, of course, of the great support they received from
Püläd the Ghürî. Some writers say that the fief of Ghür was conferred upon
Amir Püläd and his descendants on account of the services rendered by him,
and that he added to it by annexing other tracts of country.

All the copies of the text here, with few exceptions, write this name
differently as well as incorrectly. There is no doubt that Mandesh is the
correct name. See note 6, page 306, and note 7, page 308.

Which brother is, of course, nameless.
The whole of the Sultāns were descended from his sons⁴; and his genealogy has been thus made out:—Banji, son of Nahārān, son of War-mesh⁶, son of War-meshān [War-maşān, Dar-manshan, War-mashān, and War-heshān], son of Parwez, son of Parwez', son of Shansab, son of Kharnak⁸, son of Bain or Bayyin, son of Munshi⁹, son of Wajzan [Wazn, Wazan, and Warat, or Darrat, or Dirat?], son of Hain [Hin, or Hunain?], son of Bahram, son of Ḥajash, or Khajash, [Jaḥs, or Jaḥsh?], son of Ibrāhim, son of Mu’ddil [Ma’add, or Ma’id], son of Asad [Nāsad?], son of Shadād, son of Zuḥāk.

Amīr Banji was excessively handsome, and of excellent disposition, and endowed with all good qualities and natural gifts. When the dominion of the house of ‘Abbās acquired stability¹, and the empire of Islām came under the sway of the Khalifahs of that family, he presented himself at the Court of the ‘Abbāsi Khalifahs; and the first person of the Ghūrīān race who proceeded to the Khalifah’s Court⁶, and brought [back] a covenant and a standard, was Amīr Banji, son of Nahārān.

The cause of his proceeding to the presence of the Lord of the Faithful, Ḥārūn-ar-Raṣḥīd, was this:—In the territory of Ghūr there was a tribe who are called Shišānīān⁸;

⁴ And from him, too, we may suppose.
⁶ Jahān Ārā has Nahāwān [and Nahādān], son of Wīr-mesh [and War-mesh], son of War-maşān; and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh has Nahāwān, son of War-mesh, son of War-maşān. Fīrishtah [Muḥammad Kāsīm, not “Briggs,” who turns Shansab into Shišī], to judge from three or four copies of the text, has made a terrible hash of these names; and, of course, Dow scarcely ventures to meddle with them, but those he does interfere with he succeeds, as with others in every place in his volumes, in making so ridiculous that their own mothers could not distinguish them. But what can be expected of a translator who does not appear to have known what mu’arrikhan, signifying “annalists, historians” [vol. i. p. 131], and yet his work is the great cabbage-garden for modern historians of India for the million!
⁷ One copy alone of the text has “Parwez, son of Parwez,” but it is one of the best copies I have.
⁸ Respecting this name there is not the least doubt: “Ḫarnak” is not correct.
⁹ Another name for Ṣwārd [Mercury] is Munshi.
¹ ‘Ḥārūn-ar-Raṣḥīd, to whose court Amīr Banji went, was the fifth ‘Abbāsi Khalifah.
² See page 302, where Shansab is said to have been converted by the Khalifah, ‘Ali, and to have brought back with him a covenant and a standard.
³ That is to say, the name of the tribe was Shiš, and, when speaking of its people, Shišān or Shišānīān.
and they assert that, in the first place, their ancestor embraced the true faith, and then the Shansabaniān did; and Muḥammad, in the dialect of Ghūr, they call Ḥamād [Aḥmad?], and, after they had embraced Islam, they became styled Ḥamādi [Aḥmādi?], that is to say, Muḥammadī. In the time of Amir Banji, the Mihtar [chief] of the tribe of Shiṣāniān was an Amir named Shiṣ, son of Bahram; and, in the language of the Ghūris, Shiṣ they call Shiṣ, and this tribe they call Shiṣāniān, after the name of this Amir. Now between Amir Shiṣ and Amir Banji, son of Nahārān, dissension arose about the lordship of Ghūr; and [in consequence] disturbance ensued among the people of that territory. The whole agreed together, on either side, that both the Amirs, Banji and Shiṣ, should proceed to the presence of the Khalīfah, and whichever should bring back from the Court of the Khilāfat a covenant and a standard should be accounted Amir. Both disputants made their arrangements with the determination of undertaking their journey, and setting out towards the Dār-ul-Khilāfat. The throne of the Khilāfat, at this time, was adorned by the radiance of the Lord of the Faithful, Harūn-ar-Rashīd.

The chronicler relates that, in that country [Ghūr] there was a merchant, a Yahiidi [Jew], a follower of the religion. By nearly every other writer of authority they are said not to have embraced Islam up to the time of Husain, son of Sām, son of Hasan, who was made ruler of Ghūr by Masjīd-i-Karim, Sultan of Ghaznī. See page 321 and note.4

I have several times mentioned that the various copies of the text collated may be divided into two sets, which, in many places, differ considerably in idiom. At this place, the oldest and best copies have Ḥamad [خماد], Ḥamadī [خمادي], and Aḥmadī [اخدمدي], and also at page 369, whilst the more modern copies have Ḥamad, and Ḥamadī, with the exception of the I. O. L. M.S. No. 1952, which, at page 369, has Ḥamadī also. The points of letters are often omitted in writing, and x might be written for ū, but that ū should be written for x, although possible, is not so probable. Still I do not consider myself quite justified in adopting the reading of the older copies, although the Ghūrān tribes may have given x the harsher sound of ū. I certainly have never met with a similar instance of the kind. We may suppose, with some certainty, that the Ghūrān merely adopted the other name of Muḥammad, derived from the same root, namely Aḥmad, by which the prophet is mentioned in the Kurān [a matter which has been much discussed], and hence they used Aḥmadī in preference to Muḥammadī. See page 369.

That is to say, the Ghūris did not correctly pronounce the ẓ, lisped ẓ of the 'Arabs, but pronounced it as common s.
of Mihtar Mūsā [Moses], on whom be peace! This merchant entertained a friendship for Amīr Banjī. He had travelled a great deal, and had acquired great experience in the ways of the world, and had frequented the capitals of the rulers of the countries around, and had become acquainted with the usages and forms of etiquette of the Courts of Sulṭāns and Princes; and he set out in company with Amīr Banjī.

He was acquainted with the objects and intentions of Amīr Banjī, and he said to him:—“If I should instruct thee in etiquette, and make thee acquainted with the usages of decorum and politeness, and give thee proper knowledge of the forms and ceremonies observed at the Court of the Khilāfāt, and in the presence of sovereigns, so that on that account the authority and government of the territory of Ghūr shall be conferred upon thee, do thou enter into a covenant with me, that, in every tract that I may desire, throughout the whole of thy territory, thou shalt assign a locality to, and cause to settle therein, a number of the Bani-Isra'il [children of Israel], followers of the faith of Mihtar Mūsā, in order that under the shadow of thy protection, and beneath the guardianship of thy Malikṣ and thy offspring, they may dwell in peace and tranquillity." Amīr Banjī, son of Nahārān, entered into a covenant with that merchant of the Bani-Isra'il, and said:—“When thou teachest me the usages of politeness, and instructest me in the rules of conduct and demeanour necessary to be observed before princes, and in paying homage at the Court of the Khilāfāt, I will fulfil the whole of thy requests, and fully satisfy thy desires.”

This covenant having been duly settled on both sides, the merchant of the Bani-Isra'il commenced to instruct Amīr Banjī in the polite usages necessary to be observed before princes, and at the Courts of sovereigns, and the requisite forms of respect and reverence needed at the

---

6 I would here call the reader's particular attention to the universal tradition of the Afghāns, recorded in all histories of them, respecting their claim to Israelītīsh descent. But they consider it an insult to be called Yahūdīs or Jews, and declare that they are Bani-Isra'īl. Many European writers declare most energetically that such a descent is impossible. Perhaps if it had been recorded in Greek, or merely mentioned by one of that nation, they would have been equally energetic in the other way.
Khalifah's Court. The merchant likewise began to put in order and make ready a dress for him, consisting of a tunic, a cap, boots, and breeches, and to perfect him in riding and in the mode of wearing his arms, in such wise, that his rival, Shīs, son of Bahrām, knew nothing whatever of all this [preparation] until they arrived at the Khalifah's capital.

Shīs, son of Bahrām, proceeded thither just as he was, in the short Ghūrīān garments which he was accustomed to wear at home, whilst Amīr Banjī, son of Nahārān, entered the Khalifah's capital in a dress befitting an Amīr, and becoming a great personage.

After they had been permitted to make their obeisances before the Khalifah's Court, when a convenient opportunity arose, each of the disputants represented what were his objects and wishes, in a respectful manner, and with many expressions of his devotion and loyalty, and stated to the Wazīr and the Ustād-ur-Rāz-bān the matter of the dispute between them, and made fully known what were their desires and requirements. The Lord of the Faithful, Hārūn-ar-Rashīd, after he had been pleased to peruse their statements, and his august consideration and attention had been drawn to their case, was pleased to regard Amīr Banjī, son of Nahārān, with favour.

As Amīr Banjī was blessed with great good fortune, combined with a most felicitous destiny, and his good nature was adorned with gracefulness of manners, the Lord of the Faithful was pleased to remark:—"Hāzā Īsām," that is to say, "This Banjī is good looking, has a noble bearing, and appears endowed with the necessary qualifications of government and sovereignty, combined with good looks and artlessness of nature. Let the whole of the territory of Ghūr be made over to him, and let the championship of the forces of the country of Ghūr be entrusted to Shīs, son of Bahrām." Both of them were invested with a robe of honour of the Dar-ul-Khilāfat, and these titles were bestowed upon them, and they took their departure, and returned to Ghūr again, according to the command of the Khalifah's Court.

7 The Ustād-i-Rāz-bān was an officer who represented to sovereigns the statements of persons who desired that their cases should be investigated by the monarch himself.

8 Another author, who says nothing whatever about any Jew merchant,
From that time forward, the title of the Shansabānīn Sultāns, according to the august words of the Lord of the Faithful, Hārūn-ar-Rashīd, became Ḳāsim-i-Amīr-ul-Mumīnīn—the Lord of the Faithful's handsome [one].

When these two personages returned to Ghūr again, the government of the territory [was assumed] by the Shansabānis, and the championship of the forces by the Shīsānis, and that arrangement continued up to the present age according to this settlement. The Sultāns were all Shansabānis, and the Champions, such as Mu-ayyid-ud-Dīn, Fath-i-Karmākh, Abū-l-'Abbas-i-Shīs, and Sulīmān-i-Shīs, were all Shīsānis—the mercy of the Almighty be upon the whole of them!

III. Sūrī, Son of Muḥammad.

From the time of the government of Amir Banji up to the present period [of Sūrī's rule], nothing was found in

relates that Amir Banji, having added considerably to his previous territory by seizing other tracts, became one of the most powerful of the Maliks around. He was famed for his noble qualities and disposition; and, during the Khilāfah of Hārūn-ar-Rashīd, he proceeded to the Dār-ul-Khilāfah. He was treated with great favour on account of the successes which had been gained, by his efforts, in the arrangement of the important affairs of the house of 'Abbās; and, on beholding him, the Khilafah uttered these words: "Hāzā-Qāsim," which is to say "good looking;" and, consequently, he obtained the title of Qāsim-i-Amīr-ul-Mumīnīn. He returned to Ghūr again, with a robe of honour and a patent of investiture. The dominion over those parts continued in the possession of himself and his descendants until the time of Sūrī, the son of Muḥammad, who was one of Banji's descendants, and lived in the time of Maḥmūd of Ghāznī.

No other Khalifah confirmed it, I fancy, if Hārūn bestowed it. By our author's own account, they did not even assume the title of Sultan up to Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī's time. He was seventh after this Sūrī.

1 Some copies have ८ and one has ४ but Karmākh is correct.
2 Jahan-Arā and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh differ from our author considerably here [he certainly acknowledges his want of materials] :—Sūrī, son of Muḥammad, was the grandson [farzand-zādah] of Amir Banji, and he flourished, not in the time of Maḥmūd of Ghāznī, but in the time of the Suffārān. Sūrī's son, Muḥammad, was a contemporary of Maḥmūd's. The Raugāt-us-Ṣafā, Fasīb-ī, and others also, state that Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, was a contemporary of Maḥmūd; but that, when Sultān Maḥmūd got rid of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, ruler of Ghūr, his grandson, Ḥasan by name, through fear of the Sultān, retired into Hindūstān, with his family, and took up his residence in that country. What reason there could have been for this, when the father could stay, is not given. Some others, again, say that sometimes Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, would be obedient to Sultān Maḥmūd, and, at others, in open revolt, as circumstances permitted, until, after some years,
chronicles respecting the state of the country of Ghūr that could be particularly enlarged upon; and, as the compilation of this Tābākāt was completed at the sublime capital, Dihli—may its pre-eminence never decline!—and the kingdoms of Islām were thrown into convulsion through the irruption of the Mughal infidels—the Almighty confuse them!—and the country had become isolated, and the extreme parts disturbed and unsettled, it was impossible to copy from the history which the author had examined in the territory of Ghūr. As a matter of necessity that which has been obtained from the Tārikh-i-Nāsirī, and the Tārikh of Ibn-Haiṣam-i-Sānī, together with some traditions from the priesthood of Ghūr, have been [therefore] recorded; and the author hopes that he may be forgiven by those who look into the work [for any errors or shortcoming that may be found in it].

They thus state, that Amir Siri was a great Malik, and that most part of the territory of Ghūr was under his jurisdiction; and, as in some parts of that country, such as Zāwulistān, the people, both high and low, noble and ignoble, were not [yet] exalted to the excellence of Islām, they were, at that time, at continual feud one with another. When the Šuffārīān came out of the territory of Nimroz, and advanced to Bust and the district of Dāwar, and Ya'kūb, son of Lais, attacked Lakan the Lak, Amir of partly by stratagem and partly by peaceful means, the Sultan succeeded in securing Muhammad, son of Siri, whom he took along with him towards Ghaznin, but that he died by the way, at Kidān. The Tārikh-i-Ibrāhīmī gives a more trustworthy account, and which, if dates are examined, certainly seems correct. For further particulars see note 7, page 321.

3 The history in verse composed by Fakhir-ud-Din, Mubārak Shāh, mentioned at page 300.

4 Great discrepancy exists in most of the copies of the text with respect to this name. Some have Wālishān, Wāeshān, and Wālishān; but two good copies have Zāwulistān very plainly written, and that may be considered the correct reading.

5 Ya'kūb-i-Lais reduced Bust, Zamīn-i-Dāwar, Ghaznin, Tukhāristān, and other tracts in 256 H., and, in the previous year, fought an action with Tūk, son of Muşlas, in Kirmān; but who Lakan the Lak [some copies have Lak-Lak] was it difficult to say. There is no mention of this matter in any author, with whom I am acquainted; but Lak is the name of a sept of nomad Kurds, of which people there seems to have been a considerable number in those parts at that time. There are some tribes dwelling among the Afghāns to this day, erroneously supposed by Englishmen to be Afghāns, who claim to be Kurds.
Aytkin-ābād⁶, which is the district of Rukhaj, the tribes of the Ghūris fortified themselves on the summits of the rocks, and remained in safety; but they used to be at constant enmity with each other—the followers of Islam and the unbelievers⁷—so that they were in the habit of keeping up a war from kūshk to kūshk⁸, and lived in a constant state of contention and strife.

Through the natural impregnability of the strong mountains which are in Ghūr⁹, others [foreigners] used not to subject them to their power; and the head of the whole of the Shansabānīs of Mandesh was Amir Sūrī¹.

There are five great and lofty mountains¹ in Ghūr, respecting which the people of Ghūr are agreed that they are the strongest mountains in the world. One of these is Zār-i-Margh of Mandesh, at the foot of which mountain is the kūshk and capital of the Shansabānīs, and they [the people of Ghūr] contend that the Simurgh nourished Zāl-i-Zar [Zāl, the ruddy-faced], who was the father of Rustam, in that mountain. Some of the dwellers at the skirt thereof maintain, that it was in one of the years between 500 H. and 600 H., when the sound of lamentation and regret issued from that mountain, "Zāl-i-Zar hath passed away." The second mountain [range] has the name of Surkh-Ghar®; and that also is in the Mandesh district,

⁶ Some copies have Lātkīn-ābād, but the above is the correct reading; but Rukhaj—€—which is said to have been a district of the territory of Bust, might be read Zaranj—€—and I am almost inclined to consider the last reading correct. All the copies of the text are more or less imperfect here. One copy also says plainly that "the tribes of Ghūris sought shelter on the borders of Sind," and this seems the preferable reading, but the majority of copies are as above.

⁷ That is, those not yet converted to the Muhammadan faith, and, probably, some of the Bani-Isra'il before referred to, and such tribes as have since retired northwards towards Hindū-Kugh, or have now nearly disappeared.

® A kūshk here means a fortified village, and also a castle, &c. See note 2, page 331.

² The word koh, here used, may signify a mountain range, or a single mountain.

There would be considerable difficulty in finding "the mountains of Rāsīāt, which are in Ghor," for a very good reason—that they do not exist. The word "rāsīāt" is not a proper name, but the plural of "rāšiah," which means "strong mountains." See Elliot's India, vol. ii. p. 284.

¹ From this statement it is plain, as in Baihaqī's account farther on, that Ghūr was under several petty chiefs. Sūrī was chief of Mandesh only.

² The word koh, here used, may signify a mountain range, or a single mountain.

It is impossible to fix the names of two of these five ranges with any degree of certainty, for there are scarcely two copies alike out of the twelve
in the limits of Tajir-Koh*. The third mountain is Ashuk, in the district of Timran, the size and altitude of which is greater than that of any other part of the territory of Ghur; and the district of Timran is [situated] in its hollows and [on] its sides. The fourth is the mountain range of Warani, in the valleys and on the skirts of which are the territories of Dawar and Walisht*, and the kasr* of Kajurān. The fifth is the mountain of Ro'en, in the central part of Ghur, of immense strength and altitude; and they have stated7 that the fifth mountain [range] is the Faj [defile, pass] of Khaesār*, the length, extent, and loftiness of which is beyond the bounds of conjecture, conception, and understanding. In the year 590 H., one half * of the trunk of an ebony tree was found at the summit of it, more than one thousand mans* in weight; and no one was able to conceive how, or in what manner, it could have been brought, or have fallen there.

collated. One, the very old copy I have often referred to, has سرخہ-غر, as above, which means the red mountain, and the next oldest copy سرخہ between which two words there is but a very slight difference. The remaining copies have داور و والیش and the like.

4 As many other copies have.
5 It is impossible to fix some of these names satisfactorily. Some copies of the text have داور و والیش Dawar and Walisht, while others again leave out the and altogether. The very old copy I have often referred to has as written above; but another very old copy, one of the St. Petersburg MSS., has "Ghur and Walisht." This is somewhat remarkable, as Baihaqī mentions a کور واشیش Gūr-i-Walisht, as lying in the route between Ghaznin and the fortress of Mandesh, in which stronghold Mas'ūd of Ghaznin confined his brother Muḥammad; and he also mentions ولجیس Walīstān, in connexion with Bust and Kuṣdār. One of the Paris copies here has "the district of زریستان," and leaves out Dawar. Although so many copies have Walisht, I am half inclined to read this part of the sentence thus — کور و والیش "which are the territories of Dawar and Zaǔul."

6 Kasr and Küshk have both one meaning: the first is 'Arabic and the last Persian. See note 9, page 331.

7 From this remark it is evident our author does not describe these mountain ranges from his own knowledge.

8 Faj is not a proper name: it means a wide and open route or road between two mountain ranges; a pass. Khaesār is a well-known place, and is mentioned in a number of places throughout the work, and therefore the "Faj Hanisār" is as much a myth as the "mountains of Rasiāt."

9 The printed text, the I. O. L. MS. and the R. A. S. MS., have "a kasr [see meaning of kasr, note 8, page 331] of the trunk of an ebony tree"!!

1 The man varies from forty to eighty pounds in different parts. The former probably is meant here.
Abū-l-Ḥasan-ul-Haṣam, son of Muḥammad-i-Nābī, the historian, relates in this wise:—that, after the sovereignty of Khurāsān and Zawulīstān passed from the Sāmānis and Ṣūfāris, and devolved upon Amīr Sabuk-Tīgin, he had, upon several occasions, marched forces from Bust towards the mountain [tracts] of Ghūr, and had put numbers to the sword; and, when the throne fell to Amīr Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tīgin, the sovereignty of Ghūr had passed into the hands of Amīr Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, and he, having brought the territories of Ghūr under his sway, sometimes would pay obedience to the Court of Sulṭān Maḥmūd-i-Ghāzī, and at other times would act in a rebellious manner, and manifest a refractory spirit, and would withhold the amount of tribute and arms stipulated; and, relying on the faith of his strong fortresses, his power, and the ample number of his people, he used continually to show hostility.

The heart of Sulṭān Maḥmūd, for this reason, was ever...
on the watch, and, on account of his [Muḥammad's, son of Sūrī,] numbers, his power and dignity, and the fact of the great [natural] strength and altitude of the mountains of Ghūr, the Sultan used well to consider in his mind, until, with a large army, he came into Ghūr, and he [Muḥammad, son of Sūrī,] was invested within the fortress of Aḥangarān. Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, held out the fortress for a considerable period, and defended it energetically; but, after some time, the stronghold was gained possession of by his descending from it, on terms of accommodation, and presenting himself before Sultān Maḥmūd.

The Sultan took him, together with his youngest son, who was named Shīš, away to Ghaznin, because Amir Muḥammad-i-Sūrī entertained the greatest affection for his youngest son, Shīš. When they reached the precincts of Kidān, Amir Muḥammad-i-Sūrī died. Some relate after this manner:—that, when he became a prisoner, through the proud spirit within him, he was unable to brook disgrace. He had a signet-ring, beneath the stone of which some poison had been set; and, at this time, he availed himself of it, and died.

6 Not mentioned in his account of the strong fortresses of Ghūr, but there was a place called Dīh [village] of Aḥangarān [Aḥangarān is the plural of Aḥangar, a blacksmith], near Ghaznin, and the river of Aḥang, which flowed past that city. 'Uṭba' also mentions it. See following note.

7 Before giving the accounts of other authors, I will first give an extract from the Kitāb-i-Yamīnī of 'Uṭba', as he was a contemporary of Maḥmūd, but he seldom mentions dates.

He says, Maḥmūd became greatly incensed against the tribes of Ghūr, who were unbelievers, on account of their waylaying caravans and levying blackmail, thinking their hills and defiles impregnable. An army, consisting of horse and foot, was assembled to punish them, and Aльтīn-Tāshb, the Ḥājib, and Arsalān-i-Jāṣib [called a Multānī, but it appears he had only held the government of Multān] were appointed to the command. They set out, but had such hard fighting with the Ghūris that Maḥmūd, finding they made little progress, resolved to proceed in person, attended by a body of his Ghulāms. He succeeded in defeating them, and, after penetrating narrow passes and defiles, made a road which enabled him to reach Aḥangarān, the stronghold of their Malik, who was called Ibn-i-Sūrī [i. e. "Sūrī's son"] and thus he agrees with our author, and others I have quoted, to the effect that the correct name of this chief is Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, son of Muḥammad. See also Baiḥakī's account farther on]. Sūrī's son, with a force of 10,000 men, came out of his stronghold, and, being intrenched behind walls [breastworks?], and availing himself of the ravines, hills, and broken ground, succeeded for half a day in resisting all efforts to dislodge him. Maḥmūd had recourse to a
Sultan Mahmud sent his [Muhammad's] son, Shis, back stratagem. He directed his troops to face about, as though about to give up the contest and retire. This had the desired effect; and Siri's son, the Hindi [as 'Utha' calls him], came forth from his strong position to follow in pursuit. The Sultan faced about, and defeated him. Siri's son was taken, together with great booty, consisting of arms and other war material. Siri's son subsequently poisoned himself by means of his ring, which contained poison.

'Utha' also makes a difference, as do all writers of any knowledge of their subject, between Ghuris and Afghans, and never confounds them.

Other writers contend that Muhammad and his son, Hasan by name, not Shis, were made captive by Mahmud, and imprisoned. Their place of confinement was the upper story of a tower, thirty ells from the ground, an aperture of which faced the open country. Muhammad gave himself up for lost, but, not wishing that his family should be ruined, desired Hasan to make for Ghur. He contrived to effect the escape of his son by tearing up the blanket given him to lie upon, to make it into a rope, by means of which he lowered Hasan to the ground, who escaped to Ghur. As soon as the Sultan became aware of Hasan's escape, he put Muhammad, the father, to death. Hasan obtained the rule over Ghur, and had a son, Husain by name, who had seven sons. This is the 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, the IXth chief of our author.

Jahan Ara, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, and some others agree as to Muhammad and his son, Hasan by name, not Shis, were made captive by Mahmud, and imprisoned. Their place of confinement was the upper story of a tower, thirty ells from the ground, an aperture of which faced the open country. Muhammad gave himself up for lost, but, not wishing that his family should be ruined, desired Hasan to make for Ghur. He contrived to effect the escape of his son by tearing up the blanket given him to lie upon, to make it into a rope, by means of which he lowered Hasan to the ground, who escaped to Ghur. As soon as the Sultan became aware of Hasan's escape, he put Muhammad, the father, to death. Hasan obtained the rule over Ghur, and had a son, Husain by name, who had seven sons. This is the 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, the IXth chief of our author.

Jahan Ara, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, and some others agree as to Muhammad and his son, Hasan by name, not Shis, were made captive by Mahmud, and imprisoned. Their place of confinement was the upper story of a tower, thirty ells from the ground, an aperture of which faced the open country. Muhammad gave himself up for lost, but, not wishing that his family should be ruined, desired Hasan to make for Ghur. He contrived to effect the escape of his son by tearing up the blanket given him to lie upon, to make it into a rope, by means of which he lowered Hasan to the ground, who escaped to Ghur. As soon as the Sultan became aware of Hasan's escape, he put Muhammad, the father, to death. Hasan obtained the rule over Ghur, and had a son, Husain by name, who had seven sons. This is the 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, the IXth chief of our author.

Jahan Ara, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, and some others agree as to Muhammad and his son, Hasan by name, not Shis, were made captive by Mahmud, and imprisoned. Their place of confinement was the upper story of a tower, thirty ells from the ground, an aperture of which faced the open country. Muhammad gave himself up for lost, but, not wishing that his family should be ruined, desired Hasan to make for Ghur. He contrived to effect the escape of his son by tearing up the blanket given him to lie upon, to make it into a rope, by means of which he lowered Hasan to the ground, who escaped to Ghur. As soon as the Sultan became aware of Hasan's escape, he put Muhammad, the father, to death. Hasan obtained the rule over Ghur, and had a son, Husain by name, who had seven sons. This is the 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, the IXth chief of our author.
to Ghūr again. He had [already] conferred the govern-

family and effects, on board a vessel which met with a contrary wind, which raised a violent storm. The vessel and all on board, with the exception of Ḥusain, son of Sām, went to the bottom. Ḥusain, when the ship was sinking, succeeded in getting upon a plank or log of wood, and, at the very same time, a lion [Dow calls the lion "his father," mistaking পঃ for হি or হঃ], which was being conveyed upon the vessel's deck, also sprang upon it, and for three days and nights Ḥusain and his strange companion remained in this state upon the log, at the end of which period they were wafted to the shore. The lion made for a neighbouring forest, and Ḥusain for a town near by. Being a stranger and not knowing any one, and the time night, he went and lay down upon one of the benches or platforms, which are to be found in front of almost all shops in India, and fell fast asleep. The watch on going their rounds perceiving him there, and, not knowing who he was, took him for a thief, and dragged him away to prison, where he remained for about seven years. The governor of that place having been attacked with a dangerous disorder, by way of atone-

ment, ordered all the prisoners to be set at liberty. Ḥusain, son of Sām, by this means obtained his freedom, and set out for Ghaznīn. On the road thither he fell in with a band of robbers, who, finding him a powerful and intelligent youth, induced him to join them, and he was provided with a horse and arms. It so happened, however, not long after, that a band of troops in the service of Sūltān Ibrāhīm of Ghaznīn, which had been for some time on the look out for the robbers, came upon them unawares, and made the whole gang captive. They were brought bound into the presence of Sūltān Ibrāhīm, who directed that they should suffer death. One after the other several under-

went their sentence, until it came to the turn of Ḥusain, son of Sām. While the executioner was blindfolding him, he exclaimed, "O God! I know that error is not agreeable to Thee, why then is it that I, although innocent, am thus to suffer death?" These words affected the executioner, and the matter was represented, through one of the Court, to the Sultan, who directed that Ḥusain should be brought before him. He stated his pitiful case to Ibrahim, who, on hearing it, took compassion on him, pardoned him, and enrolled him, in a subordinate office at first, among his chamberlains. When Sūltān Mas'ūd, surnamed the Beneficent, succeeded his father, Ibrāhīm, he conferred upon Husain, son of Sām, son of Muḥammad, [grand(?)]son of Sūrī, the government of the district of Ghūr, and the title of 'Īzz-ud-Dīn. Some say Ibrāhīm gave Husain a kinswoman of his own in marriage [our author states, at page 105, that one of his own ancestors married a daughter of Sūltān Ibrāhīm]. After Husain's death, enmity arose between his descendants and Bahram Shah, Mas'ūd's son, as mentioned by our author farther on, and as will be hereafter noticed. Many authors very properly consider 'Alā-ud-Dīn to be the first of the dynasty, and the dynasty to consist of five persons only, whose dominion lasted sixty-four years, the others being merely accounted petty chieftains.

There can be no doubt whatever that the Ghūrs were merely petty mountain-chiefs up to the time of Sūltān Maḥmūd of Ghaznīn, and the extent of country they dwelt in proves it; but, as the Ghaznavīd dynasty declined, the Ghūrs waxed stronger and more independent after the decease of Mas'ūd-i-Karīm the Beneficent], who gave the government of his native country to Husain, son of Sām, when the Ghaznavīd empire began rapidly to decay. Our author's desire at all times appears to be to glorify the Ghūrs, and, therefore, the fact of their having been merely petty tributary chiefs did not chime in with his wishes. We find Maḥmūd and his son Mas'ūd continually passing
ment of Ghūr upon Muḥammad-i-Sūrī's eldest son, Amīr Abū-'Ali, as will, subsequently, be recorded.

from Ghaznīn to Balkh and Kābul, Ghaznīn to Hindūstān, Ghaznīn to Sījistān, and from Ghaznīn to Hīrāt, and thence up the valley of the Murghāb; and Mas'ūd appears to have passed through Ghūr to Ghaznīn, when he had to fly, after his defeat by the Saljūqs, and yet we hear not a word about these powerful rulers of our author, although the Sultāns must have passed through the mountain tracts of Ghūr constantly—in fact the Sultāns of Ghaznīn held several fortresses in Ghūr; and Tigīn-ābād was in that very part, and Muḥammad, brother of Mas'ūd, was confined in the fortress of Nāe in Wajīristān, one of the very districts mentioned by our author as forming part of the Ghūrīān dominions. I think 'Uṭba' and Baihākī were more than likely to have had thorough knowledge of these potent Maliks and sovereigns so called, yet Baihākī and 'Uṭba' treat them as very petty chieftains, although they held some strong fortresses. Our author quotes Baihākī constantly about other matters, but not here in regard to what happened under his [Baihākī's] own observation as it were; and this looks suspicious. I will now give an abridged account of what he does say respecting Sultan Mahmūd's proceedings with respect to Ghūr, and of the expedition undertaken by his gallant son, Mas'īd, against some of its petty chiefs, during the time he held the government of Khurāsān, before he succeeded to the throne of Ghaznīn.

"In the year 401 H., Sultan Mahmūd went on an expedition into Ghūr against the infidels of that part, by way of Zamin-i-Dawar, taking along with him his two sons, Mas'īd and Muḥammad, both at that time in their fourteenth year [they were not twins], and also their uncle [Mahmūd's youngest brother], Yūsūf, then seventeen.

"These three young Princes were left in Zamin-i-Dawar, with the heavy matériel and baggage, and Muḥammad left them there because he considered that district auspicious, it having been the first territory entrusted to him by his father, Amīr Sabuk-Tigīn. The narrator of the preceding and following events, 'Abd-ul-Ghaffār, says, 'my grandfather, who related this, was at that time in the service of Bātīkīn, the Zamin-Dawari [i. e. of Zamin-i-Dawar], who was governor of that district on the part of Sultan Mahmūd, and he [my grandfather] was directed to remain in attendance on the Princes.' [There is not the slightest allusion either to Siri or his son here, although it is the year in which his son Muḥammad is said to have been made captive by Muḥammad] * * * * In 405 H., Maḥmūd began to make raids upon Khawanīn, which is a tract of Ghūr, adjoining Bust and Zamin-i-Dawar, in which were infidels exceedingly tall and strong, and they held many passes and strong fortresses. On this occasion the Sultan had taken along with him his son Mas'ūd, and he then greatly distinguished himself, and showed many proofs of his manhood and valour. When a body of them [the infidels] retired for refuge to their stronghold, one of their chiefs was standing on a tower of the fort, and was acting with great insolence and audacity, and galling the Musalmāns, when Mas'ūd, who was fighting on horseback, hit him in the throat with an arrow, and he fell dead from the tower. The chief's companions became heart-broken at this, and surrendered the fortress; and all this was accomplished by one wound dealt by a brave hand. Amīr Maḥmūd was delighted with his lion-like son, and, whilst he was yet in his youth, made him his heir, for he knew that after his own death there was no one able to maintain the dynasty but he. [See note *, page 92.] * * * * In 411 H., Mas'ūd [he had been declared heir-apparent, and appointed governor of Khurāsān, with Hirāt as the seat of
V. MALIK ABU-'ALI, SON OF MUHAMMAD, SON OF SURI.

Amir Abü-'Ali, son of Muhammed-i-Suri, was a man of government] proceeded to Hirat, and determined to undertake an expedition into Ghur.

He set out from Hirat, in Jamadi-ul-Awwal, with a strong force of horse and foot, and five light elephants. The first march was to Badshàn [one MS. has Badshahân], and the next to Khusân [one MS. Chashân or Chushân; but several of these names cannot be considered certain, although all available MSS. have been compared, and the printed text of Morley, which has been carefully edited], and then to Barfân [MS. Parâyân]. There a halt took place to allow all the troops to come up, after which Prince Mas'úd marched to Fâr [MS. Bâr], and from thence, after two days, to Nakhsbâ [MS. Naâshab or Niîshab], and then to Bâch-i-Wazir, outside; and that Ribât [public edifice, a kârânsârâne] is the commencement of the frontier of Ghur.

When the Ghïris became aware of this movement of Amir Mas'úd, they retired to their strongholds and deliberated about making resistance. Before he set out on this expedition, Mas'úd had conciliated Bû-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf [Bû or Abû-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf would signify the father of Hasan, and son of Khalaf. According to some authors already quoted the son of Muhammed, son of Suri, was named Hasan. See para. 2, page 321], one of the most notable of the chief-tains of Ghur, and had induced him [Bi-l-Hasan] to submit to his authority; and it had been agreed, that, on the Amir's troops reaching that Ribât, Bû-l-Hasan should present himself there with his forces fully equipped. On the day Mas'úd reached that place, Bû-l-Hasan joined him with a considerable force, amounting to 3000 horse and foot, and brought along with him numerous offerings and contributions in the shape of shields, armour, and whatever was most esteemed of the produce of Ghur. Mas'úd treated him with favour, and he was followed by Sher-wân. This was another of the chiefs on the frontier of Ghur and Gûzgânân [pronounced and written Južjanân by 'Arabs], and he too came attended by numerous forces, horse and foot. He likewise had been conciliated by Amir Mas'úd, and he brought along with him offerings beyond compute. Amir Muhammed [Mas'úd's brother] had used the utmost endeavours and contrivances to induce this chieftain to come and attach himself to him, because his territory adjoined Muhammad's appanage, which was Gûzgânân, but he had declined because people were more inclined towards Mas'úd.

Having been joined by these chiefs, Mas'úd resumed his march, but went on in advance himself, slightly attended by about fifty or sixty ghulâms, and 200 foot, selected from each dastâh or band. He reached a fortress which they called Bâr-tar, an exceedingly strong place, and garrisoned by a numerous and well-armed force. He prepared to attack it, his party not being patient enough to wait for the arrival of the army. He led the way himself, followed by his ghulâms and the foot, and they shouted the takbir, on which the accursed unbelievers [these Ghïris were not Muhammedans] of this fortress of Ghur sprung up infuriated, and set up a yell sufficient to rend the ground. Mas'úd ordered his ghulâms to take to their bows; and they kept up such an effectual fire of arrows, that not a Ghúr dared show his head above the walls, and this enabled the foot, by means of lassos [used up to a recent
good disposition and excellent qualities, and was highly commended for the excellency of his faith.

period] to assault one of the bastions. They effected an entrance, and drove the Ghūris before them, and, being joined by the ghulams, completely cleared the walls and bastions, making great slaughter among the unbelievers, and taking a great number of captives and a considerable amount of booty of all descriptions. After the fortress had been captured, the main body of the troops arrived, and many were their praises and congratulations, that such a strong fortress had been taken by such a mere handful of men.

"From thence Mas'ūd marched towards the tract of Zarān [in one copy of the original, Razān, but the first is the most probable], the people of which agreed to pay taxes and tribute, and presented contributions in gold, silver, and arms. From that part to the district called Jarūs [also Kharūs and Ḥarūs] where War-mesh-i-Bat dwelt, was a distance of ten farsaks [leagues]. The Amir did not commence hostilities against this chief, War-mesh-i-Bat, because he had sent an agent to the young Amir tendering submission and allegiance, and had promised that, when Mas'ūd should return to Hirāt, he would present himself before him, and enter into stipulations respecting tribute. That district, and the place where this chieftain dwelt, were excessively strong, and the most difficult portion of the whole territory of Ghūr, its people the most warlike and the strongest men in that part. It had been the capital of the Ghūris in bygone times; and, whatever ruler held that tract, the whole of the rest of the territory used to submit to him, up to the time that Amir Mas'ūd marched into that part of the country."

[There can be no doubt but that Baihaḵī, who was a native of the Ghaznīn district, and who wrote his work at Ghaznīn upwards of a century before our author composed his history, must have had a much greater knowledge of Ghūr and its people; yet this extract makes the accounts of Ghūr and of the Ghūris more puzzling than ever. That the latter were not all converted—if any were—to the Muḥammadan faith is clear, and it is also clear that up to this time they were under several petty chiefs, independent of each other, though perhaps nominally acknowledging the supremacy of the chief of Zarān, whose place of residence had been the capital of Ghūr in bygone times. But the name of this chief is the most perplexing. In Morley's edition of the text of Baihaḵī he is called Ra'īs-i-Bat, or Tab [ب restart], and, in a note, Ramīsh [رمش], and in another place War-mesh [ورسى]; A MS. in my possession has War-mesh [ورميش]. But, the passage being so important, I sent it to Professor Rieu, of the British Museum, who has been so very kind as to compare my translation with another copy of Baihaḵī in the British Museum, and, from what the Professor says, there is no doubt that the first name is War-mesh, and this is remarkable, because this very name occurs among the names of the ancestors of Amir Banji [see page 312], and occurs again at page 366. What Bat or Tab may mean it is impossible to say. It might be part of but-parast [ب restart], idol-worshipper, infidel; but that all the known copies of the original should have left part of the name out [Morley collated his edition of the text with four or five copies] is improbable. The word is not Pūshto, and there is no Afghān tribe or clan of this name. Had the Ghūris been Hindūs instead of Tājiks, we might suppose it was a corruption of Sanskrit Bhaṭ, a hero, a warrior. I dare say, however, that some one will be able to account for the name, and perhaps show to his own satisfaction that this chief must have been one of the Bhāṭi tribe of Jaṭs now in the Panjāb. We might as well have Bhāṭis in Ghūr as "a fugitive band of Crusaders" from Palestine.
At the time when his father held the sovereignty of

in the army of Ghürīs who conquered the upper provinces of India, according to

the interpreters of the poem of the Bard Chánd—but I have forgotten myself.

Bat might be Pat, and that will be surely founded upon and shown to be part

of the word Patān, and can be made “Pathan,” “Patan,” or “Pahtan,” with

the greatest ease. If it were not a dangerous practice to tamper with proper

names, I should be inclined to read, Shis.]

“The Amir now despatched an intelligent person to this chief, and two

men of Ghür of the followers of Būl-Hasan-i-Khalaf and Sher-wān were sent

along with him to act as interpreters, with a message combining threats and

hopes, as is usual on such occasions. The agent departed, and the Amir

followed in his steps. The former, and the others with him, reached the place

in question, and he delivered his message to those arrogant fellows [sic], who

manifested great fierceness and defiance, and said that the Amir had made a

great mistake in imagining that either the people of that part or that district

were similar to those he had met with and had passed through; that he had

better come there, and he would find sword, spear, and stone [rock] ready for

him. This insolent message roused the ire of Mas'ūd. He halted his troops

for the night at the foot of the mountain, arms were distributed, and, at dawn,

the force moved forward. The drums and trumpets sounded, and the soldiers

began to ascend the heights, on which the Ghūris showed themselves like so

many ants or locusts on the tracts above them, horse and foot, all well armed,

and occupying all the paths and defiles leading to it, who raised shouts and

yells, and began casting stones with their slings, at Mas'ūd's force.

*The best of it was, that that mountain was somewhat depressed, and partly

composed of earth [not very rocky] and accessible in every direction. The

troops were told off in parties, to advance by the different practicable paths,

and Mas'ūd himself kept parallel to them, for the fighting there was likely to

be severe. Būl-Hasan-i-Khalaf, and his men, were sent to the right, and

Sher-wān, with his contingent, to the left. The accursed ones evinced the

utmost daring, and pressed forward with impetuosity, particularly in front of

the Amir, and they disputed the greater part of the ground with determination.

The troops were hard pressed, and the enemy crowded towards the standards

of the Amir, and the fighting became desperate. [This reads something like

an Umbeyla expedition.] Three mounted warriors of the enemy succeeded

in getting close up to the Amir, who, perceiving them, smote one of them full

on the breast with his mace of twenty mans in weight [the man varies from

forty to eighty pounds], which laid him sprawling on his back, and prevented

his rising again; and the ghulāms attacked the other two, and hurled them

from their horses. This was enough for the Ghūris, who gave way; but they

continued, now and again, to face about and dispute the ground, until a village

[town] was reached at the foot of the mountain [on the other side], and, on the

way thither, numbers were slain and made captive. The fugitives threw

themselves into this place, which was of vast strength, and contained

numerous kūshks [here kūshk seems to mean a castle or fortified house],

after the manner of the Ghūris, and sent away to a stronghold, at a

distance in the rear, their women, children, and everything they could remove.

The unbelievers resisted obstinately up to the time of evening prayer, and

great numbers of them were killed, and numbers of Musalāms were martyred

[Mas'ūd's troops are referred to here]. When the night closed in, the un-

believers decamped, and the village [or town] was taken possession of by

the troops, who occupied themselves, throughout the night, in plundering it.
Ghūr, and the mountain tracts of Mandesh, the whole of

This tends to show that Ghūr and Mandesh were separate tracts.

"At dawn next day, the Amir again moved forward towards their [other] stronghold, two leagues distant. He had to pass through a constant succession of defiles and passes, and did not reach it till the time of afternoon prayer. They found a fortress, as they had been informed, stronger than any other in the whole of Ghūr, and no one recollected hearing that it had ever been taken by force of arms. Mas'ūd, having reached it, disposed his forces around this stronghold, and, during the whole night, preparations were made for attacking it, and the battering rams were placed in favourable positions."

I must here still further curtail this interesting account of the expedition for want of space. Suffice it to say that breaches were made and bravely assaulted and as bravely defended, the Amir being ever in front, and thereby inspiring his men with strong hearts. After four days very severe fighting, each day increasing in severity, it was carried, at last, sword in hand, the Ghūrīs defending every inch of the breach. Great numbers of them were slain and taken prisoners, but the latter were protected on making their submission, while slaves and booty to a vast amount were captured. Mas'ūd had it proclaimed that he gave up all gold, silver, slaves, and other booty to the troops, but that all arms and war matériel taken was to be brought to him. A great quantity was accordingly brought and laid before his tent, and such as was most valuable or rare he selected, and divided the rest among his soldiers. Of the prisoners, one half was made over to Bū-1-Hasan-i-Khalaf, and the other half to Sher-wān, for them to take to their own territories. Orders were also given to raze that stronghold, so that, from thenceforth, no rebel might take shelter therein. When the rest of the Ghūrīs found what had happened to the fortified town and the other stronghold, they began to fear, and became submissive and willing to pay tribute and obedience; and even War-mesh-i-Bat began to quake. He made intercession through Bū-1-Hasan-i-Khalaf and Sher-wān, and sent an envoy, tendered his submission, and increased the amount of tribute and contributions. His offers were accepted on the stipulation that every castle he [War-mesh] had taken on the side of Gharjistan should be given up. Although War-mesh ground his teeth at this, he could do nothing else than agree, and those fortresses were given up to governors of the Amir. Whilst the latter was still in Ghūr, that chief sent in his contributions and offerings; and, subsequently, when Mas'ūd reached Hirāt, War-mesh-i-Bat presented himself at the Court, was well received, had a dress of honour conferred upon him, and returned to his country along with the two other friendly chieftains.

After the capture and destruction of the fortress above referred to, Amir Mas'ūd advanced against another, a famous place, and of vast strength, named Tür [this name is doubtful, the variants are Būr and Nūr]. It was carried by storm after a week's fighting and great slaughter, and the two friendly chiefs took part in it. Mas'ūd placed a governor of his own in the place, after which he set out on his return to Hirāt. At Mār-ābd, ten farsāks [leagues] from that city, large quantities of arms and war matériel, as stipulated for by others of the Ghūrīs to avert molestation, were found already collected, together with what War-mesh-i-Bat had despatched.

The narrator, 'Abd-ul Ghaffār, then adds, that "no sovereign ever acquired such power over Ghūr as the martyr, Mas'ūd, did; for, although the first
the people had their eyes upon him, and affection towards him was instilled into their minds. Notwithstanding that his father used to act in a rebellious and contumacious manner towards Amîr Sabuk-Tigin, and his son, Sulṭân Mahmûd, Amîr Abû-'Ali at all times used to manifest his fidelity and allegiance towards the Sulṭân; and he was in the habit of writing letters containing the expression of his fealty and his affection, and despatching them to Ghaznîn, the capital.

When the contumacy and defection of his father went beyond the bounds of forbearance, Sulṭân Mahmûd brought an army against him from Ghaznîn; and, after considerable effort, the Sulṭân succeeded in securing the person of Amîr Muḥammad-i-Sûrf, and took him away along with him towards Ghaznîn, and bestowed the government of Ghûr upon Amîr Abû-'Ali, his son.

As soon as Amîr Abû-'Ali became installed in the government of Ghûr, he conferred great benefits upon the people, and directed the erection of many buildings of public utility. Masjîds, and colleges were founded in Ghûr, and he also built a Jâmi' Masjid, and liberally endowed the whole of them. He held priests and ecclesiastics in great respect, and considered it incumbent on himself to venerate hermits and recluses.

During his time, the people of the territories of Ghûr dwelt in tranquillity and repose, and his brother, Shîs, son of Muḥammad, passed his days under his protection.

When the appointed period of Amîr Abû-'Ali's dominion came to an end, and the empire of Ghaznîn [also] reverted from Mahmûd to his son, [Sulṭân] Mas'ûd, a son of Amîr Shîs, 'Abbâs by name, having attained great dignity and power, broke out into rebellion, seized his uncle, Amîr Abû-'Ali, and reduced the whole of the country of Ghûr under his own sway; and the reign of Amîr Abû-'Ali came to a termination, and he died.

Musalmâns [the 'Arabs] conquered 'Ajâm and Khurâsân, they found it impossible to enter Ghûr; and, although Sulṭân Mahmûd, on three separate occasions, by the same route of Zamîn-i-Dâwar, attacked different frontier tracts of Ghûr, yet he did not penetrate into the defiles and more difficult parts; still, it was not through inability to do so, for his designs and objects were different to those of his successor."

Y
VI. MALIK 9 'ABBĀS, SON OF SHĪṢ, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, SON OF SŪRĪ.

Amīr 'Abbās was a warlike, intrepid, and pitiless man, and endowed with great manliness, strength, and activity. When he attained the full vigour of youth, and his whole strength, he entered secretly into a compact with a party of adherents and young men, and gained them over to his own rebellious views. He then suddenly rose, and seized his uncle, Amīr Abū-'Alī, ruler of Ghūr, and imprisoned him, and appropriated the whole of his uncle's property, his treasures and his hoards, to himself. He was exceedingly determined, cruel, and tyrannical; and lawlessness and injustice were engrained in his nature.

He commenced to act illegally, and began to seize people's possessions and property, so much so that the commonalty, and his own immediate followers, were quite miserable, and became perfectly helpless in his hands, and to such degree, that, for a period of seven years during his reign, no animal—such as the horse, camel, cow, or sheep—brought forth young, and the rain from the heavens ceased to fall; and, according to one story, women also did not bear children, through the ill-luck consequent on his tyranny.

The chronicler thus states, that he possessed two fine [and powerful] dogs, which were constantly kept fastened by heavy chains, and iron collars round their necks. One of these dogs had been named Ibrāhim of Ghaznīn, and the other, 'Abbās of Ghūr. These animals used constantly to be brought before him, and the chains to be removed from them, and they were set to fight together. Whenever the dog bearing his own name overcame the other, that day Amīr 'Abbās would make great rejoicings, and bestow liberal presents; but, on days when the dog named Ibrāhim of Ghaznīn gained the advantage [over his antagonist], he would become infuriated, and greatly ill-treat and torment people, and not a single person among his favourites and attendants dared to say anything to him.

With all this tyranny and oppression, however, he was

9 Two copies of the text style him Amīr-ul-Kāmil—the perfect or thorough Amīr.
gifted with a profound knowledge of astrology. He had taken great pains with respect to that science, and had shown vast perseverance and assiduity in its acquirement, and had gained a deep knowledge of it. In the country of Mandesh, in the Khittah [district] of Sangah, the original fortress which Buştâm-i-Zuḥāḳ had founded, he [Amir 'Abbās] directed should be entirely reconstructed; and skilful artisans were obtained from parts around [for the purpose]. The walls, after the manner of a parapet, were carried from that castle, on two sides, to the strong ground on the summit of the mountain of Zār-i-Margh; and, at the foot of that mountain, on a knoll, a lofty Kasr [castle] was directed to be raised, with twelve towers; and in every tower, in likeness to the zodiacal circles in the firmament, there were thirty openings—there were six towers towards the east and north, and six others towards the west and south—marked out; and these were so arranged that, every day, the sun would shine through one of those openings approximate to the position of its rise. By this means he used to know in what degree of what sign of the zodiac the sun was on that particular day; and this performance indicates the proficiency and knowledge which Amir 'Abbās had attained in the science of astrology.

During his reign, likewise, the Kasrs of Ghūr were constructed, and plenty reigned throughout the country; but, as people now abominated him for his excessive tyranny,
oppression, and injustice, and the empire of Ghaznin, and throne of sovereignty, had passed to Sultān Razzi-ud-Din, Ibrahīm, son of Mas'ūd, a party of the most powerful and eminent men, and the nobles of Ghūr, despatched letters to Ghaznin, imploring the Sultān's assistance.

In conformity with these solicitations, Sultān Ibrahīm marched a large army into Ghūr; and, when he reached it, the whole of the forces of Ghūr went over to that monarch, and they delivered Amir 'Abbas into the Sultān's hands. He commanded that Amir 'Abbās should be placed in confinement, and he took him away to Ghaznin, and conferred the territory of Ghūr upon his son, Amir Muḥammad.

VII. AMĪR MUḤAMMAD, SON OF 'ABBĀS.

When Sultān Ibrahīm, son of Maš'ūd, seized Amir 'Abbās, and sent him away to Ghaznin, at the solicitations of the chief personages and eminent men of Ghūr, he made over the country to Amir Muḥammad-i-'Abbās.

He was endowed with great good nature, was of exceeding amiability of heart, and of excellent disposition, most just, conscientious, and merciful, a patron of the learned, an impartial judge, and a cherisher of the weak and helpless. In the place of every one of the odious and hateful proclivities towards inhumanity and tyranny which were in his father, the disposition of the son was implanted with a thousand amiable and admirable qualities.

3 These operations are not mentioned by other authors; but a few notice, very briefly, that Amir 'Abbās carried on hostilities with Sultān Ibrahīm.

4 This too is pretty good proof, by our author's own account, that the Ghūrs were subject to the Sultāns of Ghaznin; but, as the power of the latter declined, consequent on the rise of the Saljūks, and after Maš'ūd-i-Karīm's death, the Ghūrs acquired more power. See top of next page.

5 Which is impossible, if what other writers state as to Husain, son of Sām, having been saved from shipwreck, and Ibrahīm's son, Maš'ūd-i-Karīm, having conferred the chieftainship on him, be taken into consideration. Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, was taken prisoner in 400 H., or, according to some accounts, in 401 H. From that time, up to 493 H., when Maš'ūd-i-Karīm conferred the fief of the tributary province of Ghūr upon Husain, son of Sām, son of Hasan, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, none of this family held independent sway over Ghūr. As already shown from the account of Maš'ūd the Martyr's expedition into it, it was held by several petty chiefs independent of each other. See note 7, page 321.
When the territory of Ghūr was assigned to Amir Muḥammad, the whole of the grandees, the chiefs, and most distinguished personages of the country, submitted to his authority; and, to the best of his ability and power, he began to labour and study to revive and restore the observances of goodness and utility, and the laws and usages of benevolence, beneficence, and justice. He used to render homage to the Sultāns of Ghaznin with heartiness and loyalty, and pay them submission and vassalage, and used to despatch the fixed tribute regularly.

During his reign the gates of repose and tranquillity were opened to the people of Ghūr, and they all passed their days in the enjoyment of peace and security; happiness and plenty reigned; and his country, his people, and his retainers dwelt for a long while in the enjoyment of competency and affluence, up to the period when he passed away and was received into the mercy of God.

VIII. MALIK ḤUSAYN, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, SON OF 'ABBĀS.

Malik Ḥusayn, the grandfather of the great Sultāns of Ghūr, was a just Amir, high-principled, and of handsome countenance. The proofs of his goodness, equity, clemency, and beneficence were sufficiently obvious and manifest to the inhabitants of Ghūr.

Such factions as were in the habit of acting contumaciously he used to occupy himself in chastising and overthrowing, and considered it incumbent on himself to punish severely the disaffected and seditious. The tribes of the territory of Ghūr, having sprung from families of 'Arabs, and having been nurtured, and grown up, in a

---

6 According to the statements of other authors given in note 7, page 321, the grandfather of the Sultāns of Ghūr, that is to say, of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, and his brothers, was Ḥusayn, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, who was let down from the tower by his father, and who had a son, Ḥusayn, the IXth chief mentioned by our author. But, according to the other tradition quoted by Rażzaat-uṣ-Ṣafā, Ḥabīb-us-Siyār, and other histories, in the same note, their grandfather would be Sām, son of Ḥasan, grandson of Sūrī, who was drowned. See note 4, page 335, in which it is stated that "Ḵusayn, son of Sām, of the race of Sūrī," was taken captive by Sultān Sanjār in 501 H.

7 See note 4, page 320. The Afghāns have, certainly, as well as other mountain tribes, behaved at all times in the manner mentioned here, but so
mountainous tract of country, obstinacy, turbulence, and contumacy were implanted in the constitutions and characters of the whole of the Ghūrīān tribes. Feuds and contentions would continually arise of one tribe against another, and conflicts constantly ensue. Every year one district or another of the territory of Ghūr would manifest antagonism [to the constituted authority] and withhold the payment of the regulated amount of revenue; and up to [near] this present time, when the dominion of the Ghūrīān Sulṭāns came to its termination, the state of these peoples continued to be seen and witnessed [after the same fashion].

Upon one occasion, during the time of Malik Ḫūṭb-ud-Din, Hasan, a tribe who dwelt in Tak-āb* of the territory of Wajiristān, rose in rebellion. Malik Ḫūṭb-ud-Din, with his followers and the chiefs of Ghūr, appeared at the foot of that Kūshk and the stronghold of that faction, and summoned them to surrender. They refused to submit, and commenced hostilities. Unexpectedly, by destiny’s decree, an arrow from the bow of fate came from the rebels and struck Malik Ḫūṭb-ud-Din in the eye, and, as it had wounded a mortal part, he died from the injury. His retainers and followers, immediately on seeing the effect of that arrow’s wound, with the utmost daring, and putting forth all their energy, attacked and carried the Kūshk and stronghold by storm, and put the whole of the rebels to the sword, and that place was completely destroyed. Up

have the people styled Kohistānīs, who inhabit the valleys immediately north of Kābul, and also the Balūchīs, and they [the latter] have not yet, I believe, been quite made Paṭāns of, although some progress has been made towards it. Such conduct seems inherent in all mountain races, whether in the east or in the west.

* There is a river and valley of Tag-āo, or Tag-āb, in Afghanistān, but to them cannot possibly be referred the locality indicated here, for they are some sixty miles to the eastward of Kābul. I think the translation of this compound word may throw some light on its whereabouts. The word ‘‘Tak-āb,’’ or ‘‘Tag-āb,’’ both of which forms are correct, also the forms in use among natives of those parts—Tak-āo and Tag-āo, and Āb-i-Tang—are described by an old author as ‘‘ground furrowed by water [a ravine or series of ravines], a defile, a valley between two mountains, and ground, whether in a valley or not, in which, here and there, water collects and remains, and in some places flows, and in which there is pasture and much verdure. They are also used for the name of a territory, and there is a small district so named.’’ I think the place alluded to by our author is not far from Āb-Istādah, but more to the west. Wajiristān has been often mentioned in the account of the Ghaznavīds.
to the time of the last of the Sulṭāns of Ghūr, and the termination of the sovereignty of the Shansabānīs, no king would grant permission for the restoration of that Kūshḵ, its equipments, and the suburbs of that place, with the exception of the Kūshḵ of Amir Kharnak, which was in that Āb-i-Tang, for his ancestors had always been obedient.

When Kuṭb-ud-Din, Ḥasan, departed this life, his son, Amir Ḥusain, succeeded him.

IX. MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN, ABŪ-USARTĀṬAIN,
SON OF KUṬB-UD-DĪN AL-ḤASAN.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, was a sovereign upright, of handsome countenance, devout, and endowed with all good qualities, and distinguished for his many virtues. During the period of his rule, the territory of Ghūr and the Bilād-i-Jībāl [mountain country] were populous and prosperous; and the tribes and inhabitants of those tracts enjoyed ease and content, and, under his protection, lived in safety and security. Priests, recluses, and holy men, and the whole of the people, without interruption, attained the fulfilment of their requirements and desires in an abundant degree.

The Almighty God blessed his devoutness and good disposition by bestowing upon him seven sons, the fame of whose sovereignty and dominion became published throughout the seven climates of the world. Of these sons four attained unto empire and dominion; and from them descended sons of renown in the world, who became

---

9 Discrepancy more or less exists among all the copies of the original here. The oldest and most trustworthy are as above. The Paris copies too are defective, and in one copy the last part of this sentence runs:—“No sovereign set about the restoration of that Kūshḵ, except Amir Kharnak, who was in the neighbourhood of that Āb-i-Tang, and those parts were obedient to him.”

1 One of the oldest copies has “Abū-l-Mulḵ” here, instead of Abū-USARTAṬAIN.

2 See note 4, page 320, and note 4, page 332. 'Izz-ud-Dīn, the title, signifies “Glory, &c., of the Faith,” but “'A'is-ud-Dīn” nothing, for it is meaningless. Ḥusain also is his correct name, confirmed by numerous other authors, and Ḥasan was his father’s name, as our author states.

3 Ghūr is mountainous enough, surely, as well as the Bilād-i-Jibāl. From our author’s statement, however, they are separate tracts of country.
sovereign princes, as will be subsequently narrated and recorded.

This Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, was firmly attached to and in amity with, the Sanjari dynasty and the Saljuki sovereignty; and every year he used to despatch to the court of Sultan Sanjar such things as had been customary and established, such as armour, coats of mail, steel caps, and other equipments, and war material. There is also

4 His "attachment to the Sanjar dynast" may also easily be accounted for. In 501 H., Sultan Sanjar, whilst in charge of Khurasan, nine years before he became supreme ruler of the Saljuk empire, fought a battle with the Malikis [here a further proof that there were several petty chiefs] of Ghur, who were of the race of Suri, and Husain [Izz-ud-Din, Husain, of our author], son of Sâm, was made prisoner. Sultan Sanjar ordered him to be put to death; but, at the intercession of the celebrated Shaikh Ahmad, Ghazzali, the Sultan of Mashaikh, as he is styled, he was spared, and set free. For two years he used to light the fires of the cooks of the Sultan's army, until one day, the Amir of the troops of Khurasan, 'Imad-ud-Daulah, Kîmây, chanced to meet with him. He took compassion on Husain, and represented his case to the Sultan, who directed that Husain should be brought to his presence. When he was admitted, he kissed the ground of the Sultan's court. Sanjar said to him:—"I understand that thou hast neither wealth nor power left to thee, notwithstanding thou wast a chief and leader. Has neither kindliness nor sympathy been left to thee?" Husain replied:—"When this head was my own head, I had the good fortune to be attended by a thousand servants, but now that it belongs to thee, thou keepest me thus wretched and abject."

Rashid-ud-Din, who also relates this anecdote [but, strange to say, under the account of his son, 'Ald-ud-Din, although he calls him Husain too, and leaves out all mention of the first part of the name, 'Ald-ud-Din], says that Husain wandered about the Sultan's camp for two years as a mendicant [our author would scorn to relate this, as it did not tend to the glorification of the Ghiris, and their slaves, his patrons], when "one day Amir Kîmây was passing the shop of a cook, he chanced to notice Husain, who was attending the fire, and watching the cook's pot." When admitted to the presence of the Sultan, Rashid-ud-Din says the Sultan thus addressed Husain:—"I gather that thou hast neither wealth nor power left to thee: hast thou not the means and the power of keeping one head and face clean?" The rest of the anecdote agrees with Faših-I, related above.

Sultan Sanjar was touched, took pity on him, pardoned him, and sent him back to his native country attended by a large following; and to the end of his days Husain paid obedience to that monarch.

Faših-I further states that "Husain, son of Sâm, who escaped drowning, and the sword of the executioner," only died in 545 H. He ruled that territory justly; and, up to his time even, great numbers of the inhabitants of the mountain tracts of Ghur had not been converted to Islam, but were made converts of by him. This Husain, the same chronicler states, was succeeded by his son, 'Ald-ud-Din, Husain, in that same year. For further particulars, see under 'Ald-ud-Din, note 3, pages 347 to 350.

=Ghur, and mountain tracts around, appear to have been famous for the manufacture of arms and armour; and iron mines must have been worked therein.
a remarkably fine breed of dogs in Ghür, so powerful that, in frame and strength, every one of them is a match for a lion. A number of this breed of dogs, with valuable collars round their necks, Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, was in the habit of sending to the Sultan's [Sanjar's] presence; and he used to receive in return dresses of honour and many valuable presents.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din likewise was wont to keep on terms of amity and friendship with the Sultans of Ghaznin; and for a considerable length of time the government of the territory of Ghür was held by him up to the period when he died.

He had [as before stated] seven sons, the eldest of whom was Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, of Bamiyan, but an account of whom will be contained in another chapter on the Sultans of Bamiyan, which will commence with a mention of him, and be therein recorded.

The names of his sons are as follow:—Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, Amir of Bamiyan and Tukharistan; Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, Amir of Ghūr and Firūz-koh; Malik-ul-Jībāl, Kūtb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Amir of Ghūr, and Firūz-koh; Sultan Saif-ud-Din, Sūrf, sovereign of Ghūr and Ghaznin; Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, sovereign of Ghūr, Ghaznin, and Bamiyan; Malik Shihāb-ud-Din,

6 This fine breed of dogs, or rather one very similar, still exists among the Ghulzī tribe of Afghāns, who trace their descent on the father's side only from the son of a chief of Ghūr, whom their traditions style Shāh Husain; but he fled from Ghūr, and took shelter among the Afghāns at a much earlier period, in the time of the Khalifah, 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Mirwān, who reigned from 66 H. to 86 H. He was adopted by an Afghan Shaikh; but the names of his ancestry, as mentioned by the Afghan historians, do not agree with those mentioned by our author. This Shāh Husain's grandfather, according to them, was forty-ninth in descent from Zuḥāk. Had not the names and the dates been so very different, I should have been inclined to consider Shāh Husain of the Ghalzis, and the Husain of others, who was saved from shipwreck, and received the feif of Ghūr from Mas'ud-i-Karīm, as one and the same person.

7 Sultan Mas'ud conferred the sovereignty upon 'Izz-ud-Dīn Husain in 493 H., the year after the decease of his own father, Sultan Ibrāhim. It is no wonder he kept on good terms with his suzerains. Faṣīḥ-ī says he died in 545 H., and that this was the same Husain, son of Sām, and one of the kindred of Muḥammad, son of Sūrf. See preceding page, note 4. It is strange, but several of the best copies of the text have "Sultāns of Ghūr and Ghaznin" here.

8 In two copies he is here styled Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn-i-Sām.
Muḥammad, Kharnak, Malik of Madīn of Ghūr; and Malik Shuṣ̱a'-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Amīr of Jarāmās of Ghūr.

X. MALIK-UL-JĪBAL, KUṬB-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF [ʿIZZ-UD-DĪN] AL-ḤUSAIN.

Of the seven sons of Malik ʿIzz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, the eldest among them all was Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Masʿūd, of Bāmīān, mention of whom will be made in the other chapter [referred to previously], the foundation of the dynasty of the Sultāns of Bāmīān dating from the rise of his power. His mother was a Turkī handmaid; and after him, in succession [in age], came the Malik-ul-Jībal [the Lord of the Mountains], Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. His mother was a woman who was of no high descent, and was the Hajībah [Chamberlain] and attendant of the mother of the other

9 Some copies have Ḥarmās, and some Barmās.
1 This was the proper place to have separated these dynasties, as this chief was the first of the rulers of Ghūr and Ffrūz-koh after the patrimony had been divided. This has been done by other writers, but they make Kūṭb-ud-Dīn the first of the dynasty of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and his brother, Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, second. Had our author given an account of Saif-ud-Dīn second, as in the order of the events, instead of last, he would have saved his readers some perplexity and trouble.
2 So far, other writers agree pretty well with our author, but here considerable difference arises. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, quoting other authors, says, that Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who is known as the Malik-ul-Jībal [Lord of the Mountains], was sent for by Bahrām Shāh of Ghaznīn—after he had made an accommodation with the sons of ʿIzz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain—and that he made him his son-in-law; but, through his having been suspected of a crime, he was removed by poison. This is said to have been the first enmity that arose between the Ghaznawīs and the Ghūrs, but such is not correct, as already shown. Jahān-Ārā agrees with the above, however, with this exception, that, in the latter, it is stated that he, the Malik-ul-Jībal, came from Ghūr and presented himself at the Court of Bahrām Shāh. The Tarikh-i-Ibrāhīmī, and some others, however, agree more with our author's statement, and say, that Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, on the death of his father, ʿIzz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, succeeded to the dominion of Ghūr, and divided the patrimony among his brothers, one of whom [Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad] became irritated with his brothers, and went to the Court of Bahrām Shāh, who put him to death for some reason; and this caused enmity between the two houses. The Rauzat-us-Safā and some others, however, consider this statement very weak, and quote the tradition which I have already given at page 321, note 7, and state, that, after the death of Ḥusain, enmity arose between his descendants and Bahrām Shāh of Ghaznīn, and hostilities took place between them upon several occasions, which will be subsequently referred to.
sons, the Sultāns, namely, Sultān Sūrī; Sultān Bahā-ud-Din, Sām; Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din,Ḥusain; Amir [Shihāb-ud-Din] Muḥammad; and Amir [Shuja'-ud-Din] 'Ali⁴, the other sons of Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Al-Ḥusain.

When Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, who was the father of the Sultāns, departed this life, Sultān [Saif-ud-Din] Sūrī, in succession to his father, ascended the throne⁵ and divided his father's dominions among his brothers. An account of Sultān Sūrī will, please God, be given in the chapter on the Sultāns of Ghaznīn.

In this division, the territory of Warshādah⁶ was assigned to the Malik-ul-Jibāl, Kūtb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, and there he fixed his seat of government. Subsequently, it so happened, that he had to seek for a [suitable] place in which to found a strong fortress and a handsome city, such as would be suitable to his dignity. He despatched persons on whom he could depend into the parts adjacent, until [at length] his opinion led him to fix upon the position of Fīruz-koh, and he founded the fortress and city of Fīruz-koh⁷.

Sultān Sūrī made the fortress and town of Iṣṭiḥā his capital, and to Malik Nāṣir'-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Mādīn

---

³ Styled Sultān without reason: Malik is his correct title, as given at the head of this notice in the copies of the text.
⁴ These two last, here styled Amīrs, are the sixth and seventh sons mentioned over leaf, viz. Malik Shihāh-ud-Dīn [called Nāṣir-ud-Dīn subsequently], Muḥammad, and Malik Shuja'-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, the XIIth and XIIIth of the family.
⁵ See note ⁴, page 336.
⁶ Some few copies have Warshad, and Warshar.
⁷ In several other places our author mentions "the territory of Ghūr and the Bilād-ul-Jibāl," thus indicating that they were separate; and yet Fīruz-koh was the capital of the Bilād-ul-Jibāl, and in his account of the division of their father, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain's, territory, and the names of the districts, the whole appear included in Ghūr, of which Fīruz-koh was the capital! The mention of the places shows the extent of the territory held by these chiefs—the mighty monarchs of our author. It is a curious fact, and a very important one, that the name of Kandahār never once occurs in our author's work. It is not strange, however, because Kandahār is a comparatively modern place, and is not mentioned by contemporary writers, under that name at least, until very many years after our author's time. Tradition says that Kandahār stands a few miles east of an ancient city named Waihind; and Masson also refers to it, but calls it Vaihund. Can this be the place the idol-temple of which fell on the night of Mahmiid of Ghaznīn's birth?
⁸ Other old writers call this place "Istīḥā, which is the name of one of the mountains of the range between Ghaznīn and Hirāt," and give the vowel points. The Burhān-i-Kāṭī also confirms it.
⁹ There is no son of this name among those previously mentioned.
was given. Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, had the district of Sangah, which was the capital of Mandesh, assigned to him; and the district and castle of Wajiah¹ were made over to Sūltān 'Alā-ud-Dīn; and the probability is that the territory of Kasī [or Kasha] was fixed upon for Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn.

By heaven's decree, however, contention arose between the Malik-ul-Jibāl [Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad], who was at Fīruz-koh, and the other brothers; and the Malik-ul-Jibāl became indignant with his brothers, and withdrew to Ghaznīn; and it was [at this time] the reign of Bahrām Shāh. This Malik-ul-Jibāl was endowed with great beauty and comeliness, and urbanity to perfection. When he reached Ghaznīn he opened the hand of munificence and liberality; and affection for him, according to the saying, "Man is the servant of kindliness," began to take root in people's hearts, and became firmly established. The inhabitants of Ghaznīn entertained a great liking for him, but a number of envious persons set upon him, and had it represented to Bahrām Shāh [the Malik-ul-Jibāl] was, with treacherous eyes, regarding that sovereign's haram [some female or females of his family], and was expending his property liberally, with the object of rising against him [Bahrām Shāh]. The latter issued commands to administer to him, secretly, poisoned sharbat [which was done], and he died; and they, moreover, buried him at Ghaznīn. On this account, enmity and hatred arose between the Mahmūdi family, and the family of Shansabī, and the race of Zuhāk².

When the account of what had befallen Kuṭb-ud-Dīn reached Sūltān Sūrī's hearing, he marched an army to Ghaznīn and took that country, as will be hereafter recorded, since, although this was the place for mentioning bably, Shihāb-ud-Dīn is meant, or, otherwise, Shihāb is a mistake for Nāṣīr; but there is a Malik Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Muḥammad, mentioned immediately after Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, at page 343, which see.

¹ One of the Paris copies has بیست دختر—the Maiden's Castle—but the majority, including the oldest copies, have دختر and some have دختر, which a copyist may have read دختر. One copy has دختر.⁴

² Their enmity, according to other authors, appears to have had a different origin. See under 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, page 347.

³ All the copies collated agree with regard to this part of the sentence—"the race of Shansabī and the race of Zuhāk."

⁴ Four different verbs are used in the different copies of the text in this sentence, although the signification conveyed is much the same.
THE SHANSAÍNIAH DYNASTY OF GHÚR.

and recording the proceedings of Sultan Siri, still, as Sultan Siri was the first person of this family who assumed the name of Sultan, and the first to ascend the throne of Ghaznin, an account of him will, please God, be given in another chapter, at the beginning of the history of the Sultáns of Ghaznin.

XI. SULTÁN BAHA-UD-DÍN, SÁM, SON OF 'IZZ-UD-DÍN, AL-ḤUSAIN.

When the Malik-ul-Jibál retired to Ghaznin [as previously related], and left the buildings of the city of Firúz-koh in an unfinished state, Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, came from [the territory of] Sangah to Firúz-koh, and went on with the building of the city and fortification, and brought to completion those edifices and the royal palaces. He also commanded the erection of the fortresses of Ghúr, and contracted alliance and entered into amity with the Shárs of Gharjistán. He ascended the throne of Firúz-koh in the year 544 H. When the construction of the capital of Firúz-koh was completed through his propitious auspices, he gave directions for the construction of four strong fortresses on the confines of the territory of Ghúr, Garmsir, Gharjistán, and the mountain tract of Hirát, and the Kašr

In some copies the names of his children follow immediately after his name and title.

* The Shárs of Gharjistán, who had for many years acknowledged the suzerainty of the Sámníís, had submitted to the suzerainty of Sulțán Mahmúd as early as 389 H. The Shár, Abú Naṣr, son of the Shár, Ráshíd, and Abú Naṣr's son, the Shár, Abú Muḥammad, acknowledged the Sulțán's suzerainty in that year, and read the khutbah for him, and impressed his name and titles upon their coin. In 405 H. the Shár, Abú Naṣr, who had become disaffected, was seized and imprisoned by Maḥmúd's command—his father, Ráshíd, is said to have solicited protection some time before, and it was granted ['Utba agrees, and says "he went into retirement "]; and he had presented himself at Court. The Sulțán purchased from him [the Shár] his possessions in Gharjistán, and had made over the price in money to him. This was one hundred and forty-six years before the time our author says Baha-ud-Dín, Sam, became ruler. The Shár, Abú Naṣr, died in prison, at Hirát, in 406 H., after which the Shárs are not mentioned by other writers.

7 Bahá-ud-Dín died in 544 H., the same year in which he succeeded. His brother, Sürí, had been put to death, and Bahám Sháh of Ghaznin had died the previous year. Our author's mode of arrangement here causes confusion. Bahá-ud-Dín is the third of the dynasty of Ghúr and Ghaznin, and only succeeded after Saif-ud-Dín had been put to death. See also the Kitáb-al-Yamání of Al-ʻUtba.
of Kajūrān in the district of Garmsīr and Ghūr, the fortress of Sher-Sang in the mountains of Hirāt, and that of Bindār [or Pindār], in the hills of Gharjistān, and Fīwār, between Gharjistān and Fāras [or Bāras].

After the martyrdom of [Saif-ud-Dīn], Sūrī [yet to be mentioned], as Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn was the eldest of the five brothers [styled Sulṭāns], the sovereignty of the kingdom of Ghūr devolved upon him. The Malikah of Kidān, who was also of Shansabānī lineage, the daughter of Malik Badr-ud-Dīn of Kidān, was married to him, and Almighty God blessed him with two sons and three daughters by that Malikah of high descent. The sons were Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and Sulṭān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām—the Almighty illumine them!—the amplitude of whose dominions comprehended the eastern quarter of the world, and the fame of whose expeditions against infidels, whose holy wars, the energy and vigour of whose rule, justice, and beneficence will continue imperishable and manifest on the outspread world until the latest revolutions of time. Some of those glorious actions and annals in the account of each of them, by way of ensample, will, please God, be subsequently recorded.

Of the daughters, one was the Malikah-i-Jahan, mother of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangī; the second, the Hurrah-i-Jalālī, mother of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, son of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Masʿūd, of Bāmlān; and the third daughter was the Malikah-i-Khurāsān, the mother of Alb-Arsalan-i-Ghāzī, son of Malik Қazīl-Arsalān, Saljūḵī, the brother’s son of Sulṭān Sanjar.

When the account of the affliction and degradation which had befallen Sulṭān Sūrī at Ghaznī, through the hostility and perfidy of the retainers of the Maḥmūdī dynasty, reached the hearing of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, he came to the determination of wreaking vengeance upon the inhabitants of Ghaznī, through the hostility and perfidy of the retainers of the Maḥmūdī dynasty, reached the hearing of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, he came to the determination of wreaking vengeance upon the inhabitants of Ghaznī, and, without occupying himself

8 Sām was not his name, nor the name of his brother; neither does our author mean that such should be supposed; but some translators have supposed it was the son’s name instead of the father’s.
9 Malikah-i-Jībāl in nearly every copy, but the above is correct.
1 Other authors style him Alb-i-Ghāzī only. He held the fief of Hirāt subject to the Ghūrī Sulṭān upon one of the occasions when Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, invested it. See note 9, page 257.
in mourning ceremonies for his brothers, he assembled the forces of Ghūr, and of the parts and tracts around, and on the confines of it, and of the hill-tracts ofJarūm and Gharjistān; and, having arranged and ordered them, he turned his face towards Ghaznin in order to accomplish that important matter. After great preparation, and being fully equipped, he moved forward, and a large army marched under his standards. When he reached the district of Kidān, excessive anxiety and grief for the death of his brothers, and the strength of his feelings, brought on an attack of illness, and there [at Kidān] he died.

In the same manner as Sultan Siri, at the time of his proceeding against and capturing Ghaznin, had entrusted the capital of the kingdom of Ghūr, and had made over the government of that territory to him, Sultan Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, the latter, at this time, when about to march an army himself against Ghaznin, assigned the capital of Ghūr, and the rule over the territory of the Jibāl [mountain tracts] to Sultan 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain-i-Jahān-soz [his brother], and consigned to him his children, dependents, Amīrs, property, and effects.

When Bahā-ud-Dīn died at Kidān, and that circumstance came to the hearing of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, he, likewise, without occupying himself in mourning ceremonies, assembled together the forces with all celerity, and set out towards Ghaznin.

XII. MALIK SHIHĀB-UD-DĪN*, MUḤAMMAD, [KHARNAK,] SON OF AL-ḤUSAIN, MALIK OF MĀDĪN OF GHūR.

Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Kharnak, was the brother of the Sultāns; and the district of Mādīn, which

* His two brothers, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and Saīf-ud-Dīn, Sūrī.
* He is said to have died of small-pox, but the word used also signifies a tumour, and the like. Raʿṣāṭ-us-Ṣafā and some others say Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, died of phrensy, or inflammation of the brain, on the way back to Ghūr, after the taking of Ghaznin by 'Ala-ud-Dīn, and his brother, Saīf-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, who was left there as ruler! See note 3, page 347.
4 Here again some copies of the text use different verbs to express the same meaning.
* He is called Nāṣir-ud-Dīn repeatedly in most of the copies of the text, and in some, although the heading is written Shihāb-ud-Dīn, he is styled
was his territory, and is a tract of country on one of the confines of Ghūr, had been assigned to him by the mutual consent of his brothers, after the decease of their father.

He had two sons, one of whom was Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Ḥusain, whom they placed upon the throne, at the capital, Firūz-koh, during the absence of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Ḥusain, in Khurāsān, and his attendance at the Court of Sultan Sanjar, an account of whom will be hereafter recorded. The second son was Malik Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, who, after his father's death, succeeded him in the possession of the district of Mādin. This Malik Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, had three children, one a daughter, and two sons, and the daughter was older than the sons. She was married to the holy warrior and martyr, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām; and by her that conquering Sultan likewise had a daughter who died a maid, and whose tomb is at the capital city, Ghaznīn.

Of those two sons of Malik Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, one was Malik Shihāb-ud-Din, 'Alī, of Mādin, who was martyred by the Turks of Khwārazm during the period of their domination. The second son was Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Abū-Bikr; and the writer of this book, in the year 618 H., waited upon him in the territory of Kaziw [or Gaziw] and Timrān, and witnessed numerous marks of urbanity and generosity from him. At that period the author had espoused a daughter of one of the great men and a kinsman of his own. That was in the period of his first manhood, and in that same year in which Chingez Khān, the

Nāṣir-ud-Din in the account of him. As 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, had no son of this name, and as all the copies agree in the list of the seven sons, as to Shihāb, I have adopted that reading here, which is certainly correct. This Shihāb-ud-Dīn had a son named Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, and hence the mistake may have arisen.

6 His captivity in fact, but this our author did not consider necessary to mention. See note 5, page 358.

7 Not to be confounded with 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jahān-soz's son, nor 'Alā-ud-Dīn's brother. There are three of his title in all.

8 Several copies have "died in her infancy." This can scarcely be correct, as it may be doubted whether the tomb of an infant would have been mentioned.

9 See note 1, page 274.

1 A few copies have كاریو [Karīw or Gariw], and others كاریو and كاریو.

2 "Was about to espouse" in a few copies; but if he had not espoused this wife he would not probably have required a horse.
accursed, crossed the Jiḥūn into Khurāsān, and was bent upon marching to Ghaznin. In short, the author memorialized Malik Nāşir-ud-Din, Abū-Bikr, for a horse, and, in verse, represented the matter of his marriage with one of his own kinswomen for that Malik's information. In reply to that versified narrative, he composed this quatrain, and with his own august hand wrote it on the back of the story, and put it into the author's hands:

"God willing, affliction will have departed from thy heart,
And that pearl of great price will have been by thee bored.
The horse thou hast solicited of me requires no apology.
With the horse, much more apology might be made."

Malik Nāşir-ud-Din, Abū-Bikr, sent his humble servant a dun-coloured horse of three years' old, ready saddled and caparisoned—the Almighty reward him for it!

That Malik-zādah, after the calamities which befell Ghaznin and Ghūr, came to the city of Dihlī, and presented himself at the Court of the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din [I-yal-timish], and was received by him with honour and kindness, and, from the Maliks and other nobles, he received deference and respect.

Malik Nāşir-ud-Din, Abū-Bikr, died at the city of Dihlī in the year 620 H.

XIII. MALIK SHUJĀ'-UD-DĪN, ABI-'ALĪ, SON OF AL-ḤUSAIN, [SON OF SĀM], SON OF AL-ḤASAN, SHANSABI.

Malik Shuja'-ud-Din, Abi-'Ali, son of Al-Ḥusain, son of Al-Ḥasan, was removed from this world in his early manhood, and his existence terminated whilst he was yet in the flower of his youth. A son survived him, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn,

3 A virgin is styled an "unbored pearl."
4 This somewhat obscure line may imply that the donor might have made apologies because the present was not more valuable.
5 At the hands of the Mughals.
6 From the heading the reader would suppose this article to have contained an account of Shuja'-ud-Dīn; but he is finished in two or three lines, and the article contains an account of his son and grandson. Neither of these two brothers, Shihāb-ud-Dīn, nor Shuja'-ud-Dīn, can be considered as belonging to the dynasty any more than the whole of the race, as they never held overegn power. They are not named even, separately, by other writers.
Abū-'Alī; and the brothers [of Shujā'-ud-Din, Abī 'Alī?] with one accord, when dividing the dominions of Ghūr, had invested him [Shujā'-ud-Din] with the district of Jarmās. When he died, they conferred the district of Jarmās upon his son, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Abū-'Alī.

The Malik-ul-Jibāl, Kutb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who had been martyred at Ghaznin, had left a daughter, and she was given to 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Abū-'Alī, in marriage; and, after that noble lady was espoused by him, the Almighty blessed them with a son, who had the good fortune of becoming both a Ḥājī [a pilgrim] and a holy warrior, namely, Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Pearl of Ghūr, and it happened in this wise:—When [his father] Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Abū-'Alī, died, and his son grew up, the Almighty bestowed such grace upon his mother that she decided upon undertaking a journey to the Kiblah, and up to that period not one of the Maliks of Ghūr had attained that felicity.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, in attendance upon his mother, was proceeding on the journey to the holy places by way of Hirāt, Khurāsān, and Nishāpūr. At that time Sultan Takish, Khvārazm Shāh, was at Nishāpūr, and Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, in the habit of a Sayyid, with his hair twisted into two long ringlets, presented himself at the Court of that Sultan, and had the happiness of being permitted to kiss Sultan Takish’s hand.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn [in the company of his mother] had the happiness of performing the orthodox pilgrimage with great reverence, and with the observance of all the rites and ceremonies. He gave directions to build a Khān-kāh [chapel] at Makkah, and provided all the necessary funds for raising the structure, and left trustworthy persons of his own to see it carried out.

He also returned, along with his mother, to the territory

7 Abū, or Abī-‘Alī: either is correct.
8 Our author’s mode of narration tends to confuse. This 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Abū-'Alī, is the father of Ziyā-ud-Dīn, afterwards styled 'Alā-ud-Dīn. See note 8, page 394, and note 9, page 394.
9 He accompanied his second cousin, Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, on his campaign against Rae Pathora of Ajmir. See page 125.
10 These words, Ḥūr, occur again in the list of Maliks at the end of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn’s reign, and in some other places.
of Ghūr; and she acquired the name of the Malikah-i-Hāji [the Pilgrim Princess], and founded a great number of masjids, pulpits, and colleges in the Ghūriān country. May they both become acceptable in the sight of Almighty God!

XIV. SULTĀN ’ALĀ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN, SON OF [IZZ-UD- DĪN,] AL-ḤUSAIN, SON OF SĀM, SON OF AL-ḤASAN.

When Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sām, son of [Izz-ud-Din,] Al-Ḥusain, who was marching an army against Ghaznin,

2 Of all the persons mentioned in Oriental history, greater discrepancy occurs with respect to ’Alā-ud-Dīn, Jahān-sor’s name and proceedings, probably, than regarding any other man.

Some authors call him Ḥasan, son of Ḥusain; some [but these authors are but two] Ḥusain, son of Ḥasan; some, Ḥusain, son of Ḥusain, son of Ḥasan, son of Sām; others copy our author, while others again, and they seem most correct—they cemtainly are as to his own and his father’s name—style him ’Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of [Izz-ud-Dīn,] Al-Ḥusain, son of Sām, son of Ḥasan [Ṣūrī’s grandson], son of Muḥammād, son of Sūrī.

With respect to his rise to power, the different accounts [I quote here from sixteen authors] may be classed under no less than five heads.

The first is, that, after Sultan Bahram of Ghaznin had been put in possession of the throne by his maternal uncle, Sulṭān Ṣanjar, distrust arose between them [Ṣanjar marched to Ghaznin to bring Bahram to submission in 530 H., according to Faṣīh-i], and, on this, Bahram began to enter into friendly negotiations with the sons of ’Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, and invited one of them to his capital, and expressed a wish to take him into his service, in order to strengthen the bonds of friendship between the two families. Kutb-ud-Dīn, Muhammad [the Malik-ul-Jibal of our author], the eldest of the sons, proceeded to Ghaznin, and for some time he was treated with great distinction, but was subsequently guilty [or suspected?] of some crime, and was put to death by Bahram Shīh’s orders.

Enmity now arose between Bahram and the sons of Al-Ḥusain, and they began to attack each other’s territory, and several encounters took place between them [Faṣīh-i says they fought about Tīgīn-ābād as early as 521 H., but this may be an error for 511 H., and our author himself in his account of Sanjar’s reign, page 149, says that hostilities arose in that reign “between the Sulṭāns of Ghaznin and the Malik of Ghūr, and the latter were overcome,” and, subsequently, refers to the time when “the territory of Ghūr came under the rule of ’Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain,” and, on the death of Al-Ḥusain, their father [in 545 H., according to Faṣīh-i, but it must have been five years earlier, at least], hostility, which hitherto had been concealed, was openly shown by ’Alā-ud- Dīn, Ḥusain, and his brothers, and they rose against Bahram Shīh, and he set out on an expedition against Ghaznin, accompanied by Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, and Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām [’Alā’s full brothers]. They were opposed by Bahram Shīh, who was defeated, and retired into Hind.

Having obtained possession of Ghaznin, ’Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, left his brother, Sūrī, as ruler there, and returned to Ghūr. [This event is said to
in order to take revenge for [the slaying of his brothers], Sulṭān Sūrī and the Malik-ul-Jībāl, died on the way thither,

have occurred in the fifth month of the year 543 H. [October, 1052 A.D.], and by Faṣīḥ-i in 542 H. [October, 1051 A.D.], but, as the father only died it i said in 545 H., both cannot be correct.] On the way back his brother, Sām, died of inflammation of the brain [phrensy, according to some, a tumour, or small-pox, according to others].

In the following winter Bahrām returned from Hind with a numerous army and several elephants, and appeared before Ghaznī. Sūrī came out with 300 Ghūrīs and 1000 Ghuzz Turks, and endeavoured to reach Ghūrī, but the Ghuzz deserted to Bahrām, and Sūrī was taken, paraded on a bullock through the city, and hung along with his Wazīr. This occurred in 543 H. according to Faṣīḥ-i, but in 544 H. according to several other trustworthy authors. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, again marched to Ghaznī to avenge Sūrī, again took the city, plundered, and fired it, then abandoned it, and returned to Fīrūz-koh, destroying all the buildings raised by the Maḥmūdī family, on his way back. This is said to have taken place in 547 H., but such cannot have been the case: it must have been towards the end of 544 H., or early in 545 H., at the latest. Alī says in 547 of the "Riblat" [death of Muḥammad, not the Hijrah], which would make it as late as 558 H.1

Most of the authors from which the above is taken contend that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, was the first of the family who attained to independent sovereignty, that the dynasty consisted of five sovereigns, and continued for a period of sixty-four years. It terminated in 607 H., so must have commenced in 543 H.

'Alī, Jātī, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, were defeated by Sulṭān Sanjār in 545 H. [some say in 544 H.], but Faṣīḥ-i says in 547 H., just before he [Sanjār] marched against the Ghuzz, in 548 H., which will be referred to farther on.

Fanākātī says, and somewhat astonishing it is, that Husain, brother of Sām, was put to death by Bahrām Shāh's orders, and he [Husain] went to Sulṭān Sanjār and solicited aid. Sanjār assisted him with an army! and he then fought a battle with Bahrām Shāh, who was defeated and retreated into Hindūstān. After this, the same author states—and the Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīkh agrees—that Ḥusain ['Alā-ud-Dīn] left his brother Sām in charge of Ghaznī, and returned himself to Ghūrī. He then agrees with the statements of other writers as to the hanging of 'Alā-ud-Dīn's brother, but says it was Sām [Bahā-ud-Dīn], not Sūrī, that Bahrām Shāh took and hung after his return from Hindūstān. Husain returned, made a general massacre, and devastated the place, and 70,000 persons were slain. On this Sulṭān Sanjār resolved to proceed against him, and, in a battle, Ḥusain was taken prisoner. For further particulars regarding this see page 357, and notes 2 and 3 page 358.

The second account is, that Husain ['Izz-ud-Dīn], the father of the seven sons, raised to the rulership of Ghir by Maṣūd-i-Karīm, having died in 545 H. [540 H.?] was succeeded by the most prominent of his sons, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, who rebelled against Bahrām Shāh, marched against Ghaznī, took it, during Bahrām's absence, and set his brother, Sūrī, upon the throne of the Maḥmūdī's. Soon after Bahrām returned, and hung Sūrī. The remainder of the account agrees pretty well with the first.

The third is, that Bahrām Shāh was dead before 'Alā-ud-Dīn reached Ghaznī the second time, and in this statement a number of the most trustworthy authorities agree, and further that Khusrāu Shāh, his son, had succeeded just before 'Alā-ud-Dīn's advance, and, on his approach, Khusrāu Shāh
at Kidān, Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn ascended the throne of the dominion of Ghūr, and assembled the forces of Ghūr, of abandoned Ghaznīn and fled to Lahor [Baizawi states that it happened in 550 H.; but this is the only authority for that date, which cannot be correct; and if Sūrf, according to the other statement, was put to death in 544 H., 'Alā-ud-Dīn would scarcely allow six years to elapse before avenging him]. On 'Alā-ud-Dīn's departure, Khusrav Shāh returned to his devastated and ruined capital, and continued there until the Ghuzz Turks, who had defeated and made captive Sultan Sanjar, Khusrav's maternal great uncle, invaded Khurāsān, and appeared before Hirāt, and from thence advanced towards Ghaznīn.

Sanjar had marched against the Ghuzz in 548 H.—some few authors say in 547 H.—and was taken prisoner in the first month of the former year [March, 1056 A.D.]; they had invested Hirāt in 549 H., and gave up the attempt early in 550, and then appear to have advanced towards Ghaznīn, and this must have been the year in which Khusrav Shāh finally abandoned Ghaznīn, and not that in which 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, devastated it.

Some writers, who agree generally with this last account, say that Khusrav Shāh had reigned about a year when 'Alā-ud-Dīn arrived in the neighbourhood of his capital, and that he [Khusrav Shāh] was taken, and confined within the walls of the citadel, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn set up his two nephews, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, at Ghaznīn. Most authors say Khusrav Shāh died in 555 H., but others again state that his death took place in 544 H., and according to our author, who says he succeeded in 552 H., and reigned seven years, it would be in 559 H. See note 4, page 112.

The fourth account is, that, on the death of the father, ['Īzz-ud-Dīn], Al-Husain, Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrf, succeeded him, and that he seized upon Ghaznīn, while his other brother, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, seized upon Ghūr. This is said to have taken place in 543 H., and it is further said that, after Sūrf had been hanged, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Šām, set out to avenge him, and died on the way [in 544 H.].

The fifth account agrees pretty well with our author, and may have been partly copied from his work, although such a fact is not mentioned. It is to the effect, that Sūrf took Ghaznīn to avenge the death of his brother, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, put to death by Bahrām Shāh, and that, after Sūrf's death along with his Wazīr, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Šām, set out to avenge him, and died on the road. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, followed, on which Bahrām Shāh fled, and the city was taken. The date of the first capture of Ghaznīn is said to have been 542 H., or 543 H. [Our author says that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Šām, succeeded to the sovereignty of Fīrūz-koh and Ghūr, when Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrf, his brother, set out on his expedition against Ghaznīn, in 544 H.—the first date he gives in the whole Section—and tends to show that Ghaznīn must have been taken in 543 H.]

It is absurd to suppose that Ghaznīn was taken by 'Alā-ud-Dīn in 550 H., and still more so to suppose that 547 of the Rihlat could be the possible date; and, although the exact date is not to be found in authors generally, it is quite clear that Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrf, took it first in the fifth month of 543 H. [middle of October, 1051 A.D.]. Bahrām returned in the depth of winter [probably in January, 1052 A.D.], and hung him. Bahā-ud-Dīn, Šām, his brother, succeeded him as ruler of Ghūr in 544 H., and died soon after, in the same year; on which 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, who was not one to allow five or six years to elapse, at
350 THE ṬABAKAT-I-NĀŠIRĪ.

the capital, Firūz-koh, and of Gharjistān, and determined to march against Ghaznīn.

When Sulṭān Yāmin-ud-Dīn⁴, Bahrām Shāh, became aware of this matter, and of his [ʿAlā-ud-Dīn's] intention, he caused the troops of Ghaznīn and of Hindūstān to be got ready and organized, and led them from Rukhāj⁴ and Tīgin-ābād, in the district of Garmsīr, towards Zamīn-i-Dāwar. As Sulṭān ʿAlā-ud-Dīn, with his forces, had [already] reached Zamīn-i-Dāwar, Sulṭān Bahram Shāh despatched envoys to him, saying, “Return again to Ghūr, and in thy ancestral possession remain in quietness, for thou wilt not be able to resist my forces, for I bring elephants [along with me].” The envoys having delivered the message with which they were entrusted to Sulṭān ʿAlā-ud-Dīn, he replied, saying, “If thou bringest elephants⁵, I will bring the Kharmil; but, God knows, indeed, thou fallest into error, that thou hast put my brothers to death, and I have not slain any person belonging to thee. But hast thou not heard what Almighty God says⁶?—“Whosoever is once marched against Ghaznīn, and took it towards the close of the same year, 544 H., the same in which Guzidah and a few others say Bahram died. What tends to prove all this is, that in 545 H. ʿAlā-ud-Dīn was taken captive by Sulṭān Sanjar, after the former had sacked Ghaznīn, and was detained in captivity some two years, during which time another ruler was set up in Ghūr, and ʿAlā-ud-Dīn only obtained his release just before Sulṭān Sanjar set out on his unfortunate expedition against the Ghuzz, which was in 547 H., for Sanjar was defeated by them and taken prisoner, on the first day of the first month, Muharram, 548 H. [20th March, 1056 A.D.]. See also page 358, and notes ² and ³.

ʿAlā-ud-Dīn, Husain, made no attempt to retain possession of Ghaznīn, and he abandoned it, and retired into Ghūr, but destroyed every building pertaining to the Maḥmūdī sovereigns, on his way back. The reason why he abandoned it must have been his fear of Sulṭān Sanjar, or of Bahram’s or Khusrau’s return, as the case may be, and of meeting a fate similar to his brother Sūrī’s.

In three copies of the text at this place he is called Yāmin-ud-Daulah. In his account of Bahram Shāh’s reign our author styles him Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh, and says Khusrau Shāh’s title was Muʿayyan-ud-Dīn. See pages 109 and 111, and note ⁸.

⁴ A small tract of country in the district of Bust.

⁵ The word ḥāl an elephant, is used in most copies of the text, but to make sense of the passage I have been obliged to make it a plural. The context shows there must have been more than one elephant. Some other authors have خَلْفُ الْصُّدَّارْ which certainly agrees better with ḥāl and might be translated the chief, head, or leader of the elephants, alluding to some famous war-elephant he may have had.

⁶ On the Kur’ān’s authority only. It is rather strange that in his account
slain unjustly, we have given his heir, or next of kin, power [to avenge him]; but let him not exceed bounds in putting the slayer to death, because he likewise will be assisted and avenged?.’”

When the envoys returned, both armies were marshalled in ranks and made ready for the conflict. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn called unto him two Pahlawāns [champions] of his own, who were the leaders of the army, and famous warriors of the kingdom of Ghūr, and both of them were named Kharmil. One was Kharmil-i-Sām, Ūsain, father of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḫusain-i-Kharmil; and the other Kharmil-i-Sām, Banji; and both of them were famed in their day for their valour and prowess. He said unto them:—

“Bahram Shāh has sent a message, saying, ‘I bring elephants [against thee];’ and I have sent a reply, ‘If thou bringest elephants, I bring the Kharmil.’ This day it behoveth that each one of you champions should overthrow and bring an elephant to the ground.” They both kissed the ground and retired [to their posts]; and, at a place which they call Kotah-bāz, the two armies came to an encounter. When the battle commenced, both these champions dismounted, fastened up the skirts of their coats of mail, and entered the fight. When the elephants of Bahram Shāh made a charge, each of those champions attacked an elephant, and got beneath the armour of the animals, and, with their poniards, ripped open the bellies of the elephants. Kharmil-i-Sām, Banji, remained under his elephant, and it fell upon him, and he and the elephant perished together. Kharmil-i-Sām, Ūsain, brought his
When the battle was duly ordered, Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, after he had arrayed himself in all his panoply, commanded that a surcoat of crimson-coloured satin should be brought to him, and he put it on over all his armour. His kinsfolk and his intimates inquired:—“What device is this of the king’s, that he covers his armour with a crimson surcoat?” He answered:—“For this reason, that, in case my body should be wounded by arrow, lance, or sword, the redness of my blood, by means of the crimson surcoat, will not show upon my armour, so that the hearts of my followers may not become dejected.” The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

The troops of Ghūr have a method, in the practise of fighting on foot, of making a certain article of one fold of raw bullock-hide, over both sides of which they lay cotton, and over all draw figured coarse cotton cloth, after the form of a screen [or breast-work], and the name of that article of defence is kārwāh. When the foot-soldiers of Ghūr place this [screen] upon their shoulders, they are completely covered from head to foot by it; and, when they close their ranks, they appear like unto a wall, and no missile or arms can take any effect on it, on account of the quantity of cotton with which it is stuffed.

When the engagement was fairly begun, Daulat Shāh, son of Bahram Shāh, with a body of cavalry and an...
elephant, made a charge. Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din directed that the foot-soldiers should open their rank of kārwahs, in order to allow Daulat Shāh to enter with his whole division. They opened their ranks accordingly. When Daulat Shāh, with his body of horse and the elephant, entered, the infantry closed the breach in their ranks again, and completely surrounded that Prince on all sides; and he, with the whole of that body of horse, were martyred, and the elephant was brought to the ground, and also killed.

When the troops of Bahārām Shāh witnessed that disaster and slaughter, they fell into disorder and gave way. Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din followed in pursuit, from stage to stage, as far as a place which they call Josh-i-Āb-i-Garm [the jet of hot-water], near to Tigin-ābād, where Sultan Bahārām Shāh faced about, and a second time prepared to renew the engagement; and the whole of the forces then assembled under him again gave battle, but were defeated and put to the rout, and only stopped at the gate of Ghaznin. Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din followed in fierce pursuit, so that Bahārām Shāh, for the third time, assembled the troops of Ghaznin, the men of the city, and a large levy of footmen, and gave battle for the third time; but he was unable to overcome [the enemy], and was again defeated. 'Ala-ud-Din took the city of Ghaznin by storm, and, during seven nights and days, fired the place, and burnt it with obstinacy and wantonness.

The chronicler states that, during these seven days, the air, from the blackness of the smoke, continued as black as night; and those nights, from the flames raging in the burning city, were lighted up as light as day. During these seven days, likewise, rapine, plunder, and massacre were carried on with the utmost pertinacity and vindictiveness. All the men that were found were killed, and the women and children were made captive. 'Ala-ud-Din

---

4 One elephant only is mentioned, and it is not stated that Daulat Shāh was mounted on it. It appears to have been intended to break the rank of kārwahs with it.

5 Our author himself says that Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, was the first of the brothers who came into contact with Bahārām Shāh, and 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Huṣain, the last; but he has so arranged his work that his account of Sūrī comes last. The reader will perhaps find it less perplexing if he should read the account of Sūrī, at Section XIX., first, then that of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, at page 341, and this notice of 'Ala-ud-Dīn last.
commanded that the whole of the [remains of the] Mahmūdī Sultāns should be exhumed from their graves and burnt, except those of Sulṭān Mahmūd, the Ghāzi, Sulṭān Mas'ūd, and Sulṭān Ibrāhīm; and, during the whole of these seven days, 'Alā-ud-Dīn gave himself up to wine and carousal within the palaces of the Sulṭāns of Ghaznīn. During this time he gave directions so that the tomb of Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, and the mausoleum of the Malik-ul-Jībāl [Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muhammad], were sought out, and coffins prepared; and caused preparations to be made for putting his whole army into mourning. When the eighth night came round, and the city had become entirely desolated and consumed, and its inhabitants massacred, Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, on that night, improvised several strophes eulogistic of himself, and gave them to the minstrels, with directions to sing them accompanied by their changs and chighānāhs before him; and the lines, which are appropriate, are as follows:—

"The world knoweth that I of the universe am king.
The lamp of the family of the 'Abbasīs am I.
'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Husain, am I,
Whose house's sovereignty be ever enduring!
When on the bright bay steed of my dominion I sit,
One, to me, will be both the heavens and the earth.
Death sports around the point of my spear:
Hope follows [as goad] the dust of my troops.
I should roam the world through, like unto Sikandar:
I should in every city another sovereign place.
I was determined on this, that of the vagabonds of Ghaznīn
I would set a river of blood running like unto the Nil.
But they are maudlin old dotards and infants,
And my blooming fortune maketh intercession for them.
For their own sakes I have granted them their lives,
That the granting of their lives may of mine be the bond."

6 Other writers state that the bones of the whole of the Maḥmūdī sovereigns were exhumed and burnt, with the sole exception of those of Sulṭān Maḥmūd.
7 The greater number of copies of the original leave out the words — mourning—entirely; whilst the Bodleian MS., the R. A. S. MS., and one of the Paris copies have — fighting, making war, &c. !
8 He was gifted with a poetical genius.
9 The first is a kind of guitar, or harp, and the latter a kind of violin.
1 'Alā-ud-Dīn had evidently an exalted opinion of himself, or had imbibed more strong drink than was good for him.
2 Several other works which give this poem leave out these two lines.
3 As far as can be judged from all the exaggeration contained in these
He then commanded, saying, "I have spared the remainder of the people of Ghaznin," and he arose from the assembly, and went to the hot-bath; and, on the eighth day of these proceedings, he got up at day-dawn, and, accompanied by the whole of the troops of Ghur, and the Maliks [chiefs], came to the mausoleum of his brothers. He then donned mourning garments, together with his whole army, and, for [another] seven nights and days, he remained at the mausoleum observing funeral ceremonies.

During this period the whole Kur'an was read through several times, and alms were there distributed; and the coffins of his brothers were placed on biers, and he [Ala-ud-Din] marched from Ghaznin towards the districts of Dawar and Bust. On reaching the city of Bust, he entirely destroyed the palaces and other edifices of the Mahmidi dynasty, the like of which were not to be found in the regions of the world; and the whole territory, which appertained to the Mahmidi sovereigns, he directed should be ravaged and desolated.

He returned to Ghur, and, by his command, the corpses of his brothers were deposited by the side of their ancestors. He had ordered that several Sayyids of Ghaznin should be seized, according to the law of retaliation, in the place of Sayyid Majd-ud-Din, Mūsawi, who was Sultan Sūri's Wāzir, and who, along with Sultan Sūrī, they had hung up from one of the arches [of the bridge?] of Ghaznin, boastful effusions of 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, he seems to have imagined that his own life might be lengthened in proportion to the lives he spared, after he had caused almost the whole of the inhabitants of Ghaznin to be massacred.

4 The word ถน has other meanings besides "cradle." Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. p. 289.

5 Such as mosques, colleges, fortifications, &c.

6 Some ruins of those edifices still remain. An intelligent man, a native of Kandahār, and an Afghān, says these ruins are of immense size and height, particularly one arch, which was standing some few years since, said to have been one of the great mosque. There was also a stone bridge across the river Hīrmānd, near this arch, called the Pul-i-'Ashikān—the Lovers' Bridge—remains of which may still be seen.

7 The whole of the district of Zamīn-i-Dawar, I presume. The territory of the Mahmūdī sovereigns, even at that time, was of great extent, and Ghur formed only a very small portion of it.

8 The word used by our author signifies tombs, sepulchres, and the like, which, of course, would scarcely be interred. The coffins and their contents were interred.

9 The word used here is ตัก, signifying an arch, among other meanings,
and they were brought before the Sultan. Bags were filled with the earth\(^1\) of Ghaznín, and placed upon their backs, and [they were] brought along with him to Firúz-koh, the capital; and, on reaching that city, the Sayyids were put to death, and their blood was mixed with the earth which had been brought from Ghaznín, and from it several towers\(^2\) were erected on the hills of Firúz-koh, which towers, moreover, were still remaining up to this present time. The Almighty pardon him!

After he had wreaked such vengeance as this, and returned to the capital again, 'Alá-ud-Dín desired to devote himself to pleasure and revelry; and he gathered around him minstrels and boon companions, betook himself to conviviality and carousel, and improvised lines which he directed the minstrels to sing, and accompany on their harps and violins\(^3\). These are the lines:—

"I am [he] in whose justice the world hath exultation;
And I am [he] through whose munificence the treasury sustaineth injustice.
The finger of his hand, to his teeth, the enemy placeth,
When, to the string of the bow, I the thimble apply."

and it is also a proper name; but no word signifying a bridge is used in any copy of the text collated, but some other writers say it was the Ták Bridge—the bridge leading to Ták, in Zábulístán, probably. Another writer, however, says, Súrfí and his Wazír were hung at the head of "the Bridge of Two Arches"—and this is probably correct. In his account of Súrfí, farther on, our author says it was the Bridge of One Arch. See the first of the Ghaznín dynasty, Section XIX.

1 Khák signifies earth, not "dirt." The context shows what this earth was intended for, but dír would scarcely have answered for making mortar.

2 Another author states that it was the remainder of the people of Ghaznín—not Sayyids only—that 'Alá-ud-Dín removed, and that they were laden with sacks of earth from that city, and on their arrival at Firúz-koh they were slaughtered, and a building was raised from the earth which was mixed with their blood. The word used by our author signifies a tower, bastion, &c. The probability is that they were small towers, such as are raised for landmarks, and that the earth brought from Ghaznín, mixed with the blood of the Sayyids, and amalgamated with the mortar, was used for these buildings.

3 Here again the idiom of the different copies of the original varies so much that it would lead one to imagine that the work of our author must, originally, have been written in a different language. One set of copies has متعلق‌ی را یرون‌ود تا در چه چگه‌انه‌ود وم‌نبوده and throughout the work the two sets agree word for word almost. The latter set is the least trustworthy.

4 In token of astonishment.

5 A sort of thimble used by archers to protect the left thumb from the bow-string.
When my bay steed leap'd a square within the ranks,
The adversary no longer knew ball from square 4.
When, out of hatred towards me, Bahram Shah 7 bent the bow,
I pluck'd, with my lance, the quiver from his waist.
The support of my foe, although they were all Rées [and] Ränahs,
I reduced, with my mace, to atoms, both Rée's and Ränah's head 8.
To draw forth vengeance by the sword, I have indeed taught
The sovereigns of the time, and the kings of the age.
Ah, ravishing Minstrel ! since I am released from war,
Sing that strain indeed, and that melody enkindle.
When fortune hath been grasp'd, it is not right to renounce
The singers' melody, nor the fire-worshippers' pure wine."

Trustworthy persons have related after this wise, that,
when Sulṭan 'Alā-ud-Din ascended the throne of Firuz-
koh, he ordered his nephews, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-
i-Sām 9, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, sons of
Sulṭan Bahā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad Sām, to be imprisoned,
and they were confined in the fortress of Wajiristān 1,
and an allowance was fixed for their support.
He ['Alā-ud-Dīn] also began to show a contumacious
spirit towards Sulṭan Sanjar, and manifested open hostility

6 These two lines evidently refer to the game of Chaugān, from which the
lately introduced game of Pola is derived. The text of these lines varies con-
siderably in different copies of the original, but I have rendered the translation
as close as possible; still the meaning is not clear. Probably horse and rider
bore everything before them, and spread terror among the foe, and struck
Bahram Shāh with amazement.

7 From this line, if correctly quoted, it was Bahram Shāh who encountered
'Alā-ud-Dīn, HING, but other authors, as already noticed in note 4, page 347,
distinctly state that he was dead before the second expedition against Ghaznīn;
but whether Bahram or Khusraw Shāh—the measure would not be lost if
"Khusraw" were substituted for Bahram—it would appear that Rājpūt and
other Hindū princes and chiefs were in the Ghaznavīd army on this occasion.
See account of Sulṭan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, the second of the Ghaznīn
dynasty. In his account of Bahram Shāh's reign, pages 109 to 111, our
author says that he returned to Ghaznīn after 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, withdrew,
and died there. Those authors who contend that Bahram Shāh had died a
short time before 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, appeared before Ghaznīn, state that it
was his son, Khusraw Shāh, who left it on his approach, and who returned to
it after the departure of the Ghurīfāns, and finally relinquished it on the
advance of the Ghuzz Turks, in 548 or 549 H., after the defeat of Sulṭan
Sanjar, and his falling a captive into their hands in that year, two years only
before the death of 'Alā-ud-Dīn.

8 The word خوردو is used in all but one copy of the text, which has خروص
signifying "a ball," and may even be the most applicable meaning after all.
9 Sām [Bahā-ud-Dīn] was the name of the father only.
1 The fortress of Nāe probably, which stronghold was used as a state prison
by the Ghaznavīd Sulṭans.
towards him. What the Sultanans of Ghur had stipulated for, and which used to reach the Sanjari Court every year, such as arms and armour, rarities, and offerings, 'Ala-ud-Din withheld; and matters reached such a pass, that Sultan Sanjar assembled a numerous army, and determined to march into the territory of Ghur.

Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din collected the forces of Ghur, and advanced to meet the Sultan as far as the limits of the town of Nab, between Firuz-koh and Hirat, in the valley of the Hariw-ar-Rud. There is water there, and a delightful and extensive plain, which they call Sih-goshah-i-Nab;

2. This seems to confirm the statement of Fasih-f [note +, page 336], that Husain ['Izz-ud-Din], son of Sâm, 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain's father, had also been made captive by Sultan Sanjar, some years before, and made tributary. Under the reign of Sanjar also, our author states, page 149, "The Malikis of Ghir and Sultanans of the Jibal were all subject to Sultan Sanjar. It is probable that, as Sultan Sanjar had deposed Sultan Arsalan, and had set up Bahram Shâh on the throne of Ghaznîn, he [Sanjar] received, as lord-paramount over Ghaznîn also, the tribute formerly paid by the chiefs of Ghur to the Sultanans of the Ma'mûdî dynasty. When Bahram executed Saif-ud-Din, Sûrî, 'Ala-ud-Din's brother, he sent his head to his uncle, Sultan Sanjar. See also Fanakatî's statement, para. 10 to note 3, page 348.

3 Two copies have, "There is a delightful river and an extensive plain;" but of course the Harîw or Harî-rud, as the river of Hirat is named was there, and the extra river appears redundant.

Fasih-f states that the battle took place before Aobah, near Hirât [Aobah is Pushto for "water"], and in this Jahân-Ârâ agrees, but the Tarîkh-i-Ibrahîmi says it took place at Marân-zâd, but both places are in the Hirat district, and not far from each other.

In the year 544 H. [Fasih-f says as early as 542 H., 'Alî, Jatî, [called Chattrî by our author] who held the fief of Hirât, during Sultan Sanjar's absence, had become disaffected towards the Sultan, in what way is not mentioned, for but little is said about him in history. [See note 8, page 237.] He concerted with 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, "Malik of Ghur," in this hostility, and Sanjar marched against them. They were defeated and overthrown in 545 H.—some say in 544 H., and Fasih-f 547 H.—and 'Alî, Jatî, 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, Ghurî, and the Malik-zadah, Shams-ud-Din, Muhammâd [son of Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ûd, of Bâmîân, elder brother of 'Ala-ud-Din], were taken prisoners, the last by the hand of the Sipah-salâr, Barânkah. Orders were given to put 'Alî, Jatî, to death at once, and 'Ala-ud-Din was thrown into prison; but Shams-ud-Din, Muhammâd, having obtained 50,000 dinârs from Bâmîân, the sum demanded for his ransom, that sum was paid to Barânkah, and he was set free. After some time, Sultan Sanjar took compassion on 'Ala-ud-Din, set him at liberty, and made him one of his boon companions.

Fanâkâtî here relates the story respecting ['Ala-ud-Din] Husain, which Fasih-f, and some others relate of his father, Husain, already recorded in note 4, page 336; but, although Fasih-f relates matters entirely different here respecting 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, and gives such circumstantial details, I still cannot but consider Rashtî-ud-Din's account correct notwithstanding, who,
and at that place an engagement took place between the two armies. Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, a day before the battle was fought, had directed so that the ground in rear of the forces of Gḥūr had been entirely laid under water; and he had caused it to be proclaimed that the ground in the rear had become quite flooded, and that whoever should attempt to fly to the rear would get into the mud, and stick there.

When the battle was arranged, and the two armies came in contact, a body of about 6000 Ghuzz, Turk, and Khalj horse, which was stationed on the right of the army of Gḥūr, deserted, and went over to Sulṭān Sanjar, and submitted to him, and the troops of Gḥūr were defeated and Overthrown. The whole of the Amirs and warriors, and

however, styles both of them Ḥusain, without giving their titles. The anecdote is much the same in both authors.

Fāṣīb-Ī says, "When Ḥusain [‘Īzz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, of our author], son of Sām, was taken prisoner, the Sulṭān commanded that he should be put to death, but, at the intercession of Shaikh Aḥmad [the Imām-i-Rabbānī of Rashīd-ud-Dīn], Ghazzālī, he was spared, and set at liberty. This was in the year 545 Ḥ. For two years he used to light the fires of the cooks of the Sulṭān’s army [our author would scorn to relate this, as it did not tend to the glorification of his patrons], until one day, the Amīr [commander] of the troops of Khurāsān, ‘Imād-ud-Daulah, Kīmāj, chanced to meet with him." Fānākātī says, for two years [‘Alā-ud-Dīn] Husain wandered about the bazārs of Sanjar’s camp [or capital] as a mendicant, when one day as Kīmāj was passing the shop of a cook he noticed Ḥusain, who was attending the fire and watching the cook’s pot.

Kīmāj took compassion on Ḥusain and made known his case to the Sulṭān, who directed that he should be brought to his presence. When admitted, he kissed the ground before the Sulṭān, who said to him:—“I understand thou hast neither wealth nor effects left unto thee. Hast thou no sense of cleanliness left thee either?” [Rashīd-ud-Dīn says, “Hast thou not the means and power of keeping one head and face clean?”] Ḥusain replied:—“In the days when this head was mine own head I had the good fortune to be attended by a thousand servants, but, now that it belongs to thee, thou keepest it thus wretched and abject.” The Sulṭān was touched; he pardoned him, treated him with honour, and sent him back to his native country attended by a large retinue; and to the end of his days Ḥusain paid obedience to that monarch.

‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, was restored to the sovereignty of Gḥūr in 547 Ḥ., just before Sulṭān Sanjar moved against the Ghuṣ. He was defeated and made captive in the first month of 548 Ḥ., and, when released in 551 Ḥ., no power was left to him. ‘Alā-ud-Dīn died a month before Sanjar’s release. Several authors mention Sanjar’s having bestowed a casket of gems, one night at a convivial meeting, upon ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, but treasure, flocks, and herds are not referred to. See page 238, and note ⁴.
distinguished men of the Ghūrīān army, got entangled in that swampy ground and morass. Some of them obtained martyrdom, and some were made captive, and Sulṭān 'Ala-ud-Dīn himself was taken prisoner.

Sulṭān Sanjar commanded that he should be put in confinement, and they brought gyves of iron to place on his legs. He urged that it was requisite they should make a representation [from him] to the Sulṭān, saying:—"Do unto me as I intended to have done unto thee, for I obtained gyves of gold, in order that, thereby, reverence for thy sovereignty might be so much the more preserved." When this request was made known, those identical gyves were called for, and, when they were obtained, those very same gyves were placed upon 'Ala-ud-Dīn's legs, and they mounted him upon a camel, and Sulṭān Sanjar returned [to his own territory].

As the report of 'Ala-ud-Dīn's wittiness of temperament, and quickness of intellect, was much talked about at that period, and had become famous, and Sulṭān Sanjar had heard a great deal about it, either the next day, or a few days after, he sent for him, treated him with honour, and set him at liberty [from his gyves]. A salver of precious gems had been placed near the masnad of the imperial throne, and that was bestowed upon 'Ala-ud-Dīn, who arose and made his obeisance, and spoke these lines, befitting the circumstance. The following is the quatrain:—

"In the rank of battle the Shāh took me, but did not kill,
Notwithstanding, of a verity, I was full worthy of being slain.
A casket of precious gems he bestowed upon me:
In such wise his mercy [was], and his bounty such."

Sulṭān Sanjar made him one of his associates and boon companions, and there was no pleasure-party without the presence of 'Ala-ud-Dīn, until one day, during a banquet, the sight of 'Ala-ud-Dīn fell upon the sole of Sulṭān Sanjar's foot, who, seated on his throne, had extended one of his legs, upon the sole of the foot of which there was a large mole. He arose, kissed the mole, and improvised the following lines:—

Some other authors quote these lines differently, particularly the two last.
"Verily the dust at the gate of thy palace is [my] diadem, And [this], the collar of thy service, is my adornment. In the same manner as I kiss the mole on the sole of thy foot, Even so good fortune [likewise] salutes my head.”

This anecdote has been already related in the account of Sultan Sanjar’s reign. The latter gave him back again the throne of Ghûr, and he commanded that stores, treasure, all his herds of horses and camels and cattle, and flocks of sheep, his own personal property, should be made over to ’Alâ-ud-Dîn; and Sultan Sanjar said:—“’Alâ-ud-Dîn, thou art in the condition of a brother to me. Return, and take all these things—cattle and treasure—along with thee, and remove them to the country of Ghûr. If the divine decree should in such wise will, that this host of Ghuzz should be overcome, and we should obtain the victory, when these things shall be demanded of thee, send them back to me; but otherwise, if it should turn out that my dominion shall have come to an end, and the thread of the empire’s regularity shall have been severed, it is far better that these things should remain with thee than that they should fall into the hands of the Ghuzz.”

During this period of Sultan ’Alâ-ud-Dîn’s absence from the capital of the kingdom of Ghûr, a number of the Amîrs, Maliks, and the great men and judges of the Jibâl [mountain tracts] and of the territory of Ghûr, had agreed together to bring Malik Nâsir-ud-Dîn, Husain, son of Muḥammad, of Mâdîn, who was the brother’s son of ’Alâ-ud-Dîn, and place him upon the throne of Firûz-koh. A body of disobedient persons of the territory of Kashî, who excel all the rest of the people of Ghûr in arrogance and obstinacy, had committed great violence, and by their turbulence and clamour, under pretence of grants, gifts,
alms, and robes of distinction, had appropriated the royal treasure and property.

When Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din came towards Ghūr from Khurāsān with all that treasure, cattle, and wealth [conferred upon him by Sultan Sanjar], he first proceeded in the direction of the territory of Kashi, destroyed the whole of their Kūshks [fortified villages], which exceeded a thousand Kārs in number, and every one of which, in strength and height, was such, that the decision of conjecture and conception could not admit a plan of it.

After having taken vengeance upon the rebels of the Kashi territory and other mountain tracts, he ['Ala-ud-Din] returned to the capital Firūz-koh, and, before his reaching it, they had killed Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn-i-Muḥammad, as will, subsequently, be recorded. When Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din arrived at Firūz-koh, and [again] seated himself on the throne of his ancestors, he turned his attention to the making of fresh conquests. He brought under his sway the districts of Bāmiān and Tukhāristān; and seized the districts of Dāwar, Jarūm, and Bust also; and, of Khurāsān, took the fortress of Tūlak, which is situated in the mountains in the vicinity of Hirāt, after a period of six years.

There was a poet within the fortress of Tūlak, whom they called by the name of 'Umr-i-Sarāj; and, when hostilities were about to come to an end, and the fortress of Tūlak was about to be gained possession of by terms of accommodation, he composed some verses, two lines of which, which were deserving [of insertion], are here brought in:

"Seated on horseback, galloping up-hill and down,
Thy object is Tūlak: lo! there is Tūlak."

In their language, galloping up-hill and down-dale is called "Wurlak-Fūlak." "The mercy of God be upon them!"

2 See the Tukhāristān dynasty farther on.
3 According to this statement, 'Ala-ud-Dīn must have been investing this place during the whole of his reign, for he only ruled six years.
4 These words vary in most of the copies of the text, but the best copies have as above written. Some have "Urlak-Fūlak," "Warlak-Tūlak," and "Wurkal-Tūkal." The words are unintelligible, and are certainly not Pushto.
From that place 'Ala-ud-Din turned his face to the conquest of Gharjistān; and took to wife the lady Hūr Malikah, who was the daughter of the Shār, Shāh [by name], son of Ibrāhim, Shār, son of Ardshīr, one of the Maliks of Gharjistān⁸; and the valley of the Murghāb river and [its] fortresses came into his possession. The fortress of Sabekji® [or Sabegji], however, held out, and carried on hostilities [against him] for six years⁷; and of this time, for a period of three years, he sat down continually before it, until it was given up to him.

Towards the end of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din's life, Mūlahidah emissaries came to him from Alamūt⁸, and he treated them with great reverence; and in every place in Ghūr they sought, secretly, to make proselytes. The Mūlahidah [heretic] of Alamūt had set his ambition on subjecting the people of Ghiir [to his heresy], and making them submissive. This fact became defilement which adhered to the train of the 'Alā-i robe of sovereignty. Of his life, however, but a short period remained, and he died, and they buried him by the side of his ancestors and his brethren⁹. The Almighty forgive him!

---

⁵ See note ५, page 341.
⁶ The name of this place is doubtful. The majority of copies have as written above शडेक्की—सतकूकी—सतकूकी—सतकूकी—सतकूकी and शडेक्की. Of Ghūr we have no knowledge whatever, and the Politicals, who were stationed in Afghānistān previous to the outbreak in 1841, although they did gain a little knowledge of the eastern parts of Afghānistān, appear almost to have neglected the western parts.
⁷ See note ८, preceding page.
⁸ Alamūt, from الله and اله— the eagle's [not vulture's] nest—the name of the stronghold of Ḥasan-i-Šabbāb, the Shaykh-ul-Jībāl, or the Old Man of the Mountain, or Chief of the Assassins, as the chief of this sect used to be called. The person here referred to, however, is MUḤAMMAD, son of BUZURG-UMĪD, the third of the Alamūṭīs, who died in 557 H. In Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii. pages 289-90, he is turned into "the Mulahi-datu-l-maut"! See page 365, and note ४.
⁹ 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, died at Hirāt in 551 H., the same year in which Sultaṅ Sanjar escaped from the Ghuzz, and Itsiz, Khwārazm Shāh, died, according to Faṣīḥ-ī, Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh, Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, Haft-Ikīlm, Mirāt-i-Jahān Numā, and several others, but, according to Jahān Ārā and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, in 556 H., but this is incorrect. Jāmābī says in 566 H. ! Our author, although brought up in the residence of his niece, and the glorifier of all things Ghūrīan, appears neither to have known the year of 'Ala-ud-Din's death nor the extent of his reign. He reigned six years.

⁸ How many sons he had our author did not appear to consider necessary
When Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, was made captive in the engagement with Sultan Sanjar, the affairs of the territories of Ghūr and the Jibāl [mountain tracts] became weak and disordered. The refractory and disobedient of Ghūr began to show contumacy, and each tribe fortified itself in the hills and defiles in which it dwelt, and commenced carrying on strife and hostility one against the other.

A party of the great Amirs who still remained [for a great number had been slain or made captive in the battle against Sultan Sanjar] brought Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Husain, son of Muhammad, Mādīnī, from Mādīn, and placed him on the throne of Fīrūz-koh. The treasures of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, and the treasures of his son, Sultan Saif-ud-Din, he took into his own possession; and the whole of the precious things, treasures, and valuable property, and other effects stored up, he expended upon those Amirs, and great men, and on mean persons, and seized upon the dominions of Ghūr. His strength lay in the support of the rebels of the Kashi country.

This Malik, Nasir-ud-Din, had a great passion for women and virgins, and he had taken a number of the handmaids and slave girls of the haram of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din under his own control, and used to have recourse to them. When Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, having been dismissed with great honour and respect from the presence of Sultan Sanjar, set out towards the dominions of Ghūr, and reached the hill country of Hirāt, and the news of the advent of his exalted banners was brought to Fīrūz-koh, terror, and fright, and the fear of retribution, threw all hearts into dread.

A party, who were loyally devoted to the 'Ala-ī dynasty, secretly instigated and incited those slave girls of 'Ala-ud-Din's haram, who had been taken into Malik Nasir-ud-Din's haram, so that they sought an opportunity; and, at to state here; but we shall find that he had two at least, both of whom succeeded to the sovereignty.

1 He is not mentioned as a ruler by other authors, who pass at once from 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, to his son; but there is no doubt about Nasir-ud-Din, Husain, having seized the sovereignty and held it during the former's captivity.
a time when Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din was lying asleep on his couch, they placed the pillow of the couch over his face, and, with all their force, held down the four corners of the pillow until they suffocated him, and he died.

XVI. SULTĀN 3 SAIF-UD-DĪN, MUḤammad, SON OF SULTĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN.

When Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din departed from this world, his son, Sultan Saif-ud-Din, Muḥammad, with the concurrence of the whole of the Maliks, Amīrs, and chief men of Ghūr, ascended the throne of Firūz-koh.

He was a youthful and good-looking sovereign, and was beneficent in disposition, just, the cherisher of his subjects, and patronizer of his servants, bountiful, munificent, open-hearted, and liberal, humble, conciliating, pious, orthodox, and steadfast in the faith of Islām. When he ascended the throne, he, at the outset, repudiated acts of tyranny and injustice; and for all the injustice, oppression, and violence which his father had committed, he commanded that restitution should be made; and he carried out his purpose according to the institutes of justice, and the ways of rectitude.

Those emissaries who had come from the Mulāḥidah [heretic] of Alamūt [towards the close of his father's reign], and who, secretly, had exhorted every person to the vanities of heresy and schism, he directed should be brought to task, and the whole of them, by his orders, were put to the sword. In every place wherein the odour of their impure usages was perceived, throughout the territory of Ghūr, slaughter of all heretics was commanded. The whole of them were sent to Hell, and the area of the country of Ghūr, which was a mine of religion and orthodoxy, was purified from the infernal impurity of Ḭarāmitah depravity by the sword. By this orthodox war upon infidels, love for him became rooted in the hearts of the people of Ghūr and of the territory of the Jibāl; and the

3 Styled Malik by several authors.

2 Our author makes no difference between Mulāḥidahs and Ḭarāmitahs, but they are different sects. See Sale, Kūrān, Preliminary Discourse, pages 130-31.
whole of them bound the girdle of his service round their loins, and placed the collar of obedience to him about the neck of sincerity.

One of the proofs of his equity, and of the goodness of his rule, was this, that he gave orders for the release from the fortress of Wajiristān of both his uncle's sons, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the sons of Sām, and he cherished and caressed them, and allowed them perfect liberty of action.

During his reign people, both comers and goers, enjoyed plenty, repose, and security beyond compute; but that youthful monarch of excellent disposition had but a short life, and his reign only extended to the space of one year and little more. The mercy of God be upon him!

The cause of his loss of life was this:—One day, seated in his pavilion, he was discharging arrows at a butt; and the Amīrs of Ghūr had been directed to be present, and were in attendance. The Sipāh-šālār [commander of the troops], War-mesh, son of Shīs, who was the brother of Abū-l-'Abbās, son of Shīs, and the brother of Sulīmān, son of Shīs, was also in attendance on him. It was the custom with the Amīrs of Ghūr, and the Malikīs of the Jībāl, at that period, that upon whomsoever they would confer honour, him they should present with a golden gauntlet studded with jewels, after the same manner as, in these days, they bestow a girdle; and on the hand[s] of this commander, War-mesh, son of Shīs, were two gem-studded gauntlets, which Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Mādīnī, had honoured him with; and both those gauntlets were from the treasury of Sultan Saif-ud-Dīn's own haram. When he perceived those two gauntlets belonging to his own haram upon the hand of War-mesh, the honour of manhood, and the dignity of sovereignty, began to flame up within his heart, and the fire of wrath burst forth, and he said:—“Run, War-mesh, and bring back my arrow from the butt.” When War-mesh turned his face towards the

---

4 The word used is دستاْه, a glove or gauntlet; a bracelet may have been what our author intended, as it is difficult, I should imagine, to wear two gauntlets on one hand, but he says “on the hand,” not the hands. The word for bracelet, however, is دسته. Other writers say, a bracelet, which Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, had taken from one of ’Ālī-ud-Dīn’s wives, and presented to War-mesh. It is the father’s haram at page 364.
butt, in order to carry out this command, and his back was turned towards the Sultan, he, Sultan Saif-ud-Din, fitted a broad steel-headed arrow to his bow, and drew the bow-string to his ear, and discharged the arrow with such force into the back of War-mesh, that the feathers of the arrow passed out through his breast, and he fell down dead on the spot.

As the empire of the Sanjari dynasty had come to an end, the Amirs of the tribe of Ghuzz had acquired power, and had taken possession of the different parts of the territory of Khurāsān, and their violence and depredations had extended in all directions; and the disquietude and affliction consequent upon these depredations used to reach the frontier districts of the kingdom of Ghūr, and the borders of the hill tracts of Gharjistan.

When Sultan Saif-ud-Din brought the dominions of his father under his jurisdiction, he assembled his forces, and set out for the purpose of restraining the aggressions of the Ghuzz, and reached the confines of Gharjistan, and the district of Mādin. From thence he advanced to Rūd-bār of Marw, and passed beyond Dajzak, which is a large city, and came to a battle with the Ghuzz.

The Sipah-salar, Abū-l-'Abbas, son of Shīs, who was the champion of Ghūr, of the family of the Shīsānīs, and who nourished revenge in his heart on account of War-mesh, son of Shīs [his own brother], and waited his opportunity, on the day of the encounter with the Ghuzz, came behind the back of the Sultan, Saif-ud-Din, and thrust his spear into his side, and hurled him from his horse, and exclaimed [at the same time], “Men are not killed with their faces to the butt, as thou didst kill my brother, otherwise they [themselves] get killed at such a place as this.”

The arrow-head called bel-ak, formed in the shape of a shovel; hence its name—a little shovel. It is also called the “huntsman’s arrow-head,” and a double-pointed arrow-head also.

The “meek, conciliating, and pious” youth did not hesitate to shoot an enemy in the back!

Some copies of the text have Fārus, which is sometimes written Kādus, instead of Mādin. See page 374, and note.

Rūd-bār also means “a river in a valley,” but here refers to a place so called.

Some writers mention that he was “killed in battle with the Ghuzz of Balkh,” and that it happened in 558 H.; but he is said to have reigned some-
When the Sultan fell, the troops of Ghūr were defeated and routed, and they likewise left the [wounded] Sultan on the field. A Ghuzz [soldier] came upon him, and, as yet, the Sultan was still alive. The Ghuzz, when he noticed the princely vest and girdle, was desirous of despoiling him of them. The fastening of the Sultan's girdle would not come open quickly, on which the Ghuzz applied his knife to the fastening, and divided it. The point of the knife entered the stomach of Sultan Saif-ud-Din with force, and from that wound he obtained martyrdom.

XVII. SULTĀN-I-UL-A'ZAM, GHIYĀṢ-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-FATH, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF BAḤĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, KĀSIM-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN.

Trustworthy persons have stated, after the following manner, that Sultan Ghiyadg-ud-Din, and his brother, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, were both born of one mother; and that Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din was the elder of Mu'izz-ud-Din by three years and a little more. Their mother was the daughter of Malik Badr-ud-Din, Kidānī, both of the lineage of Banjī, son of Naharān, and also of the seed of the Shansabānīs. The Malikah, their mother, used to call Ghiyas-ud-Din [by the name of] Ḥabashi; and Mu'izz-ud-Din, Zangi; but, originally, the august name of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din was Muḥammad, and the name of Mu'izz-ud-Din was
also Muḥammad. In the dialect of Ghūr they call Muḥammad, Ahmad⁴.

When Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, died within the limits of Kidān, and Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, ascended the throne of Frūz-koh, he commanded that his two nephews, Ghīyāḥ-ud-Dīn and Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, should be imprisoned in the fortress of Wajīristān⁵, and fixed but a small allowance for the supply of their wants⁶. When Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn departed from this world, Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn directed that they should be released from that fortress, and he allowed them entire liberty of action. Ghīyāḥ-ud-Dīn took up his residence at the Court of Frūz-koh in amity with Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn, and Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, his brother, proceeded to Bāmiān to the presence of his paternal uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Masʿūd.

Ghīyāḥ-ud-Dīn accompanied Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn, serving along with the army, on the expedition against the Ghūzz tribe; but he had, however, but a small following through want of means and scantiness of resources; but every one, among the old servants of his father and of his mother, used clandestinely to afford him some little help.

Ghīyāḥ-ud-Dīn continued always in the service of Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn up to the time when the heavenly decree arrived, and Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn was removed from the throne of life imperial to the bier of premature death⁷; and the army of Ghūr, discomfited, came out of the district of Rūd-bār and the borders of Dajzak towards Gharjīstān by way of Asir Darah and La-wir [or Lū-ir ?], and passed beyond Āfshīn, which was the capital of the Shārs of Gharjīstān; and, when they reached the town of Wadā-wajzd⁸, the Sipāḥ-sālār, Abū-l-ʿAbbās, son of Shīs, who

⁴ See note ⁴, page 313.
⁵ A few authors have stated that the two brothers were placed in charge of Ghaznīn [not a province of Ghūr] by their uncle, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, but such is not correct, and our author's statements here and at pages 357 and 366 are quite correct, and are confirmed by many authors of undoubted authority. See also Thomas: THE PATHAN KINGS OF DEHLI, page 10.
⁶ See paragraph 14, note ⁵, page 347.
⁷ For shooting the greatest of his chiefs in the back, in a cowardly manner, in a fit of jealousy.
⁸ The text here in all the copies is more or less exceedingly defective, and it would be almost impossible to make anything of this passage without collating the number of copies I have seen. As it is there is some doubt about two or three of the proper names. Some copies have Abar ['a'] and Asir.
had unhorsed Sultan Saif-ud-Din with his spear, there 
presented himself in the presence of Ghiyas-ud-Din; and 
such of the most powerful and illustrious personages, and 
the Amirs and Malik of the troops of Ghur and Gharjistan 
as were present, he assembled and brought together, 
and they all gave their allegiance to the sovereignty and 
dominion of Ghiyas-ud-Din, and they raised him to the 
throne, and congratulated him on his accession to the 
supreme power. Command was given to erect a castle 
there [where this occurred], and up to this time, wherein 
the calamity of the infidel Mughals arose, that town and 
castle was inhabited. From thence they conducted him to 
the city of Firuz-koh, and, when they reached the city, 
they placed Ghiyas-ud-Din on the throne.

Previously to this, his title was Shams-ud-Din; and his 
brother's, Shihab-ud-Din; but, after he had been on the 
throne some time, his own title was changed to Sultan 
Ghiyas-ud-Din; and, after the successes in Khurasan, 
his brother Malik Shihab-ud-Din's title became Sultan 
Mu'izz-ud-Din.

When his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, became cognizant 
of his brother Ghiyas-ud-Din's situation, he proceeded to 
the presence of his uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, 
and asked his permission, and came to Firuz-koh, and 
he was invested with the office of Sar-i-Jandar [or 
chief armour-bearer], and he used to be always in attend-
ance on his brother, Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din. The territory 
of Istiah and Kajiran were entrusted to his charge.
When the [Sultan's] pavilion was brought out of the city of Firūz-koh, and conveyed towards Ghūr, the contumacious of Ghūr began to manifest opposition. The Sipāh-sālār, Abī-l-'Abbās, son of Shīs, who had raised him to the throne, possessed great authority and influence, and the refractory of Ghūr used to shelter themselves under his protection. Both the brothers continued to nourish revenge in their hearts against him [Abī-l-'Abbās], on account of his having killed their cousin, Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn, and they both concerted a design [against him]. It was determined between them, that one of their own immediate Turkish followers should carry it out [in the following manner]:—When Abī-l-'Abbās should enter the audience-hall, and should stand up in the assembly to make his obeisance, and Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn should raise his hand to his cap, the Turk should strike off Abī-l-'Abbās' head; and such was done.

After Abī-l-'Abbās had been put to death, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn acquired strength, and the grandeur of the realm increased. The uncle of the brothers, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, of Bāmīān, being the eldest of the seven Sulṭān brothers, and there being neither one of them remaining [but himself], he became ambitious of acquiring the territory of Ghūr and the throne of Firūz-koh. Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kimāj [a noble] of the Sanjāri dynasty, who was Malik [ruler] of Balkh, he sought aid from, and despatched envoys to Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz, of Hirāt, and asked assistance from him also. Subsequently, the

---

3 From the manner in which our author here expresses himself [and the sentence is the same in all the copies collated], Ghūr must have been the name of a town as well as of the whole country. From many of his expressions, however, in other places, Firūz-koh would seem to refer to one district or territory, Ghūr to another, and the Jībāl to a third.

4 The word here used signifies not a cap exactly, but a head-dress made from the fur or skin of an animal, of cloth or other texture, or of cloth of gold, and the like, made into a head-dress, a tiara, diadem, &c., but not a turban. Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, the elder brother, engaged Abī-l-'Abbās in conversation, whilst the other brother gave the sign for his assassination. Abī-l-'Abbās appears to have suspected treachery, for he had half drawn his dagger from its sheath when he was cut down. This is a specimen of the noble qualities of those amiable and pious sovereigns of our author, and is quite in keeping with their treachery, or at least with Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's towards Khusrau Malik. See note 5, pages 112-13.

5 They were not all styled "Sulṭān," even by his own account.

6 I-yal-dūz of others.
troops of Bāmiān and the forces of Balkh and of Hirāt advanced from different directions towards Firūz-koh.

Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, of Bāmiān, being the uncle of the Sultāns, and there being a great number of the Amirs of Ghūr in his service, and he claiming the territory of Ghūr by right of heritage, set out at first, and Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Čimāj, the Amir [ruler] of Balkh, began to follow after him, at the distance of some leagues, by the route of Upper Ghargistān, while Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-dūz, marched to Firūz-koh with his army from Hirāt, it being the nearest route by way of the Harīw-ar-Rūd', or valley of the Harī river.

Sultān Ghiyas-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din came out of Firūz-koh, and proceeded to a place which is called Rāgh-i-Zarrir* [the Zarir plain] and the forces of Ghūr there assembled around them. Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-dūz, of Hirāt, used the utmost expedition, being ambitious of this, that perhaps the capture of Firūz-koh and the destruction of the Ghūriān army might be achieved by him.

When he arrived near to the position of the Ghūriān forces, and both armies confronted each other, and preparations were being made for coming to action, so that only about the distance of half-a-league intervened between them, and the ranks of either army could be seen by the other, two Ghūriān warriors from the midst of the army formed a compact, and came to the front of the [marshalled] ranks, and presented themselves before the Sultān, dismounted from their horses, and, bowing their faces to the ground, said, "We two your servants will disperse the army of Hirāt;" so by command they mounted, and, rousing both their horses, they drew their swords, and, like the fierce blast, and the flying cloud, they approached towards the ranks of the Turks of Hirāt, crying out, "Where is Malik Yal-dūz? We seek Malik Yal-dūz!"

Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-dūz, was standing beneath his canopy, and his troops all pointed towards him, so that those Ghūriān warriors knew which was Yal-dūz; and both

---

* This clause of the sentence is only contained in the best copies of the text.
* In some copies "Rāgh-i-Zar," which is much the same, zar signifying golden or yellow, and Zarir the name of a grass yielding a yellow dye. One old copy has Wejz, which signifies pure.
of them like hungry lions and rampant elephants fell upon Yal-dūz, and brought him from his horse to the ground by the wounds inflicted by their swords. When the troops of Hirāt beheld this heroism, boldness, and intrepidity, they gave way and took to flight. As Almighty God had brought those two Sultāns, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din, beneath the shadow of His kindness, He made such a victory and triumph as this a miracle of theirs.

The next day a body of horse, lightly equipped and ruthless, was nominated to proceed against the force of Kīmāj of Balkh. They fell upon his army unawares, put it to flight, took Kīmāj, and slew him, and brought his head to the presence of the Sultāns together with his standard. Then the head of Kīmāj was placed in a bag, and entrusted to a horseman's charge, and they sent him to meet their uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd. The latter had arrived near at hand; and, when they [the Sultāns] had despatched the head of Kīmāj, they put their forces in motion to follow, and pushed on towards their uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din.

When that horseman brought the head of Kīmāj to the presence of Malik Fakhr-ud-Din he determined upon returning, and made his troops mount; and, by the time they had become ready prepared to begin their retreat, the two Sultāns had come up [with their forces] and had occupied all the parts around. On reaching the place where their uncle was, Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din at once dismounted from their horses, and proceeded to receive him, and paid him great attention and consideration, and said, "It is necessary that your lordship should return;" and they conducted him to their camp and seated

* This "miracle" is not mentioned by other authors, with the exception of a very few who copy from our author. The Raṣṭat-ūṣ-Ṣafā says that the brothers despatched two bodies of troops to oppose the advance of two of the confederates, the ruler of Hirāt, whose name is not given, and Kīmāj of Balkh; and that the Ghūrān forces slew both of them, and returned triumphant to the presence of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, who despatched the head of the son of Kīmāj of Balkh to his uncle, who repented of his expedition, and sought to retire. Troops had been despatched, however, to surround him, and the brothers followed; and, when they found Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, their uncle, had been intercepted, they went to him. Then follows much copied almost word for word from our author.

1 Three copies of the text have "several thousand horse," &c.
him on a throne, and both those sovereigns \(^2\) stood up before him with their hands stuck in their girdles [in token of servitude]. From this Malik Fakhr-ud-Din became filled with shame and compunction, and, overcome with humiliation, he spoke to them some words of rebuke, arose, and said, “You mock me!” They mollified him by many apologies and excuses, and accompanied him one stage, and sent him on his return back to Bāmiān; and the territory of Ghūr was left vacant to Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn.

After that event he proceeded into Garmsir and Zamīn-i-Dāwar, and that tract was liberated \(^3\); and, as Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz, of Hirāt, had been slain, and the army of Hirāt had returned thither discomfited, Badr-ud-Dīn, Tughril, who was one of [Sultān] Sanjar’s slaves \(^4\), took Hirāt into his own jurisdiction, and held possession of it for a considerable time, until the inhabitants of Hirāt despatched petitions to Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn inviting him [thither], and that success \(^6\) was also achieved.

\(^2\) Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn was not then a sovereign prince, and did not become so nominally until after the taking of Ghaznīn from the Ghuzz.

\(^3\) He obtained possession of Bāghais at the same period, and is said to have entered into a connexion with the chiefs of Ghajristān, and established his sway also over that tract of country. From whose possession Garmsir and Zamīn-i-Dāwar were “liberated” our author does not state. Fašīl-ī, however, mentions that in the same year in which he succeeded his cousin, 558 H., Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn fought an engagement with the Ghuzz, vanquished them, and imposed tribute on them. The Ghuzz were doubtless in possession of the districts mentioned above.

\(^4\) This “success” could have been but a very temporary one, for, by our author’s own account, Tughril was in possession of Hirāt up to the year when Sultān Shāh, Khwārazmī, was defeated by the Ghūris, which event took place in 588 H. In another place, our author, referring to this “taking” of Hirāt, says it happened in 571 H., yet seventeen years after Tughril still, by his own account, held Hirāt. See page 249, and note \(^8\), page 379.

During the Khilāfat of the ‘Abbāsī Khalīfah, Mīḥdī, the Ghuzz entered Māwar-un-Nahr from the north, and became converts to Islam; but Muḥānna’-i-Mītī [the “great Mokanna” of Moore’s poem of “Lalla Rookh”], the false prophet, reduced them under his sway. When the ‘Abbāsīs set about putting down Muḥānna’, the Ghuzz deserted him, and retired to the more southern parts of Māwar-un-Nahr. They were constantly engaged in hostilities with the Kārlughīfah Turk-māns, who were generally victorious over them. The Ghuzz were in the habit of paying tribute to the sovereign of the period, and, when Sultān Sanjar ascended the throne of the Saljūks, 40,000 Ghuzz families entered the territory of Khūltān and Chagḥānīān, and paid a tribute of 24,000 sheep to the royal kitchen. In 545 H., according to Alī, when Amīr Kimāj [the Kimāj mentioned above, and in note \(^4\), page 336, also probably] was Wāli of.
THE SHAHSABĀNĪAH DYNASTY OF GHŪR.

After some years Fāras and the territory of Kāliyūn [or Kāl-yūn], and Fiwār and Baghshor⁶, came into his posses-

Balkh, the Ghuzz became disaffected about the collection of the tribute. Kimāj was at enmity with Amir Zangi, son of Khalifah, Shaibani, the Wali of Tūkhāristān [this was a short time before Fakhir-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, Ghūrī, became ruler of Tūkhāristān and Bāmīlān], who, seizing the opportunity of Kimāj’s absence at the court of Sultān Sanjar, and fearing lest the Ghuzz, who had lately been worsted by the Kārluchs, and had abandoned Māwar-un-Nahr, and contemplated migration into Khurāsān, might be induced to join his enemy, Amir Kimāj, he invited them to take up their quarters in Tūkhāristān, wherein he assigned them lands. In a dispute about the revenue, brought about by Kimāj out of enmity to Zangi, the Ghuzz slew him and one of his sons, and, at last, Sultān Sanjar moved against them, and he fell captive into their hands. Sanjar returned from captivity in 551 H., having effected his escape by the aid of Ḍāmād, son of Kimāj, governor of Tīrmid [see page 155, and note ⁶, page 156], and died in 552 H. In 553 H. the Ghuzz poured forth from Balkh [the province of?], and moved towards Sarakhs. Mu‘ayyid-i-‘A’inah-dār, the slave of Mahmūd, Sanjar’s nephew, and, afterwards, ruler of Nishapūr [see note ⁷, page 180], and other parts of Upper Khurāsān, made a night attack upon them, and overthrew them with great slaughter. He encountered them again, two months after, in sight of Marw, whether they had moved, when the Ghuzz were victorious, and they carried on great depredations in Khurāsān. Other events followed, which are too long to be related here; but, subsequently, Mu‘ayyid became independent, and acquired power over greater part of Khurāsān. The Ghuzz were in possession, however, of Marw, Sarakhs, Balkh, and some other tracts; and some parts were under the sway of the Khwārazmīs. Hirāt was held by a chief named Malik Aetkin, who, in 559 H., marched into Ghūr with a considerable army; but, the Ghūrīs being prepared to receive him, Aetkin was slain in the battle which ensued. This in all probability is the Taj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, of our author. He was succeeded at Hirāt by one of his own officers, styled Babar-ud-Dīn in Alīf, and he must be our author’s Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughrīl. This chief, not considering himself safe from the power of Amir Mu‘ayyid, and having some previous acquaintance with the Ghuzz chiefs, called upon them to help him, intending to give up Hirāt to them. On the appearance of the Ghuzz, however, the people of Hirāt rose against Babar-ud-Dīn, and put him to death in the same year. [See note ⁸, page 239.] Mu‘ayyid was himself put to death in 569 H. Saif-ud-Dīn, Mu‘ammad of Ghūr, was slain when engaging the Ghuzz of Balkh in 558 H., and in the same year his successor, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, defeated them with great slaughter, and imposed tribute on [some portion?] of them, and in 571 H. his brother, Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, encountered a tribe of them, as will be mentioned under his reign. Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, gained possession of Hirāt [temporarily?] in 571 H. These events appear to be identical with what our author relates above. See also second paragraph to note at page 349, page 367, and note ⁶, page 379.

⁶ With respect to these proper names there is great discrepancy in the different copies of the text. The majority of the best and oldest copies are as above; but in place of Fāras, some have Fādas and Kādas, and one Kādūsh, which place is mentioned, in several places, written in the same manner. In place of Baghshor, contained in one set of copies, Saif-rūd is contained in the other set. I have before alluded to this curious fact that the twelve copies collated appear, in several places, to be two distinct sets of the original. In
sion; and, when these parts came under his jurisdiction, he took to wife the daughter of his uncle, the Malikah, Tāj-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Gohar Malik [Malikah?] the daughter of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain. The whole of Gharrājistān, and Ṭāl-kān 7, and Juzarwān 8, devolved upon him; and Tīgin-ābād, out of the district of Jarūm 9, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn made over to his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, after he had returned from Sijistān 1. He [now] began to despatch [bodies of] horse towards Ghaznīn, and the district of Zābul, and parts adjacent thereunto; and, at that period, the territory of Kābul, Zābul, and Ghaznīn were in the hands of the tribes of the Ghuzz, who had wrested them out of the possession of Khusrau Shāh 2. The reign of Khusrau Shāh had terminated, and his son, Khusrau Malik, had made Lohor his capital.

The Amīrs of the Ghuzz [tribe] who were in Ghaznīn, not being able to oppose the forces of Ghūr [in the field] threw up intrenchments, and, from the excessive firmness of the Ghuzz, the Ghūrīān army very nearly sustained an overthrow. Sulṭān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn retired, and despatched a body of Ghūrīāns to the aid of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn 3. Suddenly a body of Ghuzz warriors attacked [the army of Ghūr], and captured the royal standard of the Ghūrīāns, and carried it away within their own intrenchments. The Ghūrīān forces in the right and left wings imagined that

7 A different place to Tāe-kān.
8 This is the place referred to fifth paragraph of note 9, pages 257-8.
9 In a few copies "and the district of Jarūm and Tīgin-ābād," &c.
1 See page 184.
2 This remark confirms the statements of those authors who state that Khusrau Shāh returned to his sacked and devastated capital after 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, had abandoned it, and also tends to show that it must have been the same monarch, and not his father, who fled from Ghaznīn when 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, appeared before it. See para. 10 to note 3, p. 347, and note 3, p. 350.
3 The whole of this sentence, and the first word of the next, are neither contained in either of the Paris copies, nor in the Bodleian MS., the I.O.L. MS., 1952, or the R. A.S. MS.; and, certainly, the passage is somewhat obscure. It would appear that Ghiyās-ud-Dīn retired to obtain reinforcements, and also that he subsequently returned [as mentioned a few sentences after], which latter statement is contained in those very copies which omit the former. The Sulṭān, however, could not have retired to any very great distance, otherwise he would not have been in time to take part in the closing scene of the battle.
the royal standard had accompanied their own centre into the intrenchments of the enemy, and they advanced to the attack in all directions, broke through the intrenchments of the Ghuzz, and carried them, and put the Ghuzz to the rout. The news reached Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, who returned; and the troops of Ghūr commenced slaughtering the Ghuzz, and laid the greater number of that race on the earth, and Ghaznin was left in the possession of the Ghūris. This victory was gained in the year 569 H.

When Ghaznin was conquered, Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din placed his brother, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, upon the throne of the Maḥmūdis⁴, and returned himself to Firūz-koh.

After two years, he [Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Dīn] summoned his troops [again], and the armies of Ghūr and Ghaznin were got ready, and he advanced to the gates of the city of Hīrāt. The people of that place had been manifesting signs of duty and desire [to place themselves under his rule]. When Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, became aware of this [latter] fact, he evacuated the city of Hīrāt, and retired to the Khwārazm-Shāhis⁶; and, in the year 671 H.⁷, the city of Hīrāt was taken possession of. Two years subsequent to this, Fūshanj was taken; and, after these successes, the

⁴ This is the second date given by our author throughout the whole of this Section. At page 112 he says the Ghuzz held possession of Ghaznin twelve years, and here says Ghiyās-ud-Dīn took it from them in 569 H., by which account they must have got possession of it in 557 H. Khusrau Shāh died in 555 H.; so, if the above dates are correct, they could not have wrested Ghaznin out of his hands. I think our author is pretty correct as to the period the Ghuzz held Ghaznin, and they appear to have obtained possession of it in 557 H., or 558 H., probably after the death of Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain's son, and defeat of the Ghūrīs by the Ghuzz.

⁵ From which time only he is entitled to be styled Sulṭān. Faşıh-ī says that as early as 566 H. the Maliks of Ghūr had acquired power in the Ghaznin territory and in part of Hind, and the Khwārazm Shāhs in 'Irāk and Khūrāsān; but agrees with our author as to the date of the acquirement of the city of Ghaznin, but some other authors state that it was taken in 568 H. It was in 569 H. that Malik Mu'ayyid-i-Ā'īnah-dār, in concert with Sulṭān Shāh, fought an engagement with Sulṭān 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Takish. See note ⁷, page 180, and note ⁷, page 245.

⁶ Faşıh-ī does not mention the acquirement of Hīrāt among the events of 571 H., but states that in that year Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Wālī of Ghaznin, encountered the Sanḵurān, a sept of the Ghuzz tribe, and slew many of them. Some other authors, who say that Ghaznin was taken in 568 H., state that Hīrāt was acquired two years after—in 570 H. The particulars of Tughril's death will be found at page 379.

⁷ See note ⁶, page 379.
Malik of Nimroz and Sijistan despatched envoys, and he enrolled himself among the vassals of that Sulṭān.

Subsequently to these events, the Ghuzz Maliks who were in Kirmān paid submission to him; and different parts of the territory of Khurāsān, which were dependent upon Ḥirāt and Balkh, such as Ṭāl-kān, Andkhūd, Maimand Fāryāb, Panj-dih, Marw-ar-Rūd, Dājzak, Kilaft, the whole of those towns came into the possession of the Ghiyāšī officers, and the Khūṭbah and the coin became adorned by the august name of Sulṭān Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn.

After some time, Sulṭān Shāh, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Māhmūd, son of ʿI-yal-Arsalān, Khwārazm Shāh, was ousted by his brother, Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, and presented himself at the Court of Sulṭān Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn. After a time he became seditious, as has been previously recorded, and departed for Khiṭā, and from thence brought aid, and took Marw, and began to ravage the frontier districts of the territories of Ghūr, and commenced harrying and plundering them, until, in the year 588 H., Sulṭān Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn commanded, so that Sulṭān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn from Ghaznin, Malik Shams-ud-Dīn of Bāmiān, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab, from Sijistan, with their forces, assembled at Rūdbār of Marw, and they came and confronted the forces of Sulṭān Shāh, who, with his troops, marched out of Marw, and proceeded up [the river]; and, in opposing the Sulṭān, used to make irregular and sudden attacks, and to continually harass the foragers of the Sulṭān’s army. For a period of six months

8 Malik ʿImād-ud-Dīn, Dīnār, the Ghuzz chief, driven out of the territory of Sarākhš by Sulṭān Shāh, Khwārazm [see note 8, page 246], retired towards Kirmān in 581 H.; and, taking advantage of the distracted state of that kingdom, succeeded in establishing himself therein in Rajab, 583 H., and reigned over it for a period of eight years, and his son succeeded him. The subjection of the Ghuzz rulers of Kirmān to Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn is not confirmed by other authors.

9 Called ʿ2150 Maihand by some other writers. "Meemuna" and "Meimuna" are mere Anglicised forms, according to the rule of writing Oriental names contrary to the mode of the inhabitants of places, and also contrary to the way in which they are spelt.

1 This name is somewhat doubtful. Some have Kāshīf, but the majority of copies have كهف probably of Ibn-i-Ḥūkal.

2 See page 239 and note 2.

8 The same that was taken prisoner in the battle with Sulṭān Sanjar, along with ʿAlā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, and ʿAlī, Jatrī, and ransomed for 50,000 dīnārs. See note 8, p. 358.
this harassing warfare went on; and the two armies continued in proximity to each other until Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Din commanded that a ferry over the river Murghāb should be sought for, and he crossed it [with his own forces], and the other troops crossed over after him; and Sultan Shah was defeated and put to the rout.

This success was gained in the year 588 H. ¹; and Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, the Sanjari, in that encounter, fell into the hands of the Bāmīān troops, and they brought his head to the presence of Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din. On that day, likewise, Malik Shams-ud-Din of Bāmīān, son of Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas’ūd, who was the Sultan’s uncle, obtained [the honour of] a canopy of state, and they gave him the title of Sultan.

In this same year likewise, previous to the time that the forces of Ghūr, Ghaznin, and Bāmīān were about to assemble at Rudbār of Marw, for the purpose of restraining Sultan Shāh, commands had been issued for the martyrdom of the gentle and beneficent Sultan, Khusrau Malik. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

Every year fresh successes were taking place in different directions of the territories of Ghūr, until, in the year

¹ This was the year in which, according to most writers, and also our author himself, Mu’izz-ud-Din of Ghaznin defeated the Rāe of Dihl.

² Our author, in another place, page 377, says Ghaznin was taken in 569 H. [others say, in 568 H.], and that in 571 H. Hirāt was taken, and Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, evacuated the city on the approach of the Ghūrs, and joined the Khwārazmīs. The Ghūrs could not have held Hirāt very long, for this affair with Sultan Shāh, in which Tughril was taken, took place, by our author’s own account, in 588 H., seventeen years after that evacuation of Hirāt by Tughril, and he is even then styled “Tughril of Hirāt” by our author, and so he styles him in his account of Tughril and his death, at page 249. From this it is obvious that the Ghūrs could only have held Hirāt for a very short time after 569 H., and Tughril must have regained possession of it soon after, and only finally left it, on the advance of the Ghūrs against Sultan Shāh, in this year, 588 H., or, more correctly, in 587 H. See note ³, page 374.

³ One of these pious brothers and model Sultans of our author, Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, having deceitfully inveigled this amiable monarch into his power, broke his promises, and sent him and his family away into Ghūr to his other worthy brother who immured him in a fortress. At the time in question, finding Khusrau Malik an obstacle in their way, they had him put to death, and also his son, Bahram Shāh. Here our author says it took place in 588 H., and 587 H., in his account of Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, but, in his account of Khusrau Malik, he says it happened in 598 H.! See pages 114 and 115, and note ⁴ to page 112, para. 10.

⁴ Sic in all the copies.
596 H., Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din-i-Takisht, Khwarezm Shah, died. Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din moved into Khurasan with the armies of Ghur and Ghaznin, and advanced to the gate of Nishapur. While the forces occupied a position in the vicinity of Nishapur, and hostilities commenced, trustworthy persons have, among the miracles of the victorious Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, related on this wise, that one day he mounted, in order to reconnoitre a place from which to attack the city, and rode round the edge of the ditch, and reached a spot from whence, in his august opinion, he determined to make the attack, as being the point where the capture of that city was likely to be effected. He made a sign with his whip, saying:—"It is necessary that the battering-rams should be planted from this tower to that tower, in order to make a breach, and enable a general assault to be made, so that the capture of this city may be effected, and this victory achieved." At the very time that he made this indication [with his whip] towards those towers, the very portion of the walls of the city which he had pointed out, and the [two] towers, with everything near them, gave way, and the whole fell down, and became destroyed in such wise that not one brick remained upon another, and Nishapur was taken. Malik 'Ali Shah', son of Sultan 'Imad-ud-Din, Takish, Khwarezm Shah.

8 At page 255, in our author's account of his succession, he says, "'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Takish, brought his father's dominions under his own jurisdiction in 595 H."

9 If we choose to be guided by what English and some other European writers of Histories of India say, on the authority of translations of Firuztah's work, from which their inspirations are drawn, Ghiyas-ud-Din was either a mere imbecile or a puppet, for he is said by several of them to have "retained nothing of the empire but the name," whilst others, including Elphinstone, of whom I expected something better, rush into the almost opposite extreme and say, that "he appears to have resumed his activity before his death, and to have been present in person in all the campaigns in Khordsdn except the last;" but they forget, or, more likely, are unable to, mention, when all these campaigns took place, and against whom. The fact is that none of these statements are correct. Ghiyas-ud-Din reigned in glory to the end of his days, and his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, held the sovereignty of Ghaznin subject to him, and undertook the conquest of Upper India by his commands. His last campaign, according to Yafa-i, was in 597-8 H., only a few months before his death. See the specimens of translations under his brother's reign, Section XIX., and note 7, page 255, and note 8, next page.

1 He is styled "Sultan 'Alf Shah," and "a very great and illustrious prince," at page 252, and also "Malik " in some places.
Shāh, together with the Khwārazmi Maliks who were there, and chiefs, and other persons of distinction, such as Sur-tāsh and Gaz-lak Khān, and a considerable body of others, fell into their hands.

To Malik Ziyā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Abū 'Alī, Shansabī, who was the uncle’s son of both the [Ghūrīẁān] Sultāns, and the son-in-law of Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, they gave the government and throne of Nishāpūr, and returned [to their own dominions] that same year. The next year [597 H.] they advanced to Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān, and took it; and Malik Naṣīr-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak, they installed at Marw; and conferred the government of Sarakhs upon their uncle’s son, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Zangi, who was the son of Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Masʿūd, Bāmiānī. Malik Tāj-ud-Din acquired jurisdiction over the whole of that territory, and Khurāsān became clear.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, used great endeavours that they [the Sultāns] might perhaps

---

1. Yāfā-i gives the following account of this “miracle” which our author makes so much of. “In the month of Rajab, 597 H., the Ghīris with an immense army, and ninety great elephants, each of which was like a mountain in size, advanced against Shād-yāk [of Nishāpūr] where was, at that time, 'Alī Shāh, Sultan Muḥammad’s brother, who had very recently arrived there on his return from 'Irāq, and several men of distinction in the service of his other brothers. The Ghīrīẁān Sultāns [the two brothers], in order to reconnoitre the place, were making a circuit around it, and came to a stand opposite the city [Nishāpūr]. A vast crowd of people, from within Shād-yāk, in order to gaze upon the Ghīrīẁān army, flocked to one of the towers facing it. Suddenly the tower gave way, from the crowd within it [the fortifications at the time were not in good repair], and fell down. This the Ghīris took as a good omen, and, during the same day [through this accident], took possession of the place.” Another author states that the place was at once assaulted, captured, and plundered, and the date given is Rajab, 597 H., not 596 H., as our author states. Nishāpūr was retaken from the Ghīris five months after. See page 393, note 8.

2. This is incorrect. See page 346, and note 8 and note 9, page 391.

3. Malik Ziyā-ud-Din was merely left in charge as governor. The “throne of Nishāpūr,” is one of our author’s absurdities.

4. After getting possession of Nishāpūr Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din returned to Hirāt, and his brother, Muʿizz-ud-Din, marched into Kuhistān for the purpose of destroying the strongholds of the Mulāḥidah heretics of that part, and, after several [minor] encounters with them, an accommodation was brought about, and Junābād was occupied, and the Kāzī of Tūlak [the same who was previously left as governor of Tabarhindah. See the reign of Muʿizz-ud-Din, Section XIX.] was left there in charge.

5. Sultan, by his own account, and a much greater one than either of the Ghūrīs in many respects, and the ruler of a far greater extent of territory.
consent to accept his services [as their vassal], and relinquish Khurāsān to him again; but it was not given up to him. Trustworthy persons' have related after this manner, that, when Takīsh, Khwārazm Shāh [the father], died, Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh [the son], sent envoys to the presence of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, the purport of their embassy being to the effect, that, between the Sultāns of Ghūr and his father, a compact of friendship and unanimity was firmly established. He, their servant, desired that, according to that same compact, he might be [accounted] in the series of their other servants. If his exalted opinion thought well of it, the Sultān-i-Ghāzi, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, should take his [servant's] mother to wife, and consider him, his very humble servant, as a son; that from the Ghiyāṣīah Court he, his [Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn's] servant, might receive an honorary robe, and a patent of investiture for Khurāsān and Khwārazm, and his servant would set free all the territory of 'Irāk and Māwar-un-Nahr from the hands of enemies.

When they [the envoys] had discharged the purport of their mission, Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn did not become agreeable to the proposed union, and hostility arose. As the Almighty God had ordained that the whole of the dominions of Irān should fall under the sway of Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, he, upon several occasions, towards the close of Ghiyas-ud-Dīn's life, retired discomfited before the forces of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and, at last, those Sultāns died before him.

Upon several occasions rich dresses of honour from the Court of the Khilāfat, from the Lord of the Faithful, Al-
Mustaḍī B'illah\(^1\), and from the Lord of the Faithful, Un-Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn Ullah, reached the Court of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn. On the first occasion, Ibn-ur-Rabbī came; and the Kāzī, Majd-ud-Dīn, [styled] the Model, went along with him to the Court of the Khilāfat, and, on the second occasion, Ibn-ul-Khatīb came; and the father of this their servant, Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dīn, son of Minhāj-i-Sarāj, he [the Sultan] nominated to proceed along with him to the Court of the Khilāfat\(^2\). On the arrival of the honorary dress from the Court of Un-Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn Ullah, the imperial naubat\(^3\) five times a day was assumed by the Sultān.

His dominions became wide and extended, and from the east [eastern extremity] of Hindūstān, from the frontier of Čīn and Mā-Čīn, as far as 'Irāk, and from the river Jihūn and Khurāsān to the sea-shore of Hurmūz, the Khuṭbāh was adorned by his auspicious name. He reigned for a period of forty-three years.

His bounty and benefactions, bestowed upon the meritorious, the learned, the recluse, and the devout, reached to the extremes of the empire of Islam, from the east to the west, to 'Arab and to 'Ajam, to Turkīstān and to Hind; and the names of all those meriting his bounty and charity were recorded in his civil courts and record offices. His life extended to a period of sixty-three years; and the removal of this great monarch from this transitory sphere to the eternal habitation took place at the city of Hīrat, on Wednesday, the 27th of the sacred month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal\(^4\), 599 H. His mausoleum was raised by the side of the Jāmi' Masjid of Hīrat. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

The Most High God had adorned the incomparable nature of the victorious Sultān, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥam-

---

\(^1\) The Khalifah's proper name and title is Al-Mustaḍī Bi-Nūr Ullah. He died 575 H.

\(^2\) The Khalifah was stimulating the Ghūrīn Sultāns to hostility against Sultān Muḥammad's father, Sultān Takīsh, and afterwards did the same with respect to himself. See page 243, and note 1.

\(^3\) Kettledrums and other instruments sounded, at stated periods, before the gate of sovereigns and great men.

\(^4\) Some copies have the 7th, but the 27th of the month is confirmed by other authors. His tomb was on the north side of the Jāmi' Masjid which he had himself founded. Some authors state that 597 H. was the year of his decease, and others again, 998 H.
mad-i-Sām, with divers virtues and endowments, both outward and inward; and his Court was graced with learned doctors of religion and law ecclesiastical, accomplished scholars, illustrious philosophers, and the celebrated in eloquence; and his magnificent Court had become the asylum of the world, and the retreat of the worthy and laudable persons of the earth. Chiefs of the [holders of] religious tenets of every sect were there gathered together, incomparable poets were there present, and masters in the art of poetry and prose were entertained in the service of his sublime Court.

At the outset of the career of those sovereigns [Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn], both the brothers followed the tenets of the Kirāmi sect, in imitation of their ancestors and [the people of] their dominions; but Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, the younger brother, when he ascended the Ghaznī throne, the people of that city and territory being followers of the tenets of the Great Imām, Abū Ḥanīfah of Kūfā, in conformity with them, adopted the doctrines of Abū Ḥanīfah. Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, however, saw, whilst in a dream, that he was used to be in the same masjid along with the illustrious Kāzi, Waḥīd-ud-Dīn, Marwazi, who followed the religious doctrines of the Traditionists, and who was one of the leaders of the Shāfī'i sect. Unexpectedly, Imām Shāfī'i himself enters, and proceeds to the Miḥrāb, and begins to repeat the prayers; and Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and Kāzi Waḥīd-ud-Dīn, both of them follow Imām Shāfī'i in so doing.

On awakening from his dream, the Sultān commanded, so that, at break of day, Kāzi Waḥīd-ud-Dīn was requested to deliver a discourse. When he occupied the seat of the pulpit, he remarked, during the discourse, saying,
"Sovereign of Islam! this your servant hath during the past night dreamt a dream," and he related the very same dream that the Sultan had himself dreamt, for he had had one like it; whereupon, when the Kāżī descended from the chair, and went up to make his obeisance to the Sultan, the latter seized the blessed hand of Kāżī, Wahīd-ud-Dīn, and adopted the tenets of Imām Shaf'ī.  

When the withdrawal of the Sultan to the sect of the Traditionists became divulged, a load came upon the hearts of the 'Ulamā of the sect of Muḥammad-i-Kirām [the Kirāmis]. Of this body, the great ecclesiastics were numerous; but, at that time, the most eloquent among them all was Imām, Ṣadr-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Haiṣām, the Nishāpūrī, who was resident at, and the head of the college of the city of Āfshīn of Ghurjistān. He composed a strophe on the Sultan, and in it censured his withdrawal from the sect; and, when that strophe came to the Sultan's knowledge, his sacred mind became much irritated with him, and Imām Ṣadr-ud-Dīn found it impossible to continue to dwell within the dominions of Ghūr. The strophe is this:—

[This polemical squib is of some length, and varies more or less in almost every copy, is of no particular interest, and need scarcely be translated.]

Imām Ṣadr-ud-Dīn, on this account, removed out of the territory of Ghūr, and proceeded to Nishāpūr, and there he remained for the space of a year; after which he despatched [another] strophe to the presence of the Sultan, so that he was sent for to come back again, and a robe of honour was despatched; and he returned to the Court from Nishāpūr again. Strophe:—

[These lines have also been left out for the reasons previously given. As may be imagined, they are as full of fulsome adulation as the first were of aspersion.]

Trustworthy persons have thus related, that Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, in his early youth, was greatly addicted to conviviality, and fond of the sports of the field; and from

9 The Āṣār-ul-Bīlād states that Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn used to copy Kurāns with his own hand, and sell them, and give the money they were sold for in alms to the poor. The celebrated Imām, Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of 'Umr of Rāz, wrote and dedicated to him a work entitled Laṭāfī-i-Ghiyāṣī. See under the reign of Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Section XIX.
the capital city, Firūz-koh, which was the seat of government, as far as the Zamīn [district] and town of Dāwar, which was the winter capital, not a human being dared to pursue the chase. Between these two cities [towns] is a distance of forty leagues, and he [the Sultan] had commanded that a pillar should be erected at each league of distance; and in Zamīn-i-Dāwar he had laid out a garden, and he had given it the name of Garden of Iram, and certainly, for pleasantness and freshness, no such garden had ever been seen in the whole world, nor did any monarch possess the like of it. The length of this garden was more than sufficient for two courses of a horse, and the whole of its glades were adorned with pine and juniper-trees, and various sorts of shrubs and odoriferous herbs; and the Sultan had commanded, so that, adjoining the wall of that garden, a plain had been cleared corresponding in length and breadth with the garden itself.

Once every year he used to give directions, so that for a distance of fifty or sixty leagues or more, a nargah [semi-circle] of huntsmen would be drawn out; and it would require the space of a whole month for the two extremities of this semicircle of huntsmen to close up. More than ten thousand wild beasts and animals of the chase, of all species and descriptions, used to be driven into that plain; and, on the days of chase, the Sultan was in the habit of coming out on the pavilion of the garden, and holding a convivial entertainment; and his slaves, his Maliks, and the servants of the Court, one by one, with the royal permission, would mount on horseback and enter the plain, and chase and kill the game in the Sultan's august sight.

Upon one occasion he was desirous of entering the plain and enjoying the sport, upon which Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubarak Shāh, got upon his feet, and repeated a quatrain. The Sultan retracted his intention, and devoted himself

---

1 The famous garden of Shadād, son of ʿĀd, described by the eastern poets as a perfect model of the promised Muḥammadan Paradise.
2 One set of copies of the original use the word ʿīj and the other ʿij. They are both of much the same signification.
3 If such can be called "the chase."
4 The same who composed the History of the Shansabāns in verse, referred to by our author at page 300. Other writers state that he was one of the most learned of his time in the science of astrology.
to enjoyment. The following is the quatrain in question:

"To follow the wine, the beloved, and enjoyment,
Will be better than that thou shouldst pursue the chase.
When the gazelle of paradise is within thy net,
Of what use that thou shouldst follow the mountain goat?"

Trustworthy persons have related that, when Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din forswore wine, and devoted himself to rectitude and goodness, at the period that Sultan Shāh, Khwārazm Shāh, brought the forces of Khītā against Khurāsān, and made Marw his capital, the latter began to harry the border-tracts of the territory of Ghūr, and brought his troops to the Dahanah-i-Sher—the Lion's Jaws—[Pass] of Sarakhs, and despatched an emissary to the presence of the Sultan, Ghiyās-ud-Din, and preferred certain requests of his own to him. The Sultan commanded that an entertainment should be prepared to do honour to the envoy, and a gay party was brought together. Wine was circulated among the Maliks and Amīrs of Ghūr, and the envoy was treated with great honour; and he was plied with wine, in order that, when in a state of inebriety, the disposition of Sultan Shāh might be discovered from his emissary.

For the Sultan's own drinking, sweet pomegranate juice was poured into a flask, and, when it came to the Sultan's turn to pledge, they would fill his goblet with that pomegranate juice, and would present it to him. When the envoy of Sultan Shāh became excited from the effects of the wine, he rose to his knees, and requested a minstrel to sing the following quatrain, which he accordingly did:

"Of that lion whose abode is within the Lion's Jaws,
The lions of the universe are in great affright.
Thou shouldst, O lion, from 'The Jaws' show thy teeth,
Since these are [as though] in 'The Lion's Jaws' from terror."

When the envoy called for this verse, and the minstrel sang it, Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din's colour changed, and the

---

4 See page 246 and note 6.
5 The point of these lines depends upon the play on the word Dahanah. It signifies the jaws, the mouth of a pass, yawning, and the like.
Maliks of Ghūr became much agitated. Khwajah Ṣafi-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, one of the most distinguished of the Wazîrs of his Court, and who was a miracle of wit and address, and endowed with a forcible poetic genius, and composed excellent poetry, arose to his feet, and, looking on the ground, in reply to the envoy, called on the minstrel for this verse:

"On that day when we shall raise the standard of hostility,
And shall take in hand the enemy of the territory of the world,
Should any lion from 'The Jaws' dare show his teeth,
We, with our mace, will crush his teeth within 'The Jaws.'"

Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din was greatly pleased at this, and bestowed a liberal present upon the Khwajah, and honoured him with honorary dresses of great value; and the whole of the Maliks commended him. The Almighty have mercy upon the whole of them! and may He keep the Sultān of Islām, the sovereign of the seven climes, the great king of kings, the lord over all the rulers of Turk, 'Arab, and 'Ajam, the defender of the world and of the faith, the glory of Islām and of the Faithful, the aider of kings and emperors, the protector of the dominions of the Almighty, the pastor of the servants of God, the aided by Heaven, the victorious over the greatest of all species, the place of safety to the orthodox, the heir of the dominions of Sulimān, ABU-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAḤMŪD, son of the Sultān [I-yal-timish], the Kasim [the co-sharer] of the Lord of the Faithful, in sovereignty and dominion for years unending, permanent and lasting, for the sake of His Prophet Muḥammad, on whom be peace abundantly abundant.

7 I have generally abstained from giving our author's fulsome and unctuous prayers for his patron, the puppet and recluse, who nominally ruled at Dihli; but this was such a curious specimen that I could not leave it out. It shows that our author did not stick at any exaggeration—and the above contains many—and is a convincing proof that he "rarely indulges in high-flown eulogy, but relates his facts in a plain straightforward manner," &c. We must not imagine that all the epithets bestowed upon these rulers by their parasites were the titles they assumed.
THE SHANSABĂNĪAH DYNASTY OF GHūR. 389

**Titles and Names of the Sultan**:—

US-SULṬĀN-UL-AʿZAM',

GHIYĀṢ-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN,

ABŪ-L-FATH, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF SĀM

KĀSIM-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN.

**Offspring**.

Sultān-ul-Aʿzam, Ghīyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd.
Malikah-ul-Muʿazzamah, Jalāl-ud-Dunyā wa-ud-Dīn.

Length of his reign:—Forty-three¹ years.
Summer capital:—The City of Fīrūz-koh of Ghūr.
Winter capital:—The district of Dāwar.

**Kāzīs of his Court**.

Kāzī-ul-Kuẓāt [Chief Kāzī], Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Harawī.
Kāzī Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Ḥarmawādī².

**Wazirs of the Kingdom**.

Fakhr-ul-Mulk, Sharaf-ud-Dīn³, Wadārī⁴.

---

8 From the way in which his titles and names are here written in the very old copy of the text, within a circular area, it is evident that this was the inscription on his coins.
9 A few copies have "Muʿaggam," but it is incorrect.
1 Forty-one in a few copies.
2 Also written Ḥarmabādī in one or two copies: probably Jarmabādī or Jarmawādī may be more correct.
3 Sharaf-ul-Aṣḥāf.
4 In one copy Fardārī.
'Ain-ul-Mulk, Sūrānī [or Sūrfānī].
Zahir-ul-Mulk, 'Abd-ullāh, Sanjari.
Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Diw-Shārī [or Diw-Shāhī].
Majd-ul-Mulk, Khwājah Šafi-ud-Dīn.

Standards.

On the right, Black; on the left, Red.

Motto on his august Signet.

“For me God alone is sufficient.”

His Sultāns and Maliks.

Sultān Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, his brother, ruler over Ghaznīn.
Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Mas‘ūd, Bāmiānī.
Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad Sām, Bāmiānī.
Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Ḥarab, Sijistānī.
Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Alb-i-Ḡāzī, son of Kāzīl Arsalān.
Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Timrānī.
Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangī, son of Mas‘ūd, Bāmiānī.
Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf, Timrānī.
Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Durr-i-Ḡūr [the Pearl of Ghūr].
Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, son of Sūrī, Mādīnī.
Malik Shāh, Wakhshī [of Wakhsh of Badakhshān].
Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Timrānī.
Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn of Mukrān.
Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Dīn, Mas‘ūd, Timrānī.

Victories and Conquests.

The territory of Hirāt, [defeat of] Kīmāj, Dāwar, Fāras, Kāliyūn, Fīwār, Saif-rūd, Ghārjistān, Tāl-kān, Juzarwān,

6 See page 346, and next page.
6 The list of these victories and conquests is only contained in three copies of the original. Even if a place was evacuated before the arrival of the Ghūrīs, it is styled a “conquest” on their reaching it. What the “conquest” of Nimroz and Sijistān was may be seen from what our author himself says at page 378. The Malik of Sijistān merely acknowledged his suzerainty.
7 Also written Bāras. See page 375 and note 6.
THE SHANSABĀNĪAH DYNASTY OF GHŪR.

Jarūm, Tīgīn-ābād, Kābul, 'Ighrāk⁸, victory over Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tūghrīl, of Hirāt, Ghaznīn, Fūshanj, Sijistān, Nimroz, Maimand [or Maihand], Fāryāb, Panj-dīh, Marw-ar-Rūd, victory over Sultān Shāh, Lohor⁹ and Maro Malkah[?]¹ Nishāpūr, and Nīsā.

XVIII. MALIK-UL-ḤĀJĪ, 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF MALIK SHUJĀ'-UD-DĪN, ABI-'ALĪ, SON OF [PIZZ-UD-DĪN], AL-ḤUSAIN, SON OF AL-ḤASAN, SHANSABI.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, was the son of Malik Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abī-'Alī², and he was the uncle's son of both the Sultāns, Ghīyās-ud-Dīn and Muʾizz-ud-Dīn, and was older than either of the brothers. He had performed the pilgrimage, as well as fought against infidels; and, in addressing him, they [the Sultāns] used to style him Khudāwand [my Lord]. The daughter of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, who was named Māh Malik [Malikah], and styled by the title of Jalāl-ud-Dunya wa-ud-Dīn, whose mother was the daughter of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jāhan-soz, was married to Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn.

That daughter was a highly dignified princess, and knew the sacred Kur'ān by heart, and she had also committed to memory the Akhbar-i-Shihābī [the Shihābī traditions⁴],

⁸ In some copies غن but it is evidently the tract from whence Saif-ud-Dīn, who joined Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh, at Ghaznī [see note ⁹, page 287], against the Mughals, took his name.

⁹ Lohor will, of course, be repeated as one of Muʾizz-ud-Dīn's victories, as Ghiyās-ud-Dīn never passed the Indus.

¹ This name is doubtful, and is not very plain in either copy of the text. It might be, Mar and Malkah. No such place is mentioned in the account of his reign, and some of the places here recorded as conquests were derived by marriage, or their rulers, as in the cases of Sijistān and Nimroz, merely acknowledged his suzerainty.

² See page 346, para. second. This Malik-ul-Ḥājī, or the Pilgrim Malik, was, by our author's own account, the son of Abū-'Alī, son of Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abī-'Alī, and therefore he was not the uncle's son of the two Sultān brothers, but the son of their uncle's son—a second cousin.

To save perplexity to the reader, I must mention that this personage is the same as was mentioned at page 346 by the name of Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Pearl of Ghūr. See also page 393, and note ⁹.

³ She was first betrothed to Sanjar Shāh, son of Tughān Shāh, son of Mu-ayyid-i-Ā'īnah-dār, Malik of Nishāpūr; and, after his, Sanjar Shāh's, captivity, betrothed to Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. See page 182.

⁴ At page 301, our author states that this princess was the depositary of the traditions of martyrdom [شهادت]; but, it is evident, from what he says here,
and her handwriting was as pearls befitting a king. Once every year she was in the habit of performing a prayer of two genuflexions, during which she would repeat the whole Kur'ān from beginning to end. The cause of her passing from the world a maid was this, that, before he was joined in wedlock to her, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, possessed a Turkish hand-maid, who was the mother of his son [Rukn-ud-Din]; but he had contracted marriage with her, and was not capable of consummating his marriage with this princess. In beauty, purity, and self-restraint, she had no equal in the whole world.

The mother of the writer of these pages was the foster-sister and school-companion of this princess; and this devotee [himself] was brought up in the princess's own hall of favour and her ḥaram of chastity, up to the period of his entering upon the bounds of adolescence, in the service of her royal dwelling, and her private apartments. The maternal uncles* of this devotee, and his maternal ancestors, were all attached to the service of that princess's Court, and to the Court of her father; and this poor individual [himself] received many proofs of that lady's favour and bounty: God reward her! At last her martyrdom and death took place in the territory of 'Irāk during the calamities which arose on the irruption of the infidels [the Mughals]. The mercy of the Almighty be upon her!

During the lifetime of Sulṭān Ghiyās-ud-Din, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din held in fief, belonging to Ghūr, the district of Bust, and Wajīah [or Wejah] of the territory of Garmsīr [of Ghūr], and Ürgān [or Urkān] of Ghaznīn*. In the battle
which the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, fought against Pithora Rae of Ajmir, and in which the Sultan was defeated, 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, accompanied the Sultan-i-Ghazi, and, during that expedition, did good service. When the Sultans of Ghur proceeded into Khurasan, and Nishapur was taken, 'Ala-ud-Din was installed in the territory of Nishapur, and, for a considerable period, he remained at the city of Nishapur, and acted towards its people with justice and beneficence.

When Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shâh, arrived from Khwarazm before the gate of Nishapur, 'Ala-ud-Din defended the place for some time. At last he entered into a convention, and surrendered the city to Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shâh, and returned again into Ghur.

When Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din was removed to the Almighty's mercy, the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, conferred the throne of Furriz-koh, and the territories of Ghur, Gharjistan, and Zamin-i-Dawar, upon him; and, in the Khutbah, his title became Malik 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad. Previous to this they used to style him Malik Ziya-ud-Din, the Pearl of Ghur.

The I. O. L. copy, and also the Ro. As. Soc. MS., and one of the others, have—"In the battle which Sultan Ghiyas and Mu'izz-ud-Din fought," &c. See under Mu'izz-ud-Din, Section XIX.

Nishapur was taken in Rajab 594. Five months afterwards—in Zi-Ka'dah—Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shâh, appeared before it. Malik Ziya-ud-Din had been left there, in command, at the head of a large force; and the walls [which, like the walls of Jericho, had fallen when Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din performed the miracle of pointing his riding whip at them, as related by our author at page 380] had been put into thorough repair. The Ghurifs came out to fight, but, finding what the Sultan's army was, "they retired," says Yâfa-i, "like so many mice into their holes." The walls were pounded to dust and the ditch filled, when Malik Ziya-ud-Din sent out the chiefs of the 'Ulama to solicit quarter for himself and troops. The Sultan acceded to his request, and he and his troops were treated with honour, and sent back to Ghur. So the Ghurifs only held Nishapur about five months. It must have been on this occasion that Ziya-ud-Din stipulated never again to draw his sword against the Sultan, referred to at page 418. After retaking Nishapur, the Sultan advanced to Marw and Sarakhs, which latter place was held by his own nephew, Hindi Khan [see page 252], on the part of the Ghurifs. He fled to Ghur on the approach of his uncle, but, the officer he left in charge not presenting himself, Sultan Muhammad left a force to invest it, and set out, vid Marw, for Khwarazm to prepare for an advance upon Hirat.

Our author has a peculiar way of his own for distracting his readers very often. After giving an account of Malik Ziya-ud-Din, under the heading of his grandfather, Shuja'-ud-Din, at page 345-6, and calling him there by the title of Ziya-ud-Din, he is here introduced again under a totally different
He held possession of Firūz-koh and the territories of Ghūr and Gharjistān for a period of four years; and in the year 601 H., when the Sultan-i-Ghāzī, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, proceeded towards Khwārazm, and took [with him] the armies of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, conducted sundry of the troops of Ghūr into Mulhidistān and Kuhistān, and advanced to the gate of the city of Kā-in, and [from thence] pushed on to Junābād of Kuhistān, and captured the castle of Kākh of Junābād; and, after having performed numerous feats of arms and holy warfare, he returned into Ghūr again.

When the Sultan-i-Ghāzī, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, attained martyrdom, Sultan Ghiyāds-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd, son of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Dīn Muhammad, son of Sām, advanced out of Bust, which was one of his fiefs, into Zamīn-i-Dāwar; and the Maliks and Amīrs of Ghūr joined Sultan Mahmūd, and he set out towards the capital city, Firūz-koh.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn came from Firūz-koh into Gharjistān, and, when he reached the head of the bridge over the Murghāb river, the Sipah-sālār, Hasan-i-Abd-ul-Malik, came up after him, and caused him to turn back; and, by command of Mahmūd, he was confined in the castle of Ashiyār of Gharjistān.

name; and it is only now, after three or four pages, that he tells us that 'Ala-ud-Dīn is the same person as figured before, in another place, under the title of Ziya-ud-Dīn. The fact is, that his correct title, up to this time, was Ziya-ud-Dīn; and, when Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn conferred the throne of Firūz-koh and other tracts upon him, his title was then changed to 'Alā-ud-Dīn. Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn held him in great estimation, and he appears to have deserved it; and this fact, taken in connexion with Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd's real character, noticed farther on, will account for the Sultan's making him sovereign over Ghūr in preference to Mahmūd, and also for Mahmūd's enmity towards him, and the murder of his son, Mahmūd-i-Irān Shāh.

1 Not the name of a territory. It is derived from mulḥid—heretic, &c. The Kuhistān of Khurāsān was full of these schismatics. All the copies of the text have the conjunction and between Mulhidistān and Kuhistān; but it reads redundant, and the heretical country of Kuhistān appears to be the more correct rendering.

2 Junābād, also called Günābād, is situated between Tabas and Hirāt. Kākh itself means a castle, a lofty building, and the like; but here refers to a small town of that name, a dependency of Junābād,—the “Goonabad” of Frazer and the maps.

3 Our author takes a most round-about way of relating ordinary events, and seems desirous of making a mystery of them. Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mahmūmad, unable to resist the combination against him, retired from Firūz-koh, was pursued, and imprisoned.
When Sultan Mahmūd was assassinated, and the sovereignty of Ghūr fell to Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz-i-Ḥusain, he caused Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, to be released from the fortress of Ashiyār, brought him to Firūz-koh, and treated him with honour and respect, until he slew the Sipah-sālār, 'Umr-i-Shalmātī, for murdering his son, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-Īrān Shāh. The cause of it was this, that, when Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, in the reign of Sultan [Ghiyās-ud-Din], Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad-i-Sām, was seized [as just previously related], his son, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-Īrān Shāh, retired to Ghaznīn. He was a prince of sufficient greatness, and endowed with perfect wisdom, knowledge, and understanding, and famed for his lofty-mindedness and activity. From Ghaznīn he proceeded into Garmsīr, and from thence came into Ghūr; and the Kashī people, who were the [most] refractory of Ghūr, to the number of about 50,000 men, joined him. Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad-i-Sām, with about 500 horse, of the main portion of his army, and some 2000 or 3000 foot, came forth from Firūz-koh, and a fight took place between them, and defeat befell the Ghūrīāns; and Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-Īrān Shāh, discomfited, retired to Ghaznīn, and again came into Garmsīr. He was seized by the Khudawand-zādah, Saif-ud-Din, Timrānī, and he brought him to the presence of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, who directed that he should be imprisoned in the residence of the Amir-i-Ḥājīb, 'Umr-i-Shalmātī.

On the day that Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, was assassinated, the Turkish slaves of Maḥmūd raised a tumult, and despatched one, who was named Amir Mangbaras-i-Zard, to put Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-
Iran Shah, to death. The writer of these words, Saraj-i-Minhaj, states on this wise:—I was in my eighteenth year in the year 607 H., and was present at the entrance [gateway] of the Sultan’s palace, in the capital city of Firuzkoh, standing looking on, as is the custom among youths, when this Amir Mangbaras-i-Zard came riding up with a wallet, with blood dropping from it, hanging from his arm. The head of Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Mahmud-i-Iran Shah—may he rest in peace!—he had placed in that wallet, and he entered into the Sultan’s palace with it.

I now return to my relation again:—In the reign of Sultan ‘Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz-i-Husain, when Malik ‘Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, obtained an opportunity, he seized Amir ‘Umri-Shalmati, saying, “Thou hast used thy endeavours in bringing about the murder of my son;” and at night he slew him. Early the next morning, when [Sultan] ‘Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, became aware of it, and the Amirs of Ghür demanded redress, ‘Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, issued commands for Malik ‘Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, to be imprisoned the second time in the fortress of Balarwan of Gharjistan. The remaining account of him, respecting what befell him when he ascended the throne of Firuz-koh the second time, will be related at the end of this Section.

XIX. Sultan Ghivas-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of Ghivas-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, Shansabi.

Sultan Ghivas-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of Sultan Ghivas-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām, was a sovereign of good qualities, and conviviality, pleasure, and jollity were dominant in his disposition.

When Sultan Ghivas-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām, his father, died 1, Mahmud was desirous that his uncle, the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu‘izz-ud-Din, should assign to him the throne of Firuz-koh the second time.
throne of his father. But that expectation was not fulfilled, and the throne of Firūz-koh was conferred upon Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Pearl of Ghūr, to whom the daughter of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, was betrothed; and the territory of Bust, Isfizar, and Farāh, were given to Sultan Maḥmūd.

In the year in which [his uncle] the Sultan-i-Ghazi led an army into Khwārazm, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, marched the troops of Bust, Farāh, and Isfizar, into Khurāsān, and proceeded to the gate of Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān; and in that expedition he manifested many marks of skill and activity. When the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, was assassinated, Maḥmūd determined to proceed from Bust to Firūz-koh, and, when he reached Zamin-i-Dāwar, the Khalj' Amirs of Garmsīr, with a numerous following, joined him. The Amirs and Maliks of Ghūr all came forth to receive him; and, in the year 602 H., he reached Firūz-koh, and the throne of Ghūr came into his possession, and he brought the territories of his father under his jurisdiction.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, retired from Firūz-koh into Gharjistān, and therein he was taken prisoner, and

---

5 Styled Ziyā-ud-Dīn before he was raised to the throne of Firūz-koh.
6 She was either the full or half-sister of Maḥmūd.
7 In some copies written Isfīzār—the present Sabzwar.
8 Not styled Sultan until he gained the throne after the death of his uncle. His title had been Malik hitherto.
9 The compact which our author states to have existed previously between Maḥmūd and Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, at page 400, may have been entered into at this period. See also note, page 400. The object he had in marching to Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān does not appear, neither in the account of his uncle's reign is it referred to.
1 The Khalj tribe, I beg to remark, are neither Afghāns nor Pažāns, although some persons have made such an absurd assertion. I shall have more to say about them as I proceed.
2 In this same year Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mubarak Shāh, the author of the history of the Ghūris in verse, referred to at page 300, died.
3 When information reached Maḥmūd of the assassination of his uncle, Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, he, in the first place, sent intimation to his brother-in-law, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [the Pearl of Ghūr], son of Abī-'Alī, and called upon him to acknowledge his authority. Maḥmūd also communicated the tidings to 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīlī, Wāli of Hirāt. Both of them, however, declined to acknowledge his authority, on which Maḥmūd advanced to Firūz-koh with a large army. On this the generality of the Ghūrfān Amirs deserted the cause of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and went over to Maḥmūd, and he gained possession of Firūz-koh, and threw 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, into confinement. See also note, page 400.
was confined in the castle of Ashiyār, as has been previously recorded; and when the whole of the various parts of the dominions of Ghūr, and Ghārijstān, Tāl-ḵān, and Guzarwān, and the district of Fāras, and Garmsir, came under the sway and jurisdiction of his Slaves, such as Sūltān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and Sūltān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn I-bak, and other Turk Maliks and Amirs, who were Slaves of Sūltān Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, each of them despatched a person of rank to the presence of his Court, and solicited from Sūltān Maḥmūd letters of manumission, and the investitures of the territories of Ghaznīn and of Hindūstān respectively.

He despatched a deed of investiture of the territory of Ghaznīn and a canopy of state to Sūltān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz; and, when Sūltān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, advanced to Ghaznīn, he despatched Niẓām-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, to Firūz-koh, in the year 605 H.; and Sūltān Maḥmūd directed that a scarlet canopy of state and a deed of investiture of the government of the dominion of Hindūstān should be sent to him.

Throughout the whole of the territories of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, and Hindūstān, the Khutbah was read for Sūltān Maḥmūd, and the coin was stamped with his name; and, as he was

4 Also with ĵ, as at page 376; and in the same way as Sijistān for Sigistān, the one being the Arab mode of writing the word, and the latter the local.

5 This name also is written Bāras; and in some few copies Kādūs. See page 342.

6 All these Slaves were of Turkish parentage. Maḥmūd having succeeded to the sovereignty of the dominions of his late uncle, the latter's slaves became his slaves also, according to Muḥammadan law, by succession. It is not to be supposed that either Yal-duz [I-yal-duz] or I-bak were then styled Sūltāns, or that our author means it to be so understood. They were styled so ultimately.

7 Just above he says, "Yal-duz, I-bak, and other Turk Maliks and Amirs;" but all could not have demanded the investitures of Ghaznīn and Hindūstān. Yal-duz [I-yal-duz] and I-bak sent agents to Sūltān Maḥmūd expressing their loyalty, submission, and obedience to him; and in the whole of the empire the Khutbah was read for him and the money stamped with his name and titles.

8 Two copies of the text add here, "in order that he might assume jurisdiction over the Ghaznīn territories."

9 See the reign of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, beginning of next Section. There our author contradicts this statement entirely, and says Kuṭb-ud-Dīn received the investiture in 602 H., and that he went to Lohor to receive it.

1 These events occurred, as our author here states, in 605 H.; but Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, appears to have received the investiture of Ghaznīn some time previous to this, and it is somewhat strange that he should have continued to coin money in the name of the late ruler, Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, after what our author
the heir of the kingdom of his father and his uncle, all the Maliks and Sultāns paid reverence to his dignity, and showed the obedience of vassals unto him.

When one year of his sovereignty had passed, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-Irān Shāh, son of Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad, advanced from Ghaznin towards Firūzkoh, as has been previously recorded, and Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, marched from Firūz-koh, and put him to the rout, and about 5000 Ghūris [in that affair] bit the dust.

After a period of two years and a half, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, son of [‘Alā-ud-Din] Ḥusain, who was his [Maḥmūd’s] father’s uncle’s son, proceeded from the country of Bāmiān into Khwārazm, and sought assistance from Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, to enable him to seize the dominions of Ghūr. The Malik-ul-Jibal, Ulugh Khān-i-Abī-Muḥammad, and Malik Shams-ud-Din, Utsuz, the Ḥajib, who were two of the greatest of the Turkish Maliks of the Khwārazm Shāhs, with the troops of Marw and Balkh, Sarakhs and Rūdbār, were nominated to give him assistance, and he [‘Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz] proceeded by way of Tāl-ḵān towards Ghūr.

Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, brought out his forces from Firūz-koh, and on the limits of Maimand and Fār-yāb, here states, and even after Sultan Muḥammad, the former’s successor, had given Taj-ud-Dīn his freedom with the investiture of Ghaznin, much more up to the year 610 H., when even Maḥmūd had been killed in 607 H. But see page 497, and 500—505; and Thomas: Coins of the PATHĀN KINGS OF DELHI, page 30.

2 He was heir certainly in name at least; but the two favourite slaves of Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Dīn already possessed the greater portion of their master’s dominions, from which Maḥmūd would have, in all probability, been unable to oust them. Mu’izz-ud-Dīn had, on more than one occasion, expressed a desire that these slaves, especially I-yal-dūz, should succeed to his dominions. See page 500.

3 Styled Ziya-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, before he came to the throne from which Maḥmūd deposed him. See page 393, and note 4, and page 408.

4 Page 395.

5 Our author styles him “Sultan,” as well as many others, before their attaining sovereignty.

6 Referred to in the account of the Khwārazm Shāhs. He subsequently became the father-in-law of Rukn-ud-Dīn, son of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. See page 235.

7 Also called Fār-āb, Fār-āw, Bār-āb, and Bār-yāb. This battle and victory of Maḥmūd is not mentioned by other authors. See also pages 409 and 414.
at a place which they call [by the name of] Sālūrah⁸, a battle took place between the two armies. The Almighty bestowed the victory upon Sultan Maḥmūd, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, and the Khwārazm Shāhī Maliks, and the troops of Khurāsān were overthrown⁹.

When four years of Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd's reign had expired, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, 'Ali Shāh¹, son of Sultan Takīsh, Khwārazm Shāh, sought refuge from his brother's [Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh] presence with Sultan Maḥmūd. On the Khwārazmī Sultan² becoming aware of this, he despatched distinguished personages [as envoys] to Fīrūz-koh. During the lifetime of the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, a firm compact existed between Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd³, son of [Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn], Muḥammad-i-Sām, and

---

⁸ A few copies have Aslūrah.
⁹ See note ⁸, below.
¹ His title was Taj-ud-Dīn, not 'Alā-ud-Dīn. See the account of him, page 252-3. He had been a prisoner in Ghūr some few years previously, and was known to the Ghūrīān Princes.
² The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, and R. A. Soc. MS. both have---"when Sultan Takīsh became aware of it." Takīsh had been dead many years. The printed text, of course, is the same.
³ By this statement our author entirely contradicts that made at pages 256 and 382, and the present statement is certainly one more likely to be correct. It tends to confirm what Yāfā-i and some other works say, and which I shall presently refer to.
⁴ Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, after the death of his father, expected that his uncle, Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, would have placed him, the son, on his late father's throne of Fīrūz-koh and the kingdom of Ghūr; instead of which, knowing Maḥmūd's love of wine and other sensual pleasures, he bestowed it upon the son-in-law of the late Sultan, Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, and gave the western districts of the empire to Maḥmūd as his appanage, as stated by our author at page 472. On this account Maḥmūd entertained no very good feeling towards his uncle, and he may have entered into communication secretly with the Sultan of Khwārazm, who was naturally hostile to Muʿizz-ud-Dīn; and such an understanding as our author mentions may have been entered into at the time Maḥmūd went on the expedition to Marw, mentioned at page 397, when Muʿizz-ud-Dīn invaded Khwārazm.

I rather expect, however, that our author, who rarely indulges in dates, has confused the events of this period, as Maḥmūd, previous to the assassination of his uncle, was not in a position to enter into "a firm compact" with Sultan Muḥammad, unless secretly. Yāfā-i says [and Jāmiʿ-ut-Tawārīkh agrees] that when Maḥmūd seized the throne of Ghūr, shortly after his uncle's death, "he gave himself up to drinking and riotous pleasures, as was the habit of the Amīrs of Ghūr, and attended to singing and jollity, whilst he neglected the affairs of the kingdom, and could not endure the fatigues of war. His great chiefs and nobles, perceiving his weakness of character, began to
Muḥammad-i-Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, that friendship and concord should exist between them, and that the

*Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Takish. Before he succeeded his father, his title was Ḫūtūb-ud-Dīn. See note 1, page 253.

grow disaffected; and Ḳizz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Ḍhar-mīl, the Wālī of Hirāt, who was the greatest prop of the Ghūrān empire, took precedence of all the other chiefs in tendering allegiance to the Sultan of Khwārazm, and despatched agents repeatedly soliciting that the Sultan would annex Hirāt. Although that monarch had other important matters to attend to, still, fearing lest a portion of the Ghūrān dominions, such as Balkh and districts around, might offer allegiance to the ruler of Karā-Khīṭā, and that that city might fall into his hands, he determined to move towards Balkh.”

“The Wālī of that part, styled Ḳimād-ud-Dīn, the chief of the Nāmān [Bāmīān] Amīrs [called by our author, at page 260, Ḳimād-ud-Dīn, Ḫūmrī, Fīwārī], at first was most warm in his professions of loyalty and fidelity, and Balkh was made over to the Sultan, who continued the government, as heretofore, in the Wālī’s hands; but, being afterwards detected in acts of treachery, and an intercepted letter having been placed in his hands, he threw himself at the Sultan’s feet. His life was spared, but he was sent away to Khwārazm, after being allowed to take what treasure and other valuables he desired with him. His son [name not given] was also removed from the charge of the fortress of Tīrmīd, and that important post was made over to the guardianship of Sultan ‘Uṣmān of Samarkand.”

The Tārīkh-i-Alīf differs considerably on these matters. It is stated therein, that, on the death of Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn becoming known to Sultan Muḥammad, he assembled a large army for the purpose of attacking Balkh, then held by the officers and troops of Malik ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of the late Sultan Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, of Bāmīān and Tūkhārīstān, and invested that stronghold. At this crisis, Malik ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, had led an army against Tāj-ud-Dīn, ‘All-dūz, ruler of Ghaznī. On this account Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, who had intended to march his forces against Hirāt, to reduce Ḳizz-ud-Dīn, Ḫusain, son of Ḍhar-mīl, to obedience, paused in order to see what the upshot of the other two affairs would be.

Tāj-ud-Dīn, ‘All Shāh [Sultan Muḥammad’s brother, who subsequently took refuge with Maḥmūd], who commanded the forces investing Balkh, being unable to take it, Sultan Muḥammad proceeded thither in person, and summoned the governor to submit. All was of no avail, and the Sultan determined to proceed without further loss of time to Hirāt, when news reached him that Malik ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and his brother, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, ‘All, had been defeated by Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, taken prisoners, and thrown into confinement. This happened, according to Fasīb-i, in 605 H. On this, Ḳimād-ud-Dīn ['Umīr], Governor of Balkh, hopeless of succour, surrendered the place. He was treated with honour and kindness, and continued in charge of Balkh, as before. After this, Sultan Muḥammad advanced to Bākhūrūz, got possession of that place, then proceeded to Tīrmīd, and obtained possession of that stronghold likewise, and then he returned to Khwārazm.

This latter statement is incorrect. The Sultan proceeded to Hirāt before returning to Khwārazm, as will be presently stated.

The Ghūrān Amīrs and Chiefs, who were in accord with Amīr Maḥmūd, were preparing forces, says Yāfā-i, to attack Sultan Muḥammad’s forces then
enemy of one should be the enemy of the other; and, on this occasion, Sultan Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, sent before Balkh; but the Sultān's troops made a swoop upon them, like a falcon on a covey of partridges, and routed and dispersed them before they had had time to complete their preparations. This must have been the affair called a victory of Maḥmūd's by our author. The territory of Balkh was now entrusted to the charge of Bādr-ud-Dīn, Jālīlg [?], with a strong force to support him; and, after having disposed of the affairs of Balkh, the Sultān proceeded by way of Juzarwān [or Guzarwān] to Hirāt, which he entered in the middle of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 605 H., to the great joy of its people. [Yāfā-ī is, as well as other writers, somewhat confused as to the dates here, and says this took place in 607 H., and so it is stated in note 3, page 257–258, taken from that work; but it is evidently an error for 605 H., as it was only in the third month of 607 H.—some say in 606 H.—that the Sultān first defeated the forces of Kārā-Khītā under Bānīko of Tārāz, and a month after Maḥmūd Ghūrī's death, if he died in Safar 607 H., as our author and some others say, and not in 609 H.]

Rulers and chieftains from the adjacent parts now hastened to tender submission and allegiance to the Sultān, and to present themselves; and among these was the Malik of Sijistān [Yāmīn-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh ?], who was received with great honour. 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl, was continued in the government of Hirāt and its dependencies, as previously related; and the Sultān, having disposed of these matters, despatched several ecclesiastics of the Kirāmī sect [Yāfā-ī says in 606 H.] with proposals to Amir Maḥmūd, ruler of Fīrūz-koh and Ghīr. Maḥmūd accepted those proposals, which were, that he should acknowledge the suzerainty of Sultan Muhammad. He despatched valuable presents to the Sultān from the hoards accumulated by his ancestors and his uncle, and, among other rarities, a white elephant. [A white elephant is said to have been captured in the battle in which Jai Chandra, Rajah of Kinnauj, was defeated by Mu'izz-ud-Dīn. See page 470.] Amīr Maḥmūd was named Nāyab or Deputy of the Sultān, for whom he read the Khutbah, and stamped the coin with his name. This must be the treaty our author refers to, but he has confused the events. This acknowledgment of the superiority of the Sultān is evidently what Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, took umbrage at, as mentioned in Alīf, in note 4, page 433, when he set at liberty Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, of Bāmīnān, who, in 605 H., along with his brother, was taken prisoner in a battle against him [I-yal-dūz], and sent him back to recover the throne of Bāmīnān, which probably was early in 606 H.

Sultān Muḥammad, leaving 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl, as Wālī of Hirāt, returned to Khwārazm, and subsequently entered on the campaign against Gūr Khān of Kārā-Khītā. 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl, hearing the report of the Sultān having been killed or taken captive in the second engagement with Gūr Khān's troops [see page 258, and last para. of note 4], began to pave the way to make his peace with his former sovereign, and he again read the Khutbah for the ruler of Ghūr, and substituted his name on the coin. This must refer to Maḥmūd, as his young son, three months after his father's death, was taken away to Khwārazm, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, had been set up by the Khwārazmī Sultān as ruler of Ghūr; and, such being the case, Maḥmūd could not have been assassinated in Safar, 607 H., for this reason, that these events took place in the latter part of that year, or even in 608 H.; but if Safar, 607 H., is correct, then Maḥmūd was dead one month before the first battle between the Sultān and Bānīko of Tārāz.

'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl, finding almost immediately after that
Mahmūd a copy of that treaty, with a request, saying, "As 'Ali Shāh is the enemy of my dominion, it is necessary that he should be seized." In compliance with the terms of that compact, Sultan Mahmūd seized 'Ali Shāh, and imprisoned him in the Kašr, which they call the Baz Kūshk-i-Sultān, at Firūz-koh.

That Kašr is an edifice the like of which is not to be found in any country or in any capital—a Kašr in height and area, and with buttresses, balconies, and turrets, and of the Sultan was safe, to get himself out of this scrape, sent a requisition to the Khwārazmī nobles located in Eastern Khurāsān for aid against the Ghūrīs, who, on account of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, ʿUṣain’s perfidy, were marching against him. This evidently is the matter referred to by our author at page 503, where he says I-yal-diiz aided Mahmūd against 'Izz-ud-Dīn, ʿUṣain, son of Khār-nīfī, but distorts the facts to suit his own purposes and inclinations, about the Sultan of Khwārazm "flying before the forces of Ghūr and Ghaznīn," and what Alī refers to, namely, that Amir Ismāʿīl, Mahmūd’s general, sent against 'Izz-ud-Dīn, was defeated and taken prisoner, and the remnant of his army returned to Firūz-koh. See note 2, page 504.

With the aid of the Khwārazmī nobles of Khurāsān the Ghūrīs were overthrown, and this affair broke their power entirely, and their party dispersed; and 'Izz-ud-Dīn, ʿUṣain, was also seized and put to death, as related at page 258, last para., note 2.

The Hāhib-us-Siyar states that Sultan Mubammad demanded that Mahmūd, Ghūrī, should seize the former’s brother, Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, and send him back in conformity with the terms of treaty previously existing "between himself and the late Sultān, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn" [see note 8, page 481], but says nothing about a previous treaty between him and Mahmūd. This event, our author says, happened in the fourth year of Mahmūd’s reign, which, by his own account, would be towards the close of 606 H. The treaty thus referred to is doubtless the treaty mentioned by Fasīb-ī and others, which took place between Sultan Mubammad and Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, after the latter’s disastrous campaign against Khwārazm.

I have burthened the text with this lengthy note in order to show what discrepancy exists with regard to the events in the history of the Ghūrīs about this time, and to show the impossibility of the correctness of the dates given by several authors. Yāfa-ī and Fasīb-ī and several others [see note 8, page 407] also say that Mahmūd was assassinated in 609 H., and the Mirāt-i-Jahān-Numā confirms it. It is also certain, from our author’s statements, as well as from the statements of others, that Mahmūd was assassinated in the same year as Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh was; and that event, even our author says, happened in 609 H. See also page 253.

It is moreover proved beyond a doubt, that, soon after the decease of Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, the Ghūrīan rulers became mere vassals of the Khwārazmī sovereigns, who, at last, annexed the whole of their extensive territory as far as the Indus, or even to the Jihālam.

The word bas [β], which is doubtless correct, signifies a mound, the spur of a mountain or hill, high ground. Some of the more modern copies have abāz [β], and some leave out the word altogether.

The signification of Kūshk and Kašr has been given in note 2, at page 331.
such configuration as no geometrician hath made manifest. Over that Kasr are placed five pinnacles inlaid with gold, each of them three ells and a little over in height, and in breadth two ells; and also two gold humādī, each of about the size of a large camel. Those golden pinnacles and those humās, the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu’izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, after the capture of Ajmir, had sent in token of service, and as valuable presents, to [his brother] Sultan Ghiyāsh-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, with many other articles of rarity, such as a ring of gold, with a chain of gold attached, the dimension of which was five ells by five ells, and two great kos [kettle-drums] of gold, which were carried on carriages. Sultan Ghiyāsh-ud-Din directed that the ring and chain, and those kharbiṣah [kettle-drums], should be suspended before the portico of the Jami’ Masjid at Firuz-koh; and, when the Jāmi’ Masjid was destroyed by a flood, the ring, chain, and those kharbiṣah [kettle-drums], the Sultan sent to the city of Hirāt, so that after the Jāmi’ Masjid of that city had been destroyed by fire, they rebuilt it by means of those gifts.

Sultan Ghiyāsh-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, son of [Ghiyāsh-ud-Din], Muḥammad-i-Sām, was a sovereign very great, beneficent,

7 A fabulous bird peculiar to the East. It is considered to be a bird of happy omen, and that every head it overshadows will, in time, wear a crown. See also G. P. R. James’s ATTILA, chap. vi.

8 The word used is ८७ signifying small turrets in the wall, and also sometimes used for battlements, cornices, pinnacles, &c. The last is the most probable meaning here, or possibly small open domes, such as we see in some old Hindū buildings.

9 The text here again is very defective in all but the three oldest copies. Some of the more modern copies have “one kos,” and state that the ring was “five ells by five ells,” and instead of Kharbūzah have jazfrāh, which signifies an island. The same word occurs in Firīshṭah—the original text I mean—who says two were presented to Kuṭb-ud-Din by the ruler of Ajmīr, which Dow, very correctly, translates “two melons of gold,” without apparently knowing what they were; but Briggs, by way of improving on Dow, turns them into “two tents of gold tissue”!! See his translation, vol. 1, p. 194-5. The word خرز or خرز which signifies a musk melon, suggests the shape of these drums.

1 I do not find any notice of this fire in other works, not even in Fasih-i- which generally contains minute particulars of every event occurring at Hirāt, as the author was a native of that city. Rauzgat-ṣafā merely mentions that Maḥmūd finished the Masjid of Hirāt which had been left unfinished at his father’s death, and this statement is confirmed by the Khulāsat-ul-Akhbār and some other histories. I do not find any account of a flood. Amir ‘Alī Sher, the celebrated Wazīr of Sultan Husain, Bahādur Khān, subsequently rebuilt this masjid in 905 H., just a year before his death.
humane, munificent, and just. When he ascended the throne he opened the door of the treasury of his father. That treasury remained untouched as before, and Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din had not appropriated any portion of it; and they have related, that of pure gold there were four hundred camel loads, which are eight hundred chests—but God knows best—and rich garments, vessels, pearls, and jewels in proportion, together with other valuable property of every description, the whole of which he disposed of.

During his reign gold, apparel, perfumed leather, and other things, through his munificence and his presents, became very cheap. He also purchased a number of Turkish slaves, and greatly valued them all, and raised them to competence and wealth; and his presents, gifts, and donations were constantly reaching people, until one day, during the second year of his sovereignty, the son of his aunt, the sister's son of the Sultans [Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad], Malik Tāj-ud-Din, died, and no heir survived him, and his effects and treasures, consisting of ready money, gold and silver vessels, a vast quantity of wealth, were brought to the presence of Sultan Mahmūd. He commanded that a banquet and festal entertainment should be arranged beneath [the walls] of the Kūshk, which is situated in the middle of [the city of] Firūz-koh.

He spread the carpet of pleasure, and directed that festivity and gaiety should be the order of the day; and, from the time of meridian prayer to the period of evening prayer, the whole of that money, consisting of darhams and dinārs, contained in leathern bags and in scrips, was poured out of the windows of the Kašr. As it was a

2 Perfumed leather [०] must have been extremely valuable in those days.
3 Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Zangi, son of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, sovereign of Bāmīān and Tuhāristān. He was taken prisoner in battle with a body of Khwārizmī troops in the vicinity of Marw-ar-Rid, at a time when peace existed between the Sultan of Khwārizm and Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, of Ghaznī, and sent to Khwārizm with other chiefs taken at the same time, and their heads were struck off. See page 425, and page 481, note 4.
4 The text varies here again. The oldest copies are plainly written as above; but, according to some, the sentence may be read: “in the Kašr of Nar Kūshk which is [situated] in the midst of [the city of] Firūz-koh,” and, according to others, merely “in the Kašr which is [situated] in” &c. It is quite a different place to the Kašr of Baz Kūshk. The Europeanized kiosk is derived from this latter word.
public banquet and a largess to both high and low, great
and small, every description of the different classes of the
people of the city of Firuz-koh were arriving in crowds at
the foot of the Kūshk, and kept themselves under the
Sultān's observation. To each class of persons he was
giving a liberal share of dishes, long-necked flasks, lamps,
ewers, cups, platters, bowls, goblets, and other vessels of
different descriptions, all of gold and of silver, and, among
other presents, above a thousand slaves of his own, both
male and female, which he repurchased again from their
owners. The whole city, from those largesses, became [so to speak] filled with gold.

Sultān Maḥmūd was a sovereign of very great good quali-
ties, and his alms, donations, and honorary robes, to a large
amount, were received by all classes of the people; but, as
the decree of fate had [now] come, the motives of its advent
began to appear. Having, at the request of Sultān Muham-
mad, Khwārazm Shāh, seized the latter's brother, 'Alī Shāh,
and imprisoned him, 'Alī Shāh's servants, followers, and
dependents, consisting of Irākis, Khurāsānis, Khwārazmīs,
and Turks, in great numbers, together with his mother, his
son, and his women, along with him, the whole of them
agreed together with one accord, and several times, by means
of each of the most notable among them, sent messages,
secretly, to Sultān Maḥmūd, saying: "The reliance we
have in the Sultān is, that as we have all come and sought
refuge with his Highness, in the service of our master, 'Alī
Shāh, and have thrown ourselves under the shadow of the
Sultān's power and protection, it behoveth he should not
deliver us up into the hands of the enemy, for to seize and
make captive of those who have sought one's protection will
not turn out fortunate, otherwise we will make sacrifice of
ourselves, and let it not be that the Sultān should be in
dread of his life from us."

As the decree of destiny had gone forth, this communi-
cation, which they continued to represent to the Sultān,
was without any effect whatever, and a party of 'Alī Shāh's
dependents used, at night, to ascend to the summit of the
hill, called Kūshk-i-Āzād, which was facing the Kasr, and
the sleeping apartment of Sultān Maḥmūd, and there they
sat concealed, and examined the Kasr and noticed the
Sultān's sleeping apartment, and marked the way to the
place. All this they had done, until on the night of Tuesday, the 7th of the month of Safar, in the year 607 H., four individuals of the party referred to climbed up on the roof of the Sultan's Kašr, and assassinated him, and got away again by the same road as they had got up. They then crossed the river of Firūz-koh⁸, which flows in front of the Kašr, and also climbed to the top of that high hill [the Koh-i-Azād], and cried out with a loud voice: "O foes of our Malik! we have killed the Sultan: arise, and search for your Malik?!” When the day broke, the whole city became agitated; and they buried the Sultan in the Kašr itself, and subsequently the body was removed to Hirāt, and finally interred in the Gāzār-gāh⁸ [catacombs] of Hirāt.

The eldest son of the Sultan, namely Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, was raised to the throne.

⁵ There is considerable discrepancy among authors respecting the year of Maḥmūd's assassination. Yāsā-i, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīḵh, Faṣīḥ-i, Alfi, Lubb-ut-Tawārīḵh, Guzdhah, Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā [which says "after reigning nearly eight years"], and some others say it happened in 609 H., while Jahān-Ārā, Raʿūzat-ūs-Šāfā, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīḵh, and a few others agree with our author's statement here as to the year 607 H. The former says it took place on the 7th of Safar, whilst the latter, Raʿūzat-ūs-Šāfā, and some others say, on the 3rd of Safar. Ḥabīb-ūs-Siyr, on the other hand, affirms that it happened in 606 H., Khulāsat-ul-Akhbar, 607 H., and the Tārīḵh-i-Ibrāhīmī, that it happened on the 3rd Safar, 597, but this must mean the year of the Riblat [death of Muḥammad], not the Hijrah [Flight], between which two eras a period of about eleven years intervenes; and 597 of the former is about equal to 608 of the latter. There is no doubt but that Maḥmūd was assassinated in the same year in which Firūz-koh was taken by the Khwārizmīs, and Tāj-ūd-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, put to death; and this last event our author himself states, at page 253, took place in 609 H. The words  and  without the diacritical points, may be easily mistaken by a copyist. See note ⁶, page 410.

⁶ A feeder of the Hari Rūd probably, if not the main stream, which rises in Ghūr.

⁷ It is not certain who killed Maḥmūd, and authors are at variance on this point. Raʿūzat-ūs-Šāfā agrees with our author, but merely copies his statement. Ḥabīb-ūs-Siyr of course agrees with Raʿūzat-ūs-Šāfā. Yāsā-i, Faṣīḥ-i, Tārīḵh-i-Ibrāhīmī, and a few others, state that he was found dead on the roof of his palace, and that his slayer was not known, and Jahān-Ārā, and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīḵh, agree with our author. Another writer says 'Alī Shāh slew him with his own hand.

⁸ Sometimes written Gāzār-gāh as above, and also Gāzar-gāh. It signifies the place of caves or hollows, a grave yard, catacombs. There is one at Shīrāz in which the Poet Saʿdī was buried, and the one near Hirāt in which the venerated Khwājah 'Abd-ullah, Anṣārī, was buried. The meaning of gāzar is certainly a bleacher or washer, and gāh a place, but the above term does not refer to any "bleaching ground," as a modern writer terms it, except that it is the bleaching ground for dead men's bones.
XX. SULTÂN BAHÁ-UD-DÍN, SÁM, SON OF GHIYÁS-UD-DÍN, MAHMÚD, SON OF GHIYÁS-UD-DÍN, MUHAMMAD, SON OF BAHÁ-UD-DÍN, SÁM, SHANSABI.

Sultán Bahá-ud-Dín, Sám, son of Sultán Maḥmúd [at this time] was about fourteen years of age, and his brother, Malik Shams-ud-Dín, Muḥammad, about ten. Their mother was the daughter of Malik Taj-ud-Dín, of Timrán; and in the haram likewise were two daughters by this Malikah.

When Sultán Maḥmúd was martyred, the next morning, all the Amirs of Ghúr and the Turk Amirs assembled together, and raised Bahá-ud-Dín, Sám, to the throne of Frúz-koh; and the Malikah-i-Mu'izziah\(^9\), who was the mother of Bahá-ud-Dín, and the other children of Ghiyáš-ud-Dín, Maḥmúd, incited the Turkish slaves\(^1\) to slay the competitors for the sovereignty\(^2\). Of that party one was Malik Rukn-ud-Dín, Maḥmúd-i-Irãn Sháh, the son of Malik 'Alá-ud-Dín, Muḥammad-i-Abi-'Ali, and they martyred him, as has been previously recorded.\(^3\) Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dín, Timrání, was imprisoned, as was Malik Shiháb-ud-Dín, 'Alí, Mádíní, likewise, who was the son of the uncle of the Sultáns [Ghiyáš-ud-Dín, and Mu'izz-ud-Dín]; and the Ghúrī and Turk Amirs, in concert, stood around the throne with girded loins.

The followers of 'Ali Sháh, after five days, when they found the city had become tranquil, and that 'Ali Sháh still remained in durance, contrived to get up another tumult. They placed a number of men in chests, and pretended that they were going to bring treasure\(^4\) into the city from without, such was the plan they chose to enable them to enter the city and create another disturbance; but, unexpectedly, one among them who had conceived the idea of this wicked action came and gave information about

\( ^{9} \) Her title, not her name.

\( ^{1} \) In some of the more modern copies this is reversed, and they have "the Turkish slaves incited her," &c.

\( ^{2} \) Several Princes of the family who were supposed likely to cause trouble, and interfere with this arrangement, were put to death by his supporters.

\( ^{3} \) See pages 394, and 396. At page 399 this is differently related.

\( ^{4} \) Other writers say, "cases of merchandize;" and that forty-five persons were made to come out of these chests, and were, at once, put to the sword.
it. The chests were seized at the gate of the city, and about eighty men came out of the chests, of whom three were of those who had killed Sultan Mahmud. All three were made a public example of and put to death, two others were cast headlong from the hill [of Azad], and seventy-five were thrown at the feet of the elephants and killed, amid the clamours and reprobation of the crowd.

Subsequent to this, Malik Husam-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Abi-'Ali, Jahân Pahlawan, from Fiwâr and Kâl-yûn presented himself [at the court]; and, when three months of the sovereignty of Sultân Bahâ-ud-Din, Sâm, had passed away, Malik 'Alâ-ud-Din, Utsuz [son of 'Alâ-ud-Din], Hûsain [Jahân-soz], who was in attendance on Sultân Muhammads, Khwârazm Shâh, solicited aid from that monarch to enable him to possess himself of the dominions of Ghûr. Malik Khân [governor] of Hîrât, who at the commencement of the reign of the Khwarazmî Sultân bore the title of Amir-i-Ḥâjib, and who was an 'Ajamî Turk of great intrepidity, and the slayer of Muhammads-i-Khârnak, was nominated to proceed from Khûrasân to render assistance to 'Alâ-ud-Din, Utsuz, son of ['Alâ-ud-Din], Husain.

Malik Khân, with the forces of Khûrasân, set out accordingly to assist Sultân 'Alâ-ud-Din, Utsuz-i-Husain, in possessing himself of Firûz-koh. When they arrived in the vicinity of Firûz-koh, the Maliks and Amîrs of Ghûr took counsel together, and came to the conclusion that it was advisable to release Malik 'Alî Shâh from confine-

If it was so well known that 'Alî Shâh's followers had done the deed, it seems strange that they should have been allowed even to approach the gate, and that they should have come near the place and thus thrust their heads into danger.

That is a Turk born in 'Ajam. This personage is mentioned in a number of places. He is the chief who joined Sultan Jalâl-ud-Din, Khwârazmî, in after years, with 50,000 men, was present in the battle of Barwân, and was the unfortunate cause of Saif-ud-Din, Ighrâk's desertion. Our author styles him Malik Khân, Amin-i-Ḥâjib, at page 287, but more correctly, Amir-i-Ḥâjib, at pages 415, 416, and the last Section on the invasion of the Mughals. His correct name appears to be Malik Khân, entitled Amin-î-Mulk, the Amir-i-Ḥâjib. See notes to pages 287-291. The Jami'-ût-Tawarikh styles him "Amin Malik of Hîrât."

Subsequently perhaps styled Sultân, after he had been set up as a vassal of the Khwârazmsîs, but Malik is more correct.

Some copies are much more curt with the following passage.
ment, and treat him with great honour and reverence, so that, on his account, some of the Khurāsānī forces might evince an inclination towards that Prince, and, as he was also the adversary of his brother [Sūltān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh], he might, in concert with this sovereignty, oppose in battle the forces of Khurāsān. Malik 'Alī Shāh they accordingly set at liberty, and they appointed Amīrs to the [defence of] different sides around the city.1

Malik Ķuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of 'Alī, son of 'Abī-'Alī, and Amīr 'Uṣmān-i-Khar-fash2, and other Amīrs, with troops, were appointed to occupy the summit of the Koh-i-Maidān, and Amīr 'Uṣmān-i-Maraghanī, who was the Sar-i-Jāndār [the Chief Armour-Bearer], with a body of forces, was named to occupy the upper part of the Koh-ī-Āzād.3 Other Amīrs, such as Mūḥammad-i-'Abd-ullah, and Ghūrī, Shalmatī, and 'Umr, Shalmatī4, were nominated to the Zār-Margh gate5; and on a Thursday, during the whole day, round about the city and on the hills constant fighting went on. On a Friday, in the middle of the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, in the year 607 H.6, the city [of

---

1 After strengthening the defences as well as they were able.
2 This is evidently a nickname or byname [like Khar-miīl, Khar-nak, &c.] of no very complimentary nature—Ass-like. "Fash" has, however, other significations, which see. Two good copies have حرف ش and حرف ش respectively, but no doubt حرف ش is intended.
3 This was the hill the followers of 'Alī Shāh used to climb to reconnoitre the palace of Sūltān Maḥmūd.
4 Some copies have "Salmani" and "Sulimān," but the above is correct.
5 Some few copies of the text, the best Paris copy included, name it the Tārā‘īn gate. It is possible a gate might subsequently have been so named in remembrance of the victory over Pithorā Rāē, but the other best and oldest copies are as above.
6 Sūltān Mūḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, having delivered Hirāt from 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-miīl, did not interfere in any way with Sūltān Maḥmūd, Ghūrī, who had previously acknowledged his suzerainty, as already stated in note 5, para. 10, page 402. While, however, Sūltān Mūḥammad was engaged in a campaign beyond the Jīfūn, his brother, Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, having become dissatisfied with his brother, the Sūltān, left his dominions and sought the Court of Maḥmūd, who received him honourably and with distinction, and supplied all his requirements. After some time had passed 'Alī Shāh [and some of his adherents probably], managed to effect an entrance, secretly, into the Sarā‘ī-ḫān [private apartments] in the middle of the day, where he found Maḥmūd asleep on the throne, and slew him, and no one knew who had done the deed. It however became noised abroad, that Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, had conspired against him, in order to obtain the throne of Ghūr for himself.
Firuz-koh] was taken [by the Khwarazmi forces], and the dominion of the family of [Ghiyas-ud-Din] Muhammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, passed away.

I have already pointed out [note 4, page 407] what discrepancy exists between authors as to the year of Mahmūd's assassination, and that, in all probability, 609 H. is the correct date, and not 607 H. Our author himself says, in his account of Taj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh [page 253], that he was put to death in 609 H. and every copy of the text available agrees, and Yāfa-ī, and Fāsiḥ-ī, and Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh confirm it; and, from the various accounts of these events, it is beyond a doubt, that both Mahmūd and Taj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, were put to death in the same year, probably within a few months of each other, and before 'Alā'-ud-Dīn, Utsuzz, ascended the throne, subject to the Khwarazmīs.

Our author here says it happened in the fourth year of Mahmūd's reign, and, as he ascended the throne about the middle of 602 H., this would make it before the middle of the year 606 H.; and, in this case, the date given by most authors for the battle between Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shāh, and Bānīko of Ta'rāz, namely Rabī'-ul-Awwal 607 H., cannot be correct, as it is certain that the Sultan entered Hirāt, after 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl, had been put to death, in Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 607 H., three months after the date given by our author for the battle.

See note 7, pages 260-261.

Fāsiḥ-ī distinctly states, that, after Mahmūd had been killed in 609 H., as no one remained of the descendants of the Sultāns of Ghūr worthy of the wand of sovereignty, the chief personages of Firuz-koh concerted together [our author's own statement above tends to confirm this, although probably he did not like to acknowledge that the Ghūrī Amīrs had set up a Khwarazmī as ruler], and raised Taj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, to the throne. They then despatched an emissary to the presence of Sultan Muhammad, to represent to him the facts of the case, and to solicit him to confirm 'Alī Shāh in the sovereignty. The Sultan [seemingly] acceded to their request, and despatched Muḥammad-i-Bāshīr [one of his chamberlains] with a robe of honour for 'Alī Shāh. After Muḥammad-i-Bāshīr arrived and began to congratulate 'Alī Shāh with the usual ceremonies, 'Alī Shāh proceeded towards an inner apartment and commenced arraying himself in the robe, when Muhammad-i-Bashir drew his sword, and with one blow struck off his head; and congratulation was turned into condolence.

After this event no other could be found capable of the sovereignty, and Firuz-koh and Ghūr, and parts adjacent, were left in the possession of the Khwarazmī Sultan.

Ḥābīb-us-Siyar says that Khwarazm Shāh, unable to secure his brother's person, advanced upon Ghūr with a numerous army. The Ghūrī Amīrs released 'Alī Shāh to create a diversion, but it was of no avail, and Firuz-koh was taken in 607 H. Rauẓat-us-Safā states, that, after two or three days fighting in the hills and around the city, it was taken, as our author mentions, in the middle of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 607 H., and in this Jahān-Ārā, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, and others agree, the latter giving the 15th of that month as the exact date, which was just three months and seven days after the death of Mahmūd, if he died in that year.

The statement of Yāfa-ī is different from those of other authors, who probably copied from our author's work, but as the former work gives far more details
The Amirs, who had been despatched to occupy the hill-tops around, all escaped in safety, and 'Ali Shah, and Malik Husam-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Abi-'Ali' of Khāl-yūn, went out by the gate of the Reg Pul of Bust*, and each and every one of them betook himself to some part or other. Malik Husam-ud-Din betook himself to Khāl-yūn, and 'Ali Shah set out towards Ghaznin. Sultan A'lā-ud-Din, Utsuz, was placed on the throne, and Malik Khān of Hirāt returned thither.

Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, with his brother [Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad], his sisters, and his mother, together with the treasure then ready at hand, and their aunt the Malikah-i-Jalālī, the daughter of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām, who was betrothed to Malik A'lā-ud-Din, Muhammad, and the whole, with the bier of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Mahmūd, were conducted towards Khurāsān. The bier of Sultan Mahmūd was deposited in the Gāzār-gāh [catacombs] of Hirāt. The dependents, the married and the younger ladies of the family, and their property were removed to Khwarazm; and, up to the time of the troubles caused by the irruption of the infidels of Chin, they continued in Khwārazm, and were treated with esteem and honour.

Chroniclers have related in this wise, that, when the Mughal troubles arose, the mother of Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, had those two Princes [Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, and Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad] drowned in the Jihān of Khwārazm*—the Almighty have mercy upon them and forgive them!

Two daughters of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Mahmūd, up to the date of the composition of this History [are still living]—one is at Bukhārā, and the other is at Balkh, respecting the Khwārazms than any other writer with whom I am acquainted, its statement, taken in consideration of what our author mentions, appears worthy of credit. Jahan-Ara, another good authority, states that it was 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, with an army sent along with him by Khwārazm Shah, who invested Fīruz-koh, and took the city in the year and date above-mentioned, when Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, and his brother were sent away to Khwārazm and met the fate mentioned by our author, at the time of the irruption of the Mughals.

7 Styled Jahān Pahlavān at page 409.
8 The "sand" or "gravel gate" leading to Bust. The text is very defective here, in nearly every copy.
9 See page 280.
married to the Malik-zâdah of Balkh, the son of Al-mâs, the Hâjib.

XXI. SULTân 'ALâ-UD-DÎN, UTSUZ, SON OF SULTân 'ALâ-UD-DÎN, AL-HUSAIN, JAHÂN-SOZ.

Sultân 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Utsuz, was the son of Sultân 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Husain, Jahân-soz, and was left by his father [at his death] very young in years; and he had grown up in the service of the two Sultâns, Ghiyas-ud-Dîn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, but served the greater portion of his service at the court of Ghaznîn with Sultân Mu'izz-ud-Dîn.

The chronicler relates after this manner, that, upon one occasion, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din was attacked by the cholic, to such degree that people had given up all hope of his recovery. The Amirs of Ghûr agreed together, in secret, on this matter, that, if the Sultan should unfortunately die, they would raise Sultan 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Utsuz, to the throne of Ghaznîn. Almighty God sent the draught of health from that dispensary, whence "indeed, when I am sick HE healeth me," to Sultân Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, and he recovered.

Certain informers made the Sultan acquainted with this circumstance, and this compact; and he commanded that it was necessary that 'Alâ-ud-Dîn should be removed from the court of Ghaznîn lest, through the wrath of humanity, odium might chance to touch him. 'Alâ-ud-Dîn proceeded to the court of Bâmiân to his uncle's sons; and [at that time] the throne of Bâmiân had passed to Sultan Baha-ud-Dîn, Sâm, son of Sultan Shams-ud-Dîn, son of Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ûd. After he [Utsuz] had pro-

1 Habib-us-Siyar, and some others likewise agree with our author, and say that 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Utsuz, was set up by Khwârazm Shâh after the dethrone-ment of Baha-ud-Dîn, Sâm; and that 'Ali Shâh fled to Ghaznîn after the capture of Fīrûz-koh. The reason why this Khwârazmî, or rather Turkish name, was given to 'Alâ-ud-Dîn is mentioned at page 238. He was, no doubt, set aside by Abû-l-'Abbâs-i-Shîh who slew Utsuz's brother, Saif-ud-Dîn, Muhammad, for killing his brother, War-megh, otherwise he was the next heir to the throne after his brother Sultân Saif-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad.

2 Not Sultân at that time, for he had not then come to the throne.

3 Kur'ân: chap. 26, verse 80.

4 It appears that all rulers had these news-givers or informers in their employ.

5 See page 428 for the account of him.
ceeded thither, they treated him with reverence, and the district of Nāē of Bāmiān was assigned to his charge.

After some time his [Utsuz’s] daughter was given [in marriage] to his [Sultān, Bahā-ud-Dīn’s] eldest son, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, as will subsequently be, please God, recorded in the Section on the Maliks of Bāmiān.

The course of the days allotted to the extent of the dominion of the Sultāns, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, having run their course, and Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, having likewise died, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, proceeded from the court of Bāmiān to the presence of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, to solicit assistance to enable him to obtain possession of the dominion of Ghūr and the throne of Firūz-koh. He was treated with great honour there, and received the most princely usage, and the Amirs of Khurāsān, such as Ulugh Khān-i-'Abī-Muḥammad, Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Utsuz [the Ḥajib], and the Majd-ul-Mulk, Wazīr of Marw, with the whole of the troops of Upper Khurāsān were directed to afford assistance to Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, in possessing himself of the territories of Ghūr.

Sultān Maḥmūd advanced out of Firūz-koh to meet them and overthrow their forces, as has been previously recorded; and they [the Khwārazmī nobles] retired, and again resumed their duties in the service of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh.

---

6 This place is often mentioned in Baihaḵī.
7 See account of him, No. III. of Section XIX.
8 Bahā-ud-Dīn of Bāmiān must be meant. Maḥmūd’s son, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, only reigned three months, but he did not die until cast into the Jīḥūn between ten and eleven years after these events, and after the slaves of Sultān Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn had succeeded to the whole of his dominions. See page 409.
9 The reader will not fail to observe that this mighty sovereign to whom the latter Ghiirs appealed when they wanted help, and whose suzerainty the nephew of Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn acknowledged, is the same that our author would make us believe sent such abject petitions to Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and his brother, Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, mentioned at page 381-2.
1 Styled Malik-ul-Jibāl at page 399.
2 Scarcely probable, even by our author’s own account, if the “firm compact” mentioned at page 400 is correct; but, as mentioned in note 3, page 400, the “treaty” must, really, mean Maḥmūd’s acknowledgment of Sultān Muḥammad’s supremacy, which took place after the affair here alluded to.
3 The defeat of the Khwārazmī troops is not mentioned by the various authors I have quoted, but quite the contrary.
4 At page 400.
Matters continued in this wise until after the assassination of Sultan Mahmud, when Malik Khan of Hirat, the Amir-i-Hajib, and Malik 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, from Bust, and the forces of Khurasan, advanced towards Firuz-koh; and they placed 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, on the throne of Ghur, and Malik Khan of Hirat again retired.

The Maliks and Amirs of Ghur submitted to Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz; but hostility showed itself between him and the Turk Amirs of Ghaznin, and Malik Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, and Mu'ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muhammad-i-'Abdullah, Sistani, who was the Wazir of Ghaznin, and in pomp like a sovereign, encountered Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, in the limits of Kidan and the Margh-i-Nulah, in battle, and the army of Ghaznin was defeated and overthrown.

Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, was a just monarch, learned, and a patron of learned men; and the Kitab-i-Mas'udi, on ecclesiastical jurisprudence, he knew by heart. In the promotion of Ulama [theologians], and the bringing up of the families of men of learning, he used to do his utmost, and every one among the sons of Ulama, whom he continued to find diligent and persevering, he was accustomed to honour with his benevolent regard.

When he ascended the throne he set at liberty Malik 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, from the fortress of Ashiyar of Gharjistän; but, on account of his killing Umri-Shalmati, the Sultan again shut him up within the walls of the fortress of Balarwan.

Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, reigned for a period of four years, until Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Husain, the Amir-i-Shikar [Chief-Huntsman], brought an army from Ghaznin against him, and a battle took place between them in the

---

4 Compare the account at page 409, and on the preceding page. In a few copies of the text the words "and [Malik] 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz," are left out.
5 Styled Sanjari in the list of Mu'izz-ud-Din's ministers and nobles, at page 205
6 Sultan 'Ali-ud-Din, Muhammad, the last of the dynasty. See page 417.
7 Subject to Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah.
8 Any one reading this would imagine that this Nasir-ud-Din, Husain, was some independent chief who had made war upon 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz. He was sent by Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, against 'Ala-ud-Din, who, being a vassal of the Khwarazmshah, was naturally inimical to Yal-duz, the trusted Slave of the late Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, and on whose side most if not all, of the
centre of Ghūr, within the limits of Jarmās. The right wing of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz’s, army was commanded by Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, Husain, son of 'Alī, son of Abī-'Alī*, who attacked the left wing of Malik Naṣīr-ud-Din, Husain’s, troops, and overthrew and routed [that portion of] the Ghaznin forces, and pursued the fugitives [off the field]. Malik Naṣīr-ud-Din, Husain, [with his centre] charged the centre of the Sultan’s army, and wounded him with his spear, and a Turk among the troops of Ghaznin smote the Sultan on the head with his mace in such wise that both his august eyes exuded from their sockets¹, and he fell down from his horse. Malik Naṣīr-ud-Din, Husain, remained on horseback over the head of the Sultan, when Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, Husain, returned from the pursuit of the routed left wing of the Ghaznin army, and charged Malik Naṣīr-ud-Din, Husain, and again recovered the [wounded] Sultan, and conveyed him towards the district of Sangah, and on the way the Sultan was received into the Almighty’s mercy². They buried him by the side of his kindred, the Maliks of the family of the Shansabānīs.

Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, reigned for a period of four years and a little over; and, after his death, his sons became dispersed. One of them, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas’ūd, went into Ghārjistān to the castle of Siyā-Khānah*, and

Turkish Amīrs were ranged, whilst the Ghūrf Amīrs were on the opposite side.

* This chief is again mentioned by our author in his account of the Mughal invasion of these parts. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din was directed by Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārizm Shāh, under whose rule the Ghūrf empire west of the Indus had fallen, to put all the fortresses of Ghūr into a state of efficiency for defence against the Mughals. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, at last, succeeded in reaching Hindūstān after a narrow escape of falling into the hands of those infidels.

1 This chief is again mentioned by our author in his account of the Mughal invasion of these parts. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din was directed by Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārizm Shāh, under whose rule the Ghūrf empire west of the Indus had fallen, to put all the fortresses of Ghūr into a state of efficiency for defence against the Mughals. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, at last, succeeded in reaching Hindūstān after a narrow escape of falling into the hands of those infidels.

This event happened, near Ghāzin, in 611 H. 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, ruled over Ghūr for about four years; and most authors state that he was the last of the race of Shansabānī who held sovereign power, and, with him, the dynasty terminated. This must have happened very shortly before the death of I-yal-dūz, who was put to death in the tenth month of this year, according to some, and in 612 H. according to others; but it is very probable that I-yal-dūz did set up the favourite and trusted kinsman of his late master. See page 418.

3 Several of the more modern copies of the text have Sāta-Khānah for Siyā-Khānah. This fortress is again referred to in the last Section containing the account of the Mughal invasion,
there he remained for some time; another, Malik Naṣir-ud-Din, Muḥammad, went to the fortress of Bindār [or Pindār], in Upper Gharihstān, and long continued there. The youngest son, Jamshed by name, during the troubles of the infidel Mughals, entered into the district of Ḥarwar-Rūd, and, in the Darah of Khisht-Āb⁴, he was martyred [by Mughals]. Those two elder sons of the Sultān, through the calumny of Malik Khān of Hirāt, received martyrdom at the hands of the slaves of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. They strove greatly, and strained every nerve; but, as it was not the Divine will, neither one of them attained unto sovereignty.


Previous to this, in several places, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, has been made mention of, that, at the outset of his career, he used to be styled Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghīr, and when, after Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of [Bahā-ud-Dīn] Sām, he ascended the throne of Firūz-koh, his title became Malik [Sultān] 'Alā-ud-Dīn⁷.

Since Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, at this time martyred Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, Firūz-koh, and the dominion of Ghūr came under the control of the Amirs and troops of Ghaznin, and of Ghūr. They, in concert, set up Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād⁸, over Firūz-koh, and they repaired the fort of Firūz-koh, and, in the midst of the city, and on the hill of

⁴ Khisht and Khught, in Pushto, signify damp, wet, humid, dank, soaked, &c., and āb is Persian for water. The Pushto equivalent for water is ao-bah.

⁵ Our author makes the same blunder here as at page 391. Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abū-'Alī, was 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammadād's, grandfather. See page 346.

⁶ This should be, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, restored. See page 391.

⁷ See note °, page 393.

⁸ Previously mentioned as Amir-i-Shikār, or Chief Huntsman. The idiom here varies considerably.

⁹ One copy of the text has “Sīh-Zarrād,” and another Sī-Zārād. He was set up as temporary ruler perhaps. He is, no doubt, the same person who is referred to by our author in his account of the Mughal invasion, and who, at that time, held the fortress of Sangah of Ghūr for Sultān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, and his son Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn.
the fortress of Baz Kūshk, they placed a barrier of iron, and raised a rampart, and commenced hostilities. They brought Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, out of the castle of Ašiyār [of Gharjistān] and carried him away to Ghaznīn. These events happened in the year 610 or 611 H.

When Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, reached Ghaznīn, Sultan Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, treated him with great honour and reverence, and commanded so that they took the canopy of State of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din from the head of that monarch's mausoleum, and they raised it over the head of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, and he [Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz] gave him the title of Sultan, and sent him to the capital, Firūz-koh.

He returned to Ghīr again; and, when he had ruled for a period of one year and a little more, and the Khutbah was read, and the money was coined in his name, and his title of Sultan was made universally [public] in the Khutbah, Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, sent him the treaty which the Sultan had, at Nīşāpūr, taken from him, to the effect that he ['Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad] should never, at any time soever, draw sword against him [Sultan Muḥammad]. Accordingly, in the year 612 H., Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, delivered up the city of Firūz-koh to the trusty officers of Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm

1 The text here is very defective in most copies, and varies considerably both in words and idiom. Whom hostilities were carried on with does not appear.
2 Sultan Mahmūd was killed, according to our author and some other writers [see note 8, page 407 and 410], in the second month of the year 607 H.; and 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, was killed after a reign, by our author's account, of four years and a little over, which, supposing the "little over" to have been one month only, would bring us to the third month of the year 611 H.; and, according to several authors, on the 3rd of the tenth month of that same year, Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-ḏūz, was himself put to death at Budā'īn by I-bak's son-in-law, Shams-ud-Dīn, Yal-timīsh, who then ruled at Dihif. If these dates be correct, 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, could not have reigned more than six months, which is evidently incorrect. Jahan-Ara says he vacated the throne, and retired to the court of Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, leaving him to take possession of the country, after he had reigned one year and a little over. This would bring us to about the fourth month of 612 H.; and the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh states that Yal-ḏūz was defeated and put to death in this year, not in 611 H. The period assigned for Utsuz's reign is probably too great. See under Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-ḏūz, No. IV., Section XIX.
3 I do not think any of his coins have been found.
4 At that time styled Ziya-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. See note 8, page 393.
Shâh, and was himself conducted to Khwârazm, and was treated with great honour and veneration.

He took up his residence near to the Malikah-i-Jalâli, the daughter of Sultan Ghiyâṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sâm, who was joined in wedlock to him. They dwelt together in the Khwârazmî dominions for a considerable time, and [at length] death's decree arrived, and he was received into the Almighty's mercy. During the period of his own dominion and sovereignty, he had despatched trusty and confidential persons, and had acquired a place adjacent to [the tomb of] Shaikh Abû-Yazid, Bustâmi, and had caused the position of his tomb to be fixed upon; and, at the time of his decease, he had made it his last request that his body should be removed from Khwârazm to Bustâm.

6 Taj-ud-Dîn, I-yâl-dûz, being dead at this time, Sultan Mullâ-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, was deprived of his support; and this may have been another reason for his abdicating. Several other authors agree with respect to this year, but others again distinctly state that Sultan Muḥammad obtained possession of Firûz-koh and Ghûr, and also of Ghaznîn, in 611 H. Ghûr, as previously stated, had been subject to him in the time of Utsuz. Yâfâ-i says: "After these events [before related], in 611 H., [the Jami'-ut-Tawârîkh agrees,] news reached the Sultan [Khwarazm Shah] that Taj-ud-Dîn, I-yâl-dûz, had died at Ghaznîn [our author and several others state that he was put to death at Budâ'ûn], leaving no heir who was capable of succeeding him [he left no son], and that one of his slaves had assumed his place. This determined the Sultan to devote his energies to the annexation of that territory, together with other extensive provinces. Having effected his purpose, Hirât, Ghûr, Ghârij- tân, and Sîjsâtan, and the territory as far as the frontier of Hind, an extensive empire, and containing many flourishing cities and towns, previously ruled by Sultan Mahmûd-i-Sabuk-Tîgîn and his descendants, up to the period of the rise of the Sultans of Ghûr, fell under his sway, and he nominated his eldest son, Jalâl-ud-Dîn, to the government of it," and a Khwârazmî Amîr [see page 257] was appointed to rule it as his deputy or lieutenant. See the reign of Yâl-dûz further on.

7 How was it possible for them to have dwelt together, when, as our author himself states at pages 301 and 392, the marriage was never consummated, and the princess died a maid? They may have resided near each other. She had been betrothed to Tughan Shâh, grandson of Malik Muṣyayîd-i-Â-înâh-dâr, before she was betrothed to Žîyâ-ud-Dîn. See page 182.
When, in accordance with his last will, they conveyed his remains to Busṭām, the attendant at the Khānkhā [monastery] of Busṭām, the night previously, saw Shaikh Abū-Yazīd in a dream, who said to him, "To-morrow a traveller and guest arrives: it behoveth that thou shouldst perform the rite of going forth to receive him." At the dawn of the morning the attendant of the Khānkhā set out from Busṭām; and, at about the first watch of the day, the bier of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, arrived from the direction of Khwārazm. It was conducted with all reverence and veneration into Busṭām, and they buried him likewise adjoining the Shaikh-ul-'Ārifain, Abū-Yazīd—the mercy of the Almighty be upon them!—and the Maliks of Ghūr, and the Sultāns of the Shansabī race, by the extinction of his dominion, came to a termination.
SECTION XVIII.

THE SHANSABĀNĪAH SULTĀNS OF TUKHĀRISTĀN AND BĀMIĀN.

MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ, JŪRJĀNĪ, the humblest of the servants of the Almighty's threshold, thus states, that, as Almighty God raised up great and powerful Sultāns from the race of the Shansabānīs, who were Maliks over the mountain tracts of Ghūr, and brought within the grasp of their jurisdiction, and under their subjection, sundry territories of the countries of ’Ajam and of Hind, one of those territories was Tukhāristān and the mountain tracts of Bāmiān, the rulers of which part have been famous and celebrated upon all occasions, from the most remote ages, for the grandeur of their station, the abundance of their riches, the vastness of their treasures, the number of their mines, and their buried wealth; and, on sundry occasions, the sovereigns of ’Ajam, such as Kūbād and Fīrūz1, these rulers have vanquished and overcome. That tract of country has also been famed and celebrated, to the uttermost parts of the countries of the world, for its mines of gold, silver, rubies, and crystal, bejādah2 [jade], and other [precious] things.

When the sun of the prosperity of the Maliks and Sultāns of Ghūr ascended from the eastern parts of eminence, and Sultān ’Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Jahān-soz, had wreaked vengeance upon the people of Ghaznin, he had leisure to turn his attention to the subjugation of that territory. After having subdued it, he installed therein his eldest brother, Malik Fākhur-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, and from him descended an illustrious posterity, and Maliks of grandeur and dignity, the marks of whose equity and beneficence,

1 See note 8, page 423.
2 The name of a gem, by some said to be a species of ruby, and by others a species of sapphire; but jade is no doubt meant. Goez refers to a species of jasper found in these parts.
and the fame of whose munificence and obligations conferred, became published throughout the four quarters of the world. The mercy of the Almighty be upon the whole of them!

I. MALIK FAKHR-UD-DIN, MAS'UD, SON OF 'IZZ-UD-DIN, AL Husain, SHANSABI.

Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, son of Al-Husain, was older than his other six brothers; and his mother was a Turkiah; was a sufficiently great monarch; but, as he was not by the same mother as [his brothers] the Sulțâns, they did not permit him to occupy the throne of the dominions of Ghûr, for this reason, that five other brothers, both on the side of the father and mother, were Shansabansis, while the Malik-ul-Jibâl, Muhammad, who attained martyrdom at Ghaznin, was by another mother, who was the attendant of the mother of the Sultâns, and Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, was by a Turkish bondwoman, as has been previously stated.

After Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain [Jahân-soz], became disengaged from taking revenge upon the inhabitants of Ghaznin, and had demolished the Kaşrs of Bust, which was the place of residence of the house of Mahmûd, he caused an army to be got ready from the capital of Ghûr, and marched towards Tukhâristân, and, in the subjugation of that territory, and the strongholds thereof, manifested great alertness and dexterity; and the Amîrs of Ghûr, in that army, displayed such valour and martial heroism, that, if Rustam-i-Dastân had been present, he would have recited the story of their valour.

When those tracts were taken possession of, 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, placed Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud [his brother], upon the throne of Bâmiân, and that territory was...
mitted to his charge. Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, having ascended the throne, the adjacent hill territories, [namely] the mountain tract of Shākānān, Tūkhāristān, as far as Dar-gūn, and Bilaur, and the tracts towards Turkistān

8 Here, again, our author contradicts his own previous statements. At page 339 he says that, on the death of Malik 'Iss-ud-Dīn, Husain [the father of Fākhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'īd, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, and others], Saiif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, the eldest legitimate son, who succeeded to his father's authority, divided the dominions among his six brothers and himself, and that, in that division, Bāmīān was assigned to the eldest brother, Fākhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd. Now he states that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, conquered this territory several years subsequently, after he had destroyed the city of Ghaznīn. Jahān-Ārā also states that, in the division of the father's hereditary patrimony among the brothers, Bāmīān went to the eldest son by a Turkish bond-woman, Fākhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd.

The older Chroniclers contain a great deal respecting the affairs of Tūkhāristān and the Hayāṭilāh, whatever "the clay-stamped annals of Senacherib" [Sennacherib?] may say. Ibn-i-Khurdād-bīh, in his account of the Turks, also refers to them. Hayāṭ[میل]l, according to the ancient dialect of Būkhrā, is said to signify a man of great strength and size; the 'Arabs made it Hayāṭ[میل]l—the plural form of the word, applied to the people generally, being Hayāṭilāh [میل]. One writer states that Hayāṭ was the name of the territory of Khutlān, a dependency of Bādakshān, also called Kol-āb [Ko-li-Āb, which signifies a lake]; but this is contrary to the Masālik wa Mamālik, and to our author's account.

Fīrūz, son of Yazdijurd, son of Bahram-i-Gūr, when his brother Hurmuz ascended the throne, fled from his fief of Sijistān, by way of Gharjistān and Tūkhāristān, and sought shelter and aid from Khush-nawāz, the king of the Hayāṭilāh. According to the Raqzat-ut-Tahirīn, the name of the ruler he sought aid from was Faghanī, the Chaghānī, or Shāh of the Chaghānians. He espoused the cause of Fīrūz, and agreed to aid him with 30,000 men if Fīrūz would cede to him Tirmid and Wesah. Another author calls the people of Tūkhāristān itself Hayāṭilāh likewise. By Faghanī's aid Fīrūz gained the throne of Irān; and for many years subsequent to this, and during several succeeding reigns, there was alternate peace and war between the sovereigns of Irān and the Hayāṭilāh rulers. In the time of Nusherwān, the Hayāṭilāh, being without a ruler, are said to have chosen Faghanī [this would seem, from what was stated above from another author, to be the name of the family, not the person's name], the Chaghānīān ruler of Tūkhāristān. I have neither space nor time to say more at present; but will merely observe, that, by some modern writers, Tūkhāristān and Turkistān are often confused, one for the other.

9 Shākānān and Shākānān are synonymous: "Shighnan" is not correct, but such as one would adopt who could not read the original for himself, and depended entirely on the statements and translations of others.

1 Considerable discrepancy exists here, in some copies of the text, with respect to these names. The best copies have as above, although the oldest leaves out the and, which makes it Dar-gūn of Bilaur. The next best has Dar-gūt [or Dar-kot or kūt], which, if the of the original MS. was written rather long drawn out, as is often done, might be mistaken for. The next best copies, which are comparatively modern, have Dar-gūr [or Dar-gor], and one Dar-būr
to the boundary of Wakhsh and Badakhshan, the whole came under his jurisdiction.

Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, had able and accomplished sons; and, when Kimaj, from Balkh, and Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, from Hirat, who were slaves of the Sanjari dynasty, conspired to eject Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, in order to take possession [of the country] as far as Fīrūz-koh, and the Ghiyasīah sovereignty was, as yet, in the morning of its ascendancy, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, rendered assistance to them, under the stipulation that whatever pertained to Khurasan should go to them, and what belonged to Ghūr to [him] Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud.

When Almighty God bestowed victory upon Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, and Malik Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, of Hirat, was slain, he despatched the head of Yal-duz to his uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, whose forces had arrived near at hand. Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din followed in pursuit of them, and Malik Fakhr-ud-Din was put to the rout. Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din discerned him, and caused him to turn back again, and conducted him to his camp, and there placed him on the throne; and Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, both of them, stood before the

[or Dar-bor]. The printed text, and one of the most recent copies, have Dar-kūfah; and the former, in a note, Būr-Bilaūr; and, in brackets, as the probable reading, "Darwas and Bīlaūr;" but the different copies of the text collated do not show that this is at all the correct reading.

Also called Khutlān.

The dominions of the Sultāns of Bāmīān and Tūkhāristān, according to Jahān Ārā and several other works, extended north to the territory of Kāshgār; south as far as Ghārīstān and Ghūr; east to Kāshmīr; and west as far as Tirmid. See note, page 426.

This appears to be the same Amir Kimaj referred to in note, page 358; and he is probably the same as mentioned in note, page 374; and this Yal-duz (I-yal-duz) must be the same who is mentioned in the same note, which see.

See pages 426-4.

Mr. E. Thomas, in his paper on the "COINS OF THE KINGS OF GHAZNI," Ro. As. Journal, vol. xvii., in a note, page 199, erroneously states that, "On the first rise of Ghīās-ud-dīn, Fakhr[li]-ud-dīn aids him, under the condition that all the conquests in Khurāsān should pertain to the former, while the acquisitions in Ghūr should fall to his own share." The conditions were between Kimaj and Yal-duz and Fakhr-ud-Dīn, not Ghiyās-ud-Dīn.

See the account given in Ghiyās-ud-Dīn's reign, where our author says that Kimaj's head was sent, page 373, and note.

A round-about way of stating that they took him prisoner.
throne in attendance on him. Chroniclers state that Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, became enraged [at this], and that he reproached both of them unjustly, saying that they mocked him. His words were these: "You two rascally boys laugh at me!" The Almighty's mercy be upon them!

This exclamation of his has been mentioned here for this reason, that the beholders and readers of these pages may know the laudable qualities of these two monarchs, the extent of their compassion and clemency, to what degree they guarded the honour and respect [due] towards their uncle, and to what extremity they bore his injustice.

When the two Sulṭāns became disengaged from this audience, they caused complete arrangement to be made for the return of their uncle, and conferred honorary dresses upon the whole of his Amirs and Slaves, and caused them to return. Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, retired towards Bāmiān again; and there he acquired great power, and the Sulṭāns and Maliks of Ghūr used constantly to pay him homage.

His career came to an end in the enjoyment of sovereignty, and he ruled for a long period and died. He had several worthy and deserving sons. Sultan Shams-ud-Din was the eldest, and Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Zangi, and Malik Ḥusām-ud-Din, 'Alī.

II. SULṬĀN SHAMS-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF MAS’UD, SON OF AL-ḤUSAIN, SHANSABI.

When Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, of Bāmiān, was
taken to the Almighty's mercy, his eldest son was Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, and they raised him to the throne of Bamiyan; and the sister of the Sultans Ghiyas-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din was married to him, which princess's title was Hurrah-i-Jalali. She was older than either of the Sultans, and was the mother of Sultan Bahau-ud-Din, Sām, the son of Shams-ud-Din Muhammad.

When Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, ascended the throne of Bamiyan, in accordance with the last will of his father, and with the concurrence of the Amirs, Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din sent him a robe of honour, and paid him abundant deference and respect. He brought the whole of the territory of Tukhāristān under his sway, and, subsequently, the city of Balkh, Chaghanian, Wakhsh, Jarūm, Bādakhshān, and the hill tracts of Shāknān, came under

4 This is the Malik's son, Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, who was taken prisoner by the Sipah-sālār, Barānkāsh, along with 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain [Jahān-soz], and 'Alī, Jatri, in the engagement with Sultan Sanjar before Aobah in 547 H. Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, obtained 50,000 dinars from Bamiyan for his ransom, which sum was paid over to Barānkāsh. Our author, had he known this, is not likely to have related it.

5 The best Paris copy, the I. O. L. MS., and the Ro. As. Soc. MS., have Isfahan!!

6 Others say Balkh, Buglān or Būklān [both are correct], Chaghanian, and some part of Bādakhshān. According to our author, his father, Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, held sway over some of these very tracts, now mentioned as "subsequently" coming under the sway of the son. However, it is clear, whatever "Hwen Thsang" may say to the contrary, that Tukhāristān was but a district or province of Balkh, and not a vast tract of country "reaching from the frontiers of Persia" [wherever that might mean in those days] "to the Thsung-ling or Mountains of Pamir", and that "the great Po-chu or Oxus" did not "run through the middle" of the Tukhāristān here referred to, for the very good reason that it lies south of the Jihūn, Amū, or Oxus. The Māsālik wa Mamālik plainly states, that of Balkh there are a number of divisions and districts, such as Tukhāristān, Khulum, Sarmaqān, Buglān, Zāwālīn [this, in all probability, is Mr. Thomas's "Warwālīn" [واروالی]—the first й is the copulative conjunction, and the й wants the point to make it й]; and Bālakfīs, Walwālīj—ئبلکفسیس، والواليج—may be traced to the same source. Of this Tukhāristān, Tāl-kān was the chief and largest town. Had such a place as Walwālīj been capital of Tukhāristān, our author would, without doubt, have known of it, and have mentioned it here. Chaghanian and Wakhsh lie to the northward of this Tukhāristān, and are accounted in Māwar-un-Nahr, as this latter term signifies, viz. beyond the river. "The Wakhsh-Āb—river of Wakhsh—issues out of Turkistān into the territory of Wakhsh, runs onward towards Balkh, and falls into the Jihūn, near Tirmid." In his account of the Mughal invasion, our author mentions Balkh [بلخ] and Wakhsh [واخش] sometimes as one and the same place, and, at others, as separate places.

While on this subject, I must now mention another matter. In the Māsālik
his jurisdiction. He marched forces in every direction, and throughout the whole of those parts his mandates were obeyed.

In the year in which the Sultans of Ghiir and Ghaznin led an army into the territory of Rid-bar of Marw, to repel Sultan Shäh, the Khwārazmi, Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad, by command of the Sultāns, brought the forces of Bāmiān and Tukhāristān and joined them. On the occasion of Sultan Shāh's overthrow, Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, of Hirāt, who had been a slave of Sultan Sanjar, and who, obliged to evacuate Hirāt, had joined Sultan Shāh, in this engagement fell into the hands of the troops of Bāmiān. They slew him, and brought his head to the presence of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din. The Sultan [in consequence] became very cordial towards Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, and upon this very occasion his advancement took place, and he received the title of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, and a black canopy of state was assigned to him.

Previous to this, neither Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Masʿūd, nor he had any canopy of state, and his designation was Malik Shams-ud-Din; but, when he acquired a canopy of state, he obtained the title of Sultan; and by Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, and Muʿizz-ud-Din, who were his uncle's sons, he was treated with great honour and reverence.

wa Mamālik, Bāmān is described as “a town about half the extent of Balkh [in those days Balkh was a very extensive city], situated on a hill, and in front of it flows the river which runs through Gharjistān.” The Tāriḵ-i-Alīf, a work of great authority, Jahān-Ārā, the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīḵ, and some others, distinctly aver that there was no town whatever called Bāmān, which is the name of the country, and that Rāṣif [रःसिफ], Rāṣīf [रःसीफ], was the name of its chief town, which place was totally destroyed by Chingiz Khān on his advance towards Ghaznin. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīḵ says Bāmān is also called Tukhāristān! Rāṣīf is probably the place called “Gulgūlīh” by Masson, but such name is not to be found in any Persian history that I know of. The Mughals styled it Maukālīg—the unfortunate city—after its ruin.

7 See pages 249, 378, and note 8, page 379.
8 The printed text and I. O. L. MS. 1952, and two others, have عل—to repulse, drive away; and, in the R. A. Soc. MS. عل—to repulsing, driving away!
9 The text here exhibits considerable variations, and great differences of idiom express the same signification. Some authors state that, on this occasion, Muʿizz-ud-Din also received the title of Sultan, and that before his title was only Malik.
The Almighty bestowed upon him worthy and excellent offspring, and blessed him with six sons; and for a considerable time the country of Tukharistan continued under the jurisdiction of his officers. He patronized learned men of distinction, and they took up their residence in his dominions; and acted with equity and beneficence towards his subjects, and died renowned and popular; and, after him, the sovereignty came to Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām.

III. SULTĀN BAḤĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, SON OF SULTĀN SHAMS-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD.

Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, was a very great and august monarch, and was just and enlightened. He was the patronizer of learned men, and the dispenser of equity; and, in his day, the whole of the learned 'Ulamā were unanimous, that there was no Musalmān sovereign who was a greater cherisher of learned men, for this reason, that his intercourse, his communion, and his converse, were exclusively with 'Ulamā of judgment and discrimination.

He was, on both sides, a Shansabānī, and his mother was the Ḥurrah-i-Jalālī, the daughter of Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, the sister of the two Sultāns, and older than either of them. Kāzī Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zawzānī, who was the most eloquent man of his day, [upon one occasion] was delivering a discourse within his [Bahā-ud-Dīn's] palace, and, during the invocation, the Sultān said: "What adornment can I give to the bride of the realm upon the face of whose empire two such moles exist, one Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and the other Mu'izz-ud-Dīn!" The Almighty's mercy be upon them all!

1 Our author, like others, does not even give the names of these sons. Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, however, was not the eldest of the sons of Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. When the latter died, the Bāmīān nobles raised his eldest son, 'Abbās, by a Turkish wife, to the throne. The two brothers, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, were angry at this, and they deposed 'Abbās, and set up their sister's son, Sām, and he received the title of Bahā-ud-Dīn. 'Abbās might have been here entered among the rulers of Tukharistan and Bāmīān as well as Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bāk, among the sovereigns of Ghaznīn.

2 The mother of his grandfather, Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, was a Turkish bond-maid.

3 These are our author's exact words, but what the "invocation" was our chronicler does not say; but it is a way he has of mystifying his own statements. The fact is, as related by another author, that the Kāzī, mentioned
In short, the admirable benevolence of that monarch towards the 'Ulamā of Islām was more than can be contained within the compass of writing. That Miracle of the World, Fakhr-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Rāzī, composed the Risālah-i-Bahā'īah in that Sultan's name; and for a considerable period he continued under the shadow of that sovereign's favour and protection. That Chief of learned Doctors, Jalāl-ud-Din, Warsak, during the Sultan's reign, attained the office of Shaikh-ul-Islām of the district of Balkh; and Maulānā Sarāj-ī-Minhāj, that Most Eloquent of 'Ajam, and the Wonder of his Age, was sent for, secretly, by Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, from the Court of Fīrūz-koh, who despatched a seal-ring of turquoise stone with the name of Sām engraved upon it, and with great respect and reverence invited the Maulānā to his Court. When this circumstance occurred, the writer of this History, Minhāj-ī-Sarāj, was in the third year of his age.

The requests and solicitations of Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, were continuous and unremitting. The reason of this was, that, during the time of [his father] Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad, the Maulānā proceeded from Ghaznīn towards Bāmiān, and, at that period, Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, held charge of the district of Balarwān. He paid his respects to the Maulānā, and sought to retain above, began one day from the pulpit to eulogize Bahā-ud-Din, and was extolling the flourishing state his dominions were in, when that monarch exclaimed: "What adornment can I give unto the kingdom's bride, when on the cheek of her sovereignty are already two such moles?" The word khāl signifies a mole; and also a maternal uncle; and the moles here referred to are his two maternal uncles, Ghiyās-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn.

4 Jahān-Ārā and Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh say that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, was a learned monarch, and a friend of learned men; as an example of which he entertained, near his person, the Imam Fakhr-ud-Din, of Raz, and treated him with great favour and consideration. They do not, however, mention "that Most Eloquent of 'Ajam, and the Wonder of his Age," our author's father; in fact, I have never noticed his name mentioned in any other work. This same Imam was subsequently accused, by some parties, of having brought about the assassination of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn. See note 3, page 485, and note 9, page 385.

5 In some copies Warsal and Kadsak. The above seems the most correct.

6 Our author's father.

7 Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, whose reign has just been given.

8 The majority of the best copies are as above, but two others have "Balwān," and three others "Barwān," and one "Balarwān of Bāmiān;" but at page 115 our author says Balarwān is in Ghajrīstān.
him, and showed him great respect and veneration; and he had both seen and heard his soul-inspiring discourse, and his heart-expanding conversation, and the pleasure he had derived therefrom remained impressed upon his royal mind, and he was desirous of enjoying all the delicacies of the benefits of the Maulānā's conversation. When Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, reached the throne of sovereignty of Bāmīān, he sent for the Maulānā repeatedly, and charged him with the administration of all the offices connected with the law, and sent him his private signet-ring.

The Maulānā proceeded to the Court of Bāmīān from the Court of Fīrūz-koh without the permission of Sulṭān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn; and, when he arrived in that part, he was treated with great respect and honour, and the whole of the [legal] functions of that kingdom, such as the Chief Kāżī-ship of the realm and other parts, the judicial administration of the triumphant forces, the chaplaincy of the State, together with the office of censor, with full power of the ecclesiastical law, the charge of two colleges, with assigned lands and benefactions abundant, all these offices the Maulānā was entrusted with. The diploma conferring the whole of these offices, in the handwriting of the Ṣāḥib, who was the Wazīr of the kingdom of Bāmīān, up to the present time that this ŢABAKĀT was put in writing in the sublime name of the great Sulṭān, Nāṣīr-ud-Dunya wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muẓaffar-i-Maḥmūd, son of Sulṭān I-yal-timūsh, Kāsim-i-Amīr-ul-Mūmmīn—whose monarchy may the Almighty perpetuate!—still exists in the Kharīṭāh [a bag of embroidered silk] containing the author's diplomas, along with his banner and his turban of honour. The mercy of

---

9 Allowance must be made for a little family blarney.
1 Here, too, the text varies much. One set of copies—the oldest—has as above—"Fāqār Māsāla va ʾaftār ḍabīr va Fāqār ʾaftār Mīmār wa Māzābīb—Fāqār Māsāla va ʾaftār ʾaftār Mīmār wa Māzābīb—"the Chief Kāżī-ship of the country, and settlement of the requests of the triumphant forces or retinue."
2 An official who examines the weights and measures, and has a supervision over merchants and shop-keepers, superintends the markets, and fixes the price of grain, &c. He can whip those found wine-bibbing, and interfere in other matters relating to public morality.
3 The title given to a minister.
4 This title is totally incorrect. See reign of Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timūsh, Section XXI.
the Almighty be upon them! This fact is recorded in
the narrative to show the admirable faith of that pious
ruler.

In short, he was a great monarch; and his dominions
assumed great amplitude and expansion, and comprised
the whole of the country of Tukhāristān and its depend-
cencies, together with other territories, namely, in the east 4,
as far as the frontier of Kāshmir, and, in the west, as far as
the boundary of Tirmid and Balkh; north, as far as the
bounds of Kāshghar; and south, as far as Ghūr and Ghar-
jistān, in the whole of which the Khutbah was read for him
and the money impressed with his name6. The whole of
the Malik and Amir of each of the three kingdoms,
namely, Ghūr, Ghaznīn, and Bāmīān, after [the decease of]
both the Sulṭāns [Ghiyās-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud-Din],
turned their eyes on him; and, when Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-
Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, was martyred, the Malik and
Amīrs of Ghaznīn, both Ghūris and Turks, with one con-
sent, requested him to come [and assume the sovereignty]'.
Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, accordingly, determined to pro-
ceed from Bāmīān to Ghaznīn, and set out in that direction
with a numerous army.

5 At this period there were powerful sovereigns ruling over Kāshmir and its
dependencies, also the Jahāṅgīrīah rulers of Suwāt, who held sway over a
large portion of the mountain districts to the west, and the Sulṭāns of Pīch, of
whom more anon.

6 How much of this tract never yet heard the Khutbah?

7 Firishṭāhī’s History, or rather the translation of Firishṭāhī’s History, which
supplies the chief materials for the Histories of India, so called, here says [that
is the text]:—“ The inclination of the Khwājah, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk [a title given
to Wazirs], and the Turk Amīrs, was towards the sovereignty of Ghiyās-ud-
Dīn, Maḥmūd ; and the Ghūrī Amīrs, in secret, entertained the idea of the
sovereignty of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām.” This is nearly in the words of our author,
whom he quotes; but Dow, vol. i. pp. 149-50, translates this passage thus:
“ The Omrahs of Ghur, insisting upon Baha-ul-dien, the King’s cousin,
Governor of Bamia, and one of the seven sons of Hussein; and the Vizier [Chaja-
ul-Muluck !!], and the officers of the Turkish mercenaries, on Mamood, son
of the former Emperor, the brother of Mahomed Ghori.” BRIGGS, vol. i., page
186, renders it: “ The chiefs of Ghor claimed it for Baha-oed-Deen, the
King’s cousin, Governor of Bamian, and one of the seven sons of Eis-oed-
Deen Hoossein ; while the Vizier and the officers of the Toorky mercenaries
espoused the cause of Mahmood,” &c.

This is faithfully rendering the text, certainly; but it so happens that Bahā-
ud-Dīn, Sām, was neither Governor of Bamian, nor was he one of Eis-oed-
Deen Hoossein’s ['Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain’s] sons, but certainly his grandfather,
Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas’ūd, was 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Husain’s, son.
When he reached the district of Kidan, he was attacked with diarrhoea, and, only nineteen days after the martyrdom of the victorious Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, died. His reign was fourteen years.

IV. SULTĀN JALĀL-UD-DĪN, ‘ALĪ, SON OF BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, BĀMIĀNĪ.

When the victorious Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, obtained martyrdom, and Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, departed this life on the way [to Ghaznin], the heirs to the sovereignty, then remaining, were of two branches of the Shansabānīah race—one, the family of the Sultāns of Bāmiān, and the second, the family of the Sultāns of Ghūr. When they conveyed the bier of the victorious Sultān from Dam-yak, the Turkish Slaves of the [late] Sultān, the great Maliks and Amirs, took the Sultan's bier, together with vast treasures, and the magazines of military stores, from the Amirs of Ghūr. Those Ghūrīān Amirs, who were in the army of Hindūstān, were inclined towards the sons of Sultān Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, and the Turk Amirs were inclined to Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, the [late] Sultān’s nephew.

8 It seems somewhat remarkable that Kidān proved fatal, according to our author, to so many of the Shansabānī chiefs. Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, and Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, son of ‘Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, also both died at Kidān. See pages 321 and 343.

9 He died in Sha‘bān, 602 H., and reigned fourteen years. He must therefore have succeeded to the throne about the middle of the year 588 H., which was the year in which Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Din defeated Rā‘e Pithorā at Tarā‘īn.

1 Nearly every copy of the text is incorrect here in giving the name of ‘Ala‘-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, instead of his brother’s, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, ‘Alī; and ‘Ala‘-ud-Dīn is again mentioned in them as the last of the Shansabī rulers of Ghaznin, and he never ruled over Tukhāristān. The best Paris copy, however, contrary to all the others examined, has both brothers here. Jalān-Ārā and some others have the same; but, in them, the brothers are not mentioned again, and the dynasty of Tukhāristān terminates with them. Raḥat-us-Ṣafā agrees with the above, and mentions ‘Ala‘-ud-Dīn among the Ghaznin rulers, his proper place.

3 Our author here contradicts the statement made in the preceding page. The fact was that all the Amīrs, both Turks and Ghūrīs, seemed desirous that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, should succeed to the supreme authority; but after his death they became divided, when the choice lay between his son, ‘Ala‘-ud-Dīn,
The Ghūrīān Amīrs, such as were at Ghaznīn, namely, the Sipah-Sālār [the Commander of Troops] Kharoshti ⁴, Sulimān-i-Shīs, and others besides them, wrote letters to 'Alā-ud-Dīn, and Jalāl-ud-Dīn [sons of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām], and prayed them to come to Ghaznīn, and they came thither, as will be subsequently recorded, please God, in the Section on the Sultāns of Ghaznīn.

When Jalāl-ud-Dīn had seated his brother on the throne of Ghaznīn, he returned himself, and ascended the throne of Bāmīān. A trustworthy chronicler ⁵ related that they [the brothers] divided the treasures at Ghaznīn, and that the share of Jalāl-ud-Dīn amounted to two hundred and fifty camel-loads of pure gold and of jewel-studded articles of gold and silver, which he conveyed along with him to Bāmīān.

A second time he assembled an army against Ghaznīn, and drew together forces from every part of his dominions, consisting of Ghūrīs, Ghuzz, and Beghū ⁶, and proceeded to Ghaznīn, and was taken prisoner ⁷, and was subsequently

Muḥammad, and Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, the late Sultān's brother's son; notwithstanding that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, at the time of his death, had expressed a wish that his two sons should proceed to Ghaznīn, and endeavour, by conciliation, to gain over the Wazīr, the Turkish Slaves, and the Ghūrīān Amīrs, and take possession of Ghaznīn; after which 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the eldest, was to have Ghaznīn, and Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, the youngest, Bāmīān. See the reign of the III. ruler, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, farther on. Several authors consider the dynasty to have ended with Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām.

There is some doubt with regard to this probably by-name: some have Kharosh, Kharoshnī, Haroshti and Harosti and Harosi. The majority of the most generally correct copies are as above. See Section xxiii.

This name is uncertain. The majority of copies have Beghū, as above; whilst the oldest copy has Beghūr [not I-ghūr]; whilst the best Paris copy, and the three which generally agree—the I. O. L. copy, the Ro. As. Soc. MS., and the Bodleian copy—have Saḵrār [سکرر]. There is a tribe of the Ghuzz mentioned at page 377, note ⁶, under the name of Saṅkūrān. Perhaps Beghū may be another tribe of the Ghuzz also, and the Saṅkūrān may also have been included in this levy of troops. See under the reign of I-yal-dūz.

After Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, reached Hirāt [in Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 605 H.], he sent agents to Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd [see note ³, page 400]; and, among other matters, interceded for Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl. Maḥmūd accepted the terms offered by Sultān Muḥammad, and an accommodation took place between them. This evidently refers to the acknowledgment of Sultān Muḥammad's suzerainty by Maḥmūd, mentioned in the note just referred to. Another author, however, states, that, after disposing of the affairs of Bālkū, Sultān Muḥammad proceeded to Guzarwān, which was the ancient sief of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of
released, and returned to Bāmīān again. During his absence, his uncle, Sūltān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, had seized the throne of Bāmīān. Jalāl-ud-Dīn came back with but a few men, and one morning, at dawn, attacked his uncle unawares, took him prisoner, and put him to death, and the Sahib who had been his father's Wazir he caused to be flayed alive; and he brought the country [again] under his jurisdiction.

He reigned for a period of seven years, when Sūltān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, made a forced march against him from the banks of the river Jadārah, and suddenly fell upon him, and took him prisoner; and the whole of that treasure which he had brought from Ghaznīn, together with the treasures of Bāmīān, Sūltān Muḥammad appropriated, put Jalāl-ud-Dīn to death, and retired.1

Khar-mīl [see pages 474, 475], and was then being invested by Abū-'Alī [an officer and probably a kinsman of Sūltān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd], and that this same Abū-'Alī was made the means of communication, in behalf of the son of Khar-mīl, with Maḥmūd.

Be this, however, as it may, when Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, became aware of the accommodation between Maḥmūd and Sūltān Muḥammad, he demanded of Maḥmūd why he had made friends with the enemy of the Ghiiris. He received, in reply, the answer, that his, I-yal-dūz's, bad conduct had been the cause of it. When this message was delivered to him, I-yal-dūz released Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, brother of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, gave him one of his own daughters in marriage, and sent him with a considerable army, to Bāmīān, where Jalāl-ud-Dīn's uncle, 'Abbās by name, had assumed the sovereignty after the imprisonment of himself and brother. One of I-yal-dūz's chiefs, Abī-Dakur [Zakur ?] by name, then accompanying him, advised Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, to face about, and march back against Ghaznīn itself, so that they might put an end to the career of that slave, referring to I-yal-dīz, whose servant he was. This Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, declined to do; upon which Abī-Dakur separated from him, and retired to Kābul, which was his fief. Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, continued his march to Bāmīān, the capital of which was Rasif {or Rasīf}, and recovered the sovereignty from his uncle 'Abbās. See next page, and latter part of note 6, page 426, and account of the III. ruler, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and I-yal-dūz, IV. ruler, farther on.

8 One of the oldest copies has Sūltān Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, son of Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad; but all the others have 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd. See note 4, page 436. Alī, Jahān-Ārā, and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, call him 'Abbās. Rawżat-ūs-Ṣafā, Mas'ūd.

9 This is the circumstance referred to at page 267. There the name of the river, in the majority of the best copies, was Jadār [زادر]; but it appears that Jadārah [ژادراه] or Jadār [ژادار] is the correct name. See page 267. Some copies of the text make a great hash of this name, and have خارـه—خوارك هار—بختیر —and even خارـه

1 Rawżat-ūs-Ṣafā says, but follows our author generally, "when Khwārazm Shāh came into Māwar-un-Nahr [the southern part of it], he made a forced
Jalāl-ud-Dīn was a very great monarch, and of great intrepidity, alertness, and gallantry, an ascetic, devout and continent, so that during the whole of his lifetime no inebriating liquor had ever passed his blessed lips, and the cincture of his garment had never been undone to any unlawfulness. Manliness he possessed to that degree, that no prince of the Shansabānīan race came up to him in vigour, in valour, and in arms. He was wont, in battle, to discharge two arrows at one aim, and neither of his arrows would miss the mark, and neither animal of the chase nor antagonist ever rose again from the wound of his arrow. At the time when the Turks of Ghaznin followed in pursuit of him, at the Hazār Darakhtān [place of the Thousand Trees] of Ghaznīn, he had struck the trunk of a tree with an arrow, and had overturned it [!] ; and every Turkish warrior who reached the tree would make obeisance to the arrow, and would turn back again; and [the tree of] this arrow became [subsequently] a place of pilgrimage.

With all this strength and valour Jalāl-ud-Dīn was mild and beneficent; but manliness availeth nothing against destiny, and, as his time was come, he died.

V. Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, Son of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad.

At the time that the sons of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, namely, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, were both made prisoners at Ghaznīn, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, march, and, quite unexpectedly and unawares, appeared before Bāmiān [Rāṣīf?] seized Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, killed him, gained possession of his treasures, and carried them off. The Afghāns will have to keep a sharp look out now, or they may be served in the same fashion, and find a foreign force from ‘the intermediate zone’ pounce suddenly on Bāmiān some fine morning.

3 In some modern copies of the text Hazār-Darakht. There are several places of this name. It may be that on the route between Ghaznīn and Gardaiz.

4 Other authors state that, after a nominal reign of seven years, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, fell into the hands of the Khwārazmīs, and that he was the last of the race that attained power; but what his subsequent fate was is not stated. Our author says he was put to death by the Khwārazmīs, but when or where is not mentioned. See his reign, farther on.
Mas'ūd, son of Shams-ud-Din, ascended the throne of Bāmiān, and took to wife the daughter of Malik Shāh of Wakhsh, who had been married to [and left a widow by] his brother, Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Din, Sām. He conferred the Wazir-ship upon the Ṣāḥib, the Wazir of Bāmiān, and assumed sway over the dominions of Tukhāristān.

When Jalāl-ud-Din was released from Ghaznin, he turned his face towards Bāmiān. In the fortress of Kawik was a person, one of the godly ecclesiastics, a holy man, whom they called Imām Shams-ud-Din-i-Arshād [the most upright]. Jalāl-ud-Din came to pay him a visit of reverence, to obtain a good omen from his words, and his benediction. This personage was a holy sage, who, after the acquirement of all the knowledge and science pertaining to the [written] law, had withdrawn from the world, and devoted himself to the worship of Almighty God, and who, having turned his face towards the Court of the Most High, had became a worker of miracles and the foreteller of the future.

When Jalāl-ud-Din paid him a visit, and sought the assistance of this Imām's blessed spirit, he enjoined him, saying: "Certainly, repossess thyself of the throne of Bāmiān; but take care that thou slayest not thine uncle, for, if thou slayest him, they will also slay thee."

Having performed his visit to the holy man, Jalāl-ud-Din retired and went away; and, when he had turned his back, that holy Imam predicted, saying: "The hapless Jalāl-ud-Din will kill his uncle, and they will kill him also;" and, in the end, so it turned out, as that unique one of the world had foretold. Jalāl-ud-Din moved onward from that place where he then was, with his followers, and, 

6 The Raużat-us-Ṣafā, which appears to have blindly followed our author, here calls this ruler Mas'ūd only, and, of course, agrees with our author's statement respecting his usurpation of the government and his subsequent fate. Other writers, however, including Jahān-Ārā, Muntaḳbāḥ-ut-Tawārīḵ, and Tarīḵ-i-Alfi, state that the news of the defeat of the two brothers, and their having fallen prisoners into the hands of I-yal-dūz, having suddenly reached Bāmiān, there being no one else to undertake the government, their uncle, 'Abbās, whose mother was a Turkish bond-maid, naturally assumed it; but when they, having been set at liberty, returned in safety, he gave up to them the authority again. See note 1, page 428, and page 433, and note 2.

6 The name of a pass and fortress, now in ruins, in the range of Hindū-ḵūsh, called Kawak by modern travellers. Some of the copies of the text have ཁ and ན.
at the dawn of the morning, fell upon his uncle, took him prisoner, and put him to death, and flayed alive the Şāhib, his Wazîr, as has been previously recorded.  

7 Our author has not yet finished his account of Jalāl-ud-Dîn, 'Alî; he merely leaves it for another dynasty, and relates his farther proceedings, in the account of his brother, 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Mûhammad, which see.
SECTION XIX.

ACCOUNT OF THE SULTĀNS OF GHAZNĪN OF THE SHANSABĀNĪAḤ DYNASTY.

The frail and humble author [of these pages], Minhāj-i-Sarāj-i-Dīn-i-Minhāj—one the Almighty shield his deformity!—thus states, that this Section is confined to the mention of the Shansabānī Sultāns from whose majesty the throne of the court of Ghaznin acquired splendour and magnificence, and from whose sovereignty the countries of Hind and Khurāsān became glorious, the first of whom, of the Shansabi race, was Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, and, after that, Sultān’ Alā-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain took Ghaznin, but did not rule there. After that, Sultān Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, captured it2; and, when he attained martyrdom, he devised that throne to his own slave, Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and with him that sovereignty terminated. The mercy and pardon of the Almighty be on the whole of them!

I. SULTĀN SAIF-UD-DĪN, SŪRĪ, SON OF ‘IZZ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUṢAIN.

Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, was a great monarch, and was greatly endowed with valour, vigour, clemency, decision,

1 A title he sometimes gives himself which will be explained in the Prefatory Remarks. The ‘deformity’ was not bodily.

2 I fear our author had a very bad memory. At page 377, and 449, he says his elder brother, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, took it, and conferred the government of it on Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, as his lieutenant. Here it is contradicted, and the copies of the text agree as to this name. Here too he says that Mu’izz-ud-Dīn “devised” the throne of Ghaznin to his slave, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and, in his account of the latter, that he desired to bequeath it to him. The idiom of the text here again differs, but only the idiom, in the two different sets of copies.
justice, beneficence, a graceful presence, and kingly grandeur. He was the first person of this race to whom they accorded the title of Sultan.

When the news of the misfortune which had befallen his elder brother, the Malik-ul-Jibāl, was brought to his [Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī’s] hearing, he set about taking revenge upon Sulṭān Bahrām Shāh, and caused a numerous army to be got in readiness from the different tracts of Ghūr, and set out towards Ghaznin, overthrew Bahrām Shāh, and took Ghaznin. Bahrām Shāh fled from before him, and retired.

3 This personage should have been mentioned first after the death of his father, whose successor he was, and when the dominions were divided, and separate petty dynasties formed. Who “they” were who accorded him the title of Sulṭān the chronicler does not say.

4 Kuṭb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Malik-ul-Jibāl. Jibāl signifies mountains; “Jabāl” nothing. At page 339 our author states that Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, in succession to his father, ascended the throne of Ghūr, and divided the territory among his brothers.

Alī says that Bahrām Shāh put Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, the Malik-ul-Jibāl, to death in 536 of the Rihlat [547 H.], on which ’Alā-ud-Dīn, Al-Husain, [Guzidah and Khulaṣat-ul-Akhbār, and Ḥabīb-us-Siyar also agree] advanced against Ghaznin for the purpose of avenging him. Bahrām Shāh fled to Karmān, situated in a strong country surrounded by hills, where cavalry could not act, and made it his residence. ’Alā-ud-Dīn, having gained possession of Ghaznin, left his brother, Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, there, and returned himself to Ghūr. Sūrī, placing dependence on the Amīrs and troops of Ghaznin to support him, remained there with but a few of the Ghūrīan troops. When winter arrived, Bahrām Shāh advanced from Karmān with an army of Afghāns and Khaliǧās, which he had raised, on which the Amīrs seized Sūrī. This took place in Muḥarram 537 of the Rihlat [548 H.], but Guzidah and Jāmi’-ut-Tawārīḫ say in 544 H., and both Guzidah, Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, and Fanakat state, that Bahrām Shāh was dead before ’Alā-ud-Dīn [who is said to have been known as A’raj, or the lame from birth] reached Ghaznin the second time.

Since writing note 3, page 347, I find that, in 543 H., some time after Sulṭān Sanjār’s defeat by the Karā-Khiṭa-Īs [authors disagree as to the date of his overthrow. See note 4, page 154], and when he had retired into Irāk, Sulṭān Bahrām Shāh, his sister’s son, sent him a despatch intimating his recovery of Ghaznin, and the death of Sām and Sūrī, the Ghūrīs [namely, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, and Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī. See pages 340—343.] who had previously acquired power over that territory, on which Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Khalid, Fūsḥanji, a poet of the Court of Sanjār, composed the following lines:

“Thy, who in thy service falsehood brought,
The capital-stock of their heads in jeopardy placed,
Far remote from thee, Sām’s head, in frenzy sank,
And now the head of Sūrī they’ve to ‘Irāk brought.”

This tends to confirm the date mentioned by Guzidah and others, and to show that the Ghūrīs had been guilty of hypocrisy, as many authors state, towards Bahrām Shāh, as well as Sulṭān Sanjār. See page 343.
towards Hind, and Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, ascended the throne of Ghaznīn, and made over the dominions of Ghūr to his brother, Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, the father of [the Sultāns] Ghīyāš-ud-Din, and Mu‘izz-ud-Din.

Having brought Ghaznīn under his sway, the whole of the Amirs and soldiery, the notables and great men of Ghaznīn and of the adjacent parts submitted to him; and he bestowed upon those classes ample gifts and favours, so much so, that the soldiery and Amirs of Bahrām Shāh became overwhelmed in the benefits he bestowed upon them.

When the winter season came round, he commanded that the forces of Ghūr should have permission granted them to return to their own country, and entertained the followers, soldiery, and petty officials of Bahrām Shāh in his own service, and placed confidence in them. The Sultān and his Wazīr, Sayyid Majd-ud-Din, Mūsawi, along with a small number of persons from among his old retainers, were all that remained with him, and the rest [both] at the court, and [stationed] in the Ghaznīn territory, were all the soldiery of Ghaznīn.

When storms of snow and excessive cold set in, and the roads and passes of Ghūr became closed from the excessive snow, and the people of Ghaznīn became aware that it was impossible that troops or succour could reach Ghaznīn from the side of Ghūr, they despatched letters, secretly, to the presence of Bahram Shah, saying, "throughout the entire city and parts around, only a small number of persons have remained with Sultān Sūrī of the forces of Ghūr, the whole of the remainder are the servants of the Maḥmūdī dynasty. It behoveth [the Sultān] not to let the opportunity slip through his hands, and he should repair to Ghaznīn with all possible haste." In accordance with those letters and solicitations, Bahrām Shāh, from the side of Hindūstān, advanced unexpectedly and reached Ghaznīn, and made a night attack upon Sultān Sūrī. He came out of Ghaznīn with his own particular followers who were from Ghūr, and along with his Wazīr, Sayyid Majd-ud-Din, Mūsawi, took the road to Ghūr ⁴.

⁴ Some copies have, ṭu‘ayāḥ, —the people, the peasantry, &c.
⁶ It would have been just as difficult for him to reach Ghūr from Ghaznīn, as it was impracticable for troops from Ghūr joining him at Ghaznīn.
Bahram Shâh's horsemen set out in pursuit of him, until they discovered him in the precincts of Sang-i-Surâkh [the Perforated Rock or Stone]. Sultan Siri, with the few followers that were along with him, joined battle with Bahram Shâh's cavalry, and fought and opposed them as long as it was possible so to do; and, when compelled to fight on foot, they took shelter on the hill [side]. It was impossible to surround the Sultan, his Wazîr, and his own followers, whilst an arrow remained in their quivers. When not an arrow remained in their quivers, Bahram Shâh's troops, by [entering into] stipulation, and pledging the right hand, seized them, and secured them.

When they reached the gate [one of the gates?] of the city [of Ghaznin], two camels were brought, and Sultan

7 There are three or four places bearing this name, the correctness of which there is no doubt of. It is the name of a kotal or pass near the Halmand river, about N.N.W. of Ghaznin, on the route from that city, and also from Kâbul into Ghûr; but "Sang-i-Surkh, a strong fort in Ghor, probably near the Hari river," is as impossible as "the mountains of Faj Hanísâr" and "the Râsafat mountains."

8 If a little liberty were taken with the text, then it might be "by promise [of safety], and their [Bahram's officers] pledging their right hands, they were captured and secured," &c.; but, seeing that they were at the mercy of Bahram's troops, I do not see what stipulations were necessary. Our author, as usual, wishes to soften it down.

According to others, he was not so much honoured as to be placed on a camel, but was seated, with his face blackened, on an emaciated bullock, and paraded through the capital. From statements noticed in Dow's and Briggs' translations of Firîstâh's History, to which all modern compilers of Histories of India resort, as authorities not to be doubted, but which statements, I was convinced, could not be correct, I have taken the trouble to examine Firîstâh's text, more particularly, because that writer quotes our author as one of his principal authorities, and often quotes him verbatim. I have also used in this examination the lithographed text which Briggs himself edited, or, rather, which was edited under his superintendence; and, as I expected, particularly in the passages now to be pointed out, I have found Firîstâh generally correct, and his translators wholly wrong. I am not the first, however, who has noticed them, and I beg leave to observe that I have no desire whatever to take, from Dow or Briggs, any credit that may be due to them, although I dare say there are some who will view what I have done in quite another light; but if truth in history be desirable, and correct translations of native historians wanted, it is time that these grave errors were pointed out and corrected, however distasteful it may be to those who have written their histories, fancying these versions reliable, and disgusting to those who, not even knowing a letter of any Oriental alphabet themselves, have presumed to declare such Histories compiled from such incorrect translations, "works of undoubted authority." To expose and correct such errors is a duty, when it is taken into consideration that such incorrect statements, which are not con-
Sūrī was seated upon one, and his Wazir, Sayyid Majd-ud-Dīn, Mūsāwī, was placed on the other, and they were both

*taught in the original work, have been, and are still being taught* in our colleges and schools. A careful writer like Elphinstone, by the translations above referred to, has been betrayed into terrible errors, and others have repeated and re-echoed them down to the present day.

To those conversant with the Persian language and who can read for themselves, I say: do not fail to see for yourselves, for the lithographed text of Firīshṭāh is as easy as possible. It does not matter if, in translating, the literal words are not given; but facts must not be distorted, or made to appear what they are not.

**Dow.**

"He [Byram, which is the name he gives to Bahram] soon after publicly executed Muhommed Prince of Ghor, who was son-in-law to the rebel Balin. . . . Seif ul dien, surnamed Souri, Prince of Ghor, brother to the deceased, raised a great army to revenge his death. . . . The Prince of Ghor, without further opposition, entered the capital, where he established himself, by the consent of the people, sending Alla, his brother, to rule his native principality of Ghor. . . . It was now winter, and most of the followers of the Prince of Ghor had returned, upon leave, to their families, when Byram, unexpectedly, appeared before Ghizni, with a great army. Seif ul dien being then in no condition to engage him with his own troops, and having little dependence upon those of Ghizni, was preparing to retreat to Ghor, when the Ghiznians entreated him to engage Byram, and that they would exert themselves to the utmost in his service. This was only a trick for an opportunity to put their design in execution. As the unfortunate prince was advancing to engage Byram he was surrounded by the troops of Ghizni, and taken prisoner, while Byram in person put the forces of Ghor to flight. The unhappy captive was inhumanly ordered to have his forehead made black, and then to be put astride a sorry bullock, with his face turned towards the tail. . . . When this news was carried to the

**Briggs.**

"He [Beiram] soon after publicly executed Kootb-ood-Dien Mahomed Ghoro Afgan [this last word is not contained in Firīshṭāh at all, and is the translator's own. Malcolm too, Persia: Vol. i., note *, page 344, quotes Price—Vol. ii. page 309— as an authority for "Sy/sdeen Souri" [Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī?] being "an Afgan prince of Ghour." I felt convinced that Price would never have said so, and, on reference to the page, find he makes no such statement. It must be Briggs to whom Malcolm referred], to whom he had given his daughter in marriage. . . . Seif-ood-Deen Soory, Prince of Ghoor, brother of the deceased, raised a great army to revenge his death. . . . Seif-ood-Deen Ghorooy, without further opposition, entered Ghisny, where, having established himself with the consent of the people, he sent his brother, Alla-ood-Deen Soor (sic) to rule his native principality of Ghoor. . . . It was now winter, and most of the followers of the Prince of Ghoor had returned to their families, when Sooltan Beiram unexpectedly appeared before Ghisny with a considerable army. Seif-ood-Deen being in no condition to oppose him with his own troops, and placing little reliance on those of Ghisny, was preparing to retreat to Ghoor, when the Ghisnevides entreated him to engage Beiram, promising to exert themselves to the utmost. This was done only to enable them to put their design of
publicly exposed about the streets of Ghaznin, and, from
the house-tops, dust, ashes, and excrement were launched
ears of his brother Alla, he burnt with rage, and, resolving upon re-
venge, with all his united powers, invaded Ghizny." — Vol. i. pages
124-5.

But what says Firishtah? — "In the latter part of his [Bahram's] sovereignty,
Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad, Ghuri, Suf [this is incorrect; he was not named
Suf, Saif-ud-Din was so named. I also beg to remark that this is the name of
Aman, son of a race or tribe], who was his son-in-law, was put to death at
Ghaznin by command of Bahram Shah. Saif-ud-Din, Suf, in order to avenge
his brother's blood, set out towards Ghaznin. . . . Saif-ud-Din, having
entered Ghaznin and become possessed of it, and, placing faith in the Ghazna-
wis, was there located. He sent back his brother, 'Ala-ud-Din, along with
the whole of the old Amirs, to Ghur; and, notwithstanding that Saif-ud-
Din, Suf, used to treat the people of Ghaznin with lenience, and that the
Ghurians did not dare to oppress them, the Ghaznavis wished for Bahram
Shah; and, although they used, outwardly, to show amity towards Saif-ud-
Din, Suf, secretly, they used to carry on a correspondence with Bahram Shah,
until the winter set in, and the roads into Ghur were closed by snow, and
people were unable to pass to and fro. At this time Bahram Shah unex-
pectedly reached Ghaznin with a large army of Afghans [he does not say they
were Sufis or Ghuris], Khalj, and other dwellers in the wilds. At this time
when not more than ten leagues intervened between them, Saif-ud-Din, Suf,
having received information of it, held consultation with the Ghaznavis—who
had been talking of their friendship and attachment—as to fighting, or retreating
towards Ghur. They, making hypocrisy their garment, did not give him just
counsel; and excited and stimulated him to fight. Saif-ud-Din, Suf, placing
faith in the council given by them, issued from the city with a body of the men of
Ghaznin, and a few of the men of Ghur, and marshalled his ranks opposite those
of Bahram Shah. As yet the preparations for battle were not completed, when
the Ghaznavis seized Saif-ud-Din, Suf, and, in high spirits, delivered him over
to Bahram Shah. He commanded that the face of Saif-ud-Din, Suf, should be
blackened; and, having placed him on an emaciated and weak bullock, which put
one foot before the other with a hundred thousand shakings, they paraded him
throughout the whole city. [There is not a word about with his face to the tail—
which is an Indian bazar term.] . . . When this terror-striking news came
to the hearing of 'Ala-ud-Din, the fervour of his nature burst out, and, with the
determination of avenging his brother, with a furious and relentless army, he
set out towards Ghaznin." This is a literal translation of Firishtah's words.

Then follow, in the two translations, things respecting 'Ala-ud-Din and his
upon their sacred heads until they reached the head of the doings, still more absurd and incorrect, which had better have been noticed in the account of 'Ala-ud-Dīn, but, at that time, I had not the least conception that Briggs and Dow were so much alike, and had not compared their statements with the original. Both translators leave out Firīštāḥ's statement, that, "before the arrival of 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh had died, and his son, Khusrav Shāh, had succeeded to the throne, and was made captive by means of treachery," and they merely give what Firīštāḥ says was the common tradition that Bahram encountered 'Ala-ud-Dīn, as our author states. "Allā" is supposed by the translators to have replied to "a letter" written by Bahram Shāh, in these terms:—

\[
\text{Briggs.} \quad \text{"Allā-o-od-Deen replied, 'That his threats were as impotent as his arms; that it was no new thing for kings to make war on their neighbours, but that barbarity like his was unknown to the brave; and such as he had never heard of being exercised towards princes; that he might be assured that God had forsaken him, and had ordained that he (Alla-o-od-Den) should be the instrument of that just revenge denounced against him for putting to death the representative of the independent and very ancient family of Ghor.'"—Page 152.}
\]

There is nothing of this kind in the original. Firīštāḥ says: "Bahram Shāh despatched an emissary with a message. 'Ala-ud-Dīn replied: 'This act which Bahram Shāh has perpetrated is a sign of the wane of the dominion of the Ghaznavīs, because, although sovereigns are used to lead armies against the dominions of each other, and, having overcome each other, are in the habit of depriving each other of their precious lives, still not with this disgrace and ignominy; and it is certain that heaven will take vengeance upon thee as a retribution and exemplary punishment, and will give me triumph over thee!' There is nothing more than this in the original. Compare these passages in Price's Mahommedan History, vol. ii. pages 309—311. He translates it from Firīštāḥ correctly although he does not profess to do so literally.

One more specimen here and I have done with this reign:—

\[
\text{Briggs.} \quad \text{"At first the troops of Ghı̄nıy, by their superior numbers, bore down those of Ghoor; till Alla, seeing his affairs almost desperate, called out to two gigantic brothers, whose name was Chirmil, the greater and the less, whom he saw in the front, like two rocks bearing against the torrent. . . Byram fled, with the scattered remains of his army, towards Hindostan; but he was overwhelmed with his mis-
\]

\[
\text{Dow.} \quad \text{"Allā replied, 'That his threats were as impotent as his arms; that it was no new thing for kings to make war on their neighbours, but that barbarity like his was unknown to the brave; and such as he had never heard of being exercised towards princes; that he might be assured that God had forsaken Byram, and ordained Alla to be the instrument of that just vengeance which was denounced against him for putting to death the representative of the long-independent and very ancient family of Ghoor.'"—Page 126.}
\]

\[
\text{Dow.} \quad \text{"At first the troops of Ghı̄nıy, by their superior numbers, bore down those of Ghoor; till Alla, seeing his affairs almost desperate, called out to two gigantic brothers, whose name was Chirmil, the greater and the less, whom he saw in the front, like two rocks bearing against the torrent. . . Byram fled, with the scattered remains of his army, towards Hindostan; but he was overwhelmed with his mis-
\]

\[
\text{Dow.} \quad \text{"At first the troops of Ghı̄nıy, by their superior numbers, bore down those of Ghoor; till Alla, seeing his affairs desperate, called out to two gigantic brothers, denominated the greater or lesser Khurmil [In a note, he says, he doubts whether this word should not be Firmīl, and says Briggs (who}
\]
Pul-i-Yak Ťāk ¹ [the One-arch Bridge] of the city. When they reached that place, Sultan Šūrī, and his Wazīr, Sayyid Majd-ud-Dīn, Mūsawī, were gibbeted, and they were both hung from the bridge. Such was the cruelty and ignominy with which they treated that handsome, just, intrepid, and laudable monarch. The Almighty bestowed victory upon Sultan 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Jahān-soz, the brother of Sultan Šūrī, so that he took revenge for this barbarous deed and this dishonour, as has been previously recorded.

fortunes, and sunk under the hand of death, in the year five hundred and forty-seven, after a reign of thirty-five years."—Page 127.

The above is copied by Maurice, and by Elphinstone, although not quite in the same words; and is re-echoed by Marshman in his History of India, written at the request of the University of Calcutta; and Meadows Taylor, in the Student's Manual of Indian History, who improves it, by inserting in the margin of page 89—"Ghuzny plundered by Alla ood Deen, Ėljbinnk"!!! FIRISHTAH'S account is as follows:—

"When the two armies came in contact, and the noise of the clashing of swords, and the whiz of arrows reached the vengeance-pursuing heavens, Khar-mīl the greater [older], and Khar-mīl the lesser [younger], entered the field like unto two rampant elephants. Khar-mīl the greater with a poniard ripped up the belly of a famous elephant," &c. [There is not a word about "rocks," "torrents," or anything approaching]. . . . "Bahram Shāh, being without heart or strength in every way, fled towards the country of Hind, and, in a very short time, through grief and affliction at the loss of his son, and other matters, fell sick, and was removed from this hostel of mortality to the gardens of eternity. According to the authentic account, his death took place in 547 H., after thirty-five years' reign."

Firishtah himself is not an author on whom implicit reliance can be placed, even though he quotes from the works of others, for he often mis-quotes them. This is particularly apparent from his account of these events under the reign of Bahram Shāh, and that of the same events in the chapter on the Ghūrīs, which is very different, and utterly contradictory, in many things, of his previous statements given above.

¹ See page 355, and note 9.
² Everything is barbarous, cruel, savage, and the like that others do to Ghūrīs; but inducing a sovereign to come out of and abandon his capital and surrender after pledges to him the most solemn oaths, and then imprisoning him, and afterwards murdering him, and the rest of his race; inducing a noble to turn his back before shooting him in a cowardly manner; inviting his brother to
Trustworthy narrators have related after this manner, that, when Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, Jahān-soz, was removed from the habitation of the world, and Sultan Saif-ud-Din, Muhammad, his son, ascended the throne of Ghūr, he commanded, that both the Sultāns, Ghiyās-ud-Din, Muhammad, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, sons of his, should be called to an audience, and having him basely assassinated; flaying a minister alive; digging up the bones of the dead; massacring women and children, and burning a city in a drunken fit; and mixing the blood of Sayyids with earth to make mortar, all these, on the part of a Ghūrī, are mildness, amiability, beneficence, greatness, and the like. Fanākātī says no less than 70,000 persons were massacred, on this occasion, in Ghaznī alone.

Some copies of the text, the idiom of which differs considerably here, have Sultan-ī-Ghūrī; and most copies leave out the Kasīm, &c. His titles given at the end of his reign [which see] are altogether different.

Between the putting to death of Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, and the establishment of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn at Ghaznī as his elder brother and sovereign's lieutenant, a period of no less than twenty-six years elapsed, but, as our author gives no dates, the uninitiated reader would imagine that Mu'izz-ud-Dīn succeeded close upon Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī. In reality, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn is the first of the Ghūrīān dynasty of Ghaznī.

This personage is incorrectly styled by the impossible title of Shāhāb-ud-Dīn, Shāhāb-ood-Deen, and even Shāhādīn. Shīhāb-ud-Dīn, which is Arabic, was certainly his title before his brother succeeded to the sovereignty of Ghūr, and his brother's was Shams-ud-Dīn; but soon after the accession of the latter both their titles were changed, as mentioned at page 370. Many authors, either not noticing this fact, or ignorant of it, continued to style the former by his first title of Shīhāb-ud-Dīn, and some have reversed the order of things, and appear to have imagined that Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was his first title, which was changed to Shīhāb-ud-Dīn; but no such title will be found on his coins. I have, myself, been led into the error of occasionally styling him Shīhāb-ud-Dīn in my notes to the Khwārazmī dynasty, page 255-260, an oversight I now correct. Firīṣtāt calls him sometimes Shīhāb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Ghūrī, and at others Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Ghūrī. Dow, in his translation of Firīṣtāt, chose to style him Mahommed Ghorī, as though the last word was part of his proper name, instead of that of his country, and overlooked the fact of the at the end of Ghūrī, being the yā-i-nisbat, expressing relation or connexion, as Hind and Hindī, Kābul, Kābulī, &c., and so compilers of Histories of India have re-echoed the name of Mahommed Ghorī down to the present day, although some follow Briggs, who sometimes styles him by the impossible titles of Shakhāb-ood-Dīn, and Moyis-ood-Dīn; but he too generally follows Dow, and calls him Mahommed Ghoory.

See also Elliot, INDIA: vol 2, page 292.
of Sām, who were imprisoned within the fortress of Wajir-istān, should be released, as has been stated previously in the account of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn.

Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn abode at the court of Firuz-koh in the service of Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn [his cousin], and Sultān Mu’izz-ud-Dīn proceeded to the court of Bāmiān to the presence of his uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas’ud-i-Ḥusain, Bāmiānī.

When Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn ascended [the throne of] the dominion of Ghūr, after the catastrophe of Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and the news of it reached Bāmiān, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas’ūd, turned his face towards Mu’izz-ud-Dīn and said: “Thy brother hath distinguished himself; when wilt thou do the like, and bestir thyself?” Mu’izz-ud-Dīn hung his head in the presence of his uncle, and left the audience hall, and set out then and there for the Court of Firuz-koh. When he reached the presence of Ghiyās-ud-Dīn [his brother], he became Sar-i-Jandar [Chief Armour-Bearer], and he continued to serve his brother, and served him with assiduity, as has been previously recorded.

He continued in his brother’s service for the period of one year, when some cause of umbrage arose in his august mind, and he proceeded towards Sijistān, to [the Court of] Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Sijistani, and there he remained one cold season. Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn despatched a distinct

6 Guzidah, and some other works, mention that ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, made Harṭ his capital, and conferred the sovereignty of Ghaznīn upon his nephew, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, as his deputy [The others say “his nephews, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and Mu’izz-ud-Dīn”], and that he [others “they”] succeeded, by treachery, in securing the person of Khusrau Shāh, in 555 H.; but from this statement, and what those writers immediately after state, it is evident, beyond a doubt, that they have confused Ghiyās with Mu’izz, and Khusrau Shāh with Khusrau Malik his son.

7 Eldest son of ‘Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, and first of the Ghirian rulers of Bāmiān.

8 He was mortally wounded and left for dead in the action with the Ghuzz, by Abū-l-’Abbās-i-Shīs, brother of the noble he had so treacherously shot with an arrow when his back was turned. See page 367.

9 The words 25 919 in Persia, and in the Persian of the East, signify “wilt thou do;” not “thou art doing.”

1 Because his brother Ghiyās-ud-Dīn had not conferred a separate appanage on him.

2 The Malik-us-Sālīs [the Sanguinary], Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who succeeded his father Taj-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fatḥ, in 559 H. See page 189.
guished person and brought him back again, and com-
mitted to his charge the territory of Kasr-i-Kajurān and
Istiāh. After he had brought the whole of the district of
Garmsir under his authority, Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn en-
trusted to him the city of Tigīn-ābād, which was one of
the largest cities of Garmshir. This Tigīn-ābād is the
place about which, and the possession of it by the Sultāns
of Ghūr, the downfall of the dynasty of Māhmūd-i-
Ghāzī, son of Sabuk-Tigīn, has been caused, and about which
Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, had improvised and sent to
Khusrau Shāh, son of Bahrām Shāh, the quatrain, which is
as follows:—

"Thy father first laid the foundation of enmity,
Hence the world's people all under oppression fell.
Have a care, lest for one Tigīn-ābād thou dost not give,
From end to end, the kingdom of Māhmūd's dynasty to the wind."

The Almighty's mercy be upon the Sultāns of both
dynasties!

When Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn acquired the territory of
Tigīn-ābād, the Ghuzz tribe, and the chieftains of that
sept, who, retiring defeated from before the forces of Khiṭāq,
had moved towards Ghaznī, during a period of twelve

3 Dow says, in his translation of Firishtah: "Mahommed Ghori was left
by his brother [Yeas ul dien l] when he acceded (sic) to the throne of Ghur, in
command at Tunganabad, in the province of Chorassan." BRIGGS has:
"On the accession of Gheias-ood-Deen to the throne of Ghizny and Ghor, he
appointed his brother, Modin-ood-Deen Mahomed [not called "Mahomded
Ghoory" here], governor of Tukeabad"!! Firishtah, who quotes our author,
says: "Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, on attaining the sovereignty of
Ghūr, left his full brother, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, who is renowned as Shīhāb-ud-Dīn,
at Tigīn-ābād, which belongs to the territory of Garmsīr." He was only
"renowned as Shīhāb-ud-Dīn" by Firishtah, and a few other comparatively
modern writers who, perhaps, knew not of the passage in our author where he
mentions the change of title by both brothers. The Tāj-ul-Maʾāsir written,
or, at least, begun before the Sultān's death, does not mention the word
Shīhāb any more than our author.

4 The citadel of this place is situated on the Koh-i-Sher, and is sometimes
called the fortress of Koh-i-Sher, and is mentioned by Baihaḵf; but, in the MS.
copies of Baihaḵī, is called Ayktīn-ābād. This remark above would indicate
that Khusrau Shāh, not Bahrām, was 'Alā-ud-Dīn's antagonist. See note 2,
page 347.

5 Not Sultān then but Malik. The title was conferred after this.

6 The word used signifies an army [not "armies"], but, as all the able
men of the tribe carried arms, I have not used the word in its literal sense.

7 Before the Čarluḡīḵa Turk-māns. See note 6, para. 2, page 374.
years had taken the Ghaznin territory out of the hands of Khusrau Shâh and of Khusrau Malik, and had brought it under their own sway. Mu'izz-ud-Din was in the constant habit of making raids upon the Ghuzz from Tigin-àbàd, and assailing them, and continued to harass that territory until the year 569 H. 8, when Sultan Ghiyâs-ud-Din subdued Ghaznin, and placed Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din upon the throne [of that territory] and returned to Ghûr again, as has been previously recorded.

The second year after this, [namely] in 570 H., Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din brought the districts of Ghaznin under his sway, and acquired Gardaiz 9; and, in the third year [571 H.], he marched an army towards Multân and delivered it from the hands of the Kârâmithâ 9, and, in this year, 571 H., the

8 There is some discrepancy among authors with respect to the date of the capture of Ghaznin. Jahân-Àrâ, and Haft ìkîml say, Ghiyâs-ud-Din acquired possession of Ghaznin in 570 H., after which he conferred the government of it upon his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, as Wâlî [Haft ìkîml says, deputy or lieutenant]; Fašîh-I says Ghaznin was taken in 569; the Zubdat-ut-Tawârîkh, which copies our author, also says 569; Tabâkât-i-Akbari agrees with Raugat-ut-Šafà, and Muntâkhab-ut-Tawârîkh, that Ghiyâs-ud-Din took Ghaznin from the Ghuzz, in 569, and conferred it on his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, in 570; the Taškîrât-ul-Mulûk of Yaḥyâ Khân, Mir'ât-i-Jahân-Nûmâ, and the Khulâsat-ut-Tawârîkh say 569; the Lubût-ut-Tawârîkh-i-Hind says Ghaznin was given to Mu'izz-ud-Din in 567; and states that the Mâhmûdîs had possessed possession of it, and that Ghiyâs-ud-Din took it from the Amîrs of Khusrau Malik [sic]. Buda'înî states that some say Ghiyâs-ud-Din took it from the Ghuzz in 567 H., and others, that he took it from Khusrau Malik who had re-taken it from the Ghuzz. Aîf states that Khusrau Shâh himself returned to Ghaznin after the withdrawal of Alâ-ud-Din, but the Ghuzz, who had defeated Sultan Sanjar [his great uncle], were perpetually making raids upon the Ghaznin territory, and he, Khusrau Shâh [not his son, Khusrau Malik], again returned to Lahor, and the Ghuzz, taking possession of Ghaznin, retained possession of it for ten years. Firîghtâh, who does not always copy his authorities correctly, says Ghaznin was taken by Ghiyâs-ud-Din in 567 H., and that the Ghuzz only held it two years!

9 Gardaiz is the name of a large darâh of the Tâjîks, or Tâzîks, for both are correct [The Ghûrîs were themselves Tâjîks], with lofty hills on either side, well watered, and once very populous and well cultivated. To the east and south-east are Afghânîs. In Akbar's reign there was a strong castle here named Gardaiz also. See note 7, page 498.

1 Three of the works just quoted state that Multân was taken in 570 H.; but Firîghtâh, who is evidently wrong, has 572 H.

2 Who had regained possession of it some years previously. He does not mention the capture of Uchchah, which immediately followed that of Multân. An account of the capture of Uchchah and the conduct of Mu'izz-ud-Din has been given by Firîghtâh, which has not been correctly rendered by his translators, and makes the conduct of Mu'izz-ud-Din appear in a light contrary to
Sanğurån tribe* broke out into rebellion, and committed great violence, until, in the year 572 H., he marched an

* Faṣib-i is the only work, among those previously quoted, which mentions this affair. Therein it is stated that the Sanğurån were a tribe of the Ghuzz. They are referred to in the second paragraph of the note at the foot of page 290. This name, in some copies of the text, is written Sanğurån and Sufrân; and, in one of the oldest copies, Shansûzan. Shalûzan appears to be the present name of the locale of this tribe, which is also mentioned in the history of Tîmûr. See note¹, page 498. Some call it Shanûzan.

facts; and these mis-statements, to which I draw attention, have been re-echoed by all the Indian History writers.

Dow, vol. i. page 136.

‘The prince of that place [Ada, this is intended to represent Ûchchah] shut himself up in a strong fort. Mahômed began to besiege the place; but, finding it would be a difficult task to reduce it, he sent a private message to the Rajah’s wife, promising to marry her if she would make away with her husband.

‘The base woman returned for answer that she was rather too old herself to think of matrimony, but that she had a beautiful young daughter, whom, if he would promise to espouse, and leave her in free possession of her country and its wealth, she would, in a few days, remove the Rajah. Mahômed basely accepted of the proposal, and the wicked woman accordingly, in a few days, found means to assassinate her husband, and to open the gates to the enemy. Mahômed confirmed his promise by marrying the daughter upon acknowledging the true faith, but made no scruple to deviate from what respected the mother; for, instead of trusting her with the country, he sent her off to Ghîzny, where she soon died of grief and resentment. Nor did her daughter relish her situation better; for, in the space of two years, she also fell a victim to grief.”

Fîrishtah’s account is as follows:—

‘The Rajah of that country took refuge therein [in Ûchchah], and Sultan Shihâb-ud-Dîn pitched his tents and pavilion around the fort, and set about preparations for investing it. As he knew that to overcome that Rajah in battle and capture the fort would be arduous, he despatched a person to the
army against them, and fell upon that people, and put the
greater number of them to the sword. They have related
that most of the Sankurān tribe were manifestly confessors
of the Kurān creed⁴, who, on this occasion, obtained mar-
tyrdom; but, as they had stirred up rebellion, they were
put to death, as a matter of exigency, according to sovereign
prerogative.

In the following year⁵ after this event, Sulṭān Muʿizz-
ud-Dīn marched an army towards Nahrwālah by way of
Ūghchah and Multān. The Rāe of Nahrwālah, Bhim
Dīw⁶, was young in years, but he had numerous forces and
many elephants; and, when a battle took place, the army
of Islām was defeated and put to the rout, and the Sulṭān-
wife of the Rājah, who was despotīc over her husband, and cajoled her, and
promised, saying: 'If, by your endeavours, this city shall be taken, having
contracted marriage with you, I will make you the Malikah-i-Jahān [Queen of
the Universe, i.e. his consort; but there is not a word about “making away
with,” or “delivering up her husband”: the offer is her own]. The Rājah’s
wife, frightened of or at the power and grandeur of the Sulṭān, and knowing
that he would be victorious [over her husband, and capture the place], sent a
reply, saying: 'No worthiness remains to me, but I have a daughter possessed
of beauty to perfection, and grace. If the Malik consents, he may take her
into the bonds of marriage; but, after taking the city, if he will not evince any
avarice towards my own peculiar property and effects [not a word about entrust-
ing the country to her], I will remove the Rājah.' The Sulṭān agreed, and in
a short time that woman caused her husband to be put to death, and delivered up
the city. Sulṭān Shihāb-ud-Dīn, having fulfilled his promise, made the Rājah’s
dughter a Musalmān according to the rites of the sublime law of Muḥammad,
contracted marriage with her, and both of them, mother and daughter, were
sent to Ghaznīn, that they might learn the duties respecting fasting and prayer,
and to read the sacred pages [the Kurān]. The mother, whom her daughter
held in abhorrence on account of her abominable act, and placed no faith in,
shortly after died; and the daughter herself, after two years, from not having
obtained the enjoyment of the Sulṭān’s society [the marriage was never consum-
mated], through grief and mortification, followed her mother. ⁶

The Rājah above referred to, according to the Mir'at-i-Jahān-Numā, was
chief of the Bhaṭṭī tribe, which previously held a large part of Sind. The same
work states that Īghchah was taken by assault. The name is differently
written by different authors—mentioned while some have another and
Compare Abū-Rīḥān-al-Bīrūnī, and see translation in Elliot's INDIA,
vol. i. page 61, and page 154.

If so, it is somewhat strange that such an orthodox champion of the faith
should have massacred them.

⁴ “The following” year after 572 H. is 573 H.; but, just under, our author
says 574 H., which is the year which most authors mention, but Faqīḥ-ī has
575 H.

⁵ This is the correct name, confirmed by several other writers; but some
copies of the text differ. One has another—and three
The Raʿṣat-ut-Tāhirīn styles him Bhoj [Bhoja]-Dīw.
i-Ghāzi returned again without having accomplished his designs. This event took place in the year 574 H. 7

In the year 575 H., Mu'izz-ud-Din led an army to Furshor 8, and subdued it; and, in another two years subsequent to that, he marched an army towards Lohor. As the affairs of the Maḥmūdi empire had now approached their termination, and the administration of that government had grown weak, Khusrau Malik, by way of compromise, despatched one of his sons, and one elephant 9, to the presence of the Sultan-i-Ghāzi. This circumstance happened in the year 577 H. 1

The following year, 578 H., the Sultan led an army towards Diwal 2 [or Dibal] and possessed himself of the

7 Our author slurs over this affair because it was a reverse, but it was not dishonour. Mu'izz-ud-Din's forces were completely worn out with their long march, the latter portion of it through the sandy desert, and suffering from thirst and want of forage for their cattle. The forces of Bhim-Diw were numerous, fresh, and well supplied. Numbers of the Musalman forces perished in the obstinate battle which took place, and the retreat was effected with great difficulty,

8 Previously spelt Purghor and Burshor, and in some copies of the text here Burshor likewise—the letters p and g, and b and w are interchangeable. In the passage at page 76, where mention is made of the idol temple which fell on the night of Maḥmūd's birth, the place supposed to be Peshawar is written in every copy of the text with an extra letter. Nearly every author I have quoted mentions that, in ancient books, this place was known as Baghārā. See my account of it in Journal of Bombay Geographical Society, vol. x.

9 Our author should have added, "a renowned elephant, and the finest that Khusrau Malik possessed." His son is called Malik Šāh by some writers, including Firishtah; but one of his translators turns it into Mullīk.

1 As to this date there is considerable discrepancy. Of the different works previously quoted, the majority state that the first expedition against Lāhor took place in 577 H., as our author has it; but two others mention 576 as the year, and three others that it took place in 575. Buda'ūnî says 580 H.; but he has omitted the first expedition, and mistaken the second for it. I do not quote Baizawi or Guzidah, for they are both at sea with respect to the two last Maḥmūd sovereigns, and make one of them.

2 In the same manner, there is much discrepancy with regard to the invasion of Diwal. Five authors give 577 H. as the year, one 578, one 576, one 575, and Buda'ūnî 581! Of these, some say the expedition against Purghor and Diwal took place in the same year; others that it took place the year after Purghor was annexed, and the year before the first expedition against Lāhor; whilst others state that Diwal was taken the year after; and some omit all mention of it. Āḥmad, son of Muḥammad, Ḵazwīnī, the author of the Jahān- Ārā, which I have often quoted, on his way to visit Hindūstān, died at this place in 975 H.—1567 A.D. It is not the same place as Thāthah, but in the Thathah province between Thathah and Karāchī. See note 5, p. 295.
whole of that territory [lying] on the sea-coast, and acquired much wealth, and returned.

In the year 581 H., he [again] led an army towards Lohor, and ravaged and pillaged the whole of the districts of that territory; and, on his return homewards, directed that the Hisār [fortress] of Sīāl-kot should be restored. Ḥusain son of Khar-mīl was installed therein, and

8 The name of this city—which is a very ancient one—is also written Lāh-nor [لہ نور], as well as Lohā-war [لاهوار].

The Ṭabaqāt-i-Akbarī, Mir'at-i-Jahin-Numā, and Firishtah say that this second expedition took place in 580 H., and the Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh says it was in 579; but the others agree with our author as above. The astonishing thing, however, is, that our author himself, in his account of Khusrau Malik's reign, at page 115, which see, only mentions two expeditions to Lāh-or—one in 577 H., and the other, when it was taken, in 583!

Most authors, including Firishtah, make a great error in asserting that Mu'izz-ud-Dīn founded the fortress of Sīāl-kot. Such is not the case, and some of the authors I have been quoting very correctly state that it is a very ancient place, founded by one of the early Hindu rulers. Mu'izz-ud-Dīn found it in a dilapidated condition on the occasion of his retirement from the Panjāb, and unsuccessful attempt to take Lāh-or; and, considering its situation a good one for his purposes, he put it in a state of efficiency, and garrisoned it at the suggestion of the Rājah of Jamūn. I extract this statement from a History of the Rājahs of Jāmīn [the # is nasal], which the author states to be composed from Hindī annals; and in no other writer have I seen the same details, although another confirms a portion of it, which I shall subsequently refer to.

9 In the year 1151 of Bikrāmaditya, Rājā Jakr [or Chakr] Dīw succeeded his father as ruler of Jamūn; and, in the middle of his reign, in 555 H., Khusrau Malik, the descendant of Māḥmūd, Ghaznavī, abandoned Ghaznīn, and assumed the throne of Lāh-nor. The Jamūn Rājahs continued to entertain their natural hatred towards his dynasty, but without effect; and Khusrau Malik, by degrees, brought under his rule the northern parts of the Panjāb, as far as the foot of the mountains [the Alpine Panjāb]. The tribe of Khokhar, who dwelt round about Manglān [Makhialah ?], at the foot of the hills, who were subject to the Jamūn-wāl [the Jamūn dynasty], having received encouragement from the Lāh-nor ruler, and sure of his support, refused any longer to pay tax and tribute to Jamūn, and threw off its yoke.

10 At this time, the year 579 H., Sūltān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, the Ghūrī, who had taken possession of Ghaznīn, raised the standard of conquest; and Rājā Jakr [Chakr] Dīw despatched his full brother, Rām Dīw, with presents to the Sūltān's presence, representing to him the state of affairs, and inciting him to invade Khusrau's territory, assuring him that, on his appearance, the territory of Lāh-nor would pass from his grasp. The Sūltān, who received the emissary with favour, replied in writing to the Rājah, that 'his Mīān-ji [agent] had made known the Rājah's object, and that the time was at hand for the appearance of his standards in that part;' and in that same year the Sūltān made a raid on, and possessed himself of, the Purshor territory and Multān, and invested Lāh-nor, which Khusrau Malik defended.

"The Sūltān, finding he could not gain possession of it easily, devastated and ravaged the country about Lāh-nor, and retired by the northern part of the
the Sultan again retired. After his departure, Khusrau Panjāb; and, at the suggestion and representation of the Rajah of Jamūn, repaired anew the fort of Sīl-kot [Sīl is the name of a tribe of Jats, since displaced, and dwelling much farther south, at and around Jang-i-Sīl], which was then in a ruinous and dilapidated state, and left there Husain-i-Khar-mil [turned into Hussein Churmili by Dow, and Hoossein Fermully by BRIGGS!] as governor, with a garrison. The Mīān-jī, of Jamūn, was then dismissed, with a request to inform the Rajah that next year his wishes would be fulfilled.

"Khusrau Malik, after the Sultan's departure, aided by the tribe of Khokhar, invested Sīl-kot; but, as Rajah Jakr [Chakr] Dīw, assisted and supported the defenders, Khusrau Malik was unable to take it. At this period the Rajah, who had attained to nearly his eightieth year, died, and was succeeded by his son, Rajah Bij, who is also called Bijayī [Bijayī] Dīw, in 1221 of Bikrāmadītya; and in that year, which corresponds with 582 H., the Sultan [Mu'izz-ud-Din] crossed the Sind at the Nīlāb ferry, where the Rajah's Mīān-jī went to receive him; and on the banks of the Bihat [the Jhilam] the Rajah's son, Nar-singh Dīw, joined him with a considerable force. He was presented to the Sultan through Husain-i-Khar-mil, and received with honour. He accompanied the Sultan to Lah-nor, which was taken, and made over to the charge of Kar-makh ['Ali-i-Kar-makh, who is turned into Ally Kirmany by BRIGGS!], governor of Multān. The Rajah's son and his agent were dismissed with honorary robes, and the town of Sīl-kot, together with the fort, was entrusted to the care of the Rajah. Khusrau was taken to Ghaznin, and was subsequently put to death. From the circumstance of the Sultan, in his communications, styling the Rajah's agents by the term Mīān-ji, according to the custom of Iran, instead of Wakil, the whole family of the Jamūn-wāl [not the present dynasty], considering this title great honour, adopted it; and from it the abridged term Mīān, used by their descendants, is derived."

Dow, in his translation of Firīštah, states, under the reign of Khusrau Malik [page 129], that "the Emperor Chusero [Khusrau would not have known his own name thus written], in alliance with the Chickers, besieged the fort of Salcot, but, their endeavours proving unsuccessful, they were obliged to desist." BRIGGS, in his version, repeats this in the same words, with the exception of styling Khusrau, Khoosrow Mullik; and the Khokhars, Gakkurs; and that Khusrau had to abandon the investment; but under the reign of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Dow [page 137] states: "This fort [Salcot], as we have before related, was effectually besieged by Chusero, in the absence of Mahommed," and BRIGGS also [page 176] says: "This fort, as we have before related, being successfully besieged and taken by Khoosrow Mullik," &c.; and thus both translators totally contradict their own previous statements. FIRĪ.dtdAH, whom they translate, of course, states, as other writers do, that Khusrau Malik was unable to take it. Led away, I imagine, by this statement, and placing reliance on its correctness, ELPHINSTONE has repeated [page 311] this absurdity. He says "Khusru Malik, taking courage from despair, made an alliance with the Gakkars [Dow, Gickers; BRIGGS, Gakkers; ELPHINSTONE, Gakkars!], captured one of Shahāb ud-dīn's strongest forts, and obliged him to call in the aid of stratagem," &c. Thus a totally incorrect translation of a native historian's words, and a statement respecting which the translators themselves contradict their own previous translation, is handed down from one writer to the other. This is writing history with a vengeance.

The stratagem referred to above is related in Firīštah, which see but it
Malik assembled the forces of Hindūstān, and a levy of the Khokhar tribes, and appeared before the gates of Sīāl-kot, and sat down before it for a considerable time, and again retired without being able to effect his object. After that, in the year 582 H., the Sultan-i-Ghāzi [Mu‘izz-ud-Din] appeared again before the gates of Lohor. As the Mahmūdī sovereignty had reached its termination, and the sun of the empire of Sabuk-Tīgin had reached its setting, and the Recorder of Destiny had inscribed the decree of Khusrau Malik’s dethronement, that monarch was not possessed of the power to resist, and he entered into negotiations for peace; and, for the purpose of having an interview with the Sultan-i-Ghāzi, Khusrau Malik came out of Lohor. He was seized, and imprisoned, and Lohor passed into the possession of the Sultan-i-Ghāzi, and the kingdom of Hindūstān came under his sway.

is not related by any of the authors I have quoted, from some of whom he derived his own information.

The account contained in the Hindū history of Jamiin previously quoted, of Khusrau Malik’s attempt to take Sīāl-kot, which was a standing menace to his rule, agrees with the account given by our author and some others, with the exception that other tribes of unbelievers besides the Khokhars were engaged in it; and, although Khusrau Malik had got together a large following, he was unable to keep the field against the superior and more efficient forces of the Ghūrs.

The Khokhars [خوخار] are a totally distinct race from the Gakhars. The name of the former is sometimes written خوخار Khukhar, but the first mode is the most correct. Abī-l-Fazl, in the A’in-i-Akbarī, constantly mentions them, and he writes the two names very differently. There are still numbers of Khokhars in the Panjāb, some 20,000 families, and I have met with them constantly in the Multān district, and districts further to the north-west, towards the Indus, in the Sind-Sāgar Do-abah. Their chief locale is about Bārīh, Aḥmad-ābād, and Khūsh-āb. They still style their chief Sultan as well as Rāe, and will not give their daughters in marriage to other tribes, or, at least, used not to. The Ghakars are still further northwards. Our author does not mention a word about these transactions with the Khokhars in his account of Khusrau Malik’s reign, and only mentions two expeditions against Lāhor, and therein states that Khusrau Malik delivered it up to Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn in 583 H.; but here he says in 582 H. Some of the works I have been quoting say Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn obtained possession of Lāhor in 582 H., while others say it happened in 583 H.

6 This is the same person who subsequently gave his adherence to Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and then acted treacherously, and was ousted from Hirāt, and put to death. See note 5, page 257. His correct name is Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain. His father’s name was Khar-mīl.

6 See page 115, where our author states that Khusrau Malik, under the faith of a treaty, was induced to come out.

7 That portion only over which Khusrau Malik ruled; but subsequently he conquered more.
THE TABAKAT-I-NASIRI.

The Sipah-Salar, 'Ali-i-Kar-mâkh, who was the Wâli [Governor] of Multân, was located at Lohor, and the father of the author of this work, Maulâna Sarâj-ud-Dîn-i-Minhâj, the Wonder of his Age, and Most Eloquent of 'Ajam, became the Kâzî of the forces of Hindûstân, and, dressed in an honorary robe, conferred upon him by Sultân Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, in the audience hall [or tent] of the camp he established his Court of Judicature. Twelve camels were assigned to convey his tribunal [on the march]. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him, and upon the orthodox Sultân of the past, and the Musalmân Maliks of the present!

After these events the Sultân-i-Ghâzî set out on his return to Ghaznîn, taking along with him Khusrau Malik; and from the court of Ghaznîn sent him to the court of Firûz-koh, to the presence of the Sultân-ul-A'zam, Ghiyâs-ud-Dîn. From thence Khusrau Malik was sent into Ghârijstân and imprisoned within the castle of Balarwan, and it was commanded that his son, Bahram Shâh [by name], should be detained within the walls of the fortress of Saif-rûd of Ghûr; and, when the outbreak and sedition of Sultân Shâh, Khwârazm-Shâh, arose in the year

8 Where public business was usually transacted.
9 For himself and the Muftîs. He did not continue at Bâmiân long then. See pages 431 and 433.
1 This, probably, is the son who had been given up as a hostage to Mu'izz-ud-Dîn. Firîghtah, but on whose authority he does not mention, styles him Malik Shâh. There is not the slightest doubt as to who put them to death, and the text very plainly indicates who did, both here and at page 115. Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii., note 2, page 295.
2 Not "Khwârazm Shâh" but his brother. He was not a Sultân; this is part of his title merely. See page 245. The error of calling him Sultân or King of Khwârazm is of common occurrence. Elphinstone, misled by translators or translations, calls him "King of Khârizm." His name was Mahmûd, and his title, Sultân Shâh-i-Jalal-ud-Dîn. At page 115, our author says Khusrau Malik and his son, Bahram Shâh, were put to death when the affair of Sultân Shâh occurred in 598 H., and here says, 587 H., while twice, in his account of Ghiyâs-ud-Dîn's reign [see pages 378 and 379], he distinctly states that the engagement with Sultân Shâh, in which Kutb-ud-Dîn, I-bâk, then only Lord of the Stables, was taken prisoner, took place in 588 H. [Jahân-Ârâ, 588 H.]. The year 587 H. is that in which the first battle took place with Râe Pîthorâ, according to the whole of the authors I have been quoting, as well as several others, including our author himself, and the second battle, in which Râe Pîthorâ was defeated and [according to Musalmân accounts] slain, took place beyond a doubt [see page 468], in 588 H. There is no doubt whatever as to the dates our author gives, for they are as plainly written as it
587 H., they martyred Khusrau Malik and his son [Bahram Shāh]. The mercy of the Almighty be upon them all!

Subsequent to these events, the Sultan-i-Ghazi caused the forces of Islam to be organized, and advanced against the fortress of Tabarhindah, and took that stronghold, and is possible to write, and all the copies of the text collated agree; but neither of these three dates can be correct. The campaign against Sultan Shāh, Khwārazm, which lasted over six months, took place in 586 H., or early in 587 H., and in 589 H. he died. What tends to prove this to be correct, even from our author's own statements, is the fact, that, between the acquirement of Lāhor, and the first battle of Tārā'īn, no operations were undertaken east of the Indus by Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, because occupied elsewhere. See also next page where it is said that the Kāzī of Tūlak was to hold Tabarhindah for the period of eight months, thus showing that the Sultan intended to come again the next cold season and relieve it. The Kāzī however held out for five months longer, and, the Sultan not having arrived, was obliged to capitulate. Here is further proof. Alīf and Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh say Sultan Shāh sent a message to Ghiyās-ud-Dīn [after Sultan Shāh revolted against his brother's authority. See also page 246 and note 9], after he had gained possession of several places in Khurāsān with the aid of the Kārā-Khitā'īs, that he, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, should give up to him the places belonging to his [Sultan Shāh's] father, otherwise to prepare for hostilities. Ghiyās-ud-Dīn summoned his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, from Hind to join him. Some writers affirm that up to this time the latter was styled Malik only, and that after that campaign the title of Sultan was conferred upon him, as well as on his cousin, Shams-ud-Dīn of Bāmfān, from which period, and not before, the name and title will be found on his coins. In the neighbourhood of the Murghāb, in the valley of Marw-ar-Rūd, the two brothers, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Shams-ud-Dīn of Bāmfān, and Tāj-ud-Dīn, ruler of Sījistān, being also present, after several months, encountered Sultan Shāh, who was defeated, and reached Marw with only forty followers. This is said to have taken place in 586 H. Sultan Tākīsh, Khwārazm Shāh, hearing of this reverse his rebellious brother had sustained, advanced from Khwārazm against him by forced marches; and Sultan Shāh again sought protection from the Ghūrīs, who, some time after, aided him with a numerous force, and despatched him towards Khwārazm. This was in 588 H., for, his brother Tākīsh having marched into Irāk at the request of Kutlagh Īnānaj [see page 167, note 8] in that year, Sultan Shāh made a dash against Khwārazm, the capital of his brother. Alīf further states, but it is somewhat contrary to other accounts, that, on the way, Sultan Shāh was taken ill, and died at the end of Ramāzān, 589 H. When the news of this event reached Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, he despatched orders for his troops to march back again.

Another reason why I consider 586 H. correct is, that all authors of any authority, as well as our author himself, say that the second battle of Tārā'īn took place in 588 H., after which Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, was left to carry on operations in Hindūstān, and, if the campaign against Sultan Shāh took place in that year, and the two armies were six months in sight of each other, Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, could not have been present there to be taken prisoner, and be at Kūhrām in Hindūstān at the same time. See page 515.

3 All the copies of the text collated, both here, and elsewhere in the work, as well as many other authors, say Tabarhindah [or Tabarhinda]. The
made it over [to the charge of] Malik Ziyā-ud-Din, the Kāzi Muḥammad-i'-Abd-us-Sallām, Nisāwī, Tūlakī. This Kāzi, Ziyā-ud-Din, was the son of the uncle of the maternal grandfather of the writer of this History, [namely] Kāzi Majd-ud-Din, Tūlakī. At his [Kāzi Ziyā-ud-Din’s] request, they selected twelve hundred horse from the forces of Hindūstān and of Ghaznīn, all men of Tūlak, and the whole of them were ordered to join his Khayl [band or division], and were located within that fortress, under the stipulation that they should hold it for the period of eight months, until the Sultan-i- Ghāzī should return again from Ghaznīn; but the Rāe Kolah ⁶ Pithorā, however, had arrived

printed text has Sirhind, and many authors of comparatively modern date, including the Ṭabaḵat-i-Akbarī, Mir‘āb-i-Jahān-Nūmā, and Khulāsāt-ut-Tawārīḵ, also have Sirhind. The Tarikh-i-Alif, and Zubdat-ut-Tawārīḵ say Tarhindah, Budā‘ūnī also has the same in one copy, and Tarhindah [the Persian b might have been left out by the copyist] in another; and, in another place, says it was Jai-pāl’s capital. The Lubb-ut-Tawārīḵ-i-Hind says Tabarahindah now known by the name of Bithandah. Firīshtah has Pathindah [بطند] in the latest lithographed copy of the Persian text which was so carefully collated, it is said, with several copies of the original, by BRIGGS himself, and Bathindah [بتد] in other MS. copies I have examined, but, in his translation, BRIGGS has Bituhnda, and Dow calls it “The capital of Tiberhind.” I may mention that Bathindah, which is the place Briggs probably means, is some hundred miles west of Thānī-sar. See also note ⁹, page 76, next to last para.

⁶ That is to say, he or his family came originally from Nisā, and he was Kāzi of Tūlak, which was a considerable place mentioned by our author in several places. We might as well say Chief Justice Supreme Court, as “Kāzi Tolak.” Instead of Nisāwī, some copies of the text have Būshāfī, and Būshā, and the majority of the best copies have Nisdwi. BRIGGS turns him into “Mulik Zea-ood-Deen Tovzuky,” and Dow into “Malleck Zea”! ⁸ Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 295.

⁷ The right word may be Golah, as both would be written गोलाक In Sanskrit गोलाक—golak signifies the offspring by illegitimate connexion with a widow; but we hear nothing of such a connexion on the part of Prithi Rāj’s father. Ton, in his usual highly imaginative way, however, considers Gola [Golah] to mean a slave:—“In Persian Cholam, literally ‘a slave,’ evidently a word of the same origin as the Hindu go/a.” In another place, he asserts that Golah refers to the natural brother of Prithi Rāj. Vol i. page 179. Had Prithi Rāj been a golak, I do not think he would have been eligible to succeed his grandfather. The Tāj-ul-Ma‘āṣīr, referring to the second battle between the Hindūs and Muḥammadāndans, calls Kolah [or the Kolah] the son of the Rāe of Ajmīr; and all authors with whom I am acquainted state, that Kolah or Golah, the son of Pithorā or Prithi Rāj, after his father was put to death, was made tributary ruler of Ajmīr by Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, as do all the authors I have been quoting; and no other writer that I know of pretends that Pithorā was a natural son of his father or adds Kolah or Golah to his name. Our author has apparently confused the two names, and this seems the more likely, because he
near at hand, and the Sultan marched to Tara'in to meet him. The whole of the Rānās of Hind were along with the Rāe Kolah.

When the ranks were duly marshalled, the Sultan seized a lance and attacked the elephant on which Gobind Rāe,

has not said a single word about Pithorā's son having been set up by the Musalmāns, although they had to support him subsequently by force of arms.

This name is plainly and correctly written, in the different copies of our author's text, and all the authors I have quoted previously, as well as many others, call this place by the same name. Compliers of Histories of India, led astray by the translations of Firīštah [not by Firīštah himself] which supplied them with their materials, have turned this name into Nara'īn. Dow has "Sirauri upon the banks of the Sirsutty," and Briggs, "Nara'īn, now called Tirauri, on the banks of the Soursutty." Elphinstone, following Briggs, no doubt, calls it "Tirauri, between Tandsar and Carndi," and Dowson [Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 295], in the translation of this passage of our author's text, evidently trusting to Briggs's translation rather than to the original text, is led to believe our author wrong; but acknowledges, in a foot note, that "the text [our author's] has Tarafīn," and adds "but Firīštah gives the name as Nāra'īn, and says it was afterwards called Tirauri. He places it on the banks of the Sarsut fourteen miles from Thānisar and eighty from Dehli." Now all this is incorrect as far as Firīštah is concerned, even to the lithographed text of Briggs's own revision, for the former has Tarafīn [Misc.] like other authors, not Nara'īn [Misc.]. Mirzā Mughal Beg, who, about eighty years since, made a personal survey of these parts, and the territories further west, says that "on the Shah-Rāh [Royal Route] from Kamāl to Thānisar is A'gīm-ābād-i-Talawayī [Misc.], where there is a large and lofty Rabāt of great strength and solidity which can be seen for miles round. Seven miles from this place, to the north, is A'mīn-ḡār, a large village with a large and lofty Rabāt likewise. About two miles from the village of Chhatang is a small river, filled in the rainy season only, running from right to left, which joins the river Sursutī. Six miles from A'mīn-ḡār, still going northerly, is the city of Thānisar."

This is within a mile or two of the distance given by many other writers as well as Firīštah. There are several places called Talwandī, and one, on the road from Dīhlī to Bhātnīr, called Talwārī [Misc.], but no other Talawārī. For an account of the engagement, as given in the Jamān History, see next page.

8 In some copies Rāes: other writers say, a number of Rājpūt princes.
9 Thus styled [Misc.] and also Gobindah [Misc.] in the oldest copies of the text. Some have also Kand and Khandi, both of which modes of writing the name confirm the correctness of the above, which is a common Hindū name; but some more modern copies of the text have Kand [Misc.], Khānd [Misc.], and Khāndī [Misc.]. Most other authors, including Firīštah, have this latter name also; but the Hindū bard, Chand, calls him Rāe Gobind, like our author in the oldest copies. He led the van of the Hindūs on an elephant. Translators of Firīštah make him commander of the whole; but Rāe Pithorā was himself an experienced leader: the other led the van. Tod (vol. i. p. 119), says Chaond Rae, which the historians of "Skabudin" style "Khan-drai, was not brother of Pirth'hwirajá." He states that he was of the Dahima race of Rājpūts, one of three brothers, the eldest of whom, Kaimas, was lord of Biana [Misc.], and minister of Pirth'hwirajá; the second was
Rāe [Rājah] of Dihlī, was mounted, and on which elephant he moved about in front of the battle. The Sultān-i-Ghāzī, who was the Ḥaidar of the time, and a second Rustam, charged and struck Gobind Rāe on the mouth with his lance with such effect that two of that accursed one's teeth fell into his mouth. He launched a javelin at the Sultān of İslām and struck him in the upper part of the arm and inflicted a very severe wound. The Sultān turned his charger's head round and receded, and from the agony of the wound he was unable to continue on horseback any longer. Defeat befell the army of İslām so that it was irretrievably routed, and the Sultān was very nearly falling from his horse. Seeing which, a lion [hearted] warrior, a Khālī stripling, recognized the Sultān, and sprang up behind him, and, supporting him in his arms, urged the horse with his voice, and brought him out of the field of battle.

"Poondir, who commanded the frontier at Lahore" [the utter absurdity of this assertion I have already shown, I think, in note 1, page 466]; and the third brother, Chaond Rae, was the principal leader in the last battle in which Pīthora's brother, and Khāndī by others, was Pīthora's brother, and that he was present in both battles, and was killed in the last.

1 These are the author's exact words: there is nothing in the text about "on the other hand, returned the dow, &c." The ṣir or ṣil signifies not a dow here, but a small spear or javelin, an Indian weapon, the point of which is sometimes barbed, and sometimes made with three barbs. From five to ten were taken in the hand [the left] at once, and launched at an enemy singly with the right.

2 Not a Ghāzī Afghān, I beg leave to notice, but a Turk.

3 Various are the different accounts given by authors respecting the incidents of this battle, and very erroneous and incorrect are the versions translated from Firīghtah which, as authentic statements are to be desired in all matters of history, ought to be corrected, and more particularly respecting this important period of Indian history.

The History of the Rajahs of Jamūn states that "Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, in 587 H., determined to undertake an expedition against the fortress of Tabarhind, which was the strongest place belonging to the great Rajahs of Hind. Rāe Pithora, the Chohān, sovereign [Farmān-rawā] of Hindūstān, and eighth in descent from Bal-Dīw, Chohān, advanced to give battle to the Sultān. They met at Tara'īn-ghār, fourteen miles from Thānī-sar. During the engagement, Rāe Khānī [sic in MS.] Rāe, ruler of Dihlī on the part of his brother, from the back of an elephant on which he was mounted, with a long spear wounded the Sultān in the upper part of the arm. He would have fallen from his horse from the agony of the wound, had not some of his slaves come to him at the moment, and borne him out of the fight. The Sultān, having sustained this defeat, retired towards Ghazin, and, near the banks of the Rāwī, a deputation from the Rājah of Jamūn presented themselves."
On the Musalmān forces not seeing the Sultan, lamentation broke from them, until they reached a place where

Another history, written by a Hindū, says Kīfīs [कीफ़ी] Rāe commanded his brother’s army, and that, after the Sultan had wounded him in the mouth, he wounded the Sultan in the head with his spear, and the Sultan received another wound in the side [by whom inflicted is not said], and he fell from his horse, when a Khalj youth took him on his own horse, and, placing him before him, carried him safely out of the fight. Budā‘unī also says the Sultan fell from his horse, and agrees with the above in the last clause of the sentence.

Other authors, including the Ṭabāqāt-i-Akbār, and Taǧkaraṭ-ul-Mulūk, state that Khānī Rāe commanded the van, and was leading on the enemy when the Sultan attacked him. They state that the Khalj youth was on foot at the time, and, seeing the state of the Sultan, he sprang up behind him, and carried him out of the mêlée to his own camp, whither his own troops had retired; and that the panic and anxiety which had arisen on its being found that the Sultan had not come out of the fight with the rest of his army subsided.

One of the oldest copies of our author’s text here differs from the others collated to a considerable degree. It says that “the Khalj youth recognized the Sultan [in the mêlée and confusion], joined him, and replaced him on the horse’s back [thus implying that he had fallen or had to dismount], cried out with his voice to urge the horse, and brought the Sultan out of the battle.” This is the literal translation of the passage in that copy; and, in it, there is no mention of the youth having mounted the horse also.

The Sultan remained at Lāhor until his wound was healed before he returned to Ghaznīn.

But what say Firīsṭah and his translators on this subject?


“In the year 587, he [Mahommed] marched again towards Hindostan, and, proceeding to Ajmīre, took the capital of Tīberhīnd, where he left Malleek Zia, with above a thousand chosen horse, and some foot, to garrison the place. He himself was upon his way back, when he heard that Pīṭhū Rāe, the prince of Ajmīre, with his brother Candi Rā, king of Delī, in alliance with some other Indian princes, were marching towards Tīberhīnd, with two hundred thousand horse, and three thousand elephants. Mahommed determined to return to the relief of the garrison. He met the enemy at the village of Siraurī, upon the banks of the Sirsūṭti, fourteen miles from Tannassar, and eighty from Delī, and gave them battle. Upon the first onset his right and left wings retired, being outflanked by the enemy, till, joining in the rear, his
the defeated army was safe from pursuit by the infidels. Army was formed into a circle. Mahommed, who was in person in the center (sic) of the line when first formed, was told that his right and left wings were defeated, and advised to provide for his own safety. Enraged at this counsel, he smote the imprudent adviser, and rushed on towards the enemy, among whom he commenced, with a few followers, a great slaughter. The eyes of Candi Ra, king of Delhi, fell upon him. He drove the elephant, upon which he was mounted, directly against him. Mahommed, rising from his horse, threw his lance with such force at the elephant, that he drove out three of his [the elephant's!] teeth. In the meantime the King of Delhi, from above, pierced the Sultan through the right arm, and had almost thrown him to the ground; when some of his chiefs advanced to his rescue. This gave an opportunity to one of his faithful servants to leap behind Mahommed Ghoory, who, faint from loss of blood, had nearly fallen from his horse, but was carried triumphantly off the field, although almost wholly deserted by his army, which was pursued by the enemy nearly forty miles." &c.

MAURICE, MURRAY, ELPHINSTONE, MARSHMAN, and MEADOWS TAYLOR, and probably others, such as MILL and THORNTON, take their accounts from the above versions of DOW and BRIGGS. Marshman adds, "He was pursued for forty miles by the victorious Hindoos, and was happy to escape across the Indus," perhaps unaware that he remained at Lahor till his wound was healed [as Dow states] and that there was no pursuit at all.

FIRISHTAH, from the revised text of BRIGGS has as follows:—

"In 587 H., he [Shiháb-ud-Dín] determined to enter Hindustán, and he took the fort of Bathindah [Bathindah, but the MSS. I have examined have Bathindah, but], which, in that day, had become the capital of Rájahs of great dignity, out of the hands of the men of the Rájah of Ajmír. He left Malik Ziyá-ud-Dín, Táakhir, in that fortress, with 1200 horsemen, each and every one of whom was selected and a picked man; and was desirous of returning. Suddenly, information reached him, that Pitho Ráe, Wálf [a ruler, a prince, the governor of a province] of Ajmír, in concert with his brother, Khándí Ráe, Wálf of Dihíl, and bringing along with them several Rápút Rájahs, were advancing, by regular marches, with an army of 200,000 horse, and 3000 elephants, with the determination of retaking the fort of Bathindah [Bathindah]. Sultan Shiháb-ud-Dín, abandoning his intention of returning [to Ghaznín], advanced to meet them, and at the mouza' [place,
Suddenly the Sultan arrived. A number of Amirs, district, village of Tara'in, on the banks of the Sursuf, seven kurok [a distance of rather less than fourteen miles] from Thanf-sar, now known as Thanwar, [but in several MSS. of Firighthah, which I have seen, it is Taran], and forty kurok from Dihli, an encounter and conflict took place. The right and left wings of Sultan Shihab-ud-Din having broke and faced about [it does not say that they were actually broken by the Hindüs, and it appears to mean that they declined the onset, or recoiled], and not a great number remained in the centre either. [There is not a word about his army forming “a circle.”] At this juncture one of the Sultan’s confidential attendants represented [saying] “the Amirs of the right and left [wings] who were nourished by the beneficence and favours of your Court [or dynasty] not keeping their ground resolutely, have taken to flight, and the Afghan [Firighthah does not appear to have had authority for introducing Afghans here, from the statements of the contemporary writers of these times] and Khalj Amirs, who were the commanders of the advance, who continually boasted of their valour and prowess, are not to be found [seen], and, should you promptly [I give the exact words, except adopting the second person plural for the third] turn the reins of retrocession towards Lahor, it seems expedient [so to do].” This speech not agreeing with the Sultan’s temperament, he drew his sword from its sheath, and, with the troops [remaining] of the centre, charged the enemy’s forces and commenced the conflict. [Firighthah then quotes some lines to the effect that both friend and foe lauded his prowess.] Suddenly the eye of Khândi Rāe, the Sipah-Sālār [commander of the army] of Dihli, falling on the Sultan, he urged the mountain-like elephant on which he was mounted towards the Sultan, who at once seized his spear and made towards him, and smote him in the mouth with such effect, that many of his teeth fell out [७८]. Khândi Rāe likewise [i.e. which Briggs has read for ज़ार—arrow] showed the greatest audacity and agility, and, from the top of his elephant, inflicted such a wound [with what weapon not said] on the upper part of the arm [७८] of the Sultan that he was nearly falling from his horse. A Khalj youth on foot [there is not a word about his chiefs coming to his rescue] discovered it, jumped up behind him on the horse, and, taking the Sultan in his arms, bore him out of the battle-field, and conveyed him to the forces of the runaway nobles which were twenty kurok off; and the tumult and disquiet which had arisen, consequent on the defeat of the army of Islam, and not finding the Sultan, subsided.” . . . There is not a word about pursuit.

According to the Zain-ul-Ma’āsir, quoted by Firighthah immediately after the above, “Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Din, having become faint from the effects of the wound, fell from his horse. This not being noticed [in the ملده], no one came to his aid. Night intervened, and, when one watch of the night had passed, a party of his Turkish slaves came to seek him, and went into the battle-field and began searching among the slain. The Sultan [who appears to have revived], recognizing the voices of his faithful slaves, acquainted them with his situation. His slaves gave thanks for his safety, and, taking him on their shoulders, in turns, proceeded along throughout the night, and by day-dawn reached their own people.”

This battle is said to have taken place in the fifteenth year of the reign of Rāe Pithorā, and the Hindū writers state that this was the seventh time the Sultan had invaded Hind, in all of which he had been defeated!

4 The Malik-ul-Haji, Ziyā-ud-Din [subsequently ’Alā-ud-Din], Muḥammad, the Sultan’s niece’s husband, was present in this battle. See page 393.
Ghūrī youths, and other distinguished men, had noticed the Sultān, along with that lion-like Khaljī, had recognized him, and had gathered round him, and broke spears and made a litter and a stretcher, and had borne him to that halting-place. The people [now] became composed, and once more, through [the safety of] his life, the true faith acquired vigour, and the dispersed army, on the strength of the safety of the life of that Sultān-i-Ghazi, again came together, and retired, and turned their faces towards the Musalmān dominions.

The Kāzī of Tūlak was left [in charge of] the fortress of Tabarhindah, and Rāe Pithorā appeared before the walls of that stronghold, and fighting commenced. For a period of thirteen months and a little over the place was defended. The following year the Sultān-i-Ghazi assembled the troops of Islām, and commenced his march towards Hindūstān, to avenge the [disaster of the] previous year

The idiom varies considerably here in nearly every copy. Some have—

"On the strength of the safety of that Bādshāh-i-Ghāzi, the army came together again [or rallied]," &c.

The same as mentioned at page 458.

I have here also to notice, and enter my protest against, a statement respecting the character of Sultān Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, which Firīštah’s translators have incorrectly given, and which neither Firīštah nor any other author asserts. In this instance the character of this Prince has been unjustly assailed, held up in a wrong light, and things are asserted which never happened at all.

Dow, vol. i. page 139.

"Mahommed remained a few months with his brother at Ghor, who still kept the imperial title, and then, returning to Ghīznī, spent the ensuing year in indolence and festivity. But, ambition again fermenting in his mind, he recruited a noble army," &c.

Firīštah says: "Sultān Shihāb-ud-Dīn, having taken leave of his brother [at Frūz-koh], proceeded to Ghīznī; and, with the determination of taking revenge [on Pithorā], having made sleep and rest unlawful to himself [1 give the words literally], in a short time assembled troops, brave and ruthless," &c. This is a specimen of "pleasure and festivity," certainly!

Here is another specimen of the same kind, and it is repeated by one writer after another as undoubtedly true and correct.

Dow, page 140.

"When his [Mahommed’s] victorious pears had advanced as far as Pesh-wir, an old sage of Ghor, prostrating
The author heard from a trustworthy person, a distinguished man of the highland district of Tulk, whom they used to style by the title of Mu'ín-ud-Din, Üshi*, who said: "I was in that army along with the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī, and the number of cavalry composing the army of Islām that year was one hundred and twenty thousand arrayed himself before him, said, 'O King, we trust to thy conduct and wisdom; but as yet thy design has been a subject of much dispute and speculation among us.' Mahommed replied, 'Know, old man, that since the time of my defeat in Hindostan, notwithstanding external appearances, I have never slumbered in ease, or waked but in sorrow and anxiety. I have therefore determined, with this army, to recover my lost honour from those idolaters, or die in the attempt,'" &c.

Here, again, Elphinstone has been deceived, and, quoting Briggs, further disseminates a wrong translation. Marshman says [vol. i. p. 44] that "he [Shahab] stated" this "in one of his letters;" but, unfortunately, Firughtah himself says nothing of the kind! His words are:—'When his [the Sultan's] standards, the emblems of victory, reached the Peshawar territory, one of the Pir[s] [a holy man, a saint] of Ghūr, who was [sufficiently] bold, bowing his forehead to the ground [only Pir[s] are not wont to do so], represented [saying], 'It is not understood at all whither the Sultan goeth, nor what his object is.' Sulṭān Shihāb-ud-Dīn replied: 'O such an one [of you]! know for certain that, from the time I have been defeated by the Rājahs of Hind, I have abstained from my wife's bed [I do not give the literal words to this part of the sentence, but it tends to show that he had but one wife, and his having but one child appears to prove it], and have not changed the clothes on my body; and, having passed this year in grief, sorrow, and sadness, I have not permitted the Amirs of Ghūr, of the Khalj, and of Khurāsān, who, notwithstanding their ancient servitude, abandoned me in the battle and fled, to present themselves in my presence, nor have I seen their faces during this period. Now, placing dependence on the goodness of God, I am proceeding towards the country of Hind; and I have no expectation of the services of those old [ancient] Amirs, who, from their cradles to this time, have been nourished by the favours of this [my] family.' The Pir, hearing this statement, kissed the ground of service, and said, 'Victory and success attend the followers at the sovereign's stirrup," &c. This is rather different to the statements above.

8 The name of a town of Farghanah, and also of a place near Baghdad. The person here referred to is no other than the celebrated Mu'in-ud-Dīn, Chisalt, whose tomb is at Ajmīr, and so much frequented. The Emperor Akbar paid several visits to it. Some writers say that he only came into India towards the close of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's career, and stayed to propagate the Musalmān faith.
in defensive armour." When the Sultan-i-Ghazi with such-like organization and such a force arrived near unto Rae Kolah Pithorā, he had gained possession of the fortress of Tabarbhindah by capitulation, and had pitched his camp in the neighbourhood of Tarā'in. The Sultan [now] made

9 It does not appear to have been steel armour. The meaning of the word used is, "a covering, a garment, vestment worn in battle, and also put on horses;"—defensive armour of some sort, some of steel, perhaps, and some of leather. This is what Firishtah appears to have turned into "helmets inlaid with jewels, and armour inlaid with silver and gold."

1 See note', page 459. Hasan Nişāmī, in the Taj-ul-Ma'asir, a contemporary writer, who began his work the year before Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's assassination, and who begins with this expedition, does not mention where this battle took place, but mentions that Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, on reaching Lāhor, despatched the Sadr-i-Ḵābf, Ḵiwām-ul-Mulk [these are his titles, not his name], Rūk [Ṛūhu is a mistake]-ud-Dīn, Ḥamzah, to Ajmīr to offer his ultimatum to Pithorā Rāe; but his inflated style greatly obscures the details. Some writers state that two emissaries were sent. The Sultan called upon Pithorā Rāe to embrace the Musalmān faith and acknowledge his supremacy. The Chohan prince sent an indignant reply; and, having received aid from most of the Rājahs of Hind, with 300,000 horse—Rājpūts, and some Afghāns, one author says—advanced to meet him, and they again met on the former battle-field. Pithorā Rāe sent a message to the Sultan, saying, "It is advisable thou shouldst retire to thine own territory, and we will not follow thee." The Sultan, in order to deceive him, and throw him off his guard, replied: "It is by command of my brother, my sovereign, that I come here and endure trouble and pain: give me sufficient time that I may despatch an intelligent person to my brother, to represent to him an account of thy power, and that I may obtain his permission to conclude a peace with thee under the terms that Tabarbhindah, the Panjāb, and Multān shall be ours, and the rest of the country of Hind thine." The leaders of the infidel forces, from this reply, accounted the army of Islam as of little consequence, and, without any care or concern, fell into the slumber of remissness. That same night the Sultan made his preparations for battle, and, after the dawn of the morning, when the Rājpūts had left their camp for the purpose of obeying the calls of nature, and for the purpose of performing their ablutions, he entered the plain with his ranks marshalled. Although the unbelievers were amazed and confounded, still, in the best manner they could, they stood to fight, and sustained a complete overthrow. Khāndf Rāe [the Gobind Rāe of our author], and a great number besides of the Rāes of Hind, were killed, and Pithorā Rāe was taken prisoner within the limits of Sursuti, and put to death."

There are, however, other versions of these events which, although partly traditionary, bear some measure of truth, and it will be well to notice them. The History of Jamūn, which agrees in some measure with the Rājpūt traditions, states that Pithorā Rāe, having been apprised by certain informers of the part the Rājah Bij, or Bijayī Dīw, had taken in aiding the Musalmāns, proposed to march against him, and chastise him. At this juncture, hostility arose between Pithorā Rāe and Rājah Jai Chandra, ruler of Kinnauj [the details of which are too long for insertion here], respecting his daughter. In 588 H., Sultan Shihāb-ud-Dīn, having learned the state of Pithorā Rāe's affairs, prepared to avenge his previous defeat; and Bijayī Dīw, Rājah of
disposition of his forces. The centre division of the army, the baggage, the standards and banners, his canopy of Jamûn, despatched his son, Nar-singh Dîw, with a body of his forces to join him, and Râjah Jai Chandra of Kinnauj, who had been in communication with the Sultân [Tod also says "the Princes of Kanouj and PUTUN invited Shâbudin [Shihâb-ud-Dîn?] to aid their designs of humiliating the Chohan [Râe Pithora]. . . . The envoy was Chand Poondir, the vassal chief of Lahore, and guardian of that frontier, speedily joined his camp with his available forces"] vol. i. page 256.] Perhaps the writer was unaware that Lahor had been in the possession of the Ghaznavîds for more than a century, and that Shâbudin, so called, had only taken it from the last of that dynasty five or six years before, and since that time his own governor had held it. The Sultân came in contact with Râe Pithora on that same field of Talâwarî, and formed his forces into two divisions. The troops of Jamûn and Kinnauj were to oppose Khândî Râe of Dîhîl, while the Sultân, with his own forces, encountered Râe Pithora. The battle was obstinately maintained, and it is related that Khândî Râe fell by the sword of Nar-singh Dîw of Jamûn, and the Sultân himself slew several of the enemy. Râe Pithora was captured alive and taken to Ghaznin, where he was deprived of his sight. For further details on this subject, see page 485, note 3.

Alf î gives another version of this battle, which is certainly curious. It states that the Sultân, having taken the route by Purhâbor, arrived within the limits of Dîhîl [the territory of]. Pitho Râe and Kandî [sic] Râe prepared to oppose him, on which Mu'izz-ud-Dîn made a precipitate retreat. Râe Pitho was following in pursuit of him until they had passed beyond Lahor, and had reached the moușa [village or district] called Shihâb-ud-Dîn [Shihâb-ud-Dînpûr?], when the Sultân came to a stand. His object in retiring had been to separate Râe Pitho from his own territory; and, at the place above mentioned, a battle took place, in which Râe Pitho was defeated and taken prisoner. After this the Sultân advanced upon Ajmir. He subdued that territory, and put Râe Pitho to death; after which he made Kufûb-ud-Dîn, I-bak, governor of it, and returned to Ghaznin.

Another writer states that "Pitho Râe was killed in the battle, and Khândî Râe, the leader, escaped in safety;" whilst another says that "both were captured and slain."

The statements of both Dow and Briggs are equally imaginary with respect to the battle, where they say:—

Daw, vol. i. page 142. "The Musulman troops, as if now only serious in fight, made such dreadful slaughter, that this prodigious army, once shaken, like a great building was lost in its own ruins."

Briggs, vol. i. page 177. "The Moslems, as if they now had only began to be in earnest, committed such havoc, that this prodigious army, once shaken, like a great building tottered to its fall, and was lost in its own ruins."

This last sentence is quoted by several writers, including Maurice, Elphinstone and Marshman; and Meadows Taylor says ["The Student's Manual of Indian History," page 92], "'Like a great building,' writes Ferishtâh, 'it tottered to its fall,' &c.; but, unfortunately, Ferishtâh never wrote anything of the kind. His language here is particularly simple. Referring to the final charge by the Sultân, he says: "The dust of the battle-field was drenched with the blood of the brave; and, in the twinkling of an eye, he threw the ranks of
state, and the elephants, were left several miles in the rear. He marshalled his ranks, and was advancing leisurely. The light-armed and unincumbered horsemen he had directed should be divided into four divisions, and had appointed them to act against the infidels on four sides; and the Sultan had commanded, saying: "It is necessary that, on the right and left, and front and rear, 10,000 mounted archers should keep the infidel host in play; and, when their elephants, horsemen, and foot advance to the attack, you are to face about and keep the distance of a horse's course in front of them." The Musalmān troops acted according to these instructions, and, having exhausted and wearied the unbelievers, Almighty God gave the victory to Islam, and the infidel host was overthrown.

Rāe Pithorā, who was riding an elephant, dismounted and got upon a horse and fled [from the field], until, in the neighbourhood of [the] Sursutī, he was taken prisoner, and they despatched him to hell; and Gobind Rāe of Dihlī was slain in the engagement. The Sultan recognized his head through those two teeth which had been broken. The seat of government, Ajmīr, with the whole of the Siwālikh [territory], such as Hānsī, Sursutī, and other

the enemy into commotion. At this crisis Khar-mīl [Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl] and other Amīrs, from different directions, charged, and overthrew the Hindī troops." This is all: he then mentions the fall of Khāndīf Rāe and other chiefs.

3 The object was to harass, and to induce them to break their order. The Sultan's tactics, from our author's description, as well as that of others, are not very clear. One writer, however, throws a little more light upon the matter; and from that it appears that the Sultan, leaving the central portion of his army—about half his entire force—some miles in the rear, with the baggage and other matériel, divided the remainder into five divisions, four of which, each of 10,000 light-armed horse—mounted archers—were to attack the enemy right and left, and front and rear, and retire, pretending flight. This mode of fighting having been carried on from about 9 A.M. to the time of afternoon prayer, the Sultan, considering that the enemy had been sufficiently wearied, with the remainder—his fifth division, the flower of his troops, consisting of some 12,000 horse—made a final charge, and put the Hindū army to a complete rout.

3 The ancient Saraswati. Probably our author means in the tract near the Sursutī: the word is सूरसूती. Ibn-i-BAṣīṭah calls Sursutī a great city. In Akbar's time Sursutī was one of the Mahalls of Sirkār Sanbhal.

4 Like some other historians, our author calls that tract of country, lying south of the Himālayah, between the Sutlaj and the Ganges, and extending as far south as Hānsī, by the name of Siwālikh; but some other native writers, including the author of the History of Jamūn, include the whole of the Alpine
tracts, were subjugated. These events took place, and this victory was achieved, in the year 588 H.; and the Sultan placed Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, in the fort of Kuhrām, and returned [home again].

Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn advanced from Kuhrām to Mirāth, and took that city and fortress, and, in the following year, he possessed himself of the capital city, Dīhlī. In this same

tracts below the higher range, from the Ganges to Kashmīr, that is to say, the extreme northern boundary of India—under the name of Koh-i-Siwālikh. Another writer says Siwālikh is the ancient name of the territory of Nāg-awr. See page 200 also. The Sultan returned to Ghaznīn along the skirts of the hills of the northern Panjāb.

Authors generally agree respecting this date; but, as already noticed, our author, in another place, states this was the year in which the campaign against Sultan Shāh took place. See note 2, page 456.

For the meaning of I-bak, see under his reign, next Section.

As written with the vowel points—not Kahrām.

Our author leaves out entirely all mention of the son of Rāe Pithora having been set up at Ajmīr as a subject and tributary ruler, as mentioned in the Taj-ul-Ma'asīr and subsequent histories; and hence his name, together with the Sultan's also, was impressed on the coins issued by him during the short period he ruled at Ajmīr.

Mr. E. Thomas [COINS OF THE PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLĪ], page 22, note 1, says "The historical evidence as to the capture of Dehlī by the Moslems, in 587 H., is complete and consistent with the best authorities," &c. He is mistaken, however, even on his own authorities. Hasan Niṣāmī, in the Taj-ul-Ma'āṣir [Elliot, vol. ii. page 216], gives no date at all; but, in the following page, says, "in the month of Ramadān [which is the ninth month], 588 H."

Kutb-ud-Dīn "marched against Jatwān" to relieve Ḥānsī. After this he marched against Mīrāth and took it; and, after that again, marched towards Dīhlī, and invested and took it [page 219]. I have compared the text of the Taj-ul-Ma'āṣir, and find the above date quite correct. Our author, Minhāj-ī-Sarāj [the version given at page 300 of Elliot, which is evidently translated from the printed text, is incorrect and imperfect], often contradicts his own statements and dates, after saying here that the overthrow of Rāe Pithora took place in 588 H., in his account of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, farther on, says that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn took possession of Mīrāth in 587 H.; but immediately endeavours to correct himself, and says: "From Mīrāth he issued forth, in the year 588 H., and captured Dīhlī; and, in the year 590 H.," accompanied the Sultan against Jai-Chand, &c. The fact is that the Hindūs, having been overthrown in 588 H., in the battle of Tarāīn, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn was left at Kuhrām, from which, towards the close of the same year, he moved against Jatwān, and relieved Ḥānsī, and then proceeded against Mīrāth. These movements must have occupied some three months, and, in the last days of 588 H., or early in 589 H., he invested Dīhlī, and gained possession of it. Some works, however, such as the Tabākāt-i-Akbarī, Haft-Iklīm, Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh, and Fīrūstāh, say Dīhlī was taken in 588 H. The Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh-i-Hind says, "Mu'izz-ud-Dīn advanced against Dīhlī, after taking Ajmīr, and, on the kinsman of Rāe Pithora and Khāndī [Gobind?] Rāe, who then held possession of it, tendering tribute and submission, he was allowed to retain it; and the next
year likewise—589 H.—he [Kutb-ud-Din] took the fort of Kol. In the year 590 H., the Sultan [again] marched from Ghaznin and advanced towards Kinnauj and Banaras, and, in the vicinity of Chandwar, he overthrew Rae Jai-Chand, and by that victory three hundred and odd elephants fell into his hands.

Under the shadow of the ascendancy and auspices of that victorious and just monarch, victory was conferred upon his slave, the Malik-i-Karim [the Beneficent Malik], Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, so that he continued to subdue the territory of Hindustan and parts adjacent, namely, the state of Nahrwalah, and Thankir, the fort of Gwaliyur, year, 589 H., Kutb-ud-Din, who had been left at Kuhram, took it, and made it the seat of government; and, in this, the works quoted above agree. The statement of our author, backed by the statement of Faqib-f, and the Taj-ul-Ma'asir, and some others, is to be depended upon; but 587 H. is out of the question altogether, although that year is given in the Khulasat-ul-Akhbar, and one or two others. If 587 H. is correct, in what year was Rae Pithora defeated the first time? See also note 8, page 456. The year 589 H. is a somewhat remarkable one:—Dihli was made the capital of Muhammadan India; Richard Coeur de Lion fought in Palestine; Salah-ud-Din, Yisuf, Sultan of Misr, died; and Changiz Khan entered into friendly relations with Ung Khan.

1 In some copies Chandwal and Jandwal, and in some other authors Chandwar and Chandawar. The only place bearing a similar name at this time, and in the direction indicated, is what is styled Chandpitir and Chandanpiir, in the district of Farrukhabad, on the route from Bareili to Fath-ghar, Lat. 27° 27', Long. 79° 42'.

2 That is, he turned his arms against Kinnauj and Banaras. The Rajah of Kinnauj and Banaras, his former ally, according to the Hindi accounts, against Rae Pithorâ, had assembled numerous forces, in consequence of Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak's, aggressive policy, and was about to march against him. It was to support Kutb-ud-Din that the Sultan again came into India, and an encounter [the Hindi writers say "several" encounters] took place between them on the JUn [Jamma], in which the Rajah [Jai Chandra] was slain. Some say as many as 600 and 640 elephants, one of which was a white one, were captured, besides a vast amount of other booty. The white elephant is probably the same as was presented subsequently by Ghayyis-ud-Din, Mahtmud, the Sultan's nephew, to Sultan Muhammad, Khwârazm Shâh. Firishtah says the white elephant, which was taken on this occasion, soon after died. Jai Chandra was killed in this action, and his body could not be recognized. At length, after much search, a body was found, but was so disfigured with wounds that it could not be distinguished for certain by his people; but, on examining the mouth, it was found to be the body of the Rajah, from the fact of his teeth being fastened in with pegs of gold [\textit{peg} signifies a peg, pin, &c., not a \textit{plate}, he being an old man. The probability is they were false teeth, or a set not his own, fastened by gold pins or wires. His stronghold, Asnî, was also taken.

3 Here our author seems confused. In his account of Kutb-ud-Din, he does not say that Kutb-ud-Din took Thankir, quite the contrary; and, in his
When the august Sultan, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of [Bahā-ud-Dīn] Sām, departed this life in the city of Hirāt, the victorious Sultan, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, was on the frontiers of Tūs, and Sarakhsh, of Khurāsān, and, with the purpose of performing the account of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril [Section XX.], says that Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn himself took it, and afterwards made it over to Tughril, which is correct. There is great discrepancy here, too, among authors. The Tāj-ul-Maʿaṣir, Alfī, and others, say the Sultan marched against it, and then marched on Gwaliytr, the Rajah of which agreed to pay tribute, and paid a large sum down. He was allowed to retain his territory, on these terms, for a time; and the Sultan returned to Ghaznin. Alfī says he took Thankir, the present Bīanāh, in 590 H.; Budaʿīnī says 591 H.; and Tāj-ul-Maʿaṣir says in 592 H. See account of Kutb-ud-Dīn, next Section.

4 That is to say, the victories gained by Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak.

5 We now come to "Proceedings West of the Indus" [See Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii. page 297], and very important proceedings they are; and most of the proceedings hitherto related by our author have occurred west of the Indus. Ghaznin, as well as Ghūr, is west of the Indus. Our author takes good care to trumpet the successes of the Ghūris, but conceals their reverses. He appears to have forgotten that, when Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn left Tis, and abandoned the expedition against Khurāsān, on receiving intimation of the death of his elder brother at Hirāt, he left, in command of a large force at Tūs, and parts around, Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak, the chief of the Amir of Ghūr, and of the Ghūrīan champions, a second Rustam in valour. He began carrying his depredations as far as Abiward, made some of the Khwarazmi nobles captive, and slew a great number of men. Subsequently, he pushed on as far as Trāk against Tāj-ud-Dīn, Khalj, a Khwārazmī officer. The latter sent his son to Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak as a hostage for himself; and, on the return of the latter towards Tūs again, the Amir of Maraghah sent his son to him also. Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak, becoming arrogant at this success, turned his face towards Marw. News now reached him that a force from Khwārazm had arrived near Marw by way of the desert. He advanced to meet it by way of Rūe. When the two armies came in contact, good fortune smiled upon the Khwārazmī forces; and, although Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak’s troops were twice as numerous, the Khwārazmīs charged them, and overthrew them. Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak, by a thousand contrivances, succeeded in throwing himself into Tūs. The Khwārazmī troops followed, made breaches in the walls, and took him captive; and, fearing his fury likewise, one of the Amir—Amin Malik [styled, by our author, Malik Khān, of Hirāt, the Amīn-i-Hājīkh, at page 415, and see page 287, note 9]—struck off his head, and despatched it to Khwārazm to the Sultan. He greatly disapproved of this act, but it filled Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn with amazement and anxiety, for Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak was the most valiant of his champions, and the pillar of his army. Such was his intrepidity, and the strength of his arm, that the Sultan frequently pitted him in combat against the lion and the elephant, and he could overcome both, and could break the leg of a three-year old horse with his hands. This
mourning ceremonies for his brother, he came to Bādghais of Hirāt. Having performed the mourning rites, he nominated different Maliks to the several fiefs of the kingdom of Ghūr. He gave the city of Bust, and the districts of Farāh and Isfīzār to his late brother's son, Sultan Ghiyāsh-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyāsh-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and to Malik Zīyā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, who was uncle's son of both the Sulṭāns, and the son-in-law of Sulṭān Ghiyāsh-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, the territory of Ghūr and Garmsīr, namely, the throne of Fīrūz-koh, and the town and territory of Dāwar, and also presented him with two elephants. To Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Alb-[Ar-salān]-i-Ghāzī, son of Ḵāzīl Arsalān, Saljūḵī, who was the son of a sister of the two Sulṭāns, Sulṭān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn gave the city of Hirat [and its dependencies], after which

is the person styled Mahommed Zurrūk, Prince of Murv, by Briggs; and Zīrāk, Prince of Murve, by Dow. In the revised text of Firishtāḥ, his name is turned into ᴡجموعةٌ [Ḵhāir Beg]!

It was after this defeat of Muḥammad-i-Khār-nak that Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārzm Shāh, was urged by his ministers and nobles to advance against Hirāt, as the sons [son and son-in-law] of the late Sulṭān Ghiyāsh-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, were quarrelling about the inheritance, and their nobles were inclined to join his service. Consequently, in Jamāḍī-ul-Awwal, 600 H., the Sulṭān marched towards Hirāt for the second time, and Alb-i-Ghāzī, the sister's son of the two Sulṭān brothers, surrendered that stronghold to him, as already related in note 2, page 257. Muḥammad-i-Khār-nak must be the same person as is referred to at page 344, the son of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Šūrī, son of Malik Shīhāb-ud-Dīn, Khār-nak [son of Ḵīzz-ud-Dīn, Al-Khūsain], the uncle of the Sulṭāns Ghiyāsh-ud-Dīn and Muʿizz-ud-Dīn; and the former's full name would be Shīhāb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad 'Alī-i-Khār-nak, and he was second cousin of Muʿizz-ud-Dīn and his brother.

My note 2, page 257, will show why and with what object the Sulṭān was between Tūs and Sarakhs, where he heard of his brother's death.

He divided the ancestral dominions amongst the family of Šām. His brother had died in the fifth month of 599 H., and, from this date only, authors state, "he assumed the title of Sulṭān;" but this must mean, that from that date he assumed the title of Sulṭān-ul-Aʿzām—the greatest Sulṭān—which had been his brother and sovereign's title; his own, previous to his brother's death, being only Sulṭān-ul-Muʿazzam—the great Sulṭān—as shown by his coins.

This is the Malik-ul-Hājī, who, after he received the investiture of Ghūr and Fīrūz-koh, received the title of Sulṭān 'Ala-ud-Dīn. See pages 391, 397, and 417.

Here, too, the idiom differs in the copies of the text in the same manner as previously alluded to.

One sister, the elder, married Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, of Bāmīān; another married Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzī, son of Ḵāzīl Arsalān, Saljūḵī; and the third was the mother of Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangī; but the father is not mentioned. See page 342, and note 8, page 425.
he returned again to Ghaznin, and brought along with him to that city some of the Amīrs and Maliks of Ghūr to serve under him, and commenced his preparations for an expedition against Khwārazm.

In the year 601 H., he marched his forces into the Khwārazm territory; and Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, fell back discomfited before the Ghaznin forces and

1 This expedition was undertaken to recover what had been lost, and avenge the defeat and death of Muḥammad-i-Khān-nak. See note 3, page 257.

2 Sultan Muḥammad's "falling back discomfitted" appears from the sequel. The Sultan's object was to defend his capital. No action whatever took place between them until the Ghūris appeared in the neighbourhood of the city, and took up a position east of the Shatt mentioned under.

Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, having become aware of Muʿizz-ud-Dīn's designs of carrying war into his enemy's country, and his vast preparations, hastened back from Khurāsān, by way of the desert, to Khwārazm; and his people prepared to give the Ghūris a warm reception. The Sultan asked for aid from Khurāsān, both in shape of horse and foot, and Gūr Khān of Karā-Khītā was also asked for assistance. Sultan Muḥammad's camp was fixed on the western bank of the Shatt-i-Nidwar or Nudawār, —our author's Karā-Sū, no doubt, but another work says the bank of the Nūr—and, in a short space of time, 70,000 men assembled. "The Ghūrīān forces were vast in numbers, and contained so many elephants," says Yāfā, "that, had they desired, they might have drained the Jībūn." But, setting aside all exaggeration, the number is said to have been 140,000 men, and about 300 or 400 great elephants. The Jāmiʿ-ut-Tawārīḵkh, which constantly copies Yāfā, says 70,000 warriors, and elephants [besides followers]. Arrived on the banks of the Jībūn, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, took up a position on the east side of the Shatt, and pitched his camp, and gave orders to search for a ferry in order to cross over next day, and attack the Khwārazmī forces.

Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn was engaged in arranging his elephants, and making his preparations for crossing next morning at dawn, when news, suddenly and unexpectedly, reached him that Sultan Muḥammad had arrived, and along with him Sultan 'Uṣmān of Samrākand [his son-in-law subsequently] and that the Khītā-ī forces were pushing on. Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, finding that he was much in the same position as the "Lords of the Elephant"—"Hast thou not beheld how the Lord of Lords dealt with the Lords of the Elephant? Did He not make their evil design the means of drawing them into error, and sent against them flocks of birds, which cast upon them lumps of burnt clay which rendered the perfidious like unto the corn that has been reaped?" [Kurān : Chap. c. 5]—and that destruction awaited him if he remained, resolved to retire. He directed that the whole of the heavy material should be burnt during the night, and his army began to retire along the banks of the Jībūn, but they were pursued by the Khwārazmīs next day at dawn, and, at Hazār-Asp [afterwards destroyed by the Mughals. Guzidah and Jāmiʿ-ut-Tawārīḵkh call it Hazār-Šal], the Ghūris faced about and came to a stand, and drew up to fight. Sultan Muḥammad, with his forces, fell upon the right wing of the Ghūris, and overthrew it, and the rest gave way, pursued by the Khwārazmīs. In this affair several of the Amīrs of Ghūr, and a great number of men were H h
retired to Khwarazm. When the Sultan-i-Ghāzi appeared before the gates of Khwarazm, and carried on hostilities for some days, the people of Khwarazm commenced engaging the Ghūris on the bank of the aqueduct which had been drawn from the river Jihūn towards the east of the city, and the name of which place and water is Karā-Sū [the Black Water], and of the Amirs of Ghūr several persons were slain and taken prisoners in that engagement.

As the capture of Khwarazm was not accomplished on account of the scarcity of the appliances of the Ghaznin forces, the length of the campaign, and the lack of forage, the Sultan withdrew his troops from the gates of Khwarazm and retired along the banks of the Jihūn, and towards Balkh. The forces of Khīṭā, and the Maliks and Amirs of Turkistān had arrived on the banks of the Jihūn, and had possessed themselves of the route of the army of Islām. When the Sultan-i-Ghazi reached Andkhid, on a Tuesday, at the time of evening prayer, the van of the infidels of Turkistan reached the Sultan's position, and set to fight. The commander of the van of the army of Islām was the Sālār [chief, leader, &c.], Ḥusain-i-Khar-mil, and he put the infidels to the rout. He was one of the Maliks of taken prisoners. After a time the Khwarazmīs gave up the pursuit, and Sultan Muḥammad returned to Khwarazm, where he gave a great banquet, and made great rejoicing.

In this action the Ghūris lost still more of their war material and elephants, and they continued their retreat towards Andkhūd [Guzīdah says, within the limits of Tal-ḵān] and, on reaching it, found that the troops of Gūr Khān of Karā-Khīṭā, under Bānīko of Tarāz, were there posted to bar their retreat, and appeared on all sides of them. The Ghūris fought with great bravery from dawn to the setting of the sun, and darkness put an end to the fray, in which, according to Yāfā-ī, the Ghūris lost 50,000 men. Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says the Ghūris were broken on the first charge of the Khīṭā-īs. See following page for a specimen of our author's exaggeration.

Some copies have "on the hither side or bank of the aqueduct!"

The Karā-Sū is some eight or nine miles from the city—or rather the city here referred to.

Almost as absurd a reason as our Central Asian oracles pronounced would render the success of the Russians against the same territory "utterly impossible," a few months ago. Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was only five days before the place. The preceding note shows why the Ghūris had to retire.

Not Andkhūd. See note on this in the account of Kabā-jah farther on.

He is particular about the day of the week and time of day, but not the day of the month.
Juzarwān*. He at once represented to the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī the fact of the success of the Islāmī forces and the repulse of the infidel troops. "It is advisable," he said, "that the sovereign of Islām should command that the army of Islām should mount at once and pursue the routed infidels, and fall upon them unexpectedly, whereby a great victory may be achieved."

The Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī replied: "For years past I have been seeking such an encounter as this. I shall not be found to hold back: to-morrow, at dawn, by the guidance of the Most High, we will do battle face to face, and see unto whom Almighty God will bestow the victory. I shall at least have acquired the merit of having fought for the faith as by creed enjoined." Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mil, perceiving that the mind of the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī was imbued with this intention, was convinced that the Sulṭān gave vent to these words by virtue of unbounded reliance in the true faith, and the ardour of piety; [for regard had to be given to the fact] on the other hand, that the host of the infidels which had come upon them was countless, and all fresh and calm, while the Musalmān army was wearied by the march from Khwārazm, and the horses were emaciated, and would not be strong enough to withstand the enemy; and he withdrew from the service of the Sulṭān, and, with the whole of his retinue and followers, to the number of five thousand horse, set out, at night, towards Juzarwān*, and almost all the troops [also] whose horses were weak and emaciated departed.

---

* This place has been often mentioned as Guzarwān and as above: ġ and ğ are interchangeable.

† In the next paragraph our author contradicts this absurd statement.

‡ The same who after this was Wālī of Hirāt. His conduct here was in keeping with his doings there. See note ‡, page 257.

† One copy only has "the town of Juzarwān," but it is a comparatively modern copy. There was a town, probably, as well as a district so called.

This desertion of the Sulṭān by 'Izz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mil, appears to have given rise to the improbable story related by Firīštāh and some others, and repeated by Briggs in his translation of Firīštāh, but Dow does not give the whole. This story is repeated and re-echoed by Briggs' copyists, and people are led to imagine that Sulṭān Mu'īzz-ud-Dīn's most trusted, most devoted, and loyal slave, whom he delighted to honour, and whom he intended as his successor, had refused to admit his master and sovereign into Ghaznīn, of which he is styled governor, after the Sulṭān's defeat and accommodation with the allied forces of Khīṭā and Sulṭān 'Uğmān. We know that Tāj-ud-Dīn,
In the morning, notwithstanding that only a few horsemen of the centre division and his own slaves remained

I-yal-diiz, held the government of Karman, but where is it stated that he held Ghaznin at all at that time? It appears that he had not been removed from Karman up to the period of the Sultan's death, and the honour shown to him by Mu'izz-ud-Din, only a few months after his return from Khwārazm, when marching against the Khokhars, precludes the possibility of I-yal-diiz's having acted in the way asserted by Firishtah; and it was only when Ghīyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, conferred on him the investiture of Ghaznin, with a deed of manumission, and the title of Sultan, that he proceeded thither from his government of Karman. See page 500, note 3. It is also stated that another of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's chiefs "went straight" from the field of battle at Andkhūd to "Mooltan," and seized it. Where Andkhūd? Where Multan? This story, absurd though it seems, appears to have emanated from the Taj-ul-Ma'adgir, and something similar is related in Guzidah, the Jami'-ut-Tawāriḵ, and in Alī, noticed farther on; but no mention whatever is made in these works about closing the gates of Ghaznin by I-yal-diiz [Īladd-giz, in Guzidah] or any other person; and it appears to have received great amplification from Firishtah himself, for the Tabakat-i-Akbari, a work of authority, written a few years before, says not one word about anything of the kind. See also note ¹, page 481. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir has the name of this rebel written in four different ways, in as many copies of the text, namely, Ī-bak-i-Bāk [ عبدالبک], Ī-bak-i-Nā-pāk [ عبدالنباک], and the unintelligible names of बाक or बाक without points. [It is evidently the same name as occurs in Jami'-ut-Tawāriḵ—Lik-Tal [لیک‌تال]. Guzidah styles him Ī-bak, Bāḏshāh of Multān! "a Turk-i slave—one of the most trusted servants of the kingdom fled from the field of battle with the Khwārazmis, thinking that the Sultan had been killed, and some calamity had befallen the state, and made for Multān with all possible despatch. Arrived there, he stated to the Amir-i-Dād [chief justice], Ḥasan, that he had important matters to communicate to him in private within the Kasr, by the royal command, and which it was by no means advisable should become known to others." Having succeeded in getting a private audience, he gave a sign "to a mean Turk" who assassinated the Amir-i-Dād, who appears to have held the chief authority there under the governor of the province of Lāhor and Multān, Amir Muḥammad, son of Abī 'Alī. For some time this affair remained secret, and it was thought that Ḥasan had been imprisoned by the Sultan's commands; but, at length, it became noised abroad, far and near, through Hind and Sind. See note ¹, page 481. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir then passes, at once, to the outbreak of the Kokars [Khokhars—natives of Khurasan and Europeans generally leave out the ḥ in pronunciation of the Hindī ḥ], while Firishtah gives a long account of the slave's reduction and punishment. He says, "the Sultan, unable to enter Ghaznin, proceeded towards Multān, encountered Ī-bak-i-Nā-pāk [otherwise Yāl-būr, &c.], took him captive, and marched towards Ghaznin with the frontier troops of Hind." At Ghaznin, the Sultan, through the intercession of the great men of that city, overlooked the conduct of Iladd-giz [this is the name Guzidah and Firishtah use for this personage; and Yāl-dūz, for Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz], and, having disposed of that matter, entered into a treaty of peace with Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and, after that, made preparations for his expedition against the Khokhars. Firishtah, like some other more modern writers,
with him, the Sultán drew out his ranks and commenced the engagement. The army of the unbelievers, having formed a circle round about the troops of Islam, came on, and, in despite of the remonstrance his slaves were using that of the army of Islam only a small number of men remained, and that it was advisable to retreat, the Sultán-i-Ghāzī still continued to maintain his position, until, of cavalry and his own personal slaves, only about one hundred horsemen remained, who, with a few elephants, the Turkish slaves, and the Ghūrīān leaders, who were the Sultán's grandees, in front of his charger's head, were hurling back the infidels, devoting their lives, and obtaining martyrdom.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that the Sultán-i-Ghāzī stood his ground so persistently that his august state canopy, from the wounds of the arrows of the infidel Mughals [and the arrows remaining sticking fast], became like unto a porcupine, and he would not turn his head round in any direction, until one of his Turkish slaves, whose name was Ayyah, Jūkī, came up, seized the Sultán's bridle, and dragged him away towards the fortress of And-

styles them Ghakars—but he could scarcely have been expected to know the difference, and even Elliot, in his Index [page 160, note *], after writing the word properly, supposes Gakhar and Khokhar one and the same race, but there is as much difference between them as between an Afghān, and a Khaḍī Jat, as those who have served in the Panjab well know. The Ṭabaḵāt-i-Akbarī, a work of greater authority than Fīrūzštah [whom I do not consider an authority in these matters any more than respecting the presence of cannoniers at the battle of Tarā'īn], says nothing of the kind; and, had I-yl-dūz, I-bak-i-Nā-pāk, Līk-Tal, or any other person, been guilty of the acts mentioned, there is no doubt our author would, at least, have referred to them. He might smooth or slur over a defeat, but not circumstances of this kind. See Alfi's account of the expedition against the Khokhars in note 1, page 481, which I think tends to disprove much of the improbable story under discussion, more particularly when the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says not one word about either Iladd-giz or Yal-dūz, nor about the Sultán's coming to Multān against I-bak-i-Nā-pāk, whose name is not again mentioned in the entire volume. The account given by our author farther on in his account of 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, at page 492, and of Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yl-dūz, page 496, also tends to disprove this story.

+ * This description of troops has already been mentioned in note *, page 168.

The Khīṭā-īs he means.

* In two of the best copies, I-bah or Ai-bah, and in one good old copy Abiah or Abiyah, but in the oldest the name is plainly written as above. Jūkī in all probability is the name of his tribe. Some other authors style him a Khalij, but it is one and the same thing—Turk and Khalij.
khūd, and conducted him thither, and brought him within the walls of that fortress 

6 Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Din, with the few men remaining of the centre division of his army, as soon as the sun rose, succeeded, by stratagem, in throwing himself within the walls of the Hisār of Andkhūd [Guzidah says, Tālḵān]; but the Khitā-i troops invested it, perforated the walls, and Mu’izz-ud-Din would have been captured, when Sultan ‘Usman of Samrākand, who was now with the Khitā-i forces, sent him a message saying: “For the honour of the true faith I do not desire that a Sultan of Islam should fall into the hands of those of another belief, and be put to death by them: therefore it is advisable that you should agree to sacrifice for your own safety what remains of your elephants and other animals, your valuables, treasures, arms and armour, and other war material, that I may make these things the means, with these people, of obtaining your escape in safety.” This he agreed to do, and Sultan ‘Usman, by a thousand efforts and contrivances, succeeded in securing the Sultan’s escape, and he reached his own territory in safety. There can be no doubt whatever as to the Sultan’s gallantry, but our author’s statements are rather highly coloured. The Tabaḵāt-i-Akbari, contrary to others, states that the Sultan defended Andkhūd for some time, and then surrendered on terms, but it is not correct.

The following is another specimen of the translations from which Indian history is written, referring to this campaign:

**Dow, vol. i. page 145.**

“News was then brought to him [Mahommed] of the death of his brother Yeas ul dien, who retained nothing of the empire but the name [this is totally incorrect, and is the translator’s own]. Mahommed, upon this, succeeded to the empire. He turned by the way of Budyeish, and subdued the country of Chorassan, recovering it out of the hand of the Suljoki, and he divided it among the family of Sam, giving the government of Ferose Ko and Ghor to Malleck Zeea, who was son-in-law to his brother, Yeas ul dien, the deceased Emperor, Bust, Ferra, and Isphorar he gave to Mamood, his brother’s son; and the government of Herat and its districts to Nasir, his nephew by a sister.

**Mahommed, after these transactions, returned to Ghizny, where, according to the will of the deceased Emperor, he was crowned in form; and mounted the imperial throne. In the same year, he heard of the death of Zireek, prince of Murve, and, in the beginning of the next, marched to the conquest of that country, ad-

**BRIGGS, vol. i. page 180-181.**

“On hearing of the death of his brother, he [Mahomed Ghoory] now returned towards Ghizeny, by the route of Budgeshe, and, subduing part of the country of Khwaruzm, recovered it out of the hands of the Suljooks. He divided this new conquest [!] among several members of his own family [see our author, page 472], giving the government of Ferooskookh and Ghoor [Are these in Khwaruzm recovered from the Suljooks?] to his nephew Zeta-oood-Deem, son-in-law of his late brother, Ghias-oood-Deem. He also gave Boost, Furrih, and Isfurar [All in Khwaruzm perhaps?] to the Prince Mahomed, his brother’s son, and the government of Hirat and its dependencies to Nasir-oood-Deem, his nephew by a sister.

“On his arrival at Ghizny, according to the will of his deceased brother, he was crowned in form [STUDENT’S MANUAL OF INDIAN HISTORY—“he was crowned Sultan without opposition”]; and ascended the throne. In the same year he heard of the death of Mahomed Zeeruk, Prince of
The following day, Sultan 'Usman of Samarkand, who vancing by way of Charizm [111], and Tuscash, the King of that country, not able to oppose him in the field, shut himself up in the city. The King pitched his camp on the banks of the great canal, which the Chilleges had formerly dug to the westward of that city. He forthwith attacked the place, and in a few days lost many brave nobles in the pursuit of glory. In the mean-time, news arrived, that Aibeck, the general of the King of Chitta, in Tartary, and Osman, King of Samarcand, were advancing with great armies, to the relief of Charism. Mahommed was so unwilling to abandon his hopes of taking the city, that he delayed till the allied armies advanced so near, that he was under the necessity of burning all his baggage, and to retreat with the utmost expedition to Chorassan. [111] But an army from the city pressed so close upon his heels, that he was obliged to give them battle. He was totally defeated, losing all his elephants and treasure.

"In the meantime the confederate Kings, who had taken a circuit, to cut off Mahommed's retreat, met him full in the face, as he was flying from the King of Charism."

This may truly be called the Romance of History. Deceived, apparently, by this translation, Elphinstone [page 316] has fallen into great error. He says: "He [Shahab u din] gained a great victory over the king of that country [Khârizm], besieged him in his capital, and soon reduced him to straits as to constrain him to sue [!1] for aid to the Khitan Tartars," &c. Never was a statement more erroneous. Marshman too, possibly quoting from the same, says "Mahomed led his troops against Tahash," as he styles Sultan 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Muhammad, the son of Sultan Takish.

The following is Firîshthâh's account:—"Sultan Shihâb-ud-Dîn was between Tûs and Sarakhs when the account of the decease of his brother, Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn, reached him, and in whose name the kingdom was [i.e. in whom the sovereignty rested. This is the passage misinterpreted by Dow—"who retained nothing of the empire but the name." The original is 491 5|_» (०५०४५ ol). From thence he set out for Bâdhais, performed the mourning ceremonies there, and, in this year, he divided the whole of the states of Khurasân [Firîshthâh here shows that he is himself no authority as to the geography of
was a second Yusuf [in beauty], and the Afrasiyâbî Maliks of Turkistan, who were Musalmâns’, interposed and these parts, any more than he is an authority as to the history among the family of Säm [i. e. the descendants of Säm, his father, only Ziyâ-ud-Dîn now to be mentioned was not of the family of Säm except as a son-in-law—the revised text of Briggs has—Al-i-Sâmān—لي سام] in this manner. He gave the throne of Fîriz-koh and Ghûr to his uncle’s son, Malik Ziyâ-ud-Dîn, who was Sulţân Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn’s son-in-law; Bust, Farâb, and Isfârân [Isfîzâr?] to Sulţân Maḥmûd, son of Sulţân Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn; and Hirât and its dependencies to his sister’s son, Nâşir-ud-Dîn. He himself returned from Bâdghais to Ghaznin, and, in accordance with the will of his brother, having placed the crown of empire upon his head, he became established on the exalted throne of sovereignty. [This is the literal translation of the sentence which has been twisted into crowned in form, &c.] At this time intimation reached him of the slaying of Mubammad-i-Khâr-nak [in the revised text Khâr Beg—خیر بگ], governor of Marw; and, in the year 600 H., he set out, with numerous forces to subdue Khwarazm. Khwarazm Shâh, unable to oppose him [in the field], entered the fortress of Khwarazm.

“’When the Sulţân reached Khwarazm, he took up a position on the water [canal, river, and the like] which they have (sic) dug and set flowing from the Jihân to the east of the city [the word here used with reference to this water-cut has been mistaken by Dow for the Turkish tribe, Khalj, which he styles Chillichis]. For some days fighting went on, and several of the Ghiriain Amirs were killed. At this juncture news arrived that Kara Beg, the general of Gûr Kân, Bâdshâh of Khitâ [this is enough to show of what value Firiştah’s authority is for these matters. See page 261, for the name of the general of the Khita-i forces on this occasion. Hitherto, Firiştah has copied our author, whom he quotes as one of his authorities, tolerably correct], and Sulţân ’Uṣmân, sovereign of Samrînd, were marching to the aid of Khwarazm Shâh. On receiving this information, such alarm was felt by the Sulţân that he set fire to the surplus baggage and equipage, and set out towards Khurâsân [he means Ghaznin]. Khwarazm Shâh followed in pursuit, and Sulţân Shihâb-ud-Dîn faced about and gave battle, and was defeated, and lost his treasure, his horses, and elephants. Having proceeded on his way, unexpectedly, the army of Kara Beg, Khitâ-i, and Sulţân ’Uṣmân seized the route in advance,” &c. The rest agrees with our author; and there is not a word, in the whole account, about escalade or anything approaching it, and, moreover, the canal, which he had not crossed, was some miles from the city. Sulţân Muḥammad, Khwarazm Shâh, in order to celebrate the flight of Sulţân Mu’izz-ud-Dîn, bestowed the nick-name “Ghûr Breaker” upon a son born to him the night before the enemy retired. See page 281.

The Taj-ul-Ma’âshir, which pours out page after page of rhapsodical nonsense upon the most trivial matters, merely mentions, with respect to this disaster, that the Sulţân sustained a slight misfortune and reverse [ادعاي جسم زمی و سکتسکی], gives the year 600 H. as the date, and does not mention [in the three MSS. I have read] anything whatever about the Sulţân having been wounded. The word mentioned above may have been mistaken for such meaning. I should be sorry to place implicit faith on any statements in the above work, unless corroborated by some other work by a contemporary writer.

7 Our author calls the whole of those opposed to Mu’izz-ud-Dîn, “infidels”
brought about an accommodation, and the infidel forces drew back again, and the Sultan returned to Ghaznin, and commanded that forces should be organized for a three years' campaign in Turkistan, and determined to march into Khițā.  

At that period, an assemblage of contumacious persons, [consisting] of Khokhars, and other rebels of the tribes of the hills of Lohor and Jūd hills had broken out into revolt,

several times before this; but the fact is all are infidels who are opposed to Gūrūs. Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was saved from captivity or death through the good offices of Sultan 'Uṣmān, a Musalman like himself.

8 When Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, overcome with grief and chagrin, reached his own territory in safety, Sultan Muḥammad despatched one of his Chamberlains to him, saying: "You are aware that you yourself are the cause of this hostility and distrust. Perhaps you may now be inclined to give up your hostile intentions against my dominions and be desirous of peace." Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was agreeable, and he bound himself by the most solemn promises to abide by the terms, and, further, to aid and assist Sultan Muḥammad whenever requested. Perhaps the latter may, in doing this, have had a foreboding, that he might want support against Chingiz Kān, who had acquired vast power at that time, and whose doings caused anxiety to the Khwārazmī Sultan.

After this accommodation had been concluded, a body of insurgents assembled together at Tāl-ḵān, and Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangī [brother of Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, of Tūkharistān], who was Wāli of Balkh at that time, was the chief mover in this outbreak. He made a raid upon Marv-ar-Rād, and slew the intendant stationed there, and sought to plunder the place. Sultan Muḥammad, on becoming aware of this raid, nominated Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Khizr [probably Khīr—Khazr] from Marv, and Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alli, from Abīward, with their troops, to march against him. After coming up with them, Zangī, together with ten Amīrs, were taken in the encounter which ensued, and were sent off prisoners to Khwārazm, where they met with their deserts, and their heads were struck off. Notwithstanding this affair, the peace was faithfully observed between the two Sultans and their Amīrs. Still, the remembrance of past events rankled in the heart of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn.; and, in order to prepare for any eventuality that might offer to enable him to avenge his defeat, "under pretence of holy war, he was in the habit of organizing his troops, and manufactured arms in great quantities, until, in 602 H., he became bent on undertaking an expedition into Hindustān against the infidels, in order to improve the finances of himself and officers, and also of his men, all of whom, during the last few years, and, in the Khwārazm expedition, had sustained great losses."

9 "Of the hills of Lohor" is contained in two copies only. The hills to the north of Lāhor, of course, are meant.

1 The following is the description of this affair contained in the Tārīḵ-i-Alī, which compare with Elliot's extract from the original in his Index, page r, and his translation, pages 158—160:—

Transactions of the year 592 of the Riḥlat.

"In trustworthy histories it is stated, that, at the time that Shīhāb-ud-Dīn
and, in the cold season of that year, the Sultan came into Hindūstān, and sent that refractory race to hell, and

[see remarks as to his correct title and name, as shown by his coins, note*, page 446] was defeated by the Turks and Khitā-īs, as already noticed, it became noised abroad throughout his territories that the Sultan, Shihāb-ud-Dīn, had disappeared in that battle, and it was unknown what had happened to him—whether he had been killed, or whether he was still living, and had gone into any foreign part. Consequently, the seditious in his territory—in all parts—raised their heads, and each stretched forth his hand towards some tract of the territory. Among the seditious was one, Rāe Sāl by name, who was [dwelling] in the hilly country, between the city of Luhāwar [४५४] and Ghaznah; and, in concert with a body of Kokars, in the [same] tract [of country], and who always used to pay revenue to the treasury of Shihāb-ud-Dīn, having revolted from authority and obedience, he commenced plundering and harrying that district, and completely closed the route between Luhāwar and Ghaznah [Ghaznī], and in such wise that not a soul could pass along it." [He is called ** Re-bal** [Jl] and ** Ran-bāl** [५७६] in Jami'-ut-Tawārīkh; but both names are doubtful, and are, probably, meant for Rāe-Sāl, "the ruler of the Koh-i-Jiūd [the Salt Range], at which the frontier of Hind commences, who had turned Musalman, and subsequently relapsed; and the Khokhars, who also used to pay tribute to the Sultan, in consequence of these reports, also rose." Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir, after stating that the proceedings of Lik-Tal [Jse], and the rumoured death of the Sultan, was the cause of great confusion and disturbance, says, "the Kokar tribe, rising in rebellion, entertained the idea of becoming independent, and obtaining dominion. The sons of Kokar, Bakan and Sarkaḥ [Firishtah has but one, whom he calls 'the chief of the Khokhars, who bore the name of Sarkaḥ'], also entertained the desire of acquiring sovereign power." Then there is an account of their taking Lohor, and of their defeating the feudatories of the Multān province, Bahā-ud-Dīn and his brother, and others, and that the Sipah-Sālār, Sulmān, had to fly before them.] Alī continues:—"When Shihāb-ud-Dīn reached Ghaznah in safety, in the manner previously described, and this matter came to his knowledge, he determined to proceed into Hindūstān, and thoroughly chastise the rebels of that part. Therefore he first directed Amīr Muḥammad, son of Abī 'Alī [this must be his kinsman, the son-in-law of Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, the late Sultan], who was his lieutenant over Luhāwar and Multān [the Amīr-i-Dād, Ḥasan, was probably subordinate to him], to remit with all possible celerity the revenue of the year 601 H. [and yet the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir gives the year 600 H. as that of his return from Khwārazm, and his expedition against the Khokhars], as it was required in the preparations making for the invasion of Khitā. [Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says, "after the Sultan had taken his slave Lek-Tāl [or Līk-Tāl], who had taken possession of Multān, and had put him to death, and disposed of that affair, he despatched Muḥammad, son of Abī 'Alī, to Lahor and Multān as governor, in order that he should send the tribute of those territories, which for the last two years were in arrears, to provide him with funds for his campaign against Khitā.] Amīr Muḥammad wrote, in reply, that the revenue of the years (sic) mentioned was ready, but that the Kokars [Khokhars], and Rāe Sāl, the chief of the Jībāl-i-Jiūd [the Jūd Hills] [Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir does not make the distinction between two different tribes, but says the sons of Kokar, Bakan and Sarkaḥ—in another MS. كروسل], had so closed the lower route to Ghaznah [neither the
carried on holy war as prescribed by the canons of Islam, and set a river of the blood of those people flowing. When

Bolān nor the Khaibar, the two by some supposed sole routes into Afghānistān, are referred to, that not a person could proceed by it.

"On hearing this, Shihāb-ud-Dīn wrote [he sent the Amir-i-Ḥājib, Sarāj-ud-Dīn-i-Abi Bīk] to his slave, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, who was the commander of the forces of Hind, [to the effect] that 'having despatched a person to the Kokars to forbid them against committing these odious acts, he should call upon them to repent of their doings and return to obedience, on which he would pass over their misconduct.' Kūṭb-ud-Dīn despatched a person to them, in conformity with this command, and urged them to submit. The son of Kokar [not mentioned before] replied: 'This is not your affair; it was necessary for Sultan Shihāb-ud-Dīn to send a person of his own, if he were alive; wherefore, then, did he not send to us, that we also might have sent the taxes for him?' That emissary, in reply, said: 'Consider this great regard towards you, that he hath sent me, who am his slave, to you.' Again, the son of Kokar said, in answer: 'All this is mere talk; Shihāb-ud-Dīn is not forthcoming.' The emissary replied: 'The verification of this matter is easy: send one of your own confidential people to Ghaznah, that he may, with his own eyes, see, and come and say whether Shihāb-ud-Dīn is living or not.' In short, the son of Kokar did not give ear to the emissary's words, and still continued firm, as before, in his sedition and rebellion; and, when the person sent by Kūṭb-ud-Dīn related to him the state of affairs, he represented it to the Court of Shihāb-ud-Dīn. The Sultan directed Kūṭb-ud-Dīn to assemble the [available] troops of Hindūstān and march against the Kokars, and to annihilate and eradicate, beyond ought that could be conceived, that seditious and contumacious race.

"When the command reached Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, he assembled and made ready his forces, and was about to move against that tribe, when Sultan Shihāb-ud-Dīn himself was on the point of marching his troops towards Khītā, but, successive complaints of the violence and outrages committed by the Kokars reached him, and his people represented to that Sultan such numbers of things [respecting them], that it became incumbent on him to quell them and restrain their sedition first, and then to proceed in the other direction. Consequent upon this he gave up his determination of invading Khītā, and pitched his [advanced] tent in the direction of Luhāwar, and, on the 5th of Rabī'ī-ul-Awwal, of this same year [602 H.], he set out from Ghaznah towards Hindūstān. When Shihāb-ud-Dīn reached Purghāwar, he found that the Kokars, in large numbers, had taken up a position between the Jilam [Jhilam] and the Südarah [Sūḏhaṟā]. On hearing this news, Shihāb-ud-Dīn made a forced march from Purghāwar on Thursday; the 25th of the same month, and fell upon them unawares [Jāmī'-ut-Tawārikh says he attacked them on the 25th]; and from break of day till the time of afternoon prayers he kept up the flame of battle and conflict; and the Kokars fought in such wise that, with all that grandeur and power, the Sultan had nearly been forced back from his position, when, unexpectedly, at that juncture, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, with the forces of Hindūstān, arrived [upon the scene], and commenced slaughtering the Kokars. As Kūṭb-ud-Dīn's troops were fresh and vigorous, the Kokars were unable to resist them, and they took to flight. The soldiers of Islam, pursuing them, inflicted such havoc upon them as cannot be conceived. Those that escaped the sword fled to the dense depths of the jangal and the Musalmāns set fire to
he set out on his return towards Ghaznin, in the year 602 H., at the halting-place of Dam-yak, he attained mar-

it on all sides. [Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh states that the Hindūs [the Khokhars] fled to the highest ranges of the Koh-i-Jūd, and, on being pursued, lighted a great fire, and threw themselves into it, and perished. Great plunder was taken and many captives, so that five Hindū [Khokhar] captives could be bought for a dinār. The son of Re-bal, chief of the Koh-i-Jūd, sought the protection of Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and made great supplication to him. Kutb-ud-Dīn made intercession for him with the Sultan, who pardoned him, while the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says one of Kokar's sons was among the slain [Sarakh], and the other, Bakan, made for a fortress in the Jūd Hills, in which he was invested; and, after holding out some time, being hard pressed, made intercession through Kutb-ud-Dīn, and surrendered the place, and was forgiven. At that time those infidels agreed together not to surrender to the Musalmāns, and they threw themselves into the jangal, and were consumed.

"The Sultan, having disposed of that affair to his satisfaction, advanced to Luhawar [Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says he arrived there on the 15th of Rajab], and gave his troops permission to return to their own homes [quarters ?], where, having rested some days [some time], they might set out on their invasion of Khita."

The authors of the Tarikh-i-Alfi availed themselves of the best authorities in the compilation of their great work, and there is scarcely any celebrated work, whether Arabic or Persian, that they did not use and quote from. They also appear to have often used such Hindū historical works as were available; and yet there is no mention of the story of the Yal-diiz or Iladd-giz rebellion, nor of Lek-Tāl, nor of I-bak-i-Nā-pāk, nor I-bak-i-Bāk. It seems rather significant that the author or authors of this story should have selected names similar to those of the two most trusted, loyal, and favourite slaves of the Sultan, and who succeeded him in the sovereignty of Ghaznin and Hindūstān respectively—I-yal-diiz and I-bak—for their story; but it is certain that the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir is accountable for the latter part of it, in which I-bak-i-Nā-pāk is mentioned.

The Khokhars were not annihilated in this affair by any means, and gave great trouble in after years, and gained possession of Lāhor.

Briggs says, page 201, vol. i.: "In the latter end of the King's reign [Mu'izz-ud-Din's], their chieftain [of the Gukhurs] was converted to the true faith when a captive. After becoming a proselyte he procured his release from the King, who endeavoured to persuade him to convert his followers," &c. This is totally contrary to the original. A Musalmān became captive to the Khokhars, and whilst among them he explained to them the tenets and usages of the Muḥammadan faith. The chieftain asked the Musalmān how the Sultan would treat him if he should embrace the Muḥammadan faith, to which the Musalmān replied that he would undertake to say that the Sultan would treat him with royal favour, and would confer on him the government of those mountain tracts. This circumstance was duly represented to the Sultan in writing by the captive Musalmān, and the Sultan at once despatched a rich dress of honour for the chief of the Khokhars; and he came and presented himself before the Sultan, was treated with great honour, was made a Musalmān, returned home with a farman investing him with the government of those parts, and he made most of the Khokhars converts. Dow, in this instance, has translated the passage correctly; but, unfortunately for Fīrishtah's authority, this tale does not tally with the last events in the Sultan's life, and it, in a measure, contradicts his own statements respecting them.
tyrdom at the hand of a disciple of the Mulāhidah, and died. One of the learned men of that period has com-

2 The idiom differs here in one of the oldest copies, which has, "he was killed," &c.

3 Ya'fā-i says that one successful expedition gained in Hindūstān at this time was sufficient to repair the Sultan's finances, and to set right the affairs of his troops; and, on his return to his capital, after having crossed the Jilī [Ḫilām] ferry—the ferry over the Jhilam probably—Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh has Hānlī—[Ben. As. Soc. MS. Ḫalī and Jahān-Kūghā-i Ḫalī] ford, and says he crossed over on the 1st of Ṣaḥābān—his royal tent was pitched on the banks of the Jihīn [of Hind?], i.e. the Sind or Indus, so that one-half of it reached near to the water, and hence it was not deemed necessary to guard that side; and that, at the time of taking his noon-day nap, two or three Fīdā-iś [disciples] suddenly issued from the water and assassinated him, and in this most authors agree. Guzīdah, however, says he was then on his way to Turkistān to wreak vengeance on Sultan 'Usman of Samrākand! The term Fīdā-i is particularly applied to the disciples of the chief of the Mulāhidah heretics, and our author plainly states that it was from the daggers of the disciples of this sect that Muʿizz-ud-Din met his death, and not from the Khokhar tribe; and, when we consider that he had undertaken an expedition against them only two or three years before [see note 4, page 381], it is by no means improbable that they caused him to be assassinated. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says the assassins were Khokhars, but almost immediately contradicts the statement, and says that Imām Fakhr-ud-Din was suspected of having brought it about. "Some malignant Muḥammadan 'Ulamā, on account of the great friendship that existed between the Sultan of Khwārzem and the eminent Imām Fakhr-ud-Din, Razf [see page 429, and page 492], accused him of having conspired against the life of Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Din, and asserted that Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārzem Shāh, had sent some person, who, after consultation with the Imām, had assassinated the Sultan; but it is considered by some writers that these very people who had accused the Imām had themselves caused the deed to be done. The Imām, as the late Sultan's slaves were bent upon avenging him, threw himself on the protection of the Wazīr, Muḥyīd-ul-Mulk, until such time as the Wazīr contrived to secure him from their vengeance, and sent him to a place of safety. Imām Fakhr-ud-Din used to accompany Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Din in his expeditions, and he states that Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Din invaded India nine times: twice he was defeated, and seven times victorious." The statement above mentioned is confirmed, with but slight variation, by the author of the Taj-ul-Maʿāsir, a contemporary writer, and corroborated by our author's very meagre account. Tāj-ul-Maʿāsir says, that the Sultan's tents were pitched in a delightfully verdant mead on the bank of a clear stream [water]. At this time some heretics [Mulāhidahs—], who had been following him for some time, awaiting an opportunity to assassinate him, at the time of evening prayer, and whilst the Sultan was in the act of bowing his head to the ground in prayer, and was uttering the praises of his Creator, the impure and obscene sect chose for the execution of their design. They slew a Salāb-dār [armour-bearer] and two Farrāgahīs [carpet-spreaders] in attendance, and then went round towards the Sultan's Khargah [pavilion or tent], and occupied it [to "surround" it would have required a large number. The words used are .fp—seized, took possession. Compare Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii. page 236]; and one or two among those three or four assassins rushed upon the Sultan, and inflicted five or six
posed a verse on this occurrence. It is here recorded that it may come under the observation of the sovereign of the Musalmāns, and that verse is as follows:—

"The martyrdom of the sovereign of sea and land, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn,
From the beginning of the world the like of whom no monarch arose,
On the third 4 of the month Shā'bān in the year six hundred and two,
Happened on the road to Ghaznīn at the halting-place of Dam-yak 8."

I have merely given an abstract of the author's rhapsodical narration.

Alfi says they were Khokhars who had lost relatives killed in the late operations:—"One man among them came upon a door-keeper, and wounded him, on which the wounded man began to cry out. On this, the rest of the people about rushed up to the wounded man to see what was the matter, and were collected around him. The Khokhars seized this opportunity, and succeeded in reaching the Sultān, whom they despatched with many severe wounds."

Some other authors say it was one Khokhar only who murdered the Sultān, and that he had attached himself to him, and followed him for the purpose.

The Hindīs give a different account, which is also related by Abū-I-Fazl and in the Jamīn History with a slight difference:—"Although the Persian Chroniclers state that Rāe Pithorā fell on the field of Tālāwārī [Tārā'īn], and that Mu'izz-ud-Dīn fell at Dam-yak by the hand of a Khokhar who had devoted himself to the deed, and that such statement has been followed by the author of the Tabakat-i-Akbarī and by Firīṣṭah, nevertheless, from the mouth of the Hindī bards, the depositaries of the traditions of every celebrated event, and which is handed down orally from generation to generation, it is stated that, after Rāe Pithorā was made captive and taken to Ghaznīn, one Chandā, some write Chanda, the confidential follower and eulogist of Rāe Pithorā, styled by some authors his Court poet, proceeded to Ghaznīn to endeavour to gain information respecting his unfortunate master. By his good contrivances he managed to get entertained in Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's service, and succeeded in holding communication with Rāe Pithorā in his prison. They agreed together on a mode of procedure, and one day Chandā succeeded by his cunning in awakening the Sultān's curiosity about Rāe Pithorā's skill in archery, which Chandā extolled to such a degree that the Sultān could not restrain his desire to witness it, and the captive Rājāh was brought out and requested to show his skill. A bow and arrows were put into his hands, and, as agreed upon, instead of discharging his arrow at the mark, he transfixed the Sultān, and he died on the spot, and Rāe Pithorā and Chandā were cut to pieces then and there by the Sultān's attendants.

The Jamīn History states that Rāe Pithorā had been blinded [see note 1, page 466], and that, when brought forth, and his own bow and arrows given him, notwithstanding his blindness, having fitted an arrow, and tried the temper of the bow, guided by the sound of the Sultān's voice, and the indications of Chandā, he discharged the arrow in the right direction, and transfixed him. The rest agrees.

Jahān-Ārā and some others say the 1st of Shā'bān, 602 H.

As the second line of this quatrain ends in yak, it is wholly impossible that the last word can be Damik. Dam-yak is the correct name of the place. Authors differ considerably about its situation; some say it was a little west of the Jhilam, some on the Nīlāb, and others that it was a village beyond the Indus, on the route to Ghaznīn; but the first seems most probable.
May the Most High King encompass that Sultan-i-Ghāzī with his mercy and forgiveness, and preserve the sovereign of the age!

With respect to the equity and justice of this monarch in the world, the mention of them could not be contained in the capacity of writing; and the observance of the law of the Chosen One, and the preservation of the system of holy warfare likewise, according to the tenets of the Muhammadan faith, was accomplished in that sovereign. According to the traditions which they have related concerning the Prophet—on whom be peace!—they say, that he, having been asked respecting the general resurrection, affirmed that it would take place six hundred and odd years after him; and the martyrdom of this sovereign occurred in the year 602 H., and, in this same year, likewise, indications of the last judgment appeared, and they were the irruption of Chingiz Khan, the Mughal, and the outbreak of the Turk. Therefore it is evident that that monarch was the strong barrier of Islam in the world, and, when he attained martyrdom, the gate of the final judgment opened.

The amount of wealth acquired in holy wars, accumulated in the treasury at Ghaznin, was so great that the indication of the like has not been noticed with regard to the treasury of any sovereign, and Khwajah Ismail, the Treasurer, stated at the Court of Firuz-koh, at the time of bringing an honorary robe to the Malikah-i-Jalali, the daughter of the august Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām how little trust is to be placed in Firuṣṭah's statements, as shown in Briggs's "Revised Text," the Persian scholar will there find this place styled Ramhek—$^1$—in the prose; and a few lines under, in his version of the same quatrain quoted by our author, translated above, it is turned into Rhutak—$^2$—and Briggs translates it Rohtuk, which mistake is re-echoed by his copyists; and so the blunder gets handed down.

Other authors, too, fully appreciate the character of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, and say that "he was a God-fearing and just sovereign, compassionate towards his people, liberal to his servants, honoured and reverenced learned and good men, and treated them with distinction." His deeds prove that he was faithful to his brother; but if his "exploits" are not more substantial than the mythical relationship to his "great ancestor Sooltan Mahmood I." [who has been lately declared illegitimate in the "STUDENT'S MANUAL OF INDIAN HISTORY"], they need not have been ever recorded.

Notwithstanding which, our author, who appears to have had as keen an appreciation of the mammon of unrighteousness as others who croak about the end of the world, took care to accept villages and money presents, and even slaves to send to his "dear sister" to sell in Khurāsān, not long after.
That of jewels contained in the Ghaznin treasury, of diamonds alone, which are the most precious of gems, there were actually fifteen hundred mans. The amount of other jewels and money may be judged of accordingly.

**Titles and names of the Sultan.**

SULTAN-UL-MU’AZZAM,

MU’IZZ-UD-DUNYA WA UD-DIN,

ABU-L-MUZAFFAR, MUHAMMAD, SON OF SÄM.

NÄŞIR-I-AMİR-UL-MÜMININ.

---

* It depends upon what man is meant. Our author must refer to the man of Tabriz, which is much smaller than that of Hindustän, the former being somewhat less than 2 lbs., whilst the latter varies from 40 to 80 lbs. The Tabriz man is thus described:—6 habbah [habbah signifies, a seed, a grain, &c., and is equal to a barley-corn] = 1 däng, 6 dängs = 1 mishal 15 mishals = 1 astär, 40 astär = 1 man.

I fear the Khwājah was as great an exaggerator as our author himself. Other authors however mention the quantity as 500 mans. Even the latter number is too incredible almost for belief.

9 After his brother’s death, on becoming supreme ruler, he took the title of Sultan-ul-A’gam.

1 How he obtained the title of Nasir-i-Amir-ul-Muminin, and when, the chronicler does not say. It may have been conferred upon him by the Khalifah of Baghâdad for being with his brother, Ghiyâs-ud-Dîn, a tool in the Khalifah’s hands against the Sultan of Khwârazm. I imagine it is this title on his coins which Mr. E. Thomas reads as the name of the Khalifah. Un-Näşir-ud-Dîn ‘Ullah was certainly Khalifah at this period. See CHRONICLES OF PÅTHÂN KINGS OF DEHLI, page 12.

The Sultan is styled “Us-Sultan Näşir-ud-Dunya wa ud-Dîn, Abû-l-Muṣaffar,” &c., on a coin said to have been struck at Dihli, 589 H., in the year 4 [of his rule in Hind?]
Length of his reign: Thirty-two years and eight months. Seat of government in the summer season:—Ghaznin and Khurásan.

Seat of government in the winter season:—Lohor and Hind.

**Kāzis of his Court.**

Kāzī of the kingdom, the Šadr-i-Shahid, Ḫuṭb-ud-Din, Abū Bikr, subsequently, the Šadr-i-Sā'īd, Sharaf-ud-Din, Abū Bikr, son of the Šadr-i-Shahid, Nizām [ud-Din?] at Ghaznin.

Kāzī of the army and other territory—Shams-ud-Din, Balkhī, and his son.

**Wasīrs.**


**Standards.**

On the right, Black, with the Turk Maliks and Amīrs.

On the left, Red, with the Maliks and Amīrs of Ghūr.

*The Sultan's august motto.*

"Victory through God."

*The Sultan's Dependents who attained unto Sovereignty.*

Sultān Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, at Ghaznin.

Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kābā-jah in Multān and Uchchah.

Sultān Kuṭb-ud-Din, Šib, at Lohor.

Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwāz, the Khalj, over the territory of Lakhanawatī.

3 Three years and three months exactly as an independent sovereign, from the 27th of Žamādī-ul-Awwal, 599 H., to 3rd of Shā'bān, 602 H. He was subordinate to his elder brother as shown by his coins; but as a dependent ruler he of course ruled over Ghaznin from the time that sovereignty was bestowed upon him.

3 Our author's father does not figure here among the Kāzīs. See page 456, nor is mention made of the Šadr-i-Kabīr, Kiwām-ul-Mulk, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Ḥamzah, who was sent to offer terms to Rāe Pithorā.

4 In one copy Durmashī, in a second Durmangī, and in a third Durshī or Dursī. See page 392, note 6.

5 One good copy of the text has, simply Justice, or Rectitude.

6 Not Dihli! See the reign of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, next Section.

7 Fourth Khalj ruler of Lakhanawatī. It is strange that neither Muḥammad, son of Bakhṭ-yār, nor his two immediate successors in the government of Lakhanawatī, are mentioned here. It was Muḥammad, son of Bakhṭ-yār, the Khalj, who reduced Bihār and Lakhanawatī during Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn's own lifetime, and their reduction is mentioned among the victories and successes of
The Sultan's Kinsmen and his Maliks.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Durr-i-Ghur [The Pearl of Ghūr], in Ghūr.

Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, in Bāmiān.
Sultan Ghīyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, in Firūz-koh.
Malik Badr-ud-Din, of Kidān ⑨.
Malik Ḥuṭb-ud-Din, Timrānī.
Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Alb-i-Ghāzī, son of Ḥaẓīl Arsalān Saljūkī.
Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Ḥarab, of Sijistān.
Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Zangi ①, of Bāmiān.
Malik Mubāriz-ud-Din, Muḥammad 'Alī-i-Utsuz.
Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, [Ḥusain], Mādīnī.
Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, of Timrān.
Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Din, Mas'ūd.
Malik Shīhāb ②-ud-Din, Mādīnī ③.
Malik Shams-ud-Din, Kidānī.
Malik Tāj-ud-Din, [of] Mukrān.
Malik Shāh, of Wakhsh.
Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz-i-Ḥusain.
Malik Ḥusām-ud-Din, 'Alī-i-Kar-māḵh.
Malik Zahir-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Kar-māḵh.
Malik Zahir-ud-Din, Fath-i-Kar-māḵh.
Malik 'Īzz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl.
Malik Ḥusām-ud-Din, son of Khar-mīl.
Malik Naṣīr ④-ud-Din, Ḥusain, Amir-i-Shikār [Chief Huntsman].

the Sultan at page 491. Ḥusām-ud-Din, 'Īwāz, does not appear to have ever been in the immediate service of Mu'izz-ud-Din, and did not acquire sovereignty until nearly ten years after Mu'izz-ud-Din's death, whilst Muḥammad, son of Baḵt-yār, was assassinated towards the end of the same year in which the Sultan was himself assassinated. See the account of the Khalj rulers farther on.

Strange to say, some of the copies have Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timīsh in this list also; but such is not correct. He was the slave of the Sultan's slave, Ḥuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, and did not acquire sovereignty until after I-bak's death, and long after the Sultan's decease.

⑨ Here again the author puzzled his readers. After Ziyā-ud-Din became ruler of Ghūr, as our author himself says at page 393, his name was changed to 'Alā-ud-Din.

① Maternal grandfather of the two Sultāns.

② This is the person referred to in note ③, page 425, and note ④, page 481.

③ See pages 344 and 497.

④ He is the father of Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Mādīnī, and was surnamed Khar-nāk.

⑤ In some copies Naṣr.
Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Khar-wär.
Malik Asad-ud-Din, Sher Malik, Wajir [of Wajiristan?].
Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Sür, of Kîdân?.
Amîr Sulîmân-i-Shîq, Amîr-i-Dâd [Chief Justice?].
Amîr-i-Ḥâjib, Muḥammad 'Ali, Ghâzî.
Amîr-i-Ḥâjib, Khân Malik [?].
Amîr-i-Ḥâjib, Husain-i-Muḥammad Ḥasan[?].
Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Dîn, Mas'ûd.
Amîr-i-Ḥâjib, Husain-i-Surkh.

**Victories, Successes, and Holy-wars.**


* This name is doubtful. It might be Haz-wâr, but the above is most probable, and may be a nick-name. In modern copies of the text it is written حوالی, حوالی, and in one copy Aḥmarf.

* In two copies, Aḥmadî, and in one copy Aḥmarf.

* Very doubtful. The best and oldest copy has مهر سیدان which is unintelligible.

* In some Hâbasî, and in others Ḥusainî.

* In one Surkhî or Sarkhî, and in another Sarîf or Surîf, but these are doubtful. Only five copies of the text contain these names at all, and three of these are very defective. The Amîr-i-Ḥâjib, Sarâj-ud-Dîn, Abî Bikr, and Bahâ-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, are likewise mentioned in Aṭṭîf.

1 One copy has Bathindah.

2 Very doubtful. It is written مرنان—مرونان—مرونان in the best Paris copy.

3 Probably متکب quiet, tranquil, &c. See reign of Kutb-ud-Dîn, next Section.

4 Maḥsîrîk-ar-Rûd in one copy.

5 It will be remarked that there is no reference made here to the expedition against Diwâl or Dîbal, and the sea-coast of Sind. I have endeavoured to put these "victories, conquests, and holy-wars" in chronological order as near as possible; but many are mentioned with which Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, personally, had nothing to do, three in which he was defeated, one a complete overthrow, the loss of everything, and a narrow escape from captivity, and the "holy-war" of Khîṭâ was never undertaken. The successes in Awadh were gained by others, and A-dwand Bihâr and Lâkanawâtî were acquired by Ikhtiyâr-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, the Khâlîj.
III. SULTÂN 'ALÁ-UD-DÍN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF BAḤÁ-UD-DÍN, MUḤAMMAD, SÁM, OF BÁMIÁN.

When the Sultân-i-Ghâzî, Muʿizz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sâm, was martyred at Dam-yak, and Sultân Bahâ-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Sâm, son of Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad, died on his way to Ghaznîn⁶, as has been previously recorded, the competitors for the dominion of Ghûr, Ghaznîn, Bâmiân, and Hind, of the race of the Shan-sabânis, consisted of two lines—one, the [descendants of the] Sultâns of Ghûr, and the other, of the Sultâns of Bâmiân.

When they despatched the bier of Sultân Muʿizz-ud-Din from the halting-place of Dam-yak towards Ghaznîn, the Turk Maliks and Amîrs, who were the slaves of that Sultân-i-Ghâzî, deprived the Amîrs and Maliks of Ghûr, by force, of the bier of the late Sultân, together with precious treasures, and took possession of them⁷. When

⁶ Within two days’ journey of the capital. See page 432.
⁷ One author says, that "the Maliks and Chiefs, on finding the Sultan lifeless, rallied round the Wazir, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, and pledged themselves to defend the treasure and dominions until such time as a successor should be nominated to succeed him. The Sultan's wounds were sewn up [after his death], and the body was placed in a sort of covered litter, and, pretending that he was ill, they escorted it to Ghaznâh, and the fact of his death was kept a profound secret. The treasures, amounting to 2000 khar-wârs [lit. ass-loads, one kharwar = about 100 mans of Tabriz] were conveyed to the capital at the same time."

The bier of the late Sultan having been taken up, and being conveyed towards Ghaznîn, on the way quarrels ensued between Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, the Wazir, and the Ghirian Amîrs. The Wazir wished to proceed by way of Karman, in order that, through the assistance of Taj-ud-Dîn, I-yâl-dîz, who held the government of that district, the late Sultan's treasures might be conveyed to Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn, Maḥmûd, his nephew, who held the government of Bust and Zamîn-i-Dâwar, to whose succession he was inclined, while the Amîrs of Ghûr desired to proceed by the route of Gum-rahân [کورهان] which was nearer to Bâmîân, in order that the sister's son of the late monarch, Bahâ-ud-Dîn, Sâm, Sultan of Bâmîân [who was advancing towards Ghaznîn when death overtook him] should obtain possession of these treasures. As the Wazir was supported by the Slaves of the late Sultan, he was more powerful, and he separated from the Ghûrîan Amîrs, and, taking along with him the bier of the late Sultan and his treasures, proceeded by way of Shâlûzân [In those days called Sânkurân, and, subsequently, Shânûzân. See note ⁷, p. 498] towards Ghaznîn. When they reached Karman, Taj-ud-Dîn, I-yâl-dîz, came forth to receive them, and, when he beheld the bier, he dismounted from his horse, and received it with the utmost veneration, and he wept to such degree, that the others were quite overcome and wept also. The bier was
they reached Karman, the Wazir, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muhammad-i-'Abd-ullah, the Sanjari, with several other persons distinguished among the Turk Amirs, were appointed to escort the late Sultan's bier to Ghaznin, in company with other Turk Maliks; and Malik Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, who was the Mihtar [or chief] of the Turk Maliks, and the greatest and most distinguished of the Sultan's Slaves, held post in Karman.

When the Sultan's bier reached Ghaznin, two days after, the Sultans of Bamiyan, 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, and Jalal-ud-Din, 'Ali, sons of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, of Bamiyan, in conformity with the solicitations of the Ghiri Amirs, such as the Sipah-sālar the [Commander of Troops], Sulaiman-i-Shiš, and the Sipah-sālar, Kharoshī, and other

then conveyed to Ghaznin, and the corpse of the Sultan was interred in the Madrasah [college] which he had founded in the name of his daughter, and his only child. Firishtah's account of this affair has not been correctly rendered by his translators.

After the funeral, Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, set out from Bamiyan for Ghaznin, and on the road was seized with a violent headache which was the messenger of his death. There being no hopes of his recovery, he made his last request to his two sons, 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, and Jalal-ud-Din, 'Ali, that they should proceed to Ghaznin, and endeavour, by conciliation, to gain over the Wazir, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, the Slaves, and the Amirs of Ghur, and take possession of Ghaznin, after which, 'Ala-ud-Din, who was the eldest son, was to be sovereign of Ghaznin, and Jalal-ud-Din, the younger, sovereign of Bamiyan.

The Jami'-ut-Tawarikh confirms this generally, but states that Bahā-ud-Din requested them to come to an accommodation with Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad, if he would agree to content himself with Ghur and Khurasan, and leave Ghaznah and Hind to 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, the eldest son.

They came to Ghaznin accordingly, and, although the Ghurian nobles were inclined to offer opposition to this, the Wazir persuaded them that as Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad, was then wholly occupied in Khurasan, and had proceeded, at the head of an army, towards Hirat against 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, son of Khar-mil, to oppose 'Ala-ud-Din's intentions would be useless and uncalled for, since they required a ruler over them, and, that, whenever Muhammad should have gained possession of Hirat and subdued Khurasan, it would be easy to get rid of 'Ala-ud-Din. So he was allowed to assume the throne.

When Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, became aware of this in Kayman, in compliance with the request of Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad, conveyed to him from Zamin-i-Dāwar, he marched from Karman with a large army upon Ghaznin, wrested it by force of arms from 'Ala-ud-Din and his brother, Jalal-ud-Din, 'Alf, who retired to Bamiyan. Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, however proceeded to read the Khutbah for himself and to coin money in his own name; and, after some time, 'Ala-ud-Din, and his brother, Jalal-ud-Din, invaded Karman and Shalūzūn, and devastated the whole of those districts. See page 398.

* Styled Amir-i-Dād in the list of Maliks.
distinguished personages of the capital city of Ghaznîn, arrived there from Bâmiân, and entered the city. 'Âlâ-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, Bâmiânî, who was the eldest of the sons of [Sultân] Bâhâ-ûd-Dîn, Sâm, ascended the throne, and brought the Amîrs present there, both Ghûrî and Turk, under fealty to him; and the Ghaznîn treasury, which, from the immensity of its wealth and precious treasures, would have [so to speak] considered the hoard of Karûn but a tithe, was all divided into two equal portions. Trustworthy persons have related that the portion of Sultân Jalâl-ud-Dîn, 'Âlî, Bâmiânî, who was the youngest of the two brothers, amounted to two hundred and fifty camel loads of pure red gold, jewel-studded articles, and vessels of gold and silver, which was removed to Bâmiân.

After a period of some days had elapsed, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, the Wâźîr, and the Turk Amîrs, who were at the capital, Ghaznîn, wrote letters to Malik Tâj-ud-Dîn, Yalduz, soliciting him to come thither, and despatched them to Karmàn. He determined to proceed from Karmàn to Ghaznîn; and, when he arrived in the vicinity of the city, Sultân 'Âlâ-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, made ready to fight, and marched out to encounter him; and Jalâl-ud-Dîn [his brother], who also came out of the city, retired in the direction of Bâmiân.

When the ranks of 'Âlâ-ud-Dîn were marshalled against Tâj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, the Turk Amîrs on either side united together, and Malik* 'Âlâ-ud-Dîn was vanquished, and he, along with all the Shansabani Maliks who sided with him, was taken prisoner. Malik Tâj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, entered Ghaznîn, and gave permission to the Shansabani Maliks, so that they returned to Bâmiân again.

A second time Sultân Jalâl-ud-Dîn, in order to aid his brother, 'Âlâ-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, assembled the forces of the territory of Bâmiân¹, and bodies of the troops of [the] Beghû from Wakhsh and Badakhshân, and brought them,

---

* Styled Malik and Sultân indiscriminately.

¹ Two copies of the text have "the forces of the kingdom of Ghûr and of Bâmiân," but I do not think such can possibly have been meant. The whole of the Shansabani Maliks were not subjects of the Bâmiân state. Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn, Maḥmûd, the direct heir to the empire of his father and uncle, was still ruling over Ghûr, and he appears to have favoured Tâj-ud-Dîn, I yal-duz, and not to have been particularly friendly towards his kinsmen of Bâmiân.

² One copy of the text, and also the printed text, have ١٩ instead of
and again appeared before Ghaznin, and possessed himself of the Ghaznin territory, and re-placed 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, upon the throne, after which, Jalāl-ud-Din returned again towards Bāmiān.

Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, a second time, advanced with his troops from Karman towards Ghaznin; and 'Alā-ud-Din deputed the Ghūrī Maliks and Amīrs from Ghaznin to repel them. On the part of Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, Aetkin, the Tatār, was nominated to proceed in advance to meet them. He came upon them at the Ribāṭ of Sankurān, and seized the whole of them drunk and out of their senses, and the Ghūrī Maliks and the great Amīrs were there put to death. From thence Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, appeared before the walls of Ghaznin, and 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, was invested within the citadel. For a period of four months Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, continued to invest it, until Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Alī, arrived from the territory of Bāmiān to the assistance of his brother, Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, and to drive away the Turk forces.

When he reached the neighbourhood of Ghaznin, the Turk Amīrs moved out to encounter him, and Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Alī, was overthrown, and was taken prisoner. He was brought to the foot of the walls of the fortress of Ghaznin, and that fort was taken. When the two brothers fell into his hands, after a short time, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, entered into a stipulation with them, and caused them to return to Bāmiān. After a little while, difference of interests arose between the two brothers. Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Alī, was a lion-hearted monarch, an ascetic, and a firm ruler; and 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, did not agree with him, and he left Bāmiān, and proceeded to the presence of Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. The assistance it was his object there to obtain was not advanced, and his good fortune did not again favour him, and luck did not aid
him; and, after Sultan Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, took possession of the territory of Bāmīān, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, died⁷.

He had the daughter of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, son of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain [Jahān-soz], to wife⁸, and by that Princess he had a son. When the writer of these words, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the year 621 H., had to undertake a journey into the Kuhistān from the territory of Ghūr, on an embassy, it was intimated to him that that Princess and her son were then in the district of Khūsh-āb, on the borders of Ṭabas, into which part they had come during the misfortunes attending the irruption of the accursed ones of Chīn.


Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, was a mighty monarch, just, a champion of the Faith, lion-hearted, and in valour a second 'Ali-i-Abū-Ṭālib—may God reward him!—but he was wanting in children⁹, and one daughter was all he had by [his wife] the daughter of

⁷ See page 266—267.
⁸ See page 414.
⁹ So called from having been one of the Slaves of Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, and who, if the latter had been so “renowned in history” as “Shahab-ood-Deen Mahomed Ghoory,” we might have expected to have been styled Shihābī instead. Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and others are called Mu‘izzī for the same reason. It would be difficult to decide what is the real meaning here of the word Yal-duz. In the different copies of the text it is written as above, and in the three oldest copies the vowel points are also given; but in other works, including Yāfā-ī and Faṣīb-ī, the word is written more correctly I-yal-duz, the first word of which is the same as occurs in I-yal-Arsalān, I-yal-timīsh, &c. In one lexicographical work, without any vowels being mentioned, is said to be Turkī [of which there is no doubt], and to be the name of a man and a star, not a star only. I-yal [j], among other meanings, signifies a mound; I-1 [j], which is not the word here meant, means friendly, obedient, tame, familiar; and Yal [j], brave, valiant, intrepid. Dūz [2] means flat, level, smooth, even; and [2] dijz and diz [2] mean a fort, a hill, and also rough, austere; anger, fury, rage, and the like. Among the Turks, as with other Oriental people, the name of a child is often derived from some object or incident, trifling or otherwise, which may have struck the mother’s fancy, or that of any of the women present at the child’s birth; and the name I-yal-duz, Yal-duz, or Yal-duz is doubtless something of the same kind.

¹ From the accounts given by some other authors, it would appear that Sultan Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn had had several children born to him, but only one daughter survived him. The others may have died in childhood. At page 344, which see, he is said to have married the daughter of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūfī son of his paternal uncle, Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Khar-nak, whose other son was named Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [Ḥusain].
his uncle, Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Muhammad, Madini; and he had a great fancy for purchasing Turkish slaves, and he bought a great number of slaves of that race. Every one of them acquired renown throughout the whole of the countries of the East for activity, warlike accomplishments, and expertness; and the names of his slaves became published in the four quarters of the world, and during the Sultan's lifetime every one of them became famous.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that one of the confidential favourites of the Sultan's Court made bold to represent to him, saying: "To a monarch like unto thee, the like of whom in height of dignity and grandeur the whole expanse of the empire of Islam does not contain, sons were necessary to thy empire, in order that every one of them might be the inheritor of a kingdom of the empire of the universe, so that, after the expiration of the period of this [present] reign, the sovereignty might continue permanent in this family." That victorious Sultan [in reply] uttered these august words:—"Other monarchs may have one son, or two sons: I have so many thousand sons, namely, my Turk slaves, who will be the heirs of my dominions, and who, after me, will take care to preserve my name in the Khutbah throughout those territories." And so it happened as declared in the

And yet the very first Turk slave who acquired the sovereignty after the Sultan's death is turned into a Pathan, i.e. an Afghan, and even the Sultan himself, and without any authority for such a statement.

This may explain [for our author's statements, in different places, make the above one very doubtful] why Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, is supposed to have issued coins in the sole name of his deceased master and sovereign, and why he styles himself "the servant and slave" of the "martyred Sultan, Muhammad-i-Sam." See the notice of his coins in Thomas, "PATHAN KINGS OF DEHLI," pages 25–31. It is quite a mistake to suppose that I-yal-duz ever styled himself "Sultan-i-Mu'aggam"—he is styled, at the head of this Chapter, Mu'issi—and it is probable the titles on the different coins, especially those bearing "Sultan-ul-Maghrik," from our author's statement here, apply to the late Sultan, or, more probably, to his successor, Maḥmūd, who is styled b authors Sultan-i-Maghrikain wa Shahanshah-i-Maghribain:—

Kutb-ud-Din probably did the same, although we have no proof; but, whatever may have been done in our author's time, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, the Kutb slave and son-in-law, does not appear to have followed the same example, from the evidence on the coins given by Thomas at pages 52 and 78. See however our author's statement at page 398, where he says the Khutbah...
hallowed words of that victorious Sultan—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—which, throughout the whole dominion of Hindūstān, up to the period when this book was written, namely, the year 657H., they observed, and are still observing; and it is to be sincerely implored that, by the grace of Almighty God, these dominions may continue, in this same manner, under their sway to the uttermost end of the existence of the race of Adam.

I now reach my own discourse, which is the account of Sultan Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz.

He was a great monarch, of excellent faith, mild, beneficent, of good disposition, and very handsome. The Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, purchased him when he was young in years, and, from the outset of his career, appointed him to an office, and subsequently, step by step, advanced him to a high position, and made him head and chief over the other Turkish slaves. When he grew up he attained authority and power, and the Sultan conferred upon him the government of the district of Śankūrān and Kārmān in feudal fief; and every year that the Sultan was read for Sultan MAHMŪD, and that the coin was stamped with his name throughout the whole of the territories of Ghūr, Ghaznī, and Hindūstān.

That portion of Hindūstān which our author's patron ruled over probably.

In three copies 568 H.

Jahān-Ārā, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, and others, state that the Sultan used to treat these Turkish Mamliks like sons, and bestowed the government of provinces and countries upon them. He esteemed the most, and placed the greatest confidence in, Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, and showed him the greatest honour; and the Sultan's followers used to pay him great homage, and attention, and go in his train. During the lifetime of the Sultan, Tāj-ud-Din became Wāli of Kārmān; and, from the great honour and respect in which he was held, he subsequently acquired dominion over the kingdom of Ghaznī. Compare this with FIRISHTAH's idle tales, both in his text and in Dow and BRIGGS.

The province which Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, held, included the tract of country, containing several dāraks—long valleys with hills on two sides, and rivers running through them—extending from the southern slopes of Spin-ghar, the White Mountain, in Pūshto, and the south-westerly slopes of the Salt Range, on the north; towards the Gumar on the south; from the range of hills separating the district of Gardaiz on the west; and to the Sind-Sāgar or Sind or Indus on the east;—a large tract of country watered by the Kurmāh [vulg. Kurram] river and its tributaries, which province, in ancient times, must have been exceedingly populous and flourishing, to judge from the remains of several cities still to be seen in it, and which is still very fruitful. The upper portion of this tract is called the dārak of KURMĀH, and, lower down, towards the Sind, are Bānū and Marwat.

The Kurmāh dārak is about 40 kuroh in length [each kuroh, in this part,
would make a halt in Karman, on his expeditions into Hindustan, Tadj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, used to feast the whole being 2000 paces], and having little level ground. On either side of this great darah are smaller ones, running in nearly transverse directions; but those I would more particularly refer to here, as forming an important portion of I-yal-duz's sief, and giving name to the province, are those springing, so to speak, from Spin-ghar.

One of these is the darah of Shalozan [9150 written in the account of Amir Timur, Shanisdx], and which our author refers to [see page 450] as Sankuran, which name appears to have been derived from a tribe of the Ghuzz, so named, who held it before, and in the time of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, and his brother, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din. It seven kuroh in length from north to south, and through it flows a stream which issues from Spin-ghar, and joins the river from the Paiwar valley. Its inhabitants are Torfs, who are reckoned among the Afghans, but they claim other descent, and some Awân-kârs, a tribe of Jats, which appears to have been, for the most part, displaced by the easterly migrations of the Afgân tribes, and are now chiefly located on the other side of the Sind-Sagar or Indus.

Karman is another darah somewhat smaller, with a stream running through it which also joins the Shalozan and other streams which fall into the Kurmah. I find no mention, in any author, of any ancient town of Karman, but the governor of the province was located in the darah, and there may have been a considerable town so called, or, at least, a permanent encampment.

East of Shalozan is the Zeran darah, running in a south-westerly direction from Spin-ghar, and eight kuroh in length. A stream issuing from Spin-ghar flows through it, which, having joined the Shalozan river, enters the Kurmah west of the town or large village of Uji Khel. The people are Dzazis [turned into Jajees by travellers], who also are reckoned among the Afghans but claim other descent, and some Awân-kârs.

Another large darah, and the most westerly one, is Irâb [vulg. Harriab], twenty kuroh in length, running south-west from Spin-ghar, very mountainous, but very fruitful. Out of this darah likewise a stream issues, which, flowing east of Baghzan, the chief town of the Dzazifs, enters the Kurmah district, and receives the name of Kurmah.

Another darah is Paiwar [not Prwar], which also has its river, which joins the others before mentioned, flowing from the northwards.

The chief towns and large villages of this tract, at present, are Astiya [this is not the place referred to at page 339], Paiwar, Balût, Zümîght, Saidâ, Uji Khel, Buland Khel, Balmîn [vulg. Balameen], Irâb, Baghzan, and the cluster of villages called by the name of the darah, Shalozan, with many of smaller size. Kurmah, called by travellers Kurram, where is a fort, and the residence of the local governor, is not situated in the Karman darah, so is not to be confounded with any place of that name. This name, Karman, which is spelt as the natives spell it, has caused some absurd blunders among writers and translators, who have supposed it referred to the Persian province of Kirman.

The darahs south of the Kurmah darah include those of Khost, Dawar, Maidan, and Bakr Khel, each with its stream which falls into the Kurmah; but the whole of those mentioned, in the summer, decrease very much in volume.

It was through this province of Karman—the government of which was a most important post—that the lower route from Ghaznîn to Lahor lay, which is referred to in note 1, page 481. The route by Karman was the "lower route" referred to in Alf in the same note.
of the Amirs, the Maliks, and the suite, and was in the habit of presenting a thousand honorary head-dresses and quilted tunics, and would command liberal largess to be given to the whole retinue.

By command of the Sultan-i-Ghazi, a daughter of Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, was given in marriage to Sultan Kuft-ud-Din, I-bak; and another daughter was married to Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Kabaj. Sultan Yal-duz, had likewise two sons, one of whom he had placed with a preceptor. One day that preceptor, by way of chastisement and discipline, struck the boy over the head with an earthen water-flask. The decree of destiny had come, and the water-flask struck him in a mortal place, and the boy died. Information was conveyed to Sultan Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, who forthwith, out of his excessive clemency and exemplary piety, sent funds to the preceptor for his expenses, with directions that "he should get out of the way, and undertake a journey, before the boy's mother became aware of her son's fate, lest she might cause any injury to be done him, in anguish for the loss of her son." This anecdote is a proof of the goodness of disposition and the purity of faith of that amiable Sultan.

In the last year of the reign of Sultan Muzz-ud-Din, when that monarch [on his last expedition into Hind] came into Karman and halted there, Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, presented those yearly stipulated thousand tunics and head-dresses. The Sultan, out of the whole of them, selected one tunic and one head-dress, and honoured his slave by presenting him with his own princely robe; and the Sultan conferred upon him a black banner, and it was the desire of his august mind that Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, after himself, should succeed to the throne of Ghaznin. When the

---

9 One daughter was given in marriage to Jalal-ud-Din, 'Alif, of Bamfan, hence there must have been three, or more daughters. See note 7, page 433.
1 Our author styles him Malik and Sultan indiscriminately.
2 Firishtah has [ṣiṣṭ], a whip; but all the copies of our author's text have ṣiṣṭ. The Tabakat-i-Akbar too says: "he took up a gugglet and struck him over the head with it," &c. A whipping was not likely to cause death, but the other mode of chastisement was.
3 Here again is a specimen of the manner in which Firishtah has been translated, and whose translated work hitherto has furnished the sole materials for writers of Indian Histories for our Colleges and Schools:—

Dow says that "Mahommed, in his last expedition, favoured Eldoze so
Sultān-i-Ghāzī attained martyrdom, it was the desire and disposition of the Turk Malik and Amīrs that Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of [Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn] Muḥammad, son of Sām, should come from the confines of Garmsīr to Ghaznīn, and ascend his uncle's throne, and that they all should gird up their loins in his service. To this effect they wrote to the Court of Frīrūz-koh, and represented, saying: "The Sultāns of Bāmīān are acting oppressively, and are ambitious of obtaining possession of Ghaznīn. Thou art the heir to the dominion, and we are thy slaves."

much that he bestowed upon him the black standard of the kingdom of Ghiznī, by this intimating his will, that he should succeed to the throne," &c. Briggs has "Mahomed Ghooory, in his last expedition to India, conferred on Taj-ood-Deen the privilege of carrying the black standard of Ghizny, an honour which was usually confined to the heir-apparent." Any one reading this last version could only conclude that Taj-ud-Dīn carried this "black standard" in the last expedition, but such was not the case. Firiṣṭah copies almost the very words of our author: these are his words—"Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn [he calls him Mu'izz and Shihāb indiscriminately] in the latter part of his reign, when he came into Kārmān, dignified him by presenting him with one of his own dresses, and specially conferred upon him a black banner [for his own use that is], and it was the Sultān's desire that, after his own decease, the Ghaznīn territory should be his."

4 He refers to Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām's, sons here.

Our author contradicts himself twice, and makes three different statements on this subject. At page 431 he says the general desire, both of the Turk and Ghūrī Amīrs, was that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, of Bāmīān, should succeed to the sovereignty; and at page 432 he contradicts himself, and states that they were all inclined to his sons obtaining it. Taj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, was the chief of them, and the principal mover in this matter. From this statement of our author, and his accounts given elsewhere, as well as from the statements of other authors, it is clear that Taj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, up to this time, had not been removed from the government of this province, and therefore did not shut his sovereign and master out of Ghaznīn after his defeat at Andkheēd; and, further, that it was not until he and the other Mamliḳs of the late Sultān had called upon his nephew, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, to assume the sovereignty over Ghaznīn and Hind that he, I-yal-dūz, left Kārmān, on being nominated to the sovereignty of the kingdom of Ghaznīn, and receiving his freedom from Maḥmūd himself.

Alī says, however, that, "when Taj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, gained a firm hold of the authority at Ghaznīn, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, sent him a message from Frīrūz-koh, requesting him to coin the money in his name, and read the Khūṭbah for him. Taj-ud-Dīn sent a reply, saying, that, when Maḥmūd should send him a deed of manumission, he would do so; otherwise he would give his allegiance to whomsoever he chose. As Maḥmūd was not safe from being assailed by Khwārīm Shīh, and fearing lest Taj-ud-Dīn should go over to him [as 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, had done], he sent the required deed of manumission to Taj-ud-Dīn, and another to Kūf-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, together with deeds of investiture for the governments of Ghaznīn and Hindūstān respectively. Kūf-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, at this time was at Purāshor,
Sultan Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, replied, saying: “To me the throne of my father, which is the capital, Firūz-koh, and the kingdom of Ghūr, is the most desirable. I confer the territory [of Ghaznīn] on you;” and he despatched a robe of honour to Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and presented him with a letter of manumission, and assigned the throne of Ghaznīn unto him.

By virtue of this mandate Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, came to Ghaznīn, and seized the Maliks of Bāmiān, and ascended the throne of Ghaznīn, and brought that territory under his jurisdiction. After a time he was excluded from Ghaznīn, and again returned to it, and again brought it whither he had come to guard one of the routes into Hind, and was well pleased with what was conferred upon him.”

Other writers state that I-yal-duz sent an agent to Maḥmūd and tendered his allegiance, and confirm what our author states; but they probably copied their account from his.

Called “Sultāns” in the preceding paragraph, and in his previous account of them. Alīf says I-yal-duz, subsequent to sending Jalāl-ud-Dīn, ‘Alī, back to Bāmiān, as stated in note 7, page 433, assembled his forces, and carried his inroads as far as Bust; and that, when Abī-Dakur [Zakur?] reached Kābul, after his desertion of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, ‘Alī, an emissary reached him on the part of Kūtb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, which emissary he had first despatched to Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, reproaching him for his conduct towards his benefactor, Sultan Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, and exhorting him to discontinue it. This emissary was directed to ask Abī-Dakur to co-operate with him [I-bak]; and, in case I-yal-duz did not hold his hand and repent of his acts, that Abī-Dakur should assemble his troops and assail Ghaznīn, and wrest it from I-yal-duz, who appears to have been then absent in Bust; and, in case he [Abī-Dakur] did not find himself powerful enough for the purpose of taking it, not to be deterred, as he was following to support him. Abī-Dakur complied with the request, and invested Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, the Wazīr, whom I-yal-duz had left there as his lieutenant, and a portion of the suburbs of Ghaznīn was taken and occupied by his men. On becoming aware of this movement, I-yal-duz returned from Bust by forced marches, and reached Ghaznīn, on which Abī-Dakur precipitately withdrew, and joined Sultan Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, who gave him his manumission, and conferred upon him the title of Malik-ul-Umra [Chief of Nobles].

At this time Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, advanced from Hīrāt [on his way to Hīrāt?], and took the town and fortress of Tāl-kān from the Ghūrīs, and then marched to Kāl-yūn [Kāl-yūn?] and Fīwār, and encountered several times Amīr Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, the governor of those parts, for Maḥmūd; but he did not succeed in his design, as they were very strong places, and Sultan Muḥammad retired to Hīrāt again. Arrived there, he acquainted the ruler of Sīsṭān of it, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Harab acknowledged his suzerainty, and read the Khuṭbah and coined money in Khwārazm Shāh’s name. These are the events of the year 594 from the Prophet’s death [604 H.]. The difference between the two eras H. and RIḤLAT is ten years less twenty or twenty-one days.
under his sway. A second time the same thing happened, until, after some time, a battle took place between him and Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, on the confines of the Panj-āb; and Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, was defeated, and Sultan Kutb-ud-Din advanced to Ghaznin, and remained there for a period of forty days, during which time he gave himself up to pleasure and revelry. A third time Sultan Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, marched from Kārmān towards Ghaznin, and Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, retired again towards Hindūstān by the route of Sang-i-Surākh, and once more Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, brought Ghaznin under his rule.

He sent armies upon several occasions towards Ghūr, Khurāsān, and Sijistān, and nominated Malik [to command them]. On one occasion he despatched a force to aid Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmūd, as far as the gates of Hirāt, on account of the treason of 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, son of Khar-mil, who was the Malik of Hirāt, and who had conspired with Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and had gone over to him, and who fled before the forces of Ghūr and Ghaznin.

On another occasion Sultan Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, led an army towards Sijistān, and remained away on that expedition for a considerable time, and advanced as far as

7 Some copies have "on the confines of the Panj-āb-i-Sind"—the five rivers of Sind.
8 "I-yal-duz having sent the Wazir of Ghaznin against Kābā-jah and ousted him from Lāhor [see reign of Kābā-jah, next Section], Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, advanced into the Panj-āb against I-yal-duz in 603 H., and, I-yal-duz having encountered him, was defeated, and retreated to Kārmān and Shalūzān, which districts had been his charge in Muʿizz-ud-Din's reign. Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, pushed on to Ghaznin [by another route], and drove out the governor, on the part of Jalāl-ud-Din, Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh's son, and then gave himself up to wine and debauchery. The people of Ghaznin sent to I-yal-duz and solicited him to return; and, when he arrived in the neighbourhood, at the head of a numerous force, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, was quite unprepared to resist him, and he made the best of his way towards Hind by the route of Sang-i-Surākh, and reached Lohor." On this occasion 'Izz-ud-Din, 'Alī-Mardān, the Khalj, who assassinated Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, ruler of Lakhpanawati, and afterwards obtained from Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, the government of that territory, was taken prisoner. See his reign, next Section. "As Kutb-ud-Din did not consider himself safe from the designs of I-yal-duz, he continued at Lohor until 607 H., when he met with the accident which caused his death."
9 On the death of Kutb-ud-Din, and dethronement of Arām Shāh, his adopted son, Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, sent a canopy of state and other insignia of royalty to Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timīgh. See his reign, Section XXI.
1 See note 3, page 257; and note 8, page 400.
the gates of the city of Sistan. At length peace was concluded between him and Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Ḥarab, who was the king of Sijistān. When Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, set out on his return [to Ghaznīn], on his way thither, Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, the Amir-i-Shikār [Chief Huntsman] showed disaffection towards him, and engagements took place between them. Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn was overthrown, and retired towards Khwārazm [the Khwārazm territory?], and after a time returned, until, on the expedition [of Tāj-ud-Dīn] into Hindūstān, the Turkish Maliks and Amīrs of

Other authors do not mention any cause why I-yal-duz should have marched against Sistān, and do not give any details respecting this affair. It may have been caused through the ruler of Sijistān proposing to acknowledge the suzerainty of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh; but our author does not say a word about any expedition of this kind in his account of the rulers of Sijistān. Here, again, is a specimen of history-writing. Dow says: "Eldoz, in conjunction with the Emperor Mamood of Ghor, sent an army to Hirat, which they conquered, as also a great part of Seistan; but, making a peace with the prince of that country, they returned." Then Briggs says: "At length, in conjunction with the King, Mahmood of Ghoor, he (Yeloon) sent an army to Hirat, which he reduced, as also great part of Seestan," &c. Firīstah, however, says: "Once, to support Sulṭān Maḥmūd, he despatched an army against Hirāt, and overcame the Malik of Hirāt, 'Īzz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain-i-Khar-mīl. On another occasion he marched an army against Sistan, and invested it, and [then] made a peace with the Malik of Sistān, and returned." Firīstah, however, is no authority whatever for Western affairs; and as to overcoming 'Īzz-ud-Dīn, son of Ḥusain-i-Khar-mīl, see last para. to note 4, page 258. For further details respecting the reign of I-yal-duz not mentioned here, see pages 417 and 420.

Naṣīr-ud-Dīn in two copies, and Naṣr in another. He held the office of Chief Huntsman under the late Sulṭān.

Among the events of the year Rīḥlat 603, according to Alīf [Ḥijrah 613], Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, acquired possession of Ghaznīn. After that monarch had possessed himself of the territory of Bāmīn and Khurāsān from the Ghūrīn nobles, he despatched an agent to Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, intimating that if he, Tāj-ud-Dīn, would acknowledge his suzerainty, and stamp the coin with his name, and pay him a yearly tribute, he should be left in quiet possession of Ghaznīn; otherwise he must be prepared to see his troops speedily appear before it. Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, called a council of his Amīrs; and Kutlagh Tīgīn, his Amīr-ul-Umrā [Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīḫ says his Nāyab or Lieutenant at Ghaznīn], who was another of the late Sulṭān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn's slaves, advised that the Sulṭān's demands should be acceded to, as it was impossible for them to resist Khwārazm Shāh. Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, complied, and despatched befitting offerings and presents, and accepted the Sulṭān's terms.

Not long after these events, Tāj ud-Dīn went out on a hunting excursion, and Kutlagh Tīgīn sent information to the Sulṭān [who was then on the northern frontier of I-yal-duz's territory], saying, that Ghaznīn was now freed from Tāj ud-Dīn's presence, and urged him to come thither that he might deliver up the place to him. Khwārazm Shāh acceded to the request, and
Ghaznin conspired together and put to death the Khwajah; Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad-i-ʿAbd-ullah, Sanjari, who held the office of Wazir, and likewise Malik Naṣir-ud-Din, Ḫusain, the Amir-i-Shikār.

After a period of forty days Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, marched an army from the side of Țukhāristān, and advanced towards Ghaznin; and his troops suddenly and unexpectedly seized the frontier route leading into Hindūstān, towards Gardaiz and the Karāhah Darah [Pass]. Sultan Taj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, took the route towards Hindūstān, by way of Sang-i-Surākh, and reached Lohor. An engagement took place between him [Sultan Taj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz] and the august Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, I- yal-timīsh, in the vicinity of Tarāʾīn, and Sultan obtained possession of Ghaznin; and Taj-ud-Dīn, finding what had happened [Tāj-ul-Maʿāṣir says in 612 H.], retired towards Hind. The Jāmiʿ-ut-Tawārīkh states that this took place in 611 H., and that all the dominions of the Ghūris fell under his sway.

Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, having obtained possession of Ghaznin, as above related, Taj-ud-Dīn, I- yal-duz, continued his retreat towards Hind. On reaching the neighbourhood of Lāhor, he fought a battle with Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Kaba-jah, who was governor of that province on the part of Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, defeated him, took possession of Lāhor for himself, and soon appropriated the whole of the Panjāb. [See the account of Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Kaba-jah, page 532.]

Khwārazm Shāh, according to the statement of Alī, on taking possession of Ghaznin, put to death all the Ghūrīan nobles and chiefs [which is very improbable], made over the city and territory to his son, Jalāl-ud-Dīn [he nominated him to the rulership of those parts, but left an officer there as his son's deputy], and returned to Khwārazm.

In some copies Karasah [كراش], but the best have كراش as above. It is one of the Passes on the route from Ghaznin towards Lāhor, the name of which has been changed with the change in the inhabitants of those parts.

There are three or four places so called, signifying the "Perforated Stone." The route here seems to refer to a more southerly route than that by the Pass above mentioned. It is a totally different route to that mentioned at page 441.

Four good copies, two of which are old ones, write this name here, and in some other places, with two ts—I- yal-timīsh, and some other writers do the same.

The engagement between Sulṭān Taj-ud-Dīn, I- yal-duz, and this "august Sulṭān"—the slave of the slave, Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, his own son-in-law—took place, by some accounts, on Saturday, the 20th of Shawwāl, 611 H. and, according to others, on Monday, the 3rd of Shawwāl, 612 H., at Tarāʾīn, now Talāwārf, near Pānīpāṭ, in the neighbourhood of which the fate of India has so often been decided. Taj-ud-Dīn was put to death soon after, in the citadel of Budāʾīn, by his rival, I- yal-timīsh, on whom he had himself conferred the insignia of royalty after I- yal-timīsh's usurpation of the sovereignty.
Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, was [defeated and] taken prisoner, and sent to the district of Būdāʿūn; and there he was martyred, and there his mausoleum is situated, and has become a place of pilgrimage, and is visited by suppliants. His reign extended over a period of nine years. The Almighty's mercy be upon him! God alone is immortal and eternal!

V. SULTĀN-UL-KARĪM [THE BENEFICENT], KUṬB-UD-DĪN, Ī-BAK, AL-MUʿIZZĪ US-SULTĀNĪ.

The beneficent and just Sultan, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, who was a second Ḥātim, seized the throne of Ghaznīn, and took it out of the hands of Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, who was his father-in-law. He occupied the throne for a period of forty days, and, during this space of time, he was wholly engaged in revelry, and in bestowing largess; and the affairs of the country through this constant festivity were neglected. The Turks of Ghaznīn, and the Maliks of the Muʿizzī [dynasty], wrote letters secretly to Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and entreated him to return. Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn determined to march thither from Kārman, and, as the distance was short, he reached Ghaznīn unexpectedly. Sultan Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, when he became aware of this, retired from Ghaznīn towards Hindūstān again, by the way of Sang-i-Surākh¹; and, as both of them, in the position of father-in-law and son-in-law, were in the relation of father and son, they did not cause any injury to be done to each other. Subsequently to that, the territory of Ghaznīn came into the possession of Sultan Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and under the authority of the Khwārazmī Maliks, as has been previously recorded.

This Section, on the Shansabānīs and their Slaves, is of Dihlī, and dethronement of Kūṭb-ud-Dīn's son [according to our author, but his adopted son, according to others], and putting him to death.

¹ A very stable government, certainly—forty days! Our author has made Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, one of the Sultāns of Ghaznīn, as though he wanted to make up the number as much as possible, and he is introduced here without any cause whatever. Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, took Lāhor, and ousted its governor, and held it a much longer time, and he, under the same system, should have been entered among the Sultāns of Hindūstān.
concluded; and, after this, I come to the Section on the Sultāns of Hindūstān, the first of whom to be mentioned is Sultān Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, and his illustrious actions¹, which, please God, will be recorded as fully as the limits of this book will permit.

¹ The more modern copies of the text differ here somewhat.
SECTION XX.

ACCOUNT OF THE MU'IZZIAH SULTANS OF HIND.

Thus saith the feeble servant of the Almighty, Abū 'Umr-i-Usmān, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jirjānī—the Almighty God preserve him from indiscretion!—that this ṬABAḴĀṬ is devoted to the mention of those Sultāns, who were the Slaves of the Court, and servants of the Sultan-i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammād, son of Sām ¹—on whom be peace!—and

¹ English writers on Indian History, with scarcely an exception, begin, from this point, their—I say their, because no native historian does so for obvious reasons—"AFGHAN or PATAN Dynasty of Dehli," with the first Turkish slave king, Kūṯb-ud-Dīn, of the Powerless Finger,—although one or two of them commence with his Tajik master, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammād, son of Sām, Ghūrī,—as its founder.

This monstrous error, which has been handed down from one writer to another for more than a century, no doubt, originated with Dow, who, in 1768, published a version of FIRISHTAH's History, the commonest Persian historical work that is to be met with in India, and the one which is generally known to most educated Musalmāns. The work, in itself, which is a compilation from other works, and largely copies the histories composed in the reign of Akbar, is not very often incorrect; but, consequently, Firishta is not a very great authority, and, as regards non-Indian history, no authority at all.

Dow professes, in his Preface [which teems with monstrous errors, but which I must pass over here, as I have referred to it in another place. See JOURNAL OF THE BENGAL ASIATIC SOCIETY for the present year, 1875], to have entered into "more detail"—to have "clipped the wings of Firishta's turgid expressions, and rendered his metaphors into common language;" and further states [p. ix] that he has "given as few as possible of the faults [!] of the author; but has been cautious enough, not wittingly at least, to substitute any of his own in their place [!!]."

Notwithstanding all this, the work was so translated, that Gibbon suspected "that, through some odd fatality, the style of Firishta had been improved by that of Ossian;" and, as it caused the late Sir H. Elliot, in his BIOGRAPHICAL INDEX [p. 317], to say "his [Dow's] own remarks are so interwoven as to convey an entirely different meaning from that which Firishta intended," and "some of the commonest sentences are misunderstood, and the florid diction was occasionally used to gloss and embellish an imperfect comprehension of the original."

This is, by no means, an exaggerated picture of the translation, but, on the
who, in the empire of Hindūstān, sat upon the throne of sovereignty; to whom the throne of the kingdom of that
contrary, a very sober one, as I shall show in as brief a manner as possible, with regard to those passages only which have led some conscientious writers to turn Turkish slaves, Khalj Turks, the descendants of Jāts, low caste Hindūs, and Sayyids, into Afghāns or Patāns.
Passing over the numerous errors in the Preface of Dow's translation to save space, I begin with his Introduction, which is taken from Firīṣṭah's, but a vast deal of the original is left out, for obvious reasons, and what has been retained is full of ridiculous mistakes. In the account of a Hindū king styled Kid Rāj [page 8], he has: "The mountaineers of Cabul and Candahar, who are called Afgans [sic] or Patans, advanced against Keda-raja." The words in italics are NOT in Firīṣṭah.
At page 50, vol. 1. Dow has: "In the following year, Mamood [Maḥmūd of Ghāznī is meant, but the translator ignores the letter ھ—in his name] led his army towards Ghor. One native prince of that country, Mahommed of the Soor tribe of Afgans [sic], a principality in the mountains famous for giving birth to the Ghorian dynasty," &c. BRIGGS, too, follows Dow closely, and often verbatim, in his version of Firīṣṭah. This identical passage in his translation (vol. i. page 49) runs thus:—"In the following year Mahmood led an army into Ghooor. The native prince of that country, Mahommed of the Afghan tribe of Soor (the same race which gave birth to the dynasty that eventually succeeded in subverting the family of Subūktūγen)," &c. There is NOT A WORD in Firīṣṭah about "the Afghan tribe of Soor:" the whole of the passages in italics, in both translations, are NOT in Firīṣṭah. From this particular passage it is, I suspect, that the monstrous error of making Patāns or Afghāns of all the rulers of Dihli, Turk, Khalj, Jat, or Sayyid, has arisen. Compilers of Indian History, no doubt, felt assured that this statement, from its being repeated by both translators, must be in Firīṣṭah, and, being in Firīṣṭah, that it must be true; but it is NOT in Firīṣṭah, neither is such a statement correct, nor is such to be found in any Muhammadan history.
A few lines under the passage in question, thus incorrectly translated, added to, and altered from the original, Firīṣṭah refers to the Kitāb-i-Yāmīnī, and quotes our author's work as his authority with reference to the conversion of the Ghūrīs to Islām, and says: "but the author of the Tabākāt-i-Nāširī, and Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mubārak Shāh, Marw-ar-Rūdī—i.e. of the town of Marw-ar-Rūd—who composed a history," &c. [which Firīṣṭah never saw, but learnt of it from our author. See page 300]. Dow leaves this passage out entirely: but Briggs, who appears to have been equally smitten with "Afgan or Patan" monomania, translates [page 50], the last part of the sentence, "Fakhr-oood Deen Mubarick Lady who wrote a history," &c. He read مرو الرودي Marw-ar-Rūdī—آودي لودي Lady [Lüdi], and so made a "Patan" of him too!!
At page 132, Dow has: "The generality of the kings of Ghor, according to the most authentic historians, could be traced up, by the names, for three-and-twenty, and downwards nine generations, from Ali to Mamood, the son of Subūktāγi," &c.
There is NOT one word of this in Firīṣṭah. He gives the names of their ancestors as our author [from whose work he copied them] and a few others give them, name by name, down to Zuḥkāk the Tāzf; but not understanding, apparently, what followed in the original, Dow concocted—drew on his own
monarch passed—in the same manner as his own august fertile imagination—the "nine generations down to Mamood" of Ghaznī, to whom the Ghürís were no more related than they were to Dow himself.

I have not a copy of Briggs's version by me now, that I might compare it with Dow's, but I should not be surprised if, in this instance also, he had drawn his inspiration from Dow. It was from this identical passage, probably, that the author of a "Student's Manual of Indian History" was led to imagine that Mahmūd of Ghaznī was "the great ancestor of Shahab-ood-Deen."

As Sām was the name of Rustam's family, the Tāzik Ghürís might have been, with equal plausibility, made descendants of Rustam, son of Zāl, the Sigizī, and moreover Sigistān or Sijistān is close to Ghūr, and several of the Ghūr chiefs were called Sām.

I now pass from the "Ghuzni Patans" and the Turkish slave "Patans" to the Tughlak dynasty or "Tuglick Patans."

Dow has, at page 295, vol. i.: "We have no true account of the pedigree of Tuglich. It is generally believed that his father, whose name was Tuglick, had been, in his youth, brought up as an imperial slave, by Balīn. His mother was one of the tribe of Jīs. But indeed the pedigrees of the Kings of the Patan empire make such a wretched figure in history," &c.

Not one of the words in italics is in Firīštah: the whole sentence is his own concoction. Compare Briggs also.

Under the reign of the Afghan ruler whom Dow styles "Shere" [vol. i. page 159], being more correct in his translation, he consequently contradicts some of his former assertions. He then describes Roh from Firīštah ['"The Student's Manual of Indian History" however assures us that it is only "a town, in the province of Peshawur"] but makes several mistakes in doing so; but Firīštah himself blundered greatly when he said that the son of the Ghūrī chief who took up his abode among the Afghāns was called Muḥammad-i-Sūrī, and that his posterity are known as the Sūr Afghāns. The Afghan tradition is very different. According to it, the chief's son was named Shāh Husain, he was said to have been descended from the younger branch of the Ghūrīān race, while Muḥammad-i-Sūrī, said to be the great-great grandfather of the two Sultāns, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, was descended from the elder branch with whom the sovereignty lay. This Shāh Husain, by one of his Afghan wives, had three sons, Ghalīf, Ibrāhīm, surnamed Lodī and Lūdī—but properly, Loey-daey—and Sarwānī. Lūdī had two sons, one of whom was named Sīrāf, who had two sons, Pṛāṇī and Ismāʿīl. Pṛāṇī is the ancestor in the eighth degree of the first Afghan or Patān that attained the sovereignty of Dīlī, namely, Sultān Bah-lūl, of the Shābū Khel tribe of Lūdī, and founder of the Lūdīān dynasty. He is the thirtieth ruler of Dīlī counting from Kūṭh-ud-Dīn, the Turkish slave of Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, Ghūrī; but, according to Mr. E. Thomas: "Chronicles of the Pathān Kings of Dehli," he, under the name of "Buhlīl Lodī," is the thirty-second Patān ruler.

The other sons, of whom Shāh Husain is said to have been the father, formed separate tribes, one of which, the Ghalīfān, I shall have to make a few remarks about, shortly.

Ismāʿīl, brother of Pṛāṇī, and son of Sīrāf, son of Lūdī, had two sons, one of whom was named Sūrī, who is the founder,—not Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, the Gḥūrīān—or the Afghan tribe, not of Sūrī, which here is a proper name, but of Sūr. Sūr, great grandson of Lūdī, had four sons, from one of whom,
words had pronounced, and which have been previously
in the ninth degree, sprung Farīd, afterwards Sher Shāh, and therefore,
according to the Afghāns mode of describing their peoples' descent, he would
be styled, Sher Khān, of the Sherā Khel, of the Sūr subdivision of the
Lūdī tribe of the Bataṅ Afghāns or Paṭāns. The name of Sūr occurring
among the Ghūrī Tāziks, and Sūr among the Afghāns, immediately struck
Firighṭah probably, and he, at once, jumped at the conclusion that they were
one and the same, and that the Ghūrls were Afghāns, and Afghāns Ghūrīs.
But, although Firighṭah made this mistake—for he is the first who made it—
he never turns Turkish slaves, Khalj Turks, Sayyids, and others into Paṭāns,
for, according to Firighṭah's statements also, Bah-lūl, Lūdī, is the first Paṭān
sovereigns of Dihlī, as stated by other authors who preceded him.

Under the reign of Salīm [Islīm] Shāh, Sūr, Dow has [at page 191,
vol. ii.], when mentioning his death, "In this same year, Mahomm, the
Paṭan King of Guzerat, and the Nizām of the Decan, who was of the same
nation, died."

Here we have the descendant of a converted Rājput of the Tāk sept, on
the one hand, and the descendant of a Brahman of Bija-nagar [Bi-jaya-
nagar], on the other, turned into AFGHĀNS; but I need scarcely add that
the words in italics ARE NOT contained in Firishtah. Compare Briggs also
here.

One example more and I have done with these monstrous blunders; but there
are scores unnoticed still. At page 197, vol. ii. Dow, under the reign of
Ibrāhīm, Sūr, has: "In the meantime, Mahomm of the Afghan family of
Ghor, governor of Bengal, rebelled against Mahomm." The words in
italics ARE NOT contained in Firishtah's text; and what that author does
state is perfectly correct. What Briggs has I am not aware.

The last of the eight Afghan or Paṭān sovereigns of Dihlī, as Bah-lūl was
the first, was Aḥmad Khān, who, on ascending the throne, adopted the
title of Sulṭān Sikandar.

The renowned Afghan chief, the warrior and poet, Khush-hāl Khān of
the Khaṭak tribe, who was well versed in the history of his people, mentions
the only two Paṭān dynasties—Lūdīs and Sūr, in one of his poems [See my
"Poetry of the Afghāns," page 197] in these words:

"The whole of the deeds of the Paṭāns are better than those of the Mughals;
But they have no unity among them, and a great pity it is.
The fame of BAH-LŪL, and SHER SHĀH too, resoundeth in my ears—
Afghan emperors of India who swayed the sceptre effectually and well.
For six or seven generations did they govern so wisely,
That all their people were filled with admiration of them."

He does not claim the Tāzik Ghūrls, Turks, Parānchsahs, and Sayyids however.
I must mention before finishing this, I fear, tiresome note, that ELPHIN-
STONE does not perpetrate the monstrous blunder I have been dilating on.
He very properly calls the Turkish slaves, the "Slave Dynasty," and the
others under their proper designations. I do not say slaves in a contemptuous
sense, far from it, for they were most able rulers, and many of them were of
as good descent as their master; but they were NOT Paṭāns nor did they
belong to a Paṭān dynasty. It was however left for the President of the
Archaeological Section, at the late Oriental Congress [on the authority
recorded—who became the heirs of his dominion, and the
august brows of whom became encircled with the imperial
diadem of that sovereign; and through whose sway the
signs of the lights of the Muḥammadan faith remained on
the records of the different parts and tracts of the territories
of Hindūstān: and may such evermore continue! The
Almighty's mercy be on those passed away, and may He
prolong the empire of the remainder!

I. SULTĀN KUṬB-UD-DĪN, I-BAK, AL-MUʿIZZĪ US-SULTĀNĪ.3

The beneficent Sultan Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the second
Ḥātim, was a high-spirited and open-handed monarch.
The Almighty God had endowed him with intrepidity and
beneficence, the like of which, in his day, no sovereign of
the world, either in the east or west, possessed; and, when
the Most High God desireth to make manifest a servant of
Him in magnificence and glory in the hearts of mankind,
He endows him with these attributes of intrepidity and
beneficence, and makes him especially distinguished, both
by friend and foe, for bounteousness of generosity and the
display of martial prowess, like as this beneficent and vic-
torious monarch was, so that, by the liberality and the
enterprise of him, the region of Hindūstān became full of
friends and empty of enemies. His gifts were bestowed
by hundreds of thousands⁴, and his slaughters likewise
were by hundreds of thousands, like as that master of elo-
quence, the Imām, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Ushi ⁶, observes in praise
of this beneficent sovereign:—

"Truly, the bestowal of laks thou in the world didst bring:
Thy hand brought the mine's affairs to a desperate state.
The blood-filled mine's heart, through envy of thy hand,
Therefore produced the ruby as a pretext [within it] ⁶."

[Afghans are not "Pathans" here!], "Bengali Pathans," and "Juanpuri
Pathans." After this we may shortly expect Hindū Pathans and Pārsī Pathans,
or even English, Irish, and Scotch Pathans.

See page 497.

That is the slave of Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn.

Hence he is also called "Lak Bakhsh"—the giver of laks. See page
555, where Rāe Lakhmaṇīah, his contemporary, is also said to have been a
Lak Bakhsh.

He passed the greater part of his life in Hindūstān, and was one of the
most distinguished men of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn's assembly.

The liberality of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn became a proverb in Hindūstān, and still
At the outset of his career, when they brought him from Turkistān, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn reached the city of Nishāpūr. The Kāzī-ul-Kuẓāt [Chief Kāzī], Fakhr-ud-Dīn, 'Aḥ-ḥul-'Āzīz-i-Kūfī, who was a descendant of the Imām-i-Aʿẓām, Aḥū Ḥanīfah of Kūfah, the governor of the province of Nishāpūr and its dependencies, purchased him; and, in attendance on, and along with his sons, he read the Word of God, and acquired instruction in horsemanship, and shooting with the bow and arrow, so that, in a short time, he became commended and favourably spoken of for his manly bearing. When he attained unto the period of adolescence, certain merchants brought him to the Court of Ghaznīn; and the Sultan-i-Ghāzī, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, purchased him from those traders. He was endowed with all laudable qualities and admirable impressions, but he possessed no outward comeliness; and the little finger [of one hand?] had a fracture, and on that account he used to be styled I-bak-i-Shīl [The powerless-fingered].

continues to be so. "The people of Hind, when they praise any one for liberality and generosity, say he is the 'Kuṭb-ud-Dīn-i-kal,' that is, the Kuṭb-ud-Dīn of the age, kal signifying the age, the time, &c." Blood is a play on the ruby's colour.  

See page 384, and note 6.  

Some say the Kāzī sold Kuṭb-ud-Dīn to a merchant, but others, that, after the Kāzī's death, a merchant purchased Kuṭb-ud-Dīn from his sons, and took him, as something choice, to Ghaznīn, hearing of Muʿizz-ud-Dīn's [then styled Shīḥāb-ud-Dīn] predilection for the purchase of slaves, and that he purchased Kuṭb-ud-Dīn of the merchant at a very high price. Another work states, that the merchant presented him to Muʿizz-ud-Dīn as an offering, but received a large sum of money in return.  

Firīštah quotes from our author here correctly, but his translators manage to distort his statements, and Kuṭb-ud-Dīn is made out a proficient in Arabic and Persian, indeed, a ripe scholar. "He made a wonderful progress in the Persian and Arabic languages, and all the polite arts and sciences" says Dow; and Briggs repeats it; but Firīštah's statement was respecting his talent for government, and his accomplishments in the art of war. Elphinstone and others, led astray by the translators, copy their incorrect statements.  

The printed text here has the words از دست which are not correct, and spoil the sense.  

I-bak—embali—alone is clearly not the real name of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, for, if it were, then the word šal—لا—added to it would make it I-bak of the withered or paralyzed hand or limb; and, even if the word šal were used for šal, it would make no material difference. Now we know that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn was a very active and energetic man, and not at all paralyzed in his limbs; but, in every work in which he is mentioned, it is distinctly stated that he was called I-bak because one of his little fingers was broken or
At that period, Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Din, now and then was wont to give himself up to pleasure and jollity. One night he had given directions for an entertainment and conviviality, and, during the entertainment, he commanded a gift to be bestowed upon each of the slaves present, consisting of sums of ready money, and gold and silver, both wrought and unwrought. As to the portion of these gifts which came to Kutb-ud-Din’s share, he came forth [with] from the jovial party, and bestowed the whole of the wealth upon the Turks, and janitors, and other attendants, so that nothing whatever, little or much, remained to him.

Next day, this story was conveyed to the royal hearing, and the Sultan distinguished Kutb-ud-Din by his favour and intimacy, and assigned to him an honourable post among the important offices before the throne and the royal audience hall, and he became the leader of a body of men, and a great official. Every day his affairs attained a high degree of importance, and, under the shadow of the patronage of the Sultan, used to go on increasing, until he became Amir-i-Akhür [Lord of the Stables]. In that office, when the Sultāns of Ghür, Ghaznin, and Bāmiān, advanced towards Khurāsān to repel and contend against Sultan Shāh, the Khwārazmī, Kutb-ud-Din was at the head of the escort of the foragers of the stable [department], and used, every day, to move out in quest of forage.

I-bak, in the Turkish language, means finger only, and according to the vowel points, may be 'Arabic or Persian; but the 'Arabic shal, which means having the hand (or part) withered, is not meant here, but Persian shil, signifying, “soft, limp, weak, powerless, impotent, paralyzed,” thus I-bak-i-Shil—the weak-fingered. See Thomas: PATHAN KINGS OF DEHLI, page 32.

2 Turkish guards, the slaves of the household.

3 The text is defective here in nearly every copy, but comparison makes the passage correct. The idiom also varies considerably for several lines, as in numerous other places, already referred to.

4 Others say Kutb-ud-Din, with the patrol under his command, had pushed up the river bank of the Murghāb, towards Marw, when he unexpectedly fell in with the army of Sultan Shāh. All his endeavours to effect his retreat,
Unexpectedly [upon one occasion], the horsemen of Sultan Shāh came upon them and attacked them. Kutb-ud-Din displayed great energy; but, as the horsemen [with him] were few in numbers, he was taken prisoner; and, by Sultan Shāh's commands, was put under restraint.

When a battle took place between Sultan Shāh and the Sultāns of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and the former was put to the rout, the Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din's men brought Kutb-ud-Din, placed on a camel, in gyves of iron, as they found him, into the victorious Sultān's presence. The Sultān commended and encouraged him; and, after he returned to the seat of government, Ghaznīn, the fief of Kuhrām was committed to Kutb-ud-Din's charge. From thence he advanced towards Mīrāth, and took possession of that place in the year 587 H. From Mīrāth likewise he issued forth in the year 588 H. and captured Dihli; and, in the
year 590 H., Kuṭb-ud-Din proceeded, at the august stirrup of the victorious Sulṭān, along with the Sipah-Sālār, 'Izz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, both of them being the leaders of the van of the army, and fell upon the Rāe of Banāras, Jai-Chand, on the confines of Chand-wāl and overthrew him.

Subsequently, in the year 591 H., Thankir was taken; and, in 593 H., Kuṭb-ud-Din marched towards Nahrwālah, and attacked Rāe Bhīm Diw, and took vengeance upon that tribe [of people] for the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī[‘s previous defeat]. He likewise subdued other territories of Hindūstān, as far [south?] east as the frontier of the territory of

9 See following note 9, last para., page 518.

1 The best St. Petersburgh MS. has Thīnūr Dīw [ تحونور ] here; but the majority, including the two other oldest copies of the text, are as above.

ॐ Our author omits mentioning many important events which are not touched upon in Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn’s reign, although, at page 507, he says he intends giving a detailed account of the Kuṭbī victories under Kuṭb-ud-Dīn’s reign. As this is one of the most important periods of Indian history, I am obliged, in order to give some connexion to the events of the Muḥammadan conquest, to burden this translation with an abstract of them, more particularly as they are not given, in any detail, except in two histories, and, even in them, the chronological order of events has not been strictly observed. The Tāj-ul-Ma‘āṣir states that, after taking Ajmīr, subsequent to the overthrow and death of Rāe Pithorā and the installation of his son as tributary ruler of that state, Sulṭān Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn proceeded towards Dīhlī, which was then held by a kinsman of Khāndī [Gobind of our author] Rāe, the brother of Rāe Pithorā; but, on his tendering submission, and payment of a large sum as tribute, he was left unmolested, under the same terms as Ajmīr had been left in possession of Rāe Pithorā’s son, but some say his brother. Kuḥrām and Samānāh were left in Kuṭb-ud-Dīn’s charge, and he was left at the former place as the Sulṭān’s deputy or lieutenant, and Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn himself returned to Ghaznīn. Elphinstone says, page 314, on the authority of Firīstah’s translators, I suppose, that, when “Shahab u dīn” returned to Ghaznīn, he left “his former slave, Kuṭb u dīn Eibak,” as his representative in India; and yet “his former slave” did not get his manumission until upwards of twelve years afterwards, as all native authors, including Firīstah himself, state: and such is history!

Another account is, that, after being installed at Kuḥrām, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn marched from thence against Mirāj, and gained possession of it, after which he moved against Dīhlī and invested it. The kinsman of Khāndī Rāe appealed to his Rājpūt countrymen for aid, and an army of Rājpūts, in concert with the garrison, endeavoured to raise the investment by attacking Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn and his forces in the plain before the city. The Hindūs, however, were overthrown, and the defenders, being reduced to straits, called for quarter, and surrendered the place.

In Ramazān, 588 H., according to the Tāj-ul-Ma‘āṣir [Firīstah, who often quotes it, says Ramazān, 589 H.], news reached Kuṭb-ud-Dīn that an army of Jats [Firīstah says “under a leader named Jatwān, a dependent of the Rāe of
Ujjain; and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Bakht-

1 Ujjain is as plainly written as it is possible to write, and the tashdid mark over it in the two oldest and best copies of the text. Other copies have इ but it is evidently owing, in the first place, to a copyist or copyists dropping the ॥ that the error arose—thus इ and इ for इ। Ujjain is the more probable, and certainly the more correct, if the map of India be consulted, and the account of his campaigns, in the abstract I have given, read. It is confirmed also by some other authors; but the generality of histories, which are comparatively modern, with the exception of Mir'at-i-Jahan-Numā, which has Ujjain, have Chīn. The only reason that will account for such an idea having arisen respecting Chīn must have been the raid of Muhammad, son of Bakht- yār, the Khalji, into Tibbat, mentioned at page 564, which ended so disastrously.

4 Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, is his correct name, as our author himself states in his account of him. See page 548.

Nahrwalah ] had appeared before Hansī. The governor of that tract, Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Sālārī, had been obliged to shut himself up within the walls, and to send to Kūṭb-ud-Dīn for aid. He flew to his assistance, marching the same night the news reached him twelve leagues. The enemy, hearing of his approach, decamped; but, being closely pursued, faced about, and were overthrown. Their leader was slain [Firīštah says he retired to Nahrwalah of Gujarāt], and Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, having again placed Hansī in an efficient state, returned to Kuḥrām, and soon after made Dihlī his head-quarters and the seat of government; but some authors state that he did not make it the capital until the following year, after taking Kol.

Kūṭb-ud-Dīn had soon to take the field again to support the son of Rāe Pithora, who had been installed tributary ruler of Ajmīr. The Sadr-i-'Alā, Kīwām-ul-Mulk, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Ḥamzah, who held the fief of Rantabhūr, sent information that Bhīrāj [हेंदर], also written Bhūrāj [देवकर], who is called Hiraj [हिराज] in some imperfect copies of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣīr, Hemraj by Firīštah, and Hamīr by some others, brother of the late Rāe Pithora, had broken out into rebellion; that the son of Rāe Pithora, who is sometimes called [the?] Golah, but generally styled merely "the son," was in great danger; and that the rebel was advancing against Rantabhūr itself. Kūṭb-ud-Dīn marched from Dihlī against him; but Bhīrāj [or Hamīr], on hearing of his coming, made off and took to the hills. Rāe Pithora's son [see Tod, who says his only son, Rainsi, did not survive him! He further states that Dow, mistaking the appellation of Pīrt'hwiraja's natural brother for a proper name, calls him Golah. The error is Firīštah's, however, not Dow's, in this instance], ruler of Ajmīr, was, upon this occasion, invested with an honorary robe; in return he presented valuable offerings, among which were three golden melons [kettle-drums, in the shape of melons], and, in all probability, the very same as mentioned at page 404.

About this time, also, while Kūṭb-ud-Dīn was still absent from Dihlī, its former Rāe raised an army to make an effort against the Musalmāns. He was pursued and defeated by Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, taken prisoner, and his head struck off and sent to Dihlī.

According to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣīr, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, at this time, sent an account of his proceedings to his master, and was summoned to Ghaznīn. As it was then the hot season, he waited until the beginning of the rains to set out for the capital. Having reached Ghaznīn, and having been received with great honour
yār, the Khalj, in his [Malik Kutb-ud-Din’s] time, and
and favour by the Sultan, he fell dangerously sick; but subsequently recovered,
and "was permitted to return to Hindustān again, and the government was
again conferred upon him."

Our author, under the reign of I-yal-timish [see next Section], also refers to
this journey, but he says it took place after the expedition against Nahrwālah.
It must have occupied some months; but, in the meantime, who acted as the
Sultan’s lieutenant at Dihlī? It would almost seem as though Kutb-ud-Din
had been suspected of being too powerful, and that this summons to Ghaznin
was to test his obedience and loyalty. One thing, however, is certain, from
the account of Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tūghrīl [page 544], and the mention of
Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Āghūl-Bak, and others [page 549], that there were
powerful chiefs left by the Sultan in Hindīs̱tān who held fiefs independent of
Kutb-ud-Dīn. It was on this occasion, on his return to Dihlī by way of Gar-
daiz and Karāmān [which Dow, translating Fīrīshthāh, who is perfectly correct,
renders "Persian Kirman," and adds, in a note, that it is "the ancient Car-
mania"], that Kutb-ud-Dīn espoused the daughter of Taj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-diiz.
This journey Fīrīshthāh, who constantly quotes the Tāj-ul-Ma’āshir, mentions
as taking place in 592 H.

After remaining a short time at Dihlī, Kutb-ud-Dīn marched from it in
590 H., crossed the Jīn, and took the strong fortress of Kōl after an obstinate
resistance, and acquired great booty. It was after this, according to some
histories, including the Tābāḵāt-i-Akbarf,—a work compiled from the best
authorities,—that Kutb-ud-Dīn made Dihlī the seat of his government; but
the Tāj-ul-Ma’āshir seems to imply, but not exactly expressing it, that Dihlī was
made the seat of government in 588 H., although, by its own account, the
Hindū ruler "was allowed [in that year] to hold it upon the same terms as
Ajmir was held," already mentioned.

Kutb-ud-Dīn now [590 H., but same say in 589 H., the same year in which
Dihlī was made the seat of government] received intimation of the Sultan
Mu’izz-ud-Dīn’s having marched from Ghaznin on an expedition against Jai
Chand [Jai Chand], Rajah of Kīnnauj and Banārās, his former ally, against
Rāe Pīthorā, according to the Hindū Chroniclers, who, it is said, meditated
an attack upon Kutb-ud-Dīn. On hearing of the Sultan’s having crossed the
Sutlāj, Kutb-ud-Dīn proceeded some stages in advance to receive him and do
him honour, bearing along with him rich offerings. [Fīrīshthāh, who gives an
account of this matter, uses the word peshwā’ī—پیشوائی—which signifies
meeting and conducting a superior or a guest; but his translators, Dow and
Briggs, mistaking, say respectively that Kutb-ud-Dīn “proceeded as far as
Peshawir” and “Pishawur” to meet him!! Where Dihlī? where Peshawar?
where Kīnnauj? Fancy his marching from Dihlī with 50,000 horse at his
heels, and crossing the five great rivers of the Panjāb, merely to meet his master
marching to Kīnnauj!!]

Kutb-ud-Dīn’s following, upon this occasion, amounted to 50,000 horse [the
Muḥammadan forces of Hindūstān]; and, having joined the Sultan’s army, he,
in concert with I’zz-ud-Dīn, Ḫusain, son of Ḫar-mīl [the same who after-
wards turned traitor, and played such a false part towards Sultan Muḥammad,
Khwārazm Shāh, mentioned in note 9, page 257], led the vanguard [the prin-
cipal division unencumbered with heavy baggage, not “a small detachment of
1000 horse”] of the Sultan’s army. The Musalmāns came in contact with Jai
Chand’s forces in the environs of Chand-wār and Itāwah [another author says
Chand-ā-war. It is probably Chand-wāl of Itāwah, a place a few miles S.E.
during his government, subdued the cities of Bihār and
of the latter town. See page 470], and compelled them to give way. Jai
Chand, in person, then led on his forces to renew the action, in the heat of
which an arrow struck him in one of his eyes, and he fell dead from his ele-
phant. See also note 4, page 470, and compare the absurd statement of the

It is truly amusing to compare Firishtah's account of this affair with the
versions of his translators. He, quoting the Taj-ul-Ma'āṣir, says—I give his
own words—"At last Jai Chand, in person, appeared in the field against
Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, and, during the very heat of the fight, a life-taking arrow
[&5'» 3\] entered the pupil of the Rājah's eye, and he fell from his ele-
phant into the dust of contempt." Dow renders this: "But Cuttub, who
excelled in archery, sunk an arrow in the ball of his eye;" and BRIGGS has:
"Kooth ood Deen, who excelled in archery, came in contact with Raja Yye
Chund, and with his own hand shot the arrow which, piercing his eye, cost the
Rajah his life" !!!!

The Musalman troops, having overthrown Jai Chand's army, and taken
possession of the fortress of Āṣī, where his treasures were kept, pushed on to
Banaras, "one of the most central and considerable cities of Hind;" and
scores of idol temples were destroyed, and a vast amount of booty acquired,
including a large number of elephants, among which was a white one.
[Firishtah says this white elephant, a most rare animal, was presented by the
Sultān to Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, who used to ride it up to the time of his death, and
that it died of grief the day after. This, however, is mere supposition, for it
appears that this same white elephant was taken to Ghaznin, and from thence to Ghūr, to Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's elder brother and
sovereign; and it was afterwards presented by Maḥmūd, the former's son, to
Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, when he became subject to that
monarch. See note 8, para. 9, page 402]. Elphinstone says this victory over
Jai-Chand "extended the Mussulman dominion unto Behar!" but this is not
correct. Muḥammad, son of Baqht-yār, it was who, shortly after these events,
took the city of that name by surprise.

After these successes Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn returned to Ghaznin, and Malik
Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Āghul-Bak [the same who took Muḥammadam, son of Bakht-
yār, the Khalj, into his service, see page 549], was installed at Kol.
[Firishtah, in his work, gives his account of the expedition against Bhīrāj
—para. 4 of this note—in this place.]

Kūṭb-ud-Dīn soon had to take the field again against Bhīrāj [or Hamfr],
who had issued from the hills of Alwur, whither he had fled, first fought an
engagement with his nephew of Ajmīr, defeated him, compelled him to fly for
shelter to Rantabhūr, and took possession of Ajmīr, and despatched a force
under a leader named Jhat Rāe towards Dihil; but Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, having
speedily selected a force of 20,000 horse, marched to encounter him. Jhat
Rāe faced about, and was pursued by the Musalmāns to Ajmīr. Bhīrāj [or
Hamfr] then drew out his forces to give battle, but he was defeated, and
retired within the walls; and then, finding resistance fruitless, ascended a
funeral pyre and perished. After this a Muḥammadan governor was left in
charge of Ajmīr, but what became of Rāe Pithorā's son has not transpired.

After this, on disposing of the affairs of Ajmīr, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn is said to have
led his forces, in 591 H., towards Nahrwālāh of Gujarāt, and encountered the
general of Bhīm Dīw [according to TOD, Komar-pāl was his name]. Rāe of
Nahrwālāh, who is styled by the name of Jatwān, and who was encamped with
Nūdīah, and that country [Bihār], as will be hereafter recorded.

his army under the walls of the place. On the appearance of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn he retired, but was pursued, and, being hard pressed, faced about, made a stand, was defeated and slain. Bhīm Dīw fled from his capital to the farthest quarter of his dominions; and, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, having acquired enormous booty in that territory, returned by way of Hānāsī to Dihīlī.

In the year 592 H., the Jāmi' Masjid [now known as the Kuṭbī Masjid] at Dihīlī, which Kuṭb-ud-Dīn is said to have founded in 589 H., and on which the most skilful Musalmān artizans had been employed [not Hindūs solely, Mr. Grant Duff and General Cunningham notwithstanding], and no expense spared, is said to have been completed. [See note on the Minār, styled the Minār of Kuṭb Sāḥīb, under the reign of I-yal-timīsh.] The date of its foundation, as given by Thomas, "PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLĪ," page 22, c, note 1, is erroneous, as Dehlī was not acquired, as I have shown [note १, page 469], until subsequent to that date, in 589 H. It is evident that seven—nine, the two words, without the points, on which all depends, being exactly alike; and, in writing such as the inscription is in, may be easily mistaken.

In this same year, 592 H., according to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir, but 591 H., according to our author, and 590 H., according to Alī, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn was preparing an expedition against Thankir or Thangir—also written Thankir or Thangīr—the modern Bhīrnāh [a further notice of which will be found at page 545], when intimation reached him of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's moving from Ghaznīn for the same purpose. He went as far as Hānāsī to meet his sovereign, and they marched in concert thither; and Kuṭb-ud-Dīn brought about the surrender of that stronghold, which was made over to Malik Baha-ud-Dīn, Tughrīl. After this the royal forces advanced to Gwāliyūr, the Rajāh of which agreed to pay tribute, and he was left unmolested. For further particulars, see page 546, and note १. After this event, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn returned again to Ghaznīn.

While Kuṭb-ud-Dīn was at Ajmīr, according to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir [Firīsh-tah has, at Dīlī, in 592 H. The former work has 591 H., which cannot be correct, from the date it subsequently gives], information was brought to him that a body of rebel Mers or Mairs [not Mhīrs, for there is no h in the word. Firīsh-tah says—ربیتیی تنر:—probably رن: “the Tunar Rājāhs”—and adds, "that is to say, Rājpūts." Dow translates the passage, "many Indian independent princes," which is pretty near Firīsh-tah's meaning; but BRIGGS has: "The Rāja of Nāgoor and many other Hindoo Rājas"], having gathered together, sent emissaries to the Rāj of Nahrwālāh, asking him to aid them in attacking the Musalmāns, who were but few in number. On becoming aware of this intention, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn resolved to be beforehand with them; and, although it was the height of the hot season, early one morning fell upon the rebels, and kept up a conflict with them the whole of that day. Next morning the army of Nahrwālāh appeared upon the scene, and handled the Musalmāns very roughly. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn's horse received a wound which brought it to the ground, and his troops, greatly disheartened, with much difficulty managed to mount him upon another horse, and carried him off to Ajmīr.

Tod, referring to this affair, in his Rajasthan, vol. i., page 259, remarks, that "Samarsi [Prince of Cheetore] had several sons; but Kurna was his heir, and, during his minority, his mother, Korumdevi, a princess of Putun, nobly
When the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-maintained what his father left. She headed her Rajpoots, and gave battle to Kootub-o-din, near Amber, where the viceroy was wounded." In a note he adds: "This must be [of course!] the battle referred to by Ferishta. See Dow, p. 169, vol. ii." The "wound or wounds" must also have come from Dow or Briggs, for it is not in Ferishta. This statement of the translators, not Ferishta's, must have led Elphinstone, when he says [page 315 of third ed.]: "Kutb u Din was overpowered on this occasion, and had difficulty in making his way, covered with wounds, to Ajmir," &c. The statement of Ferishta's is this: "But his horse, having received a wound, came to the ground. The army of Islam became heart-broken, and they, having by main force—[Dow]—placed him on another horse, took him to Ajmir." This is all; but his translators certainly display much fertility of imagination in their rendering of Ferishta's words. Dow has: "But he was defeated, received six wounds, and was often dismounted; yet he fought like a man who had made death his companion. Forced, at last, by his own friends, to abandon the field, he was carried in a litter to Ajmere." Briggs has: "But he was defeated. After being frequently dismounted in the action, and having received six wounds, he still fought with his wonted courage, till, being forced at length by his attendants off the field, he was carried in a litter to Ajmeer."!!!

Emboldened by this success, the rebel Hindús [the ७1 of Ferishta], with the troops of Nahrwâlah, followed Kulb-ud-Din and his force, pursued them to Ajmir, and took up a position a short distance from it; and for several months they shut up Kulb-ud-Din within the walls, and carried on hostilities against the place. On intimation of the state of affairs having reached Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, he despatched a large force from Ghaznin, under several of the great Amirs, to succour Kulb-ud-Din; but the infidels thought fit to retire before it arrived.

From 591 H. the Taj-ul-Ma'asir jumps at once to 593 H., although immediately before giving an account of the expedition against Thankir or Thangîr and Gwâliyîr in 592 H., thus showing that 591 H. cannot be correct. The correct date of this reverse must be the ninth or tenth month of 592 H., as Ferishta states. To return, however, to the narrative. Kulb-ud-Din, finding himself thus supported, resolved upon taking vengeance on the Rae of Gujarat, and, in the middle of Safar—the second month of the year—593 H., which year is confirmed by our author and several others, he began his march towards Nahrwâlah. When he reached the bounds of Palî and Nadûl (these names are not certain, but such they appear in the Taj-ul-Ma'asir). In proceeding from Ajmîr to Nahrwâlah, Kulb-ud-Din had the choice of two routes, that on the eastern slopes of the Arawîl mountains, by Udipûr and Ídur, or that on the western or Mârwar side, clear of the mountains; and this last he would in all probability have chosen by the direct route of Palî and Sirhoî, keeping Ábû on his left. Nadûl, where, as at Palî, are the remains of ancient forts, lies about twenty-five miles or more south of Palî, but off the direct line of route by Sirhoî; but it must also be mentioned that there are places named Palî and Birgonî close to the hills nearer to Sirhoî, and a Rûrî still nearer Ábû. Ferishta does not appear to have taken his account from the Taj-ul-Ma'asîr in this instance, as the two names he gives may be either Hûtâlî or Dhûtâlî and Bazulî or Barûl, or Rahî and Bartukî and Nûzul or Nadûl, as above] he found those places abandoned—thus tending to show that they were in the lower and less tenable parts—and the enemy under two leaders, one of whom is styled Râe Karan [Kurnah, probably] in the Taj-ul-Ma'asîr, and Ursf [٧٣]
Sām, attained martyrdom, Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Mah-

Fanākāti makes a nice hash of this event. He says "after Shihāb-ud-Din, his slave, Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, became the great Sultan, and paid homage to Shihāb-ud-Dīn's son, Mahmūd by name, who was Wālī of Ghaznīn," and that writer makes out that Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn was the younger brother, and Shihāb-ud-Dīn the elder. He has substituted Shihāb for Ghiyāṣ; and the same is stated in several copies of his work.

The Tāj-ul-Maʿāṣir states, "when the mournful news reached Kutb ud-Dīn, and the period of mourning had expired, he sent out notifications to all parts of Hind and Sind, intimating his assumption of the sovereignty, which notifications were attended to by the chief rulers in those territories; and, after the defeat of I-yal-dūz, the whole tract, from Ghaznīn [he should have added, as far as concerns Ghaznīn and its territory, for forty days and nights only] to the extremity of Hindūstān, came under his jurisdiction," and a great deal of such like exaggeration.

With respect to this matter, and the date, there is very great discrepancy in Fīrishtah; and the other, Rārābars or Darābars in the former, and Wālan in the latter, were posted at the base of the hills of Abī-gadh [this word is written without points], and may be either Ālū-gadh or Ābū-gadh. Elphinstone has: "Two great feudatories of Guzrāt strongly posted on the mountain of A'bu." If he had ever seen Abū, he would have understood that they might as well have been posted on the Himalayah as there, since the Musalmāns would not pass over or through it. Fīrishtah says: "At the foot of the fort of Abū or Ālī-gadh,] at the entrance to a pass where the Musalmāns did not dare to attack them, as it was the very spot where Sultan Muḥammad-i-Sām, Ghiyārī, had been previously wounded, and it was deemed unpropitious to bring on an action there lest the same might happen. [Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn is here referred to, and this statement does not tend to increase our confidence in what the Tāj-ul-Maʿāṣir says, and it is quite certain that Muʿizz-ud-Dīn was never wounded but once, and then not near Ajmīr. Tod asserts [vol. i., page 696], upon Rājspūt authority, no doubt, and therefore we must make every allowance, that it was at this very place [Nadole] that "Mahmoud's [Mahmūd's?] arms were disgraced, the invader wounded, and forced to relinquish his enterprise." But in another place [page 249] he says "Nadole is mentioned in Fīrishtah as falling a prey to one of Mahmood's invasions, who destroyed its ancient temples." Both the statements are much of a piece. [ ] "Seeing their hesitation," says the Tāj-ul-Maʿāṣir, "the Hindūs advanced to encounter them [Fīrishtah, on the other hand, says "Kutb-ud-Dīn entered those defiles, and broken ground, and defeated them"]; and, after facing them for some time, on Sunday, 13th of Rābīʿ-ul-Awwal, 593 āh. [about the 5th of January, 1197 A.D., the year 593 having commenced on the 23rd of November, 1196], a battle took place, which was obstinately contested from dawn to mid-day, and ended in the complete overthrow of the infidels, who are said to have lost nearly 50,000[!] killed. [Fīrishtah says "nearly 15,000 killed and 20,000 captives, thus avenging his former defeat."] Rāe Karan escaped, leaving twenty elephants, and 20,000 captives, besides booty to a great amount. Nahrwālah was taken possession of, and a Musalmān Amir was located there, after which Kutb-ud-Dīn returned to Dihīlī by way of Ajmīr; and offerings of jewels, and handsome male and female captives, were despatched to Ghiyārī [to Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn] and to Ghaznīn. [Gujarat could not have been retained for any time, as it was not
mūd, son of [Ghiyāș-ud-Dīn] Muḥammad, son of Sām, among historians. In the first place, however, I must mention, that our author himself states, at page 398, that, "when Ḫuṭb-ud-Dīn came to Ghaznīn [for the forty days after which he ran away. See note 8, page 503], he despatched Nīzām-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, to Frīz-kōh to the presence of Sultan Mahmūd;" and in 605 H. [much the most probable date, for reasons to be mentioned subsequently] he, Mahmūd, sent him a canopy of state, &c., thus contradicting his own statement here. See also page 398, and note 8, page 500, para. 2.

Several histories and authors, including Tarikh-i-Ibrahimi, Tabakat-i-Akbarī, Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh-i-Hind, Taṣkīrat-ul-Mulūk, Budāʿūnī, &c., state that Ḫuṭb-ud-Dīn assumed sovereignty, at Lahor, on Tuesday [one has Sunday, the 17th, another Wednesday], the 18th of Zi-Kaʿdah, 602 H., which is much the same as our author says here, and just two months and a half from the date of the Sultan's decease. One of these works states that "Ḫuṭb-ud-Dīn had gone to Lahor in order to receive the canopy of state, a standard, the deed of mission, the title of Sultan—as he was styled Malik mostly up to this time and permanently acquired by the Musalmāns until long after.] Promotions and favours were conferred upon the Muḥammadan chiefs, and even the poor and needy [Musalmāns] of Dihlī shared in Ḫuṭb-ud-Dīn's bounty and munificence.

No other operation is mentioned from this time to the year 599 H., a period of nearly six years; and it is somewhat surprising to find the Musalmāns in India so quiet for such a length of time. It may be partly accounted for, especially the last three years, through the Sultanāns—Ghiyāș-ud-Dīn and Muʿizz-ud-Dīn—being occupied with the affairs of Khurasan since the accession of their powerful rival, Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, the events of whose reign will throw some light upon this period.

In the year 599 H., the same in which Sultan Ghiyāș-ud-Dīn died, and his brother, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, became supreme sovereign, Ḫuṭb-ud-Dīn undertook an expedition against Kalinjar. The Rāe of Kālinjar of the Pramarah race made a desperate resistance in the field, according to the Taj-ul-Maʿāṣir, before retiring within the walls; but Firīṣṭaṭh asserts that, in "the twinkling of an eye, he faced about and fled for shelter to the fortress." He was invested therein, and shortly after he made terms, and agreed to submit to Ḫuṭb-ud-Dīn on terms the same as those upon which his ancestors had paid obedience to Sultan Maḥmūd, Ghaznavīd; and stipulated for the presentation of a large amount in jewels and other precious things, and a number of horses and elephants. It so happened that, next day, while engaged in collecting together this tribute, he was cut off by the hand of death. His Wakīl or minister, Ajah Dīw [in Firīṣṭaṭh, Jadah Dīw], bethinking himself of a never-failing spring of water in the upper part of the place, determined to resist the Musalmāns instead of agreeing to the terms; but, as fortune had turned its face from him, and adversity had come, the spring within a few days dried up, and the people within the walls, being helpless, were compelled to call for quarter; and they came out, and gave up the place. Vast booty in jewels, arms, elephants, and other property fell into the hands of the Musalmāns, who became rich from the spoils; and 50,000 captives, male and female, were taken, and were, according to Firīṣṭaṭh, "exalted to the excellence of Islām," and the idol temples were converted into masjīds.

It is amusing here also to find how Firīṣṭaṭh, whose account is substantially the same as the preceding, has been translated. Dow says: "In the year 599 he mustered his forces, and marched to the siege of Calinger, where he was
who was Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Din’s brother’s son, despatched was still a slave—and the government of Hindustān, which Mahmūd had conferred upon him, or rather, confirmed him in, and was greatly exalted and honoured thereby.” Our author, and some who copy him, state, that Kuṭb-ud-Din returned to Dīhil after the expedition against the Khokhars; but it must be remembered that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn accompanied his master, Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, to Lāhor after that affair, and, as only two months and sixteen days elapsed between the assassination of the Sultan and Kuṭb-ud-Dīn’s assumption of the sovereignty at Lāhor, it is therefore probable that, on hearing of the assassination of the Sultan, which took place only fifteen days after the latter left Lāhor, he returned to it at once, and possibly had not even left it when the news reached him. After a time, he returned to Dīhil again. The Tāj-ul-Ma’āṣir says he made Luḥāwar his capital, “the place where the throne of Sultāns had been established,” but the reason, why he eventually returned to Lāhor, and continued there to the day of his death, has been stated already in another place. See note 8, page 503.

It is stated in another work, the Khulasat-ut-Tawārīkh, that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn met by Gola, the tributary prince of that country, whom he defeated; and, dismounting his cavalry [1], began to besiege him in the fort.” All this is pure invention: there is nothing of the kind in Fīrīṣṭah. Briggs has: “In the year 599 he mustered his forces, and marched against Kulunjur, where he was opposed by the Rāja of that country, whom he defeated; then, dismounting his cavalry, he laid siege to the fort.” A siege and an investment are far different things. All about “the Hindoo flag being again hoisted on the fort” is also purely imaginary, and is not contained in Fīrīṣṭah’s text.

Here is another choice specimen of how Indian history is written. Its source, of course, is Dow and Briggs, not Fīrīṣṭah. In Marshman’s “History of India,” vol. i., page 197, is the following: “In the year 599 he mustered his forces, and marched against Kulunjur, where he was opposed by the Rāja of that country, whom he defeated; then, dismounting his cavalry, he laid siege to the fort. The Rāja, seeing himself hard pressed, offered Kūṭb-ood-Deen Eibuk the same tribute and presents which his ancestors had formerly paid to Sooltan Mahmood. The proposal was accepted; but the Rāja’s minister, who resolved to hold out without coming to terms, caused his master to be assassinated, while the presents were preparing. The Hindoo flag was again hoisted on the fort, the siege recommenced, but the place was eventually reduced, owing to the drying up of a spring upon the hill which supplied the garrison with water.”

From Kālinjar Kuṭb-ud-Dīn marched to the city of Mahobah, the capital of the territory of Kālib, which he took possession of, and returned to Dīhil by way of Budā’un, one of the chief cities of Hind, which he also occupied. [It is not Fīrīṣṭah who places “Budā’un between the Ganges and the Jumna.” (see Elliot, India, vol. ii., page 232, note 1), but Dow and Briggs, who misinterpret him.] It was whilst in this part that Muḥhammad, son of Bakht-yr, the Khalj, is said to have presented himself in Kuṭb-ud-Dīn’s presence,—not from Awadh and Bihār, but from A-twand-Bihār, noticed in the account of that chief farther on—bearing rich presents in jewels and coin of various descriptions; but this certainly took place ten years before 599 H. He was received with great distinction, as his fame had extended over Hind and Sind. When he was admitted to an audience to take leave, he received a robe of honour, a standard, and other insignia, as will be found mentioned in the account of him at page 548.
a canopy of state to Malik Kutb-ud-Din, and conferred on him the title of Sultan; and, in the year 602 H., he determined to proceed from Dihli to the royal presence in Lohor; and, on Tuesday, the 17th of the month, Zi-
ascended the throne, at Lāhor, on the 11th of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 603 H., and
that he read the Khutbah for himself, and coined money in his own name, and
yet, although the coins of others are, comparatively, so plentiful, it is stated
that not one bearing the name of Kutb-ud-Din has ever been found. A work
in my possession, however, which contains specimens of the different coins
of the Sultāns of Hind, with the inscriptions they are said to have borne, gives
the following as a specimen of Kutb ud-Din's coins:

कुटबुद्दिन वाली नयी एक दिल्ली राजकीय बैठक

which may be thus rendered:—"Coin of the inheritor of the kingdom and
signet of Sultān, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, in the year 603 H.,” and on the
reverse:—"Struck at the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, Dihlī, in the first [year] of [his]
accession."

I rather doubt the possibility of Malik [which was his only title up to his
ascending the throne at Lāhor] Kutb-ud-Din’s having received the title of
Sultān and the investiture of the sovereignty of Hindustān as early as Zī-Ka’dah,
602 H., because Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Mahmiid, did not at once obtain the supreme
[nominal only] authority after the assassination of his uncle. His kinsman,
‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, previously called by the name of Ziyā-ud-Dīn [See
page 394] was, at that time, ruler of Ghūr and Fīrūz-koh, and Maḥmūd was
at Bust, and it must have taken him some few months, at the very least, to
dispossess ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and acquire possession of the sovereignty;
and this would bring us to 603 H., as on the coin given above. One author, in
fact, states, and it is not improbable, that ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who
then held Ghūr, after the Sultān’s assassination—in which case, 602 H. would
be correct—sent Kutb-ud-Dīn a canopy of state, and conferred on him the
sovereignty of Hind, and that Maḥmūd, subsequently, did the same; and one
of the authors previously referred to says Kutb-ud-Dīn was at Pūrghōr, when
Maḥmūd’s communication, conferring this dignity, reached him, and further
states that he had gone there to guard the route into India.

Another thing to be remembered is, that, by our author’s account, the
statements of the Taj-ul-Ma’asir, and the greater number of other histories, Kutb-
ud-Dīn died in 607—although some say in 609, and 610 H.—in what month is
not stated, after a reign of little over four years; but, if we consider a little,
four years from Zī-Ka’dah, 602 H., only brings us to the same month of 606 H.
Strange to say, Faṣīḥ-h, although mentioning the assassination of Sultān
Mu’izz-ud-Dīn in 602 H., does not mention Kutb-ud-Dīn’s acquirement of
power as Sultān until 608 H.—"when the title of Sultān was conferred and
he was manumitted"—one year before Maḥmūd’s assassination, which he says
occurred in 609 H., and states that Kutb-ud-Dīn was killed by a fall from his
horse in 610 H. See note 3, page 528.

See note 3, page 500.

The text in most copies, including the printed text, is slightly defective
here, causing a meaning contrary to what our author would convey. It is evi-
dent, from various events, that Kutb-ud-Dīn did not "determine to go to the
Ka'dah, of that same year, he ascended the throne in the royal Kaṣr of Lohor.

After some time, hostility arose between him and Sultan Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, respecting Lohor, so much so, that that hostility led to an engagement; and, in that affair, the victory was with Sultan Kūtb-ud-Din. Sultan Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, was defeated, and retreated before him; ⁹ and capital, Lohor," as the words alone mean; and, farther, Lāhor was not the capital. The correct reading is as above, namely—— and this refers, not to his going to the city of Lāhor, but into the Lohor territory to join his master the Sultan against the Khokhars; he only relates it in the wrong place. After their overthrow, the Sultan came to Lohor, accompanied by Kūtb-ud-Din; and, subsequently, after the Sultan's assassination, the latter assumed sovereignty there. Zīr Ka'dah is the eleventh month. This is evidently our author's meaning. Kūtb-ud-Din had no reason to 'attack Lohor," as in Elliot, INDIA: vol. ii. page 300, and the imperfect passage in the printed text even will not bear such a rendering.

I have, in a previous place [see page 502, note ⁹], referred to the proceedings of Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-diiz, towards Ghiyas-ud-Din, Māhmūd, and Kūtb-ud-Din's jealousy of I-yal-diiz, and his offer of aid to Abl-Dakur against him.

In the year 603 H., shortly after Kūtb-ud-Din is said, by some, to have received his freedom, and the title of Sultan from Sultan Māhmūd, I-yal-diiz, who considered the Panjāb part of the dominion of Ghaznī to which he had succeeded, and which had neither been assigned, by Māhmūd, to Kūtb-ud-Din, nor to the other slave, Kābā-jaḥ, Kūtb-ud-Din's son-in-law, despatched the Khwājah, the Mu'ayyid-ul-Mulk, Sanjari, the Wazir of Ghaznī, against Lāhor [but a few authors say he went himself], and ousted Kābā-jaḥ, who held it, nominally, for Kūtb-ud-Din. Kūtb-ud-Din, soon after, marched against I-yal-diiz with all the available troops of Hindūstān, and a battle took place between them, in the Panjāb, and I-yal-diiz was worsted, and retreated into the strong country of Kārmān and Shālūzān. Kūtb-ud-Din now pushed on to Ghaznī, which having obtained possession of, he gave himself up to wine and riot; and this, according to our author, at page 398, happened in 605 H., which is a more probable date than 603 H.

There are great discrepancies, however, in several works of authority, which are difficult to reconcile with the above in many respects, in Alfi, Yāfā-i, and the Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīkh, which must be briefly alluded to.

It is said in the first-mentioned work that, soon after the death of Mu'izz-ud-Din, I-yal-diiz had to abandon the Ghaznī territory, because, through the treachery of Kutlāgh-Tigīn, a former slave of the late Sultan [can this be the slave who shut the gates upon his master mentioned in note ², page 475 ¹], and who, since his death, had been in Sultan Māhmūd's service, but was now one of I-yal-diiz's principal Amirs and held Ghaznī for him, during a short absence, seized this opportunity of instigating Sultan Muḥammad, Khwāzam Shāh, to seize it. I-yal-diiz, previous to this, had agreed to acknowledge the suzerainty of that monarch, and had despatched befitting presents; but the Sultan at once acted on the suggestion of Kutlāgh-Tigīn, and seized Ghaznī.

This event, according to Alfi, took place in 603 of the Rīḥlat, and Yāfā-i, Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīkh, and some others say in 611 H., and, according to those
Sultan Kutb-ud-Din proceeded towards the seat of government, the city of Ghaznin, and possessed himself of that kingdom likewise; and, during a period of forty days that he sat upon the throne of Ghaznin, he bestowed upon God's works, Sultan Mahmud did not die until 609 H. [see also last para. of note 3, page 400], and Faqih-i states that Kutb-ud-Din obtained sovereignty over Hindustan in 608 H., and places his death as late as 610 H. These dates do not agree with those given by the Muhammadan Historians of India, but they are not the most reliable authorities for events which happened out of that country.

In the state of affairs in which I-yal-diiz found himself, for Sultan Mahmud was now but a mere vassal of the Khwarazmis [see note 6, page 400], he was under the necessity of retiring towards Hind [the Panjab], which he considered a portion of his own dominions. He reached Lahoo, encountered Kaba-jah, and took possession of that capital and the whole Panjab. See our author's account of Kaba-jah, page 531, and early part of the reign of I-yal-timish.

On Sultan Muhammed, Khwārazm Shāh, getting possession of Ghaznin, he put to death several of the Ghurian Amirs, and made over his new acquisition to his son, Jalāl-ud-Din, Mang-barni; and a Khwārazmī noble was installed at Ghaznin as his deputy [This accounts, no doubt, for the reference made by Jalāl-ud-Din's part, some years subsequently, to their having been "good neighbours previously." See note 4, para. 7, page 290], and the Sultan returned to Khwārazm. Kutb-ud-Din now marched into the Panjab against I-yal-diiz [603 244, 612 H.], who was defeated by him, and retired into Karmān and Shalūzān. Kutb-ud-Din marched to Ghaznin, drove out the governor on Jalāl-ud-Din's part, and gave himself up to wine and pleasure.

Now we come to that part of the subject in which all agree; but it is amusing to notice how our author slurs over these doings. Kutb-ud-Din now giving himself up to amusement and debauchery, the people of Ghaznin, disgusted with his remissness and laxity, and the disordered state of affairs, sent a person, secretly, to I-yal-diiz, to whom they seem to have been much attached, and solicited him to return to the capital. He did so with promptness; and, as his appearance on the scene was quite unexpected by Kutb-ud-Din, he was unable to resist him, and he abandoned Ghaznin precipitately, and fled by way of Sang-i-Surakh [one of the routes between Ghaznin and the Panjab, for he did not dare to take that through Karman], to Lahoo. This was the occasion of his "filling the throne of Ghaznin for forty days," for which our author considered it to be necessary to mention him [page 506], not only among the Sultans of Hindustan, but, separately, of Ghaznin likewise.

I cannot refrain from inserting here a specimen of history-writing, which will only be found in the writer's imagination. Mr. Marshman, in his "History of India," written for the University of Calcutta, states at page 47, vol. i., that "Kutub followed up the victory over "Eldezo"") and recovered Ghuzni [which he never before possessed], where he assumed the crown [not at Lahoo then?], but was soon after expelled by his rival, and driven back to India... The establishment of the Mahomedan empire in India is, therefore, considered to date from this event," &c. This is rich indeed.

Kutb-ud-Din does not appear to have returned to Dihli any more; and, through fear of I-yal-diiz, continued at Lahoo until he met with the accident which ended his days.
people abundant benefactions, and innumerable favours, and returned again to Hindústán, the account of which has been previously related. As the decree of fate supervened, in the year 607 H., he fell from his horse whilst engaged in playing ball on the course, and the horse came down upon him, in such wise that the prominent part of the front of the saddle came upon his blessed breast, and he died.

The period of his rule, from the first taking of Dihli up to this time, was twenty years; and the stretch of his sovereignty, with a canopy of state, the Khubbah, and coin [in his own name and titles], was four years and a little over.

II. SULTÁN ARÁM SHÁH, SON OF SULTÁN KUTB-UD-DÍN, I-BÁK.

When Sultán Kutb-ud-Dín, I-bák, died, the Amirs and Malikṣ of Hindústán at once considered it advisable for

Chaughān, something similar to modern Polo.

The eastern saddle is vastly different from ours, and those who have seen it in use in the East will easily conceive the effect of the high-pointed front coming in contact with the breast.

The generality of authors place his death in the year 607 H., but the month and date is not mentioned, and some place his death much later. One work, the Tarīkh-i-Ībrāhīmī, however, gives a little more detail than others, and enables us to fix the month, at least, tolerably correctly. It is stated in that work that, having ascended the throne at Lāhor, in Zi-Kā'dah, 602 H., he died in 607 H., having ruled nineteen years, fourteen as the Sultán's [Mu'izz-ud-Dín's] lieutenant, and five and a half years as absolute sovereign. From 588 H., the year in which he was first made the Sultán's lieutenant, to the 2nd of Shā'bān, 602 H., the date of the Sultán's death, is fourteen years and a month, calculating from about the middle of the former year, if Mu'izz-ud-Dín returned to Ghazān before the rainy season of 588 H., which, in all probability, he did; and five years and six months from the middle of Zi-Kā'dah, 602 H., would bring us to the middle of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, the fifth month of 607 H., which will therefore be about the period at which Kutb-ud-Dín is said to have died, and a little more than three months, by this calculation, after the death of Sultán Maḥmūd, if 607 H. be the correct year of the latter's assassination. Fāṣīh-i says Kutb-ud-Dín died in 610 H., and the Mīrāt-i-Jahān-Numā and Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh say in 609 H. He was buried at Lāhor, and, for centuries after, his tomb continued to be a place of pilgrimage. It may now possibly be turned into a reading-room, a residence, or even a place of Christian worship, purposes for which many buildings of this kind are now used at Lāhor, without its being known whose dust they were built to cover.

It seems strange that our author should give detailed lists of the offspring, kinsmen, Kāżīs, nobles, and victories of his former slave and son-in-law, Shams-ud-Dín, I-yal-timīsh, and not of Sultán Kutb-ud-Dín, I-bák, himself, the pseudo-founder of the "Pitān or Afghān" dynasty.
the sake of restraining tumult, for the tranquillity of the commonalty, and the content of the hearts of the soldiery, to place Aram Shāh upon the throne.4

Sultan Kutb-ud-Din had three daughters, of whom two,

4 Although a number of authors agree in the statement that Aram Shāh was Kutb-ud-Din's son, it nevertheless appears, from the statements of others, that Kutb-ud-Din had no son; and it is stated, more than once, by our author likewise, that three daughters were his only offspring. Some of these authors, moreover, who call Aram Shāh his son, afterwards add, "than whom he had no other heir;" but, if he was really his son, what better heir could be desired? Abū-l-Fazl makes the astonishing statement that Aram Shāh was Kutb-ud-Din's brother!

On the sudden removal of Kutb-ud-Din from the scene, at Lahor, the nobles and chief men, who were with him there, in order to preserve tranquillity, set up, at Lahor, Aram Bakhsh, the adopted son of Kutb-ud-Din, and hailed him by the title of Sultan Aram Shah. What his real pedigree was is not mentioned, and he may have been a Turk. Mandates and decrees were now issued in his name, and the good news of justice and glad tidings of impartiality towards the people reached them. This was, it is said, in 607 H.

At this juncture, Amir 'Alī-i-Isma'īl, the Sipah-Sālār, and governor of the city and province of Dihlī, the Amir-i-Dād [called Amir Da'īd, by some], and other chief men in that part, conspired together, and sent off to Budā'ūn and invited Malik I-yāl-timish, the feoffee of that part, Kutb-ud-Dīn's former slave and son-in-law, and invited him to come thither and assume the sovereignty. He came with all his followers, and possessed himself of the city and fort and country round. At the same time, Nāšir-ud-Dīn, Kābā-jah, who had married two daughters of Kutb-ud-Dīn [in succession], appropriated Sind and Multān, Bhakar and Siwastān, and, subsequently, the territory to the n.e., as far as Sursūf and Kuhram; the Khalj chiefs in Bangālāh assumed independency there, and the Rājahs and Rāes on the frontiers [of the Musalman dominions] began to show a rebellious and contumacious spirit.

Aram Shāh, on first becoming aware of these acts of I-yāl-timish, at the advice of his supporters, summoned to his aid the old Amirs and soldiers of his adopted father, and they, having rallied round him in considerable numbers from Amrohāh, and other parts, and he having inspired them, advanced with a strong force towards Dihlī. Malik I-yāl-timish, having gained possession of the capital, issued from it with his forces; and, in the plain of Jūd before Dihlī, the rival forces encountered each other. After a feeble effort on the part of Aram Shāh's troops, he was defeated and disappeared, and what became of him is not quite certain; but our author is probably correct in saying that he was put to death by his rival. After this, Malik I-yāl-timish became independent ruler of Dihlī, and the other great chiefs were left, for a while, in the possession of the territories they before held or had since appropriated. The reign of Aram Shāh, if such can be properly so called, is said by some to have terminated within the year; but others contend that it continued for three years. The work I have before alluded to gives the following inscriptions on a coin of Aram Shāh, and the date on another, given as I-yāl-timish's, corroborates the statement of those who say Aram Shāh's reign extended over three years.
one after the [death of the] other, were wedded to Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kābā-jah, and the third was married to Sultān Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish. At this time that Sultān Kuṭb-ud-Din died, and Ārām Shāh was raised to the throne, Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kābā-jah proceeded to Uchchah and Multān. Kuṭb-ud-Din had contemplated Sultān Shams-ud-Din's acquiring dominion, and he had called him son, and had conferred upon him the fief of Budā'ūn. The Maliks, in concert, brought him from Budā'ūn, and raised him to the throne of Dihlī; and the daughter of Sultān Kuṭb-ud-Din was espoused by him; and they martyred Ārām Shāh.

Hindūstān became subdivided into four portions: the territory of Sind Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kābā-jah took possession of, the dominion of Dihlī pertained to Sultān Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, the territory of Lakhānawati was appropriated by the Khalj Maliks and Sultāns, and the state of Lohor, according to alteration of circumstances, used to be seized upon, sometimes by Malik [Sultān] Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, sometimes by Mālik [Sultān]

The following are the inscriptions on this coin:—

which may be thus rendered:—“This diram [is] stamped with the name of the Malik, the shadow of the Almighty, Ārām Shāh, in the year 607,” and on the reverse:—“Struck in the Dār-us-Saltanat, the city of Lahor.” The date given on the coin of I-yal-timish, which see farther on, Section XXI., is “612, the first of his reign.”

Those authors, who say Ārām Shāh was Kuṭb-ud-Din’s son, for the most part make a great blunder in stating that he was raised to the throne at Dihlī, and that those, who had set him up, repenting of having done so, through his incapacity—his incapacity seems to have been his incapacity to enforce obedience—invited I-yal-timish to assume authority, and that Ārām Shāh, becoming aware of their sedition, came out of Dihlī, and called on his father’s old followers to aid him, after which I-yal-timish secured it, and subsequently defeated Ārām Shāh.

From what our author states, a few lines under, it would appear that I-yal-timish only espoused Kuṭb-ud-Din’s daughter when he assumed the throne, at Dihlī.

In other words, he appropriated those places and their dependencies in the confusion consequent on I-yal-timish’s usurpation, and assumed the title of Sultān.

The idiom varies here. All the modern copies of the text, and one of the oldest also, have, instead of this sentence, the words—“and the decree of destiny reached Ārām Shāh,” and the sentence ends. Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 301.
Nāšir-ud-Din, Ḫabā-jah, and sometimes by Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timīṣh, as will, subsequently, be recorded, please God! in the account of each of those personages.

III. MALIK [SULTĀN] NĀŠIR-UD-DĪN, ḪABĀ-JAH, AL-MU’IZZI-US-SULṬĀNI. 8

Malik [Sultān] Nāšir-ud-Dīn, Ḫabā-jah, was a great monarch, and the slave of the Sulṭān-i-Ḡāzī, Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām.

He was endowed with very great intellect, sagacity, discretion, skill, wisdom, and experience, and had served Sulṭān Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn many years in various departments of every sort of political employment, both important and subordinate, about the Court, in military affairs, and the administration of civil duties, and had acquired great influence.

Malik Nāšir-ud-Dīn-i-Aetamur, the feudatory of Üch-

8 Sulṭān, on his coins, the title he assumed, and to which he was equally as much entitled as the "august" Sulṭān I-yal-timīṣh.

Some authors—but they are mostly those either natives of or resident in India, and of comparatively modern days—write this name Ḵūbā-ḥāh, with چ. The Rauṣat-us-Ṣafā writes it Ḫabāj merely. Our author, however, invariably writes it Ḫabā-jah, and I have therefore followed him. The letter چ in writing, is constantly used for چ sometimes from ignorance, sometimes by mistake, and the two letters are very often interchangable, and ی and ى are substituted for them; but, in this particular case, the name of this ruler occurs time after time in the same line with Üchḫāh, but the ی of Ḫabā-jah and the چ of Üchḫāh are distinctly marked in the oldest copies of the text, and, in one, the vowel points are also given. Üchḫāh will be found constantly written with ی which is intended for چ, in several copies of the text as well as in many other works, but we never find Ḫabā-jah written with چ in the text.

The idea appears to have prevailed that this probable nickname is derived from ی—ᡳ-kabā, an 'Arabic word signifying a quilted jacket with short sleeves, or a tunic open in front, and that ی—čah is the Persian affixed particle of diminution = kabā-čah, a short jacket or tunic, and thus his name would be Nāṣir-ud-Dīn of the short tunic or jacket; but, in this case, ᴽubā-čah with ی is impossible, because there is no ی in the 'Arabic word kabā.

The letter ی never occurs in a purely Persian word, nor does it ever occur in Hindi; and ی is often substituted for it, and vice versa. There are other meanings attached to a precisely similar word used in Persian, which is probably Turkish, like the nick-names, ی-bāk, ی-al-dūz, I-yal-timīṣh, and the like. This kabā means, rending, tearing, cutting, paring, scraping, shaving, &c., while, in another form of it, the ی is doubled = kabā signifying slender about the middle. To this last the Persian diminutive particle, čah, is of course applicable; but, besides this, čah signifies, much, great, abundance, and the like, and also fifteen, or, literally, three fives. Under these circumstances this nickname might mean "very slender waisted." See also Elliot: INDIA, vol i, page 131.
chah, in the engagement at Andkhud— which took place between the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, and the forces of Khita, and the Maliks of Turkistan—displayed great valour before the stirrup of the Sultan, and fought against the infidels as by orthodox law enjoined, and despatched great numbers of them to hell. The Maliks of the army of Khita became dejected through the amount of slaughter inflicted [upon them] by Nâsir-ud-Din-i-Aetamur, and they simultaneously came upon him, and he attained martyrdom. The Sultan-i-Ghazi reached his capital and the throne of Ghazin in safety, from that disaster; and the government of Úchchah was entrusted to Malik Nâsir-ud-Din, Kaba-jah.

He was son-in-law to Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, through two daughters; and, by the elder daughter, he had a son—Malik 'Ala-ud-Din, Bahram Shâh. He [Bahram Shâh] was of handsome exterior and of good disposition, but addicted to pleasure; and, according to the way of youth, he had an excessive predilection for vice.

In short, when Malik Nâsir-ud-Din, Kaba-jah, after the catastrophe of Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, proceeded to Úchchah, he possessed himself of the city of Multân, and Sindüstân, and Diwal, as far as the sea-coast. The whole he brought under his sway, and subjected the fortresses, cities, and towns of the territory of Sind, assumed two canopies of state, and annexed [the country to the eastward] as far as the limits of Tabarhindah, Kuhram, and Sursuti. He also took Lohor several times; and

---

9 This word is written, in one of the oldest copies of the text, with the vowel points. Inda-khûd—and, from further research, I find it is the proper mode of spelling the name of this place. In the present day the people of that part call it Ind-khûd and Ind-khû. I have retained the modern mode of spelling.

1 The printed text and two MS. copies of the text have Úchchah and Multân, but the ten best copies omit Multân.

2 One having previously died. Kaba-jah was likewise son-in-law of Tâj-ud-Dîn, I-yal-dûz, and, consequently, by the alliance with Khutb-ud-Dîn's daughters, he married the daughters of his wife's sister's husband.

The Tâj-ul-Ma'asir calls him 'Ala-ud-Dîn, Muhammam, but I look upon our author as a better authority than the Tâj-ul-Ma'asir for the events of this reign. What became of Kaba-jah's son our author and others do not state.

3 That is, Siwastan, also called Shiw-astan, by some Hindu writers. The remarks which follow seem to indicate that all these were separate provinces or territories. Siwastan is turned into Hindustan in Elliot's India, page 302.

4 Yâfa-i says each of the slaves seized upon the territory he held the govern-
fought an engagement with the troops of Ghaznin which used to come [into the Panjab] on the part of Sultan Tāj-ud-Din. Immediately after the decease of Kutb-ud-Din, the so-called establisher of "the Pathan or Afghan dynasty," Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Kābā-jah, foreseeing a struggle for power, or, at least, a weak government, appropriated all the forts and towns in the territories of Lāhor, Tabarhindah [some authors say Bathindah, some Sirhind], and Kuhrām as far as Sursuti, he holding, at the time of Kutb-ud-Dīn's death, the fiefs of Īchchah and Multān, having previously held Lāhor for him. He was subsequently ousted from Lāhor, Multān, and Īchchah by the forces of Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, as our author mentions; but, after the defeat of I-yal-dūz, and he had been put to death in captivity by I-yal-timīsh, Kābā-jah got possession of these territories again, and apparently as a tributary of I-yal-timīsh, or in some way subject. Our author leaves out here, but mentions in two lines, and under a wrong date, the first hostilities which arose between Kābā-jah and I-yal-timīsh under the latter's reign. These hostilities arose in 613 H., many years before the defeat of Sultan Jalal-ud-Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh, by the Mughals. According to the Taj-ul-Ma'āsir, Kābā-jah was tributary to I-yal-timīsh, and the tribute was in arrears. At the advice of his Wazir, I-yal-timīsh marched from Dihli towards Lāhor to enforce payment; others say, and more probably, that it was for the possession of the province of Lāhor—in Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 613 H. [The Tabakat-i-Akbari, Buda'iini, and some others, make a great blunder here. They state correctly enough that war arose between these two rulers about Lāhor, and that Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timīsh, was always victorious; but add that, on the last occasion, in 614 H., Shams-ud-Dīn moved against him in person, and invested Īchchah, and then proceed to mention Kābā-jah's death, which happened ८८ years or more after, thus confounding or mixing up the two events. Firishtah is completely at sea about these events in Kābā-jah's life.] Kābā-jah with his forces was encamped on the Biah [the Bias of Europeans] to defend its passage. Arrived on its banks, I-yal-timīsh, on the 14th of Shawwāl, began to cross with his army, without the aid of boats [this in Elliot, vol. ii. page 571, is called crossing the Indus!], at the ford near a village named Chambah [2]; but we must remember that the present course of the Biah is not what it was then. In those days it separated into two branches at a village named Lowah-wāl, one branch flowing by Kuṣūr, Kābulah, Khā-e, and Hujrah-i-Shāh Muḵīm, passed about a mile and a half N.W. of the fort of Dībāl-pūr, and fell into the river Ghārā. This branch was called Biah and Nālah-i-Biah; whilst the other branch, flowing southwards, fell into the Sutlaj, as the Ghārā, above its present confluence with the Biah, is called. One author, copied by Firishtah, states that this affair between Kābā-jah and I-yal-timīsh took place between Manṣūrah and the banks of the Chināb, which seems very unlikely, being too far west. Kābā-jah, on witnessing this daring deed, according to the Taj-ul-Ma'āṣir, abandoned his position and fled towards "Luhāwār," whither he was pursued. His standard, kettle-drums, war material, and other booty to a vast amount, fell into the hands of his rival. After this disaster, Kābā-jah fled towards Īchchah, whither I-yal-timīsh appears not to have been then prepared to follow him. I-yal-timīsh remained some time at Lāhor to arrange its affairs; and, having published the news of his success in all parts, conferred the government of that
ud-Din, Yal-duz, and was overthrown by the Khwâjah, the Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muhammed-i-'Abd-ullah, the Sanjari, who was the Wazir of the kingdom of Ghaznin.

When [Sultan] Nasir-ud-Din, Kaba-jah, became quietly established in the territory of Sind, during the calamities attending the inroads of the infidels of Chin, a great number of the chief men of Khurasan, Ghûr, and Ghaznin presented themselves before him, and he bestowed upon the whole of them ample presents, and provided liberally for them. There used to be constant contention between him and the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, up to the time of the battle on the banks of the Sind, which was fought between Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, son of Sultan Muhammed, Khwârazm Shâh, and Chingiz Khan, after which, Jalal-ud-Din, Khwârazm Shâh, came into the land of Sind, and proceeded towards Diwal and Mukrán.

After the taking of Nandanah by the forces of the infidel territory upon his eldest son, Nasir-ud-Din, Maßmûd Shâh, and then returned to Dihil. It was after these events that Kaba-jah's territory was invaded by Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Khwârazm Shâh, as already mentioned in note 4, page 293. The extent of the province of Lâhor may be judged of from what is mentioned in that note, and note 1, below.

5 This happened in 612 H., according to the Taj-ul-Ma'asir, but it cannot be correct. That is the year in which I-yal-diiz in person overthrew him: the Wazir of Ghaznin defeated Kaba-jah soon after the death of Kutb-ud-Din. The Mir'at-i-Jahan-Numa states that engagements were fought between I-yal-diiz and Kaba-jah several times in the neighbourhood of Lâhor for the possession of that province. See under the reign of I-yal-diiz, pages 496—506.

6 Having been deprived of the province of Lâhor, Kaba-jah retired into Sind, and, devoting his energies to the consolidation of his rule therein, acquired great power.

7 See page 200.

8 Truly; and at page 294 he says that Kaba-jah was defeated by I-yal-timish in person in 614 H., which refers to the same events as related in the Taj-ul-Ma'asir in note 4, page 532.

9 Sa'id here means august, and not that his name was “Sa'id,” which it was not, nor was it “Sultan Sa'id Shams.”

10 Sultan Jalâl-ud-Din's defeat happened in the seventh month of the year 618 H. Compare Elliot's INDIA here, and throughout this Section, as the Calcutta printed text happens to be pretty correct in this identical portion of it. In the translation in Elliot, vol. ii., page 303, this passage is thus rendered:—“When the battle between Jalâl-î din Khwârizm Shâh and Changiz Khan was fought on the banks of the Indus, Jalâl-î din came into Sind, and went towards Dewal and Makrân. After the victory of NANDUA-TARI the Moghal prince came with a large army, &c.” Here it will be perceived that NANDANAH, the name of the fort which was taken and the district in which it lay, and Turtî, the name of the Moghal who led the troops engaged in it, have been very
Mughals, Turti, the Mughal Nu-in, with a large army, appeared at the foot [of the walls] of the city of Multan, cleverly made into one name, and Chingiz Khan is brought to Multan, who was never east of the Indus in his life!

This passage cannot fail to be unintelligible to the reader without giving some explanation, and some details respecting the events to which it refers. Our author, no doubt, could have given more particulars, but here, as elsewhere, he has, for reasons of his own, concealed a great deal.

There are many discrepancies likewise in the generality of Muhammadan authors about the investment of Multan. Some works, including Jahân-Kushâ, and Jami'-ut-Tawârbh, agree with our author, and some others state that Multan was taken by the Mughals, while Faşîb-I, and others, which give such detailed accounts of the Mughal invasions and Sulțân Jalâl-ud-Dîn's career, say nothing about Nândanah, and do not refer to this expedition against Multan; and Faşîb-I farther states, what is rather improbable, that Chingiz Khan himself gave Sulțân Jalâl-ud-Dîn to understand, that, "as long as he did not re-cross the Sind, he would not interfere with him." The Â'nî-i-Akbarî says the Mughals subdued Multan, and that Kabâ-jah again repulsed them, but the first statement is not correct.

European writers also differ considerably—I need not quote the absurd nonsense contained in D'Ohsso'n [iii. p. 4] and in Rampoldi, in his "Annali Musulmani"—in their accounts, extracted from the Muhammadan writers, respecting the advance of the Mughals upon Multan. In the "History of the Tartars," translated from the work of Abî-l-Ghazi, Bahâdur Khân, it is stated that Chingiz "despatched Dubay, Noyan, and Bala, Noyan, in pursuit of the Sulțân, but they, having followed him in vain as far as the frontiers of India, were obliged to return without being able to give any tidings respecting him." Petit de la Croix, on the other hand, quoting Faşîl-ullah, says, "Bela, Noyan, with 20,000 men," was sent "to resist" the Sulțân, "if he appeared in the country of Multan," and again, quoting Abî-l-Fidâ, says "Multan fell into the hands of the Mughals." Jahân-Kushâ, Jami'-ut-Tawârbh and Alf are, however, greater authorities than those quoted by Petit de la Croix for these events.

After his defeat of Sulțân Jalâl-ud-Dîn on the west bank of the Sind or Indus, Chângiz Khân, with the main body of his forces, halted in the country near the Kâbul river and the Sind—in the plain of Peshâwar, or the Hasht-nagar Do-âbah, probably—pending negotiations with Sulțân I-yal-timish—as stated by our author also farther on, only the negotiations of Chingiz were usually conducted upon quite a different plan: with the sword, not the pen—for permission to pass through upper Hindûstân and enter Chînu by way of Lakhâna-wâfî and Kâmîrûd. Whilst there encamped, Chingiz, hearing of the progress of Sulțân Jalâl-ud-Dîn, and the strength he was acquiring, detached the Nû-in, Turtî or Turtâe—both names are correct, and he is by some writers called Türmatî [not "Tûlî," as stated in Thomas, "PATHÂN KINGS OF DEHLĪ"]—Tûlî was the son of Chingiz, and was elsewhere employed at this time. Firîghtah, on the other hand, says it was Chaghhatâe, another of the sons, which is equally incorrect—with two tumans—20,000 men—in pursuit of him.

Sulțân Jalâl-ud-Dîn, then in the western part of the Sind-Sâgar Do-âbah, being much too weak in point of numbers to face this Mughal army sent after him, retired farther into the Panjâb, after he had, with 150 men, attacked and routed some 2000 or 3000 of the troops of Hindûstân stationed in that part, beyond the river Bihat, Whîhat, or Jhilam, into the Chinhâtah Do-âbah [The
and, for a period of forty-two days, closely invested that strong fortress.

name of this Do-ábah is derived by combining the two first letters of the word Čhináb—with the three last letters of ье—Bihatah or Ṣi—Whihatá, b and w being interchangable—the Do-ábah of Čhinhatáh lying between those two rivers], where there were numbers of Khoukhat at that period; and one writer states that the Sultan did actually invest Láhor itself.

Turtí, having crossed the Sind, "pushed on until he reached the boundary of the district or tract of country belonging to Hindústán which Kám-ud-Dún, Kármání, had held, but had been dispossessed of it by one of the Sultan's [Jalál-ud-Dún's] Amirs. This evidently refers to the tract of country which will be subsequently referred to in several places—Bànban or Banfán. In it was the strong fort of Nándanáh [नंदना—in two copies of Alfi it is written नंदना, clerical errors probably, but the locality cannot be mistaken, and Nándanáh is evidently meant] which he took, and inflicted great slaughter upon its inhabitants." From whom this fort was taken is not mentioned, but it could scarcely have been then in the possession of Jalál-ud-Dún's vassals. After this feat, Turtí set out towards Múltán, keeping along the western bank of the Jhílam. "On arriving opposite Múltán he found the river unfordable, and directed his followers to construct a bridge, which they did by means of rafts of wood—a floating bridge." He then crossed, and invested the place; but, after he had placed his catapults, and had discharged them a great number of times with much effect, and the fortress was about to fall, he had to abandon the siege on account of the excessive heat [it was the height of the hot season, and the heat of Múltán is truly excessive]. He plundered the provinces of Múltán and Lóháwar, re-crossed the Sind, and proceeded towards Ghaznín." Jámí'-ut-Tawárikh and Alfi say he plundered the Fúr or Porús—which is the same probably as the Malik-púr and Malka-púr of other writers, the meaning of the former not having been recognized, perhaps, from the two words being written as one—सक्कोर and मैसूर. See also Elliot, India: vol. ii., page 559.

Our author, however, makes the matter of the investment of Múltán by Turtí very confused, for, in a previous page [297], he states that "Turtí, the Mughal, who had invested Múltán, left Chíngít Chán, and came and joined Sultan Jalál-ud-Dún, and became converted to the Mubammadan faith."

To return, however, to Nándanáh. This name is first mentioned in the reign of Mahmúd of Ghaznín by Ú'tha in the Kitáb-i-Vamíní, and then by Abú-Sá'd, son of Háiyah, a native of Gardaiz in the Ghaznín territory [probably an earlier writer even than Abú-l-Fázl-i-Báihákî, though not much], in his Zain-ul-Akhbáír, who says that Mahmúd, towards the end of ۴۰۴ H., determined to attack that fort, and that Naro Jai-pál, on becoming aware of it, placed a strong garrison therein and retired himself towards the valley of Káshmir. Mines were sprung, and the Turks kept up such a fire of arrows against those who showed themselves upon the walls that the place surrendered in ۴۰۵ H. This very rare and important work I have commenced translating.

The next mention of Nándanáh occurs in Abú-l-Fázl-i-Báihákî's work, wherein it is said it was "impossible to leave that saghar—ساغار—a narrow pass between hills bordering upon a hostile country—where was the fort of Nándanáh, without being properly taken care of." Our author also mentions it in several places, and it is mentioned in some other works, including the Tabákát-i-Akbarí [it appears to have been copied from Zain-ul Akhbar],
During that contest Malik [Sultan] Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Kābājāh, opened the door of his treasury, and conferred nume-

Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh, and Fīrishtah, both under Māhmūd's reign, and in

many other places, as well as by 'Abbās, Sarwārī, the Afgān historian, and

other writers; yet, by some means or other, it has been turned into "Nārdīn"

by a few Muḥammadan writers—or rather copyists—and by almost all Eu-

ropean translators, after the same fashion as Tārā'īn—the present Tālāwārī—

has been turned into "Nārdīn." No such places as "Nārdīn" and "Nārānīn"

ever existed. See also Elliot, INDIA: vol. ii., pages 448 to 450. Fīrishtah's

mode of spelling it is Nandiinah, and, in this instance, Dow spells it tolerably

correct, and is followed by Briggs.

Although it is declared [Elliot, INDIA: vol. ii. page 451] that "the name

of Minduxa cannot be restored," I shall make an effort to restore that of Nan-

danah, and, I think, not unsuccessfully.

NANDANAH, as late as the latter part of the last century at least, was the

name of a district, and formerly of a considerable tract of country, and a

fortress, in the Sind-Sagar Do-ābah of the Panjāb—but the name, to judge

from the Panjāb Survey Maps, appears to have been dropped in recent times—

lying on the west bank of the Bihaṭ, Wihat, or Jhilam. It contained within it

part of the hill country, including the tallah or hill of the Jogī, Bāla-nāth, a

sacred place of the Hindūs, which hill country was known to the Muḥammadan

writers as the Koh-i-Jūd, Koh-i-Bāla-nāth, and to the people dwelling therein

as the Mahkālah, Janjhū, or Jūd Mountains, which we style the Salt Range,

from the number of mines of rock salt contained within them, and lay between

Pind-i-Dādan Khān [so called after a former Khokhar chief named Dādan

Khān] and Khūsh-ābh, and now composes part of the Shāh-pūr [Pūr or Fūr. i.e.

Porus] District of the present Rāwal Pindī Division under the Panjāb Govern-

ment. There was also another separate and smaller district named Nandan-

pūr, a little farther north, and there is a small river named Nandanah in the

present district of Fāṭh-i-Jang, in the Rāwal Pindī District, also to the north.

There is also, in this district, a Malik-pūr, in ancient days, the residence of

the provincial governors, which lies in the direct line of route from the Nan-

danah district on the Jhilam to the locality in which Chingiz Khān had

pitched his camp, previously alluded to.

It is not impossible that the name of NANDANAH was, previous to the reign

of Akbar, applied to the eastern half of the hill tract between Khūsh-ābh,

Rāwal-Pindī, and the Jhilam, including the northern part of the Chūl-i-Jalālīf

—so called after Jalāl-ud-Dīn—in the midst of the Sind-Sagar Do-ābah, which

formed, during the rule of the Ghūrīs and the Turkish Slave Kings of Dīhlī,

the north-western province of Hind and Sind. The authority of the last-named

rulers does not seem to have extended to the eastern bank of the Sind, except

on the advance of an army to enforce it, nor northwards over the mountain

tracts; and the Khokhars, along with the Awān-kārs, Kathars, Ghakars, and

other less numerous tribes, and, like them, still inhabiting that strong country

—the ancient Gandhārā of the Hindūs—were not reduced to the subjection of

the rulers of Hindūstān till the time of Akbar.

In the reign of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, his rule, which

extended from Ghaznīn to Lāhor and Dīhlī, did not extend, save very nomi-

nally, over this hilly country; and it was because the Khokhars, and others,

in alliance with them, closed the route between Ghaznīn and Lāhor, as referred

to in note 1, page 481, that he had to march into this very frontier district of

NANDANAH to coerce them. The fortress of that name seems to have been

M m
rous benefits upon the people, and showed such proofs of boldness, ability, expertness, and courage that the men-
for the same object as that for which Sher Shah, Afghan, founded the fort of Ruhtās in after years. Whether it was founded on the site of the fort of NANDANAH it is difficult to say, but is more than probable, for Abū-l-Fażl does not mention it in the list of forts in that sarkār, which may account for the name being less used in later times, but, at a place on the route between Khush-āb and Makhāḍ on the Sind, named at present Pākkā-kot, there are the remains of a very strong fortress of ancient times, which may be those of NANDANAH.

In the tract south of the Makhiālah Mountains or Kōh-i-fūd, as far as the Sind, and to the north among the hills likewise, and beyond the Sind towards Kārmān and Ghaznīn, are the remains of several large towns or cities, and substantial buildings, including the ruins of a considerable city, on the east side of the river, named Kahlūr [؟؟؟؟], which were noticed in the latter part of the last century, built in the strongest and most substantial manner, and still to be seen, and which would be delightfully interesting to explore. The country between the Jhilam and the Sind, in the direction I have been referring to, teems with ruins of this kind, and the remains of numerous great wells, with stone steps to descend into them, named wūn—the present termination of many village names—in the Panjābī dialect, bālū in Hindī, and sār-dābāh in Persian. There are also the extensive ruins of the ancient city of Akarrāh, and some others, in the Banū district, the whole of which give undoubted evidence of this tract south of the Makhiālah or Jūd Mountains having been the chief route between Hind and Ghaznīn by Kārmān and Gardāzī. The more northern route by Jhilam, Rāwal Pindī, Aṭāk, and Peshāwar was seldom, if ever used, for the Khaibar route was not under the control of the Dīhlī kings, nor was it so good and practicable as the other. [I notice that the periodical ravings about the “only two routes” from Afghanistan into India have not yet ceased.] This may be gathered from the account of Sultan Nasir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd’s reign farther on, where he marches his forces as far as the Sūdharāh and then sends Ulugh Khān with his best troops to endeavour to expel the Mughals from this very tract, and also from the account of Ulugh Khān in the following Section. The country on the west of the Sind and on the Kābul river nearest to it, on the decline of the Ghūrī, Khwārazmī, and Mughal powers, was occupied by confederacies of powerful tribes, among whom were Afghāns, and on the east side, in the hills, by the tribes before alluded to, some of whom, the Awan-kārs and a few others, also held lands on the west side near the river Sind, and some even farther west.

It was from this frontier province of NANDANAH that Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn sent an envoy to I-yal-timīsh—who was made away with by him—with whom Chingiz is said by our author to have been at the same time negotiating [!]. I-yal-timīsh had, at this time, ousted his rival Kaba-jah from this portion of the Lāhor territory, and had compelled him to content himself with Multān, Üchchah, and Sind, although, from what subsequently occurred, the hold of either of the rivals upon the frontier district of NANDANAH could not have been very firm or very secure. At page 293, our author says, that I-yal-timīsh, on hearing of Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn’s overthrow by the Mughals on the Sind and retreat towards the frontiers of the Dīhlī kingdom, “deshatched”—in his account of I-yal-timīsh farther on, he says he “marched”—“the troops of Dīhlī towards Lāhor [into the province of Lāhor?] against the Sultan, who thereupon “turned aside, and proceeded towards Sind and Sīwastān.” They were in great terror of the Khwārazmīs’ at Dīhlī; but Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn,
tion thereof will endure upon the pages of time until the judgment day.

This affair of the fortress [of Multān] happened in the year 621 H.; and, one year and a half subsequently, the Malik of Ghūr, through the ravages of the Mughal infidels, joined Malik [SULTĀN] Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Kaḇā-jaḥ; and, in the latter part of the year 623 H., a body of [the tribe of] Khalj, a part of the Khwārazmī forces, acquired supremacy over the district of Manṣūrah, which is [one] of the cities of Siwastān, and their head was Malik Khān, the Khalj.

who had no more than about 10,000 men with him, was unable to face the immense forces of the Dihlī kingdom, and therefore he contented himself, for the time, with the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah and part of Sind. Had he appeared on the scene a few years earlier, before the Turk chiefs of the Muʿizzī and Kaṭḥī dynasties had been overpowered and slaughtered by I-yal-timīsh, he might easily have maintained a permanent footing in India.

From the fact of NANDANAH being contained in the List of I-yal-timīsh’s victories, although no mention even of such an expedition is given under his reign, he may have endeavoured to gain possession of it; and he certainly was advancing towards that part when attacked by the illness which compelled him to return, and which shortly after caused his death. This frontier tract must have been held by the Mughals after taking the fort of NANDANAH, for the very first act of his son Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, when he came to the throne, eleven years after, was to march into the Panjāb and despatch Uluḥ Khān from the banks of the Sūḏhārah with his forces “to ravage the Koh-i-Jūd and the parts about NANDANAH,” and to check the inroads of the Mughals, who, in the preceding reign of Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh, had taken Lāhor and attacked Uchchah.

Who the “Maliks” of Ghiūr were at this period will be found in the account of the Mughal invasion in the last Section. The ravages of the Mughal here referred to have nothing whatever to do with “this invasion” or irruption of Turṭī the Mughal. See Elliot, vol. ii. page 303.

Not even the printed text will admit of this sentence being rendered: “The army of Khalj, consisting of all the forces of Khwarizm,” &c. Elliot, vol. ii. page 303.

The word used is ʿaran of Manṣūrah, and signifies literally depressed or low land; also a portion of land, country, region, tract, &c. With Siwastān the word ʿaran is used, which is the plural of ʿara—a district, province, country, as well as town, city, inhabited place.

It is possible that this may be our author’s version of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn’s operations against Kaḇā-jaḥ; but it is evident, from the fact that neither here nor in his account of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnā, does our author, any more than Ḥasan, Nīzāmī, the author of the Tāj-ul-Maʿṣīr, give a correct account of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn’s subjugation of the Khokhars, and the defeat and reduction of Kaḇā-jaḥ, and occupation of Siwastān, that both writers studiously conceal as much as possible what must have been perfectly well known to both of them. Other Indian writers who came after them, probably considering that contemporary writers might be depended upon, have been led into the
Malik [Sultan] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḵabājah, moved on to repel them, and a battle took place between the two

error of not mentioning those matters, if they were aware of them. The Khwārazmī Sultāns were very obnoxious to the Ghūrīs and their parasites; and, as the Khwārazmī sovereigns were not on good terms with the Khalīfs of that day, our author's bigotry doubtless led him, as well as Ḥasan, Niẓāmī, to conceal all that might tend to the honour and glory of those whom our author and his sect considered no better than heretics, as well as to pander to the vanity of his patrons. See page 609.

Eighteen months after the appearance of the Mughals on the Sind or Indus, and the investment of Multān by Tīrtī or Tūrtās some time in 623 H., a chief, named Malik Ḵān by several writers, and styled "of Hirāt," with his followers and the Khalīj tribe, or rather the remnant of the Khalīj tribe [a portion of this great tribe was settled in Garmsf, and some held lands in Nangrahār, north of the Kārmān district, centuries before the Afghāns came into it. It is included by some in Shānūzān or Sankurān, or rather the latter is included in Nangrahār], the remnant of the Khwārazmī forces in these parts, pressed by the Mughal invaders, arrived on the N.W. frontier of Sind. This person, however, cannot be the great chief referred to at pages 287, 409, &c.—nor does our author say he is, but styles him "the Khalīj," but some other writers endeavour to make out that he is—for, according to Yāfa-ī, Jahān-Kūshā, and other works, he was slain when endeavouring to reach Pārshor or Barshāwar, when the right wing of Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn's small force which he commanded was defeated on the banks of the Indus. He was the son of Jalāl-ud-Dīn's matron uncle, and is styled by different names and titles in different histories. In Aḥfī he is called, Yāmīn Malik, in Jāmī'-ut-Tawārīkh, Amin Malik, and in Rauzat-us-Safā, and Ḥabīb-us-Siyār, Yāmīn-ūl-Mulk. It is apparent, however, that his correct name and titles were Malik Ḵān, Yāmīn-ūl-Mulk. See page 287.

Abū-l-Ghāẓī, Bahādur Ḵān, in his history styles the person last referred to Ḵān Malik, Saʿīd-ud-Dīn, 'Ighrāk, Malik of the hills of Kārmān—the Sankurān or Shānūzān hills. This however is not correct, for that chief, together with others, 'Agām Malik and Nūḥ, the Jān-dār, after their desertion of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, began to fall out and fight among themselves, so that within three months of their desertion all three were killed, and their followers dispersed; and, what with those killed by each other and those slain by Changiz Ḵān's forces, after a short time no traces of them were left.

A Malik Ḵān commanded the left wing of Jalāl-ud-Dīn's force in the battle on the Indus, and his fate is not recorded. He probably is the person meant by our author, and the remains of the deserters from Jalāl-ud-Dīn's army after the victory at Barwān may have been his followers.

Our author does not appear to have known much more about the situation of Mansūrah and the district of which it was the chief place than Abū-l-Faḍl did. It was on the east side of the Indus, and nearly fifty miles from the present main stream, and was situated between forty-five and fifty miles N.E. of Haidar-ābād. The Khalīj fugitives appeared on the N.W. frontier of Sind, of which Siwastān [which gave name to the province] or Sādūsān, the present Sīwān, was the chief city, and included that district and what we at present call Upper Sind. Ḵabājah moved against them and defeated them, and Malik Ḵān is said to have been killed in the engagement. The remaining Khalīj and others of his followers sought the protection of Shams-ud-Dīn, Ḥal-timānī, Ḵabā-
armies, and the Khalj force was overthrown, and the Khan
[Chief] of the Khalj was slain; and Malik [Sultan] Nasir
ud-Din, Kabā-jah, returned again to Uchchah and Multān.

In this same year likewise, the writer of this work, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, reached the city of Uchchah 4 from Khurāsān by way of Ghaznīn and Banānī, by boat, on Tuesday, the 27th of the month Jamādi-ul-Awwal, in the year 624 H. In the month of Zi-Ḥijjah of the same year, the Firūzī College of Uchchah was committed to the charge of the author, together with the office of Kāzi of the forces 8 of

jah's rival and enemy, who took them under his protection, and subsequently marched against Kabā-jah, supported by these fugitives.

Firūzīhah, copying some other modern author, places this event in 615 H., but it is totally incorrect. He says they came from the outskirts of Ghaznīn. The Tabakat-i-Akbarī copies from our author.

Uchchah, also called Uchchah-i-Jalālī, the Europeanized Uch, Ooch, and Ouche, on the Ghārā, consisted— I refer to it as it was a century ago—of seven villages of large size. That in which is the tomb of Sayyīd Jamāl, Bukhārī, is called Uchchah-i-Sharīf, or the Holy; and that in which another Muḥammadan saint—Makhduμ-i-Jahānān-i-Jahān—is buried is styled Uchchah-i-Makhdūm. The part in which the Mughal governors used to dwell is named Uchchah-i-Mughal, and so on, all seven villages having separate names; but they may be considered as portions, although somewhat apart from each other, of one large town. Six or seven kūroh [each kūroh 1000 paces] to the northward of Uchchah, the rivers Ghārā, Chināb, and their tributaries fall into the Sind, Ab-i-Sind, or Sind-Sagar.

The Calcutta text has Mathān or Mithān—, here, but there is no such word in any copy of the text collated. The editor or editors, knowing probably that there was a place somewhere on the Indus called Mīthān-kōt—not Mīthān with long ă—jumped at the conclusion that that must be the place referred to. The name contained in every copy of the text is written generally Banān, but occasionally Banān. See note 1, page 536, and note 8, page 623. The same name occurs in the reign of 1-yal-timīsh, and in many other places; and, in the printed text, the name is, generally, correctly written. In a note, however, it is turned into بانان, but in two of the most modern copies of the text it is turned into بانان and بانان respectively! In Elliot's INDIA the printed text is implicitly followed. There is no doubt whatever that Multān is not meant, and that it refers to some place between Ghaznīn, Karman, and the tract north or west of the Salt Range, perhaps Banū or near it; and further mention of it in the following pages of this work tends to confirm this supposition, but its precise position is difficult to fix. Mīthān-kōt is a long distance below Uchchah, and would have taken our author much out of his way in coming from Ghaznīn to that city.

Compare Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii. page 304, where the Kāzī-ship, or office of Kāzī, is turned into "provocation"! The passage is thus rendered:—"In the month of Zi-l hijjah of the same year the Firozi college at Uch was consigned to the care of the author. On the provocation of the army of 'Alau-d dīn Bahram Shāh, in the month of Rabī‘u-l awwal, A.H. 624, Sultan Sa‘id Shamsu-d dīn encamped in sight of Uch"!
'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh [the son of Sultan Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḳābā-jah]; and, in the month of Rabī‘-ul-Awwal of the same year, 624 H., the august Sultan, Shams-ud-

There are numerous discrepancies among authors with respect to these events; and our author himself, who was present at Ochchah, makes a different statement here from that given by him under the reign of I-yal-timīsh, page 611; and there says these events happened in 625 H.

The Tāj-ul-Ma‘asir, after stating that the fortress of "Ochchah-i-Multān" was "taken,"—i.e. Ochchah of Multān, or belonging to Multān, not "Och Multān,"—and without mentioning that I-yal-timīsh was at Ochchah in person, says that I-yal-timīsh, hearing of Ḳābā-jah’s pride and arrogance, and that he had strongly fortified himself within the fort of Bhakar, despatched his Wazīr against him with a large army. See also Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii. page 242.

Other writers again state that, on the flight of Ḳābā-jah from Ochchah, I-yal-timīsh "left his Wazīr to carry on the investment of Ochchah, and returned himself to Dihlī"; and that "the Wazīr took that place after two months, and then marched against Bhakar."

Another work has that "I-yal-timīsh’s Wazīr marched an army against Ḳābā-jah, and invested him within the walls of Ochchah in 624 H." that "it was taken after two months, on the 22nd of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir," and that, "after it was taken, Ḳābā-jah got on board a boat—not what we call boats in this country, but vessels of considerable size, with flat bottoms—in order to get to Bhakar, and was drowned."

The favourite author of Indian History writers [because translated probably], Firishtah [not his translators], places this event "between 618 H. and 623 H.;" but, as he gives no authority for so doing, and no dates between, there is no knowing what year he means. He places it before the expedition against Rantabhrī, whereas it took place after; and in the lithographed text "revised" by Briggs, and also in the Calcutta text of our author, Bhakar is turned into Thankīr, which is Bhānāh. The Tābākāt-i-Akbār also places these events in 614 H. some ten years too soon; that was Ḳābā-jah’s first defeat by I-yal-timīsh. See page 294.

The real events appear to be as follow. Soon after the Khalj and Khwārazmī fugitives threw themselves on the protection of I-yal-timīsh, he, jealous of the power of Ḳābā-jah, and his overthrow of that remnant of the Khwārazmī forces, moved with an army from Dihlī, by way of Tabarhindah towards Ochchah, whilst the governor of the Lāhor province, with another force, to create a diversion, marched against Multān. I-yal-timīsh reached Ochchah on the 1st of Rabī‘-ul-Awwal, 625 H. [February, 1227 A.D.], having sent on the principal part of his horse, under the Wazīr, the Nigam-ul-Mulk, the Khwājah, Muhammad, son of Abī-Sa‘īd, Junaidī, a few days in advance. He, I-yal-timīsh, sat down before the place and invested it, and detached his Wazīr, with a large force, against the fortress of Bhakar, whither Ḳābā-jah, on becoming aware of I-yal-timīsh’s coming against him, had withdrawn with most of his forces and his treasures. These events happened during the hot season of 625 H., and part of the Wazīr’s force dropped down to Bhakar by water, and part went by land, and had to march through dense jangal.

It is remarkable that neither Lhuri [now often pronounced Rohrī] nor Sakar are mentioned here where we might naturally have expected to have heard something about them, especially of Lhuri, for on the plain immediately north of it the troops of I-yal-timīsh probably encamped. I say probably,
Dunya wa ud-Din [I-yal-timish] pitched his camp in sight because there can be no doubt but that the course of the Indus, at this part, has greatly altered during the lapse of upward of six centuries, and with respect to the fortress of Bhakar in particular, and its connexion with Sakar.

To return to Ùchchah however: some say it held out vigorously for a period of two months and twenty days; but, as it capitulated—some say it was taken—on Tuesday, the 29th—one author says the 22nd—of Jamâdî-ul-Áakhir—this must be incorrect, as, between the two dates given for the arrival of I-yal-timish and the fall of Ùchchah, is a period of exactly four months. Our author, although present, can scarcely be depended upon, for here he says it occurred in 624 H., and under I-yal-timish's reign says 625 H.

The author of the Tarikh-i-Sind, Mir Ma'súm, says that I-yal-timish marched an army against Kabâ-jah in 624 H., but that the Wazir was left to carry out the investment, and I-yal-timish returned to Dihli; and that the place capitulated 28th of Jamâdî-ul-Awwal, 625 H.

On becoming aware of the fall of Ùchchah, Kabâ-jah despatched his son, 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, Bahram Shâh, to treat for an accommodation; but, although he was received with all outward marks of kindness, and matters had been discussed, he was not permitted to depart. As the Wazir was close at hand to invest Bhakar, Kabâ-jah was alarmed; and, with the fate of Taj-ud-Dîn, I-yal-dûz, before his eyes, threw himself on board a boat in order to escape, and was drowned by the sinking of the vessel on the 22nd of Jamâdî-ul-Áakhir, 625 H.

According to the Taj-ul-Ma'asîr, Kaba-jah, having been invested in Bhakar by the Wazir, and the place reduced to extremity, despatched his son to I-yal-timish, with an offering of 100 laks of Dihli-wâls [a coin so called], and 1000 dresses of different kinds; but, being alarmed at the detention of his son, shortly after, died of grief! He left treasures to the amount of 500 laks of Dihli-wâls, 1000 large river boats, jewels and valuable pearls, inlaid vessels of silver and gold, costly garments and other valuable property, the whole of which was appropriated by I-yal-timish. What became of Muḥammad, Bahram Shâh, Kabâ-jah's son, is not known.

The Jami'-ul-Hikâyat, a book of anecdotes, written about this period, and dedicated to the Wazir of I-yal-timish, states—but the statements contained in such works must be received with due caution—that "I-yal-timish sent an army to repress the encroachments of Kabâ-jah," but does not mention Ùchchah expressly, and adds, that "he, being unable to cope with this army, sent his forces to Bhakar in boats. The troops of Dihli reached Bhakar on the 10th of Rabî'-ul-Awwal, 625 H., and preparations for attack were made. It was, however, not made until near seven weeks after, on 1st of Jamâdî-ul-Awwal; but Kabâ-jah, driven from the outer walls, lost the town and had to retire to the fort." This description, however, is not applicable to the island of Bhakar in its present extent. Kabâ-jah is then said to have offered to capitulate, if he were allowed to send away his sons and his treasure. This was refused; and he, placing no faith in his conqueror [rival?], preferring death to surrender and captivity, cast himself from the walls into the water, on the night of Thursday, the 19th of Jamâdî-ul-Áakhir—one month and nineteen days after the first investment of the place.

As a specimen of the random manner in which history is often written, Budâ'ûnî says that the Mughals invested Multân in 611 H., and that, in 624 H., Kabâ-jah was made captive by Sultân Shams-ud-Dîn, "and took the road of the other world."
of Üchchah. Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḳabā-jah, discomfited, embarked on boats [with his troops and followers?] and retired towards Bhakar; and [a body of?] the Sultān’s forces, along with the Wazir of the State, the Niẓām-ul-Mulk, set out in pursuit of him, and invested him within the fortress of Bhakar.

Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, remained encamped before the gate of the fortress of Üchchah for a period of two months and twenty-seven days. On Saturday, the 27th of the month, Jamādi-ul-Awwal, the citadel of Üchchah was given up. When the news of the capture of the place reached Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḳabā-jah, he sent his son, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, to the presence of the Sultān. Subsequent to his reaching the camp of the Sultān, on the 22nd of the month, Jamādi-ul-Ākhir, information arrived of the taking of Bhakar; and that Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḳabā-jah, had drowned himself in the river Sind, and the term of his existence was severed.

The period of his rule in the land of Sind, and Üchchah, and Multān, was twenty-two years.

IV. MALIK BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, TUGHRLU, UL-MU‘IZZĪ-US-SULṬĀNĪ.

Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, was a Malik of excellent disposition, scrupulously impartial, just, kind to the poor and strangers, and adorned with humility. He was one of the slaves of the early part of the reign of the Sultan-i-Ghāzi, Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and the latter had raised him likewise to a high degree of rank; and,

1 The printed text [and Firishtah in his work] turns this name into Thankir, which is Bhānāh, although Bhakar is mentioned correctly immediately after!
2 Impossible, considering that Zi-Hijjah is the last month of the year, and Rabi‘-ul-Awwal the third. He must either mean that he reached Üchchah in 623 H., or that it was surrendered in 625 H. See page 296, where he contradicts both the date of his own arrival at Üchchah and also the year in which it was taken.
3 Compare ELLIOT here, vol. ii. page 304.
4 Tughril, with short u before the final l, is the name of a bird; but the name of this chief, like that of several of the Saljūk rulers, is spelt Tughril. All writers agree that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, was one of the greatest, most amiable, and most accomplished of Sultān Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn’s mamlūks.
THE MU'IZZIAH SULTANS OF HIND. 545

when the fortress of Thangir⁴, [or Thankir], which is [in ?] the territory of Bhiānah, with the Rāe of which warfare was being carried on, was taken, it was made over to Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril's charge, and that part became flourishing and prosperous through his means. From different parts of Hindūstān and Khurasān merchants and men of repute had joined him, and to the whole of them he was in the habit of presenting houses and goods which used to become their property, so that, on this account, they would dwell near him.

As the fortress of Thankir was not suitable as a place of residence for him and his following, Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, founded, in the territory of Bhiānah, the city of Sulṭān-kot, and therein took up his abode, and used continually to despatch [bodies of] cavalry towards Gwaliyīr. When the Sulṭān-i-Ǧhāżī [Mu'izz-ud-Dīn] retired from the foot [of the walls] of the fort of Gwaliyīr, he said to Bahā-

⁴ The discrepancies of authors with regard to the taking of this fortress, and the operations against Gwaliyīr are great.

Our author himself, under the reign of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, states that Kuṯb-ud-Dīn subdued Nahrwālah, Thangīr, Gwaliyīr, and Budā'ūn, and here contradicts himself.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āgir says Thangīr was taken in 592 H., and that Kuṯb-ud-Dīn, having joined the Sulṭān's forces, the royal army moved against Gwaliyīr, and invested it in that same year. Rāe Solānkī Pāl sued for peace, became tributary, and was allowed to retain his possessions.

The Ṭabākāt-i-Akbarī says Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn made the expedition to Kinnauj and Banāras in 589 H., and, leaving Kuṯb-ud-Dīn as his representative in Hind, returned to Ghaznīn. Immediately after, that work states, "Kuṯb-ud-Dīn subdued Thangīr, Gwaliyīr, and Budā'ūn, and then invaded Nahrwālah," but gives no dates; and then adds, without mentioning any other event between, that, "when between Tūs and Sarakhs, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn heard of the death of his brother," which happened in 599 H., according to our author.

The Mīrāt-i-Jahān-Numā also says that Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, after the conquest of Kinnauj and Banāras, left Kuṯb-ud-Dīn, as his deputy in India, and that the latter took Gwaliyīr, Budā'ūn, and other places, but Thangīr is not mentioned, and, in this statement, Haft Īklīm and Budā'ūnī agree.

Alfī, which is the most correct apparently, has, "Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, again entered Hind in 590 H., and took Thangīr [or Thankīr], which was an exceedingly strong place, and then marched against Gwaliyīr," about which more will be mentioned in the following note.

It is amusing to compare Firīghtā here—the text I mean—his account of these events, first, under the reign of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, and, subsequently, in his account of Kuṯb-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, and Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril. They are related in three different ways, and neither in details nor in dates do they agree!
-ud-Din, Tughril: "I must leave this stronghold to thee [to take]." In concurrence with this hint, Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, stationed a body of forces from his own troops at the foot of the fort of Gwāliyūr, and near by, at the distance of one league, he erected a fortification, in order that the Musalmān horsemen might remain within it at night, and, when the day should break, push on to the foot of the fort [walls].

They were occupied in this manner for the period of a year; and, when the defenders of Gwāliyūr became reduced to straits, they sent emissaries to the Sultan-[Malik at that period] i-Karīm, Kūtb-ud-Din, I-bak, and gave up the fort to him; and [consequently] between Malik Bahā-ud-Din,

6 The more recent copies of the text differ somewhat from this; but the oldest and best copies are as above.

7 Neither here, nor under the reign of Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Din, does our author give us the details in consecutive order, his constant failing. The Sultan, having gained possession of Thangīr, moved against Gwāliyūr. Arrived there, he found it would be impossible to take it by a coup de main, and that the only way to reduce it would be by a regular investment, and reduction of the defenders to straits, which would occupy a considerable time. The Rāē of Gwāliyūr, becoming aware of the Sultan's deliberations on the matter, hastened to present himself before him, with rich presents and offerings, and conciliated him, and, for a time, he was enabled to preserve his territory.

EElphinstone, led away by the translations of Firiṣṭah—Briggs's version of which he constantly quotes—and other histories probably, easily, but incorrectly, disposes of these affairs. He says, page 315, "next year, Shahāb u dīn came back to India, took Bīāna, west of Agra, and laid siege [!] to the strong fort of Gwāliūr, in Bundēlkand. It is probable [!] that he was recalled by some attack or alarm in Khorāsān, for he left the conduct of the siege of Gwāliūr to his generals, and returned, without having performed anything of consequence [!], to Ghazni."

At the time of withdrawing from before the fort, the Sultan remarked to Tughril, that, if the fort should be taken [hereafter by his means], it should be made over to him. On this account, after the Sultan's departure, Tughril founded the strong fortress of Sultān-koṭ in the Bhīnāh territory and there took up his residence, and from thence made constant raids into the Gwāliyūr territory; but, finding this of no avail, he founded a strong fortification within two leagues [some say much nearer] of it, and made it his headquarters, and virtually blockaded Gwāliyūr. By making incessant raids upon the country round, he sought to reduce the place to extremity. After about a year, the defenders, being reduced to great straits, sent agents, with presents and rarities, not to Tughril, but to his rival, Malik Kūtb-ud-Din, I-bak, and delivered up the fortress of Gwāliyūr to him. Kūtb-ud-Din's having accepted this offer was the cause of enmity between the two Turk mamlūks, and, had not Tughril been suddenly removed from the scene by the hand of death, hostilities would have arisen between them. The Taṣkīrat-ul-Mulūk says Tughril died whilst the operations were being carried on.
Tughril, and [Malik] Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, there used to exist a little of the leaven of vexation.

Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, was a man of exemplary faith, and, in the district of Bhānāh, numerous proofs of his goodness remained; and he died, and was received into the Almighty's mercy.

After this, an account will likewise be given in this Tabakat of the Khalj Maliks who were [among] those of the reign of the beneficent Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, and accounted among the servants of the Sultan-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, in order that, when the readers [of this work] acquire knowledge respecting all the Maliks and Amirs of Hindūstān, they may utter a benediction upon the author, and pray unto the Omnipotent for the eternal dominion and perpetual sovereignty of Sultan Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abū-l-Muẓaffar-i-Māḥmūd, the son of the Sultan, the Kasim [co-sharer] of the Lord of the Faithful*: and may Almighty God perpetuate the dynasty, Amin!

There is no date given of the surrender of Gwaliyir to Kutb-ud-Din, but, from what our author states about the "leaven of vexation" between Kutb-ud-Din and Tughril, and what other writers say respecting Tughril's determination of appealing to arms on account of Kutb-ud-Din's interference with respect to this fortress, we may conclude that its surrender must have taken place just before or immediately after the death of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, who would probably, had he lived longer, have interfered in this matter out of his great regard for Tughril, his ancient slave. Kutb-ud-Din, after the Sultan's death, would scarcely have kept himself entirely at Lahor out of fear of Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-diiz, with another rival like Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, in his rear, lest they might act in concert.

Firīqṭah mentions these events in his account of Tughril as though they had happened in 607 H. See also note 3, page 516.

Gwaliyir did not long remain in Musalman possession however, and it was recovered shortly after by the Hindūs, during the confusion which arose on the death of Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, and the accession of his adopted son; and, it was not until many years after—in 630 H.—that I-yal-timish could gain possession of it. See under his reign farther on.

* Not so: Malik Kutb-ud-Din was a slave at this time, and continued a slave till after Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's assassination; and the first of the Khalj rulers of Lākhanawāṭi died before Kutb-ud-Din received his manumission.

† See note 4, pages 310, 315, and 388, and note 7. On his later coins the title is Nāṣir-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminīn, and as our author himself states in his account of Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd's reign farther on.
The Tabakat-i-Nasiri.

V. Malik-ul-Ghazi, Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, Khalji, in the territory of Lakhana-wati.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that this Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, belonged to the Khalj [tribe] of Ghur, and the territory of Garmsir; and that he was a man impetuous, enterprising, intrepid, bold, sagacious, and expert. He came from his tribes to the court of Ghazin, and [to] the Audience Hall of dominion of the Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammed-i-Sam. In the Diwan-i-'Ariz

1 In the more recent copies of the text, the word "son of" has been left out, but the iṣāfat—the kasra or i, governing the genitive, even in them is understood, if not written; and thus, with European and some local Indian Muhammadan writers, the father has had the credit for what the son performed. The same error, of omitting the kasra or not understanding the grammatical structure, has caused the ancestor of the Ghirian Sultans, Muhammad, son of Suri, noticed at page 320, to be made Muhammad Suri—one person—instead of two. The father's name it appears was Bakht-yar [i.e. the Fortunate or Lucky], the son of Mahmid.

At page 517, in every copy of the text, our author styles him 'Izz-ud-Din, instead of Ikhtiyar-ud-Din.

2 My oldest copy of the text gives the vowel points as above. There is no doubt but that the correct name is Lakhmana-wati, or Lakshmana-wati from Lakshmana or Lakshmana, the son of Dasarata, and half-brother of Ram Chandra, and wati, the contraction of wati—habitation, dwelling, home—the country of Lakhmana.

3 The most absurd statements have been made with respect to the people named Khalj, the plural of which, according to the 'Arab mode of writing, is Akhlaj. It is also written, but rarely, Khalaj; but some few Muhammadan Indian authors write it Khilj and Khilji, and most European writers have followed them [Dow, however, makes "Chilligies" of them, although Firightah writes the word like other Muhammadan authors]; but, according to the fertile imaginations of Europeans, the Khalj—tribe and Ghalzi—tribe are one people—in fact, some roundly assert that the Khalj are one and the same race as the Afghan tribe of Ghalzi, without there being a shadow of authority for such an assertion in any Muhammadan writer whatever. Because the Khalj happened, in the days of the Ghirian Sultans [and long prior], to have been located in that part of Khurasan now included in what in the present day is styled by the general name of Afghanistain—a comparatively modern designation—such writers, in their innocency, jumped at the conclusion that they were Afghans, and, more than that, that the Khalj and Ghalzi must be one and the same people.

The Khalj are a Turkish tribe, an account of whom will be found in all the histories of that race—the Shajirah-ul-Atrak, Jami'ut-Tawarikh, Introduction to the Zafar Nama, etc.; and a portion of them had settled in Garmsir long prior to the period under discussion, from whence they came into Hindustan and entered the service of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din. See also note 6, page 550.
[department of the Muster-Master], because, in the sight of the head of that office, his outward appearance was humble and unprepossessing, but a small stipend was assigned him. This he rejected, and he left Ghaznin and came into Hindustain. Arrived at the capital, Dihli [there likewise], by reason of his humble condition, not finding favour in the sight of the [head of the] Muster-Master's department, he was also rejected.

Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar then left Dihli and proceeded to Budauin, to the presence of the holder of that fief, the Sipah-Salir [Commander or Leader of troops], Hizabr-ud-Din, Hasan-i-Adib, and he fixed a certain salary for him. The paternal uncle of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar—Muhammad, son of Mahmid—was in [the army of] Ghaznin [and his nephew joined him]; and, when the battle was fought at Tarea'n in which the Golah [Rae Pithora] was defeated, 'Ali, [styled] Nag-awr, entertained Muhammad-i-Mahmid [the uncle] in his own service. When he ['Ali] became feudatory of Nag-awr, he stood up among his brethren [sic], and conferred a kettle-drum and banner upon Muhammad-i-Mahmid, and made over to him the fief of Kashmandi [or Kashtmandi]; and, after his [Muhammad-i-Mahmid's] death, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar became feudatory in his place4.

After some time he proceeded into Awadh to the presence of Malik Husam-ud-Din, Aghul-Bak. As he had acquired a horse and efficient arms, and in several places had shown activity and gallantry, Bhagwat or Bhugwat

---

4 This passage is defective more or less in every copy of the text collated, and most of them are—the most modern copies—hopelessly so. To make sense of it I have been obliged to add a few words, but they are those only which are in italics within brackets. The greater part of what is stated there, however, is corroborated by others; and the only parts which are doubtful are those respecting the nephew joining the uncle, and 'Ali, Nag-awr's "standing up among his brethren." The latter was probably a Khalj.

The three chiefs here mentioned appear to have been quite independent, or very nearly so, of Malik Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak's authority; and this, seemingly, was why Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, entered their service. The very fact of these Khalj rulers being put in the same Section with Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, Naisir-ud-Din, Kabah-jah, and Bahau-ud-Din, Tughril, and numbered consecutively, shows that Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, was not an officer of Kutb-ud-Din, but only partially dependent on him as the Sultans's representative at Dihli; and, in the same manner, his successors were to all intents independent until the last was overcome by I-yal-timish.
550 - THE TABAKAT-I-NĀSIRI.

[S] and Bhūlī or Bhiwali [S] were conferred upon him in fief; and, being a man of valour and intrepidity, he was in the habit of making incursions into the territory of Muner and Bihār, and used to obtain booty

These names are thus written in the oldest copies and are confirmed by the best of the modern copies of the text, and, as they are important, I give the original Persian. These fiefs were situated between the Ganges and the Karmah-nasah, to the eastward of and adjoining Chūnār-gāh, and two parganas still bear the same names. The town of Bhūlī [anglicized Bhoelee] is still the chief town of the latter, but there is a difficulty with respect to the name of the principal place of the Bhagwat or Bhugwat parganah in those days, and it is most probable that the hill and fortress of Chūnār-gāh was included in it. See Indian Atlas, sheet 88. That the places mentioned in the text were in the part named is singularly corroborated by what others say were the names of Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār's fiefs, mentioned in the following note; for the places referred to are evidently the modern anglicized Putetâh and Kuntîl [Kuntihâ], the former being only two miles north and nine west, and the latter one mile north; and twenty-eight miles west of Bhūlī. All these three places moreover are immediately west of the Karmah-nasah, which river was the boundary of the Bihār territory. In the printed text these places are turned into Sâhlat [S] or Sahlast [S] and Sahīlī [S] or Sīhwâlī [S]—in fact, anything but what is correct. See Elliot: India, vol. ii., page 305.

There is considerable difference between our author and some other writers here, and also in other places; and, as I proceed I will give a short abstract of what they say.

Ikhṭîyâr-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār—as I shall in future style him—that is son of Bakht-yār, the Khalj, who was never a slave [the "History of India" written for the Calcutta University notwithstanding], was one of the headmen of the Khalj tribe dwelling in and on the south-west border of Ghīr. He was endowed with great valour, wisdom, and liberality, was of robust and powerful form, with immensely long arms—as described by our author. During the reign of Sultan Muḥizz-ud-Dīn he came to Ghānim in search of service during those stirring times, and, subsequently, not obtaining employment such as he desired, he came into Hind, and proceeded to Lāhor. There he did not get on with Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, it is said, so he proceeded farther eastward, and joined the Malik-ul-Muʿazzam [the great Malik], Ḥusain-ud-Dīn, Ughul-Bak [see note 2, page 516, para. 11], who held in fief a considerable tract of country in the Do-āb, and on the east side of the river Gang, independent of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn's authority. According to another author, Sultan Muḥizz-ud-Dīn conferred on Ughul-Bak the fortress of Kol and its dependencies, which is in the Do-āb. Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār was taken into that Malik's service, and, soon after, was despatched with some forces into Awadh [Compare Thomas, "PATHAN KINGS OF DEHLI," page 110, who makes him "Sipahsâlr of Oude" and note 7, page 558, farther on]; and, on several occasions, he gave proofs of his valour and prowess against his Hindī opponents.

After this, Ḥusain-ud-Dīn, Ughul-Bak, conferred upon him the fiefs of Putitâh—[Lat. 25°, Long. 82° 54'], and Kuntîlāh—[Lat. 25° 7', Long. 82° 35'], the Kuntîlī of the Indian Atlas.

[From a similarity in the names, some comparatively modern Muḥammadan
from it, until he acquired ample resources in the shape of horses, arms, and men; and the fame of his alertness and bravery, and the booty [he had acquired], became noised abroad. Bodies of Akhlaj, from different parts of Hindustan, turned their faces towards him; and his reputation reached Sultan [Malik] Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, who despatched a robe of distinction to him, and showed him honour. Having been honoured with such notice and favour, he led a force towards Bihār, and ravaged that territory.

He used to carry his depredations into those parts and that country until he organized an attack upon the fortified city of Bihār. Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that he advanced to the gateway of the fortress of Bihār.

Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yar now began to carry his depredations into Bihār and Muner as well as into Awadh, on his own account, and acquired great booty. Hearing of his valour and prowess, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, sent him [from Lahor according to Buda'ini] a dress of honour of great value, for, at this period, Husim-ud-Dīn, Ughil-Bak, is no more mentioned.

It will be seen from these statements, as well as from the statement of our author, that Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yar was never Sipah-Sālar in Awadh. The mistake appears to have arisen from his having entered the service of Husam-ud-Dīn, Ughul-Bak, who was a Sipah-Sālar and held the fief of Awadh, or by confounding Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yar’s name with that of the Sipah-Sālar, Hizabar-ud-Dīn, mentioned above by our author. See Thomas: “PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLĪ,” page 110.

This favour, on the part of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, as well as Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yar’s valour and generosity becoming noised abroad, bodies of Akhlaj from the Sultan’s forces in Hindustan from all parts began to flock around him, and he became very powerful. He subdued the territory of Bihār, after making great slaughter among the infidels of that part, and booty to a vast amount fell into his hands. After these successes he presented himself before Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, who had, at that time, taken up his residence at Dihlī, but he was not “Sultān” Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, for his master was still alive and he himself was still a slave.
with two hundred horsemen in defensive armour, and suddenly attacked the place. There were two brothers of Farghānah, men of learning, one Nizām-ud-Dīn, the other Śamsām-ud-Dīn [by name], in the service of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār; and the author of this book met with Śam-
sām-ud-Dīn at Lakhaṇawati in the year 641 H., and this account is from him. These two wise brothers were soldiers among that band of holy warriors when they reached the gateway of the fortress and began the attack, at which time Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, by the force of his intrepidity, threw himself into the postern of the gateway of the place, and they captured the fortress, and acquired great booty. The greater number of the inhabitants of that place were Brahmans, and the whole of those Brahmans had their heads shaven; and they were all slain. There were a great number of books there; and, when all these books came under the observation of the Musalmāns, they summoned a number of Hindūs that they might give them information respecting the import of those books; but the whole of the Hindūs had been killed. On becoming acquainted [with the contents of those books], it was found that the whole of that fortress and city was a college, and in the Hindū tongue, they call a college [मदर्स] Bihār.

When that victory was effected, Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār returned with great booty, and came to the presence of the beneficent Sultān, Ḥuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and received great honour and distinction. A party of Amīrs at the capital [Dihlī], through the noising abroad of Muḥam-

8 A few modern copies say, "he, Śamām-ud-Dīn, discovered the author," &c.
9 Jān-bāz, which does not mean "active."
1 Books on the religion of the Hindūs.
2 The Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh, which quotes our author verbatim on most occasions, says they sent for a number of Hindūs, who made them acquainted with the contents of the books, and in them it was written that that fortress and city was called a college, but, correctly, a Buddhist monastery.
3 In Persian words derived or borrowed from the Sanskrit the letter ५ is often substituted for Nagārī ॐ—ॐ—thus, Bihār or Wihār, but there is no e in the word: hence Behār is impossible.
4 He was not then Sultān, and his master, Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, was still alive, and was assassinated thirteen years afterwards, and, some time even after that event, Malik Ḥuṭb-ud-Dīn received his manumission and the title of Sultān from the nephew of Muʿizz-ud-Dīn. Our author does not mean that Ḥuṭb-ud-Dīn was Sultān at that very time. He was not Sultān, in fact, during the lifetime of Muḥammad-i-Bakḥt-yar.
After having gained possession of Bihār, Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, taking along with him valuable presents, part of the spoils, proceeded to wait upon Malik Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, at this time the representative of Sūltān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn in Hindūstān. By the generality of authors he is said, more probably, to have gone to Dihi for the purpose; but, as previously stated in next to last para. of note 3, page 516, it was whilst Kūṭb-ud-Dīn was at Mahobah, in the Kālbī territory, in 599 H.—which should be 589 H.—after taking Kālinjar, that Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār presented himself, for it was in 589 H. that he moved from Bihār to invade Lakhāṇawatī. See note 7, page 558. He was received with such distinction, and so many marks of favour were shown him, that the chiefs and ministers of Kūṭb-ud-Dīn's vice-regal court became filled with envy and hatred of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, and they began to calumniate him to Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, and to report expressions of a scornful nature towards himself on the part of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār which he had never used. It happened, upon the occasion of Kūṭb-ud-Dīn's holding a public audience in the Kaṣr-i-Safed [White Castle], that a rampant elephant was brought forward for inspection, and these envious persons began saying, in a disdainful and contemptuous manner, that there was no one who would venture to stand before that elephant, the like of which was not to be found in Hind. Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, in whose mind they had succeeded in creating an unfriendly feeling towards Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, proposed to him an encounter with the elephant. He agreed at once, and, with the mace he held in his hand, dealt it one blow, but that blow was so effectual that the elephant made off.

This anecdote is somewhat differently related by another writer, who says that these malignants stated to Kūṭb-ud-Dīn that Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār was desirous of encountering an elephant, and that Kūṭb-ud-Dīn had a white one, which was rampant, and so violent that the drivers were afraid of it, and which he directed should be brought on the course for Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār to encounter. He approached it near enough to deal it such a blow on the trunk with his mace as at once put it to flight.

After his performing this feat, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn distinguished him with still greater favour. He conferred upon him a special dress of honour of great value and a large sum of money; and Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, having donned the robe, added money of his own to Kūṭb-ud-Dīn's gift, and distributed the whole among those present, and left the assembly with increased renown and honour. Kūṭb-ud-Dīn further distinguished him by giving him a standard and other insignia, and confirmed him, on the part of his master, the Sūltān, in the government of the tracts he had subdued, and such further conquests as he might make in the Lakhāṇawatī territory; and Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār returned to Bihār.

Here is a rich specimen of the history taught at present, at least, in the University of Calcutta, as it is from the "History of India" by Mr. Marshman:—"Kootub lost no time in despatching one of his slaves, Bukhtiyar Ghiyaf, who had risen to command, by his native genius, to conquer Behar. The capital was sacked, and the country subdued, and the army returned within two years to Delhi, bending beneath the weight of plunder. An attempt was soon after made to supplant Bukhtiyar in his master's favour, but it was defeated by the prowess he exhibited in a single combat with a Lion, which his enemies at court had forced on him. This event established him still more firmly in the confidence of Kootub, who sent him, in 1203, to reduce Bengal."

Now, in the whole of this statement, there is not one atom of truth, and in no author, Muḥammadan or Hindū, will such a statement be found.
he received, and the gifts bestowed upon him by Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, became envious of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yär, and, at a convivial banquet, they treated him in a reproachful and supercilious manner, and were deriding him and uttering inuendoes; and matters reached such a pitch that he was directed to combat with an elephant at the Kasr-i-Safed [White Castle]. With one blow, which he dealt the elephant on the trunk with his mace, the elephant fled discomfited.

When Muhammad-i-Bakht-yär gained that distinction, Sultan Kutb-ud-Din ordered him a rich robe of honour from his own special wardrobe, and conferred considerable presents upon him. The Sultan [likewise] commanded the Amirs to make him presents, and he received such a number of gifts as could not be contained within the limits of writing. Muhammad-i-Bakht-yär moreover, in that same assembly, dispersed the whole of those presents and bestowed them upon the people; and, with the special imperial honorary robe, he departed, and set out towards Bihar.

Fear of him operated exceedingly in the hearts of the unbelievers of the different parts of the territories of Lakhanaawi and Bihar, and the countries of Bang and Kamrud. Trustworthy persons have related after this manner, that the fame of the intrepidity, gallantry, and victories of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yär had reached Rae Lakhmaniah, whose seat of government was the city of Nudiah, and who was a very great Rae, and had been on the throne for a period of eighty years.

At this place, an ANECDOTE respecting the circumstances of that Rae, which had been heard [by the writer], is here recorded; and it is this, that, when his father was

---

6 See Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 306. Gurs signifies a mace, not a “battle-axe.” In some modern copies of the text the words “fled discomfited” are left out, and we have instead “Muhammad-i-Bakht-yär pursued the elephant:” no more.

7 One of the robes probably which Kutb-ud-Din had himself received from his master, hence it is called a “Sultani” robe.

8 His intrepidity and valour.

9 Another writer styles him Rae Lakhmiah, intended, no doubt, for the Sanskrit राय लक्ष्मी, son of Rae Lakhman. See list of kings of Bangalah in Abū-l-Fażl’s A’in-i-Akbarī, and Dr. Blochmann’s translation, and note 9, page 559.
removed from this world, Rāe Lakhmaniah was in his mother's womb. The crown was placed on the belly of his mother, and all girded up their loins in her service. The Rāes of Hind used to hold their family in great importance, and were wont to consider them in the position of Khalifah¹ by descent.

When the birth of Lakhmaniah drew near, and the signs of giving birth became manifest to his mother, she assembled the astrologers together, and they made observation whether the horoscope was auspicious. With one accord they represented: "If this child should be born at this hour, it will be unfortunate exceedingly, and will never attain unto sovereignty; but, if it should be born two hours subsequent to this time, it will reign for eighty years." When his mother heard this conclusion from the astrologers, she commanded that she should be suspended with her head downwards, with her two legs bound together; and the astrologers were placed in order that they might continue to observe the horoscope. When the time came, they agreed that the [auspicious] hour of birth was now arrived. She directed that she should be taken down, and forthwith Lakhmaniah was born². On reaching the ground, his mother, unable any longer to endure the agony of labour, died, and Lakhmaniah was placed upon the throne ³.

He reigned for a period of eighty years, and trustworthy persons have related to this effect, that, little or much, never did any tyranny proceed from his hand; and whosoever preferred a request to him for anything, other than one lak [one hundred thousand] he did not bestow, after the manner of the beneficent Sultan, Ḥutm-ud-Din, the Hātim of his time. It has been narrated on this wise, that,

¹ The words "Khalifah by descent" [عیراص خلفه], here used by our author, and Peshwā, by others, plainly indicate that his family was looked upon in the light of heads or supreme leaders in spiritual, not temporal matters, and Rāe Lakhmaniah, not as a "powerful monarch" and "lord paramount," for power of that kind he evidently did not possess. Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 307.

² There is not a word about "Brahmans" in the best copies of the text.

³ Here is a specimen of the difference in idiom in the text, which I have before referred to. The oldest set of MSS. have لکھنیہ توادل دند and the more modern لکھنیہ ہا وادل آمد

⁴ His nobles, or rather the chief men of his kingdom—his late father's ministers probably—carried on the government until such time as Rāe Lakhmaniah was able to assume the direction of affairs.
as in that country, the kaurî [shell] is current in place of silver ⁶, the least gift he used to bestow was a lak of kaurîs. The Almighty mitigate his punishment [in hell]!

I now return to the history of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār. When he returned from the presence of Sultan Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, and subdued Bihār⁸, his fame had reached the hearing of Rāē Lakhmaniah, and the different parts of his dominions likewise. A number of astrologers, wise men, and counsellors of his kingdom presented themselves before the Rāē, and represented, saying: "In our books of the ancient Brāhmans they have foretold that this country will fall into the hands of the Turks⁷, and the time of its fulfilment has drawn near. The Turks have subjugated Bihār⁹, and next year they will surely come into this country. It is expedient for us that the Rāē should consent⁸ so that he, along with the whole people, should be removed from the country in order that we may be safe from the molestation of the Turks.”

The Rāē replied, saying: “Is there any token given in your books with respect to this man who is to subdue our country?” They replied: “The indication of him is this, that, when he stands upright on his two feet, and lets down his two hands, his hands will reach beyond the point of his knees in such wise that the fingers will touch the calves of his legs.” The Rāē answered: “It is advisable that

---

⁵ In every copy of the text collated, with the exception of two, which have jīhāl, the word silver is used. In 1845 the rūpī was equivalent to 6500 kaurîs, and a lak would be equal to a fraction over fifteen rūps. In ancient times they may have been estimated at a higher rate, but a lak of kaurîs could not have been a very desirable present to obtain, or a very convenient one. See note ², page 583.

⁶ Our author must mean when Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār returned from the presence of Malik Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, whither he had gone after he subdued Bihār, because he did not go to Kūṭb-ud-Dīn before, even by his own account. All the copies of the text, however, are as above.

⁷ But their predictions did not go so far as to foretell that the Calcutta University “History of India” would turn the Turks into Ghalz Afghāns.

⁸ “Have this year subjugated Bihār, and next year will come into this country,” according to the Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh.

⁹ Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 308, where this sentence is translated: "It was therefore advisable that the Rāē should make peace with them”! مواقف نودون does not signify to make peace with the Turks, but to consent, approve, agree to, judge expedient, &c., their proposal.

¹ Lit. “legs,” i.e. the leg in its true sense, the part below the knee. In ELLIOT the words ساق يائى have been translated “shins.”
trustworthy persons should be despatched in order that they may, in a proper manner, investigate those peculiar characteristics." In accordance with the Rāe's command, they sent trustworthy persons, and they made investigation respecting this matter, and, in the external form and figure of Muḥammad-i-Baḵt-yār, those characteristics they found.

When they became assured of these peculiarities, most of the Brāhmans and inhabitants of that place left, and retired into the province of Sankanāt, the cities and towns of Bang, and towards Kāmrūd; but to begin to abandon his country was not agreeable to Rāe Lakhmanīah. The following year after that, Muḥammad-i-Baḵt-yār caused a force to be prepared, pressed on from Bihār, and suddenly appeared before the city of Nūdía, in such wise that no more than eighteen horsemen could keep up with him, and the other troops followed after him. On reaching the gate of the city, Muḥammad-i-Baḵt-yār did not molest any one, and proceeded onwards steadily and sedately, in such manner that the people of the place imagined that mayhap his party were merchants and had brought horses for sale, and did not imagine that it was Muḥammad-i-Baḵt-yār, until he reached the entrance to the palace of Rāe Lakhmanīah, when he drew his sword, and commenced an onslaught on the unbelievers.

At this time Rāe Lakhmanīah was seated at the head of his table, and dishes of gold and silver, full of victuals, were placed according to his accustomed routine, when a cry arose from the gateway of the Rāe's palace and the interior of the city. By the time he became certain what

---

2 All but the two oldest copies have Sāhān [from साधु], which signifies merchants, shopkeepers, and the like—inoffensive people, not "chiefs."

3 In the best and oldest copies of the text, Sankanāt—نکنات—is plainly written, with the exception of two, which have Saknāt—سکانات. The Zubdatut-Tawāfiḳh also has Saknāt; but other works, including the Taḥkāt-i-Ākbarī and the Taḡkarat-ul-Mulūk, say Jagnāth. The part meant by our author more probably refers to a province of eastern Bang.

4 The more modern copies of the text have نودبار—nūdān, one even has نوده—nūdīn instead of نودی—nūdīn and نودی—nūdīn

5 The text varies in different copies here. It appears from the above remark, that traders were in the habit of bringing horses from Bihār into the Rāe's territory, and such is stated by some other more modern writers.

6 Not "at dinner" necessarily: it might have been the morning meal.
was the state of affairs, Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār had dashed forwards through the gateway into the palace, and had put several persons to the sword. The Rāe fled bare-footed by the back part of his palace; and the whole of his treasures, his wives, and [other] females, his domestics and servants, his particular attendants, were taken, and the Musalmāns captured a number of elephants, and such a vast amount of booty fell to their lot, as cannot be recorded. When the whole of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār’s army arrived, and the city and round about had been taken possession of, he there took up his quarters; and Rāe Lakhmanāṁah got away towards Sankanāt and Bang, and there the period of his reign shortly afterwards came to a termination. His descendants, up to this time, are rulers in the country of Bang

7 The Rāe, on hearing of the arrival of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, was dumbfounded. He fled alone and unattended, and succeeded in reaching a boat, and escaped. His boundless treasures, the accumulations of eighty years, fell into the possession of the Musalmāns; and a large portion of them, the greatest rarities, were transmitted to Malik Kūṭh-ud-Dīn, for the Sultān.

According to Munshi Shīm Parshād, who wrote an account of Gaur for Major William Franklin [In referring to this work I shall call it the Gaur MS.], Rāe Lakhmanāṁah ruled from 510 to 590 H., which is correct. It was in the early part of the last-mentioned year that Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār took Nūdīlah.

His rule extended over a period of twelve years, and he was assassinated in the middle of the year 602 H.

Mr. Thomas, however, in his “PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLI,” page 110, says Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, whom he erroneously makes “Sīpāh sālār” of Awadh, “in A.H. 599, pushed his forces southward, and expelled, with but little effort, the ancient Hindu dynasty of Nūdīlah.” Here is an error of ten years: Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār moved from Bihār in 589 H., and in the following year took Nūdīlah by surprise. Were 599 H. correct, his sway over Lakhanawāţ would have been less than three years, as he was assassinated about the middle of 602 H. See note 2, page 516, para. next to last, and note 9, page 572.

8 Here, as previously, some copies have Saknāt, and the other authors, previously referred to, Jagnāţh and Kāmruţ.

9 In some copies, the period of his life, &c.

1 The Rājāh, it is said, escaped in a boat to Bikrām-pūr or Wīrām-pūr. We shall also find that Sunārgān, near Bikrām-pūr, continued to be a place of refuge for those who were discontented at Gaur, and was not finally reduced for a long time after the overthrow of Rāe Lakhmanāṁah, who had a son, Madhob Sen, who had a son, Sū Sen, who by Hindūs is considered the last ruler. Bikrām-pūr is about eight miles south-east, from Dhākāh, and is said to have been the principal residence of Balāl Sen, the predecessor of Adisur, who preceded Lakhman Sen, the predecessor of our author’s Lakhmanāṁah, but he sometimes resided at Gaur, which did not become the
After Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar possessed himself of that territory [Rae Lakhmaniah's], he left the city of Nudiah in desolation, and the place which is [now] Lakhanawaṭī he made the seat of government. He brought the different parts of that territory under his sway, and instituted therein, in every part, the reading of the Khutbah, and the coining of money; and, through his praiseworthy endea-
capital of Bangālah until immediately before the Muhammadan conquest. Nudiah was called Nobo-dwp. See "Account of Zila Dinajpur," Calcutta: 1832.

Wilford says the conquest of Bengal took place in 1207 A.D., which is equivalent to 603-604 H., the latter year having commenced 27th July, 1207 A.D.; and according to this theory Bengal was conquered a year or more after its conqueror's death! Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was assassinated in Sha'bān 602 H. = March 1206 A.D., in which same year Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar died or was assassinated, and which, from 590 H. = 1194 A.D., is just twelve years.

The name of Rāe Lakhmaniah's capital was spelt Nudiah until the time of Aurangzeb, when words ending in -hā-i-mukhtaft—were ordered to be written with — as Nudīā.

Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar destroyed Nudiah, and, leaving it in desolation, passed onwards [Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣaḥāfa says "he passed beyond the territory of the Rāe"], and, in place of that capital, founded another city [or town] at the place, according to the Tabaḵāt-i-Akbarī, where Lakhanawati has been [تبت تابکات], and which, at this time [reign of Akbar], they call Gaur. The Gaur MS. says he made the mouza’ [place, village, district] of Lakhanawati, his capital, now twelve miles from the Gang. The Mīrāt-i-Jahān-Nūmā says “he founded a city as his capital in the territory of Lakhanawati,” which signifies Gaur of Bangālah, “at the place where Lakhanawati was.” Budā�īnī says Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar “destroyed the idol temples of the infidels and erected masjids and other buildings, and built a capital in his own name [!] which is now called Gaur.” Gaur or Gauḍah was the name of a division of the present country or tract styled Bangālah as well as of its ancient capital, and its inhabitants were Gauriyyā or Gauḍhiyyā. According to Abū-l-Faḍl, the fort of Gauḍ was founded by Balāl Sen, the second of the Sen dynasty, one of eight [in some copies, seven] kings who reigned 106 years, out of which Balāl Sen reigned fifty years. According to the same author, the last of this dynasty was Rājā [or ] It would seem, from this, that the most ancient name of the city was Gaur, afterwards changed to Lakhanawati, and subsequently styled Gauḍ again. The emperor Humāyūn named it Bakht-ābād. Bangālah itself is sometimes styled Jannat-ul-Bilād. See note 6, page 584.

There is not a word in the text about causing “his name to be read in the Khutbah and struck on the coins.” See note 9, page 572. According to the Zubklat-uṭ-Tawārīkhe he established “the Khutbah and money of İslām,” and its author copies our author almost verbatim. Other writers, on the contrary, state that, having brought all the surrounding territory under his sway after the capture of Nudiah, he assumed a canopy of state, read the Khutbah for himself, and issued coin in his own name, which is not correct. He would naturally have issued coin in the name of the Sultān, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-
vours, and those of his Amirs, masjids, colleges, and monasteries [for Darweshes], were founded in those parts. Of the booty and wealth [taken] he despatched a large portion to the presence of Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak.

After some years had passed away, and he had ascertained the state of the different mountain tracts of Turkistan and Tibbat to the eastward of Lakhanawati, the ambition of seizing the country of Turkistan and Tibbat began to torment his brain; and he had an army got ready, and about 10,000 horse were organized. In the different parts of those mountains which lie between Tibbat and the country of Lakhanawati are three races of people, one called the Künch, the second the Mej [Meg], and the third the Tiharī; and all have Turk countenances. They have a different idiom too, between the language of Hind and Turk. One of the chiefs of the tribes of Künch and Mej, whom they were wont to call 'Alī, the Mej, fell into the hands of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, the Khalj, and, at his hand also, the former adopted the Muḥammadan faith.

mad-i-Sām, to whom he appears to have been most loyal [see page 571]. He had no occasion whatever to issue money in the name of Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, who was still a slave; and Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār only died the same year in which Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was himself assassinated. See Thomas: "PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLI," page 110, and note 1, and Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii, page 309.

This expedition must have been undertaken towards the close of the year 601 H. After Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār had acquired great power and grandeur, he turned his thoughts to the acquirement of further territory in Tibbat and Turkistan without probably being aware of the distance to be traversed, and the difficulties to be surmounted. He set out with a force of about 12,000 horse according to the generality of accounts, but the Raqat-ug-Safa has "10,000 horse, and 30,000 foot!" which is certainly incorrect.

Tibbat was a well-known name in our author's time even, and yet Hamilton in his "Description of Hindostan," vol. ii, page 566, makes the rash statement that it does not appear that the name 7iē¢ is anywhere in general use to designate the province according to the European acceptation of the word! This may be true as to Tibet, for the country here referred to is written and called Tibbat.

The "Tharoo" [Tiharī] caste, according to Buchanan, composes the greatest portion of the population that are dwellers in the plain of "Saptari," in Makwānpir adjoining the Mūrang on the north-west; and the inhabitants of the Mūrang to the east of Bījaipūr [Wijayāpūr] are chiefly Konaḥ, and on the lower hills are many of the Megh, Mej, or Mech tribe.

Our author's ideas of east and west are rather obscure, as may be noticed at page 431. In this instance he means to the north and north-east.

In some copies the nasal n is left out —Küch.

In some of the more modern copies of the text, "Hind and Tibbat."
He agreed to conduct Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār into those hills, and act as guide; and he brought the latter to a place where there is a city, the name of which is Burdhan [koṭ].* They relate, after this manner, that, in ancient times, Shāh Gūštāsib* returned from the country of Chīn, and came towards Kāmrūd, and, by that route, got into Hindūstān, and founded that city [Burdhan-koṭ]. A river flows in front of that place, of vast magnitude, the name of which is Beg-mati¹; and, when it enters the country of Hindūstān, they style it, in the Hindū dialect, Samund ² [ocean]; and, in magnitude, breadth, and depth, it is three times more than the river Gang.

To the banks of this river Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār came; and 'Alī, the Mej, joined the army of Islām; and, for a period of ten days, he took the army up the river among the mountains, until he brought it to a place where, from remote times, they had built a bridge of hewn stone, and consisting of upwards of twenty arches*. After the army

* The oldest and best copies generally have as above, but two add koṭ, and one copy gives the vowel points. The Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh also has Burdhan twice. The other copies collated have Murdhan and Murdhan-koṭ, and the printed text, in a note, has Durdhan [Wurdhan?] as well as Burdhan.

¹ Some copies have Gūštāsib and some Garghasib, and one has Gūdarz. In the Īrānī records Garghasib, son of Zau, is not mentioned as having had aught to do with Hind or Chīn. The wars of Gūštāsib with Arjāsib, son of Afrāsīyāb, King of Tūrān, are narrated, but there is no mention of Gūštāsib's going into Tūrān or Chīn; but his son, Isfandiyār, according to the tradition, reduced the sovereign of Hind to submission, and also invaded Chīn. In the account of the reign of Kāi-Kūshrau, Gūdarz, with Rustam and Gīw, invaded Turkistān to revenge a previous defeat sustained from Afrāsīyāb who was aided on this occasion by the troops of Suklāb and Chīn, and Shankal, sovereign of Hind, was slain by the hand of Rustam. Our author, in another place, states that Gūštāsib, who had gone into Chīn by that route, returned into Hind by way of the city of Kāmrūd, and that up to the period of the invasion of Kāmrūd by Ikhṭīyār-ud-Dīn, Yūz-Bak-i-Tughrīl Khān, governor of Lakhānawatī—some years after Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār's expedition—twelve hundred "hoards" of treasure, all still sealed as when left there by Gūštāsib, fell into the hands of the Musalmāns!

² The name of this river in the best and oldest copies is as above, but some others, the next best copies, have Beg-mati, Bak-mati, or Bag-mati, and others have Bang-mati, Mag-mati, and Nag-mati, or Nag-mati. Bag-mati is not an uncommon name for a river, and is applied to more than one. The river of Nīpāl, which lower down is called the Grandhak, is called Bag-mati. One of the best copies of the text has "when it enters the ocean or sea [koṭ] of Hindūstān," &c.

* The reader cannot fail to notice that considerable discrepancy exists here in our author's statements respecting this river and bridge. From what he
THE TABAKAT-I-NASIRI.

of Islam passed over that bridge, he [Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar] installed there, at the head of the bridge, two of his

says about the size we are led to conclude that this river, Beg-mati or Bek-mati, must be the Brahmana-putr; but what part of it is the question to be solved. When he adds that it is more than three times broader and deeper than the Gang—and, of course, equally liable to inundation—the idea of its being spanned by a stone bridge of above twenty [i.e. between twenty and twenty-five] arches, shows that the narrator, or his informant, must have grossly exaggerated. We may suppose our author's idea of the size of the Gang was derived from what he had seen of that river on his journey from Dihli to Lakhanawatfi; but, if we only take its average breadth at Banaras during the height of the hot season, viz. 1500 feet, our author's river will be a mile or more in breadth; and, if we believe that this bridge consisted of even twenty-five arches, each of them would be above seventy yards in the span. Is this at all probable?

At page 561, our author says 'Ali, the Mej, brought them to a place where stood the town of Burdhan or Aburdhan-kot, in front of which flows the mighty river Beg-mati, which, on entering Hindustan, they call the Samund, but the great bridge is not mentioned in connexion with it. He then says that 'Ali, the Mej, joined the Musalmun forces on the banks of this river, and then conducted them "up the river for a period of ten days" [some 200 miles or more, even at the low computation of twenty miles a day for cavalry without incumbrance, would have brought them near to the Sannp or upper part of the Brahmana-putr in Tibbat] and, then, not before, they reached this great bridge, but no river is mentioned. At page 565, it is said that after passing this great river the forces pushed on for a further period of fifteen days [200 or 250 miles, even allowing for the extra difficulty of the country] when the open country of Tibbat was reached. Here it would appear that 'Ali, the Mej, joined them, beyond the territory of the Rajah of Kamrud, and the latter's message to Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, confirms it; but, farther on [page 569], this great bridge is said to be in [but probably adjoining] the Kamrud territory, or words to that effect.

The boundaries of Kamrud are very loosely described by Musalmun authors, and they apply the name to all the country between the northern frontiers of Muhammadan Bangal and the hills of Bhutan, its southern boundary being where the Lakhiyah river separates from the Brahmana-putr.

From the distinct mention of Tibbat and Turkistan, by others as well as by our author, together with other observations made by him, it is evident that Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar—and his forces—marched from Dik-kot, or Dib-kot, in Dinaj-pur district, the most important post on the northern frontier of his territory, keeping the country of the Rajah of Kamrud on his right hand, and proceeding along the bank of the river Tistah, through Sikhim, the tracts inhabited by the Kunch, Mej, and Tharuri, to Burdhan-kot. They were not in the territory of the Rajah of Kamrud, as his message shows; yet, when the retreat is mentioned, the Musalmuns were, invested in the idol-temple by his people, but no reference is made to this temple's being near the bridge in the account of their advance. Pushing onwards from Burdhan-kot, which may have been situated on a river, on the tenth day the Musalmuns reached the bank of the great river where was the bridge of stone "of above twenty arches." If the town of Burdhan or Aburdhan-kot was situated on the farther side of the great bridge, it is strange Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar,
own Amîrs, one a Turk slave, and the other a Khalj, with troops, in order to guard it until his return. Then Muḥam-
did not occupy it, when he left a detachment behind to guard the bridge, and still more strange that, when he, on his retreat, reached the bridge and found two arches broken, he did not occupy that town, and compel its inhabitants to repair it or furnish him with all he required, and the means of crossing. If its gates had been closed against him, we can easily imagine why he would have had to take shelter in the great idol-temple, or that even with the town open to him, why he would prefer a strong post such as this was; but the town is never again mentioned by our author, although we might suppose this the place for obtaining boats or wood and other materials for rafts, and people to construct them. If the distance between this river and Dīw-koṭ was only ten days' journey, it was not impossible to have obtained aid from thence. All the Muḥammadan histories with which I am acquainted state that the Musalmāns entered Tībat. In my humble opinion, therefore, this great river here referred to is no other than the Tīstah, which contains a vast body of water, and, in Sikhim, has a bed of some 800 yards in breadth, containing, at all seasons, a good deal of water, with a swift stream broken by stones and rapids. The territory of the Raes of Kāmrūd, in ancient times, extended as far east as this; and the fact of the Rāe of Kāmrūd having promised Muḥammad-i- Bakht-yār to precede the Musalmān forces the following year, shows that the country indicated was to the north. The route taken by the Musalmāns, therefore, was, I am inclined to think, much the same as that followed by Turner and Pemberton for part the way, and that the Musalmān army then turned more to the east, in the direction taken by Pemberton, for it is plainly indicated by our author, at page 568, that the tract entered lay between Kāmrūd and Tirhut. The Sānpū, as the crow flies, is not more than 160 or 170 miles from Dīnjā-pūr, and it may have been reached; but it is rather doubtful perhaps, whether cavalry could reach that river from the frontier of Bengal in ten days.

In the Twentieth Volume of the Bengal Asiatic Journal, page 291, is a drawing by Dalton of the bridge of Sil Háko, described by Hannay. "It is situated," he says "on the high alley [one of Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz's causeways probably] which, no doubt, formed at one time the principal line of land communication with ancient Gowahāṭṭy (Prajyotisha) in Western Kamrup [Kāmrūd]." He also considers that "it is not improbable that this is the stone bridge over which Bactyar Khilji [Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār] and his Tartar cavalry passed previous to entering the outworks of the ancient city of Gowahāṭṭy, the bridge being but a short distance from the line of hills bounding Gowahāṭṭy on the N.N.W. and W., on which are still visible its line of defences extending for many miles on each side from the N.W. gate of entrance or pass through the hills. The Mohammedan general is said to have been obliged to retreat from an advanced position (perhaps Chardoar), hearing [?] that the Raja of Kamrup had dismantled the stone bridge in his rear; now it is quite evident from the marks on the stones of the platform, that they had been taken off and replaced somewhat irregularly."

The fact of the existence of this stone bridge is certainly curious, but I think it utterly impossible that it can be the bridge our author refers to. In all probability it is one of the bridges connecting "the high alley" or causeway above referred to, and there must have been very many of a similar description at one time. It is but 140 feet long and 8 feet broad, and has no regular arches—this last fact, however, is not material, as the partitions or divisions might be so
mad-i-Bakht-yâr, with the whole of the rest of his forces, passed over that bridge; and, when the Rae of Kâmru'd became aware of the passage [over the bridge] by the conquering troops, he despatched trustworthy persons [saying]:—“It is not proper, at this time, to march into the country of Tibbat, and it is necessary to return, and to make ample preparations, when, in the coming year, I, who am the Rae of Kâmru'd, agree that I will embody my own forces, and will precede the Muḥammadan troops, and will cause that territory to be acquired.” Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yâr did not, in any way, accept this counsel, and he turned his face towards the mountains of Tibbat.

described by a person who had never seen the bridge—and consists of slabs of stone only 6 feet 9 inches long, and built, not over a mighty river three times broader and deeper than the Ganges, but across "what may have been a former bed of the Bar Nadî, or at one particular season a branch of the Brahmaputra, now indicating a well defined water-course through which, judging from the marks at the bridge, a considerable body of water must pass in the rains, and, at that season, from native accounts, the waters of the Brahmaputra still find access to it."

The chief reasons why the bridge of Sil Hâko could not have been that over which Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yâr, crossed with his army may be summed up as follow:

I. Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yâr marched through the tract between Kâmru'd and Tirhut into Tibbat in a totally different direction to Gowâhatî, through defiles and passes over lofty mountains, while between Gaur, Dîw-kôt, and Gowâhatî not a single pass or hill of any consequence is to be found.

II. In no place is it stated in this history, which is, I believe, the sole authority for the account of this expedition, that the Musalmans entered "the outworks" of any city, much less those of Gowâhatî.

III. If the great river in question was the Brahmaputra, and the small branch of it which the Sil Hâko bridge spanned were too deep to be crossed by the Musalmân cavalry, how could they have crossed the mighty Brahmaputra itself? They would not have been able to do so even had this bridge been intact.

IV. Our author states, that, after passing the great river and bridge, they pushed on for fifteen days—some 200 or 300 miles at least—and that, from the farthest point they reached, the great city, garrisoned by Turks, was five leagues distant. This description will not suit the situation of Gowâhatî, which is quite close to the Brahmaputra.

V. The table-land of Tibbat is distinctly stated as the point reached, and it is subsequently mentioned that Changiz Khân wished to proceed from the vicinity of the Kâbûl river, through northern India, and get into China by the same route through Tibbat as Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yâr, took, but Gowâhatî would have led him much away from the part of China he wished to reach.

VI. The disaster which befell the Musalmans was owing, not only to two arches of the great bridge being destroyed, but to some of the horsemen of the force riding into the river and succeeding in fording it for the distance of a bow-shot,
One night, in the year 642 H.*, the author was sojourning, as a guest, at the dwelling of the Mu'tamad-ud-Daulah, a trusted vassal of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār, at a place, in the territory of Lakhanawatī, between Diw-kot and Bekānwah*, at which place his host was residing, and heard from him the whole of this account. He related on this wise, that, after passing that river, for a period of fifteen days, the troops wended their way, stages and journeys, through defiles and passes, ascending and descending among lofty mountains. On the sixteenth day the open country of Tibbat was reached. The whole of that tract was under cultivation, garnished with tribes of people and populous villages. They reached a place where there was a fort of which alone would be at least as many yards as the bridge is feet broad, and even then they had gone but a small part of the distance; and rafts and floats were being constructed to enable the army to cross.

VII. We are not told that this disaster took place in the rainy season, and few would attempt an expedition into Ashām at that period of the year. At all other times the water-course in question would have been fordable to cavalry.

VIII. And lastly, can any one imagine that two gaps of 6 feet 9 inches each—equal to 13 feet and 6 inches in all, would have deterred the Musalman cavalry from crossing? The very bambūs, or brushwood, growing near would have enabled them to have, at once, repaired two such gaps, even if a tree or two could not have been found. A door from the idol temple would have been sufficient to have spanned the gap, of 13 feet 6 inches, or rather two gaps of 6 feet 9 inches, even if the materials which they had obtained to make rafts and floats had not been available for that purpose.

One reason why it might seem that Gowāhati is referred to is, the fact of there being a famous idol temple near it, or close to the Brahma-putr; but there is no mention whatever that such was the case with regard to the great idol temple near the bridge and scene of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār’s disaster. Moreover, the city of Gowāhati is close by the river, while the Musalmanīs after reaching Burdhan[kot] marched upwards 10 days until the great bridge was reached, and then pushed on from this bridge for 15 days more before they reached the fort, which even then was 5 leagues distant from the city of Kar-battān—the march from Burdhan[kot] to the fort 5 leagues from Kar-battān occupying in all 26 days. Can any argument be more conclusive than this?

* In a few copies 641 H. Mu’tamad-ud-Daulah is but a title. In Elliot, instead of our author, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār, who had been dead forty years, is made to halt at the place in question.

* The oldest copies have Bekānwah or Begānwah and one Bekāwān or Begāwān—as plainly written as it is possible to write, while two more modern copies have Satgāwn [Sātgāwṇ]. The remainder have Bangāwn and Sagāwn. See Blochmann’s “Contributions to the Geography and History of Bengal,” note †, to page 9. It is somewhat remarkable that this place also should be confounded with Sātgāwn; but in the copies of the A’īn-i-Akbarī I have examined I find Baklānāh—बक्लानाह—instead of Baklā—बक्ला—but this can scarcely be the place referred to by our author.
great strength, and the Musalmaan army commenced plundering the country around. The people of that fort and town and the parts adjacent advanced to repel the Muhammadan army, and they came to a battle. From daybreak to the time of evening prayer a fierce encounter was carried on, and a great number of the Musalmaan army were killed and wounded. The whole of the defensive arms of that host were of pieces of the spear bambū, namely, their cuirasses and body armour, shields and helmets, which were all slips of it, crudely fastened and stitched, overlapping [each other]; and all the people were Turks, archers, and [furnished with] long bows.

When night came, and the Musalmaan force encamped, a number [of the enemy], who had been made prisoners, were brought forward, and they [the Musalmans] made inquiry of them. They stated on this wise, that, five leagues' distance from that place, there was a city which they called 6

---

6 The text varies considerably here.
7 Zubdat-ut-Tawārf lik says the Musalmans began to attack the fort.
8 There is nothing here, even in the printed text, which is correct [with the exception of رسم being altered to لرسم not رسم is slik], which warrants the reading of this passage as in Elliot [INDIA: vol. ii. page 311]—"The only weapons of the enemy were bamboo spears, and their armour, shields, and helmets, consisted only of raw silk strongly fastened and sewed together." A "shield" and "helmet" of raw silk would be curiosities certainly.

The bambū referred to in the text is the male bambū—the young shoots, probably, used for spear shafts—for which the hollow bambū is not adapted. Had the spear bambū not been so plainly indicated in the text, we might suppose the armour to have been something after the manner of that worn by the Dufflahs, and to have been formed of sections of the hollow bambū laid overlapping each other as the rings of a coat of mail, but the male bambū could not be used in this manner, and, therefore, their armour, shields, &c., must have been of pieces of the male bambū overlapping each other, as in the literal translation above. An officer with the Dufflah expedition, writing on December 8, 1874, says: "Each man has over his forehead a top-knot of his own hair, and now and then a bit of bear's fur in addition. Through this he runs a skewer of metal—silver if he can afford it—and by means of the top-knot and skewer he fastens on his cane-work helmet, a sort of close-fitting skull-cap worn on the back of the head. This helmet is usually ornamented with the upper portion of the hornbill's beak to save the head from sword cuts. Round his loins over the hips he wears a number of thin bambū or cane rings, unattached to one another." See also Dalton: ETHNOLOGY OF BENGAL, page 32.

9 Buda'ūnī says the people of this place were of the lineage [!] of Güştāsib [Gurshāsib ?], and that the fortress had been founded by him. That author does not give his authority for this statement. Our author says, at page 561, that Güştāsib founded Burdhan[kot]. The Khālj were a Turkish tribe certainly, but they had emigrated from northern Turkistān ages before this period.
Kar-battan [or Kar-pattan\(^1\), or Karar-pattan\(^2\)], and [that] in
that place would be about 50,000 valiant Turk horsemen,
archers\(^3\); and that, immediately upon the arrival of the
Musalmān cavalry before the fort, messengers with a
complaint had gone off to the city to give information, and
that, at dawn next morning, those horsemen would arrive.

The author, when he was in the territory of Lakh-
ānawatī, made inquiry respecting that [before] mentioned
city. It is a city of great size, and the whole of its walls
are of hewn stone, and [its inhabitants] are an assemblage
of Brāhmans and Nūnīs\(^4\), and that city is under the author-
ity of their Mihtar [chief or lord], and they hold the pagan
faith\(^5\); and every day, at daybreak, in the cattle-market\(^6\)
of that city, about one thousand five hundred horses are
sold; and all the tangahan\(^6\) horses which reach the Lakh-

\(^1\) The text varies considerably here, and great discrepancy exists with respect
to the name of this important place. The oldest copy has कर्न—Kar-battan,
possibly Kar-pattan, the next two oldest and best have कर-पटन—Kar-battan
or pattan, but what seems the second, in this word may be कर—Karan-
pattan. All the other copies have कर भौं—Karam-battan or Karam-pattan.
Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh has कर स्थ which might be read Karshīn, or Karan-
tan; and some other histories have कर स्थ—Karam-sīn.

\(^2\) Bhati-gīhūn, the Banāras of the Gūrkah dominions, and once a large place,
in Makwānpūr, in which part the inhabitants are chiefly Tihārūs, was ancien-
tly called दहर—Dharam-pattan, and another place, once the principal city in
the Nīpāl valley, and, like the former, in ancient times, the seat of an
independent ruler, is named Lalitah-pattan, and lies near the Bag-madī river;
but both these places are too far south and west for either to be the city here
indicated, for Muḥammad, son of Bāshṭ-yār, must have penetrated much farther
to the north, as already noticed.

\(^3\) The best Paris copy—fondly imagined to be an "autograph" of our author's,
but containing as many errors as the most modern copies generally, has 350,000!

\(^4\) In the oldest copies Nūnīn, and in the more modern ones Tūnīn.
One copy of the text however has "but-parastān" idol-worshippers.

\(^5\) The original is "din-i-tarsā-i." The word tarsā is very widely applied,
to signify a Christian, also a worshipper of fire or gabr, a pagan, an infidel,
and an unbeliever, and not to "any established religion" other than that of
Islām. Here our author, I think, refers to Christians—Manichwāns—the
whole of Tārtary and other northern parts of Asia contained a vast number of
Christians. See Travels of Father Avril and others in Tārtary. Christians
are constantly referred to in the annals of the Mughals.

\(^6\) The word used is "nakhkhs," which signifies a seller of captives, cattle,
or booty of any kind, and is used to signify a place where cattle and slaves are
bought and sold.
anawatī country they bring from that place. The route by which they come is the Mahamhā-i [or Mahanmāh-i] Darah⁷ [Pass], and this road in that country is well known; for example, from the territory of Kāmrūd to that of Tirhut are thirty-five mountain passes, by which they bring the tangahan horses into the territory of Lakhanawatī.

In short, when Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār found out the nature of that tract—the Musalmān troops being fatigued and knocked up by the march, and a large number having been martyred and disabled on the first day—he held consultation with his Amirs. They came to the conclusion that it was necessary to retreat, in order that, next year, after making ample arrangements, they might return again into that country⁸. When they retreated, throughout the whole route, not a blade of grass nor a stick of firewood remained, as they [the inhabitants] had set fire to the whole of it, and burnt it; and all the inhabitants of those defiles and passes had moved off from the line of route. During these fifteen days⁹ not a pound of food nor a blade of grass did the cattle and horses obtain¹; and all our author's text are they are still well known. Stewart, who had no printed text to go by, read the name pretty correctly—"Tanghan." Hamilton says these horses are called Tanyan or Tungan "from Tangusthan the general appellation of that assemblage of mountains which constitutes the territory of Bootan," &c. He must mean Tangistān, the region of tangs or defiles. Ěbīl-Faẓl also mentions these horses in his Ā'īn-i-Akbarī—"In the lower parts of Bangalah near unto Kūj [Kūch], a [species] of horse between the giit [günt] and the Turk [breed] is produced, called Tangahān," which is also written Tangahan, and gives the spelling of the word, but they are not born "ready saddled." Compare Elliott: INDIA, vol. ii. page 311, and note ⁴, and see Dr. Blochmann's translation of the Ā'īn. ⁷ Some copies—the more modern—and the best Paris copy, leave out the name of this pass, and make sā-b—passes—of it; and, while all the oldest copies [and Zubdat] have Tirhut, the more modern ones have Tibbat. ⁸ Although the Musalmān troops were, at length, victorious, their victory cost them so many lives, and so many men were disabled, that, on hearing of a force of 50,000 valiant Turks being stationed so near at hand, Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, held counsel with his chiefs, and it was determined to retreat next day. Our author appears totally unable to tell the truth respecting a Musalmān reverse, even though such reverse may be far from dishonour, and may have been sustained under great difficulties or through their being greatly outnumbered. ⁹ The fifteen days which the retreat occupied he seems to mean, as the same route in going took that number of days. Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh says that the inhabitants also destroyed the roads—obstructed them, cut them up in some way.

¹ They must have brought some provisions and forage along with them, or
[the men] were killing their horses and eating them, until they issued from the mountains into the country of Kāmrūd, and reached the head of that bridge. They found two arches of the bridge destroyed⁴, on this account, that enmity had arisen between both those Amirs [left to guard it], and, in their discord, they had neglected to secure the bridge and protect the road, and had gone off³, and the Hindūs of the Kāmrūd country had come⁴ and destroyed the bridge.

On the arrival at that place of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār with his forces he found no way of crossing, and boats were not procurable. He was lost in surprise and bewilderment⁴. They agreed that it was necessary to halt in some place⁵, and contrive [about constructing] boats and floats, in order that they might be enabled to pass over the river. They pointed out an idol temple in the vicinity of that place [where they then were] of exceeding height, strength, and sublimity, and very handsome, and in it numerous idols both of gold and silver were deposited, and one great idol so [large] that its weight was by conjecture upwards of two or three thousand mans⁷ of beaten gold. Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār and the remainder of his followers sought shelter within that idol-temple⁸, and began to devise means for obtained some food, or must have eaten each other. Perhaps our author means that many perished for want of sufficient food.

² Two arches of any possible span—but not over seventy yards—would not have been such a difficult matter to repair, so near primeval forests, and with a town or city, as previously stated, close to the bridge. The town, however, is not once mentioned on their return.

³ The Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh states that the two Amirs, to spite each other, abandoned guarding the bridge, and each went his own way. Budā′ūnī says they first fought, and afterwards abandoned the bridge.

⁴ This remark, and what follows at page 571 again, tends to show that the bridge in question was beyond the Kāmrūd territory, although, a line or two before, it is stated that they came into Kāmrūd and reached the head of the bridge. See also page 561 and note₆.

⁵ Where was 'Ālī, the Mej, all this time? He is not again mentioned; but his kinsmen are; and the country people are not even referred to, although the Hindūs of Kāmrūd are, see page 571.

⁶ Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh says "necessary to occupy some place until boats and floats could be constructed."

⁷ The more modern copies have miskāls.

⁸ According to other authors, when the Musalmāns reached the bridge, they were filled with amazement and horror at finding two of its arches broken. The two Amirs, who had been left to guard it, had not been on good terms for some time prior to being stationed there; and, as soon as their
obtaining wood and rope for the construction of rafts and crossing the river, in such wise that the Rāe of Kāmrūd became aware of the reverses and helplessness of the Musalmān army. He issued commands to the whole of the Hindūs of the country, so that they came pouring in in crowds, and round about the idol-temple were planting spiked bāmbūs in the ground, and were weaving them together, so that it [their work] was appearing like unto walls. When the Musalmān troops beheld that state of affairs, they represented to Muḥammad-i-Baḵht-yār, [saying]:—

“If we remain like this, we shall all have fallen into the trap of these infidels: it behoveth to adopt some means chief had left, their hostility broke out afresh, and such was their enmity that, rather than not prosecute their own designs against each other, they abandoned it. After they had departed, the Rāe of Kāmrūd, on becoming aware of it, sent his men, and destroyed the two arches. It is strange the names of these two Amīrs are not given by our author, as his informant, previously mentioned, must have known who they were.

Finding the bridge thus impassable, Muḥammad-i-Baḵht-yār determined to occupy some strong place until such time as materials could be obtained to enable them to effect the passage of the river. Here also we might expect to hear something of the town and its people, but, as I have mentioned in note 8, page 561, it is doubtful whether our author meant it to be understood that Burdhan-koṭ was on the banks of the Bag-madīr river, where this bridge was.

Spies brought information that there was an immense and exceedingly strong idol-temple near by, and that was occupied by the Musalmāns accordingly. Another writer states that they were ignorant, when they advanced, of the existence of this temple.

Budāʿūnī states that the Musalmāns only passed the night in the idol-temple, but this statement is absurd. Where were materials to be obtained from, during the night, to make rafts?

9 Tisbū Lāmbū or Digāṛghah, the seat of a Lāma in Lat. 29° 7' N., Long. 89° 2' E., a great monastery only 180 miles from Rang-pūr of Bengal [said to have been founded by Muḥammad, son of Baḵht-yār], answers nearly to the description of the idol-temple referred to, but it is on the southern not the northern bank of the Sānpūr river, and a few miles distant, and our author says it was a Hindū temple. Perhaps, in his ideas, Hindūs and Buddhists were much the same. From this point are roads leading into Bhūtān and Bengal.

As soon as the Rāe of Kāmrūd became aware of the helpless state of the Musalmāns, and that they had sought shelter in the great idol temple, he gave orders for his people to assemble. They came in hosts, and began to form a stockade all round it, by planting, at a certain distance, not their ‘‘bamboo spears” as in Elliot [INDIA, vol ii. page 317], but bāmbūs spiked at both ends [the mode of making stockades in that country], and afterwards woven strongly together, which forms a strong defence. Ralph Fitch says, respecting Kūch “all the country is set with bamboos or canes made sharp at both ends and stuck into the earth,” &c.
whereby to effect extrication." With one accord they made a rush, and all at once issued from the idol-temple, attacked one point [in the stockade], and made a way for themselves, and reached the open plain, and the Hindūs after them. When they reached the river bank the Musalmāns halted, and each one, to the best of his ability, sought means of crossing over. Suddenly some few of the soldiers urged their horses into the river, and, for the distance of about an arrow flight, the water was fordable. A cry arose in the force that they had found a ford, and the whole threw themselves into the water, and the Hindūs following them occupied the river's bank. When the Musalmāns reached mid-stream, [where] was deep water, they all perished, [with the exception of] Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, who, with a few horsemen, a hundred more or less, succeeded, by great artifice, in effecting the passage of the river; and all the rest were drowned.

After Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār emerged from the water, information reached a body of the Kūnch and Mej. The guide, 'Ali, the Mej, had kinsmen at the passage, and they

---

1 Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, seeing through the object of the Hindūs, issued from the idol-temple at the head of his troops, and, with considerable difficulty, made a road for himself and followers. Having done this, he took up a position and halted on the bank of the river Bag-madī. Here he appears to have remained some days, while efforts were then made to construct rafts, the Hindūs not venturing to attack them in the open.

2 This is related differently by others. The Musalmāns were occupied in crossing, it is said, or, perhaps, more correctly, about to make the attempt with such means as they had procured, when a trooper [some say, a few troopers] rode his horse into the river to try the depth probably, and he succeeded in fording it for the distance of a bow-shot. Seeing this, the troops imagined that the river, after all, was fordable, and, anxious to escape the privations they had endured, and the danger they were in, as with the means at hand great time would have been occupied in crossing, without more ado, rushed in; but, as the greater part of the river was unfordable, they were carried out of their depth, and were drowned.

After his troops had been overwhelmed in the Bag-madī or Bak-matī, Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, with the few followers remaining with him, by means of what they had prepared [a raft or two probably], succeeded, with considerable difficulty, in reaching the opposite bank in safety, and, ultimately reached Dīw-kot again. Apparently, this river was close to the Mej frontier.

Budaʿūnī states that those who remained behind [on the river bank] fell martyrs to the infidels; and, that of the whole of that army but 300 or 400 reached Dīw-kot. He does not give his authority however, and generally copies verbatim from the work of his patron—the Ṭabaḵāt-i-Akbarī—but such is not stated therein.

3 In some copies of the text, "one of the soldiers."
came forward to receive him [Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār], and rendered him great succour until he reached Diw-koṭ.

Through excessive grief sickness now overcame him, and mostly out of shame at the women and children of those of the Khalj who had perished; and whenever he rode forth all the people, from the house-tops and the streets, [consisting] of women and children, would wail and utter imprecations against him and revile him, so that from henceforth he did not ride forth again. During that adversity he would be constantly saying: "Can any calamity have befallen the Sūltān-i-Ghāzī that my good fortune hath deserted me!" and such was the case, for at that time the Sūltān-i-Ghāzī, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, had attained martyrdom. In that state of anguish Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār became ill, and took to his bed, and died.

Some have related that there was an Amīr of his, 'Alī i-Mardān, a Khalj of great intrepidity and temerity, to whose charge the fief of Nāran-go-e [or Nāran-ko-e?] was made over. When he obtained information of this disaster he came to Diw-koṭ, and Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār was confined to his bed through sickness, and three days had passed since any person was able to see him. 'Alī-i-Mardān in some way went in unto him, drew the sheet

---

4 Zubdat-ut-Tawārīḵh says "by the time he reached Diw-koṭ, through excessive grief and vexation, illness overcame him; and, whenever he rode forth, the women of those Khalj who had perished stood on the house-tops and reviled him as he passed. This dishonour and reproach added to his illness," &c.

Rauzat-ug-Safā says his mind gave way under his misfortunes, and the sense of the disaster he had brought about resulted in hopeless melancholy.

5 This was certainly just about the time of that Sultan's assassination.

6 Zubdat-ut-Tawārīḵh has "one of the great Amīrs," &c. The tāfṣīt, in 'Alī-i-Mardān, signifies 'Alī, son of Mardān. See page 576.

7 The name of this fief or district is mentioned twice or three times, and the three oldest copies, and one of the best copies next in age, and the most perfect of all the MSS., have टार्कोटियाँ as above in all cases; and one—the best Petersburg copy—has a jāzm over the last letter in addition, but all four have the hamsaḥ. The Zubdat-ut-Tawārīḵh also has टार्कोटियाँ—Naraṅgo-e or Nārāṅko-e. The next best copies of the text have टार्कोटियाँ—which, in all probability, the ipsis has been mistaken for. The I. O. L. MS. 1592, the R. A. S. MS., and the printed text, have दार्कोटियाँ—whilst the best Paris copy has this latter word, in one place, and दार्कोटियाँ in other places; and another copy has टार्कोटियाँ. In Elliot, vol. ii. page 314, it is turned into "Kūnf" in one place, and, sixteen lines under, into "Narkotf."

8 Zubdat-ut-Tawārīḵh says "no one used to go near him"—the way of the world to desert one in misfortune.
from his face, and with a dagger assassinated him. These events and calamities happened in the year 602 H. 9

VI. MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DIN, MUHAMMAD, SON OF SHERĀN 1, KHALJĪ, IN LAKHĀNAWATĪ.

Trustworthy persons have related after this manner, that Muḥammad-i-Sherān and Aḥmad-i-Sherān were two brothers, two among the Khalj Āmirs in the service of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār; and, when the latter led his troops towards the mountains of Kāmrūd and Tibbat, he [Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār] had despatched Muḥammad-i-Sherān, and his brother, with a portion of his forces, towards Lakhan-or and Jāj-nagar 2. When the news of these events [related above] reached Muḥammad-i-Sherān, he came

9 This date shows that the territory of Lakhaṇawatī was taken possession of in 590 H., the year in which Malik Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, took up his quarters at Dihli. The conquest of Lakhaṇawatī is accounted among the victories of Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, because it took place in his reign. Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, was at this time still a slave, and neither attained his manumission nor the title of Sultān until some time after the death of Muḥammad, son of Baḥkī-yār. See note 7, page 558.

Some authors consider him an independent sovereign, and say that he "reigned" for twelve years. He certainly ruled in quasi independence for that period; but, from the expressions made use of by him in his last sickness, he evidently was loyal to Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, and he probably paid some nominal obedience to Malik Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, as the Sultān's Deputy at Dihli. It is not to be wondered at that Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, neither issued coin in his own name, nor in the name of his sovereign's slave: whilst that sovereign was alive—the latter would have been an impossible act. See Thomas, FATHĀN KINGS, note 1, page 111; and note 3, page 559.

1 Also styled, by some other authors, Sher-wān. Sher-ān, the plural of sher, lion, tiger, like Mard-ān, the plural of mard, man, is intended to express the superlative degree. The izāfat here—Muḥammad-i-Sherān—signifies son of Sherān, as proved beyond a doubt by what follows, as two brothers would not be so entitled.

2 Compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 314. The Paris copy of the text, the I. O. L. MS., the R. A. S. MS., and the printed text, have "to Lakhaṇawatī and Jāj-nagar;" but the rest have Lakhan-or or Lakh-or, and Jāj-nagar. No doubt Lakhan-or is meant in the copies first mentioned, and probably substituted for, by ignorant copyists.

Some writers state that Muḥammad-i-Sherān was "Hākim of Jāj-nagar" on the part of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, but such cannot be. Jāj-nagar was an independent Hindū territory [see note 4, page 587]; but most authors agree with ours that Muḥammad-i-Sherān was despatched against— or probably to hold in check—Jāj-nagar during Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār's absence on the expedition into Tibbat; and he was, doubtless, feudatory of Lakhān or [see note 6, page 584], which lay in the direction of the Jāj-nagar territory.
back from that quarter, and returned again to Diw-kot, performed the mourning ceremonies [for Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār], and from thence [Diw-kot] proceeded towards Nāran-go-e, which was 'Ali-i-Mardān's fief, seized 'Ali-i-Mardān, and, in retaliation for the act he had committed, imprisoned him, and made him over to the charge of the Kot-wāl [Seneschal] of that place, whose name was Bābā, Kot-wāl, the Ṣafahānī [Iṣfahānī]. He then returned to Diw-kot again, and assembled the Amīrs together.

This Muḥammad-i-Sherān was a man of great intrepidity and energy, and of exemplary conduct and qualities; and, at the time when Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār sacked the city of Nūdīyah, and Rāe Lakhmanīāh took to flight, and his followers, servants, and elephants became scattered, and the Musalmān forces proceeded in pursuit of spoil, this Muḥammad-i-Sherān, for the space of three days, was absent from the army, so that all the Amīrs became anxious on his account. After three days they brought information that Muḥammad-i-Sherān had taken eighteen elephants along with their drivers in a certain jangal [forest], and was retaining them there, and that he was alone. Horsemen were told off, and the whole of these elephants were brought before Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār. In fact, Muḥammad-i-Sherān was a man of energy [combined] with sagacity.

3 Other writers state that Muḥammad-i-Sherān, on hearing of the fate of their chief, Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, returned at once from Jaj-nagar [from Jaj-nagar towards Lakhan-or] with his force, proceeded to Diw-kot, and performed the funeral ceremonies; and then marched from Diw-kot to Bār-sūl—and secured the assassin, 'Alī-i-Mardān, and threw him into prison. After performing this act, he returned to Diw-kot again. See note, next page. In Elliot this is turned into "they returned from their stations, and came dutifully to Deokot," but ḫ as in the printed text, does not mean "dutifully," but "mourning ceremonies."

Familiarly so styled perhaps.

The Jahān-Arā, which does not mention 'Alī, son of Mardān, at all, calls Muḥammad-i-Sherān bloodthirsty, and greatly wanting in understanding, thus confounding him with 'Alī-i-Mardān.

He had managed to take these elephants and their drivers on the day of the surprise of Nūdīyah, but, being quite alone, he was unable to secure them, and had to remain to guard them until such time as aid should reach him. Information of his whereabouts having reached Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, he sent out a detachment of horse to bring him in with his spoil.

Muḥammad, son of Sherān, was an intrepid, high-minded, and energetic man, and, being the chief of the Khalj Amīrs, on their return to Diw-kot, the
When he imprisoned 'Ali-i-Mardan, and again departed [from Diw-kot], being the head of the Khalj Amirs, they all paid him homage, and each Amir continued in his own fief. 'Ali-i-Mardan, however, adopted some means and entered into a compact with the Kot-wal [before mentioned], got out of prison, and went off to the Court of Dihli*. He preferred a petition to Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, that Kae-maz, the Rumi [native of Rumilli], should be commanded to proceed from Awadh towards the territory of Lakhanawati, and, in conformity with that command, [suitably] locate the Khalj Amirs.

Malik Husam-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, at the hand of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar, was the feudatory of Ganguri [or Kankuri?], and he went forth to receive Kae-maz the principal Amirs were assembled in council together, and they chose Muhammad-i-Sheran as their ruler and sovereign; and they continued to pay homage to him. It seems strange that the city of Lakhanawati is seldom mentioned, while Diw-kot is constantly referred to by various authors; and, from what our author himself says at page 578, it would appear to have been the capital at this period.

* Some copies have "they all paid him homage," &c., and, after the word fief, insert "until."

9 'Ali-i-Mardan managed to gain over the Kot-wal, and was allowed to escape. He succeeded in reaching Dihli, and presented himself before [the then] Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, who received the ingrate and assassin with favour. Both our author and other writers, in mentioning his escape in their account of Muhammad-i-Sheran's reign, make it appear that 'Ali, son of Mardan, at once succeeded in inciting Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, against Muhammad-i-Sheran, and inducing him to despatch Kae-maz to Lakhanawati; but this is not correct. 'Ali, son of Mardan, accompanied Kutb-ud-Din to Ghaznin [where he reigned—in riot—forty days], and was taken captive by the troops of I-yal-duz, and released or escaped again before these events happened, as will be mentioned farther on.

1 The text differs here. Some copies have: "So that Kae-maz, the Rumi, received orders, on which he proceeded from Awadh to Lakhanawati;" but the majority are as above. The Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh, however, clears up the meaning of the last clause of the sentence:—"That he, Kae-maz, should proceed into Lakhanawati, in order that each of the Khalj Amirs, who were in that part, might be located in a suitable place, and to make certain districts their fiefs." That work, however, immediately after, states that the Khalj Amirs, having shown hostility towards him [Kae-maz], opposed him in battle, and were defeated, and that, in that engagement, Muhammad, son of Sheran, was slain. Compare Elliot, too, here.

2 Of the four best and oldest copies of the text, two have Ganguri or Kankuri—and two, Gasguri or Kaskuri—but this latter appears very doubtful. Five other good copies agree with the first two, but three others have respectively Korkuri—and Korkuri—or Korkuri and Korkuri. Some other works, including the Tabakat-i-Akbari, state that Husam-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, was the feudatory
Rūmī, and, along with him, proceeded to Diw-kot; and, at the suggestion of Kāe-māz, the Rūmī, he became the feoffee of Diw-kot. Kāe-māz, the Rūmī, set out on his return [into Awadh], and Muḥammad-i-Sherān, and other Khalj Amirs, assembled together, and determined upon marching to Diw-kot. Kāe-māz, whilst on his way back [hearing of this], returned again, and an encounter took place between the Khalj Amirs and him, and Muḥammad-i-Sherān and the Khalj Amirs were defeated. Subsequently, disagreement arose among themselves, in the direction of Maksadah and Saṅtūs, and Muḥammad-i-Sherān was slain; and there his tomb is.

VII. MALIK 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, 'ALĪ, SON OF MARDĀN, KHALJĪ.

'Ali-i-Mardān, the Khalj, was a man of vast energy, vehement, intrepid, and daring. Having obtained release of Kalwā-'ī or Galwā-'ī—or Kalwā-īn or Galwā-īn—the n of the latter word is probably nasal.

No sooner had Kāe-māz turned his back upon the scene than Muhammad, son of Sherān, and the rest of the Khalj Amirs, determined to recover Diw-kot out of the hands of Husām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz.

These two names are most plainly and clearly written in four of the best and oldest copies of the text, with a slight variation in one of Maksidah [the Maxadabad probably of the old maps and old travellers]—and and and and of the remaining copies collated, one has and and and and the rest and and.

The Tabakat-i-Akbarī has Wh: only.

The Gaur MS. says he was killed in action after a reign of eight months, and, in this latter statement, the Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh and some other works agree; but the period seems much too short from the assassination of Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yr, to his death for reasons mentioned in the following note, or the country must have remained some time without a ruler before 'Ali-i-Mardān succeeded. Raugat-us-Safā makes a grand mistake here. It says that Muḥammad-i-Sherān, after having ruled for a short period, became involved in hostilities with a Hindu ruler in that part, and was killed in one of the conflicts which took place between them.

'Ali-i-Mardān, that is to say, 'Ali, the son of Mardān, was energetic and impetuous; but he was not endowed with sense or judgment, and was notorious for boldness and audacity, for self-importance, haughtiness, excessive vanity and gasconade, and was cruel and sanguinary. After he escaped from confinement for assassinating his benefactor, Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yr, when lying helpless on his death-bed, he proceeded to Dihlī and presented himself before Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, who, at that time, had acquired the sovereignty of Dihlī, and was well received. He accompanied Kuṭb ud-Dīn to Ghaznīn at the time that he filled the throne of Ghaznīn, as our author says, “for a period of forty days,” in carousal and debauchery. There 'Ali
from imprisonment at Nāran-go-e [or Nāran-ko-e], he came to the presence of Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and accompanied him towards Ghaznin; and he became a captive in the hands of the Turks of Ghaznin. A chronicler has related in this manner, that one day, when he was out hunting along with Sulṭān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, he began saying to one of the Khalj Amīrs, whom they used to style Sālār [a leader, chief] Zaffir: “What sayest thou if, with one arrow, I should slay Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, within this shikār-gāh [chase] and make thee a sovereign?” The Sālār, Zaffir, the Khalj, was a very sagacious person, and he was shocked at this speech, and prohibited him from

c. 13 to c. 14

fell a captive into the hands of the Turks of Ghaznin, the partizans of Sulṭān Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, at the time of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn’s precipitate retreat probably. Some authors, however, state, and among them the authors of the Ṭabaḵt-i-Akbarī, and Zubdat-ut-Tawārīḵh, that in one of the conflicts of that time he was taken prisoner by the Turks—Ṭabaḵt-i-Akbarī says, the Turk-māns—and was carried off into Kāshghar, where he remained for some time. He, at length, managed to reach Hindūstān again, and proceeded to Dihlī, and presented himself at the Court of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, who received him with great favour and distinction. The fact of his having been a captive in the hands of his rival’s—I-yal-duz’s—partizans was enough to insure him a favourable reception. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn conferred upon him the territory of Lakhanawatī in fief, and he proceeded thither and assumed the government. It must have been just prior to this, and not immediately after the escape of ‘Alī-i-Mardān, that Kāe-māz was sent from Awadh to Lakhanawatī, or, otherwise, between the defeat of Muḥammad, son of Sherān, by the latter, and Sherān’s death, and the nomination of ‘Alī-i-Mardān by Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Lakhanawatī would have been without a ruler during the time that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn took to proceed from Dihlī to Ghaznin, where he remained forty days, and back to Dihlī again, and eight months, which is said to have been the extent of Muḥammad-i Sherān’s reign, seems much too short a space of time for this expedition, and ‘Alī-i-Mardān’s captivity in Kāshghar and his escape and return. The accounts of this period are not satisfactorily given in any work. [See page 526, and para. two of note 8 for the year in which Kuṭb-ud-Dīn had to make such a precipitous retreat from Ghaznin]; and, moreover, it appears that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn did not return to Dihlī again, but continued at Lāhor up to the time of his death.

7 Here is another specimen of difference of idiom, though not so great as in some places, occurring in different copies of the text. This sentence is thus expressed in one set of copies:—caS yee oss—in another—oS esl), ye ८९1,—in another—o $ (११, yee i's, o's j|—and, in another = 195 Go's) gee ws

8 Compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 315. If we are to translate the name of the Sālār, Zaffir [not Zafar, which signifies victory], why not translate the name of Ḥusān-ud-Dīn, ‘Īwāz, in fact, all the ‘Arabic names in the book? It does not follow that this person was a “victorious general,” but he was a chief whose name was ZAFFIR, signifying, in ‘Arabic, overcoming all difficulties, successful, triumphant, victorious, &c.
When 'Ali-i-Mardān returned from thence, the Sālār, Ẓaffir, presented him with two horses and sent him away.

When 'Ali-i-Mardān came back again into Hindūstān, he presented himself before Sultān Қuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and received an honorary robe, and was treated with great favour, and the territory of Lakhānavaṭī was assigned to him. He proceeded towards Lakhānavaṭī, and, when he passed the river Koṇs₁, Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, ʻĪwāz, the Khalj, [feudatory] of Dīw-kot, went forth to receive him, and 'Ali-i-Mardān proceeded to Dīw-kot² and assumed the government, and brought the whole of the country of Lakhānavaṭī under his sway.

When Sultān Қuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, passed to the Almighṭy's mercy, 'Ali-i-Mardān assumed a canopy of state, and read the Khutbah in his own name³; and they styled him by the title of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn. He was a blood-thirsty and sanguinary man. He sent armies in different directions, and put the greater number of the Khalj Amirs to death. The Rāes of the adjacent parts became awed of him, and sent him wealth and tribute. He began granting investitures of different parts of the realm of Hindūstān, and the [most] futile bombast began to escape his lips. Both in the assembly, and in the audience-hall, he would declaim about the country of Khurāsān, of ʻIrāk, of Ghaznīn, and of Ghūr, and idle nonsense he began to give tongue to, to such degree, that they used [in jest] to solicit from him grants of investiture of Ghaznīn and of Khurāsān,

---

¹ Another writer relates this somewhat differently. He says that 'Ali-i-Mardān, one day, accompanied the suite of Sultān, Țaj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, when he went to the chase—but this is scarcely compatible with his being a captive—on which occasion he said to the Sālār Ẓaffir: "What sayest thou to my finishing the career of the Sultān with one thrust of a spear, and making thee a sovereign?" Ẓaffir, however, was a man of prudence and integrity, and had no ambition of gaining a throne by assassinating his benefactor. He therefore gave him a couple of horses and dismissed him, and he returned to Hindūstān.

² In some copies Koṇs as above, and in others Koś, without the nasal n. Some other writers call this river the Koṇs and Koś.

³ In some copies "from Dīw-kot." Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, ʻĪwāz, appears to have been a kind of Vicar of Bray, from what is stated previously, and here.

⁴ He also coined in his own name, according to the Ṭabaḵāt-i-Akbarf and Budaʾīnī.
and he would issue commands accordingly [as though they were his own].

Trustworthy persons have narrated after this manner, that there was, in that territory [Lakhanawati], a merchant who had become indigent, and his estate was dissipated. He solicited from 'Ali-i-Mardan some favour. 'Ali-i-Mardan inquired [from those around]: "From whence is that man?" They replied: "From Šafahan [Iṣfahān]."

He commanded, saying: "Write out the investiture of Šafahan as his fief," and no one could dare, on account of his great ferocity and unscrupulousness, to say: "Ša- fahan is not in our possession." Whatever investitures he conferred in this way, if they would represent: "It is not under our control," he would reply: "I will reduce it."

So that investiture was ordered to be given to the merchant of Šafahan—that indigent wretch, who lacked even a morsel and a garment of rags. The chief personages and intelligent men, there present, in behalf of that destitute man, represented, saying: "The feudatory of Šafahan is in want of resources for the expenses of the road, and for the preparation of equipage, to enable him to take possession of that city and territory;" and he ['All-i-Mardan] commanded a large sum of money to be given to that person for his necessary expenses. The nature of 'Ali-i-Mardan's presumption, cruelty, and hypocrisy

4 Our author's mode of relation is not over plain. "His vanity and bombast," says another writer, "was such that he fancied Iran and Tiran belonged to him, and he began to assign their different kingdoms and provinces amongst his Amirs." The fact is that he was mad; and it is somewhat remarkable that a subsequent Sultan of Dihli, who was mad after the same fashion, should also have been of the Khalj tribe. Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 316.

The author of the Gaur MS. in his innocence says that after his [Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak's] death, for two years and some months, the sway of this same 'Ala-ud-dīn was acknowledged as far as Khurāsān and Iṣfahān, &c. !!. Where Lakhanawati? where Khurāsān and Iṣfahān?

5 The word used in the text is misāl [j-]: such a term as "jāgir" is not used once in the whole work, because it is a comparatively modern term.

6 Our author relates this anecdote differently from others. The destitute merchant, who wanted something that would furnish him with food and raiment, refused to accept the investiture of Iṣfahān; and the Wazirs, who out of terror of 'All were afraid to tell him so, represented that the Ĥākim of Iṣfahān was in want of funds for the expenses of his journey thither, and to enable him to assemble troops in order to secure possession of his fief. This had the desired effect.
amounted to this degree; and, together with such conduct, he was [moreover] a tyrant and a homicide. The weak and indigent [people] and his own followers were reduced to a [perfect] state of misery through his oppression, tyranny, and bloodthirstiness; and they found no other means of escape save in rising against him. A party of the Khalj Amirs conspired together, and slew 'Ali-i-Mardān, and placed Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, upon the throne.

The reign of 'Ali-i-Mardān was two years, or more or less than that.*

VIII.—MALIK [SULTĀN] ḤUSĀM-UD-DĪN, 'IWĀZ, SON OF ḤUSAIN, KHALJĪ.

Malik [Sultān] Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, the Khalj, was a man of exemplary disposition, and came of the Khalj of Garmsīr of Ghūr.

They have narrated on this wise, that, upon a certain occasion, he was conducting a laden ass towards the eminence which they call Pūshtah Afroz* [the Burning Mound],

* Two years and some months was the extent of his reign, but most authors say two years. I do not know whether all the copies of Budā‘ūnī’s work are alike, but in two copies now before me he says plainly, that 'Ali-i-Mardān reigned two and thirty years. Perhaps he meant two or three years, but it is not usual to write three before two in such cases. The Gaur MS. states that he reigned from the beginning of the year 604 H. to 605 H., and yet says that Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, died in his reign !

* Compare Thomas, "PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLI," pages 8 and 112, and Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii, page 317. The Arabic word 'Iwāz [ءوژ] has a meaning, but "'Aważ" and "'Aważ" none whatever. One or two other authors state that he was the son of 'Iwāz; but this is doubtful: there is no doubt, however, of his father’s name being Ḥusain. His correct title is Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn. Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn was his name before he was raised to the sovereignty.

* Two of the oldest copies of the text, and some of the more modern ones, are as above, and some other works confirm this reading; but one of the oldest and best copies, and the Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh, have Pūshṭ for Pūshṭah. Both words are much the same in signification, however, as explained in the text itself, namely, "an ascent, a bluff, steep, eminence, hill, hummock, mound," &c.; but Pashā [See Elliot : INDIA, vol. ii, page 317] signifying a flea, a gnat, &c., is impossible. Pūshṭ is the name of a dependency of Bādghais, and is very probably the tract here meant. Afroz is the active participle, used as an adjective, of āfūr to inflame, to set on fire, to burn, to light up, to enkindle, &c., the literal translation of which is "the burning hill, or mound," and may refer to a volcano even at that time extinguished.
to a place within the limits of Wâlishtân on the borders of the mountain tracts of Ghûr. Two Darweshes1, clothed in ragged cloaks, joined him; and said to him: "Hast thou any victuals with thee?" 'Iwaz, the Khalj, replied: "I have." He had, along with him on the ass, a few cakes of bread, with some [little] dainty2, by way of provision for the journey, after the manner of travellers. He removed the load from the ass, spread his garments [on the ground], and set those provisions before the Darweshes. After they had eaten, he took water, which he had among his baggage, in his hand, and stood up in attendance on them. After those Darweshes had made use of the victuals and the drink, thus hastily produced, they remarked to each other, saying: "This excellent man has ministered unto us: it behoveth his act should not be thrown away." They then turned their faces towards 'Iwaz, the Khalj, and said: "Husâm-ud-Din! go thou to Hindûstân, for that place, which is the extreme [point] of Muḥammadanism, we have given unto thee." In accord with the intimation of those two Darweshes, he returned again from that place [where he then was], and, placing his family4 on the ass, came towards Hindûstân. He joined Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yâr, and his affairs reached such a point that the coin of the territory of Lakhâna-wätti was stamped, and the Khûtfbah thereof read, in his name, and they styled him by the title of Sulţân Ghiyâs-ud-Dîn4. He made the city of Lakhânawâti.

Wâlishtân is evidently the same tract as is referred to at page 319, which see. The oldest and best copies of the text, and some modern copies, are as above, but some of the latter have داکش ان والساان and three others, including the best Paris copy, have زاولسائی.

1 They are thus styled in the original: there is not a word about "fakirs" in any copy of the text.
2 Meat, fish, vegetables, or the like, eaten with bread to give it a savour: in Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii., page 317, it is styled "traveller's bread," and the ass is turned into a mule!
3 In some copies, and in some other works, Khwâjâh, equivalent here to "Master," in others Sâlûr—head-man, leader or chief. Another author says the Darweshes said: "Go thou, O Khwâjah, into Hind, for they have assigned unto thee one of the kingdoms of the region of Hind."
4 The text varies a little here. The oldest copy has "his family" as above, whilst, of the other copies, some have "his children," some "his wife," and some "his wife and children."
5 After the chief men had put the tyrant, 'Ali, son of Mardân, to death, they, with one accord, set up Husâm-ud-Dîn, 'Iwaz, son of Husain, who, originally, was one of the petty chiefs of the Khalj country on the borders of
wāṭī the seat of government, and founded the fortress of Basan-kot, and people from all directions turned their faces towards him.

Ghūr, a man of virtuous mind and high principles, and endowed with many excellent qualities, both of mind and body. He is said, by several authors, to have been very handsome, and they confirm all our author says about him in this respect.

* In Elliot, vol. ii. page 317, “He made the city of Lakhnauti the seat of his government, and built a fort for his residence!” The printed text has —fortress of Basan-kot.

From our author’s remark here, it would appear as though Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, ’Twāz, had been the first to make the city of Gaur or Lākhanawatī his capital. Akdālah can scarcely have been built at this period or it would no doubt have been mentioned from its importance.

Abū-l-Fażl states, in the Ā’īn-i-Akbarī, that Lākhanawatī, which some style Gaur, is named Jannat-ābād, but this is an error from what is stated below by others, and was the name applied to the Sarkār or district, not to the city. He continues: “To the east of it is a great koro, a building and a reservoir, the monument of ancient times, which is called Sārahār-mārī. Criminals used to be confined in the building, and a good many died from the effects of the water which is very noxious.”

The Haft-Iklim, says Gaur, in the olden time, was the capital of Bangālah, and that the fortress of Gaur was amongst the most reliable strongholds of Hindūstān. “The river Gang lies to the west of it; and, on the N.E. W. and S. sides, it has seven [sic in MS.] ditches, and a citadel on the side of the Gang. The distance between [each] two ditches is half a koro, each ditch being about three fanāb [= 120 gas or ells] broad, and so deep that an elephant would be unable to cross it. JANNAT-ĀBĀD is the name of the tumān [district] in which Gaur is situated.”

The Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh states that Lākhanawatī or Gaur is a very ancient city and the first capital of the country. To the east of it is a koro [lake] of great size, and, should the dyke [confining it?] burst, the city would be overwhelmed. The emperor Humāyūn, when in that part, took a great liking to Lākhanawatī, and gave it the name of BAKHT-ĀBĀD.

Many fine buildings were erected in and around the city by Sultan Firūz Shāh-i-Abū-l-Muqaffār, Shāh-i-Jahān, the Ḥabashī [Abyssinian, yet he is included among the so-called “Pathāns”], one of which was the Chānd gateway of the citadel near the palace, a ḫuṣ [reservoir], and the famous lith or manārāh. Musalmāns do not erect “Jaya Sthambas.” The Chānd gateway was still standing some fifty years since, but hidden by the dense jangal, and is probably standing still. There were several masjīds, one of which was founded by Sultan Yūsuf Shāh.

According to the Portuguese writers who “aided Mohammed [Mahmūd] against Sher Khan a Mogol general [1] then in rebellion,” . . . . the capital city Gouro extended three leagues in length along the Ganges and contained one million, two hundred thousand families [one million of people or two hundred thousand families, probably]. “Voyages and Transactions of the Portuguese: Castanneda, de Barros, de Faryia y Sousa, Antonio da Silva Menezes, &c.”

The Tārīkh-i-Firūz Shāhī says “Lākhanawatī acquired the by-name of Bulghāk-pār—place of great sedition—from ğūr signifying much noise, tumult,
He was a man of pleasing mien, of exceeding handsome appearance, and both his exterior and interior were [adorned] by the perfection of mercy; and he was magnanimous, just, and munificent. During his reign the troops and inhabitants of that country enjoyed comfort and tranquillity; and, through his liberality and favour, all acquired great benefits and reaped numerous blessings. In that country many marks of his goodness remained. He founded jāmī' [general] and other masjids, and conferred salaries and stipends upon good men among theologians, the priesthood, and descendants of the Prophet; and other people acquired, from his bounty and munificence, much riches. For example, there was an Imām-zādah* of the capital city, Fīrūz-koh, whom they used to style Jalāl-ud-Din, the son of Jamāl-ud-Din, the Ghaznavī, who, to better his means⁹, left his native country and came into the territory of Hindūstān in the year 608 H. After some years, he returned again to the capital city, Fīrūz-koh, and brought back with him abundant wealth and riches. Inquiry was made of him respecting the means of his acquisition of wealth. He related that, after he had come into Hindūstān, and determined to proceed from Dihlī to Lakhānawātī, when he reached that capital, Almighty God predisposed things so that he [the Imam, and Imam's son] was called upon to deliver a discourse in the audience-hall of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwāz, the Khalj'. That...
sovereign, of benevolent disposition, brought forth from his treasury a large chalice full of gold and silver *tangahs*, and bestowed upon him a present of about two thousand *tangahs*; and gave commands to his own Malikṣ and Amirṣ, Grandees and Ministers of State, so that each one presented, on his behalf, liberal presents. About three thousand gold and silver *tangahs* more were obtained. At the period of his return home [from Lakhanawati] an additional five thousand *tangahs* were acquired in gifts, so that the sum of ten thousand *tangahs* was amassed by that Imam, and Imam’s son, through the exemplary piety of that renowned monarch of benevolent disposition. When the writer of these words, in the year 641 H., reached the territory of Lakhanawati, the good works of that sovereign, in different parts of that territory, were beheld [by him].

The territory of Lakhanawati has two wings on either

---

8 The Haft-Iklīm states that the money of Bangalāh was confined to the *jital* [always written with ज—ज] according to the following table:

- 4 *jītalas* 1 Gandah, 20 Gandahs 1 Ānah, 16 Ānahs 1 Rūpī.

"Whatever the rūpī might be, whether 10 *tangahs* or 100 *tangahs*, it was reckoned as 16 ānahs, and there was no change whatever in the *jital* and the *gandah*."

From what our author has stated in several places in this work, however, it is evident that the *jital* was current in the kingdom of Dīlī, and Muḥammadān India, as well as in Bangalāh. See page 603.

Firīṣṭah [copying the Tarikh-i-Firiiz-Shahi] states with respect to the *tangah* that “it is the name given to a *tolah* of gold stamped, and that a *tangah* of silver was 50 *pīls*, each *pīl* [i.e. a piece of anything orbicular] of copper [bronze?] was called a *jital*, the weight of which is not known exactly, but I have heard that it was one *tolah* and three-quarters of copper [bronze?]”. Another writer states that there were 25 *jītalas* to 1 dām.

The word *tangah*—with ग not with क—signifies a thin plate, leaf, or slice of gold or silver, and appears to be an old Persian word. See Thomas: Pathan Kings of Dehli, pages 37, 49, 115, 219, and 230.

According to some other writers, however, the following table is also used:

- 4 *jītalas* 1 Gandah, 20 Gandahs 1 Pan, 16 Pan 1 Kahāwan, 16 Kahāwan [some call 20 a Riddha Kahāwan] 1 Rūpī.

According to the same account, 20 *kandis* made a *jital*.

Price, in his “Retrospect of Mahommēddān History,” in reference to the revenue of Hindūstān, says the “Tungah,” as far as he recollects, was considerably higher than the “Daum,” and “conceives it was the fifth of a rupee”!

9 Two copies have 644 H., which can scarcely be correct, and the remainder 641 H. Farther on he says he was in that part in 642 H. Our author appears to have set out from Dīlī for Lakhanawati in 640 H., reached it in 641 H., and returned to Dīlī again in the second month of 643 H.

4 Of course Bang is not included, and our author mentions it separately.
side of the river Gang. The western side they call Rál [Rārh⁴], and the city of Lakhan-or⁵ lies on that side; and the eastern side they call Barind⁷ [Barindah], and the city

⁴ I can easily fancy a foreigner writing Rál—r, or Rád—r, from hearing a Hindi pronounce the Sanskrit राठ—राध, containing, as it does, the letter which few but natives of the country can properly utter.

⁵ The printed text followed in ELLIOT has "Lakhnauti," but that is totally impossible, since it lay east, not west of the Ganges; its right pronunciation is, no doubt, Lakhan-or.

Most of the best copies of the text have Lakhan-or, both here and in other places where the same town or city is referred to; but two of the oldest and best copies have both Lakhan-or and Lakh-or both here as well as elsewhere. It appears evident to me that the n in the first word is nasal, and that its derivation is similar to that of Lakhanaawati, from the name of Dasarata's son, Lakhmana, with the Hindi word नाड़—n, affixed, signifying limit, boundary, side, &c. = Lakhmana's limit or frontier. In this case it is not surprising that some copyists left out the nasal n, and wrote Lakh-or, having probably the name read out to them. From the description of the dykes farther on in Section XXII., in the account of the different Maliks of the dynasty where the invasion of Jaj-nagar by the Musalmans is mentioned, and the invasion of the Musalmān territory by the Rāe of Jāj-nagar, Lakhan-or lay in the direct route between Lakhanaawati and Katāsin, the nearest frontier town or post of the Jāj-nagar territory; and therefore I think Stewart was tolerably correct in his supposition, that what he called and considered "Nagor," instead of Lakhan-or, was situated in, or farther south even than Bīrbhūm. It is by no means impossible that Dr. Blochmann's supposition may be correct, that Lakarkundhah [the Lacaracunda of Rennell] is the place in question. It is in the right direction, but seems not far enough south; and, if any indication of the great dyke or causeway can be traced in that direction, it will tend to clear up the point. Lakarkundhah lies about eighty-five miles as the crow flies from Gaur or Lakhanaawati, "right away from the river," but this Mr. Dowson, in ELLIOT, appears to think a proof of its being the wrong way, and he probably fancies that it should follow the Ganges. "Right away from the river," too, in the opposite direction, distant about eighty miles, lay Dīw-kot—Dīw and Dīb are the same in Sanskrit and Hindī—I—the total length from place to place, allowing for deviations, being a very moderate "ten days' journey." There is no doubt whatever as to the correct direction of Jāj-nagar and its situation with regard to Lakhan-or and Lakhanaawati, as mentioned in note ⁴, page 587.

⁷ In some copies Barbind, but Barind or Barinda is correct. In one copy of the text the vowel points are given. I do not know the derivation of the Sanskrit word—राठ Rārh, but बृह्द—Brind or Wrind, signifies a heap [high!], and it is possible that the former may signify low, depressed, being subject to inundation; and Brinda [the Barinda and Barind of the Musalmān writers], high, elevated, not being subject to inundation. Hamilton says the part liable to inundation is called Bang, and the other Barendm. See also the account of Malik Tamur Khān-i-Ki-rān in Section XXII., where Lakhān-or is styled Lakhanaawati Lakhan-or.

Barind, under the name of "the Burin," is well known to sportsmen, I am told, in the present day, who apply it to the high tract of country N.W. of Rām-pūr, in the Rāj-Shahi district.

Terry says, alluding to the "two wings," "Bengala, a most spacious and
of Diw-kot is on that side. From Lakanawati to the
gate of the city of Lakan-or, on the one side, and, as far
as Diw-kot, on the other side, he, Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din,
'Iwaz, [caused] an embankment [to be] constructed, ex-
tending about ten days' journey, for this reason, that, in
the rainy season, the whole of that tract becomes inundated,
and that route is filled with mud-swamps and morass; and,
if it were not for these dykes, it would be impossible [for
people] to carry out their intentions, or reach various
structures and inhabited places except by means of boats.
From his time, through the construction of those embank-
ments, the route was opened up to the people at large.

It was heard [by the author] on this wise, that, when the
august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din [I-yal-timish], after the
decease of Malik Nāsir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh [his eldest
son], came into the territory of Lakanawati to suppress
the sedition of Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din-i-Balka, the Khalj, and
held the good works of Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the
fruitful Province, but more properly to be called a Kingdom, which hath two
very large Provinces within it, Purab [Pūrab] and Patan [Pachcham]; the one
lying on the East, the other on the West side of the River Ganges. * * * The
chief Cities are Rangamahat and Dekaka."

* Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 319.

* These embankments, according to other writers likewise, were constructed
through the perseverance and forethought of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwaz.
Another author states that the "former ancient rulers of Bang, the present
capital of which is Dhakah, on account of the vast quantity of water which
accumulates throughout the province in the rainy season, caused causeways to
be constructed twenty cubits wide and ten high, termed al [ ]], and, from the
proximity of these als, the people styled the province BANG-AL. Rain falls
without ceasing during one-half of the year in the rainy season, and, at this
period, these als appear above the flooded country."

A European writer, writing on the province "as at present constituted," says:
"There are several remarkable military causeways which intersect the whole
country, and must have been constructed with great labour; but it is not known
at what period. One of these extends from Cooch Bahar [Kūch Bihār] through
Rangamatty [Rangamati] to the extreme limits of Assam [Aṣhām], and was
found when the Mahommedans first penetrated into that remote quarter." He,
of course, must mean the Muḥammadans of Aurangzeb's reign.

Hamilton states that one of these causeways extended from the Diwhah to the
Brahmā-putr.

1 In the list of Maliks at the end of Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish's reign,
further on, he is styled Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā, and, by
some, is said to be the son of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, and, by others, a
kinsman. Another author distinctly states that the son of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-
Din, 'Iwaz, was named Nāsir-ud-Din-i-'Iwaz, and that he reigned for a short
time. See also page 617.
Khalj, whenever mention of Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwaz's name chanced to arise, he would style him by the title of “Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, Khaljī,” and from his sacred lips he would pronounce that there could be no reluctance in styling a man Sultān who had done so much good. The Almighty's mercy be upon them! In short, Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, was a monarch worthy, just, and benevolent. The parts around about the state of Lakhanawati, such as Jāj-nagar, the countries of Bang, Kāmrūd, and

What extreme magnanimity! Reluctance or not, Sultān Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, had as good a title to be called Sultān as Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timiş, or any other who preceded or followed him; and, moreover, he had never been a slave, nor the slave of a slave. I-yal-timiş was not his suzerain until he gained the upper hand. It was only 'Ali-i-Mardān who was subject to Kuft-ud-Din, I-bak.

Compare Dowson's ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 319, where Jaj-nagar is made to appear as being part of the Lakhanawati territory: there is nothing even in the printed text to warrant such a statement.

Dr. Blochmann's surmises [CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF BENGAL, page 29] are quite correct with respect to Jaj-nagar. It appears to have been named after a town or city of that name, subsequently changed in more recent times to Jāj-pūr, the meaning of nagar and pūr being the same; and in the days when our author wrote, and for many years subsequently, it continued to be a kingdom of considerable power.

Before attempting to describe the boundaries of Jāj-nagar, and generally to elucidate the subject, it will be well to describe the territory of Kadhah-Katankah, or Gadha-h-Katankah—for it is written both ways—which lay between it and the Muḥammadan provinces to the north.

The best account of it I find in the Ma'dan-i-Akhbar-i-Ahmadi, of which the following is an abstract:—"The country of Kadhah-Katankah they call Gondwānah, because the Gonds, a countless race, dwell in the jangals of it. On the E., by Ratan-pūr, it reaches the territory of Chhar Kund; on the W. it adjoins the fort of Rasin of Mālah. It is 150 ārūk in length, and 80 in breadth. On the N. it is close to the Bhatāb territory [the Bhati of the A'in-i-AKBARi], and S. is close to the Dakhan; and this tract of country they call Kadhah-Katankah. It is very mountainous, and has many difficult passes and defiles, but is exceedingly fruitful, and yields a large revenue. It has forts and kasbahs [towns], so much so that trustworthy narrators say that it has 70,000 [the MS. has 7000 in figures and seventy thousand in words] inhabited kayahs [49—it. a concourse of people, a village. It does not mean a city]. Kadhah or Gadha-h is a great city, and Katankah is the name of a mouza [district, place, village], and by these two names this territory is known. [Katankah, however, must have been remarkable for something or other for the country to be called after it.] The seat of government of this region is Churā-gārḥ, and there are several Rājahs and Rāes in it."

Faizi, Sarhindi, in his History, calls the country Jhār-Kundah instead of Chhār Kund; and both he and the Khulāsāt-ut-Tawārīkh say that it had 70,000 or 80,000 inhabited kayahs, and they both agree generally with the above as far as they go; but they state that Amūdah [Amūdah?] is the name of
Tirhut, all sent tribute to him; and the whole of that territory named Gaur passed under his control. He acquired one of the principal towns of Kaḍhah Katankah, and the first of importance reached by Asif Khan when he invaded it in Akbar's reign. The Rānī, Durgāwatī, issued from her capital, Chūrā-gaṛh, to meet the Musalmāns, who had never before ventured into those parts. They halted at Damūh, Lat. 23° 50' N., Long. 79° 30' E., between the capital and Āmūdāh.

From the above statements, as given in the works just quoted, the tract of country adjoining Bihar on the S. and Bangālah on the W. is Bhatah or Bhati, which probably included Palamāo, Chhotaḥ Nāg-pūr, and Gang-pūr, on the W.; and the tract adjoining Bhāṭah on the W., and immediately joining the district of Ruhtās-gaṛh on the N., was Chhār-Kuṇḍ or Ḫār-Kuṇḍañ, lying on the right bank and upper part of the Soṇ, and stretching towards Ratan-pūr. Still farther W., between Ratan-pūr and the Narbadah, but running in a S.W. direction, and stretching from the left bank of the Soṇ, on the one side, to Rāṣīn of Mālwaḥ, on the other, and S. to the hills, the northern boundary of Birār, was Kaḍhah-Katankah.

Terry, in his Voyage, says that the chief city of Xanduana [Gondwaṇa] is called Karhakatenka [,], and that the river Sersiy parts it [Kanduana] from Pīlan. More respecting the capital of Jāj-nagar will be found farther on.

Jāj-nagar appears, therefore, to have been bounded on the E. by the range of hills forming the present W. boundary of Īdīsah-Jag-nāthth, Kātāsīn, on the Mahā-nādi, being the nearest frontier town or post towards the Lakhān-or portion of the Lakhānawatī territory. Further N. it was bounded towards the E. by the river called the Braminy by some English writers, and Soank by Rennell [I always adopt the native mode of spelling if I can find it, the fanciful transliteration of Gazetteer writers ignorant of the vernacular spelling notwithstanding], running to the W. of Gang-pūr. Its northern boundary is not very clearly indicated [but see Sulṭān Frūz Shāh's excursion farther on], but it evidently included Ratan-pūr and Sanbhāl-pūr. On the W. it does not seem to have extended beyond the Wana-Gāŋā, and its feeder the Kahan; but its southern boundary was the Goḍawīri, and S.W. lay Talingānāh.

I am surprised to find that there is any difficulty with regard to the identification of Kātāsīn, also called, and more correctly, Katāsinghā. Our author, farther on, says he himself went thither along with the Musalmān forces, and distinctly states that, "at KATASIN, the frontier of the JAJ-NAGAR territory commences." This place is situated on the northern or left bank of the Mahā-nādi, which river may have altered its course in some degree during the lapse of nearly seven centuries, some thirty miles E. of Boada, in about Lat. 20° 32', Long. 84° 50'; and some extensive ruins are to be found in its neighbourhood. The capital of the Jāj-nagar state, our author distinctly states, was named Ūmūrdan or Úmmardan—اومودن—according to the oldest and best copies of the text; and Umrūdān or Armaradan—یوردن—and Uzmrūdān or Aẓmrūdān—زوردن—in the more modern copies; and, in one, Uzmūrdān or Aẓmardān—زمادان The wilāyat—country or district—of Ūmūrdān or Úmmardān is mentioned, as well as the capital, town, or city of that name. There is a place named Amar-kantak, or Amar-kantaka—اڦڻکانئک—in Lat. 22° 40', Long. 81° 50', where are the remains of a famous temple of Bhawānī or Pārwatī, which may be the site of our author's
It seems most strange that those who have run away with the idea that Jaj-nagar lay east of the Ganges and the Megnah, in south-eastern Bengal—in Tiparah of all places—never considered how it was possible for Ulugh Khan, son of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Tughlaq—not that monarch himself—to invade Taling [Talinganah] and Tiparah, if the latter were Jaj-nagar, in one and the same short campaign, or that Hoshang, Sultan of Mälwah, during a short expedition or raid rather, could have reached south-eastern Bengal in search of elephants. To have done so, he would have had to pass right through, and return again through, the extensive territory of an independent sovereign equally powerful with himself [he had only 1000 horse with him on the occasion in question], and to have crossed and recrossed two or three mighty rivers, besides many others of considerable size, or he forded the Bay of Bengal perhaps to reach the supposed Jaj-nagar.

Elphinstone, too, on the authority of Hamilton [Hindostan, vol. i. page 178], who says that "Tiparah," by Mahomedan historians, is called "Jagnagar," has fallen into the same error; and, not content with this, even the map accompanying his History has "Jajnagar" in large letters in a part of India where no such territory ever existed! Hamilton would have had some difficulty, I think, in naming the "Mahommedan Historians" who made such assertions. The name of one would much surprise me.

The way in which Jaj-nagar is mentioned in different places, by different writers, and under different reigns, clearly indicates its situation. Ulugh Khan, son of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Tughlaq, on his second campaign into the Dakhan, having reached Dīw-gīr [Dharāgarh], advanced into Taling [Talingānah], took Bidr, and invested Arangul [Arangul]; now Warangul. Having captured it, and given it the name of Sultan-pūr, before returning to Dihīf, he went for amusement or diversion [recreation] into JAJ-NAGAR. He merely crossed the frontier of Talingānah.

Hoshang, Sultan of Mälwah, taking with him 1000 picked horsemen disguised as horse-dealers, set out from Māndhū or Māndhūn, and entered the JAJ-NAGAR territory in quest of elephants. He managed to seize the Rāe of Jaj-nagar by stratagem, obtained a number of elephants, and brought him along with him, partly for his own security, on his way back to Mälwah; and, on reaching the frontier of the JAJ-NAGAR state [on the side of Mälwah], he set the Rāe at liberty.

The Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh-i-Hind states that Jaj-nagar is a month's journey from Mälwah, but from what part of Mälwah is not said.

The first ruler of the Sharkī dynasty of Jūnpūr—the eunuch who is turned into a "Pathān" by the archeologists—extended his sway as far as the territory of Kol to the south; and, on the east, as far as Bihār; and compelled the rulers of LAKHANAWATI and JAJ-NAGAR to pay him tribute.

In 680 H. Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, Balban, set out towards Lakhanawatī to reduce Tūghrīl, his rebellious governor of Bangālah, who had defeated two armies sent against him. On the approach of the Sultan and his army, Tūghrīl, who had been making preparations for retreat, retired towards the territory of JAJ-NAGAR. On the Sultan's arrival at Lakhanawatī, no trace of the rebel could be found; but, discovering subsequently whither he had gone, he set out in pursuit in the direction of JAJ-NAGAR, until he arrived at a place some seventy kos from that territory, when a patrol from the advanced guard of his
The august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din wa ud-Dunyā [I-yaltimish], on several occasions, sent forces from the capital, army, having gained information of his whereabouts, surprised Tughril encamped with his forces on the banks of a river, at and around a large stone reservoir, and slew him. The next march would have brought him to the Jāj-Nagar territory. The river, no doubt, was the boundary.

The Tarikh-i-Firiz-Shahi of Ziya-ud-Din, Barani, differs from this account, and says—according to the Calcutta printed text—that Tughril fled to Haji-nagar—Gele—but there is no ८ in JAJ-NAGAR, and, if Ziyā-ud-Dīn's text is correct, it is a different place altogether.

"The Sultan, following in pursuit by successive marches, in a certain number of days, arrived on the frontier of Sunār-gāṅ [or kingdom of Bang], the Rāe of which—Dinwāj by name [sic]—paid homage to the Sultan, and stipulated that, in case Tughril evinced a desire to fly towards the sea [५४७ also means river], he should prevent his doing so. Proceeding by successive marches, the Sultan had reached within 60 or 70 kos of JAJ-NAGAR, when information of Tughril's whereabouts was obtained," &c. From this statement it would seem that the place in question, whether Haji-nagar or Jaji-nagar, was beyond Sunār-gāṅ; but it is not said whether any great river was crossed, neither is it stated that the Sultan marched eastwards, and he might—and, in case JAJ-NAGAR is correct, as stated in the extract above, he must—have turned to the south-west on reaching the frontier of Sunār-gāṅ. I am inclined, however, to think that Sangarak, mentioned in the fourth para. below, is correct, and not Sunār-gāṅ. Where the Sunār-gāṅ frontier commenced we know not; but it must have been a territory of some extent, as it was ruled, subsequently, by a "Sultan." A district of this name is also mentioned by Ziya-ud-Dīn as lying near Talingānah.

Be this as it may, however, the following extract, taken from the Tarikh-i-Firuz-Shahi of Shams-i-Saraj, Alī, Tabakat-i-Akbari, and others, will, I think, tend to settle the question respecting the situation of the JAJ-NAGAR territory:—

In 754 H. [Alīf, 755 H.] Sultan Firuz Shāh set out for Bangālah to reduce its ruler, Ilyās, Hājī [Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn], to subjection. On Sultan Firuz Shāh's reaching the vicinity of Pandūjah, Ilyās evacuated it, and threw himself into Akdālah [also written Akdalah], "a mouga" near Pandūjah, on one side of which is the water [a river?] and on the other an impenetrable jangal, and considered one of the strongest fortifications of Bangālah [Westmacott, in the Calcutta Review for July, 1874, places Ekdala [Akdalah] some forty-two miles on the Maldah side of the river Tangan, and north of Gaur or Lakhnapat—including the later city of Gour, as he styles it], and so situated that, in the rainy season, the whole country would become flooded, and not a piece of elevated ground would be left for the Sultan even to pitch his tent on. Another writer calls it an island or insular fortress. He came and encamped, according to one of these works, on the bank on the other side of the water facing it; but the others state that he encamped his forces near the place on the same side. As he had to change the position of his encampment after a short time, this movement led Ilyās to imagine that the Sultan was about to retire; and he sallied forth with his troops and attacked the forces of Firuz Shāh, but sustained a complete overthrow, and had to retire into his stronghold again. The rains having commenced, Firuz Shāh had to abandon the investment, came to terms with Ilyās, and retired towards his own dominions by the Mānik-pūr ferry.
Dihli, towards Lakhanawati, and acquired possession of Bihar, and installed his own Amirs therein. In the year

On several occasions Ilyas sent presents to the Sultan, and others were awarded to him in return, until, in the year 759 H., when, Ilyas having despatched his offerings, Sultan Firuz Shäh sent him presents in return; but, information having reached him from Bihar of Ilyas’s death, and of his son, Sikandar’s succession, Firuz Shäh ordered his presents to be stopped; and, in 760 H., he set out for Bangalah with an army of 80,000 horse and 470 elephants. The rains coming on, he passed the rainy season at Zafar-ābād, and founded the city of Jīn-pūr. Sikandar, on his approach, retired to the fortress of Akdalah, before which Sultan Firuz Shäh sat down; but, after a few days, an accommodation was come to, and the territory of Sunār-gānūr was given up to Sikandar, and Firuz Shäh retired towards Jīn-pūr. On the Sultan’s reaching Pandūlah [this shows that Akdalah was northward or eastward of it, and beyond it], seven elephants and other valuable property, sent by Sikandar as part of his tribute, reached his camp.

I notice in the Indian Atlas, sheet No. 119, in the parganah of “Debekote,” as it is styled—of course Diw-kot or Dib-kot is meant—between Lakhanawati and Dīnjā-pūr, a place named Damduma, and near it an old fort, and, to the east of it, three large tanks. The name is evidently a corruption of damdamah—a cavalier, a mound, &c.; and it strikes me, since the name of Akdalah is not mentioned in history for some time after the Khalj dynasty passed away, that the name of Diw-kot was changed to Akdalah in after years. Dr. Blochmann, I believe, identifies Diw-kot—probably on good grounds—with Gungārām-pūr, which I do not find in the Atlas sheet referred to; but, I should think, from the description given of the great causeway, at the northernmost extremity of which Diw-kot is said, at page 586, to have been situated, that Diw-kot must have lain north instead of south of Dīnjā-pūr.

[Since this note was written, I find the last number of the Bengal Asiatic Journal, No. III. 1874, contains an account of the site of Akdalah and a map showing its situation, as promised by Westmacott, in a previous number; and, I believe, the situation to be very nearly identical with the “Damduma” I have referred to, but have not examined the map in question.]

On his reaching Jīn-pūr the rains again set in [760 H.], and he stayed there during the rainy season, and, in Zī-Hijjah of that year, set out by way of Bihār towards Jāj-Nagar, which was at the extremity of the territory of Gadhah-Katankah [का०] When the Sultan reached Kārāb [की०—opposite Mānik-pūr ?], Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, brother of Zaffir Khān, was left behind with the troops and the heavy equipage, and he advanced with celerity through Bihār towards Jāj-Nagar. On his reaching Sangaarah or Sankarah—[संके०] who copies wholesale from the Tabakat-i-Akbari, has, in my copy of the text, गाजिराम—meant probably for गाजिराम—but Firishtah, who also copies from the former, has seen Blochmann, page 30. Can it be the present Sirgojah, so called?] Rāe Sāras [سازخس—Firishtah], Rajah of Sankarah, fled, and his daughter fell into the Sultan’s hands, and he called her daughter [adopted her ?], and protected her. Firishtah styles her Shākar Khātīn, an impossible name for a Hindū, unless she became a convert to Islām, and was afterwards so named. [I do not know what Briggs’s version may contain, but Dow has left out a great deal here.] Ahmad Khān, who had fled from Lakhanawati, and had reached the fort of Rantabhūr, and presented himself before Sultan
622 H. he [I-yal-timish] resolved upon marching into Lakhānawati; and Sulṭān Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, 'Īwāz, moved his

Firūz Shāh. Having passed the river Mahā-nārif, Mahān-dārf, or Mahān-dārif [sic in MSS.—Budā'ūnī—Farīstah—the river which falls into the Sūn doubtless is meant], he reached the city or town of Banārsī [Shams-i-Sarāj and Alff have Banārās—or Barās—and Budā'ūnī Bārānī—Kārīl] which is the capital and abode of the Rāe of Jāj-Nāgar [Shams-i-Sarāj has Rāe of Jāj-nagar-Ūḍīsah]. The Rāe fled towards Taling [Talingānāh], and the Sulṭān not pursuing him [Farīstah says pursuing], proceeded to hunt elephants in the vicinity [Shams-i-Sarāj says the Sulṭān remained some time at Banārās, and the Rāe took shelter in one of the islands of the river, or on a river]. [See the Asiatic Journal, vol. xiv., July to December 1822, page 438, in which is a good account of this tract of country, entitled "Notes on Birār"], during which time the Rāe despatched emissaries and sought for peace, sending at the same time three elephants, besides rarities and precious things [Shams-i-Sarāj says after his return from Padmāwatī]. Hunting as he went along, the Sulṭān reached the territory of Rāe Bāhānu Dīw [Shams-i-Sarāī, Bīr-bhān Dīw—Alff, Fīr-māhī Dīw—perhaps Bīr-Māhī] who sent him some elephants. He then returned from thence with the object of hunting, came to Padmāwatī—South Bihār probably—which is a part abounding with elephants, captured thirty-three, and killed two which could not be secured.

The Ṭabakat-i-Akbarī, Farīstah, and Budā'ūnī, quote a verse composed on the occasion by Malik Zīyā-ud-Dīn, thus showing to what extent the two latter—particularly Farīstah—copied from the former; but Farīstah appears somewhat confused in the latter part of his account, or has made considerable verbal alterations for some purpose; whilst Budā'ūnī [MS.] says the Sulṭān left Bārānī [Bānarsi?] and proceeded from thence to Bādwatī—Padmāwatī?—and Bram-Talā [Bām-Talā] to hunt elephants.

From Padmāwatī Sulṭān Firūz Shāh returned to Karah in Rajab, 762 H.

Jāj-Nāgar is mentioned on several other occasions in the history of the Dakhan, and its whereabouts distinctly indicated. Sulṭān Firūz, Bahmani, entered it in 815 H., and carried off a number of elephants. In the account of Nīghān Shāh, of the same dynasty, Jāj-Nāgar and Īḍīsah are mentioned as totally separate territories. In the reign of Muḥammad Shāh, son of Humāyun, a famine having arisen in his dominions, people migrated in order to obtain food into Mālwa, Jāj-Nāgar, and Gujārat; and, shortly after, the Rāe of Īḍīsah, aided by the Rāe of Jāj-nagar, invaded Talingānāh by way of the Rāj-mandri district.

Now, if any one will look at the map, and take what has been mentioned into consideration, where else can Jāj-nagar possibly lie than in the tract I have indicated? Certainly not on the east side of the Bay of Bengal.

It may not be amiss here to say a few words respecting the ancient boundaries of Bangālāh as described by different authors, although little remains to be said after Dr. Blochmann's elaborate paper on the subject before referred to.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh of Fakīr Muḥammad says that the territory which in after times was styled Bangālāh, according to such writers as have written about it, consisted of Bihār, Gauḍha or Gauṛ or Lakhānawati, Bang, and Jāj-Nāgar. During the campaign in Bangālāh, in Aurangzeb's time, against his brother Shāh Shuja', the Afghān Zamīndār of Bīrbhāum and Jāṭ-nagar is said to have joined him. According to the 'Ā'in-i-Akbarī, the Šūbāh of Bangālāh from Gāḍhī to the port of Chitàganw [Chittagong] is 400 kūroh in breadth; and, from the mountains bounding it on the north to the uncultivated tract [वादा]
vessels [war-boats?] up the river. A treaty of peace was concluded between them, and the Sultan [I-yal-timish] extorted thirty-eight elephants and eighty laks of treasure, and the Khutbah was read for him, and the coin stamped in his name. When the Sultan [I-yal-timish] withdrew,

6 Another writer says he had all the boats on the river removed and secured, in order to prevent Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, from crossing with his forces to the Lakhanawati side of the Gang.

7 Some histories, including the Tabakat-i-Akbarf, say the two Sultans did encounter each other in battle in 622 H.; but, as no details are given, it could have been but a skirmish. A peace was entered into, and Sultan Ghiyás-ud-Din, 'Iwāz, gave, as an acknowledgment of suzerainty, for the sake of peace which he himself soon after broke, 38 elephants and 80 laks of silver tangahs. Another writer says Ghiyás-ud-Din, 'Iwāz, despatched forces upon several occasions to carry on war against Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish [the latter's officers or his governors of Awadh probably]; but at length peace was concluded on the terms above stated.

The Tazkarat-ul-Mulik states that this sum was in silver tangahs; and of sarkār Madāran [also written Madārān—مادران], 200 in breadth; but, as the country of Ėdīsah was annexed to it on the settlement of the province in Akbar's reign, and its formation into a Šubāh, its length became increased 43 kuroh, and its breadth 20. The tract of country to the W. of Bangalāh is named Bhāṭṭāh or Bhāṭṭī, which is accounted as belonging to this country [Bangalāh], and Mānik is the surname of its rulers. To the north is a territory called Kūj [Kūch?] and Kāmrūd, also called Kānwrū. At the side of this is the territory of the Rājah of Āshām, and adjoining it is Tibbat, and to the left of it Khiṭā. To the E. and S. of Bangalāh is an extensive country named Arkhānāk [turned into Arracan by Europeans], and the port of Chātgnaw belongs to it. In the sarkār of Mangīr, from the river Gang to the Koh-i-Sangīn [the Stony Mountains], they have drawn [किंकड़े एन्डम ।] a wall, and account it the boundary of Bangalāh.

The Haft-Iklīm says Bangalāh is 300 kuroh in length and 270 in breadth, each kuroh being one mīl [1]. On the E. it is bounded by the sea, on the W. it has the parganah of Suraj-gārḥ, which adjoins the Šubāh of Bihār, on the N. it is bounded by Kūch, and on the S. by the parganah of Jasūdāh [turned into Jessore by Europeans], which lies between Ėdīsah and Bangalāh. The Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh agrees generally with the other two works, but states that Bangalāh is 400 kuroh from E. to W.—from Chātgnaw to Gāḍhī—and 200 from N. to S.; that it has the Šubāh of Bihār on the W., on the S. the high hills of sarkār Māṇḍhā—[in two other MSS. 526 and 529], and the sea on the E.

The A'in says it was divided [in Akbar's reign] into 24 sarkārs, and yielded a revenue of 52 kūrurs, 4 laks, and 59,319 dams. The Haft-Iklīm states that it was divided [in Jahāngīr's reign] into 22 tūmans [or sarkārs], and its revenue amounted to 5 laks, 97,570 rūpīs, which, at 40 dāms the rūpi, are equivalent to 23 kūrurs, 9 laks, and 2800 dāms. There must be a mistake somewhere, as this amount of Jahāngīr's revenue is not half that of Aurangzīb's time, while Akbar's revenue greatly exceeds Aurangzīb's.

According to the Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh, it was divided [in Aurangzīb's reign] into 27 sarkārs, and yielded 46 kūrurs and 29 laks of dāms.
he conferred Bihar upon Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Jānī; and Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwāz, marched into Bihar from Lakhnawati, and [again] took possession of it, and treated it with severity, until, in the year 624 H., the august Malik Naṣir-ud-Din, Mahmūd Shāh, son of Sultan Shams-ud-Din [I-yal-timish], at the instigation of Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Jānī, assembled the forces of Hindūstān, and marched from Awadh and proceeded into Lakhnawati. At this time Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwāz-i-Husain, the Khalj, had led an army from Lakhnawati towards the territory of Kāmrūd and Bang, and had left the city of Lakhnawati further—in which the Tabakat-i-Akbarī and some others agree—that I-yal-timish conferred a canopy of state and a dūr-bāsh [see note 5, page 607] upon his eldest son, Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, declared him heir-apparent, bestowed Lakhnawatī upon him, and left him in Awadh with jurisdiction over those parts. Mahmūd Shāh may have been left in Awadh with charge of that part, but not of Lakhnawati certainly; for Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwāz, ruled over his own territory up to the time of his death. The son of I-yal-timish was probably left in Awadh to watch for a favourable time for invading or seizing the Khalj dominions, which he soon found an opportunity of doing.

8 He is styled in several copies, but it cannot be correct, considering, he died a natural death, according to our author's own account, as given at page 630. The word jest no doubt, is an error for August, &c.


1 In the account of Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, page 629, and here also, in some copies of the text, and in some other works, he is styled 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī. He is, no doubt, the personage referred to in the list of relatives and chiefs at the end of Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish's reign, under the title of Shāh-zādah, or Prince of Turkistān; but he only served I-yal-timish: he was no relative. Soon after Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, returned to Dihlī, Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, marched into Bihār, and regained possession of it, compelling Malik Jānī to fly into Awadh. The Khalj ruler held possession of it for some time, until the year 624 H., when Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, I-yal-timish's eldest son, who held the government of Awadh, incited by Malik Jānī and some other chiefs, and taking advantage of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz's absence on an expedition against the infidels on his eastern frontier in Bang and Kāmrūd, with the greater part of his forces, suddenly and without any previous intimation, invaded his dominions with a great army, including forces sent by his father for the same purpose. As soon as Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, received information of it, he made all haste back to defend his kingdom; but whether part of or all his army returned with him is doubtful, and no aid from without could reach him, except through Hindūstān. The enemy had already taken the capital, and, in a great battle subsequently fought between him and the invaders, Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, with most of his chiefs, were taken captive and afterwards put to death. Some state that he was slain in the battle. A son of his (by some accounts a kinsman)—Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā—subsequently regained and held sway over the territory for a time, and Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, had to proceed in person against him with a great army.
unprotected. Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, took possession of it; and Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Īwaz-i-Ḥusain, the Khalj, on account of that disaster, returned from that force [which he had led into Kāmrūd and Bang?], and fought an engagement with Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Īwaz-i-Ḥusain, and the whole of the Khalj Amīrs, were taken prisoners, and Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Īwaz, was martyred. His reign extended over a period of twelve years².

² According to our author, Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Īwaz, the Khalj, was the last of the Muʿīzzi Sultāns of Hind; and he is the person respecting whom Elphinstone has been betrayed into such mistakes noticed in note 7, page 610. According to the Gaur MS. he reigned twelve years, from 606 H. to 617 H., and was succeeded by his son, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, 'Īwaz, who reigned for a short time, and whose name has been already mentioned in note 1, page 586. See also pages 617 and 626. The events which happened after the decease of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Īwaz, are involved in great obscurity; but the above dates are not correct.

In concluding this portion of the Section on the Khalj dynasty of Lakhānawatī, I would mention that I am not personally acquainted with Bengal; but I venture to hope that these notes, imperfect as they are, will aid in further research. The district officers will be able to follow up the inquiry with facility.
SECTION XXI.

ACCOUNT OF THE SHAMSĪĀH SULTĀNS IN HIND.

The frailest of the servants of the Divine threshold, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī—God grant him the attainment of his wishes! states that, when the eternal will of God, the Most High and Holy, has willed to imprint on the forehead of a servant the signs of dominion and the light of power, and the mother of time becomes pregnant with an embryo of such a character, the gleam [characteristic] of such a burden will shine upon her brow.

When the time of her delivery arrives, and that lord of felicity becomes enveloped in the swaddling of his birth-place, joy, at the sight of that birth, becomes manifest in all things; and, from the period of his nativity to the time of his removal from this abode of service to the mansion of bliss, whether in activity or in repose, all his actions will be a source of gladness unto mankind, and of honour to both high and low. If his neck should be placed in the collar of servitude, his master becomes the possessor of affluence; and, if his footsteps venture upon journeys and in travelling stages, he will cause his companions to become the masters of prosperity, as in the case of the Patriarch Yūsuf. When Yūsuf was sold to Malik the son of Duʿar, at his

1 Our author here follows the life of men destined for sovereignty from the conception, and applies to them, somewhat blasphemously, the theory of the nur [light, &c.] of Muḥammad. The theologians assert that the first thing created was the light of Muḥammad. It shone forth from Adam’s forehead until Eve became pregnant by him of a son, when it was transferred to her. When she gave birth to the son [which? Cain or Abel?], it, of course, dwelt in him, and thus it was transferred, as the theologians aver, from the foreheads of the fathers to the wombs of the mothers, until it assumed flesh in Muḥammad. Our author has altered the theory in applying it to kings, in as far as the ray of light, which emanates from the child [لاط], shines forth from the brow of “the mother of time.”

2 In other words, when the child is born.
invocation, twenty [sons like] pearls* befitting a king were strung upon the thread of his line; and, notwithstanding he came [as a slave] into the dwelling of 'Azîz, he made, in the end, his ['Azîz's] spouse Queen of Miṣr; and, forasmuch as the infant in the cradle bore testimony to the purity of his garment's skirt—"a witness of the family bore testimony"—at length, in his ['Azîz's] service, Yûsuf became the Wazîr of that kingdom.


Since the Most High and Holy God, from all eternity, had predestined that the states of Hindiştân should come under the shadow of the guardianship of the great Sultân, the supreme monarch, Shams-ud-Dunyâ wa ud-Dîn, the shadow of God in the worlds, Abû-l-Muẓaffar, I yal-timîsh, the Sultân, the right arm of the Vicegerent of God, the aider of the Lord of the Faithful *—God illumine his convictions and weight the balance with the effects of his equity and beneficence, and preserve the dynasty of his descendants, on whom, of those who have passed away, be peace! and may the Nāṣirîah Maḥmûdîah sovereignty® perpetually continue in security and safety from the troubles of the end of time, and from the accidents and vicissitudes of the world!—that just and munificent Sultân, upright, benefi-

*I do not know what account of Yûsuf our author may have read, but this is different to what is contained in Tabârî and other writers of authority, and very different to the account given in the Kur'ân [Chap. xii.], and to his own account of Yûsuf in the first Section of this work. Yûsuf was sold for twenty pieces of silver.

* Written in some few copies of the text and by some other historians —I yal-timîsh, and —I yal-titnîsh in some works; but the above appears the correct mode of spelling. My oldest MS. gives the diacritical points. The first part of this compound word, which it evidently is, is the same as in I yal-Arsalân, I yal-duz, &c.; and the latter part of it is the same as occurs in Kaltîmîsh and the like. See note 2, page 133. Buda’ûnî says he was so called from having been born on a night during an eclipse of the moon, and that the Turks call a child born on such an occasion I yal-timîsh. I doubt this, however, for the reasons just mentioned in the beginning of this note.

* Yamin-i-Khâlîfah U’llah, Nāṣîr-i-Amîr-ul-Mumînin. See pages 617 and 624.

* The sovereignty of his son, our author's patron—Nâṣîr-ud-Dîn, Maḥmûd Shâh.
cent, a zealous and steadfast warrior against infidels, the patronizer of the learned, the dispenser of justice, in pomp like Faridūn, in disposition like Kubād, in fame like Kā-ūs, in empire like Sikandar, and in majesty like Bahram, was, Yūsuf like, from out of the Ilbari [or Albari] tribes of Turkistān, delivered over to merchants, until, from one degree to another, he was raised to the throne of empire and seat of dominion, so that the back of the Muḥammadan religion, through his sovereignty, waxed strong, and the development of the Ahmādī faith, through his valour, acquired pre-eminence. In intrepidity he turned out another impetuous 'Alī, and, in liberality, a second Hātim-i-Ṭā-i. Although the beneficent Sultan, Ḥuṭb-ud-Īn—on whom be peace! displayed to the world the bestowal of hundreds of thousands, the august and beneficent Sultan, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn—may he rest in peace!—in place of every hundred thousand of his, used to bestow a hundred [times a] hundred thousand, both in capacity and in computation, as, both in this world and in the next, may be accounted [in his favour].

Towards men of various sorts and degrees, Kāzīs, Imaams, Muftīs, and the like, and to darweshes and monks, landowners and farmers, traders, strangers and travellers from great cities, his benefactions were universal. From the very outset of his reign, and the dawn of the morning of his sovereignty, in the congregating of eminent doctors of religion and law, venerable Sayyids, Maliks, Amīrs, Ṣadrs, and [other] great men, the Sultan used, yearly, to expend about ten millions; and people from various parts of the world he gathered together at the capital city of Dihlī, which is

7 What coin, whether tangah or jītal, is not stated—there is a vast difference between them.

8 An author, describing Dihlī, states that, in the year 440 of Bikrāmajīt, Rājā Anang-pāl Tūn or Tūnār—the n is nasal [This is the word which, written न in some works, instead of ओ and ओ, and ओ, has been mistaken for पुर and पुरा—। See note*, page 84, para. 2; and Elliot, vol. ii., pages 47, 426, and 427; and Thomas: Pathān Kings of Dehlī, page 57]—founded the city of Dihlī, near to Indra-prastha. Subsequently, in the year 1200, or a little later, of the same era, Rāe Pithorā founded a city and fortress which were named after himself. Outside this fort, to the east, he raised a lofty structure which is still styled the Mohall of Rāe Pithorā. In the fortress Sulṭān Ḥuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, dwelt. The Shahr-i-Zaghan [?] or Chīyās-pūr was founded in 666 H.; and Gīlū-Khari [कील गर्दन]—not "Kiita Garhi," as Cunningham calls it] in 686 H.;
the seat of government of Hindūstān, and the centre of the circle of Islām, the sanctuary of the mandates and inhibitions of the law, the kernel of the Muḥammādi religion, the marrow of the Aḥmādī belief, and the tabernacle of the eastern parts of the universe—Guard it, O God, from calamities, and molestation! This city, through the number of the grants, and unbounded munificence of that pious monarch, became the retreat and resting-place for the learned, the virtuous, and the excellent of the various parts of the world; and those who, by the mercy of God, the most High, escaped from the toils of the calamities sustained by the provinces and cities of 'Ajām, and the misfortunes caused by the [irruption of the] infidel Mughals, made the capital—the asylum of the universe—of that sovereign their asylum, refuge, resting-place, and point of safety; and, up to the present day, those same rules are observed and remain unchanged, and such may they ever continue!

From a number of credible persons it has been heard narrated after this manner, that, when the beneficent Sultān, Shams-ud-Dīn, was young in years, and was called, by command of the Most High, from the territory of Turkistān and the families of the Ilbārī [tribe] to the empire of Islām and dominion of Hindūstān, it so happened that his father, who was named I-lām Khān, had numerous kindred, relations, dependents, and followers; and [that] this [future] sovereign, from his earliest years, was endowed with comeliness, intelligence, and goodness of disposition to a great degree, so much so that his brothers began to grow envious of these endowments. They therefore brought him away from his mother and father under the pretence that he should get sight of a herd of horses. Like as in the case of Yūsuf, they said,

but it must have been begun or have been a suburb long before, as it is mentioned certainly over fifty years before by our author. Tūghlāk-ābād, the Kuskh-i-La', and Fīrūz-ābād, now called the Kotilah of Fīrūz Shāh, were founded subsequently, besides many other additions of minor extent made. I have not space to say more.

9 Often referred to, but their names never mentioned.
10 Others say his father was the head or chief of a small community among the divisions or clans of the Ilbārī tribe in Turkistān. His name is written Yilm—Khan by some writers, and I-yl—Khan by others.

1 Some say he was taken by his brothers to some garden, under pretence of going thither for recreation and diversion.
‘Why, O father, dost thou not intrust Yūsuf to us, seeing that we are true friends of his? Send him along with us to-morrow into the pastures that he may divert himself, and we will be his protectors; and, when they brought him where the herds of horses were, they sold him to certain merchants; and some say that his uncle’s sons were among the party that sold him. The merchants brought him towards Bukhārā, and sold him to one of the kinsmen of the Ṣadr-i-Jahān [the chief ecclesiastic] of Bukhārā, and, for some time, in that family of eminence and sanctity, he remained. The most beneficent of that family used to nourish him in the hall of his kindness, like his own children in infancy.

One of the trustworthy has related, saying: “I heard from the blessed lips of that monarch himself, who said, “On a certain occasion, one of the [above-mentioned] family gave me a small piece of money, saying: ‘Go into the market and buy some grapes and bring them.’ When I set out for the market, I lost by the way that bit of money; and through my youthful age, out of fear at what had happened, I fell a crying. Whilst thus lamenting, I was joined by a good Darwesh who took me by the hand, and purchased for me some grapes which he gave me; and he made me promise [saying]: ‘When thou attainest unto power and dominion thou wilt ever regard devotees and ascetics with reverence, and watch over their weal.’ I gave him my promise; and all the prosperity and blessings, which I acquired, I acquired through the compassionate regard of that Darwesh.” The probability is that never

3 Kūr’ān, Chap. xii.

4 Others say that his brothers and brothers’ sons were concerned in this affair, and that the merchants were of Bukhārā.

5 See Dowson, in Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 320-1, who says—“When they brought him to the drove of horses they sold him to the dealer. . . . The horse-dealers took him to Bukhārā, and sold him to one of the relations of the chief judge of that city” &c. The printed text here is perfectly correct and as rendered above, with the exception of merchant for merchants in the first sentence. The word édzargéu does not mean “horse-dealer” any more than ass-dealer, for it signifies a merchant or trader.

6 Ṣadr also does not mean judge only: it has other meanings.

Being himself in this Sultan’s service, our author might have made himself acquainted with the events of his early days, instead of trusting to “one of the trustworthy,” and particularly as he stood so high in the monarch’s favour.
was a sovereign of such exemplary faith, and of such kind-heartedness and reverence towards recluses, devotees, divines, and doctors of religion and law, from the mother of creation ever enwrapped in the swaddling bands of dominion.

From that priestly and saintly family a merchant, whom they used to call the Bukhārā Ḥājī, purchased Shams-ud-Dīn. Subsequently, another merchant, whom they were wont to style Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, of the Tight Tunic, purchased him of the Bukhārā Ḥājī, and brought him to the city of Ghaznin. At that period, no Turk superior to him in comeliness, commendable qualities, agreeable manners, and of such indications of intelligence and sagacity, had they brought to that capital. He was mentioned in terms of commendation to the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, and command was given [by the Sultan] that they should name his price. He, along with another Turk, was in one team, and the latter Turk they were in the habit of calling I-bak. The sum of a thousand dinārs of pure Rukni gold was specified for the two.

6 The following curious anecdote is related of Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timīsh, by some authors. Sultan I-yal-timīsh was greatly enamoured of a Turkish slave-girl in his ḥaram, whom he had purchased, and sought her caresses, but was always unable, from some latent cause, to effect his object. This happened upon several occasions. One day he was seated, having his head anointed with some perfumed oil by the hands of that same slave-girl, when he felt some tears fall on his head from above. On looking up, he found that she was weeping. He inquired of her the cause. She replied "Once I had a brother who had just such a bald place on his head as you have, and it reminds me of him." On making further inquiries it was found that the slave-girl was his own sister. They had both been sold as slaves, in their early childhood, by their inhuman half-brothers; and thus had Almighty God saved him from committing a great crime. Budaʿīnī states in his work, "I heard this story myself, from the Emperor Akbar's own lips, and the monarch stated that this anecdote had been orally traced to Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balban himself."

7 Compare Elliott, vol. ii. page 321. Our author must certainly have had a recent birth in his family about the time he penned this account, or have been expecting one, since he uses so many "swaddling bands."

8 The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh states that, by some accounts, the kinsman of the Sadr-i-Jahān of Bukhārā sold Shams-ud-Dīn to Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, and that some say ʿUtb-ud-Dīn purchased him, and took him to Hind. A few copies have two thousand, but one seems to be correct. Another author says the sum was 1000 Kabkī dinārs, a second that it was 1000 for each, and Budaʿīnī says 1 lak of tangaks. It is not to be supposed that the Sultān fixed the price. There were brokers whose business it was to value
The Khwājah [merchant or master], Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, of the Tight Tunic, declined selling him [Shams-ud-Dīn] for that amount; and the Sultān commanded that no one should purchase him, and that [the sale] should be prohibited.

The Khwājah, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, after that he had stayed at Ghaznī a year, determined to proceed to Bukhārā, and he took Shams-ud-Dīn along with him thither, and, for another three years, he remained in Bukhārā. After that he was brought to Ghaznī a second time, and continued there for the period of another year, because it was not permitted that any one should purchase him, until Sultān 1 Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, after the holy war of Nahrwālah and the conquest 2 of Gujarāt, along with Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain-i-Khār-Mīl 3, proceeded to Ghaznī, and heard his story. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn solicited permission from Sultān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, to purchase him. The Sultān replied: “Since a command has been issued that he should not be purchased at Ghaznī, let them take him to the city of Dihlī and there he can be purchased 4.”

Kuṭb-ud-Dīn gave directions to Niẓām-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad 4, to remain behind at Ghaznī, for the purpose of transacting some affairs of his, and, after his own determination of returning to Hindūstān, requested him, on his return, to bring along with him to Dihlī, Jamāl-ud-Dīn of the Tight Tunic, in order that the purchase of Shams-ud-Dīn might be there effected. According to Kuṭb-ud-Dīn’s command, Niẓām-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, on his return, brought them [the two slaves] along with him to the capital, Dihlī; and Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn purchased both slaves, and another writer says “the brokers fixed the price of the two as our author states.”

1 Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn then, and still a mamlūk or slave.
2 For the events of this so called conquest, see the notes to the account of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak. The word used signifies victory, taking a city, &c., as well as conquest. The Mirʿāt-i-Jahān-Numā more correctly says, after taking Nahrwālah and chastisement [āṣ] of Bhīm Dīw. See notes 1 and 3, p. 516.
3 Ḥusain, son of Khār-mīl probably, although he may have had a brother named Naṣīr-ud-Dīn. See page 516.
4 The idiom varies considerably here in the different sets of copies of the text. Another writer says “buying or selling him in Ghaznī is not proper, after commands to the contrary: let them take him into the Dihlī territory and there sell him.”
5 See note 3, page 516, paragraphs 6 and 7.
the Turks for the sum of a hundred thousand jitals. The other Turk, named I-bak, received the name of Tam-ghāj, and was made Amir of Tabarhindah; and, subsequently, in the engagement which took place between Sultan Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, and that beneficent of his time—Sultan Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, he was killed. Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, was made Sar-i-Jān-dār [chief of the Jān-dārs or Guards] to Kuṭb-ud-Din, who styled him son, and retained him near himself, and he continued to rise in office and in dignity daily; and Kuṭb-ud-Din, discerning within him proofs of rectitude and integrity, both in movement and at rest, outwardly as well as inwardly, by the light thereof, advanced him from one position to another until he raised him to the office of Amir-i-Shīkār [Chief-

---

6 This sum is mentioned by several authors, but they probably copy our author's words. Respecting the jital see note 5, page 584. If this is correct it is evident that the jital must have been of a far higher value than there mentioned, and much more than that assigned to it by Thomas in his "PATHĀN KINGS OF DELHI," page 160 = ¼ of a silver tangah—about 2s. or a rūpī, or 100,000 jitals = 15624 rūpīs. As his Khwājah had refused the sum of 1000 rūkni dinārs for the two slaves, it is natural to suppose that he would not have sold them for less than that to Kuṭb-ud-Din, yet, at the value assigned to the jital by the Haft-Iklim—1280 to the rūpī—Kuṭb-ud-Din would have purchased them for little over 78 rūpīs and 8 ānahs, an impossible sum. Another work, the Taṣkārat-ul-Mulūk, says 50 laks of jitals, but even this would be but little over 3900 rūpīs. The sum mentioned by Budā‘ūnī is far more probable, namely a lax of tangahs. I have given elsewhere the meaning of ruknī. See Blochmann's translation of the A-in, page 31.

The name of the other Mamlik, I-bak, is turned into Taḵāhār, instead of Tamghāj, in the revised text of Firīșṭah, and instead of Tabarhindah it has Pathindah—Taḵāhār. Firīșṭah also asserts that Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, gave the other slave, who bore another name, that of I-yal-timish, but the opposite is the fact. The same writer also states that I-yal-timish accompanied his master in the expedition against Kālinjar in 599 H. Tamghāj must have been superior in every way, at that time, to have been, at once, made Amir of Tabarhindah.

7 The signification assigned by lexicographers to this word is armour-bearer, but Jān-dār also signifies a guardian, custodian, conservator, and the like. Under the Sultāns of Egypt it was the title of a class of officers, whose duty was to guard the door of the Sultān, to convey and enforce his orders with respect to Amīrān, and guard the prison styled the Zardah-khanah [Zard or Zarād], in which persons of rank were confined. The Amir-i-Jān-dār—equivalent to Sar-i-Jān-dār here—was the chief of these officers. This is the title, which, in ELLIOT, is turned into Sirjāndār Turkī referred to in note 6, page 608. See also Lane's Arabian Nights, note 91 to Chap. x. Firīșṭah says the Jāndārs were the جندس which means slaves; but such cannot be correct, for Sultān Mu‘izz-ud-Din himself was Sar-i-Jān-dār to his brother Ghiyās-ud-Dīn. The Jān-dārs were generally slaves, as most trustworthy, no doubt.
Huntsman]. Subsequently, when Gwāliyūr was taken, he became Amir of Gwāliyūr; and, after that, he acquired the fief of the town of Baran and its dependencies. Some time after this, as proofs of tact, energy, valour, and high-mindedness were unmistakeably displayed by him, and the beneficent Sultān, Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, noticed and marked all these [accomplishments] in him, he conferred upon Shams-ud-Din the fief of the territory of Budā'ūn.

When the Sultān-i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Sām, returned from his campaign against Khwārazm, and when, in the engagement at And-khūd, a reverse befell the troops of Khīṭā, and the Khokhar tribes had begun to rebel and manifest contumacy, he moved from Ghaznin for the purpose of making war on that unbelieving people. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, in conformity with the Sultān's orders, led the [available] forces of Hindūstān to the scene of action; and Shams-ud-Din, with the contingent troops of Budā'ūn, accompanied him.

During the engagement [which ensued], in the height of the conflict, Shams-ud-Din, in all his panoply, rode right into the water of the river Jīlam [Jhilam] in which those active had made their place of shelter, and displayed great valour, and by the wounds inflicted by [his men's?] arrows discomfited them; and his warlike feats,

8 After it was surrendered rather. See page 546. Another writer states that Baran and its dependencies were added to his fief of Gwāliyūr.
9 At this time, and for some time after, the fief of the territory of Budā'ūn was the highest in the Dihlī kingdom.
1 Our author in all the copies of the text, and the printed text likewise, both here, as well as under the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din, makes the false statement, which his own words prove untrue, that the forces of Khīṭā were defeated, when Mu'izz-ud-Din was so utterly overthrown with the loss of his whole army before Andkhūd [Inddakhūd], and would have been taken captive but for the intervention of Sultan 'Ugman of Samrākand. Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 322.
2 See note 5, page 481.
3 These people were converted to Muḥammadanism, according to Firighthah, who perhaps had no authority for so stating, previous to this. See same note, last para., page 484.
4 See note 1, page 481, para. 4.
5 Shams-ud-Din, according to another writer, having assembled together a considerable force from Budā'ūn and the Koh-pāyah, joined his master, Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din.
6 In some copies "rabble rout" or "set of vagabonds," &c. They appear to have taken shelter in one of the islands of the Jhilam.
7 The original merely mentions that "by arrow wounds he caused those
whilst in that water, reached such a pitch, that he was despatching those infidels from the height of the waters to the lowest depths of Hell:—"They were drowned, and cast into the fire [of hell]."

During that feat of agility and gallant exploit, the eye of the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Sám, fell on these proofs of boldness and valour, and he directed inquiry to be made respecting his quality. When the royal mind became enlightened on the subject of who he was, he sent for Shams-ud-Din, and distinguished him by conferring a special dress of honour upon him; and commanded Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, saying: "Treat I-yal-timish well, for he will distinguish himself." The Sultan further directed that they should draw up the deed of his freedom, and regarded him with his royal countenance, and conferred upon him the felicity of the free.

When Sultan Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, died at Lohor, the Sipah-Sālār [Commander of Troops] 'Ali-i-Ismā'īl, who was the Amīr-i-Dād [Lord Justice] of the capital city, Dihlī, in concert with other Amirs and high officials, wrote letters
to Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, at Budā'ūn, and besought him [to come thither and assume authority]. Having come, he ascended the throne of the kingdom of Dihli in the year 607 H., and took possession of it. As the Turks and Kuṭbī Amīrs from different parts had gathered together before Dihli, and some of the Turks and Mu'izzī Amīrs had also united with them, and were intent upon resistance [to this usurpation of authority on the part of I-yal-timish], they left Dihli, and came out, and they [all] combined in the immediate neighbourhood, and broke out into sedition and rebellion. The august Sulṭān, Shams-ud-Din, with the cavalry of the centre [contingents forming the centre division of the Dihli troops] and his own immediate followers, issued from the city of Dihli, and, in front of the plain of Jūd, overthrew them, and put most of the leaders [of the party] to the sword.

3 Compare Elliot, vol. ii., page 323.

3 The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says, in its usual inflated style, that "the Sar-i-Jān-dār, who was a Turk [he was not named 'Sar-i-Jān-dār, as in Elliot, vol. ii., page 237—for Sar-i-Jān-dār is the office this Turk held, see note 7, page 603], who was the head of all sedition, and who put forth his arm to shed Musalmān blood, with a body of sanguinary Turks [the Turks in the service of the Ghirān Sultāns were Musalmāns], broke out into rebellion. Although the Sulṭān had been often urged to repress their outbreak, he refrained, for some time, from doing so. At length he resolved to reduce them, and with a considerable army," &c.

This is no other than the affair mentioned under the account of Sultan Arām Shih, which see. What our author here means to say is, that those Turks and Mu'izzī and Kuṭbī Amīrs, and men of note, then in Dihli, did not join the Shamsī party, and they left the city and joined the partizans of the late Sulṭān's son, or, rather, adopted son, Arām Shāh. The Amīrs and Turks, however, were not finally reduced till some time after. See next page.

Another writer states that most of the Kuṭbī Amīrs submitted, but that some of them, in concert with several Mu'izzī Amīrs who were in Dihli and parts around, rose, collected together, and came to an engagement with Shams-ud-Din and his party; but their efforts were without avail, and they were defeated and put to the sword.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir states that the battle was fought close to the Bāgh-i-Jūn [Jūn?] near the capital, but other authors I have been quoting from time to time agree with the more modern copies of the text, and say it occurred in the Jūn plain [\. waste plain, &c.]; but all the oldest copies have as above. The Bāgh-i-Jūn, not Jūn, is often mentioned by our author.

The Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh says the defeated Amīrs were put to death at different times. See page 529, and note 4.

4 Some few modern copies and the printed text have "and directed that their heads should be brought under the sword," but there is not a word about their "horsemen." Firīṣṭah says two of the principal Amīrs, Aḵ-Sunkar...
Subsequently to this, Sultan Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, from Lohor and Ghaznin entered into a compact with him, and sent him a canopy of state and a Dür-basḥ. Between Sultan Shams-ud-Din and Malik [Sultan] Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kābā-jah, contention used continually to arise for the possession of Lohor, Tabarhindah, and Kuhṛām; and, in the year 614 H., the former inflicted a defeat upon Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kābā-jah.

Upon several other occasions, in different parts of the territories of Hindūstān, hostilities arose between him [Shams-ud-Din] and the Amirs and Turks; but, as the favour of the Most High was his aider and defender, He used to award victory to him, and all those who used to revolt against him, or rebel against his authority, used to be reduced. The Divine assistance and protection having, for a considerable time, been extended towards him, Sultan and Farruḵh Shāh, were killed, and that the Sar-i-Jān-dār fled with some others. The same author also states, contrary to his predecessors, that in 608 pri. I-yal-timish marched against the ruler of the Kasbah [1] of Jālūr— who bore the name of Ūdfisah [Ūdf Sah?], reduced him and extorted tribute! His authority for this is not given. At this period I-yal-timish was scarcely master of the Dihlī kingdom.

* This passage is thus rendered in ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 323. "Sultan Taju-ud-din made a treaty with him from Lahore and Ghazni and sent him some insignia of royalty."

The Dür-basḥ here referred to, which literally signifies "stand aside!" and does not mean "baton," was a kind of spear with two horns or branches, the wood of the staff of which used to be studded with jewels and ornamented with gold and silver. This used to be carried before the sovereign when he issued forth, in order that people, perceiving it from a distance, might know that the king was coming, and that they might make way for him by standing on one side. In battle also it was carried, so that, in case any one should cast a lasso—which was made of leather, and continued in use down to nearly recent times—in the direction of the king, it might, by the Dür-basḥ, be turned aside. Some others say, a canopy of state and other emblems of royalty were sent to I-yal-timish.

Firishtah states that I-yal-timish accepted a canopy of state and a standard from the Ḥākim of Ghaznīn for the latter's honour's sake! The Dakhani historian truly is a very great authority!

Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, was strong and powerful at this time, and the probability is that Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, sought to be recognized by him as ruler of Ghaznīn in succession to Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, thinking that such recognition would tend to make the Mu'izzī chiefs and Turks more compliant to his rule. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, Mu'izz-ud-Din's nephew, at this time was either dead—for there is great discrepancy as to dates—or he was powerless. See note 8, page 526, para. 5.

* Hindūstān refers here to the country immediately east of Dihlī, the Do-āb of Antarbed, &c. .
Shams-ud-Din brought under his jurisdiction all the different parts of the kingdom, and the dependencies of the capital, Dihli, together with Budā'ūn, Awadh, Banāras, and the Siwālikh.

Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, being obliged to evacuate [his territory] before the Khwārazmī army, retired towards Lohor; and between him and Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, hostilities arose about the boundaries [of their dominions], and an engagement took place between their respective armies at Tara'īn, in the year 612 H., and Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn was victorious. Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, was taken prisoner, and, in accordance with his [Shams-ud-Dīn's] command, they brought Yal-duz to Dihli, and sent him [from thence] to Budā'ūn, and there he was buried.

1 Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, came into the Lāhor province and took possession of it and its capital, and ousted the followers of Kābā-jah. See page 505.

8 This engagement took place in the neighbourhood of Tara'īn, the scene of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's defeat and subsequent victory over Rāe Pīhorā. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says, at this time, Shams-ud-Dīn, Yal-timīsh, was about to undertake an expedition against some part of the Hindī territories as yet unsubdued, or some Hindū chief, who, during the late disturbances consequent on the death of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and the dethronement of his son [adopted son], by Shams-ud-Dīn, had freed himself from the Musalman yoke. See Elliot, vol. ii. page 239, note 1, where these Turks—Turkish slaves or Turkish chiefs, such as are referred to under Āram Shāh's reign—are turned into unconverted [for which there is not a shadow of authority] Turks, and are made out to have caused a revival of Hindī power, because, in the flatulent words of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, one, who is styled [not in the original however] Sirjāndār Turki, "opened his hand to shed the blood of Musalmāns." In the meantime, Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, in 611 H., made some demands upon Shams-ud-Dīn, who, from the fact of his accepting the dūr-bāsh and canopy of state, had acknowledged his superiority. Shams-ud-Dīn, being unwilling to accept these demands, whatever they were—for they are not specified in any author—I-yal-duz, who had possessed himself of the Panjāb, advanced as far as Thanīsār, resolved to enforce them, and was moving upon Dihli, when Shams-ud-Dīn, now sufficiently powerful to resist them, resolved to oppose him, and advanced to Sāmānd [Sāmānāh!], and the troops of the two kingdoms encountered near Tara'īn on the 3rd of Shawwāl, 612 H. I-yal-duz's troops fell suddenly upon the left wing of the Dihli troops during the engagement [they did so probably at the outset], but I-yal-duz was wounded by an arrow aimed at him by the Mu-a'yīyd-ul-Mulk [this is his title only—the name is wanting. I-yal-duz's own Wazīr bore that title, which is one given to Wazīrs], and I-yal-duz's forces were defeated, and he was himself taken prisoner.

9 Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-duz, was taken to Dihlī to be paraded, and was sent away to the fortress of Budā'ūn. Why he was sent there—the lie of Budā'ūn had been so long Shams-ud-Dīn's—is obvious enough. Our author too
Subsequently, in the year 614 H., Shams-ud-Din fought an engagement with Malik [Sultan] Nasir-ud-Din, Kabājah, and the latter was overthrown; and, when the calamities, consequent upon the appearance of Chingiz Khân, the Mughal, fell upon Khurāsān, in the year 618 H., Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din, Khwārazm Shāh, defeated by the army of infidels, retired in the direction of Hindūstān. The sedition of the Khwārazm Shāhis reached the limits of [the province of] Lohor; and Sultan Shams-ud-Din marched from Dihli towards Lohor with the forces of Hindūstān, and Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din, Khwārazm Shāh, having turned aside buries him silently without mentioning his death. The Tabākāt-i-Akbarī and a few others say that he was kept at Budā'ūn until he died, but others state that he was put to death there in the same year. The Tāj-ul-Ma‘āṣir which was written at that period, at Dihlī, of course, is silent on this part of the subject. See page 505, note 8, and page 506.

1. Budā'ūn makes a great blunder about this affair: he says this was the third time Shams-ud-Din had marched against Kabājah, in 614 H., and that the latter was drowned in the Panjāb [the five rivers] in 615 H. The Taṣkaraat-ul-Mulūk says the first notice Kabājah had of Shams-ud-Din's hostility was his appearance on the frontier of his province of Uchchah in 614 H. See note 8, page 534.

2. Faṣīh-i says in 617 H., but that some say 618 H. The best St. Petersburg copy of the text has 620 H.

3. At this period, and for sometime after, the frontier of the Dihlī kingdom only extended to the Makihatālah Hills or Salt Range. See note 1, page 534.

4. In his account of Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din, page 293, our author says, Shams-ud-Din “despatched a force from his armies” against him. In the former place the words used are باتر فرعت—here तुफन, which mean “turned aside,” and “fled before” is incorrect, and the text says nothing whatever about “some fighting followed on the frontiers of Lahore”: the words are خاوازمهايان Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 324.

Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din had only about 10,000 men with him: otherwise, from the easy way in which he overthrew Kabājah, there is great probability that, being of Turkish lineage himself, on his mother's side, the Turks in Hindūstān might have gone over to him, and he would have overthrown the kingdom of Dihlī. All that the “august” Sultan appears to have done was to have Jalāl-ud-Din's envoy put to death—some say he had him poisonede—under pretence that he was plotting against him, then, in order to gain time, sending an emissary with rich presents to mollify the Sultan, and, in order to try and get him into his power, offering him an asylum near Dihlī—an asylum possibly like I-yal-dūz met with at Budā'ūn—a tomb. No doubt Shams-ud-Din got troops ready, and no doubt despatched some towards the Panjāb, but he did not go himself to face Jalāl-ud-Din. See note 4, page 293. The Khulāsāt-ut-Tawārīkh states that Jalāl-ud-Din did actually invest Lāhor for a time.

The Taṣkaraat of Daulat Shāh, quoted by Elliot, says Sultan Jalāl-ud-Din was joined whilst in the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah by the Lakhā Hazārahs,
from the host of Hindūstān, marched away towards Sind and Siwastān 6.

After these events, in the year 622 H., Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn marched an army towards the territory of Lakhana-wātī, and [Sultān] Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, Khalji', placed the neck of service within the yoke of subjection, and presented thirty elephants and eighty laks of treasure 7, and read the Khutbah, and stamped the coin, in the sacred name of the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dīn.

In the year 623 H., the Sultān determined to take the fort of Rantabhiir, which, for its exceeding strength, solidity, and impregnability, is famous and notorious throughout all numbering 700 men, from the neighbourhood of Balkh, and that the ruler of Muḥammad [Kabē-jah] made peace with Jalāl-ud-Dīn; and, what is more astonishing, that Ałā-ud-Dīn, Kāi-Kubād, the son of the king of Hind, gave Jalāl-ud-Dīn his daughter in marriage, and the latter maintained power in Hind for three years and seven months. Here is a perfect jumble of events, and the Khokhar chief has been mistaken for the "King of Hind."

A European writer however [D'Ahsson] makes still greater blunders. He says that, when Jalāl-ud-Dīn heard that Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, was moving "to the assistance of Kubacha," he went to meet him, but, instead of fighting, I-yal-timīsh proposed peace and the hand of his daughter, which were both accepted by the Sultān! See note 4, para. 2, page 293. Here Burak, the Hajib, governor of Kirman, is mistaken for I-yal-timīsh! 6

One would scarcely conceive, from this, that Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn annexed great part of the Panjab and Sind, and that he remained nearly three years in those parts, and only left them, on the despatch of a great army of Mughals against him, and the fact of his presence being much required in 'Irāk. See the reign of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, pages 285—299.

Elphinston, led astray by some translation probably, for no History makes such a statement, makes several terrible errors here. He has: "In the same year with this expedition to Sind [it took place two years after the Lakhana-watī affair, in 624-5 H.], Altamsh marched against Bakhtīār Khiljī [Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, who is here referred to, had been then dead twenty years], who looked upon Behār and Bengal as his own conquest; and, though he professed obedience to Kutb u dīn (to whose daughter he was married), openly disclaimed all dependence on his successor. [It was I-yal-timīsh—his Altamš—not Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, who married Kutb-ud-Dīn's daughter.] Altamsh was successful in this undertaking; he deprived Bakhtīār of Behār, (the government of which he conferred on his own son,) and obliged him to hold Bengal under the crown of Dehli. Bakhtīār made a subsequent attempt to retrieve his losses, was defeated by the prince who governed Behār, and lost his life in the conflict." Thus Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, Muḥammad, son of Sherān, 'Alī, son of Mardān, and Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz—four different rulers are made ONE. This truly is pretty history "to teach the young idea"! See pages 574 and 594, and note 2.

8 There is not a word about "current coin" in the text, but the Tabakat-i-Akbarī and some authors who copy from it say, 80,000 silver tangahs. See note 3, page 584.

---


7. [Note 5] The Khokhar chief has been mistakenly identified.

8. [Note 3] There is not a word about "current coin" in the text, but some authors say 80,000 silver tangahs. See note 3, page 584.
Hindustān. They have narrated in the Chronicles of the people of Hind after this manner, that seventy kings and more had appeared [at various times] at the foot of its walls, and not one of them had been able to reduce it. After some time, however, in the year 623 H., it was taken by the hands of the Sulṭān’s servants, through the favour of the Creator. A year subsequent to this, in 624 H., he marched against the fort of Mandawar within the limits of the Siwalik [territory], and its capture, likewise, the Almighty God facilitated for him, and he came back, and much booty fell into the hands of the servants of his dynasty.

Subsequently, in 625 H., the august Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, came with an army from the capital city, Dihli, into the territories of Úchchah and Multān; and the writer of these words, the Maulānā Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the

9 According to the Taj-ul-Ma’ājir, Rantabhūr was in the possession of the Musalmāns in the time of Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Dīn. See Elliot : vol. ii. page 219, and note 2, page 516, para. 4.

1 Months in some copies of the text.

2 This remark shows that he was not himself present there.

The oldest copies are as above—but some others have—Mandū, and—Mandū. The Ṭabaḵtā-i-Akbār has Mandawar; while Budā’unī, who copies from it, has Mandū in some copies, and Mandawar in others; and adds that I-yal-timish annexed, with that stronghold, the Koh-i-Siwalik. Mir’at-i-Jahān-Numā says, “Mandawar with all the forts and kasbahs of the Siwalik.” Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh has “Mandāwar—Mandāwar”—. Firighat has “Mandū—Mandū [which is totally incorrect]—and all Siwalik.”

Our author, at page 468, mentions “the seat of government, Ajmīr, with the whole of the Siwalik [territory], such as Hänsī, Sursutī,” &c.; and includes the whole tract of country south of the Himalayah, between the Ganges and the Sutlaj, and extending as far south as Hänsī in the Siwalik or Koh-i-Siwalik; and at page 200 he states that Nāg-awr is in the Siwalik also. Some writers state that the Siwalik extends as far west as the borders of Kashmīr. See note 4, page 468; and Elliot, vol. ii. page 325, note 1.

Tod says “Mundore [Mandawar] was the capital of the Purihars,” and capital of Mārwār, “five miles N. of Jodpur.” There is no doubt but that this is the place, the ruins of which indicate what its immense strength must have been at the time in question. It is described in Tod, vol. i. page 721; and in another place he says it was taken from “Mokul,” the Purihar prince, by “Rahup,” who “obtained Cheetore in S. 1257 (A.D. 1201), and shortly after sustained the attack of Shemsudin [Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn is referred to], whom he [Rahup] met and overcame in battle at Nagore.” Of course ! who could defeat Rajputs ? Shams-ud-Dīn did not come to the throne for nine years after the above date. There is a Mandawar— even now, a large kasbah, with extensive buildings of burnt brick, and several great masjids, the remains of former days, on the route between Dārā-nagar and Sahārān-pūr, included in the Siwalik as above mentioned, but not the place here referred to.
month of Rajab, in the year 624 H., had reached the territories of Sind, Uchchah, and Multân, from the side of Ghür and Khurāsān. On the 1st of Rabī‘-ul-Awwal, 625 H., the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, reached the foot of the walls of the fort of Uchchah. Malik [Sultān] Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Ḳabā-jah, had his camp pitched before the gate of the kašbah [town] of Ahrāwat, and the whole of his fleet and boats, on board of which the baggage and followers of his army were embarked, were moored in the river in front of the camp, when, on a Friday, after [noon-day] prayers, swift messengers arrived from the direction of Multān and gave information that Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, I-yītim, the feudatory of Lohor, had appeared before the walls of Multān.

The august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dīn, having set out by way of Tabarhindah towards Uchchah, the capital of Malik [Sultān] Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḳabā-jah, he fled to his fleet, and, taking along with him all his forces, retired towards

---

Footnotes:

4 See note, page 544, where he contradicts this statement, and mentions other dates. Chingiz Khān died in 624 H. Several authors, including that of the Tabākāt-i-Akbarī and his protégé, Budā‘īnī, leave out this expedition of I-yal-timish against Ḳabā-jah; but drown the latter in 614 H., having confounded the first hostilities between them with the last. See note, page 532.

6 At page 541 he says he came “from Khurāsān by way of Ghaznīn and Banīān.”

6 In his notice of Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, I-yītim, in Section XXII., our author also says 625 H., but at page 541 he says 624 H. Under the account of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gazlāk Khān, in the same Section, our author contradicts his statement here made, and says that this Malik was the first of the nobles of the Dihlī dynasty with whom he came into contact, and that he arrived before Uchchah with troops fifteen days before Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn’s arrival, and that he—the author—came out of Uchchah and went to his camp to obtain an interview with Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn on the 16th of Ṣafar, 625 H. At the bottom of the same page, however, he makes another statement, and gives 628 H. as the date, and, over leaf, a different statement.

7 This place is not now known, and the correct pronunciation may be Ihrawat. In some copies it is written Ahrawat, in others Ahūrat, and in one Harāwat; but it is evidently the same word, with the first letter left out by the copyist. The courses of the rivers in this tract have greatly altered since these days.

8 This is the meaning of the word here used, but facing or opposite would be more appropriate; as, wherever the camp might have been pitched, it would have its front, not its rear, to the land.

9 In the account given of this chief, in the next Section, the vowel points are given with the word. Some few copies have what appears like— but what is supposed to be is but the end of the letter carelessly written.

1 He succeeded in getting possession of that stronghold by capitulation, and the dependencies at once followed.
Bhakar, with orders to his Wazir, the 'Ain-ul-Mulk, Husaini-Asha'ri, to convey the treasure contained within the fort of Uchchah towards the fort of Bhakar. Sultan Shams-ud-Din pushed forward the van of his forces to the foot of the walls of Uchchah, under the [two] great Maliks at the head of those troops, one [of whom] was Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Salari, who was the Amir-i-Ha'ib [Lord Chamberlain] of the Court, and the other, Malik Taj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Gazlak Khan, Sultan Shamsi, who was the Malik of Tabarhindah. Four days after this, the Sultan himself, with the rest of the army, the elephants, baggage, and followers, arrived before the walls of Uchchah, and the camp was pitched. The Wazir of his kingdom, the Nizam-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaidi, and other Maliks, were then despatched towards the fort of Bhakar in pursuit of Malik [Sultan] Nasir-ud-Din, Kabajah.

For a period of three months, hostilities went on at the foot of the fortress of Uchchah; and, on Tuesday, the 28th of the sacred month, Jamadi-ul-Awwal, in the year 625 H., that fort surrendered on terms of capitulation. Malik [Sultan] Nasir-ud-Din, Kabajah, in that same month,

*The Tarih-i-Mas'umz of Mir Mas'um-i-Bhakhari [of Bhakar or Bhakhar : it is written both ways] incorrectly styles him the Nizam-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, son of As'ad. 'Ain-ul-Mulk, signifying the Eye of the State—like Nizam-ul-Mulk—is not a name, but a title given to Wazirs. Asha' is the name of an 'Arab tribe of the tribes of Saba, of which came the celebrated Musalmān doctors Abū Mūsā and Abū Ḥasan. Their followers are styled Ashā'in. The Wazir came doubtless of that family. "Ashghāri" is not correct. Compare Elliot here, vol. ii. page 325.*

3 Or Gazlak ; it is written both ways.

4 "Sultān Shamsi" signifies that he was the Mamlūk of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, and rose to rank in his service. A notice of him and others will be found in Section XXII.

5 The arrival of the Sultan upon the scene has been already mentioned above.

6 Some copies of the text have "one month," but it is, no doubt, incorrect; and in some the date is the 27th of the month; but in no copy is it the 29th, although some modern copies have Jamādi-ul-Ākhir.

7 The Tabakat-i-Akbari, Budā'uni, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, and some others, all mention these events as taking place in 614 H. ; and they are all wrong. In this case it is hardly probable that the copyists of all these works could have written 614 for 624, although one might have done so.

The Tagkarat-ul-Mulūk states that Kabajah's son, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, had concluded a peace on behalf of his father with I-yal-timish, and, after some days, Kabajah himself left Bhakhar to return to Uchchah, when he was [accidentally] drowned.
of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, in the same year, threw himself from the walls of the fortress of Bhakar into the Panj-āb, and drowned himself. Some time previous to this, he had despatched his son, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, to the presence of Sūltān Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timīsh; and, subsequently to that, the treasures and the remainder of the followers of Malik [Sūltān] Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kābā-jah, reached the presence of the Court, the Asylum of the World.

That country [Sind], as far as the shore of the ocean, was acquired, and Malik Sinān-ud-Din, Chati-sar [or Jati-sar],

8 The three oldest and best copies of the text have Chatsar—*—-and Jatsar—*—respectively. Of the other copies, taking the best in rotation, one has *—-which is evidently intended for one of the two former, because the three points, which look like that of ِ—-are intended to mark ِ—-thus ِ—-in distinction to ِ—-and to prevent it being mistaken for the latter letter; another ِ—-a third ِ—-and the rest ِ—-which has been read as Habash, which means an Abyssinian. The Sūmrah were, however, not Africans, but of Rāj-pūt descent. Alī has ِ—-but not very distinct, and Jāmi’-ut-Tawārīkh ِ—- without points.

The historians of Sind state that that territory, up to the year 583 H., acknowledged the sway of the Ghaznawīs, and that, on the downfall of the last of that dynasty, his dominions fell to Sūltān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Ghūrī [Mu’izz-ud-Din’s elder brother], and Sind was then included in the Multān province; but all Sind cannot be meant here—not what we understand by Sind. Sūltān Mu’izz-ud-Din, brother of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, as early as 578 H. [see note 9, page 452], had reduced the territory of Dīwāl or Dībal. Mfr Maṣūm says that, after Sūltān Mu’izz-ud-Din’s assassination, Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, possessed himself of Hind and Sind, and held sway over them, and the Khuṭbah was read for him, fourteen years [four, no doubt, is meant], after which his son, Aram Shāh, succeeded him, but he was dethroned from incapacity, and Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timīsh, raised to the sovereignty. “At this period,” he continues, “the territory of Hindūstān was divided into four states [that portion of Hindūstān under Musalmān sway rather]—Dīlī, which pertained to Shams-ud-Dīn; Multān, Üchchah, and Sind, to Kābā-jah; Lāhor, to the officers of I-yal-dūz, Sūltān of Ghaznī; and Lakhānawātī, to the Khalj.” He then passes on to the Khalj in Siwastān, and Shams-ud-Dīn’s invasion of Kābā-jah’s dominions. See note 9, page 542, para. 6.

Previous to this time, however, Dīhal, or Lower Sind [Thaṭhah was not even founded at this period], had fallen into the hands of the Sūmrah tribe, which paid, nominally at least, allegiance to the Ghaznawīs. Before the downfall of that dynasty, Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī, subdued that territory; but still the Ghūrīs held upon it was nominal almost.

Of the Sūmrah dynasty no less than seventeen chiefs ruled in Lower Sind, according to the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh of Muḥammad Wūsūf; and, as near as can be computed, from the years they are said to have reigned, the eleventh of that dynasty, who lived at the time Shams-ud-Dīn ruled at Dīlī, was named Chanīsār—*—-but this might be, and in all probability is meant for *—-there being but the difference of the dot of ِ between them. It is,
who was Wāli [ruler] of Diwal, presented himself at the Shamsī Court; and, when the blessed mind of that monarch became disengaged through the successes [gained] in that territory, he turned his face towards the sublime seat of government, the city of Dihli.

The author of this book, and writer of these pages, gained the presence of the sublime Court of that monarch of the orthodox, on the first day that the royal camp was pitched before the walls of the fort of Úchchah\(^9\); and, having found favour in his sacred sight, when the royal camp moved back again from before the walls of Úchchah, the author was directed to deliver discourses within the enclosure of the sublime tents; and, in association with the victorious retinue of that beneficent sovereign, he arrived at the city of Dihli in the month of Ramažān, 625 H.\(^1\)

therefore, perfectly clear, that the name given by our author refers to the eleventh of the Sūmrāh rulers, but the fourteenth according to the Tuḥfat-ul-Kirām. Ḥabash, of course, is totally out of the question. See also Elliot, vol. i. page 485; and vol. ii. note 4, page 389; and Thomas: Pathān Kings, page 99, note 4.

\(^9\) To pay court to the winning side, and, afterwards, as far as our pious author was concerned, the son of Kābā-jah, and the Frūzi College too, might follow Kābā-jah to the bottom of the Indus.

\(^1\) It has already been mentioned [note 8, para. 6, page 542] that one reason—or, at least, the plea—why I-yal-timīsh attacked Kābā-jah again, and marched against Úchchah, was, that the Khalj fugitives, after their defeat by Kābā-jah, and their chief had fallen in the battle, threw themselves upon his protection. This happened towards the end of 623 H., and, early in 625 H., I-yal-timīsh appeared before Kābā-jah's capital.

If our author is correct as to the Sultan's leaving Úchchah for Dihli, the Taj-ul-Ma'asir [and Rauzat-ug-Safa, which copies it probably] is very much out; for that work states that I-yal-timīsh left the Wazir to carry on the operations, and reached Dihli again on the 14th of Rabī‘-ul-Awwal [the third month] of 624 H.; whilst our author says he reached the capital in Ramażān [the ninth month] of 625 H., a difference of eighteen months. One of the oldest copies of the text, however, has 626 H., while the other two oldest leave out the rest of the sentence after the word "Dihli," thus giving no date.

Mir Ma'süm, in his History, says:—"I-yal-timīsh left his Wazīr to carry on operations against Úchchah, and returned to his capital, thus agreeing with Ta'j-ul-Ma'āṣir, and that it capitulated, and was taken possession of on the 28th of Jamādī-ul-Awwal [fifth month] of 625 H." It was the Wazir who advanced against Bhakar and penetrated into Lower Sind, and, therefore, it is impossible that Sinān-ud-Dīn, Chatīsar or Jatīsar, the Sūmrāh chief of Dībal, could have presented himself at the Shamsī Court, when the Sultan did not go farther south than Úchchah. He did so to the Wazir probably, or to the subsequent governor of the new conquest.

The Ta'j-ul-Ma'āṣir further states that, at this time [of the Wazīr's invasion of Lower Sind], twelve celebrated forts, which had never before been acquired,
At this time, emissaries from the Khalifah's Court, bearing honours rich and ample, had reached the limits of Nag-awr; and, on Monday, the 22nd of the month of Rabî’-ul-Awwal, 626 H., they reached the Capital. The city was decorated [for the occasion] and this sovereign, and the Malik, his sons—may they rest in peace!—and other Malik, his suite, and Slaves likewise, were honoured through this act of policy [on the part] of the Khalifah's Court.

After so much festivity and rejoicing, in the month of Jamâdi-ul-Awwal, of the before-mentioned year [626 H.], were taken possession of with Siwastân and Lûk, as far as the shores of the ocean; and that the Khûthah was read for the Sulṭân, and the coin was stamped with his titles and name through all the countries of Hindûstân [1], and in the territories of Kûsdâr and Mukrân! The Wazîr, according to Mîr Ma’sûm, was left in charge of the government of Sind, and remained in that country up to the year 630 H., when he returned to Court, leaving Nûr-ud-Dîn, Mûhammad, in charge of Sind.

Our author, however, in his notice of Malik Taj-ud-Dîn, Sanjar-i-Gazlak Khân, who accompanied the Wazîr in his advance upon Bhakar, states that he, not the Wazîr, was left in charge of the newly-acquired territory; and he is, doubtless, correct. The Wazîr had other duties to perform, and Mîr Ma’sûm has evidently mistaken the one for the other.

No doubt the new governor extended the Shamsî authority in those parts, but it was very temporary, and ceased almost with the reign of I-yâl-timîsh. Lûk is the place referred to at page 200, and has no connexion either with the town, district, or mountains of Lakûf in Sind. There is, I think, some connexion between the Lak tribe of Kurds, at that time, and subsequently, located in the southern part of Sijistân, and Kirmân, mentioned at page 317, note 5.

Our author, however, in his notice of Malik Taj-ud-Dîn, Sanjar-i-Gazlak Khân, who accompanied the Wazîr in his advance upon Bhakar, states that he, not the Wazîr, was left in charge of the newly-acquired territory; and he is, doubtless, correct. The Wazîr had other duties to perform, and Mîr Ma’sûm has evidently mistaken the one for the other.

No doubt the new governor extended the Shamsî authority in those parts, but it was very temporary, and ceased almost with the reign of I-yâl-timîsh. Lûk is the place referred to at page 200, and has no connexion either with the town, district, or mountains of Lakûf in Sind. There is, I think, some connexion between the Lak tribe of Kurds, at that time, and subsequently, located in the southern part of Sijistân, and Kirmân, mentioned at page 317, note 5.

Several copies of the text, including the printed text, with but two exceptions, have خلف—dress of honour—for خدمت—service, also action, pro-
information arrived of the decease of the august Malik, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, [the eldest son of Sūltān Shams-ud-Dīn]; and Balkā Malik-i-Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz', cedure, policy, &c. It is ridiculous to imagine that honorary dresses would have been sent by the Khalifah for all the Princes, Malik, the Sultan's suite, and his Slaves. Confering such honours broadcast would have lessened the honour. Dresses might have been sent for the Sultan's sons, but even this was unusual. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir's statement about this event is the most reliable. It says that the Imam, Mustaṣṣir B'ilah, sent I-yal-timīsh a dress of honour, and a diploma confirming him in the sovereignty of Hindūstān, with the title of 'Great Sultan, which was received with much veneration. Next day, 23rd of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 626 H., was fixed for a general reception, at which the Khalifah's diploma was read in the presence of the Sultan, his sons, and great nobles. In this diploma it was declared that I-yal-timīsh was thereby confirmed in the possession of all the territory which he had subdued. Great joy was manifested on this auspicious occasion, and the Sultan conferred robes of honour upon the Khalifah's envoys, and his own chiefs and nobles.

What led to the arrival of these agents is not stated by historians, but it is probable that I-yal-timīsh sought this investiture from the Khalifah, and a title, considering his dynasty sufficiently established to warrant it, when he, some years before, despatched an agent to the Court of Baghdād, or that the Khalifah had some policy of his own to serve in sending it. We may presume that the title bestowed was that mentioned by our author at page 624; but that is the same as bestowed by Mustaṣṣir's predecessor, Un-Nāṣir, upon Sūltān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Mubammad-i-Sīm. Towards the end of the reign of I-yal-timīsh, the Wazīr-ship is said to have been conferred upon the Fakhr-ul-Mulk, 'Īṣāmī, who for thirty years had been Wazīr of Baghdād. He became irritated through some cause or other, left the Khalifah's court, and came to Dihlī, which was not quite such an Ultima Thule as one modern writer supposes, the Khutbah being read weekly for the Khalifah.

That is to say, Balkā Malik, son of Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz [Sūltān Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz], the Khalīj. In some copies of the text the date is 627 H., but, in the oldest, and, in the majority, it is 628 H.

The hold, acquired over the territory of Lakhānawātī by I-yal-timīsh, appears to have been of a very partial and temporary character; and the events, which happened subsequently to his accommodation with Sūltān Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, after he extorted tribute, as mentioned on a previous page, are involved in much obscurity for many years subsequently. In the first place, there is some discrepancy with respect to the year of Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz's, death, which, according to some accounts, including that of the Gaur JPS., took place as early as 617 H., after a reign of twelve years, namely, from 606 H. to 617 H.

I had better first mention, very briefly, what our author states, in his account of the different Malikis, with reference to the occurrences following the defeat of Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, by Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, I-yal-timīsh's son, and Ghīyās-ud-Dīn's being put to death by that prince, and then give the accounts of others, as our author has either suppressed some things, or his ideas of them were confused; and he does not [like other writers] even mention where Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, died. and we must suppose it was in Awadh, not in Lakhānawātī.

Our author says, in his account of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bāk-i-Uchchah, but without giving any dates, that, when Sūltān I-yal-timīsh led his forces into the territory of Lakhānawātī, and they had overthrown Balkā the Khalīj—who, in
the Khalj, rebelled in the territory of Lakhanawati. Sultan Shams-ud-Din led the contingents of Hindüstān into that country; and, in the year 628 H., that rebel was secured. The Sultan conferred the throne of Lakhanawati upon Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jānī,—on whom be peace!—and, in the month

the list at the end of this reign, is styled Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā, Malik of Lakhanawatī—he set out on his return to the capital, Dīhilī, and, on the way, received intimation that, through the decease of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjār-i-Gazu Lakhān, at Īqchāh, that province and its dependencies had been conferred upon him. Then he says, that, after the decease of the son of I-yal-timīsh, and that sovereign's proceeding himself into Lakhanawatī to suppress the outbreak of Balkā, the Khalj, he conferred the throne of Lakhanawati upon Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī [the same who is styled, in the list at the end of this reign, “Shāh-zādah of Turkistān”], and that, on his removal from or loss of that dignity—but no date is given—Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Yughān-Tat, got it. He greatly distinguished himself in those parts, and, on one occasion, captured a number of elephants in the territory of Bang, which he despatched to Dīhilī. For this affair he received the title of Yughān-Tat. He held the government until 631 H., when he died in Lakhanawatī. On his death, Malik 'Īzz-ud-Dīn, Tughrīl-i-Tughān Kān, was made governor of Lakhanawatī, and there he was at the time of I-yal-timīsh’s death, after which events arose which I shall have to refer to subsequently; but, I may mention that, up to this time, the territory on both sides the Gang was not under his authority, and that he only held the Barindah side.

I will now state what other writers say on this subject. After Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, was put to death by Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Māhmūd Shāh, son of I-yal-timīsh, the former’s son, styled Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn-i-'Iwāz, by some, and Ḥusām-ud-Dīn-i-'Iwāz, by others, but these latter no doubt mean Balkā Malik, the son of Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, ‘Iwāz, which was the father’s name before he took the title of Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn [see page 580], assumed the sovereignty over his father’s dominions, and held it some time; and, after the death of Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Māhmūd Shāh, who held mere nominal authority over Lakhanawatī for one year, and, according to the Gaur M.S., and Jāmi’-ut-Tawārīkh [not Rashīd-ud-Dīn’s], from 618 H. to 619 H., although both those works state that he died in 626 H., affairs assumed such an aspect that I-yal-timīsh had to march into that country with the forces of Hindüstān “to quell the sedition.” No particulars are given respecting these operations, nor is the fate of Balkā Malik mentioned; but, as most writers state that he fell into the power of I-yal-timīsh, his fate may well be supposed.

Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh, in one place, says I-yal-timīsh entered the Lakhanawatī territory in 627 H. and, in another place, that, in 628 H., he succeeded in taking the son of Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, ‘Iwāz, after which he gave the throne to Izz-ul-Mulūk, Malik ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī; and, in this, other writers agree.

The Jāmi’-ut-Tawārīkh, as well as Zubdat, says that ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, reigned for three years and some months, but the former and the Gaur M.S. have “from 620 H. to 623 H.” Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Yughān-Tat, succeeded, on the removal of ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, and ruled up to the time of his death, which happened in 631 H.; but the Gaur M.S. says he ruled nine years—from 624 H. to 632 H.—till he died. Malik ‘Izz-ud-Dīn, Tughrīl-i-Tughān Kān, succeeded, and held the government for nearly fourteen years. Further mention of the feudatories of this province will be found in the next Section.
of Rajab of the same year, he returned again to the illustrious capital, Dihli.

In the year 629 H., the Sultan came to the determination of undertaking the reduction of the fort of Gwaliyür; and, when the pavilion of his dominion was set up at the foot of that stronghold, Mangal Diw, the accursed, the son of the accursed Mal Diw, commenced hostilities. The Sultan continued before that fortress for a period of eleven months; and the writer of these words, in the month of Sha'bân of the same year, set out from Dihli, and turned his face towards the threshold of sovereignty, and attained that felicity. The author, at certain stated periods, was commanded to deliver discourses at the private pavilion. Three times in each week discourses were fixed; and, when the month of Ramadan came round, a discourse used to be delivered daily. During the whole ten days of Zil-Hijjah, and ten days of Muharram, discourses were delivered daily; but, during the other months, those same three stated periods were observed weekly, so that ninety-five times congregations were convened at the entrance of the sublime pavilion. On both days of the respective festivals, Fitr and Uţţâ, in three different places, the

6 After the decease of Kutb-ud-Dîn, I-bak, during the convulsion that then ensued, the Hindus recovered this fortress, which had been surrendered to Kutb-ud-Dîn, after Bahâ-ud-Dîn, Tughril, had reduced it to extremity, as mentioned at page 546. Up to this time the Musalmâns had no opportunity of recovering it.

7 The name of this Râc is very plainly written in several copies of the text, including two of the three oldest and best copies, but the third—the best St. Petersburg copy—has—Mîgal [evidently intended for Mangal] Bhawa Diw—being thus different to all the other copies of the text. The other copies have—Mîgal and Mîlag or Milak, and Mîgal or Mîkal.

There is equal, if not more, discrepancy with respect to the father's name also; but, while the St. Petersburg MS. has Mâl Diw plainly written, the other two oldest copies have—Sul Dîw and Sîl Dîw— which may be Basîl Diw. The remaining copies of the text collated have what appear to be—Mîlî—Sîl— and the like, which are unintelligible.

The Zubdat-ut-Tawârîkh has Mangal Diw, son of Birbal or Barbal Diw, Tabâkât-i-Akbarî—Mirât-i-Jahân-Nûmâ— the Tagkarat-ul-Mulûk and Firûghtâh All these latter works, however, do not mention the father's name. At page 545, note 8, the ruler of Gwaliyûr is styled Râc Solânk Pál, according to the Taj-ul-Ma'asir.

8 In his notice of Malik Hindus Khân, in Section XXII., our author relates these matters in quite a different manner, contradicting a good deal of what he here mentions.

9 The festival, on breaking fast after the Mubammadan fast month, is called
prayers, prescribed for the festivals, were said, in which number of places, on the greater festival of Uzha, this servant of the state, who is Minhaj-i-Saraj, was commanded to read the Khutbah for the Uzha festival, and the appointed prayers, at a spot opposite the northern face of the fortress of Gwaliyur, on which side the town is; and he was honoured with the presentation of a valuable dress of honour.

The fortress was kept under investment, until Tuesday, the 26th of the month Safar, 630 H., when the stronghold of Gwaliyur was acquired. During the night, the accursed Mangal Diw evacuated the fort and fled; and about seven hundred Gabrs were directed to be brought to public execution before the entrance of the sublime pavilion. After that, Amirs and eminent men were appointed [to different offices]. To the Majd-ul-Umrâ, Ziyâ-ud-Din, Junaidi, the Sultan gave the office of Amir-i-Dâd, the Sipah-Salâr [Commander of Troops], Rashid-ud-Din, 'Ali, was directed to assume the office of Seneschal, and the Maulana, the writer of this book, Minhaj-i-Saraj, was nominated to the offices of Kazî, Khâṭîb, and Imâm, and appointed to preside over all matters of the law, and a rich dress of honour, and an ample present, were conferred upon him. May the Most High God become the sustainer of the purified soul and fragrant body of that victorious, beneficent, and just sovereign, and patron of the enlightened! On the 2nd of the month, Rabi'-ul-Akhir, of this same year, the Sultan withdrew from before the fortress of Gwaliyur, and placed the camp at about the distance of a league from the foot of the walls in the direction of Dihli, the capital; and, at that

1 Id-i-Fitr; and the Uzha is on the tenth day of the last month of the Muhammadan year, in commemoration of Ibrahîm's offering up his son Ismai'll, who, according to their creed, was offered and not Ishâk.

2 Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 327. Our author, as there stated, could scarcely have repeated prayers "at the fort of Gwalior on the northern side before the fort was taken. The town is situated to the N.W. of the fortress.

3 The word used is Gabrs, not "persons," and does not necessarily refer to Parsis, but is here applied to infidels or pagans, and, therefore, an essay on "Fire-Worship" in these parts is wholly unnecessary. Some writers say 300 Gabrs, but the printed text has 800.

4 In this year, 630 H., I-yal-timîsh purchased Ghâyâs-ud-Dîn, Balban, who, subsequently, in the year 664 H., succeeded this Sultan's son on the throne of Dihli.
halting ground, the imperial \textit{naubat} five times daily was assumed.

After he returned to the capital, in the year 632 H., the

\textit{The imperial naubat, which has been already explained at page 383, note\textsuperscript{1}, is turned into “a halt of five days” in Elliot, which see.}

\textit{In some copies the date is left out altogether, and, in others, the year 631 H. is given, and, in this, several other writers agree, but Alf\i\ has 630 H. Bhils\=a\textemdash also, is not mentioned at all in some works; and, moreover, our author has confused matters here. There were not two great idol temples destroyed, and it was the great temple dedicated to Mah\=a-k\=al at Ujjain which was three hundred years in building, not at Bhils\=a\textdash the town and fortress of that name was destroyed. It is amusing to hear a Hind\=u relate that “the idol was carried off to Dihli, and cast down before the gateway of the jami’ masjid [not the present one, which was built by Sh\=ah-i-Jah\=an] for people to kick and trample upon.”}

It may interest the arch\=ologist to know that the idol is stated, by several writers, to have been buried just beneath the surface “close to the minar\=ah of red sandstone, which is of great height and solidity, one of the many buildings founded by Sul\=tan Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-tim\=ish, as is mentioned in two inscriptions in the second and third stories,” but the numerous titles given to that Sul\=tan are the mere fancy of the artist. Another writer who wrote in Jah\=angir’s time states that “in old Dihli is the great Masjid, outside of which is a minar\=ah of immense height, to ascend to the top of which is impossible. Those who have measured it say it is 80 paces round at the base, and its height 130 \textsuperscript{1} cubits \textsuperscript{1}. A third author, who wrote an account of Dihli from a personal survey nearly a century since, confirms the above statements generally, and gives some further particulars. He says:—“In the mah\=all of R\=ae Pithor\=a are two minar\=ahs, one of red sandstone, which consisted of seven [eight?] stories or divisions, and about 200 yards [cubits] in height, and 15 in thickness [sic in MSS.]. Two of the stories have fallen from the effects of lightning, and, from the building, thousands of mans of lead have been taken. The erection of this minar\=ah is, among many other buildings, attributed to Sul\=tan Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-tim\=ish, as inscribed thereon in two or three places, and close to it, on the west side, is the sepulchre of that great man. This minar\=ah is known by the name of the L\=ATH OF K\=UTB S\=AHIB”—neither the minar\=ah nor the l\=\=ath of K\=utb-ud-Din, I-bak, sovereign of Dihli, the authority for assigning it to whom it would be curious to trace. “On the north side is an obelisk of brass \textsuperscript{2} about 10 cubits in height and 2 thick, of very great antiquity; and upon it is a vast deal of writing, both in the Hind\=u-i and Persian character. In the Kotil\=ah of Fir\=ruz Sh\=ah is another minar\=ah of considerable height. It is said to have been constructed of corundum stone \textsuperscript{3} [kur\=and], ground, and mixed with lac,” \&c. The other work previously quoted says with respect to this second minar\=ah: “Within a structure called the Shik\=ar-gah of Sul\=tan Fir\=ruz Sh\=ah is a column in height about 30 cubits \textsuperscript{2}, and about 3 in thickness, which is supposed to be of one piece of stone, and that an equal length lies buried among the bricks and rubbish around it. This would make it, in all, a single stone of 60 cubits in total length, which it would have been impossible to have set upright,” \&c.

The K\=utb minar\=ah is supposed by European writers and arch\=ologists—misled, probably, by some incorrect translation of Persian works—to have been not only named after Sul\=tan K\=utb-ud-Din, I-bak, the first Turk Sul\=tan
Sultan led the hosts of Islam towards Malwah, and took the fortress and town [or city] of Bhilsan, and demolished the idol-temple which took three hundred years in building, and which, in altitude, was about one hundred ells. From thence he advanced to Ujjain-Nagar, and destroyed the idol-temple of Mahā-kāl Dw. The effigy of Bikramajit who was sovereign of Ujjain-Nagar, and from whose reign to the present time one thousand, three hundred, and sixteen years have elapsed, and from whose reign they date the Hindū-i era, together with other effigies besides his, of Dihli, but to have been founded by him also. The word Kutb was quite sufficient proof in their imaginations; but it is totally incorrect. The mināra is styled the Lāth OF KUṬB SHAḤIB, after a celebrated Muḥammadan saint, Khwājah Kutb-ud-Dīn, Bakht-yār, Kāki, the Ūshi [native of Ūsh near Baghdad], whom the Afghāns claim as their peculiar saint by the title of “the Afghān Kutb or Pole,” the reason for which does not appear, but he probably resided for a time in the Afghān country. He came into Hind, and, first, proceeded to Multān during the reign of Sultan Nasir-ud-Dīn, Kaḥāj, Subsequently, he went to Dihli. Such was his sanctity and the veneration in which he was held, that Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, Iyāl-timish, himself, came forth from the city to receive him and do him reverence, and accompanied him into Dihli. The Khwājah, however, took up his residence at Gīlī-kharī on account of the scarcity of water in the city. When Shaikh Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Busṭāmī, who was the Shaikh-ul-Islam, died, Iyāl-timish wished him to take that office, but the Kutb-i-Afghān declined it. He died on the 24th of the month of Rabī’-ul-Awwal, 633 H. See the Mirāt-ul-Afaghinah, Makhzan Afghānī and Tarikh-i-Murassa [Pushto] of Afzal Khan, Khatak. Dorn, in his translation of Ni’mat-Ul’lah’s work [Part II., pages 2—57], gives 603 H. as the date of his death, but, in a note, says he thinks the number ६८४ has been left out, but it was thirty, not ten. The correct date is 633 H.

It may be asked, How is it that the name of Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, is inscribed on the mināra, and certain dates recorded? to which the very natural reply may be given, that gratitude led Iyāl-timish to record, on the monument of his erection, the name of his own master, benefactor, and father-in-law. The first date, 589 H. refers to the occupation of Dihli as the Muḥammadan capital, the second, 592 H., to the foundation, probably, of the Kutbī masjid, the third date, 594 H., to its completion, and the fourth, 629 H., evidently refers to the year in which Iyāl-timish founded the MINARAH OF KUṬB SHAḤIB.

The insertion of the name of Sulṭān Ghivyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, as the Sulṭān-us-Salāṭīn or Lord Paramount at the time of the conquest, is also, but it is passing strange—if the copy of the inscription as given by Thomas [PATHAN KINGS, pages 21—22] is correct—that the name of his brother—Mu’izz-ud-Dīn—the conqueror of Rāj Pithorā, and establisher of the Muḥammadan rule at Dihli, should be left out. I cannot but think that the inscription is not correctly given. See also APPENDIX A., pages iv. and v.

A writer in the BENGAL ASIATIC JOURNAL, vol. xx., page 353, many years back, endeavoured to correct the great error I have referred to. He says:—“The Qotb Minār has not its name from Qotb(aldyn) Aybak as Ritter supposes, but from the Saint—Qotb aldyn Baktyar Kāky who is buried not far from it.” See also note 2, page 658.

2 In some copies two hundred.
which were formed of molten brass, together with the stone [idol] of Mahā-kāl, were carried away to Dihli, the capital.

In the year 633 H., the Sultan led the forces of Hindūstān towards Banīān [or Banyān 8], and, during that march, weakness subdued his blessed person; and, when, through bodily affliction, he came back from thence, on Wednesday, the first of the month, Sha'bān, early in the forenoon, the time chosen by the Astrologers, seated in a covered litter 9, he entered the capital of his kingdom, the illustrious city of Dihli. After nineteen days, his illness having increased, on Monday, the 20th of Sha'bān 1, in the year 633 H., he was removed from the abode of mortality to the everlasting mansion 9. His reign extended to a period of twenty-six years. God enlighten his understanding!

8 This is precisely the same tract that is mentioned at page 541, and which has been turned into "Mithan" in Elliot, vol. ii. page 303, and is referred to in several places in connexion with coming from Ghaznin, Karman and Nandana into Sind and Multān. In all the best copies it is written — Banīān—generally, but sometimes — Banban. Further research may tend to throw some light upon its exact situation, but it evidently lies in the hill tracts of the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah, or the opposite side of the Sind adjoining that part of the Do-ābah in question—the country immediately west of the Salt Range. It will be referred to again farther on. Niẓām-ud-Dīn, Aḥmad, and Budā'unī, and Firīshthah—the two latter copy the former—all have Multān, and are totally incorrect in this instance.

9 Turned into "a howdah on the back of an elephant" in Elliot, but there is not a word about an elephant in the original or in the printed text either.

Elphinstone [page 323] makes very short work of the events of the last eight years of this reign. After incorrectly stating that Kaba-jah was drowned in 622 H. and "Bakkar" taken, he says "Altamsh" was occupied for upwards of six years in "reducing the part of Hindostan which had remained independent. He began by taking Rintambor. . . . He next took Māndu [see page 611] in Mālwa; Gwāliŏr, which had revolted, was recovered; Bilsa was likewise taken; and the occupation of the ancient capital Ujēn, with the destruction of its celebrated temple, completed the conquest of Mālwa." All this is supposed to have taken place between 623 H., and 630 H., and yet Ujjain-Nagari was not taken till two years after this!

1 There is some discrepancy respecting the date of I-yal-timīsh's death. The oldest copy of the text says the 26th, and, in this, two other copies agree, but some have Saturday, the 20th. Zubdat-ut-Tawārīḫ has Monday, the 26th of Sha'bān, Tabakah-i-Akbarī, the 20th, Taḵkaraṭ-ul-Mulūk, the 8th of Sha'bān, and so has the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīḫ. Mīr Maṣūm in one MS. says the 23rd, and, in two others, the 26th; and Faṣīḥ-i says the 21st of Sha'bān, 634 H., and that he was buried in the old jāmi' masjid. Firīshthah follows the Tabakah-i-Akbarī; but neither Budā'unī, the Haft Iklim, Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīḫ, Ruṣṣat-ūṣ-Ṣafā, nor Lubūt-ut-Tawārīḫ-i-Hind, give the day of the month, and some merely mention the year 633 H.

2 Our author having given an account of the attack by the Mulahidah
heretics on the congregation in the great masjid in the year 634 H. under the reign of Raziyyat, it is strange that he is silent about the attack by the same heretics on Sultan I-yal-timish, which is related by other writers. I-yal-timish, who was considered a pattern of orthodoxy, and a most pious and God-fearing ruler, was in the habit of going, without any ostentation, to the great masjid on the Musalmān sabbath to say his prayers along with the congregation, and to listen to the Imam’s discourse. The Mulḥids of Dihīf, aware of his custom, plotted to take his life; and a body of them armed, whilst the people of the congregation were occupied in their own devotions, flocked into the masjid, drew their swords, and attempted to reach the place where the Sultan was, and martyred several persons in so doing. The Sultan, however, succeeded in getting safely away, although the Mulḥids endeavoured to follow him. The people now crowded the roofs and walls and gate-ways of the masjid, and with arrows, bricks, and stones, annihilated the heretics. I-yal-timish is said to have afterwards put a number of this sect to the sword in revenge for this attempt upon his life.

In the work I have before referred to the following is said to have been the inscription on one of I-yal-timish’s early coins,

Reverse—"This Dinar [was] struck in the capital [city] Dihif, in the year 612.” Obverse—“The Destroyer of paganism and error, Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, in the first [year] of his reign.” Budā‘ūnī says his title was Yamin-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminin, but this is only one of the many titles given him by our author. See note 4, page 597, and note 8, page 614.
Offspring.
Sultan Raziyyat.
Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shâh.
Malik Jalâl-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shâh.
Malik Shihâb-ud-Din, Muhammed.
Sultan Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmûd Shâh of Lakhnawati.
Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firuz Shâh.
Sultan Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmûd Shâh.
Sultan 'Alâ-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shâh, son of Rukn-ud-Din,
Firuz Shâh.

Length of his reign:—
Twenty-six years.

Kâzîs of his Court.
Kâzî Sa'd-ud-Din, Gardaizi.
Kâzî Jalâl-ud-Din, Ghaznawi.
Kâzî Nasir-ud-Din, Kâsîlî.
Kâzî Kabir-ud-Din, Kâzî of the Army.

Wazîr of the Kingdom.
The Niżâm-ul-Mulk, Kamâl-ud-Din, [Muhammed ?]
i-Abû-Sâ'id, Junâdî.

Standards.
On the right, Black: On the left, Red.

Motto on his august signet.
"Greatness appertaineth unto God alone.""

Capital of his Kingdom.
The city of Dihli.

His Maliks.
Malik Firûz, I-yal-timish, the Sâlar, Shâh-zadah [Prince]
of Khwârazm.

* Or "Greatness belongs to God" [is exclusively His attribute]. Kur'ân: chap. 45, verse 36.
* These names are only contained in a few copies of the text, and do not agree in all points. The above are contained in the two oldest copies, and the others agree except where otherwise mentioned.
* This is the person mentioned at page 199, but he should be more correctly styled Malik-zadah as he was not a Prince, but merely connected, on the mother's side, with the Khwârazmî Sultan, Muhammed, father of Jalâl-ud-
Malik 'Ala-ud-Din, Jānī, Shāh-zādah [Prince] of Turākistān.

Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of 'Alī, son of Abī 'Alī, Malik of Ghūr.'

Malik Iẓz-ud-Din, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz.

Malik Iktīyiār-ud-Din, Ḥusain.

Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjār-i-Gajz-lāk Khān.

Malik Iktīyiār-ud-Din, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā, son of Ḥusām-ud-Din, 'Iwāz, Khaljī, Malik of Lakhnawatī.


Malik Rukan-ud-Dīn, Ḥamzah-i-‘Abd-ul-Malik.

Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Būlād [Pūlād]-i-Nāṣirī.

The Malik of Ghūr, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Mādīnī, Shansabānī.

Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Mārdān Shāh, Muḥammad-i-ChāUSH [the Pursuivant '].

Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn of Bindār [or Pindār], the ChāUSH.

Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn-i-Tughān, Feeoffee of Budā‘ūn.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tūghrīl, Kuṭbī [Bahā-i].

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Baḵt-yār, the Khalj.

Dīn. After the Ghūrīs took Nishāpūr in 596 H. [see page 380], he came into Hindūstān with his cousin, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tīgīn, afterwards ruler of Nīmrūd of Sijistān. See pages 199—202.

7 The same who commanded the right wing of Sultān ‘Ala-ud-Dīn, Utsuz’s, army when that ruler of Ghūr lost his life. See page 416. He is called Ḥasan in some copies of the text in this place. He was not Malik of Ghūr but one of the Ghūrī Maliks. He is mentioned many times in this work.

The best Paris copy and the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, which generally agree, have, after the above, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Sālār-i-‘Harābī Mīḥdī, which name is again mentioned in the List preceding the reign of Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, farther on.


9 In two copies styled I-rān Shāh-i-Balkā, the Khaljī.

1 In one copy, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Ḥarīṣ-i-Mārdān Shāh, and Mīrān Shāh, and, in another, as two different persons. Chā-USH has probably been read by the copyist as Ḥarīṣ, but, in another, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Mīrān Shāh, son of Muḥammad-i-Chā-USH, Khaljī.

2 This must be meant for Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Tūghrīl-i-Tughān Khān, who held the fief of Budā‘ūn in 630 H.

3 This is a specimen of the dependence we can place on our author’s names and statements. If he refers here to the conqueror of Bihār and Lakhnawatī, he was dead five years before I-yal-timīsh was raised to the throne, in fact, before I-yal-timīsh’s former master received his manumission. The word Khaljī occurs in every copy containing these names, with the exception of one, which
Malik Karā Sunkar-i-Nāṣīrī.
Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ai-yitim-i-Bahā-i.
Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, Tez Khān-i-Kūṭbī.
Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Āghūl-Bak, Malik of Awadh.
Malik 'Īzz-ud-Dīn, 'Āli, Nāgawrī, Siwālikhī.

Victories and Conquests.

Buda'iin, Banāras and defeat of Rāe Mān, fortress of Rantabhūr [or Ranthabhūr], Jālor, victory over Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz and taking him prisoner, occupation of Lohor, victory over the hostile Amīrs in front of the Bāgh-i-Jūd [the Jūd Garden], Tabarhindah, Sursutī, Kuhrām, victory over Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ḥrabā-jah, subjugation of Lakhānawatī and its territory, taking of Ḫīnnaqī-Sher-gārī, Lalehr or Alehr, Tirhut, Gwāliyar, Nandānah, Dūjah [or Kūjah], and Siāl-kot, Janjer, and Mūndūdah or Mūdah, Ajmīr, Bihār, occupation of the fortress of Lakhānawatī a second time, fortress of Mandawar, has Ghūrī. If this last name be correct, of course, the conqueror of Lakhānawatī is not referred to.

The I. O. L. MS. has Malik आला, the Khalj, after this; but he was no more one of I-yal-timīsh's Maliks than Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, was.

4 So styled from having been, at first, the slave of Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tūghrīl, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām's slave.

5 These two last-named personages were Maliks of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's reign, and were but nominally dependent on Kūtb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, whilst he was the Sultan's Deputy in Hind. They are the same as those referred to at page 548, and were the entertainers and patrons of Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, the Khalj, after he had been refused service at Ghaznīn, and also at Dīhīf.

Of the twenty-five Maliks, most of whom were the slaves of I-yal-timīsh, separate accounts of whom are given in the next Section, but three can be recognized among the twenty-one here recorded; but several are mentioned here, as well as in the account of his reign, who are not mentioned in that Section; while some others, mentioned under his reign, are not mentioned here.

6 In one copy for yb आला, is ७८५७-2 in another, is another a", "01 The last three are wholly unintelligible.

7 Two of the oldest copies have—"and taking him prisoner," but he was not taken.

8 This is wholly unintelligible. It is written लहर and लहर and लहर Pro-\text{ably} लहर or लहर—Kāthehr or Kāther—is meant.

9 This place or tract is constantly mentioned in connexion with Nandanaḥ, and lies in that direction, without the shadow of doubt. In two copies of the text, however—one the best Paris copy—it is written कोह and कोह and कोह and कोह respectively. It cannot be intended for Koh-i-Jūd, for it is clearly written several times in the text. In one place—in one of the oldest copies—it is written कोह but in several places it is कोह as above.
fort of Bhakar, Úchchah and Multān, Siwastān, Dibal, fort of Thankir, fort of Bhilsān, Mālwah and the expedi-
dition against the unbelievers and extortion of tribute, fort of Ujjain-Nagari and bringing away of the idol
of Mahā-kāl, which they have planted before the gateway of the Fāmī Masjid at the capital city of Dīlī in order
that all true believers might tread upon it ².

II. MALIK-US-SA'ID, NASIR-UD-DIN, MAHMUD SHĀH, SON
OF SULTĀN SHAMS-UD-DIN, I-YAL-TIMISH.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, was the eldest son
of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn; and he was a beneficent, intelli-
gent, sensible, and sagacious Prince⁴, and was endowed
with great energy and gallantry, and was munificent, and
benevolent.

The first fief which the Sultan conferred upon him was
the district of Hānsi⁴; and, after a considerable time, in
the year 623 H., the territory of Awadh was entrusted to
his charge. In that country that Prince performed nume-
rous commendable actions, and carried on holy war, as by
the tenets of the faith enjoined, so that his praise for man-
liness and boldness became diffused throughout the area of
Hindūstān.

The accursed Bartū [or Britū], beneath whose sword
above a hundred and twenty thousand Musalmāns had

² One copy of the text, not one of the oldest three, but a good copy, has
Jāj-nagar here entered as one of the victories or conquests!

The greater number of the above so-called victories and conquests are not
even mentioned in the reign of I-yal-timīsh, and several of those that are were
affected by his Maliks; but neither these nor the remainder are all mentioned
in the account given of their lives. What our author often calls a victory may
be judged of from the mention of Kūhrām, Budā'ūn [which I-yal-timīsh held
the fief of], Kīnnauj, and several other places, which were taken in Sultān
Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's reign either by himself, or Malik Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak.

³ Our author styles him “Bādshāh,” which signifies a prince, as well as a
king. If he had any claims to be accounted a “sovereign,” beyond the
assignment to him of a canopy of state by his father, he should have been
included among the kings of Lakhānawatī, or styled sovereign of Awadh;
for he never reigned at the capital, Dīlī. His “reigning” over Lakhān-
awatī may be judged of from note ³, page 617. He never coined money in his
own name.

⁴ The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says Lahor was his first fief. See also note ⁴,
page 532.
attained martyrdom, he overthrew and sent to Hell; and the refractory infidels, who were in different parts of the country of Awadh, he reduced and overcame, and brought a considerable number under obedience.

From Awadh he resolved to march into Lakhanawati, and the forces of Hindustan, by command of the Sultan, his father, were nominated to serve under him, and Maliks of renown, such as Pūlān, and Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jānī, all of them proceeded towards Lakhanawati in attendance on him. Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, the Khalj, had marched forces from Lakhanawati with the intention of entering the territory of Bang, and had left his head-quarters empty [of defenders]. When the august Malik, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Māhmūd Shāh, reached that territory with his forces, the fortress of Basan-koṭ and the city of Lakhanawati fell into his hands.

When the news reached Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, the Khalj, he set out for Lakhanawati from the place where he then was. Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Māhmūd Shāh, with his forces, proceeded against him and defeated him, and captured Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, with all his kinsmen and the Khalj Amīrs, his treasures, and elephants. He had Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, put to death, and appropriated his treasures. From Lakhanawati Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Māhmūd Shāh, sent sums of money in the shape of presents to all the 'Ulamā, the Sayyids, devotees, recluses, and pious men of the capital, Dihlī, and other cities and towns. When the dresses of distinction from Baghīdād, the capital of the Khilafat, reached the presence

Who this Hindi chief was we have no means of discovering, I fear, as other subsequent writers do not notice these events at all. He is styled in some of the best copies as above, which is probably meant for Prithu—but, in others, the word is written which may be Bartūh, Birtūh, or Bartūh, &c., but is often written by copyists.

By the "forces of Hindūstān" are meant the contingents of the feudatories east of the Jūn and Gang. The word Hindūstān is used by our author with reference to the Antarbed Do-ābah generally, but, sometimes, to the tracts east of the Gang as well.

In some copies of the text The best copies are as above, but no such person is mentioned anywhere in the whole work, and I think it may be the nick-name of some chief, who might be recognized under his right name, unless it refers to the tenth in the List, page 626.

These events, and those which followed, have been detailed at length in note 5, page 617.
of Sultān Shams-ud-Din, from among them he selected one
dress of great value and despatched it to Lakhanawatī
along with a red canopy of state; and Malik Nāsir-ud-Din,
Maḥmūd Shāh, became exalted by [the bestowal of] that
canopy of state, the dress of honour, and great distinction.

All the Maliks and grandees of the kingdom of Hind
had their eyes upon him, that he would be the heir to the
Shamsī dominions, but the decree of destiny, according to
[the saying]—"Man proposes, but God disposes"—har-
monizes not with human conceptions! A year and a half
afterwards, his sacred person became afflicted with disease
and weakness, and he died. When the news of his
decease reached the capital [city of] Dihlī, all the people
manifested great grief thereat. May Almighty God make
the Sultān of Islām, Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, as he is
the heir to his name and title, the heir, during his life-
time, of the whole of the Maliks and Sultāns of that
dynasty, for the sake of His prophet and the whole of his
posterity!

III. SULTĀN RUKN-UD-DĪN, FIRŪZ SHĀH, SON OF THE
SULTĀN I-YAL-TIMISH.

Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, was a beneficent
sovereign, of handsome exterior, was endowed with gentle-
ness and humanity to perfection, and in bountifulness and
liberality he was a second Ḥātim.

His mother, Shāh Turkan, was a Turkish hand-maid,
and the head [woman] of all the Sultan's haram, and

9 "L'homme propose, mais Dieu dispose."

1 He died in 626 H. Our author, subsequently, refers to him as the "mar-
tyred" Malik. [Malik, an error, probably, for August Malik], at
least such are the words in the various copies of the text, but why he does not
say, neither does he state how or where he died. Subsequent writers who
depended upon our author for information dismiss this Prince in a few words;
but Firīṣṭah states that he died in or at Lakhanawatī, but this, like a good
many more of his statements, requires confirmation.

2 In the work I have previously referred to, the following is given as the
inscription on the first coins of this monarch:

Reverse—("The throne when left by Shams-
ud-Dīn, his foot thereon placed Rukn-ud-Dīn.
Obverse—"Coined at Dihlī in the first year of his reign with prosperity associated, 633 H.

3 In some copies styled "Khudawandah-i-Jahān, Shāh Turkān."
great was the bounty, benevolence, and charity, of that Malikah ⁴, towards 'Ulamā, Sayyids, priests, and recluses.

In the year 625 H.⁵, Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, obtained the fief of Buda'iin, and a green canopy of state, and the 'Ain-ul-Mulk, Husain-i-Ash'ari, who was. [had been?] Wazir of Malik [Sultān] Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Kābā-jah, at this time, became the Wazir⁶ of Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh.

When Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn returned to the capital, Dihli, from Gwāliyūr, after the capture of that fortress and country, the territory of Lohor, which had been the seat of government of the Khusrau Malikī ⁷ [dynasty], was conferred upon Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh; and, on Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn's return from his last expedition, from the river Sind and Banīān⁸, he brought along with him, to the capital, his son Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, for the people had their eyes upon him, since, after [the late] Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, he was the eldest of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn's sons⁹.

When that august Sultān passed from the kingdom of this world to the throne of the world to come, the Maliks and grandees of the kingdom, by agreement, seated Rukn-

⁴ At page 638, our author himself states that the mother of Raśiyyat was the chief of all the ladies—head wife—of the late Sultān's haram.

The word here used signifies that she was the first concubine the late Sultān possessed, not the chief wife of his haram, nor is she entitled to be styled Malikah, for the married women are the first in rank, and, of these, one was Sultan Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak's, daughter.

⁵ Tabakat-i-Akbarī, and several others, have, like our author, who was their chief authority for these events, 625 H., but Fīrūstah has 626 H. His authority, however, is of no importance whatever for the events of this early period—even less than I was inclined to give him credit for—for I find, on examination of his history for this and the five following reigns, that he has bodily appropriated the text, in many places verbatim, of the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, even to the poetical quotations. The only difference is occasional verbal alterations, and that, in most instances in which the former disposes of an event in a few words, Fīrūstah, by exaggeration and hyperbole, manages to lengthen out his own account.

⁶ Or, in other words, his governor or tutor. Our author, however, does not mean to say that he was styled Sultān at this period. See page 613.

⁷ The last of the Ghaznīn dynasty—Sultān Khusrau Malik.

⁸ The Tabakat-i-Akbarī [and Fīrūstah, of course] has Sīwastān, which is a mistake for Banīān, which is never mentioned in the former.

⁹ The people may have had their eyes upon him, but I-yal-timīsh had already named his talented daughter, Raśiyyat Khātān, as his successor. See pages 638, 639.
ud-Din upon the throne, on Tuesday, the 21st of the month Sha'ban, 633 H., and the diadem and throne acquired beauty and splendour from his dignity, and excellence, and elegance; and all rejoiced at his accession, and donned honorary dresses [to testify their joy].

When the different Maliks returned from the capital [to their various posts], Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firuz Shah, opened the door of his treasuries, and gave himself up to pleasure, and began to expend, in the most profuse fashion, the funds of the Bait-ul-Mal in an improper manner. Such was his excessive appetite for pleasure and sensual enjoyments, that the business of the country, the concerns of the state, and the regulation of the affairs of the kingdom fell into a state of disorder and confusion; and his mother, Shâh Turkan, began to assume the decision and disposal of state affairs, and used to issue [her] commands. Perhaps it was by reason of this, that, during the lifetime of the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, she had experienced envy and jealousy on the part of [some of the] other ladies of the haram, that she [now] brought misfortune upon that party among the inmates of the haram, and, by tyranny and cruelty, destroyed several of them. The minds of men in authority became troubled at their [the mother's

1 Two copies of the text, one an old one, have Tuesday, the 29th of Sha'ban. Tabakat-i-Akbari has Saturday, 633 H., without date or month, and, of course, Firigshah has the same.

2 Their joy was soon turned into grief. His dignified behaviour, and the "adornment and splendour" the crown and throne derived from him is related farther on.

3 When they "returned home," Elliot: vol. ii. page 330. The original is مراجع نوعودند—there is not a word of home—a word unknown in the East.

4 See note 4, page 62.

5 She, on the contrary, envied and was jealous of the others through their having taken her place. No sooner did she obtain an opportunity than she had the noble women—free-born women—who had been married to the late Sultan, put to death with much degradation, and the other Turkish concubines—women held in esteem by I-yal-timish—she treated with great ignominy, and wreaked upon them retribution for many years of envy and jealousy which she had nourished towards them. Our author's own words respecting her, farther on, contradict this statement as to her benevolence, unless charity towards recluses and the like—in his opinion—covered the multitude of her sins.

There is no authority whatever beyond what our author says here for styling this concubine "Queen Mother," and, at page 638, he himself says, Ra'iyyat's mother was the chief wife of I-yal-timish. See Thomas: Pathán Kings, page 105, and Elliot: India, vol. ii. page 330.
and son’s] conduct; and, in the face of all these acts, they caused a son of the [late] Sultan, who was styled Kutb-ud-Din⁴, and a youth of great worth and promise, by their directions, to be deprived of the sight of both eyes, and afterwards had him put to death. From these causes, the hostility of the Maliks, in different parts, began to be manifested.

Malik Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad Shāh⁷, son of Sultan Shams-ud-Dīn, who was younger in years than Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, displayed his hostility in Awadh, and took possession of the whole of the treasure of Lakhanawati which was being conveyed to the capital, and, after that, sacked and plundered several of the towns of Hindustān. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Sālārī, who was the feudatory of Budā‘īn, broke out into rebellion; and, in another direction, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz⁸, feoffee of Multān, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Kūjī, who was feu-

⁴ The youngest of Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timīṣ’s sons, quite a child, by another concubine. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Ūchchah, was feudatory of Īchchah when Sultan I-yal-timīṣ died, and, soon after, whilst Sultan Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, and his Maliks were squabbling together, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Karlugh, from the direction of Banjān, advanced into the Panjāb, and appeared before Multān. Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, marched out of Īchchah with his forces, and gave him battle, and overthrew him. This was a great success, as, since the death of I-yal-timīṣ, enemies had sprung up on all sides. Our author does not give the date of this success; but it must have been about the end of 633 H., or early in 634 H. In the former year Malik Ḥasan, the Karlugh, coined money: he then held Ghaznīn, Kārmān, and Banjān.

⁷ What became of him is not known. He was probably put to death. Malik Nuṣrāt-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasa‘ī, was put in charge of the fief of Awadh by Sultan Raẓīyāyat.

⁸ In the account of him, in next Section, our author says he was removed from Multān by Sultan Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, and the fief of Sundm was conferred upon him instead of Multān.

Fīrishṭah, according to the "revised text" by Briggs, and "Munshi Mir Kheirāt Ali Khan," makes a terrible mess of the names of persons here [Dow, of course, is sufficiently ridiculous in this matter, and makes them totally unintelligible], although he had the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, in which they are pretty correct, to copy from. He could not have taken them from our author's work. For example; Sālārī is turned into Sālār, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, is turned into Sher Khān, and Kabīr Khān into Kabīr Khān—with the yā-i-nisbat, signifying "of, or relating to a Khān," Khān-ship, &c., as if they were merely officers or slaves of a Sher Khān and a Kabīr Khān, instead of the words being their own titles; and, in the same work, the word ā as in 'Izz-ud-Dīn, is invariably turned into ā‘!
datary of Hânsî, and Malik 'Alâ-ud-Dîn, Jâni, who held the fief of Lohor, united together, and began to act with hostility and contumacy. Sultan Rûkni-ud-Dîn, Fîrûz Shâh, with the determination of coercing them, moved an army from the capital. The Wazir of the kingdom, the Nizâm-ul-Mulk, Muhammed, Junâidi, became frightened, and fled from Gîlû-khari, and retired towards Kol, and from thence joined Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Muhammed, Sâlârî; and both of them joined Malik Jâni and Malik Kûji.

Sultan Rûkni-ud-Dîn, Fîrûz Shâh, led his army towards Kuhrâm. The Turk Amirs and the slaves of the household, who were serving with the centre [the contingents forming the centre], followed the example; and, in the

9 Another writer says, that 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Kabîr Khân-i-Ayât, feudatory of Multân, was incited to usurp the sovereignty of Dihîf, and was advancing for the purpose, but, before he could reach Kuhrâm, the other nobles seized Rûkni-ud-Dîn, and set up his sister. Malik Ikhtiyâr-ud-Dîn, Yûz-Bakî-Tughrîl Khân, who then held the office of Amir-i-Majlis, was also concerned in this outbreak, but the ringleader appears to have been Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balbân-i-Kâshli Khân, whose contumacy was continual.

1 Styled Kâmal-ud-Dîn, Mûmammad-i-Abû-Sâ‘îd, Junâidî, in the list at the end of Sultan Shams-ud-Dîn's reign, page 625.

2 Firishtah's text makes him "advance" to Gîlû-khari, as if it were a place many miles away; instead of being a suburb of the capital, Dihîf.

56 9S—One of the many new "cities," so called, adjoining and included in the name of Dihîf, but more correctly a new suburb. It has been generally stated by Muhammedan writers, that it was founded by Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Dîn Kai-Kubâd, in 686 H., but that cannot be correct from what our author says in his account of Ulugh Khân farther on, where he styles it "the Shahrî-Nau of Gîlû-khari." When it was founded "the river Jûn or Jaman flowed close under its walls; but now the river is some two kuroh to the east of it. The tomb of the venerated Musâlmân saint, Shâh Nizâm-ud-Dîn, the Budâ’ûnî, is situated in Gîlû-khari."

3 Compare Elliot: vol. ii. page 331. We have so little information respecting the organization of the Dihîf armies before the time of the Mughal emperors that it is difficult to understand what is really meant here, as well as in several other places, by the mere word "kalb." All the Musâlmân armies appear to have been arranged in the field, after one and the same fashion—a centre, which was the king’s post, a right and left wing, an advance guard or van, supports, &c. The ‘Arabic word kalb signifies "heart, soul, kernel, marrow, middle," &c., and, with respect to an army, the "centre," which, according to the arrangement above-mentioned, would be perfectly intelligible with regard to an army in the field, but here might be understood, by the reader, as if the centre division of a corps d’armée, under a regular military organization, was stationed at Dihîf, which is not the case; but, from what I gather from the Tarikh-i-Fîrûz Shâhî, and other works, it evidently refers to the contingents which formed the kalb or centre of the Dihîf forces when in the field. These contingents were furnished by numerous feudatories,
vicinity of Manṣūr-pūr and Tarā’īn, they martyred the Tāj-ul-Mulk, Maḥmūd, the son of the Muṣḥrīf-i-Mamalik, and Bahā-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan [Husain ?]-i-Ash’ārī, Karīm-ud-Dīn-i-Zāhid [the Recluse], Ziyā-ul-Mulk [ud-Dīn?], the son of the Niẓām-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad, Junaidī, Niẓām-ud-Dīn, Shafūrḵānī, the Khwājah Rashīd-ud-Dīn, Mārkānī, Amir Fakhr-ud-Dīn, the Dabir [Secretary], and a number of other Tājīk officials; and, in the month of Rabi’-ul-Awwal, in the year 634 H., Sultān Raṣīyyat, who was the eldest daughter of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, entered upon open hostility with the mother of Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, at Dīhilī, and he, as a matter of necessity, returned again towards the capital. His mother had conspired against Sultān Raṣīyyat to put

great and small, whose fiefs lay in the immediate vicinity of the capital, and whose contingents could be summoned to the king’s standard at a very short notice. The Turk ghulāms also formed part of the āl, and they served wherever the Sultān happened to be.

Tarā’īn, the place of Rāe Pithorā’s overthrow, so often mentioned, the modern Talāwārī. There would be some difficulty in finding “Nārai” I expect.

This is the person who wrote a congratulatory poem on the debauchee’s accession.

A number of titles and names of offices occur in the following pages, many of which, being pure old Turkish, it is impossible to fix exactly without a knowledge of the Turkish language; and, although, as far as similar names go, some few of the offices in question existed in Akbar’s time, still there is much doubt whether such offices under the Mughal dynasty were equivalent to those of a similar designation during the reigns of the Turkish Slave dynasty, and would require some years of study fully to elucidate. See the note on this subject under the eighth year of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh’s reign farther on.

Shafūrḵānī or Shāburghānī—a native of Shafīrkān or Shabīrgbān. In some copies, Shārfānī and Saḵānī. See note 1, page 127.

In the best copies of the text this word is written as above, but in some others it is Mārkānī, Bārkānī, and Mānkānī or Māngānī.

The Tabākāt-i-Akbarī makes a terrible blunder here, and Firīštah, as a matter of course, follows, as well as Būdā’ūnī. The former work states that all these persons, who were put to death, “separated from the Sultān’s army, went off to Dīhilī, and pledged their allegiance to Raṣīyyat Khatīm, eldest daughter of the late Sultān, and raised her to the throne.” Several other authors who copy from the former work all fall into the same error without mentioning the names. Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 331, where this very plain and easy passage, which is perfectly correct in the printed text, is construed so as to make all these Tājīk officials, who were killed, the killers of “the Tājīk,” and Firīštah [Briggs?] is quoted to prove that they deserted Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh.

I-yal-timīsh had, himself, declared her his heir and successor, as stated farther on. She was not his only daughter it is said.
her to death. The people of the city, upon this, rose, and attacked the royal Kaşr [Castle], and seized the mother of Rukn-ud-Din, Fīrūz Shāh.

When Rukn-ud-Din, Fīrūz Shāh, reached the city, insurrection had [already] broken out therein, and his mother had been made prisoner. The centre contingents [of the Dihli forces] and the Turk Amīrs all entered Dihli and joined Sultan Rażiyyat, pledged their allegiance to her, and placed her on the throne. Having ascended the throne, she despatched a force consisting of the Turkish slaves and Amīrs to Gīlū-khari, so that they made prisoner of Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Fīrūz Shāh, and brought him into the city. He was imprisoned and confined, and, in that prison, he was received into the Almighty’s mercy. This circumstance of his seizure, imprisonment, and death occurred on Sunday, the 18th of the month Rabī’-ul-Awwal, in the year 634 H.; and his reign was six months and twenty-six days.

Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Fīrūz Shāh, in munificence and liberality, was a second Ḥātim, and what he did, in expending wealth, in conferring so many honorary dresses, and the superfluity of presents, no king, at any time, or in any reign, had done the like of; but his misfortune was this, that his inclinations were wholly towards buffoonery, sensuality, and diversion, and that he was entirely enslaved by dissipation and debauchery; and most of his honorary dresses and his presents were made to such people as musicians and singers, buffoons and Ganymèdes. His excessive waste of money was to such degree, that, while

---

2 Two modern copies of the text have Gīlū-khari.
3 Whilst all this was going on at Dihli, the feudatories of Lakhanawāṭī and Lakhan-or were having a private war of their own. See account of Malik No. VII., in the next Section.
4 If all this happened in one day, it is very certain that he must have been put to death. Some copies have instead of ۴.
5 Some copies have “twenty-eight days;” from the 20th of Sha‘bān, 633 H., the date of I-yal-timīsh’s decease, to the 18th of Rabī’-ul-Awwal, 634 H., is exactly six months and twenty-seven days.
6 This is the person from whose dignity and elegance “the crown and throne acquired adornment and splendour”! One author states, that, during the short time he reigned, he and his mother managed to empty the treasury, and to spend all the wealth accumulated during the reign of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timīsh.
in a state of intoxication, seated on the back of an elephant, he would drive through the bazaar of the city, scattering *tangals* of red gold which the people in the street used to pick up, and gain advantage by. He had a passion for frolic, and for riding elephants, and the whole class of elephant drivers derived immense benefit from his riches and good-nature. It was not in his nature and disposition to injure a human being, and this fact was the cause of the wane of his dominion.

It is essential above all things, that sovereigns should have justice in order that their subjects should dwell in tranquillity and repose, and that they possess beneficence so that their followers may be satisfied and contented; and revelry and merriment, and companionship with the base and ignoble, becomes the means of an empire's ruin. The Almighty pardon him!

IV. SULTÁN 8 RAZIYYAT-UD-DUNYÁ WA UD-DÍN, DAUGHTER OF SULTÁN I-YAL-TIMISH.

Sultán Raziyyat—may she rest in peace!—was a great sovereign, and sagacious, just, beneficent, the patron of the learned, a dispenser of justice, the cherisher of her subjects, and of warlike talent, and was endowed with all the admirable attributes and qualifications necessary for kings;

7 ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 332—"He was very fond of playing with and riding upon elephants." Rather rough play.

8 Raziyyat has a meaning, but "Raziya" and "Riziah" mean nothing. Sultán, from سلطان, signifies to have or possess power, to rule, &c.—a sovereign—and is therefore as equally applicable to a female as a male, and does not appear to have had anything to do with "affectation of the superior sex," nor her assumption, subsequently, of male attire when she rode forth. Her name or title, like that of most other Muḥammadans in these pages, is pure Arabic, the feminine form of the by no means uncommon name of Razi-ud-Dín. See Thomas: PATHAN KINGS, page 108.

The following is said to have been the inscription on the first coins of this queen regnant, in which she is styled 'Umdat-un-Niswan—the great, or illustrious among women:

Obverse—*عهد السواح ملک که ران سلطان رفیقة بنی شمس الدین ایخش*—(Signed: Dhi Ishaq, 640 in Arabic.)

Reverse—*شیر بلده دهلی بنی 83 جاویس*—(Signed: Dihli, 643 H., the first of the reign.)

which may be translated:—Reverse:—"The illustrious among women, the Queen of the Age, Sultán Raziyyat, daughter of Shams-ud-Dín, I-yal-timish." Obverse:—"Coined at the city of Dihli, 643 H., the first of the reign."

9 Compare ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 332.
but, as she did not attain the destiny, in her creation, of being computed among men, of what advantage were all these excellent qualifications unto her?

During the lifetime of the august Sultan, her father, she exercised authority, and possessed great grandeur, on this account, that her mother, Turkān Khātūn, was the greatest [of the ladies] of the sublime haram, and her place of residence was the royal palace, the Kushk-i-Firūzī [Firūzī Castle]. As the august Sultan Shams-ud-Din used to notice in her indications of sovereignty and high spirit, although she was a daughter, and [consequently] veiled from public gaze, when he returned after acquiring possession of Gwāliyūr, he commanded the Tāj-ul-Mulk, Maḥmūd, the secretary—on whom be peace!—who was the Mushrif-i-Mamālik [Secretary of the State], to write out a decree, naming his daughter as his heir-apparent, and she was made his heir [accordingly].

Whilst this decree was being written out, those servants of the state, who had access to the presence of the Sultan, made representation, saying: "Inasmuch as he has grown-up sons who are eligible for the sovereignty, what scheme and what object has the Sultan of Islam in view in making a daughter sovereign and heir-apparent? Be pleased to

1 This proves what our author meant by the word ṣe with respect to Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh's mother, namely, that, in point of time or age, she was the oldest of J-yal-timish's concubines. Rašiyat Khātūn was his eldest child and, in all probability, her mother was Kutb-ud-Din, Ī-bak's daughter.

Our author is about the only authority available for the events of this period—all other works, since written, merely copy from him and add from their own fertile imaginations—and there is no authority for stating [Thomas: PATHĀN KINGS, page 104] that Rašiyat was "brought up under a greater degree of freedom from the seclusion enjoined for females by the more severe custom of ordering Muslim households," for our author here states she was "veiled from public gaze," and it was only just before the end of her reign that she assumed the dress of a male, which, really, is not very different from that of a female—the addition of a head dress and tunic—as our author states.

Dow, as usual, misinterpreting Firīstah, who copies from the Tabākāt-i-Akbarī, which copies our author, incorrectly states that "on her accession, changing her apparel, she assumed the imperial robes." The "imperial robes" equally with the rest are all his own.

2 In ELLIOT, it is made "the chief royal palace in the Kushk-firozī!"

3 Tāj-ul-Mulk signifies the crown of the state: "Tāju-l-Malik" nothing. The word mushrif signifies an examiner or authenticator of records and other writings, but not a wasir certainly. Dābir—a secretary, a clerk, a scribe. Mudabbir—an administrator, director, counsellor, &c. Compare ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 333.
remove this difficulty from our minds, as this deed does not seem advisable to your humble servants.” The Sultan replied: “My sons are engrossed in the pleasures of youth, and none of them possesses the capability of managing the affairs of the country, and by them the government of the kingdom will not be carried out. After my death it will be seen that not one of them will be found to be more worthy of the heir-apparentship than she, my daughter.” The case turned out as that august monarch had predicted.

When Sultan Raziyyat ascended the throne of the kingdom, all things returned to their usual rules and customs; but the Wazir of the kingdom, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaidi, did not acknowledge her; and Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jānī, Malik Saif-ud-Din, Kūjī, Malik 'Īzz-ud-Din, Kabir Khān-i-Ayāz, Malik 'Īzz-ud-Din, Muhammad, Sālārī, and the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaidi, assembled from different parts before the gate of the city of Dihli, and commenced hostilities against Sultan Raziyyat, and this opposition continued for a considerable time. At this period Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Din, Tā-yasa'i, the Mu'izzī, who was feoffee of Awadh, marched with his forces from that province, for the purpose of rendering aid to Sultan Raziyyat, in conformity with [her] commands, towards Dihli, the capital. After he had crossed the river Gang,

---

4 The Tażkarat-ul-Muliik says “one reason why I-yal-timish named her as his successor was, that his son, Naṣir-ud-Din, Māḥmūd Shāh—the second son of that name—was so young in years; and the Sultan remarked to his minister, at the time, that, although in the form of a woman, she was in reality a man.”

5 He is styled, by some more modern writers, Chandīfī, as if he were a nāvī of Chandīfī or that that was a by-name of his, but it is incorrect. He had been I-yal-timish’s wazīr for a considerable time.

6 These are the same who, as stated in Elliot, killed “the Tāzik.”

7 He had been made feudatory of Awadh by Raziyyat after Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad Shāh’s rebellion. See page 633.

8 Previous to these events, the feudatory of Kīnnauj, Malik Tamur Khān-i-Kirān, was despatched by Sultan Raziyyat into the Gwāliyūr territory and Mālwah in command of a force, and the expedition was successful, but no particulars are given. The same Malik, when feudatory of Awadh, penetrated as far as the Tīrhūt territory, and compelled the Rāes and Rānahs, and independent Hindū tribes in that part to pay tribute. He plundered the territory of Bhatī-ghūn [anglicised Bhatgong] in Nīpāl on several occasions, but neither particulars nor dates are given, but they all happened before this period.
the hostile Maliks⁹ who were before the city of Dihli unexpectedly advanced to meet him, and took him prisoner, and affliction overcame him, and he died¹. The stay of the hostile Maliks before the gate of Dihli was prolonged for a considerable time; but, as the good fortune of Sulţān Rażiyyat was at the point of ascendancy, the Sulţān issued from the city, and directed her sublime tent to be pitched at a place on the bank of the river Jūn; and, between the Turk Amirs who served at the stirrup of sovereignty, and the hostile Maliks, conflicts took place upon several occasions. At last, an accommodation was arranged, but in a deceptive manner, and by the subtile contrivance of Malik 'Īzz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Sālārī², and Malik 'Īzz-ud-Din, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, who, secretly, went over to the Sulţān's side, and, one night, met before the entrance to the royal tent, with this stipulation, that Malik Jānī, Malik Saif-ud-Din, Kūjī, and the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad, Junaidī, should be summoned, and be taken into custody and imprisoned, in order that the sedition might be quelled.

When these Maliks became aware that the state of affairs was on this wise, they left their camp and fled. The Sultan's horsemen followed in pursuit, and Malik Saif-ud-Din, Kūjī, and his brother, Fakhr-ud-Din, fell into their hands, and, subsequently to that, they were put to death in prison. Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jānī, was killed within the limits of Pāyāl⁸, at a village named Nakawān⁴, and his

⁹ There is nothing about "hostile generals" in the whole passage.
¹ He appears to have been suffering from illness when Sultan Rażiyyat summoned him to her aid.
² The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, which copies so much from our author, asserts, however, that it was Sultan Rażiyyat, who, by her able contrivance, succeeded in upsetting and confounding the disaffected Amirs. Firīṣṭah, of course, agrees.
³ Elliot, Babul; Briggs, from Firīṣṭah, Babool, Firīṣṭah, text, Bābāl —कृं— and Dow, omitted altogether. Pāyāl, or Pāyīl, is the name of a very old place, giving name to the district, with a very lofty brick fort visible from a great distance—1 mention it as it appeared about a century since—on one of the routes from Dihli to Lūdiānah. The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī gives the name of the district correctly, but leaves out the name of the place. It is in Long. 76° 5′, Lat. 30° 40′.
⁴ In some copies Nakawān or Nagawān [نکوان], but the majority of the best
head was brought to the capital; and the Niẓām-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad, Junaidī, retired to the hills of Sir-mūr Bardār, and there, after some time, he died.

Now that the affairs of Sulṭān Raẓiyyat’s government became arranged, she gave the office of Wazīr to the Khwājah, Muḥazzab, who was the deputy of the Niẓām-ul-Mulk, and he likewise received the title of Niẓām-ul-Mulk. The charge of the army, as her lieutenant, was conferred upon Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Bihāk, who received the title of Kuṭlugh Khān; and Malik Ḥizz-ud-Din, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, received the fief of Lohor, and the kingdom became pacified, and the power of the state widely extended. From the territory of Lakhānawātī to Diwal and Damrīlah, all the Maliks and Amīrs manifested their obedience and submission. Suddenly, Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Bihāk, died, and the charge of the army was

copies of the text are as above. The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952 and that of the R. A. S. MS. have both ७१६.

6 See farther on, under the reign of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, respecting this tract of country.

6 He is turned into Muḥazzab, Ghaznawī, by Fīrishtah, and by his translators, Dow and Briggs, respectively, “Chaja Ghiznavi” and “Mihdy Ghiznavy.”

Muḥazzab, but not Moḥsab—which is meaningless—certainly does mean “good, sincere,” &c., but in Elliot, vol. ii. page 334, this passage is rendered “she conferred the office of wazīr on an upright officer who had been the deputy of Niẓāmu-l-Mulk,” but Khwājah does not mean officer, and Muḥazzab—i.e. Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn—is a proper name. Why not translate it always, and also translate Niẓāmu-l-Mulk, which means regulator of the state, &c., and all other proper names in the book after the same fashion? They all have meanings, the same as Muḥazzab has. The amusing part of it is that four pages farther on, page 338, he is styled “the wazīr Moḥsabud-dīn Muḥammad Aus Mustaufī,” and so on until that “upright officer,” than whom no greater rascal is mentioned in this work, met his reward in the “Aḥanz Hauz-rānī.” See pages 651—653, 658, and 662, for the doings of that “upright officer.”

7 This word is written جن and is doubtful.

8 The Taḥaḵāt-i-Akbārī here copies our author nearly word for word, and Fīrishtah copies the former in the same way. The Taḵkarat-ul-Mulik says, “through God’s assistance she reduced the disaffected Maliks to submission and even the Malik of Lakhānawātī became obedient to her authority.”

Malik Ḥizz-ud-Dīn, Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, on her accession, despatched emissaries to the capital, and, to testify his homage, was continually sending offerings of great value from Lakhānawātī. On this account Sulṭān Raẓiyyat conferred upon him a canopy of state, and standards, and great honour. At this period Malik Muʿayyid-ud-Dīn, Hindū Khān, held the fief of Ūchchāh, which was conferred upon him by Sulṭān Raẓiyyat.
bestowed upon Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, son of 'Ali, Ghūrī, and he was appointed to [march and relieve] the fortress of Rantabhūr, because the Hindūs, after the decease of the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, had, for a considerable time, invested that preserved town and stronghold. Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, conducted the forces to that part, withdrew the Musalman Amirs [and their troops?] out of that fortification, destroyed the works, and retired, and returned to the capital again.

At this time, the Malik-i-Kabir [Great Malik] Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kīn, became Amir-i-Ḥājib, and Malik Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Yā-kūt, the Ḥabashi [Abyssinian or Ethiopian], who was Lord of the Stables, acquired favour in attendance upon the Sultān, so that the Turk Amirs and

9 This great noble, whose name will be found in the list at the end of I-yal-timish's reign, is styled Ḥusain as well as Ḥasan in several copies indiscriminately, but the first appears correct. Much more about him will be found in the last Section. He was forced to leave Ghūr through the power of the Mughals.

1 After he had raised the investment and relieved the place, the garrison was withdrawn, and no effort made to hold the place. The reason does not appear, and their giving up a strong place like this which had defied the efforts of the Hindūs so long seems strange. It was soon restored, however, by the Hindūs. What a flourish might have been made of this affair in the Rājpūt annals! It is mentioned in several places farther on.

3 Firishtah has not copied the Tabākāt-i-Akbarī correctly here, and turns him into Alb-Tigīn in the “revised text,” and Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Yā-kūt, is turned into a Amīr-ul-Umrā, which, although such a title did exist from Akbar’s time downwards, was entirely unknown in these days.

3 I think the character of this Princess has been assailed without just cause. Thomas says [PATHĀN KINGS, page 106] :—“It was not that a virgin Queen was forbidden to love—she might have indulged herself in a submissive Prince Consort, or revelled almost unchecked in the dark recesses of the Palace Harem—but wayward fancy pointed in a wrong direction, and led her to prefer a person employed about her Court [he was Amir-i-Akhur, or Lord of the Stables—Master of the Horse—a high office only conferred upon distinguished persons], an Abyssinian moreover, the favours extended to whom the Türkī nobles resented with one accord.”

Elphinstone, who draws his inspiration from Briggs, is more correct in his estimation of her character [and both Dow and Briggs are more correct than usual in their rendering of Firishtah’s words here] and says [page 324, Third ed.]:—“But her talents and virtues were insufficient to protect her from a single weakness. It was shown in the extraordinary (?) marks of favour which she showered (?) on her Master of the Horse; who, to make her partiality more degrading, was an Abyssinian slave [Who says he was a slave? If he was, he was only a slave like most of her other Maliks and Amīrs]. It does not appear that her fondness (?) was criminal, since the
Maliks began to be envious thereat; and it so chanced to happen that Sultan Rażiyyat laid aside the female dress and issued from her seclusion, and donned the tunic, and assumed the head-dress [of a man], and appeared among the people; and, when she rode out on an elephant, at the time of mounting it, all people used, openly, to see her.

At this period she issued commands for her troops to proceed to Gwāliyūr, and bestowed rich and valuable presents. As disobedience was out of the question, this servant

greatest breach of decorum alleged against her is her allowing the Abyssinian to lift her on her horse [a horse she never rode—always an elephant]."

Here is a proof of what a deal may be made out of a little. Our author is the sole authority for these statements in the Taβakat-i-Akbarī, Firīghtah, and Budāʻūnī, each of whom, in rotation, enlarge upon, and exaggerate our author's words—the last reverses them by saying that when she mounted an elephant or horse she leant upon him, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Yā-ḵūt, the Abyssinian. He was Amir-i-Aḵur before she came to the throne apparently, for she does not seem to have raised him to that office; and it was only in the last year of her reign that she assumed male attire, when she appeared in public. Our author does not say so, but all the Taβakat-i-Akbarī mentions is, that Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Yā-ḵūt, was treated with favour, a mere transliteration of our author's words—"تَسْرِی احاَد"—the same term as he uses with respect to Sultan Muʿizz-ud-Dīn's favour towards his slave, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bāk—and that the Turk Maliks and Amīrs were envious in consequence. All that that work states, in addition to our author's words—for he does not say so—is, that when she mounted to ride forth, the Master of the Horse, who had become Amir-ul-Umrā [such an office did not exist in those days, and our author never mentions such an office], used to aid her to mount by taking her under the arm-pit [Je]—but leaning on his arm or shoulder, in mounting, would seem to be nearer the intended meaning. Now it is very possible that it was part of the duty of the Lord of the Stables, or his privilege, to assist his sovereign to mount when he or she rode forth, and that such an act might not have been occasioned through any undue familiarity; only what was applicable to a male sovereign, according to Musalmaν ideas, was not so to a female. However, the Lord of the Stables being an Abyssinian, this was, with her assumption of male attire, plea sufficient to the rebellious Turk Maliks—the remainder of the "Chihil-gānī Mamlūks," of whom more hereafter—to rebel against a sovereign too energetic for them in their ambitious designs. The Zubdat-ut-Tawārīk̄h makes no reference to the Abyssinian whatever.

I cannot conceive why our author should be styled a rebel—"a forgiven rebel"—because of this sentence in the text. Gwāliyūr had a governor or seneschal placed therein by Sultan Rażiyyat's father in 630 H., and our author was Kāfī there. When Rażiyyat came to the throne, she sent a force under Malik Taj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar [No. XIV. in the next Section], and relieved the garrison, and, as the governor—Rāghīd-ud-Dīn, 'Alī—from our author's invocation respecting him, appears to have died there, a new feudatory was despatched, at the same time probably, although he is not mentioned, as, after the death of Rāghīd-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, the next official in authority was the Amīr-i-Dād, Žiyā-ud-Dīn, Junaidī, who, being a kinsman of
of the victorious kingdom, Minhâj-i-Sarâj, in conjunction with the Malik 'ul-Umrâ [the chief of Amîrs] Ziiyâ-ud-Din, Junaidi, who was the Amir-i-Dâd [chief magistrate] of Gwâliyûr, and with other persons of note, came out of the preserved fortress of Gwâliyûr on the 1st of the month Sha'bân, 635 H., and returned to Dihlî, the capital; and, in this same month, Sultân Raziyyat committed to the charge of this servant [the author] the Našîriâh College at the capital, to which was added the Kâzi-ship of Gwâliyûr.

In the year 637 H. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kâbir Khân-i-Ayâz, who was the feudatory of Lohor, began to show a rebellious spirit. Sultân Raziyyat led an army towards the rebel Wâzîr, who refused to acknowledge Sultân Raziyyat, may have been suspected of disaffection. No cause for rebellion appears, neither is any rebellion mentioned; and, on our author's arrival at Dihlî, another office was bestowed upon him, in addition to his Kâzi-ship of Gwâliyûr, which he still held. See Thomas: Pathân Kings, page 105.

"In 631 H. some emissaries from Balkâ Khân, son of Tûshî [Jülit], son of Chingiz Khân, arrived at the Court of Sultân I-yal-timisî from Khîshâk, bringing presents for him, but, as that Sultân had refrained from holding any intercourse whatever with the Mughal Khâns, and was wont to send their agents out of his territory when they came, he would not put these emissaries to death, and desired to dismiss them kindly. They were sent to Gwâliyûr, however, [this was one way of dismissing them kindly], and the party, being all Musalmâns, used to present themselves in the Masjid there every Friday, and said their prayers behind the author of this book [he acting as Imâm], until the reign of Sultân Raziyyat, when the author, after six years' absence, returned to Dihlî from Gwâliyûr, and was promoted, by the favour of that sovereign. At this time directions were given for these emissaries of Balkâ Khân to be removed to Kinnauj, and there detained; and there they were kept until they died."

6 In some copies, Majd-ul-Umrâ, but the above seems the correct title. Majd signifies glory, grandeur—the glory or grandeur of Amîrs does not sound very correct. It was an honorary title merely.

6 In this case he—"the pardoned" rebel—must have performed one of these two offices by deputy.

7 In the account of this Malik our author states that Kabîr Khân-i-Ayâz began to act contumaciously in 636 H., in which year Sultân Raziyyat advanced at the head of her troops into the Panjâb against him. He retired before her towards the Indus, until he reached the neighbourhood of the Sûdharah [he could not go much farther, for immediately to the west he would have fallen into hostile hands]. When the royal troops crossed the Râwî, Kabîr Khân-i-Ayâz made his submission, but he was removed from the fief of Lâhor, and Multân was placed in his charge, and the feudatory of the latter—Malik Karâ-Kush Khân—sent to Lâhor.

In this year, 636 H., Malik Sâif-ud-Dîn, Hasân, the Karlugh, hard pressed by the Mughals, had to abandon his territories, and he retired towards the territory of Multân and Sind, in hope, probably, of being more successful on
that part from Dihli, and followed in pursuit of him. At last an accommodation took place, and he presented himself; and the province of Multān, which Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Karā-Kush Khān-i-Aet-kin, held, was made over to the charge of Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz. Sultān Rażīyyat returned again to the capital on Thursday, the 19th of the month of Şa'bān, 637 H.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Altūniāh, who held the fief of Tabarhindah, broke out into rebellion, and, secretly, some of the Amirs of the Court abetted him in this treason. Sultān Rażīyyat, on Wednesday, the 9th of the sacred month Ramāzan of this same year [637 H.], set out from the capital, with numerous forces, for the purpose of putting down Malik Altūniāh's rebellion. When she reached that place [Tabarhindah], through circumstances which supervened, the Turk Amirs rose against her, and put to death Amir Jamāl-ud-Din, Ya-kūt, the Ḥabashi, seized Sultān Rażīyyat and put her in durance, and sent her to the fortress of Tabarhindah.

this than on the former occasion. Hasan's eldest son, whose name has not transpired, taking advantage of Rażīyyat's presence in the Panjāb, presented himself before her, was well received, and the fief of Baran, east of Dihli, was conferred upon him. Soon after, however, he left, without leave and without the cause being known, and rejoined his father, who still was able to hold Banfān, and, soon after, the Kariughāns gained possession of Multān. At this period Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Din, Hindū Khān, held the fief of Učchah.  

* Ramāzan, in some copies of the text.  
* Altūniāh was only lately made feudatory of Tabarhindah, for, when Rażīyyat came to the throne, she gave him his first fief, that of Baran. Briggs styles him "of the Toorky tribe of Chelgany"—a nice blunder, but Dow leaves this part of the sentence out. See last para. of note 3, page 643, and the meaning of Chihil-gānī in next Section.  
1 In some copies of the text, "with the forces composing the ḫalb" or centre, the signification of which has been given in note 3, page 634.  
2 But not "on the way" thither as in Tabakat-i-Akbari and Firishtah.  
3 Our author says "martyred," here equivalent to his being put to death unjustly. Rauşat-ūs-Ṣafā says, Ya-kūt commanded her troops, a very unlikely thing, when the Turk Malik and Amirs hated him so greatly. He may have commanded Rażīyyat's own personal followers. Rauşat-ūs-Ṣafā, indeed, says so. For the detail of these events see the account of Malik Altūniāh in the next Section.  
4 Tabakat-i-Akbari and Budā'ūnī have Tarhindah—رود —in all cases, and Firishtah ["revised text"], wherever this place is mentioned, under whatever reign it may be, has Pathindah—टहैद— and Bathindah—थहैद.
Among the events which happened in the beginning of Sulṭān Raẓiyyat's reign, the greatest was that the Kīrāmītah and Mūlāḥīdah heretics of Hindūstān, incited by a person, a sort of learned man, named Nūr-ud-Dīn, a Turk, whom they used to style Nūr, the Turk, collected together at Dīhī, from different parts of the territory of Hind, such as Gujarāt, and the country of Sind, and the parts round about the capital, Dīhī, and the banks of the rivers Jūn and Gang. In secret they pledged themselves to be faithful to each other, and, at the instigation of Nūr, the Turk, they conspired against Islām. This Nūr, the Turk, used to harangue, and the mob would collect around him. He used to call the 'Ulamā of the orthodox people Nasībi [setters-up], and to style them Murji' [procrastinators], and used to incite the common people to animosity against the orders of 'Ulamā of the sects of Abū-Ḥanīfah and Shāfī'ī until a day was fixed upon. The whole of the fraternities of the Mūlāḥīdah and Kīrāmītah entered the Jāmī' Masjid of the city of Dīhī, on Friday, the 6th of the month of Rajab, in the year 634 H., to the number of about one thousand persons, armed with swords and shields. Having divided into two bodies, one body, from the side of the Ḥiṣār-i-Nau [the new Citadel], entered the gateway of the Jāmī' Masjid on the northern side, and the second body, passing through the Bāzār-i-Bāzāzān [the Bazar of the Cloth-Merchants], entered the gateway of the Mu‘izzī College under the supposition that it was the Jāmī' Masjid, and, on both sides, fell upon the Musalmāns with [their] swords. A great number of people, some by the swords of those heretics, and some [trodden] under people's feet, attained martyrdom.

On an outcry having arisen from the city on account of

---

6 He was not called "Nūr Turk," but he was a Turk, and his name was Nūr-ud-Dīn.

6 That is the Sunnī, in contradistinction to the Shi'a and other schismatics. Neither Tabaḵāt-i-Akbarī, Būdā‘ūnī, nor Fīrūštāh, refer to this "outbreak," but other writers do. The fact of Fīrūštāh's being a Shi'a may account for his eschewing the matter.

7 The name of one of the heretical sects among the Muḥammadans, who procrastinate, and consider good works unnecessary, and faith sufficient, and that all Musalmāns will be saved, as hell is only reserved for infidels. See Sale: Kur'ān, Preliminary Discourse, for an account of these different sects of schismatics, pages 122, 130, and 131.
this outbreak, the warriors of the city, such as Naṣīr-ud-Din, Ai-yitim, the Balārāmī, and Amīr, Imām-i-Nāṣīrī, the Poet, and other armed men, from different directions, rode fully equipped [as they were] with cuirass, and other defensive armour, steel cap, spear, and shield, into the Jāmī Masjid, by the minārah entrance, and plied their swords upon the Mulāḥidah and Kīrāmīṭah heretics; and the Musalmāns, who were on the roof of the Jāmī Masjid, poured down stones and bricks upon them, and sent the whole of the Mulāḥidahs and Kīrāmīṭahs to hell, and quelled that outbreak. Thanks be to God for the blessing of safety and the honour of religion!

When they imprisoned Sulṭān Rażiyyat within the stronghold of Tabarhindah, Malik Iḵtiyār-ud-Din, Altūnīyah, entered into a matrimonial contract with her, and espoused her, and marched an army towards Dihlī, in order to take possession of the kingdom a second time. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Sālārī, and Malik Ḵarā-Ḵush rebelled and quitted the capital, Dihlī, and went and joined them.

Sulṭān Muʿizz-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh [Rażiyyat’s brother], was [at this time] seated on the throne; and Iḵti-


The Tagkaret-ul-Mulūk and some other works state that Malik Iḵtiyār-ud-Din, Altūnīyah, contracted marriage with Sulṭān Rażiyyat, nolens volens. He then took up her cause. He was no longer a rebel, because he imagined he would get the upper hand of his brother rebels; and Rażiyyat now managed to raise a considerable force consisting of Khokhars [this large tribe appear to have extended, at that period, a considerable distance east of the Biah, and the good horses to be obtained in the Talwandhis of the Khokhars are often mentioned], Jāts, and others of the tribes about Tabarhindah, and some Amīrs likewise, from the adjoining fiefs, went over to her. The Tabakat-i-Akbarī, and Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh, also mention Khokhars, but Fīrīštah, here, as well as elsewhere, not knowing the difference between 703 >£ and cag turns the former into Ghakars, a people, in his time, in some repute, and when a chief or two of the tribe were serving the Mughal emperors.

Elphinstone states that “Resia”—he refers to Rażiyyat—“when force failed her had recourse to art, and she so far gained over Altūnīa by the influence of love or ambition, that he agreed to marry her,” &c. I wonder what “authentic history” that is recorded in, or how proved? The reason of the change in Malik Altūnīā’s policy is apparent, as shown by a Muḥammadan writer in a following note. Others had obtained power at Dihlī and he had been left out in the cold after being made a tool of, and now, therefore, he who formerly rebelled against Sulṭān Rażiyyat became, out of revenge, her champion.

1 Half-brother apparently.
yar-ud-Din, Aet-kin, the Amir-i-Hajib, having been assassinated, Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, the Rumi, had become Amir-i-Hajib. In the month of Rabii-ul-Awwal, in the year 638 H., Sultān Mu’izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, led an army out of Dihli for the purpose of resisting Sultān Raziyyat and Malik Ikhtiyyar-ud-Din, Altūniah, and they were routed, and, having reached Kaithal, the troops along with them all abandoned and Sultān Raziyyat and Malik Altūniah fell captive into the hands of Hinduś, and attained martyrdom.

Their defeat took place on the 24th of the month, Rabii-ul-Awwal; and the martyrdom of Sultān Raziyyat took place on Tuesday, the 25th of Rabi’ul-Awwal, in the year 638 H. Her reign extended over a period of three years, six months, and six days.

2 The author of the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, who seems to know—without naming any authority—better than those persons who were eye-witnesses of what they relate, and other authors who preceded him, asserts that Sultān Mu’izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, sent an army against Rażiyyat under Malik ʿIzz-ud-Din, Balban [in some copies Tīgin], who afterwards attained the title of Ulugh Khān, and Fīrisṭah, of course, follows. The amusing part of it is that our author’s patron was neither styled ‘Izz-ud-Din, at this time, nor at any other; and he had not attained such a high position at that period as to be put in the command of an army, as may be gathered from the account of him in the next Section. He was, at first, Khūshād-dār to Sultān Rażiyyat, and, afterwards, during her reign, became Amir-i-Shikār. The above-mentioned work also places this defeat and death of Rażiyyat in 637 H.—a year too soon.

3 The Zubdat-ut-Tawarīkh, as well as the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, makes two affairs of this, and says that it was after the first defeat, but gives no date for it, that Rażiyyat raised a force of Khokhars and other tribes, and that the second defeat took place near Kaithal, on the 4th of Rabī’ul-Awwal, 638 H., after which the Khokhars and others abandoned her, and she and her husband fell into the hands of the Hinduś, who put them to death on the 25th of the same month. See further details of these transactions in the account of Malik Altūniah in the next Section.

4 In some copies, Saturday, the 29th of Rabī’ul-Akhir, but the date cannot be correct. See also the account of Malik Altūniah in the next Section, where the 25th of Rabī’ul-Akhir is given as the date.

5 Ibn-Batūtah, who is sometimes quoted as an authority on Indian history, says [Lee’s translation] that Rażiyyat’s brother, having “polluted his reign by killing his brothers, was, therefore, killed himself. Upon this, the army agreed to place his sister, El Malika Razia, upon the throne, who reigned four years. This woman usually rode about among the army, just as men do. She, however, gave up the government, on account of some circumstances that presented themselves. After this, her younger brother, Nāṣir Oddin, became possessed of the government, which he held for twenty years”!! So much for Ibn-Batūtah’s authority on Indian history.
V. SULTAN MU'IZZ-UD-DUNYA WA UD-DIN, BAHRAM SHAH 6,
SON OF THE SULTAN [I-YAL-TIMISH].

Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh—on whom be peace!—was a conquering monarch, fearless and full of courage, and sanguinary; but he was endowed with some laudable attributes and excellent qualities. He was in nature unassuming and frank; and never had about his person jewelry and finery after the custom of the kings of this world, nor did he ever evince any desire for girdles, silken garments, decoration, banners, or display.

When they imprisoned Sultan Raziyyat in the preserved city of Tabarhindah, the Maliks and Amirs, in accord, despatched letters to the capital city of Dihli, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, on Monday, the 28th of the month Ramazān, in the year 637 H., they raised to the throne of sovereignty. When, on Sunday, the 11th of the month of Shawwāl of that same year, the Maliks and Amirs and the rest of the forces returned to the city again, they publicly pledged their allegiance to his sovereignty within the Daulat Khānah [Royal residence] on the stipulation of the Deputyship being conferred upon Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Aet-kin7; and, on that day, after [pledging] allegiance, the writer of these words, by way of benediction, in order to congratulate him [on his accession], recited this strophe:—

“Weel done, on thy account, the uprearing of the emblems of sovereignty! 
Bravo to thy good fortune, heaped up, the ensigns of dominion! 
Mu'izz-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din, Mughis-ul-Khalk bi'! hakk, 
Of dignity like Sulmān: under thy command are both jinn [genii] and mankind. 

Though the sovereignty of Hind be the heritage of the Shamsī family, 
Praise be to God, a second I-yal-timish, of its sons art thou. 
When the whole world saw thee, that, by right, thou art the kingdom’s heir, 
They made thy diadem their kiblah-gāh, for thou art all-powerful and wise.

6 The inscription given as that of his first coining is as follows:—
Obverse—
Reverse—
which may be thus translated:—Obverse—”The name of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, conferreth glory on dinar and diram. Year 637.” Reverse—”Struck at the seat of empire, Dihlī, in the first year [of the reign].”

7 He was to act as Deputy or Regent for one year. See the account of this Malik in the next Section. Firishtah turns this name into “Alp-Tigin,” but Dow leaves out the titles altogether, and makes Tigzi of him.
Like as Minhaj-i-Saraj's, for thee the creation's prayer is this:—
'O God! mayest thou on the kingdom's throne to eternity continue:
Straight like the spear may the universe during thy reign become,
So that, save in the hair-tuft of thy standard, no one may disorder
behold 8.'"

When Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Aet-kin, became Deputy 1, by virtue of his deputy-ship, he took the affairs of the kingdom into his own hands, and, in conjunction with the Wazir, the Niẓām-ul-Mulk, the Khwājah, Muhāzzab-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-ʻIwāz, the Mustaufī 1, assumed control over the disposal of state affairs 2.

After a month or two had passed away, this fact began to press heavily upon the noble mind of Sultan Muʻizz-ud-Din; and a sister of the Sultan, who had been married to the son of the ʻĀżī, Nasīr-ud-Dīn 4, and had, at her own request, been repudiated 4 by him, the Deputy [Ikhtiyar-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin], having taken to wife, assumed the triple naubat, and stationed an elephant at the entrance of his own residence 6 [out of parade], and the grandeur of his

8 I have translated and inserted this strophe here, not for any particular merit it possesses, but to show the style of our author's unctuous andflatulent poetical effusions. Although his work was completed twenty-one years after this event, and the true character of the Prince he composed those lines upon was then known to him, whatever good opinion he may have had of him at the time of his accession, he did not think it necessary to omit this piece of fulsome adulation to this "Sulimān in dignity," this "second ʻI-yāl-timīsh." This translation will not be again burdened with any more of our author's own poetry.

9 On account of Muʻizz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām 51121015 youth, as was determined when the Maliks agreed to raise him to the throne. He was to act as Deputy one year.

1 Mustaufī is not a proper name. It signifies the head clerk of a department, an auditor, &c., and to the office previously held by "the upright officer," as Muhāzzab has been translated, or by his father or ancestors. See Blochmann's translation of the Aʻīn for the meanings of such words, and compare Elliot: India, vol. ii. page 338.

3 That is, he, in concert with the Wazir, ruled the country, whilst the "Sulimān," whose commands swayed "the jinn and mankind," was king in name merely.

9 Turned into Ikhtiyar-ud-Dīn by Firishtah—in the revised text—who turns the Malik of that name into Alb-Tīgin!

4 She had been repudiated by her own desire from aversion to her husband. In such cases the wife resigns the dowry and all presents made to her, &c.

6 In the account of this Malik in the next Section, our author states that he applied for permission to use the naubat—already described in note 8, page 383—on becoming Deputy. At this period kings only were allowed to have elephants in this way, unless specially granted, as in Malik ʻIzz-ud-Dīn, Balhan-i-Kašhū Khān's case, mentioned in the account of him in the next Section.
affairs and the execution of his mandates lasted until the month of Muḥarram of the year 638 H., when, unexpectedly, on Monday, the 8th of that month, by command of the Sūltān, a discourse was delivered within the Kašr named Safed* [the White Castle]. After the termination of the discourse, Sūltān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, from the upper part of the palace, despatched two reckless Turks, after the manner of Fīdā-iš, so that, in front of the dais, in the royal Audience Hall of the Kašr-i-Safed, they martyred Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-κīn, by the wound of a knife. They inflicted on the Wazīr, the Niẓām-ul-Mulk, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, two wounds in the side; but, as his appointed time was not come, he got away from them and escaped outside. Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunkar, the Rūmī, became Amir-i-Ḥājib, and assumed the direction of

* The printed text has قصر سفيد instead of قصر سفيد لام as above, and so the former is rendered in Elliot, vol. ii. page 338, "the Palace of the White-roof." I hope the Archaeologists will not search for it under the latter name. The Arabic word كاشر, and its Persian equivalent کیشک, does not mean a palace exactly, but, more strictly speaking, a castle—a fortified residence. Windsor Castle, for example, in the feudal times, was a كاشر. See also note 2, page 331.

7 Our author makes a totally different statement in his account of this Malik in the next Section. There he says that the Sālār, the late Ahmād-i-Saʿd, came secretly to the Sultan and instigated him to this act.

The Ṭabakāt-i-Akbarī cuts this matter very short, and Budāʾūnī perpetrates the blunder of killing Aet-κīn and the Wazīr both at one time. Fīrīghtah here makes an altogether different statement to our author's, but does not quote his authority, and, as our author is about the only one for the reigns of the Shamsī dynasty, the Dakhānī historian's statement may be valued accordingly. He says Sūltān Muʿizz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, instigated two Turks among his confidants to feign drunkenness, and to assassinate Alb-Tigīn [Aet-κīn] and the Wazīr. They entered the royal Audience Hall of the Kašr-i-Safed for this purpose, and Alb-Tigīn [Aet-κīn], who was standing up in the row of Āmīrs before the Sūltān—who is made out to have been present by Fīrīghtah—moved to stop them and prohibit their approach [seeing the condition they pretended to be in, as if the guards were not enough for the purpose], when, having the opportunity they wanted, they slew him with their "life-taking daggers," and then attacked the Wazīr, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, and inflicted two wounds on him. The other nobles present now making a rush, Muḥaggab-ud-Dīn managed to escape. The Sūltān, that day, ordered the two Turks to be imprisoned for their act, but very soon released them. The Lubb-i-Tawārīkh-i-Hind gives a similar account, but the names are correctly given.

Fīdā-i is the name applied to the agents of the Chief of the Assassins, or Shaikh-ul-Jibāl, who carried out his decrees against people's lives. Fīdā means a sacrifice, one who is devoted to carry out any deed.

It was Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-κīn, who incited Malik Altūnīfah to revolt against Sūltān Raṣīyyat, and so he met his deserts.
state affairs; and, when Sultan Raziyyat, along with Malik Ikhṭiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūnīah, from Tabarhindah, determined to move towards Dihlī, and revoked that intention, and withdrew, and Sultan Raziyyat and Altūnīah attained martyrdom at the hands of the Hindūs, as has previously been recorded, the affairs of Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḳar, took a new turn. Moreover, because, in the execution of his own mandates, and the administration of the affairs of the kingdom, he did not possess the authority of the Sultan of Islam, and used to seek to acquire superiority over the Wazīr, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, and used to issue his own orders, the Wazīr, secretly, was in the habit of influencing the Sultan's disposition against Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḳar, to such degree, that the Sultan's temper became quite changed towards him.

When Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḳar, discovered this fact, he grew apprehensive of the Sultan. He was desirous by some suitable means of removing the Sultan and placing one of the latter's brothers upon the throne. On Monday, the 17th of the month of Ṣafar, 639 H., at the residence of the Ṣadr-ul-Mulk, the Sayyid, Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Mūsāwī, who was the Mushrīf-i-Mamālīk [Secretary of the Kingdom], Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḳar, convened a party of the Sādars and chief men of the capital, such as the Kāzī-i-Mamālīk [Kāzī of the Kingdom], Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Kāzin, Kāzī Kabīr-ud-Dīn, Shaikh Mūḥammad-i-Shāmī [the Syrian], and other Amīrs and important personages. When they had assembled, and deliberated respecting the change of government, they despatched the Ṣadr-ul-Mulk [Ṣadr of the State—Chief Ṣadr] to the presence of the Wazīr, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, in order that he

---

8 This Malik was the patron of Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Balban, subsequently, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam; and, when the former became Amir-i-Ḥājib, through his patronage, Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Balban, who, up to this time, had not attained a higher office than that of Chief Huntsman, was promoted to the dignity of Amir-i-Ākbar [Lord of the Stables].

9 In other places, the date of this event, in some copies, is the 14th, and in others the 10th.

1 Ṣadr-ul-Mulk signifies Judge or Administrator of the State, but here it is only his title or degree, as his office is Meshrīf-i-Mamālīk.

2 A native of Kāṣān.—Kazan of modern maps.

3 The word Amir here, it will be seen, is applied to Kāzīs and ecclesiastics.
might be present [with them], and that, in accord with him, they might carry out their object effectively.

One of the Sultan's favourites and confidants was at the Wazir's side when the Sadr-ul-Mulk reached his residence; and when the Wazir, the Niżām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Din, heard the announcement of the Sadr-ul-Mulk's coming, he concealed that confidential person of the Sultan in a place where he might hear their conversation. The Sadr-ul-Mulk entered, and stated to him all about the [proposed] change in the state of the highest personages of the sublime Court, and craved the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Wazir's attendance. The Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, replied: "It behoveth that you should return again, so that I may perform afresh the ablution of purification, and follow [you] to the presence of the grandees." When the Sadr-ul-Mulk retired, Muhazzab-ud-Din brought forth the Sultan's confidant, and said to him: "Didst thou hear what the Sadr-ul-Mulk said? Proceed quickly to the royal presence and represent that it is advisable that the Sultan should mount and come upon that seditious party so that they may not have dispersed."

4 The difference of idioms in the text, so often mentioned, is considerable here also.

5 The Dakhani historian—who has made "such conscientious and excellent use of his predecessors," and whose works he has "so entirely exhausted of all prominent facts mentioned by them," as to have rendered their works "almost useless"—FIRİŞTAH, by his wholesale appropriations of the text of the Tabakät-i-Akbari—in many places verbatim, although he pretends, now and then, to differ from it, whilst copying the identical statement at the same time—has, in this instance, "exhausted" that work so faithfully and conscientiously that he betrays himself, and endorses the same great blunder that the author of the Tabakät-i-Akbari perpetrates here, even to the incorrect name given to one of the parties, which is totally contrary to our author's account, and which the other's own words subsequently contradict, and then his statement agrees with our author, from whose work he took it, for there is no other contemporary writer to recur to. The Tabakät-i-Akbari says, after Aet-kīn had been assassinated and Muhazzab wounded, that "Malik Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, the Rūmī, became Amir-i-Ḥājib, and he administered the affairs according to the old laws and usages. It so happened, that, at the instigation of a clique of the seditious, he took counsel with the Șadrs and conspicuous persons respecting a change of sovereignty. On Monday, the 18th of Şafar, all the chief men assembled at the abode of the Sadr-ul-Mulk, Tāj-ud-Din, who was the Mushrif-i-Mamālik, and there held counsel respecting the proposed change in the government. They despatched the Sadr-ul-Mulk [Tāj-ud-Din] to the presence of the Niżām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Wazir, in order that
When they stated this matter to the Sultan, he, at once, mounted, and that disaffected party became struck with amazement, and Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, joined the Sultan, who returned, and held a council in his own royal residence, and forthwith a mandate was issued that Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, should proceed to Buda’in, and that district was made his fief. Kazi Jalal-ud-Din, Kasani, was removed from the chief Kazi-ship, and Kazi Kabir-ud-Din, and Shaikh Muhammad-i-Shami, together with him, became apprehensive, and left the city.

After a period of four months, Malik Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, returned to the capital, and, as the Sultan was incensed against him, he ordered him to be imprisoned; and the Sayyid, Taj-ud-Din, ‘Ali, Musawi, was also ordered to be imprisoned, and, at last, both of them were martyred. This occurrence totally changed the disposition of the Amirs, and all of them became frightened and apprehensive of the Sultan, and not one among them he also might attend the meeting and take part in the consultation. At once, the Sadr-ul-Mulk gave intimation to Sultan Mu’izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, and, having placed a confidential follower of the Sultan’s in a place of concealment, [where? in another man’s house to betray himself!] went to the Nizam-ud-Mulk’s [Muhazzab, the Wazir’s] abode and informed him of the presence [at his own house!] of Kazi Jalal-ud-Din, the Kasani, Kazi Kabir-ud-Din, Shaikh Muhammad, and other personages there assembled [and asked him to come along with him], but Muhazzab-ud-Din put off his coming to the time of afternoon prayers. The Sadr-ul-Mulk represented what was doing by means of the Sultan’s servant, whom had concealed, and apprised that monarch of the state of affairs, who, that very hour, set out, and came upon them,” &c. &c. The Sadr-ul-Mulk, Taj-ud-Din, as mentioned in the next page, was imprisoned and put to death for his share in this affair. Some others of the smaller fry of historians copy this blunder from the Tabakat-i-Akbari as well as Firishtah, and, from the fact of the latter making the very same blunder as the former—he, indeed, uses his very words—I am much inclined to doubt whether Firishtah ever saw our author’s work, and I think that nothing will be found in Firishtah, taken from our author’s history, but such as is contained in the Tabakat-i-Akbari. Compare Elliot here also.

He took up his residence in the dwelling of Malik Kutb-ud-Din. This is the illustrious Ghiiri chief, Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, son of ‘Ali, whose execution is recorded at page 702. He is again mentioned in the last Section.

Whether in prison or out is not said. Compare Elliot here. In the next Section it is said to have taken place on Wednesday, the 14th of Jamadi-ul-Awwal, 639 H., but in some copies Rabii-ul-Awwal is stated to have been the month, but this is impossible as Rabii-ul-Awwal follows next to the month Safar, and Jamadi-ul-Awwal is only the third month after Safar, and from what is stated just before Jamadi-ul-Akhir would be most correct.
placed any further confidence in him. The Wazir, too, in order to avenge the wounds he had received, desired that all the Amirs, the Maliks, and the Turks should rebel against the Sultan. He continued to raise the Sultan's apprehensions against the Amirs and Turks, and was exciting the fears of the Amirs against the Sultan, until, at last, this fact spread abroad like a pestilence, and was the cause of the dethronement of the Sultan, and rebellion among the people.

Among the calamities which happened during the reign of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, was the matter of the city of Lohor, when an army of the infidel Mughals from the direction of Khurāsān and Ghaznin appeared before that city, and, for a considerable time, carried on hostilities. The feudatory of Lohor was Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Karā-Kash, and he, by nature, was very warlike, energetic, intrepid, and fearless, but the inhabitants of Lohor did not act as the conditions of union demanded, and in fighting, and in keeping guard at night, showed much neglect. When that disposition became evident to Malik Karā-Kash, he put his retainers in motion, and, at night, evacuated the city, and set out towards the capital, Dihlī. The infidel Mughals pursued him, but the Most High God preserved him under His own guardianship, and he escaped in safety from them. As no ruler remained within the city of Lohor, on Monday, the 16th of the month of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir, 639 H., the infidel Mughals obtained possession of that city, martyred the Musalmāns, and made captive their dependents.

1 Dow turns him into "Malleek," as if that was his name, and Briggs always into "Mullik Kurragos"!
2 As usual with our author, instead of giving the details of this affair here, he postpones it, gives a few additional particulars in his account of Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Karā-Kash Khan, in the next Section in his account of the various Maliks, but leaves the details for the last Section. Alfi says it was in 638 H.

The Mughals, at first, intended to attack Multān—which was still held by Malik Kabīr Khan-i-Ayāz—but, finding they were likely to meet with a warm reception, turned their faces towards Lāhor, at that time, totally unprepared to offer an efficient defence, being without stores of provisions or munitions of war. Many of the principal inhabitants of Lāhor at this period were merchants, who had travelled into Upper Khurāsān and Turkistān with
When the dreadful intelligence of this calamity reached the capital, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, assembled the people of the city of Dihli in the Kasr-i-Safed [White Castle], and to the author, the writer of these lines, he gave command to deliver a discourse, and the people pledged their fealty [anew] to the Sultan. Their merchandize, and had provided themselves with letters of protection from the Mughal rulers, and they seemed not to care what happened, and the remainder of the chief inhabitants were also remiss. Seeing this, Malik Karā-Kash determined to leave them, more particularly as there was but little chance of being succoured from Dihli. The Turk and Ghūrī Malik, being disaffected towards Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, were not very active in obeying his summons to assemble their followers, and the "upright officer"—the arch rebel—[referred to in note +, page 641], Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, the Wazir—even after the army had reached the Bāhā, instead of pushing on to Lāhor, was occupied in plotting the destruction of his master. Finding resistance hopeless, Malik Karā-Kash, under pretence of making a night attack upon the Mughal camp, assembled his family and followers, cut his way out, and made towards Dihli. After he had left, when too late, the inhabitants made some effort to defend the place, under the guidance of the Kot-wal [Seneschal], Ak-Sunkar, and a few others. During the fighting that went on in the streets of the city, after the Mughals effected a lodgment, the Bahādur, Ta-īr, the Mughal commander, according to our author, was encountered, lance to lance, by Ak-Sunkar, and each wounded the other so severely that both died of their wounds.

There is considerable discrepancy here between our author and Fāsīh-ī and others which will be noticed in the last Section, and as to the Bahādur, Ta-īr, being killed, according to Fāsīh-ī and others, he was alive in 644 H., and, moreover, the Nū-yīn, Mangūtah, was the commander of the Mughals, and the Bahādur, Ta-īr, was under him. After the departure of the Mughals, the Khokhars, and other Hindū Gabrs, seized upon Lāhor; and, after this, we no more hear of a feudatory of Lāhor in the whole work.

Briggs, in his version of Firīghtah's history, but not on his authority, assures us that the Mughal in question was "a famous Toorkey leader named Zoor-mooshreen [sic] Khan"!! Dow, however, turns Malik Karā-Kash into "Malleck, the viceroy," but leaves out this "famous Toorkey leader."

Lāhor was sacked, numbers of its people were massacred and carried away into captivity.

At the time of this invasion, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, whom Sultan Ražiyat had removed from the fief of Lāhor to that of Multān, assumed a canopy of state and independence, and took possession of Ūchchah and its dependencies. He however died shortly after this act of disloyalty, in 639 H. His son, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, brought Sind under his authority, and several times attacked the Karlugh before the gate of Multān. More respecting these events will be found in the next two Sections.

* Compare Elliot, ii. 340.

Elliot—"He had lived for some time quietly in the Sultan's water palace." The Kasr or castle here mentioned had been erected on the edge, or, more probably, in the midst of the Ḥauz which I-yal-timīsh made, which was named the Ḥauz-i-Sultān, and Ḥauz-i-Shamsī. It is often mentioned; and,
There was a Darwesh, a Turk-man, who was named Aiyüb, a hermit clothed in garb of hair-cloth, who, for some time, dwelt, engaged in his devotions, at the Hauz [reservoir] of the Kaśl-i-Sultan [the Sultan's Castle], and there he acquired intimacy with Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, and the Sultan manifested a partiality for him. This Darwesh began to interfere in state affairs. Before this the Darwesh in question had dwelt at the town of Mihir, and had been persecuted by Każi Shams-ud-Din of Mihir. At this time, that the Darwesh's words were revered by, and he had acquired ascendancy over, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, he used his endeavours until the Sultan had Każi Shams-ud-Din of Mihir thrown before the feet of an elephant 4.

As soon as this catastrophe became known, the people again became wholly afraid of the Sultan. In order to repel the infidel Mughals who were then before the gates of the city of Lohor, the Sultan nominated Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, son of Āli, the Ghūrī, along with the Wazir [the Khwajah, Muhazzab-ud-Din], and several Amirs and Maliks, with the forces of Hindūstān, to advance towards Lohor, for the purpose of guarding the frontiers7. At this period, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shāh, on
Saturday, the 10th of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, in the year 639 H., entrusted this author with the Ḫāzī-ship of the empire, together with the Ḫāzī-ship of the capital, and conferred upon him a robe of honour and liberal presents. After this, the troops received orders [to move].

When the forces assembled on the bank of the Biāh, the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, in order to take vengeance upon the Sultan, so that, by some means or other, he might oust him from the throne, indited a representation secretly to the Sultan from the camp, saying: “These Amīrs and Turks will never become obedient. It is advisable that an edict should be issued by His Majesty, that I, and Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, should destroy all the Amīrs and Turks, by such means as may be attainable, in order that the country may be clear [of them].” When that representation reached the Sultan, he, according to the way of precipitancy and youthfulness, did not take this order into consideration nor deliberate upon it, and commanded so that an edict of the desired form was written out and despatched to the camp.

As soon as the edict reached the camp, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn showed the very edict itself to the Amīrs and Turks, saying: “The Sultan writes and commands respecting you on this subject.” All of them became excessively incensed against the Sultan, and, at the suggestion of the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, they pledged themselves to effect the expulsion and dethronement of the Sultan. When the news of this disaffection on the part of those Amīrs and troops reached the capital, the Shaikh-ul-Islām

* Tabakat-i-Akbarī says “when the army reached the banks of the river Bīāh, near which, at this period, the town of Sultan-pūr has been founded.” Fīrishtah has precisely the same words.

* Compare Elliot. “Amīrs” does not mean “generals.”

* Tabakat-i-Akbarī says that Muḥazzab—the “upright officer” of Elliot [vol. ii. page 334]—requested the Sultan to come himself, or permit him,” &c. Fīrishtah follows. “The Raūzat-us-Ṣafā says, contrary to others, that Muḥazzab ud-Dīn included Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan [Ḥusain], among the number he asked leave to put to death, but this is not correct.

* The Tabakat-i-Akbarī says the Sultan despatched Shāikh Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Baḥīt-yār, Ḫūsh [i.e. of Ḫūsh near Baḥdād] to the insurgents, and Fīrishtah adds a little and makes him the Shāikh-ul-Islām besides. Dow, translating Fīrishtah, calls him [vol. i. page 177] “Islaam, a venerable and learned Omrah”. I wonder what “Omrah” can mean. I have heard of Umrah, but that is the plural of Amīr. This first statement, however, is an error, and he is
[the Muḥammadan Patriarch] of the capital was Sayyid Ḫūṭb-ud-Dīn, and him the Sultān despatched to the army for the purpose of allaying that sedition. He proceeded to the camp, and used his endeavours in stirring up and augmenting that sedition, and came back again, and the army followed after him, and arrived before the gates of Dihlī, and fighting was commenced.

This servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, and [several] priests of eminence of the city, used the utmost endeavours to make peace and allay the disaffection, but in no manner could an agreement be effected. The arrival of the forces before the gate of the city of Dihlī happened on Saturday, the 19th of the month of Ṣhaʿbān, 639 H., and, until the month of Zi-Ḵaʿdah, hostilities were carried on against the fortress, and, on both sides, a great number of people perished and others were disabled. All the environs of the city were destroyed; and the cause of the prolongation of this sedition was this. There was a head Farrāš in the Sultān's service whom they used to style Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mubārak Shāh, Farrukhī, who, in the employ of the Sultān, had found favour, and had acquired complete ascendancy over his mind, and whatever he said to the Sultān that the Sultān would do, and this Farrāš would, in no way, assent to an accommodation.

On Friday, the 7th of the month Zi-Ḵaʿdah, the depen-
dents of the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, gave 3000 jītāls to a body of stupid fellows, and stirred up some of the same cloth as the author, who were persons of position at the capital, and, after the conclusion of the Friday prayers, they rose in the Fāmī Masjid, and drew swords upon the author. By the favour of the Most High God, he had with him a staff containing a knife, and drew it, and was accompanied by a few armed slaves, and succeeded in getting out of the tumult. On the following night the Amīrs and the Turks took the fortress, and, next day, Saturday, the 8th of Zī-Ka'dah, 639 H., they gained possession of the whole city, and imprisoned the Sulṭān. Mubārak Shāh, the Farrāsh, who used to endeavour to stimulate the rebellion, they made a public example of and executed; and, on the night of Tuesday, the 13th of the month before-mentioned, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, attained martyrdom—may he rest in peace!—and the period of his reign was two years, one month, and a half.

VI. SULṬĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DUNYA WA UD-DĪN, MAS'ŪD SHĀH, SON OF SULṬĀN RUKN-UD-DĪN, FIRŪZ SHĀH.

Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, was the son of Sulṭān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, and was a beneficent Prince and of good disposition, and was endowed with all noble qualities.

On Saturday, the 8th of Zī-Ka'dah, 639 H., when the city of Dīhlī passed out of the possession of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, the Maliks and Amīrs, with one consent, brought forth, from confinement, all three Princes.

8 In another place, in the next Section, it is said, Tuesday, the 8th, but neither of these days can be correct, if the 13th was Tuesday. In this case, the 8th would be Thursday; and, if Saturday was the 8th, the 13th would be Friday. A few lines farther down Saturday is again said to be the 8th.

9 The following is given, in the work previously quoted, as the inscription on the coins first struck in 'Alā-ud-Dīn's reign:

Obverse—לשת כותב ינשא לוה ת tung th zls jill
Reverse—=| (9 ler 9 yen) aie deo oral ws
which may be thus rendered:—Obverse—"The prosperity of the government of the state through God. Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh." Reverse—"Struck at the city of Dīhlī [in the] year six hundred and forty, the first of the reign."

1 Malik 'Irza-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, was also one of the ring-leaders in this outbreak against Mu'izz-ud-Dīn. Early in the day on which
[the sons and grandsons of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish], namely, Sultan [subsequently] Nāṣir ud-Din, Malik Jālal-ud-Din, and Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, and conducted them from the Kaṣr-i-Safed [White Castle] to the Kaṣr-i-Firūz-i-Daulat-Khānah [the Firūz Castle, the royal residence], and agreed to the sovereignty of 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, after that Malik Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kašhū Khan, had assumed the throne within the royal residence, and after he had been proclaimed outside the Kaṣr, and a proclamation, in his name, respecting his [assumption] of the sovereignty, had been once published about the city. In that matter the other Maliks, not having agreed, placed Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, upon the throne, and administered a public pledge of fealty to the people. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī, became Deputy of the kingdom, the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Din, the Nizam-ul-Mulk, was [again] made Wazīr, and Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Karā-Kāsh, became Amir-i-Ḥājib [Lord Chamberlain]. The provinces of Nāg-awr, Manḍaur, and Ajmīr², were made over to Malik Izz-ud-

the Turk Amīrs took the city—our author says in another place—Malik Balban entered it, and proceeded to the royal Kaṣr, and issued a proclamation intimating his assumption of the sovereignty; but, immediately on this becoming known, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Aet-kīn, and Malik Tāj-ud Dīn, Sanjār-ī-Kīl-ūk, and others, assembled at the mausoleum of Sultan I-yal-timish, and repudiated that proclamation, and, in concert, went, and brought forth from their confinement in the Kaṣr-i-Safed, which appears to have been used as a state prison, the princes in durance there, the sons and grandson of I-yal-timish, and set up 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh. When Malik Balban became aware of this, he joined them, and acted in concert with them. This can scarcely be called "the dication of two kings in one day" [Thomas: PATHAN KINGS, page 120]. The new Sultan conferred the fief of Nāg-awr upon Malik Balban-i-Kašlī Khan, together with permission to have an elephant, which was equivalent to his being considered as belonging to the royal family, and the first Malik of the kingdom; and it is he who must have been I-yal-timish's son-in-law—if either of the two Balbans were—or the husband of his sister—for 'Izz means both—and not Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balban, afterwards Ulugh Khān, which latter, the Tabākāt-i-Akbārī—and Firīštah likewise, as a matter of course—invariably confuse with Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kašhū Khān. In neither of these works is he called by his correct name. The first calls him Izz-ud-Dīn, Tīgīn-i-Buzarg, and gives the same title of Izz-ud-Dīn to Balban-i-Khurd [i. e. Ulugh Khān] whose title was Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and never Izz-ud-Dīn. The Tabākāt-i-Akbārī confuses one with the other. Firīštah [revised text however], as previously mentioned, uses the word 'Izz' in both their titles.

² Tabākāt-i-Akbārī says Nāg-awr, Sind, and Ajmīr, and Firīštah copies
Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, and the territory of Budāʿūn was given to Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Kīk-luḵ. The writer of these words, on the fourth day from the capture of Dihlī, requested permission to resign the Kāzi-ship, and, for a period of twenty-six days, the office was in abeyance until the 4th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah, when the office of Kāzi was entrusted to Kāzi 'Imād-ud-Din, Muḥammad, the Shafūrkānī.

The Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Din, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, acquired complete power over the kingdom, and appropriated [the district of] Kol as his own fief. Previous to this he had established the naubat, and stationed an elephant at the gate of his own residence. He took all functions out of the hands of the Turk Amirs, so that their hearts became greatly irritated [against him], and those Amirs, in concert together, put him to death, within the camp before the city [of Dihlī], in the plain of the Rānī's Reservoir, on Wednesday, the 2nd of the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 640 H.

At this period, the author determined to undertake a proposed journey to Lakhanawati, and, on Friday, the 9th of the month of Rajab, 640 H., he quitted Dihlī. In the territory of Budāʿūn, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Kīk-luḵ, and, in Awadh, Malik Kamr-ud- Din, Kīr-ān-i-Tamur Khān, showed him abundant kindness—Almighty God immerse the both of them in forgiveness! At this time, Malik 'Īzz-ud-Din, Tūghrīl-i-Tūghān Khān, the feudatory...
of Lakhanawaṭi, advanced to the frontiers of Karah with troops and vessels, and the author joined him from Awadh. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din returned again to Lakhanawaṭi, and the writer went along with him thither, and, on Sunday, the 17th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah, reached the Lakhanawaṭi territory. The writer left all his children, family, and dependents, in Awadh, and, subsequently, confidential persons were sent, and his family [and children] were removed to Lakhanawaṭi. From Malik Ṭughril-i-Ṭughān Khān the author experienced the utmost generosity, and received innumerable gifts—the Almighty reward him!—and he remained in the territory of Lakhanawaṭi for a period of two years.

During those two years Sultān 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, effected, in different parts of the kingdom, many victories; and, after the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Din, was put to death, the office of Wazir passed to the Ṣadr-ul-

8 It was at this time that Malik Ṭughril-i-Ṭughān Khān, the feudatory of Lakhanawaṭi, instigated by his adviser, Bahā-ud-Din, Ḥilāl, attempted to take possession of the territories of Awadh, Karah, and Manikpūr, and Upper An-des. See next Section.

9 It is strange that these "many victories" are not named by our author. They must refer to some minor affairs which he refers to in the next Section, and which may be summed up in a few words. In 640 H. Malik Taj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kīr-lūk, the feudatory of Buda’in, overthrew the infidels of Kāṭhehr, and a namesake of his, Malik Taj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gurait Khān, gained some successes over the Hindūs in Awadh, and, subsequently, is said to have "entered Bihār and plundered that territory, and was killed before the fortified city of Bihār." In this case it is evident that the Hindūs had regained possession of it from the Musalmāns immediately after the death of Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bāk, or, possibly, only after the decease of I-yal-timīṣh. See note 6, page 633.

About the same period, the son of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ka'bīr Khān-i-Ayāz, feudatory of Mūltān, who had thrown off his allegiance on the invasion of the Panjāb by the Mughals in 639 H.—Malik Taj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr—who remained in possession of his father's fief after his decease, several times attacked and defeated the Kārlūghs who had advanced to the very gates of Mūltān. In 642 H. the infidels of Jāj-nagar were defeated, and the author was present. This is the affair which the I. O. L. copy of the text, No. 1952, and the R. A. S. MS., through the carelessness or ignorance of their copyists, turn into "Mughals of Changiz Khān," referred to farther on.

In the account of Ulugh Khān, in the next Section, some successes are said to have been gained over the independent tribes in the Dō-āb in 642 H.

These are the only successes which appear to have been gained during this period, as a set off to so many disasters and disturbances.

1 One of the best and oldest copies of the text, as well as the more modern ones, have "two years after the Khwājah, Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn, was put to death," but this can scarcely be correct, as, in such case, the Wazir-ship must have been in abeyance.
Mulk, Najm-ud-Din, Abū-Bikr, and the office of Amir-i-Hājib of the capital was entrusted to Ulugh Khān-i-Mu'azzam:—may his good fortune continue!—and the sief of Hānsi was assigned to him; and, at this time, many holy expeditions, as by creed enjoined, were undertaken, and much wealth came in from all parts.

When Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, returned from Karah towards Lakhanaūṭi, he despatched the Sharf-ul-Mulk, the Asha'ri', to the capital to the presence of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shāh; and, from the capital, Kāzi Jalāl-ud-Din, the Kasani, who was the Kāzi of Awadh at this period, was nominated to proceed to Lakhanaūṭi with a red canopy of state, and an honorary robe. On Sunday, the 11th of the month of Rabī'-ul-Ākhir, 641 H., the envoy’s party reached Lakhanaūṭi, and Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān was honoured by being invested with that honorary robe.

At this time, among the praiseworthy incidents which

2 In Elliot, vol. ii. page 343, he is turned into Daru-ul Mulk Bāligh Khān! Dar-ul-Mulk signifies “the seat of government,” “capital,” &c. Ulugh in Turki signifies “great,” “the greater,” &c., what “Bāligh” may be intended for who knows?

3 In some of the more modern copies of the text, the invocation, here used for Ulugh Khān’s prosperity or good fortune, varies, through carelessness or ignorance on the part of copyists, and in place of متركز they have متركز and occasionally and, in consequence of this last blunder, some modern writers on Oriental subjects jump at the conclusion that the whole work “must have been written” after Ulugh Khān ascended the throne; but, had those writers gone a little farther on, they would have found, in several places, both at the end of this Section, and in the next, that our author distinctly states that Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, was reigning when he finished his work; and he continued to reign for nearly six years more. See Elliot: India: vol. ii. note 7, page 362.

4 The Tabakat-i-Akbari gives this name, as it does most names, correctly—Asha'ri—but Firishtah turns it into Sankuri, Dow leaves it out and a great deal more of the reign, and Briggs turns it into Shunkry, thus making a Hindū of him, and he invariably turns 'Izz-ud-Din into Eiz-ood-Deen.

5 The Tabakat-i-Akbari quotes our author very correctly here, with the exception of turning the Kāzi into a Hakim, but the Tabakat-i-Akbari’s shadow—Firishtah—although using nearly the same words, makes a terrible hash of the names.

6 See the account of Tughril-i-Tughān Khān in the next Section. There it is stated that he despatched his agent, the Sharf-ul-Mulk, to the Court for aid, after having been repulsed before Katāsīn, the frontier post of Jāi-nagar, and that happened on the 6th of Zi-Ka'dah—the eleventh month—of 641 H., whilst Rabī-ul-Awwal is the third month. 642 H. must be meant.
happily occurred during Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shāh's reign was this, that, in concurrence with the Maliks and Amirs of the Court, he commanded both his uncles to be released, and they were brought forth accordingly. Malik Jalāl-ud-Din was given the province of Kinnauj, and the preserved city of Bharā'īj with its dependencies was conferred upon Sultan' Nasir-ud-Din, Māhmūd; after which, both of them, in their respective districts, in carrying on holy war, as by creed enjoined, and in [attending to] the prosperity of the peasants, exhibited commendable examples.

In the year 642 H. the infidels of Jāj-nagar appeared before the gate of Lakhanawātī; and, on the 1st of the

7 Subsequently, when he succeeded to the throne. This uncle had then attained the mature age of fifteen, the other was younger still.

8 Most authors, with the exception of the one who was living at the time, and even staying in the Lakhanawātī territory, and along with the Musalman army—our author—and a few others, such as the authors of Tārīkh-i-Mubārak-Shāhī, Rauzat-uss-Safi, and Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh, who could discriminate, and did so, before they entered events in their writings, and did not jump at conclusions—have perpetrated a ridiculous blunder here, which has been handed down by those Musalman writers who copied the events in their histories from the ŢabākHz-ī-Ākbarī, like Budā'ūnī, and Firīghtah in particular. From the version of this last-named writer the blunder, like the "Pathan Dynasty," has been made over to English writers by its translators, and, in all the Histories of India, and Manuals of Indian History, up to this hour, the blunder is duly recorded.

There was no invasion of Bangālah nor of Lakhanawātī by the Mughals of Chingiz Khān—who died eighteen years before—in fact, no invasion of the kind ever occurred.

Some careless copyist of the identical copy of the text of our author's work [such an imperfect copy for example as the I. O. L. MS. 1952, or the R. A. S. MS., on which first-mentioned copy the Calcutta printed text is chiefly based] which fell under the notice of Nizām-ud-Din, Ahmad, the author of the ŢabākHz-ī-Ākbarī, when compiling his work—instead of copying our author's words which occur in every other copy of the text, which are as follow:—

vial (094) dy Cele'on —did not think it fit or advisable to read it the right way but in the wrong—like the editors of the Calcutta printed text, although the right reading was before them, in at least one AZS. copy they had to refer to, namely: — کارا حکمران بر انگلستانی آمداد—leaving Gale for a note!

It is hardly correct to say that Nizām-ud-Din, Ahmad "reproduces it," for it will not be found in any prior history; still, if the author of the ŢabākHz-ī-Ākbarī, Abūl-Faql, and the rest of those who copy the blunder, and if the editors of the Calcutta printed text likewise, had used a little discrimination, they might have seen that, in the two separate accounts of Malik Tūghrīl-i-Tūghān Khān, and Malik Khān-i-Tamur Khān, the correct reading is given, as both the I. O. L. MS., the R. A. S. MS., and the Calcutta printed text also have it in the accounts of those Maliks. The
month of Zi-Hijjah, Malik Ḫamar-ud-Dīn, Ḫī-rān-i-Tamūr Ḫān, with troops and Amir, in conformity with the commands of Sultan Ṭālū-ud-Dīn, Masʿūd Shāh, arrived at

Muḥammadan writers who lighted upon this incorrect passage also speculate upon the route by which Chingiz [his ghost?] came; and they—one following the other: the blind leading the blind—come to the conclusion that it must have been by the same route as that by which Muḥammad, son of Bakt-yār, the Ḫalīf, penetrated into Tibbat!! Firīṣṭah also enters upon—or rather copies—the same speculations; and this fact tends to confirm me in my suspicions that he never saw our author’s work, but merely “exhausts” him from his predecessors, including the Ṭabakat-i-Akbarī.

Stewart, in his History of Bengal, noticed [page 97] that Firīṣṭah was wrong, but did not know that the Ṭabakat-i-Akbarī was his source of information, and Thomas [PATHĀN KINGS, page 121], very properly, totally discredits the statement as rendered from the printed text, in Elliot [INDIA, vol. ii. pages 264 and 344]. This invasion, I expect, took place much about the same time that Chanyiz struck that very rare coin given in Thomas [page 91], styling himself by an Arabic title, and acknowledging the Ḫalīfah of Baghdad—“Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Ulūh, Amir-ul-Mūminīn”! More on this head in last Section.

Elphinstone, however, boldly asserts on the faith of the translations of Firīṣṭah—for there is no doubt expressed about it—that the Mughals penetrated “through Tibet into Bengal.”

The facts are that the Rae of Jāj-nagar, in 641 H., began to molest the Lakhanawāṭi territory, and, in Shawwāl of that year, Malik Tughrīl-i-Tughān Ḫān marched towards Jāj-nagar to avenge this hostility, and our author accompanied him. An engagement took place on the frontier of the Jāj-nagar state, in the following month. After the infidels were routed they rallied on finding the Musalmāns off their guard, and victory was turned into a reverse. Malik Tughrīl sent to Dīlī for aid, and Sultan Ṭālū-ud-Dīn, Masʿūd Shāh, sent it, but, with the object of ousting Malik Tughrīl, who, it appears, was too strong to be ousted except by treachery: so, immediately after defeating the infidels of Jāj-nagar [the Mughals of Chingiz Khān of the Calcutta text, and I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and R. A. S. MS., and Elliot], who had advanced opposite to the city of Lakhanawāṭi itself, and fled on the approach of the forces under Tamūr Ḫān-i-Ḫī-rān from Awadh, he possessed himself of Lakhanawāṭi, by treachery, and Malik Tughrīl had to relinquish the city and territory and return to the capital. This last event happened in the last month of 642 H. See next Section. Malik Tughrīl, shortly after, was appointed to the sief of Awadh and proceeded into that territory, but died in Shawwāl, 644 H. His rival, Tamūr Khān, died the very same night in Lakhanawāṭi. See Malik VII. and VIII. in next Section.

9 The Ṭabakāṭ-i-Akbarī turns him into ʿĪzū-ud-Dīn, Tughān Tīmūr Khān Kārā-Beg, and makes him quarrel with himself under the name of Malik Ḫī-rān, by confusing and incorrectly copying his names and titles; but Firīṣṭah, copying from that work, adds from his imagination, and states that the Sulṭān despatched Malik Kārā-Beg, Tīmūr Khān, who was one of the Khwājah-Tāsh slaves [see note 9, page 665], and that between him and je [ ]. The correct details will be found in the account of Malik Tughrīl-i-Tughān Khān in the next Section.
Lakhanawati. Between him and Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khan distrust showed itself, and, on Wednesday, the 6th of the month of Zi-ka'dah of the same year, an accommodation took place, and he [Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khan] relinquished Lakhanawati to Malik Kiri-ran-i-Tamur Khan, and determined to proceed to Dihli. The writer of this book, in his company, reached the capital on Monday, the 14th of the month of Safar, 643 H., and permission to pay homage at the sublime Court was obtained. On Thursday, the 17th of the month of Safar, through the patronage of Ulugh Khan-i-Mu'azzam—the Almighty perpetuate his vicegerency!—the Nasariah College, together with the superintendence of its endowments, the Kazi-ship of Gwaliyur, and the lecture-ship of the Jam'i Masjid, all these, were confirmed to the author, according to former grant, and that Malik [Ulugh Khan-i-Mu'azzam] conferred upon the author a special honorary robe, and a caparisoned horse, such as no other among his brethren of the same profession had ever obtained. God reward him for it!

In the month of Rajab of this same year, news was received, from the upper provinces, of an army of infidel Mughals which had advanced towards Uchchah, and of which force the accursed Mangutah was the leader. Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah, for the purpose of repelling the Mughal forces, assembled the troops of Islam from various parts. On their arrival on the banks of the Biah, the

1 In the year 642 H., Ghiyas-ud-Din, Balban, who, up to that time, was Amir-i-Akbar, became Amir-i-Hajib. The Tabakat-i-Akbari, however, assures us that Malik Balban [in some MSS. Tigin]-i-Khurd, who then held the title of Ulugh Khan, became Amir-i-Hajib. Ghiyis-ud-Din, Balban, did not obtain that title until five years after this, in 647 H. Our author does not mean that he was styled Ulugh Khan at this time, although he calls him so: he was Ulugh Khan when our author wrote his book.

2 The word here used does not mean "family." ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 344.

3 Previous to this the royal forces went on an expedition in the Do-ab of the Jün and Gang, the particulars of which, or rather some meagre particulars, will be found in the account of Ulugh Khan in the next Section.

4 The particulars of these events which happened in 643 H.—not 642 H.—will be found in the last Section of this work, and referred to in the next. Mangutah, the Niyin—whom the translator of this passage of our author's work, in ELLIOT [page 344], has been pleased to turn into Mangü Khan here; but leaves him under the name of Manküd farther on [page 364], not being aware, seemingly, that they were one and the same person—was one of Chingiz Khan's own immediate followers and confidants, now grown old. He was very thin, tall, and blind of an eye. Mangü K'a'am, the grandson of
infidels withdrew from before Üchchah, and that success was gained. The writer of this work was in attendance on the sublime Court on that expedition, and persons of understanding and men of judgment agreed, that no one could point out to view anything of an army like that host and gathering in years gone by. When information of the number and efficiency of the victorious forces of Islâm reached the infidels, they decamped and retired towards Khurāsān again.

A number of very worthless persons in that army had clandestinely gained access to the presence of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, and used to influence him in the committal of unworthy acts and habits, so much so that Chingiz, did not succeed to his father's sovereignty until some time after this event, and was never east of the Indus in his life. It is strange how people will jump at impossible conclusions; and, because one of the Mughal sovereigns was called 'Alā-ud-Dīn, they at once assume that the former must be meant, just in the same way as the Khalj Turks have been turned into Ghulāf Afgāns.

Üchchah was invested for some time, and therefore the Mughals did not retire without fighting as in Thomas [PÁTHĀN KINGS, page 121], and they made several unsuccessful attempts to storm it after they had reached the walls, in the last of which, at night, the greatest champion of the Mughal army, in attempting to descend from the breach into the interior of the place, fell into a ditch filled with mud, which the defenders had made in rear of the breach, and was smothered. Soon after this unsuccessful attempt, hearing of the flank movement of the Dihlī army, and its advance along the banks of the Bīhā, the Mughals raised the investment and retired; and, subsequently, the Dihlī army advanced as far as the banks of the Sūdharah. In the account of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Balban, afterwards Ulugh Khān-i-A'gam, and in the last Section, the prompt advance of the Dihlī army is ascribed entirely to the energy of that Malik; but, under this reign, in which these events happened, our author does not mention even his name! See the notice of him in next Section, under this date.

Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, the son of Malik Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, was now dead, and Üchchah was in the hands of a slave of his father's, an eunuch named Mukbliṣ-ud-Dīn, and gallantly he defended it. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kašlū Khān, at this time, held the sif of Nāg-awr, and he joined the Sultan's army, with his contingent, upon this occasion.

At this period, Lāhor was in ruins, and Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Karlugh, who, on account of the pressure of the Mughals, had been obliged to leave his own territories, was in possession of Multān; and, on the Mughal invaders approaching the Indus, by our author's account, he embarked, with his family, dependents, and effects, on board of boats and dropped down the river towards Siwastān and Dīwāl. See also next Section, Malik, No. XX., and the last Section, where a different statement is made.

* The Tabakāt-i-Akbārī copies our author verbatim here, and Firīshṭah, of course, agrees.
[the custom of] killing and seizing his Maliks was gaining a place in his nature, and he was steadfast in resolve [in that habit]. All his good qualities turned away from the laudable path and inclined towards sensuality, pleasure, drinking, and the chase, to such a degree of excess, that disaffection began to spread through the country, and the affairs of the kingdom to be neglected. The Maliks and Amirs agreed together, and despatched letters secretly to Sultân Nâšir-ud-Din—the Almighty perpetuate his kingdom and sovereignty!—and prayed for the appearance of his auspicious retinue, as will, subsequently, be recorded, please God! On Sunday, the 23rd of the month of Muharram⁶, 644 H., Sultan 'Alâ-ud-Din, Mas'üd Shâh, was imprisoned, and during that confinement he was received into the Almighty's mercy.

His reign extended to a period of four years, one month, and one day.


The birth of the Sultan-i-Mu'azzam, Nâšir-ud-Din, Mahmûd Shâh⁸, took place at the Kasr-Bâgh [the Garden Castle⁹] of Dîlî, in the year 626 H., and, as his birth took

---

⁶ Zubdat-ut-Tawârîkh states that he died on the 23rd of the month of Muharram, and, if this be correct, he must have been put to death on the same day as he was imprisoned, but no other writer gives the precise date of his death. A single copy of our author's text, not a very old one, has—"after a month he was received," &c.

⁷ In the following pages, a totally different title is given to him. This is a title given to his father at page 624. According to the Khulâsât-ul-Akhbâr, Sultân Barkhârûk, the Saljûq [see note ², page 143] also held the title of Kasîm-i-Amir-ul-Mûminîn previous to the Shamsabâni Sultânîs. See page 316, and page 368, note ².

⁸ ELPHINSTONE turns him into "a grandson of Altamsh;" and MARSHMAN, following him in that also, turns his name into Nasir-ood-Deen. These are some of "the facts" in his "History" probably, of which he is "prepared to vouch for the accuracy."

Ibn Batûtâh, who is quoted by some as an authority on the history of India, and makes I-yal-timish Kutb-ud-Dîn, I-bak's son, says Nâšir-ud-Dîn succeeded his sister Râziyyat. He is the ninth of Thomas's PATHÂN KINGS.

⁹ The garden with the Kasr or Castle in it.
place after the decease of the august Malik, Nāşir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh¹—on whom be peace!—at the seat of government of the august Sūltān Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish—The Almighty illumine his tomb!—this sovereign [Nāşir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh]—May his sovereignty long continue!—was distinguished by the title and name of the [late] eldest son [of the Sūltān]. His mother [with her infant] was sent to the Kaṣr [Castle] at the town of Lūnī², so that there he was brought up in the hall of dominion and the lap of sovereignty, and, thank God! the foster-mother of the Most High Creator's grace nourished him in such wise that he became endowed with all laudable qualities, and from the breasts of humanity he imbibed the milk of benevolence to such degree that all his affairs and all his deeds became the means of the stability of his kingdom, and the glory of his sovereignty³.

In every matter which becomes unfolded to illustrious monarchs in their old age, after the experiences and incidents of time, all such matters—indeed, twice as much—became realized and conceived in the auspicious constitution and august soul of this monarch of blooming prospects, of Saturn[-like] throne⁴, in excellence a Jupiter, in sternness a Mars, in mien a Sun, in beauty a Venus, in intelligence a Mercury, in majesty a Moon in the outset of its youth and the morning of its existence, in firmness, steadfastness, and sedateness, like Bū-Ḵais and Ḩirā⁵, and in liberality and beneficence [he] became the envied of 'Ummān's [pearl-giving] sea; and the most excellent service is that of that sublime Court—May it never experience wane, and may its grandeur ever increase!

Every one of the learned [personages] of the realm, and eminent men of the kingdom, have composed benedictions and panegyrics [in his praise], and particles of those odours they have threaded on the string of recital and writing; and

¹ Firīghtah asserts that "Nāşir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh," was the youngest son of I-yal-timīsh: he was the youngest of that name and title, but Ḵuṭb-ud-Dīn, the child put to death by Shāh Ṭurkān, mother of Rūkm-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, was the youngest of all the sons.
² A well-known place a few miles north of Dihīf. It is sometimes called Loṣf.
³ Compare Elliot: vol. ii. page 345.
⁴ That is, in the seventh heaven.
⁵ In Arabia.
this frail one, who is the servant of this court of glory and altar of felicity, by way of felicitation, has composed some poetry and prose. Of these poetical [compositions], one, after the manner of a Kasidah, and the other, in the manner of a mulamma strophe, have been inscribed in these pages, in order that, when the notice of observers may glance over them, they may utter a prayer for the sovereign of Islâm, and invoke a blessing on the author of them.

[These fulsome poems may be judged of from what is foregoing, and still more so from what follows, and need scarcely be inserted here].

**Titles and Names of the Sultan.**

US-SULTân-Ul-A'ZAM-
UL-MU'AZZAM,
Nâshir-ud-Dunya Wa Ud-Dîn,
Abû-L-Mu'azZar-I-MâhMûd ShâHii
Son of the SulIndian, I-Yal-Timish,
Yâmîn-I-Khâlîfâi-Ullâh,
Nâshîr-I-Amîr-Ul-Mûminîn.1

---

6 A poem, a eulogium, a long ode.
7 Mulamma' means "of different colours," but, in poetry, it is applied to verses alternately Arabic and Persian, but our author's strophe is not exactly in accord with that description.
8 The text varies here, and, in some copies, there is a longer prayer for the Sultan.
9 If anything were wanting to convince me that Firüshâh's knowledge of our author's work was derived solely from what he copied out of the Tabâkât-i-Akbarî, it would be found with respect to these poems. The Tabâkât-i-Akbarî copies the first four lines of the kasidah, and Firüshâh has precisely the same and no more; and this plainly shows whence he obtained them.
1 The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, instead of this last title, has Kasîm-i-Amîr-ul-Mûminîn. See note 4, page 310.
Offspring:
Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Firuz Shah, the late.
Malik Taj-ud-Din, Ibrahim Shah, the late.
Malik Mu’izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, the late.
Malik Shihab-ud-Din, Muhammad Shah, the late.

Length of his reign:
Twenty-two years.

Motto on the Royal Signet:
"Greatness belongeth unto God alone."  

Standards:
On the right, Black. On the left, Red.

The following is given as the inscription on two of his first coins, a dirham and dinar:

Obverse—
which may be thus translated:
Obverse—"This dirham [is] stamped with the name of the Just and Beneficent Sultan, Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah.
Reverse—"Struck at the city of Dihli, in the year 644 H., the first of the reign."

The other runs thus:

Obverse—
Reverse—
which may be rendered thus:
Obverse—"The defender of the ordinances of the Law for the sake of the true [faith], Sultan Nasir-ud-Din. The first year of the reign."
Reverse—"This coin, a dinar, [was struck] at the capital, Dihli, in the year six hundred and forty-four."

The oldest copies have —offspring—and not —kinsmen, kindred, relations—as in some modern copies of the text, and the printed text. After each name the invocation—"on whom be mercy or compassion"—equivalent to "the late"—occurs, thus showing that they were dead when our author wrote, but this is left out in the best Paris MS. In the account of the Sultan's reign, the birth of a son is recorded in the fourteenth year, but no more. Two of the above names are certainly similar to those of two of his brothers—the first and third—but the other two are not the names of any of his other brothers, who, in all, were six. Had six been mentioned here, and all the names agreed, we might suppose that the brothers were referred to, but, such not being the case, we can only suppose that these are the names of sons born to Sultan Nasir-ud-Din, and that they died young, but it is remarkable that our author is silent as to their births after mentioning their names.

In one copy of the text, Mahmud.
Just the same as his father's.
THE SHAMSIAH SULTANS OF HIND.

His Maliks.

On the right:—

Malik-al-Kabir, Jalal-ud-Din, Kulich Khan, son of [the lat.] Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jānt-i-Ghāzi, Malik of Lakhanawati and Karah.

Malik-al-Kabir, Nuṣrat-ud-Din, Sher Khan, Sunkar-i-Saghalsus, Malik of Sind and of Hind.

Malik Saif-ud-Din, Bat Khan-i-I-bak, the Khita-i, Malik of Kuhrām.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Buktam-i-Aor Khan.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din [Tāj-ud-Din ?], Arsalān Khan, Sanjar-i-Chast, Malik of Awadh.

Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Balkā Khan, Sanā'ī.

Malik Tamur Khān-i-Sunkar, the 'Ajami, Malik of Kuhrām.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Yüz-Bak-i-Tughrīl Khān, the late, Malik of Lakhanawati.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, Tughrīl-i-Alb Khān.

On the left:—

Malik-al-Kabir-ul-Muʿazzam, Kuṭb-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Salari, Mahdī.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughrīl-i-Tughān Khān, Malik of Lakhanawātī.

Malik-al-Karim, Kamar-ud-Din, Tamur Khān-i-Kīrān, Malik of Awadh and Lakhanawati.

5 This list is evidently defective. No Wazirs or Kāpis are given, and several eminent Malik, mentioned in the following account of the reign, such as No. XXI. in the next Section—Malik Nuṣrat Khān, Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunkar-i-Ṣūfī, the Rūmī; No. XXII.—Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak, the Shamsī, the chief Dād-Bak; the son of Kashi Khān, Ulugh Khān’s nephew; and several others, and no list of victories is given in any copy of the text. All this shows, I think, that our author intended to continue his work as he afterwards states.

6 In some copies, Tughrīl and Khaljī, but these can scarcely be correct, and Tughrīl is most likely the name of the third Malik below, which, from the names being sometimes copied in a circle, or one after the other, have got mixed up one with the other.

1 In nearly every copy of the text containing this List.

2 This word is doubtful. See Malik No. XVI. in the next Section.

3 This word is doubtful also. See Malik No. XIX.

4 This word is doubtful: in one copy  and in another.

5 In one or two copies, Naṣr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, &c.
Malik-al-Kabir, 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, Malik of Sind and of Hind.
Malik Kārā-Kush Khān-i-Aet-kin, Malik of Lohor.
Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashlī Khān, Mubārak-i-Bar-Bak, the late.
Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kuret Khān, Malik of Awadh.
Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān, Malik of Awadh.

Such attributes of the saints, and endowments of the prophets, which the Most High God hath implanted in the great soul of this monarch and son of a monarch, and instilled into his august nature—piety, faith, probity, abstinence, compassion, clemency, mercy, beneficence, impartiality, bounty, generosity, humility, purity, constancy, steadfastness, fasting and prayer, the perusal of the Holy Word, forbearance, gentleness, benevolence, harmlessness, justness, the love of the learned and of learning, regard for ecclesiastics, along with other admirable principles and inestimable qualities which are the requirements of sovereignty and principles of government, such as vigour, dignity, manliness, ardour, spirit, impartiality, kindness, liberality, and the conferring of obligations, with the concurrence of the people of the time—will not be found united in the person of any of the monarchs among the Sultāns of by-gone days, or of the Maliks of past ages—The Almighty sanctify their tombs!—and the purity of the garment, and [other] admirable qualities, both external and internal, of this Sultān, and son of the Sultān—The Almighty exalt his dignity and enlighten his understanding!—are so abundant that they cannot be comprised

---

8 Nusrat-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, as well as Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, is called Malik of Sind and Ilind. This may be in some way connected with the terms applied to the country east of the Sind or Indus, in the map of Sind in the Masalik wa Mamalik, in which the country S.E. of Mansūrah is called Bilād-us-Sind, and that immediately north of it, Bilād-ul-Hind.

4 The best Paris MS.—the "autograph" probably—and two or three others which are also comparatively modern, invariably make the great blunder of styling Ulugh Khān—"Ulū Khān"!
within record or recital. The Almighty God preserve him on the throne of his dominion continual and perpetual!

Inasmuch as the accession of this Sultan, the son of the Sultan, to the throne of dominion took place in the beginning of the year 644 H.—the Almighty perpetuate his sovereignty!—and that up to the period of this Chronicle will be fifteen years, each year thereof has been separated, in order that the events may be more accessible to the understanding.

**FIRST YEAR: 644 H.**

The Sultan-i-Mu'azzam, Nāṣir-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, under a happy conjunction of the planets, with auspicious fortune, at a propitious time, and, with daily-increasing prosperity, ascended the throne of sovereignty within the Kaşr-i-Sabz [Green Castle] in the capital city of Dihlī, on Sunday, the 23rd of the month of Muḥarram, in the year 644 II.; and the Maliks and Amirs, the Ṣadrs and Grandees, and the Sayyids and Ulama, hastened to present themselves at the sublime Court—may its sublimity never decrease!—and performed the ceremony of kissing the blessed hands of this king of kings

6 Several of the words used by our author to express all these perfections, the like of which no other son of Adam ever possessed, are of the same signification; and, therefore, I have not repeated their meanings again; but the context shows, that, however amiable and harmless he may have been, he was by no means fitted for his position, and was a mere tool or puppet. Our author's flattering account of him must have been intended for Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's own perusal. Compare Elliot here.

The Tabakat-i-Akbarī states that he copied Kur'āns, and completed two in each year—not excessive work—which were sold, and the proceeds he subsisted on. The author then goes on to say that he had but one wife, and no servant or slave girl, and that she used to cook his victuals and do all the work. This story, however, is very stale indeed—as stale as the days of one of the early Khāļifahs. It is not likely that Ulugh Khān would have allowed his daughter to be treated after that fashion; but the account of the brilliancy of the Court of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, which may be gathered from the account given by our author at the end of the next Section, belies such a statement. The Sultan was God-fearing and pious—in the Musalmān sense of the word—and no doubt copied Kur'āns, but that he lived on the price they fetched, and that he could not afford to purchase a slave woman to do the household duties is absurd, when he could present forty head of slaves to our author to send to his "dear sister" in Khurāsān. See page 686, and the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.

6 The first month of the Muḥammadan year.

7 Compare Elliot: vol. ii. page 346.
of august footstep; and all of them, each in a manner befitting his own position, tendered the homage of congratulation on his accession to the throne. On Tuesday, the 25th of this same month, the Sultan held a public reception in the audience-hall of the Kūshk-i-Firūzī [the Firūzī Castle]—the royal residence; and all the people made public pledge of allegiance to the sovereignty and of submission to the mandates, of the beneficent monarch of excellent disposition and kingly countenance. All were rejoiced at the reconstitution of this dynasty, and all parts of the territory of Hindūstān were pleased at this prosperous reign; and may it be prolonged to the utmost limits of possibility!

When the Sultan of Islam, Našir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, set out from Dihlī towards Bhara'i; that fief being assigned to him [by his nephew, Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh], his mother, the Malikah-i-Jahan, Jalāl-ud-Dunya wa ud-Dīn—may her prosperity endure!—accompanied him. He undertook many expeditions against the infidels in that territory and the mountains; and the province of Bharā'īj, through his auspicious arrival there, assumed a most flourishing condition.

When, on account of those holy expeditions, and the flourishing condition [of the province], the fame of his government became diffused through the different parts of Hindūstān, the Maliks and Amīrs of the kingdom, having become apprehensive of Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, secretly despatched, to his presence, a written petition [to the effect] that, if the sacred footstep should turn towards the capital, Dihlī, it would be a source of congratulation.

9 The "approval" of "the people" was neither asked nor required; in those days there was not so much fuss made about "the people" as at present.

9 This prosperous reign may be judged of from the following pages—constant outbreaks, and continual inroads on the part of the Mughals, and Sind, Multān, and Lāhor lost, or very nearly so, and not recovered for a long period.

1 See page 665.

2 Who his mother was is not known, but it does not follow that she was a "princess" as in ELLIOT; in all probability she was a concubine. She caused trouble enough afterwards.

3 This maker of holy war upon the infidels was then fifteen years old—a very experienced warrior doubtless.

4 A few copies have "and solicited his auspicious departure towards the capital."
The Malikah-i-Jahan, his mother, adopting a good expedient, represented to the people to the effect that her son was going to the city of Dihli for the purpose of obtaining medicine and remedy for sickness; and she placed the Sultan in a litter; and the Malikah, his mother, taking him along with her, and, attended by a great number of domestics on foot and on horseback, set out from Bharai'j towards the capital, Dihli. When night came on, they covered the blessed face of the Sultan with a woman's veil and placed him on horseback, and, proceeding with the utmost expedition, in a short space of time they reached Dihli on such wise that not a living being had information of the arrival of the august cavalcade of this monarch of felicitous reign until the day that he ascended the throne.

After the seat of dominion became beautified and ornamented by the grace and splendour of his person, in the month of Rajab, in the year 644 H., he raised his imperial standards and brought out his forces for the purpose of marching to the banks of the river Sind, and Banian, and the destruction of the infidels of Chin [the Mughals], and moved by successive marches. On Sunday, the 1st of

---

* The I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and R. A. S. ALS. have Multan!

* This passage plainly indicates that Banian must be the hilly tract west of the upper part of the Sind-Sagar Do-abah. It is not known by that name now. For the events of the Shamsi dynasty, after I-yal-timish himself, as I have before stated, the only contemporary authority then living in the kingdom of Dihli was our author; but, for reasons we are not cognizant of, scarcely from want of information, he has not given many details respecting the different Mughal invasions and other events which took place in these reigns, and above we have a specimen of his concealment of facts. He gives some details, however, in the last Section in his account of the Mughals, for which place I shall reserve my remarks, merely mentioning here that, in the beginning of this year, 644 H., the Mughals extorted 100,000 dirams from Multan, then moved on to Lahir, and extorted 30,000 dirams, 30 kharwars of soft goods [cloths], and 100 head of captives. Our author must have passed all this over, as well as much more, to feed the vanity of his patrons. See also his account of Ulugh Khan for a few more details. In Elliot's India, all the important events in our author's work concerning the Mughal raids on the frontiers of India have been ignored.

* The Tarif-k-i-Firuz-Shahf, copied in the Tabakat-i-Akbar, and its followers, would make us believe, contrary to our author, that, at the very outset of his reign, Sultan Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah, assigned a canopy of state, a dur-baz, and the dignity of Khan to Ulugh Khan, but this is incorrect. Had the two former been allowed him, our author was not one to conceal such honour towards his great patron.

In this part of Nasir-ud-Din's reign, the Dakhani historian, in his
the month of Zi-Ka’dah, 644 H., he crossed the river of Lohor [Rawi], and issued commands to the forces of Islām to ravage the Jūd Hills and around Nandanah. Ulugh Khān-i-A’zam—may his good fortune continue!—who held the office of Amir-i Ḥājib, was nominated to the head of that army, and the Sultan with the camp, the followers, heavy material, and the elephants, encamped on the bank of the Sudharah.

Ulugh Khān-i-A’zam took that army, and, by the favour and aid of the Creator, he ravaged the Jūd Hills and Jilam [Jhilam], and the Khokhars, and other con-

endeavours to spin out his tale, inserts the nonsense about the removal of the feudatories of the Panjāb, and with it quotes the stale story about Alexander’s message to Aristotle for advice, which is related in Guztdah and others long before Firishtah wrote, respecting a king of Khwārazm.

See Elliot here also [INDIA: vol. ii. page 346], where the editor, in a note, says “the text [printed text?] has नृर्दना, but it is evidently a mistake for सिंध,” or the river Indus, which agrees with what follows, and with Firishta’s statement.” When Nandanah, in some places, is turned into “Nirdin,” and in one place is made “a fortified village near Kanauj,” we can scarcely expect to find it in its right place. The Tabakat-i-Akbarī copies our author quite correctly and has Nandanah likewise, and Firishtah—the MSS. copies of the work—follows the former likewise, with some additions of his own concoction; but in the “revised text” of Briggs Nandanah is turned into Multān, and that text has neither “Nanda” nor “Sindh,” and both Dow and Briggs, in their versions of Firishtah, have “territories near the Indus,” and “provinces on the Indus,” respectively. The words in our author’s text are सिंह गृहां और जीतन नदियों दाद. See also the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section for further particulars.

Mu’azzam signifies great—A’zam is the comparative of ʿAzim, and signifies greatest, and Ulugh is Turkish, and signifies great, being equivalent to the Persian busurg. Dow, referring to his appointment as Wazīr—as Firishtah styles him Balban-i-Khūrd, copying the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, to distinguish him from Balban-i-Buzurg, as ʿizz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān is styled in the Tarikh-i-Firuz-Shahi—calls him “young Balin”! Ulugh Khān, or Balban the Lesser or Minor, as the term signifies, was then only past forty! This however is not so absurd as Lee, who, in his translation of Ibn Batūta [Ibn Baṭūṭah], [page 114] quoting the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, to prove Dow wrong in calling him Balin, says that he was called Balaban the Dwarf, and actually gives the words بलین حرمز for to prove his words, خورج, being a dwarf in his vocabulary!!

The printed text has سلطان here for دولت and constantly makes the same mistake.

Or Sudharā—“is a town two and a half kuroh to the north-west of Wazīrabād. In former times, the river Chīnāb—which, at this place, is also called the Sudharā—flowed close to the place, on the northern side, but now it is a kuroh to the north of it. There is no river “Sudra.” See the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.
tumacious infidels in great numbers he sent to hell. He pushed on as far as the bank of the river Sind and ravaged and plundered those parts, and returned again from thence on account of the difficulty of obtaining subsistence and necessaries for his troops. When he presented himself at the sublime Court after such success, and such a great renown, on Thursday, the 25th of Zi-Ka’dah of this same year, the auspicious standards moved from the bank of the river Südharah, and the force set out on its return towards the illustrious capital, the city of Dihli. The prayers for the 'Id-i-Azhā were said in the karah [the hall of a Kārwān Sarāe or of a College] of Jalandar [Jalhandar], and from thence, stage by stage, the capital was reached.

On this day, likewise, this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, who is the writer of this work, was presented [by order of the Sultan] with a cloak, a turban, and a horse, with ornamented stirrups and bridle befitting a king.

SECOND YEAR: 645 H.

The capital city Dihli was reached on the 2nd of Muḥarram, 645 H., and the Sultan remained at Dihli on account of the abundance of rain and severity of the rainy season. In the month of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir of this same year, the camp and the royal pavilion were pitched in the direction of Pāni-paṭ, and, in Shābān, the Sultan returned again [to Dihli]; and the sublime standards moved towards the part of Hindustān situated in the Do-āb. Within the limits of [the district] of Kīnnaūr there was a fortified place and strong fort, the name of which was Talsandah.

And yet the Dakhani historian, Firīghtah, in his account of Mu‘izz-ud-Din, Ghūrī’s reign, says the Khokhars were converted to Islam at that time.

The printed text has 4,5—mountain, range of hills or mountains, instead of 8 as above, and, consequently, in ELLIOT, the Sultan “offered up his prayers on the hills of Jalandar,” which lies in a perfectly level tract of country, with no hill whatever within some forty miles of it. Karah and ḫujrah are of very nearly the same signification.

Such as Sūfis and Darweshes wear.

In this year Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Kārā-Kūsh Kān-i-Aet-kin, the feudatory of Karah, was killed in that territory, but how, or by whom, is not said.

This place which is plainly written Talsandah in all the copies of the text—with two exceptions, where it is Talandah—Talandah—and although Nandanah, which is not only impossible, but does not occur in any copy of
which was reported to be as stout as the wall of Sikandar. In that fort a body of infidel Hindis sought a place of security, and washed their hands of their lives. For a period of ten days, the troops of Islam in attendance at the august stirrup carried on the conflict against that place with the Hindus until they despatched the whole of those rebels to hell, and the place was taken.

[An account of] this holy war, as by the faith prescribed, this servant of the realm has composed in poetry on five or six sheets\(^8\) of paper; and all that happened on this expedition—the ravages by the way, the onsloughts and the slaughtering of the contumacious infidels, and taking of that stronghold, the successes which attended Ulugh Khan-i-A'zam in the slaying [of infidels] and taking Dalki and Malki\(^9\), are, in those sections [of paper], fully the text, Gen. Cunningham [see THOMAS: ibid.] identifies it "as Deo-kali or No-po-ti-po-kin-lo of Huen Thsang, i.e. Nava deva kala, close to Rājgir, the fort of Alha and Udal, about four miles S.E. of Kanauj." I, however, fail to find the latter places even in the Indian Atlas.

The Tabakät-i-Akbari does not mention the name of this place, but Firighthah [BRIGGS "revised text"] has \(\) which may be anything almost; but Dow, in this instance, is much more correct here, and has Tilisndah, thus showing that the MSS. of Firighthah used by him, although not "revised," were correct; whilst Briggs, in his version of Firighthah, styles it "Bitunda" and identifies it with Bulandshahr [Anglicized into Booloodshukur], the former name of which was Baran. The latter place is about forty miles S.E. of Dihlī, while Biṣhandah is about 200 miles to the N.W. of it!

There is Tilisurra—what the vernacular form of it is I do not know—about twelve miles S.S.W. of Kinnaj, but off the present high road, and Thutteh, about eight miles S., and Tirosa about ten miles S.W. of Kinnaj. The first mentioned place if written in the vernacular with \(\) which, in all probability, it is, might, by a foreigner, be written which, in all probability, it is, might, by a foreigner, be written. See also the account of Ulugh Khan in the next Section.

7 The Sadd-i-Sikandar, Sadd-i-Yājūj Mājūj [wall of Gog and Magog], or Bāb-ul-Abwāb, the bulwark built to restrain the incursions of the northern barbarians into the Persian empire, and attributed to an ancient king, Alexander, not Alexander of Macedon.

8 A sheet of paper folded to make a jus or eight pages.

9 Every copy of the text here has \(\) between the words which seems meant for the copulative conjunction; but, farther on, under this reign, and also in the account of Ulugh Khan, there is no \(\) If \(\) is correct, and is intended for and, "Dalkī and Malkī" cannot possibly be the name of one person, and we are plainly told that a Rānāh is referred to. Without the ; the passage could be read Dalkī of Malkī, the latter would then refer to his stronghold or territory, the former being the most probable, or Dalkī the Malkī, and the last word would then refer to some office or title of the Rānāh in question. The best St. Petersburg
and completely described in verse, and, after the name of
the Sultan, it was entitled the Nāsiri Nāmah. In satisfac-
tion thereof the author received from his Majesty the
Sultān-i-Mu'azzam—may his sovereignty continue! —a per-
manent grant which should be received yearly; and, from
the Khākān-i-Mu'azzam10, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—the
Almighty prolong his power! —he obtained the grant of a
village within the Hānsi province—may the Most High
God preserve and continue the both of them on the seat of
sovereignty and cushion of vicegerency! I now return to
my Chronicle again.

On Thursday, the 24th of the month of Shawwāl, 645 H.,
that fort, after much fighting and great slaughter, was
captured1, and, after that, on Tuesday2, the 12th of the
month of Zi-Ka'dah of the same year, the territory of
Karaḥ was reached. Thirty3 days previous to that, Ulugh
Khān-i-A'zam, with the whole of the Maliks and Amirs
and forces appointed to serve under him, had been
despatched on an expedition; and that lion-hearted
Khān, of Rustam-like nature, like Suhrāb in battle, and of
elephant-like person4, during that movement, showed such
proofs of spirit and skill, as cannot be sufficiently praised,
in important battles, the capture of strongholds and forts,

MS., however, has only the following words here: "the slaughtering of the
contumacious, and the taking of Dalki and Malki," respecting which passage
see note 4, page 682.

10 Because our author, in his usual fulsome manner, styles him Khākān-i-
Mu'azzam, signifying great king or emperor, it does not follow, nor does it
mean, that he was king when this was written. Our author generally uses the
word ملك with respect to Ulugh Khān, which has many significations; and,
as he ruled Nāsir-ud-Dīn as well as the country, it would not be a matter of sur-
prise to find "rule" or "power" used here, without its being turned into a proof
that he must have been on the throne when the identical passage was written.

1 In the account of Ulugh Khān it is stated that he rejoined the Sultān,
with his force, on his return from this expedition, on the last day—the 29th—
of the month Shawwāl, and that, after the festival of the Aṣḥā—10th of Zi-
Hijjah, the last month of the year—the forces set out towards the capital,
which was reached on the 24th of the first month of the following year—
646 H. See page 683.

2 Some copies of the text have Monday. Tabakat-i-Akbarī says the Sultān
moved towards Karaḥ on the 10th of that month.

3 In some copies of the text three days, but that is evidently too short a
time, as the context proves.

4 Strong like an elephant he probably means. See Ibn Battītah's account
of Ulugh Khān in a note to the account of that Malik in the next Section.
making way through forests and wilds, the slaughter of obdurate infidels, the acquirement of booty and captives, together with making prisoners of the dependents of great Rāes and Rānahs such as cannot be fully contained in the writing of the scribe nor the narrative of the detailer: a little has been rendered into verse in the book [entitled] the NāṣIRI NĀMAH.

There was a Rānah in those mountains and that tract [of country] which they were wont to call Dalkī and Malkī.

Here, contrary to the preceding passage just noticed, no ॐ is used in the majority of the copies of the text, including the oldest and best ones; and in the account of Ulugh Khān also, in the next Section, no ॐ is used. There our author says that "was a Rānah in the vicinity of the river Jūn which is between Kalīnjār and Karāh," and evidently referring to the country, not the Rānah. He then says that: "this stronghold was taken, together with the whole of the Rānah's family, kinsmen, and children, &c." Ropes and ladders had to be used in gaining access "to the place." It is scarcely probable that our author would write two or three different versions of this affair—he wrote one in verse, as mentioned above—without referring to the name of the country or the place taken, and this tends to prove that one of these names at least, if not both, refers to the Rānah's country or fortress. They cannot possibly both refer to the name of one man: that is simply impossible, as "a Rānah" is plainly indicated both here and farther on. Without the ॐ the words would form a very improbable Hindī proper name, but they might then be read Dalkī of Malkī, the last word being the name of his stronghold or country, which is possible, or Dalkī the Malkī, when the last word would refer to some title or office, which seems improbable. As no vowel points are given, and as ॐ may stand for ॐ as well as for ॐ, the words may be Dulkī, Dalākī, Mulkī, and Malkī, or Dulkī and Mulkī or Dalākī and Malākī, and the like. The more correct spelling may be Dhalkī or Dhulākī, and Mahalkī or Mahalkī, as foreigners are very apt to leave out the ॐ— in Hindī words, and to write ॐ— for ॐ. There is a place similarly named in the Antarbed Dū-ābāh, thus showing that it is not uncommon. See the note to this passage in the account of Ulugh Khān in the following Section.

In the best St. Petersburg copy of the text, which I have found particularly correct in most instances where others have been most defective, and also in the best British Museum copy, this passage is different from that in all the other copies of the text collated, and throws quite a different light upon the matter by the mere difference of the pronoun, they having ॐ— rather than ॐ— he, &c., and I have, consequently, taking the reasons above stated with this rendering of the passage in those two first-named copies, no hesitation in adopting this solution of this very tedious passage, which is as follows:

and as I have rendered it above. The only doubt remaining is, whether the word Dulkī may refer to the Rānah or not, as with, or without the ॐ both words might refer to the country.

The Tabākāt-i-Akbarī copies from our author here, but merely says that "the Rānah's [district, place, town, &c.] was taken."
with numerous dependents, and fighting men beyond compute, and possessing dominions and wealth unlimited, and strong places, and defiles and passes of excessive strength, the whole of which he [Ulugh Khan] devastated, and captured all the dependents, together with the women and children of that accursed one, and obtained great booty. Of one description of horses alone, fifteen hundred head fell into the hands of the Musalmān forces, and, from this, one may infer the extent of other booty. After he [Ulugh Khan] thus felicitously had rejoined the sublime Court, all expressed exultation at these successes; and the imperial standards, on Thursday, the 12th of the month of Zī-Ḥijjah, 645 H., returned from that territory [Karāh 6].

On this march, Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Masʿud Shāh, who was the feudatory of Kinnauj, and the Sultan’s brother, presented himself at the Court. He accomplished [the ceremony of] kissing the sublime hand, and returned; and the army of Islam and the imperial standards, by regular marches, continued moving towards the illustrious capital, Dihli, until the

**THIRD YEAR: 646 H.**

When, on Wednesday, the 24th of the month of Muḥarram, 646 H., the Sultan [with his forces] reached the seat of empire again on his return from this expedition. The city was decorated for the occasion, and with felicity and majesty he took his place in the seat of sovereignty 7.

At this period, Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Masʿud Shāh [the

Firıṣhtah copies from it in the same manner nearly, with some additions of his own; but he does not mention anything whatever of two rājahs;  as rendered by Briggs, “the Rajahs Dulky and Mulky,” but, on the other hand, “a rājah.”

The situation of this Rāmh’s country is plainly indicated in the passage in the account of Ulugh Khan, and refers to the tract immediately west of the S.W. Tons river. I think “Garwa near Sheorājpur [Shi-wāj-pūr?] in Parganah Bārah of Allahabad,” referred to by Mr. T. E. Atkinson in the proceedings of the Asiatic Society of Bengal for June, 1874, pages 123-4, is too far east to have been one of the places destroyed by Ulugh Khan.

6 Compare Elliot here.

7 In Elliot this sentence is rendered, “On Wednesday, &c., the Sultan reached Dehli, and took his seat upon the throne with great state.” I have already mentioned how oriental cities are decorated, note 5, page 616.
Sultān's brother], who, when he presented himself to the Sultan [on his march back from Karah], had been nominated to the fiefs of Sanbhal and Budā'ūn, became suddenly filled with fear and terror, and from Sanbhal and Budā'ūn proceeded towards Lohor* , by way of the hills of Sihnūr.

The Sultān-i-Mu‘azzam continued at the capital for a period of seven months, until the month of Sha‘bān, 646 H., when the sublime standards moved out of Dihli, and [the Sultān] gave directions for undertaking expeditions against the infidels in different parts of the hills and plains, and, having nominated Amirs to proceed to different parts, he returned to the capital; and, on this expedition, the Sultān did not happen to proceed a greater distance. On Wednesday, the 9th of the sacred month of Zi‘-Ḥijjah, in felicity and power, he reached the capital.

The forces of Islām pushed on towards the Koh-pāyah [skirts of the hills—of Mewāt] and Rantabhūr. On this

* Rendered in ELLIOT, “When Malik Jalālū-d-dīn waited upon the king as he was returning, he was appointed governor of Sambal and Badā‘ūn, but he all at once took alarm about these two districts and came to the capital.” The I. O. L. MS., the R. A. S. MS., the best Paris MS., and the Calcutta printed text, are minus one line or more here. There was no cause of alarm about those districts, and the capital was the place, above all others, that he would avoid. Our author makes a mystery of this affair. In his account of Ulugh Khān, he says, the Dihli troops marched to the banks of the Bhāh and back again in 646 H., but no reason is given; and this movement was evidently connected, in some way, with the Prince’s flight. In the account of ‘Īzz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, and Nusrat-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunkār, in the next Section, and in the last Section, some farther references will be found to this matter. It is said he fled to the Mughals.

9 Compare ELLIOT, vol ii. page 349. This passage is certainly imperfect, for, on turning to the corresponding month and year, in the account of Ulugh Khān, it is in a manner explained. It was in Sha‘bān, 646 H., that Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, moved towards the upper provinces, referred to in the preceding note, which evidently was connected with the flight of his brother to Lāhor. The paragraph mentioning this circumstance might almost be inserted above, and it would make the matter clear. It is as follows:—“In the month of Sha‘bān, 646 H., the royal standards moved towards the upper provinces, as far as the extreme frontiers, and the bank of the river Bhāh, and from thence returned to the capital.” It was after this that Amirs were sent on the expeditions against the infidels, it not being considered advisable, seemingly, to pass beyond the Bhāh, and therefore Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, returned to the capital again, after appointing some of his Amirs to move against some of his contumacious Hindū subjects.

It is remarkable that, since the year 639 H., after the sack of Lāhor by the Mughals, we do not find it again mentioned as a province of the Dihli kingdom, and this passage confirms it.
expedition, and during the stay of the Sultan at the capital, two events occurred. The one was this, that Kāzī Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Shafūrkānī [i.e. Shabūrghānī] was accused, and, from Friday, the 9th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah, in the Kaṣr-i-Safēd [the White Castle], was removed from his Kāzī-ship, and, by command, left the city and departed towards Būdāūn; and, on the 12th of Zi-Ḥijjah, by the endeavour, of ‘Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān, he was put to death: the other was that Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Khwājāh, in the vicinity of the fortress of Randābīr, attained martyrdom at the hands of the infidel Hindūs, on Sunday, the 11th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah—may he receive grace and forgiveness!

FOURTH YEAR: 647 H.

On Monday, the 3rd of the month of Șafār, 647 H., Ulugh Khān-i-Aʿẓam, with the forces of Iṣlām, and the sublime standards, returned in triumph to the capital again. As Ulugh Khān-i-Aʿẓam was the asylum of the Sultan's dynasty, the prop of the army, and the strength of the kingdom, with the concurrence of all the Grandees and Malikhs of the realm, it was his daughter's good fortune to become the Malikāh-i-Jahān [Queen of the Universe—the Royal consort], and this marriage took place on

2 For further particulars of this expedition, meagre as they are, see the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.
3 This is the first occasion that the “sublime standards” are said to have accompanied Ulugh Khān.
4 This passage is inverted altogether in Elliot [page 349]. The printed text is perfectly correct here, and has, like the MSS. copies of the work, the words—which have been rendered totally contrary to their meaning, viz.:—the Sultan “gave his daughter to the son of the Khān”! Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, was, at this time, in the 21st year of his age. Thomas [Pathān Kings, page 125], led astray by the above translation probably, falls into the same error.

Our author has forgotten to state here, although he has remembered it in his account of him, that it was shortly after this event that Malik Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balbān, was dignified with the title of Ulugh Khān, the Deputy-ship of the kingdom, and leadership of the troops, and that his brother, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, ī-bak-i-Kāshīlī Khān, was made Amīr-i-Hājīb, and, on Nāg-awr being taken from Malik Balbān-i-Kāshīlī Khān, that fief was made over to the new Amīr-i-Hājīb. See the account of him in next Section.
Monday, the 20th of Rabi'-ul-akhir, 647 H. May the Most High God preserve all three, the protection and prop of the Muhammadan faith, in sovereignty, honour, and prosperity!

In this year likewise, on the 10th of Jamādi-ul-akhir, Każī Jalāl-ud-Din, Kāsanī, arrived from Awadh, and became Każī of the realm. On Monday, the 22nd of the month of Sha'bān, the imperial standards moved out of the capital, Dihli, and, on Sunday, the 4th of the month of Shawwāl of this same year, crossed the Jūn, for the purpose of undertaking a holy expedition against the Hindūs; and forces were told off to operate in that tract.

Letters from the sister of this frail individual [the author] arrived from Khurāsān, and they were represented to the sublime consideration, and the Sultan—Long may his Khilāfat continue! through the recommendation of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—may Almighty God long preserve and prolong both their lives!—conferred an honorary robe, a misāl [royal grant] for forty head of captives, and a hundred khar-wārs weight of gifts.

Some copies have the 6th of Jamādi-ul-akhir, but the date and month above is confirmed in the account of Ulugh Khān.

Farther on, in the next Section, our author says that Ulugh Khān moved from the capital on Monday, the 9th of Sha'bān, and the camp was pitched at the ford over the Jūn, and hostilities at once commenced against the infidels.

The translator of this passage in Elliot [vol. ii. page 350] turns 40 captives into 100 beasts of burden! The words in the text, the Calcutta printed text included, are perfectly plain, and to make it unmistakably so, the word nafar, applied solely to human beings, is used. The passage is thus rendered in Elliot:—"he [the Sultan] was pleased to give her one hundred beasts of burden, and one hundred ass-loads of presents." In a foot note, the Editor states "the word used is نفر, for which the dictionaries give the meaning [it is an every-day word almost in the Persian of the East] of 'captive, slave, servant.' It can hardly bear this meaning here, and in other places it is connected with اسب (horse) so I have translated it 'beast of burden,' from the verb burdan to carry" !

If bardah cannot bear this meaning here, how is it that, at page 371 of the same work, the Editor does not translate the same word, printed in italics, beast of burden? Why cannot it bear this meaning? Was it too shocking to think that captives should thus be sent away to be sold? It was a common practice nevertheless, and the meaning is captives who had been made slaves of. Our author, in the next Section, gives the particulars of his proceeding to Multān with his slaves, to despatch them to his "dear sister" in Khurāsān, and there he uses the word غلامان—ghulāman, an Arabic word, whilst bardah—bardah is pure Persian; and, in his account of Ulugh Khān, in the next Section, but which identical part has been omitted in Elliot [page 368] as
On Wednesday, the 24th of the month of Zi-Hijjah, the august standards returned to the capital; and, on Monday, the 29th of the same month, the author set out from Dihli for the purpose of proceeding to Multân, in order to despatch the captives to Khurāsān. When he reached the Hānsi district, by the sublime command of the Khân-i-Mu‘azzām, Ulugh Khân-i-A‘zām, the author took possession of the village conferred on him by Ulugh Khân⁸, and opportunity offered of proceeding to Multân by way of Abūhar⁹; and, in the

**FIFTH YEAR: 648 H.,**

On Sunday, the 11th of the month of Safar, 648 H., an interview was obtained with Malik Sher Khân-i-Sunkār, on the bank of the Biāh¹, and from thence, proceeding

"matters personal of the author,"—but not more so than a vast deal more in this work, and as personal here as there—our author again mentions forty head of captives, &c. Khar-wār, although literally an ass-load, is here used to signify the weight of an ass-load, but it does not follow that the loads were carried by asses.

Further details respecting these matters will be found in the account of Ulugh Khân in the next Section.

Ibn Baṭūṭah, who proceeded "from Multân, the principal city of Sind," towards Dihli, says, "the first city [town?] we reached appertaining to Hindūstān, and the first in this direction, was Abīhar. It is of small size and closely built, and has much water and cultivation."

This statement of our author respecting this interview proves beyond a doubt, that, at this period, the Biāh flowed in its old bed, between the present Sutlaj and the Chināb, as it would have been impossible, in proceeding direct from Abūhar to Multân, to have otherwise met Sher Khân on the Biāh. See remarks on "The Lost River" in last Section.

¹ The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, and R. A. S. MS., and Calcutta printed text, here have ८५, ८६—"on the banks of the river Sindh and Biāh,” but for two persons to hold an interview on these two rivers at the same time is rather difficult from three other rivers and vast tracts of country—in fact the whole Panjab—intervening between them. Our author’s words are perfectly clear and intelligible, but the words "Sindh and Biāh—"are not contained in the text. One modern copy has ८५—"on the banks of the Sind-i-Biāh [i.e. the river of Biāh], which probably the editors of the Calcutta text took for the Indus, as the term is used—in a proper sense of course—both to signify the Indus, and also any river, its proper Sanskrit meaning.

In a note to the above passage in Elliot, the Editor says, with reference to the words—"mulākāt-i-Sher Khân hāsīl shud"—"our text has no nominative in this sentence," and, that "the words show that the person who had the interview was not superior in rank to Sher Khân." As the subject is
onwards towards Multān, the author, on Wednesday, the 6th of Rabī‘-ul-Awwal of that year, reached it. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, arrived that same day from Uchchah for the purpose of taking Multān, and there was an opportunity of an interview with him. The author continued to remain there up to the 26th of the month of Rabī‘-ul-Ākhir, and the capture of Multān, which was in the hands of a retainer of Malik Sher Khān, was not effected. The author set out to return to the capital, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, retired towards Uchchah. The author returned by the route of the fort of Marūt to Sursūf and Hānsī, and reached Dihli again on the 22nd of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir.

In the month of Shawwal of this same year, Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Kurez, from Multān, made a great number of Mughals captive, and sent them to the capital; and the city of Dihli was decorated for this success of the Nasīrī dynasty. In this year likewise, on Friday, the 17th of

It is the Taḥbāšt-i-Akbari, or Fīrūštah—for he is a mere copyist of the former work, as I have often shown here already—who takes the Sultan, who never left Dihlī that year, to the Bāh, and says that Sher Khān joined him there, but does not mention anything about 20,000 horse. The same work takes the Sultan to Multān and Uchchah, the former of which places he is therein stated to have reached on the 6th of Rabī‘-ul-Awwal, 648 H. In this case our author has only been mistaken for the Sultan! See the account of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, in the next Section.

The printed text turns Kashlū Khān-i-Balban into Lashkar Khān, and in Elliot [vol. ii. page 350] it is so translated, and Thomas [Pathān Kings, page 125] turns Sher Khān into the brother of Ulugh Khān! He was his uncle’s son—his cousin merely.

Marūt is a well known place on the route from Dihlī to Uchchah. “Mirat” is utterly impossible. One is W. of Dihlī, and the other E. A person would go a little out of his way to go to Multān from Dihlī by way of “Mirat.” See the account of Ulugh Khān, and Elliot, vol. ii. page 350. Our author went as far as the river Jhilam to see the captives off.

It is strange that no particulars are given respecting the capture of these Mughal prisoners by Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Kurez from, not at, Multān, which caused Dihlī to be decorated. It is not even referred to in the account of Ulugh Khān. It was quite time to gain some success—although this is a very doubtful one—over the Mughals, for they were continually encroaching
the month of Zi-Ka'dah, Kāzī Jalāl-ud-Din, Kāsānī, resigned his existence to the most sublime dynasty—the immaculate Ruler of the Universe.

**SIXTH YEAR: 649 H.**

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, having commenced to act in a refractory manner at Nāg-awr, in this year the august standards moved towards that place, upon which Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, presented himself and made his submission, and the sublime standards returned [to the capital ¹].

Subsequently to this, Malik Sher Khān marched from Multān ⁶ against Úchchah, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, pressed on from Nāg-awr towards Úchchah, and went to Malik Sher Khān [in his camp] and was detained, and relinquished the fort of Úchchah to him ⁷, and, leaving it, turned his face towards the capital.

upon the Panjāb, and by and by we shall find them permanently located on the banks of the Bīāh. This is the affair out of which Firightah, but not the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, makes Sher Khān take Ghaznīn from the Mughals referred in note ⁸, page 690, and in the account of Sher Khān in the next Section.

Some time previous to this, in 647 H., Malik Saif-ud-Din, Hasan, the Karlugh, who was able to hold his territory of Banīān notwithstanding the Mughals, advanced from that tract to attack Multān, which fief Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān then held, together with Úchchah. He advanced from Úchchah to drive away the Karlugh army. An engagement ensued near Multān, Hasan, the Karlugh, was slain, but his people kept his death secret—although a party of horsemen, in Malik Balban's army, devoted themselves to kill the Karlugh chief—and Malik Balban was under the necessity of delivering up Multān, which he had entered after the engagement. We must suppose that Hasan's eldest son—the Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad—hereafter to be mentioned, took the command of the Karlugh army, to whom Malik Balban had to surrender Multān, which Malik Sher Khān shortly after recovered from them, when he installed there his own retainer—Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Kurez, above alluded to. See the account of Sher Khān in the next Section.

I have already mentioned how eastern cities are decorated. Compare Elliot also here.

¹ Ulugh Khān's brother was put in charge of Nāg-awr.

² In his account of Malik Balban, in the next Section, our author says Sher Khān advanced from Tabarhindah and Lāhor upon Úchchah.

³ In Elliot, vol. ii. page 351, this is rendered "but he was captured in his encounter with Sher Khān and quietly surrendered the fort." No encounter whatever took place between them, and the event happened precisely as our author relates above. The details of it will be found in the account of Balban-i-Kashlū Khān and of Sher Khān in the next Section, which see.
On Sunday, the 17th of the month of Rabī’-ul-Ākhir, 649 H., he presented himself at the sublime Court, and the fief of the district and city of Budā’ūn was assigned to him.

In this year, likewise, on Sunday, the 10th of the month of Jamādī ul-Awwal, for the second time, the ʿĀqīq-ship of the realm, together with the jurisdiction of the capital, was entrusted to this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Saray, by the sublime command; and, on Tuesday, the 25th of the month of Shaʾbān, the sublime standards moved towards Gwāliyūr, Chandīrī, Nurwul [Nurwur], and

The Ṭabāḳat-i-Akbarī places this event immediately after the taking of the stronghold of Nurwur, instead of before, although our author says that the Sultan set out for Chandīrī and Mālāwah in Shaʾbān, which is the eighth month of the year.

* One of the two most important fiefs of the kingdom of Dihlī in those days.

That exceedingly trustworthy historian, Firīstāh, perpetrates a nice blunder here. He states immediately after the Nurwur affair, that “Sher Khān took Ghaznīn from the Mughals, and, for some time, read the Khutbah and coined the money there in the name of Sultan Nasir-ud-Dīn”!! All this ridiculous nonsense is concocted from the affair of Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Kurez and the Mughals mentioned previously by our author. Elphinstone is also led away by this nonsense, through the translations of that writer’s work, and Marshman and some others of the compilers of Indian history follow suit of course. The last-named writer adds that it is the only irruption recorded from that quarter during the period of “authentic history.” So much for the authentic history. See page 694, and account of Sher Khān in the next Section.

* This refers to his duties as ʿĀqīq no doubt, but the word used in the text is -jurisdiction, authority, sway, &c., and does not mean magistracy, although it might, in a proper place, mean magistracy.

1 There is no doubt respecting the name of this place: Nurwul and Nurwur, or Nirwal and Nirwur, are one and the same thing, the letters, and in Hindī being interchangeable. It is no doubtful place, and lies some 40 miles east of Bhūpāl, in Lat. 23° 18’, Long. 78°. The other places mentioned with it indicate its whereabouts. The majority of the best copies of the text have Chāhar-i-Ajar, and one Chār, and but in MSS. and, are often confounded. It is probably the manner in which a Musalmān, and a foreigner, would write Chāhād—by putting , to represent the sound of Sanskrit इ. The word here written ,--ajār or achār, in one copy of the text, in the account of Nusrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasaṭ, in the next Section, has ,--ajārnah, which may be meant for —achāryah, j standing for __.

This Rājāh is, probably, “Chāhāda Diwa,” as referred to by Thomas [Pathān Kings: pages 69-70], but it seems very doubtful whether he was ever tributary to I-yal-timīgh. The second word is, probably, meant for Achārya—spiritual guide, or teacher, &c., only, in other places farther on, he is styled —Rānah of Ajār, and —that Hindū fellow, the Ajārī, or, of Ajārī, and, —Rānah of Ajārī, and
Mālwaḥ, and, on this expedition, they reached near unto Mālwaḥ. Chāhār, the Ajār, who was the greatest of all the Rāces of that tract of country, who had about 5000 horsemen well trained to arms, and 200,000 footmen, was routed; and the fortress which had been constructed by him, among defiles and passes, was taken and plundered, and booty and captives fell into the hands of the Musalmān army. During this expedition the Khān-i-Mu’azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A’zam, displayed proofs of much energy and skill; and, in safety, and under the protection of God,

and Īmar Ījārī Chāhīr and Īhīr the Ajārī, who was a Rānah, &c., all of which various designations make the identification difficult.

In Sanskrit, Acharī means strict in the observance of religious ceremonies, and Acharaj and Achārya mean a spiritual guide or preceptor. Hodgson, in his “Sketch of Buddhism” contained in Part I., Vol. 2nd, of the “Transactions of the RO. AS. Soc. for 1829,” pages 231 and 245, mentions the Vajra Achāryas. He says “The Bandyas are divided into two classes; those who follow the Vāhya-charyā, and those who adopt the Abhyautara-charyā—words equivalent to the Grihasha āsrām and Vairāgil āsrām of the Brāhmans. The first class is denominated Bhikshu; the second, Vajra Āchārya.”

This last term is evidently similar in some way to the same name applied to this great “Rāj.” See also the account of this affair, in the notice of Ulugh Khān in the next Section, and compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 351.

The Tarikh-i-Mubarak-Shah? styles him Īmar Diw, and the Tarikat-ul-Mulūk — Harjā Diw — Īmār Diw—but in all probability the Īr is merely Īr with the points omitted, as no Hindū name would have the peculiar ’Arabic ī—and says he had 60,000 horse and 200,000 foot, but these latter would be mere rabble in any case, that he was one of the Rājahs of Chandīrī and Mālwaḥ, and that, on the way back from this expedition, the fortress of Nurwur or Nirwur was taken.

The Tabakat-i-Akbari states that the Sulṭān marched against Īmar Diw, with a large army, on the 6th of Sha’ībān of this year, mentions the number of the hostile troops as given by our author, and that a great battle took place in which Īmar Diw was overthrown, after which his stronghold was taken by assault, and the Sulṭān returned to Dihīlī.

Firishtah copies the above, but styles him Īmar Diw—in the M.S. used by Dow however appears to have had Sāhir Diw—and adds that he had very recently built this stronghold of Nurwur or Nirwur, which, in Briggs’ revised text, is turned into Tirūr, which, of course, is totally incorrect.

According to TOD [vol. i. page 89], this stronghold was erected by a branch of the Čuchwāha [he probably means the Kachwāhā—Rājpūts] and was “a celebrated fortress” and “the abode of the celebrated Raja Nala, whose descendants continued to hold possession throughout all the vicissitudes of the Tatar and Moghal dominion, when deprived of it by the Mahrattas,” &c. Of course: who ever heard of Rājpūts being overcome by Musalmāns except by accident or mistake or some black treachery, according to the Rājpūt romances? Our author, consequently, must be wrong, and the Rājpūt right.

It seems strange that such a great Rānāh as this is not mentioned by the Rājpūt annalists.
the sublime standards moved back again towards the capital.

SEVENTH YEAR: 650 H.

The sublime standards returned to Dihli on Monday, the 23rd of the month of Rabī‘-ul-Awwal, 650 H., after which, for a period of seven months, attended by auspicious fortune and increasing felicity, the Sultan continued at the illustrious seat of government, and, during this period, was engaged in the diffusion of goodness and establishing usages of justice and equity.

On Monday, the 22nd of the month of Shawwāl of this year, the Sultan departed in the direction of Lohor with the intention of marching to Uchchah and Multān, and at the time of bidding farewell, in the vicinity of Kaithal, the Sultan bestowed upon the author a special honorary robe, together with a horse with complete furniture and trappings ornamented with gold, and a saddle.

During this march all the Khāns, Maliks, and Amīrs of the adjacent parts, assembled and attended the sublime stirrup; and Kutluğ Khān from the territory of Bhānānah,†

† Rendered in Elliot, “in great comfort and splendour.” The original is: با إلیوت، “in great comfort and splendour.”

‡ The I. & L. MS., R. A. S. MS., and printed text here, have “the Sultan departed towards Lohor and Ghaznī by the way of Uchchah and Multān!!” The Editors of the printed text must have had peculiar ideas of their own on geographical matters not to have detected this blunder of the copyists. Where Ghaznī? where Lohor? The word in the original text has been turned into غزناً by the copyists of the three former, but a very little discrimination would have convinced any one of the utter impossibility of its being correct. The Calcutta text, however, is faithfully followed in Elliot. See vol. ii. page 352.

What was the object of proceeding in the direction of Lābor with the intention of marching to Multān and Uchchah does not appear, unless it was to deprive Sher Khān, Ulugh Khān’s kinsman, of those places and their dependencies, and restore them to Malik Balban-i-Kashlu Khān [which was done], and that this was the first move in the Rayhānī plot, which the latter Malik supported against Ulugh Khān; for, as yet, Malik Sher Khān had not left the country, and Malik Balban was feudatory of Budā‘ūn. The Mughal raids may possibly have been the cause; but, whatever it may have been, the Bhānānah was the farthest point reached upon this occasion. See the account of Balban-i-Kashlu Khān in next Section.

§ Turned into “Sihwān” and “Sīhwan” respectively in the Tabakat-i-Akbarī and Fīrūštah, and the latter has the impossible ژ for ز in the title of ‘Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlu Khān.
and 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashti Khan, from Budai-un, with their respective followings, accompanied the sublime standards to the boundary of the river Biakh. 'Imad-ud-Din-i-Rayhan [at this time] secretly subverted the mind of the Sultan and the Malik towards Ulugh Khan-i-A'zam, and their minds were greatly changed.

**EIGHTH YEAR: 651 H.**

When the new year came round, on Tuesday, the 1st of the month of Muharram, 651 H., command was given to Ulugh Khan-i-A'zam, from the encampment at Hasirah, to proceed to his fiefs, the territory of Siwalikh and Hansi. When the Khan-i-Mu'azzam, in conformity with that command, reached Hansi, the Sultan, with his forces, in the beginning of the month of Rabii-ul-Awwal of this same year, returned to the capital, and changed the feelings of the grandees [as well as] the offices [they held].

In the month of Jumadi-ul-Awwal, the masnad of the Wazir-ship was transferred to the 'Ayn-ul-Mulk, the Nizam-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaibi, and to Malik

---

1 The Calcutta text turns him into Lashkar Khan, but such a name does not occur throughout the whole of our author's work.
2 In the next Section, the last day of Muharram.
3 This name is doubtful, and I fail to recognize the place. It is scarcely written twice exactly alike in any of the copies of the text collated, but it certainly is not "Rohtak." In the different copies of the text it is and the like.
4 Both here and in the account of Ulugh Khan in the next Section, in Elliot [vol. ii. pages 352 and 370], this is translated "his estates in the Siwalik hills," but they were exceedingly extensive estates. Ulugh Khan held the province of Hansi and the Siwalikh in fief, which then appears to have been the peculiar appanage of the Amir-i-Hajib.
5 In Elliot, "directed his attention to the nobles and public affairs," but the context plainly shows what is meant, and it is to be presumed that the Sultan, during Ulugh Khan's tenure of office, directed his attention to public affairs and to the great also.
6 This title, signifying the eve of the state, like the following, signifying the regulator of the country, &c., is a mere title peculiar to Wazirs. Muhammad was the name of the person in question.
7 Firishtah asserts that 'Imad-ud-Din-i-Rayhan was a protégé of Ulugh Khan's, but, as this is not contained in the Tabakat-i-Akbari, and is not referred to by our author, I am inclined to doubt its correctness. The Dakhani historian also refers to the 'Ayn-ul-Mulk, as if he were a foreigner whom chance had brought to Dihli.
Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Kashli Khan, the Amir-i-Hajib and Ulugh Bār-Bak [the Lord Chamberlain and Chief Master of the Ceremonies*], who was the brother of the Khan-i-Mu’azzam, Ulugh Khan-i-A’zam, the fief of Karah was given, and he was sent thither. In Jamādi-ul-Awwal likewise, ’Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān became Wakil-i-Dar’ [Representative in Dar-bār], and the Sultan [and his forces], with the object of removing Ulugh Khan-i-A’zam—may his power endure!—moved from the capital towards Hānsi*. ’Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān brought Kāzi Shams-ud-Dīn, of Bharā’ij [to the capital], and on the 27th of the month of Rajab, 651 H., transferred to him the Kāzi-ship of the realm*. Ulugh Khan-i-A’zam moved from Hānsi and

* Compare ELLIOT here, where Malik Kishli Khan is divided into two, and one half of him is made “lord chamberlain,” instead of his being deprived of the office because of his relationship to Ulugh Khan, and his other half, as “Ulugh Mubarak Aibak,” is sent to Karra!! Bār-Bak is an officer, equivalent to the Bār-Begi of the Persian Court.

* BRIGGS is perfectly correct in reading Wākil-i-Dar, since “wakildar” is meaningless; but he is wrong in translating it “officer of the door,” one “who superintends the ceremonies of presentation,” for the meaning assigned to the words by VULLERS is correct—procurator palatii regii, i.e. vicarius. Wazir no doubt means Prime Minister from the time of the first Khalifahs down to the present time, as in Turkey and Persia at this moment. BLOCHMANN, in his translation of the A’in-i-Akbari [vol. i. page 527], translates “Wākil” [Wakil] as “prime minister,” and “Vazīr” [Wazir] as “minister of finances.” I refer to the pre-Mughal period; but even as regards the reign of Akbar, who, being half a Hindū, and not half a Musalmān, and who, hating the very name of Muḥammad and Aḥmad, delighted in making innovations contrary to Muḥammadan usages, this rendering would furnish matter for much argument; but what I refer to in this place is WAKIL-I-DAR, or WAKIL-I-DAR-BĀR—for the two are equivalent—to which the Musalma writers assign the following significations:—

A Wākil is, essentially, a person entrusted to act in the absence of another—a substitute, alter ego, locum tenens; but, at the same time, it must be remembered, that the office of Wākil-i-Dar is different from that of Nāyab-i-Mamlīkat—Deputy or Lieutenant of the kingdom—as shown distinctly at page 702. Ulugh Khan was made Nāyab-i-Mamlīkat in 647 H., and not Wākil-i-Dar, which office ’Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān obtained after Ulugh Khan was sent to his fief; but ’Imād-ud-Dīn did not become Wazīr, for the first line of this paragraph of the text above shows, that Muḥammad, Junaidī, was the Wazīr. The term, Rayhān, is applied to a slave or eunuch generally. See also note 6, page 635.

This is related differently in the account of Ulugh Khan in the next Section, which see.

* Our author’s own office. See also the account of Ulugh Khan farther on. It was in this year, 651 H., that he gained great successes over the Rājpūts.
retired to Nāg-awr, and the fief of Hānṣī, together with the office of Amīr-i-Ḥājib, was entrusted to Prince Rukn-ud-Dīn [Firūz Shāh⁷], and in the month of Shābān [on the 17th] the Sultaṅ [with his forces] returned to the capital.

In the beginning of Shawwāl of this year, the Sultaṅ marched from Dihlī for the purpose of securing Üchchah and Multān. On arriving in the vicinity of the river Biāh, a force was despatched towards Tabarhindah.

Previous to this, Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkār had withdrawn from an engagement on the banks of the Sind¹, and had retired towards Turkistān; and Üchchah, Multān, and Tabarhindah, had been left in the hands of his dependents. On Monday, the 26th of the month of Zī-Ḥijjah of this year, they were gained possession of, and were made over to the charge of Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast², and the

⁷ The word here used—alus—does not mean "interest."

⁸ Among the names of Naṣīr-ud-Dīn’s offspring in the list, at page 672, this name is given, together with the names of three others. These must have been mere children, as Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, himself, was only born in 626 Ḥ., and now only in his twenty-sixth year. The fief as well as the office of Amīr-i-Ḥājib must have been held by Deputy in this case, by some creature of ‘Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān’s clique, but only for a very short time. The mention of Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh’s offspring fully disproves the statement of the Tabakat-i-Akbari, and some other works, as to his having had but one wife—he may have had only one at a time—for, as yet, Ulugh Khān’s daughter had borne him no offspring. See page 714.

¹ The word is here used, which has different meanings. "Subduing" is rather too strong, as the object was merely to obtain possession of those places from Malik Sher Khān’s dependents, and to place them under the charge of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjār, as will be detailed in the account of him farther on. Malik Kurez, Sher Khān’s deputy at Multān, had, only two or three years before [in 648 Ḥ.], sent Mughal captives to Dihlī, which caused such rejoicing.

The Tabakat-i-Akbari says “Sher Khān sustained a defeat at the hands of the Sindīs,” and Firīghtah copies with some blunders of his own; but, as the first mentioned work agrees in every other respect with our author’s statements here, “the banks of the Sind” have, evidently, been mistaken for Sindīān.

¹ A few copies of the text, but of the more modern ones, including the best Paris MS., have “Sher Khān had retired from an engagement with the infidels of Sind”—كار ساسند—‘l-ṣarāṣṣ— but those words appear to be a mistake for in the translation above.

² Our author, in the next Section, says nothing about this movement towards Üchchah and Multān, merely that the fief of Tabarhindah was assigned to him, and that previously [subsequently?] he held the office of Wakil-i-Dar. He joined Ulugh Khān from Tabarhindah, when the latter marched from Nāg-awr to oust ‘Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān from power.

In the account of Malik Balbān it is stated that he, having been ousted from
Sultan [with his forces] retired from the banks of the Biäh⁴, and, in the same manner, returned to the capital.

**Ninth Year: 652 H.**

When the year 652 H. commenced, the river Jün was passed, and, in the vicinity of the Koh-pāyah [skirt of the mountains] of Bardār and Bijnor⁴ many successes were gained, and vast booty acquired.

Üchchah by Sher Khān, who had previously obtained possession of Multān, went to Court and was made feudatory of Budāʿūn, and that, subsequent to this, hostility having arisen between Sher Khān and the Malikṣ of the Court, Sher Khān left the country and retired into Turkistān, but no battle whatever is referred to. Subsequently—previous to the year 655 H., in 653 H. or 654 H.—Malik Balban had been again put in charge of Üchchah and Multān, and had made overtures to Hulākū Khān, the Mughal, who ruled over I-rān on the part of his brother, the Great Kaʿān, Mangū, and had asked for a Mughal Shāhnah, or Commissioner.

In the account of Malik Sher Khān on the other hand, our author states that the reason, why Sher Khān retired towards Upper Turkistān to proceed to the urdu of Mangū Kaʿān, was, that, when his cousin, Ulugh Khan, was banished from the Court through 'Imad-ud-Din-i-Rayhān's intrigues, and proceeded to Nāg-awr, strife went on between the cousins on the banks of the Sind.

In the account of Ulugh Khān, the march towards the upper provinces in 650 H. is mentioned when the Rayhānī plot took place, but no reference whatever is made to Sher Khān's retirement, nor to any fighting. Under any circumstances Sher Khān could not have remained long absent from Hind, as he joined the Sultan's brother, Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Masʿūd Shāh, in 652 H., at Lāhor, which territory, a fact to which I have before drawn attention, appears to have been then severed from the sovereignty of Dihli. There is a great deal of mystery about Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Masʿūd Shāh's movements, but further mention of him, with reference to the Mughals, in the last Section, will throw some more light upon them.

³ It must be borne in mind that all the references in these pages to the Biäh, and the banks of the Biäh, refer to that river when it flowed in its own bed which ran about midway through the Bārī Dō-ab, and Shamāli Kachhī Dō-ab, and joined the other rivers of the Panjāb ten miles north of Üchchah: otherwise, to advance to the Biäh as it now flows, to operate against Multān and Üchchah, would be of no more effect than advancing to the Gang or Jūn for the purpose. I shall have to refer to its change of bed farther on.

⁴ As in all the copies of the text—Bijnor and Bijnor [the Bijnour of the Indian Atlas]. It is a place of considerable antiquity, with many ruins still to be seen.

The very "candid" writer, our author, makes no other mention of this affair in the account of Ulugh Khān—in fact, it is not even alluded to. The Tabākāt-i-Akbārī, however, refers to it, but is evidently quite at sea as to the geography, as I shall clearly prove. That work states, that, in 652 H., the Sultan "marched an army into the boundaries of the Koh-pāyah [skirt of the
On Thursday, the 13th of the month of Muharram of this year, the river Gang was crossed [by the Sultan and his troops] in front of Mia-pūr, and in the same manner, keeping along the skirt of the mountains, the force proceeded as far as the banks of the river Rahab. During these holy expeditions, on Sunday, the 15th of the month of Safar, at Tiklah-Bānī, Malik Rāzi-ul-Mulk, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Durmāshī [Durmāshānī ?], attained martyrdom. On mountains of Bijnor, and, having obtained great booty, crossed the river Gang at the Mia-pūr [another MS. Mahā-pūr] ferry, and, keeping along the skirt of the mountains, reached the river Bihat [which is the Jhilam];” and that, “at Talkah-mānī—[another MS. تخله مائي], on Sunday, the 15th of Safar, of that year [652 H.], Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Rāzi-ul-Mulk, whilst in a state of intoxication [?] was martyred by the Zamīndārs of Kaithal and Kuḥrām. The Sultan, to avenge his blood, having gone to Kaithal and Kuḥrām, inflicted chastisement upon the contumacious of that part, and then proceeded towards Budāūn,” &c. If any one will take the trouble to look at a map, it will be at once seen what utter absurdity this is, and what ignorance it displays. The author of that work evidently wrote without attending to the geography, and has mistaken Kāthheher for Kaithal—had he not added Kuḥrām by way of riveting his blunder, I should have imagined Kaithal an error of the copyist—and so made a precious hash of the two expeditions, and made one of them, as well as mistaking a place situated in Lat. 29° 49', Long. 76° 28', for another—a tract of country—more than three degrees farther east. Firighthā follows, implicitly, thus proving that, in this instance certainly, he did not see our author’s work. He, however, leaves out the name of Tiklah-Bānī altogether. The simple mention of Budāūn should have been sufficient to have guided the author of the first work to Kāthheher, or —Kāthheher, as it is also written.

1 In the original تخله مائي. In some copies Tiklah-Mānī تخله مائي, Tiklah or Talkah-Bānī تخله مائي, Tiklah-Bānī تخله مائي, Talklah-Pānī تخله مائي, and also Sakah-Mānī تخله مائي. The first mentioned is contained in the majority of the best copies. The identification of places is very difficult in the Indian Atlas sheets, as well as in other less valuable maps, from the manner in which the names of places are written. For example, in Sheet No. 67, the word Tilak, in the name Tilak-pūr, is written Tīlok-poor, Tīlak-poor, Tīlōk-poor, and the like, according to the fancy of the different surveyors or engravers. In my humble opinion, in the case of survey maps, at least, the local name, written in the vernacular, should be first obtained, and then, after transliteration, inserted in the map, the long and short vowels being properly marked, as well as guttural, nasal, aspirated, and other peculiar, letters, and then the public would not be at the mercy of Gazetteer writers and their crude theories. A recent article in the Bengal Asiatic Journal, No. iv. of 1874, by Mr. F. L. Growse, is very much to the point.

There is a place called Tigree Barchnee in the sheet referred to in Lat. 29°, Long. 79° 40'; what the vernacular may be I cannot tell.

4 That most absurd blunder, whereby an innocent man is turned into a drunkard, occurs in the above passage. The author of the Ṭabakat-i-Akbarī read the word درميشي—Durmašī [which signifies that he was a native of...
the following day, the 16th of Safar, the Sultan of Islam, in order to avenge that act, inflicted such a chastisement upon the infidels of Kātheher as [the people of] that territory will remember for the rest of their lifetime, and [afterwards] departed towards Budāʾūn; and, on Thursday, the 19th of the month of Safar, the district of Budāʾūn became adorned with the magnificence and dignity of his auspicious canopy of state and sublime standards. The Sultan halted there for nine days, and, after that, decided upon a return to the capital.

On Sunday, the 6th of the month of Rabiʿ-ul-Awwal, the Wazārat-i-Mamālik 7 [Wazir-ship of the realm] fell to the charge, for the second time, of the Sadr-ul-Mulk, Najm-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr; and, on Sunday, the 20th of Rabiʿ-ul-Awwal, within the limits of Kol, the Sultan honoured this vassal of the dynasty [the author] with the title of Sadr-i-Jahān—*the Almighty long preserve him in the sovereignty!*—and, on Saturday 8, the 26th of Rabiʿ-ul-Awwal, the capital, Dihli, was reached.

The Sultan continued at Dihli for a period of five
months, when information arrived respecting the assembly of the Maliks who had gathered about Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh [the Sultan's brother]. The sublime standards, accordingly], in the month of Sha'bān, moved towards Sunām and Tabarhindah, and the 'Id-i-Fiṭr [the festival at the end of the Fast Month—Ramażān] was celebrated at Sunām. The forces of the Maliks, namely, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast, of Tabarhindah, Malik Saif-ud-Din, Bat Khān, I-bak, the Khiṭā-i, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'żam from Nāg-awr, were along with Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, in the neighbourhood of Tabarhindah. The Sultan [with the forces of his party] left Sunām and retired to Hānsī, and those Maliks moved towards Kuhrām and Kaithal. The Sultan [on this] marched from Hānsī [8th of Shawwāl] in the same direc-

1 The inscription over the entrance of the mināraḥ at 'Ali-gur [Anglicized, Allygurh] is dated 10th of Rajab of this same year, and in it is said to occur the name of Malik-ul-Kahr-ul-Mu'azza, Kutluğ Khān, Balban-ush-Shamsi, which has been ascribed, by Thomas [PATHĀN KINGS, pages 129-30], to Ulugh Khān, but "the amiable king" never bestowed upon Ulugh Khān the title of Kutluğ Khān according to the records in this work. Our author says this was the title by which Nasīr-ud-Din's step-father was known, and by no other name is he mentioned in these pages, and he bore that title for a long time after. See under the events of the next year. The name probably refers to the person who held the fief when the mināraḥ was erected.

2 Further details of this outbreak will be found in the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section. It was the occasion upon which the Sultan's brother, Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, is said to have gone to the camp of Mangū Kā'ān, son of Tūlī, son of Chingiz, but our author makes a mystery of it. More about this will be mentioned farther on.

3 See the Malik No. XIX. in the next Section.

4 The Malik No. XVI. in the following Section is referred to. This title or by-name is often mentioned in the accounts of the Turks.

5 This affair probably led the author of the Tabakat-i-Akbari astray, and to mistake Kaithal, when Kātheher was meant. See ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 354. A slight skirmish did actually take place, and the greatest confusion arose in the Sultan's camp. The particulars of this affair will be found in the account of Ulugh Khān farther on, under its proper date. Firishtah, but not the Tabakat-i-Akbarī, brings Malik Sher Khān upon the scene here. Sher Khān does not appear to have had anything to do with this matter. See the account of him in next Section.
tion. A party of Amirs now interposed between the two personages [the Sultan and Jalal-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh], and spoke words of peace, and 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān was the cause of discord on both sides, until, on Saturday, the 22nd of Shāwwal of this same year, the Sultān of Islām commanded that 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān should be sent to Budā'ūn, and that that territory should be his fief; and that accommodation was effected.

On Tuesday, the 17th of the month of Zi-Ka'dah, after vows, pledges, and stipulations, Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, and the whole of the Amirs and Maliks presented themselves, and [the province of] Lohor became the fief of Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh; and, attended by security and felicity, the Sultān and his forces entered the capital city of Dihli, under a fortunate star, on Tuesday, the 9th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah—May Almighty God ever adorn the

6 The original—yi $° +» ५८०० as above. The persons referred to are the Sultan and his brother, but Ulugh Khān was also concerned. Compare Elliot also here.

7 "Wednesday" is utterly impossible, if Tuesday is the 17th of Zi-Ka'dah. In the account of Ulugh Khān it is said the 22nd of Shāwwal was Saturday.

8 This is the first time Lahor has been referred to as a fief since it was taken by the Mughals in 639 H. It was still in ruins, and was not rebuilt until some time after. Some authors state that Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, held Lāhor independent of the Dihli kingdom, and that he was countenanced by the Mughals. More on this subject will be found in the last Section. Even above it is not said that Lahor was conferred upon him; merely that it became his fief.

In the account of Sher Khān in the next Section, it is stated that, on his return with honour from the urdu of the Great Kā'ān, Mangū Khān, in Tūrān [this shows the state of the Dihli kingdom, when even Ulugh Khān's own cousin went to the Mughal Court], he, Sher Khān, joined Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn; but there it is stated that contention arose between the latter and Sher Khān at last, that Jalāl-ud-Dīn retired in disappointment, and that his dependents and followers fell into the hands of Sher Khān's followers. This however, it must be borne in mind, had nothing whatever to do with these events, and happened a year or two afterwards. Sher Khān then endeavoured to recover Tabarhindah from the feudatory, Malik Taj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, but he, having sallied out to encounter him, Sher Khān had to withdraw. Swift messengers were sent after him from Dihli, and pledges were entered into [to induce him not to retire to the Mughals probably], and he was induced to proceed to Dihli, whither the feudatory of Tabarhindah was also summoned. The latter was sent to govern the fief of Awadh, and Sher Khān received back all the frontier fiefs he had previously held. Contention, however, again went on between him and Malik Balban-i-Kashū Khān as before, Tabarhindah and its dependencies were conferred upon another Malik, Nusrat Khān, Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Sunkār, and Sher Khān obtained another fief, as stated in note 7, page 713, and note 8, page 714, which see.
THE SHAMSIAH SULTANS OF HIND.

sublime standards of the Sultan with the emblems of victory for the sake of his illustrious Prophet!

TENTH YEAR: 653 H.

When the new year of 653 H. came round, an uncommon thing happened, and it was on this wise, that the decrees of destiny suffered the blessed heart of the Sultan to change towards his mother, the Malikah-i-Jahan; and, as she was married [a second time] to Kutlugh Khan, command was given to both of them that Awadh should be their fief, and that they should proceed to it. In conformity with this command, they repaired to their fief; and this circumstance happened on Tuesday, the 6th of the month of Muharram of this year.

When the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal came round, on Sunday, the 23rd of the same month, the Sultan of Islam,—May his sovereignty continue!—entrusted to the charge of this servant of the state, Minhaj-i-Saraj, under the same covenant as on a previous occasion, the Kazi-ship of the realm and jurisdiction over the capital city, Dilli.

There appears to have been some secrecy with respect to this match, and it is on account of the proceedings of the Sultan's mother and her second husband that he is excluded from the account of the great Maliks. Compare Elliot here also.

Some time previous to this period, but when or in what year is not stated,—more than between the beginning of Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah's reign, and the putting to death of Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, the Ghuri, in the middle of 653 H.—Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Yuz-Bak-i-Tughril Khan, who had previously held the fief of Kinnauj, having showed a rebellious spirit, Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, the Ghuri, was sent against him, and he succeeded in bringing Malik Yuz-Bak to the capital. The latter was then appointed to the charge of the fief of Awadh, and, subsequently, that of Lakhanawati was conferred upon him. Hostility arose between him and the infidels of Jaj-nagar who renewed their attempts against the Lakhanawati territory. Malik Yuz-Bak was at first unsuccessful against them, but, at last, he penetrated into their country, and appeared before its capital. After this success, Malik Yuz-Bak, who was continually acting contumaciously towards the Court, assumed three canopies of state, invaded Awadh, and assumed the title of Sultun Mughis-ud-Din. The kingdom of Dihil appears to have been in such a state of disorder that its ruler was powerless to oust him from Lakhanawati; and, subsequently, Malik Yuz-Bak invaded Kam-rud, but was defeated and taken prisoner, and died. Further particulars will be found in the next Section, but our author gives not a single date, and his accounts differ considerably.
In the month of Rabī‘-ul-Ākhīr, they conveyed to the hearing of the Sultān a remark from Malik Ḳutb-ud-Ḍīn, Ḥusain, son of ‘Alī, the Ghūrī, who was Nāyab [Lieutenant] of the kingdom, which was contrary to the sublime opinion, and, on Tuesday, the 23rd of Rabī‘-ul-Ākhīr, he cited Malik Ḳutb-ud-Ḍīn, Ḥusain, and ordered him to be arrested and imprisoned; and that Malik obtained martyrdom.—Almighty God long preserve the monarch of Ṣułṭān!

On Monday, the 7th of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, the fief of Mīrāth was assigned to Malik Kāshlī Khān, Saif-ud-Ḍīn, I-bak, the Sultānī Shamsi, Ulugh Kūṭlugh-i-A‘zam, the Bār-Bak [the full brother of Ulugh Khān-i-A‘zam], after he had presented himself at court subsequent to his return from Karārah—The Almighty’s mercy be upon him! On Tuesday, the 13th of the sacred month of Rājāb of this same year, the office of Shaikh-ul-Ṣułṭān [patriarch] of the capital was consigned to that Bāyīzīd of the age, the Shaikh-ul-Ṣułṭān, Jamāl-ud-Ḍīn, the Bustāmī; and, in this

---

1 See the List at page 673 for his full titles.
2 This is another of our author’s mysteries and suppressions of facts. In his account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section, he says Ulugh Khān was made Nāyab or Deputy of the kingdom, in 647 H., soon after his daughter was espoused by the Sultān. On the banishment of Ulugh Khān to his fief of Nāg-awr in 650-51 H., through ‘Imād-ud-Ḍīn-i-Rayhān’s machinations, he was, of course, deprived of his office; but, neither under this reign, nor in the account of Ulugh Khān, is it stated whom Ulugh Khān succeeded in that office, or who succeeded him; but, from the statement above, it is evident that Malik Ḳutb-ud-Ḍīn, Ḥusain, was made Nāyab when Ulugh Khān was sent to Nāg-awr, and that he held the office up to this time. From what is mentioned about Malik Ḳutb-ud-Ḍīn, Ḥusain, in the account of Ulugh Khān, where the latter’s return to Court is detailed, and ‘Imād-ud-Ḍīn-i-Rayhān’s banishment, at the end of the year 652 H., it is also evident that the former—he was no slave either, but a free-born Ghūrī noble of royal descent—held a high position in the state, second only to the Sultān himself. His fate evidently was connected, in some way, with the Kūṭlugh or Rayhānī factions, from what is mentioned respecting the occurrences of this year, in the account of Ulugh Khān: or, he may have merely been in the way of Ulugh Khān’s ambition, for, immediately after he was got rid of, his extensive fief of Mīrāth was given to Ulugh Khān’s brother.
3 “Upon his coming from Karra to pay his respects to the Sultān.” Elliot: vol. ii. page 354.
4 He died in 657 H.
5 Bustām is the name of a celebrated town in Khurāsān, of which Jamāl-ud-Ḍīn was a native, hence he is styled Bustāmī, and Shaikh Abū-Yazīd or Hāyāzīd is the name of the saint who has made Bustām so famous among Musalmāns. Some write the word Bustām. See page 419.
month likewise, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Sanjar, the Sihwastānī⁷, managed to get out of Awadh, and ousted 'lmād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān from Bhārā'īj, and he departed on a journey from this world. In the month of Shawkāl of this year likewise, the Sultān with his forces departed from the capital towards Hindūstān [i.e. east of the Jūn]; and, on Sunday, the 17th of the month of Zī-Ḵa’dash, Ulugh Khān-i-A’zām set out for Hānsī for the purpose of organizing the affairs of the Siwālikh contingent, and, having got those troops ready, returned to the capital, Dihlī, with them⁸; and, on Wednesday, the 19th of the month of Zī-Ḥijjah, at the close of this year, he joined the royal camp [with his contingent].

Previous to this a peremptory command had been issued that Malik Ṭuktūlugh Khān [the Sultan's step-father] should leave the province of Awadh, and proceed to the fief of Bhārā'īj, and he had not obeyed that mandate; and Malik Bak-Tamūr, the Ruknī, was directed to proceed from the capital with a force and expel him [from Awadh]. The forces on either side came in contact in the neighbourhood of Budā‘ūn¹, and Malik Bak-Tamūr was martyred. On this, the Sultān with his forces set out towards Awadh for the purpose of remedying this mishap; and, on his arrival in that part, Malik Ṭuktūlugh Khān retired before him, and the

⁷ There are three Maliks mentioned in the next Section bearing a similar name and title, one Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kuret Khān, another, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Ṭez Khān, who lived in this reign, and, at this period, held the fief of Budā‘ūn, and a third, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, but the Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Sanjar, here referred to, must be a totally different person, and is not mentioned among those in the next Section. See also note ⁴, page 704.

⁸ In the account of Ulugh Khān he is styled Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Māhpešānī [of the moon-like brow]. “Out of the city of Awadh”—the ancient capital—is here meant, where he was confined. Further particulars will be found under Ulugh Khān, which see. Firāštah, who certainly did not obtain the names of persons from our author, turns him into Taj-ud-Dīn, the Turk.

¹ On the 3rd of the month, Zī-Ḥijjah. In Mūḥarram, the first month of the year 654 H., the army reached the frontier of Awadh.

⁹ In some copies this name appears Bak-tamūr—但这 it is an error. What appears the long stroke of ك is merely the way in which some writers, writing quickly, would write ك—Bak-Tamūr; but the I. H. L. MS., R. A. S. MS., and Paris MB, have ركين or ركين Ruknī refers to Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, in whose reign this Malik was raised to that dignity, probably. He is styled Malik Bak-Tamūr-i-Aor Khān in the next Section.

¹ It is said, in the next Section, that they met at Samrā-ḵū.
Sultan moved towards Kālair. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam [with a part of the army] followed in pursuit of Malik Kutlugh Khān, but did not meet with him, and, with great booty, he rejoined the Sultan's [camp].

**Eleventh Year: 654 H.**

When the new year, 654 H., came round, the Sultan's forces, in the month of Muḥarram, 654 H., having achieved that success, attended with felicity and victory, and aided by the protection of the Creator Most High, the Sultan turned his face towards Dihlī, and, on Tuesday, the 4th of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir, 654 H., the capital was reached.

When Malik Kutlugh Khān became aware that the Sultan's forces had retired towards the capital, he began to appropriate the territories of Karah and Mānikpūr, and between him and [the feudatory] Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast, a conflict took place, but the victory remained with Arsalān Khān. As it became impracticable for Malik Kutlugh Khān to make further resistance in Hindiṣtan, he determined to move upwards [towards the Biah and Lāhor] through the border tracts, and proceeded in the direction of

---

* The name of this place is doubtful in all copies of the text, but is written Kāler or Kālair—in the most trustworthy copies. The probability is that it refers to a few miles north-east of Rūrkī. It is the remains of an ancient city. In some copies of the text the word is Kālinjar, but, of course, the celebrated stronghold of that name is not, and cannot be, referred to. In the account of Ulugh Khān, in the next Section, the scene of these events is said to have been near the frontier of Tirhut.

* Near Kasmandah, or Kasmandī, for it is written in both ways, on the 16th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal.

* It was a great success, certainly, not to catch a rebel.

* Two Maliks living at this time, whose names and titles are somewhat similar, and are thereby liable to be mistaken one for the other—one, Taj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān; the other, Taj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast. The first-mentioned became Wakfill-i-Dar and feudatory of Buda’īn in 654 H. He was, subsequently, sent against Kutlugh Khān, but had to retreat; and, some time after, the sīf of Awadh was conferred upon him. The latter had married the daughter of Sultan Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughrīl, the Mu'īzī [see page 544], and had great interest. When Malik Sher Khān retired from Sindh and Tabarhindah, Arsalān Khān was sent to Tabarhindah. He was afterwards sent against Kutlugh Khān, when feudatory of Awadh, and was more successful, and compelled Kutlugh Khān's faction to disperse. This is what is referred to above. See Maliks, Nos. XVII. and XIX., next Section.
Santur, and sought shelter among the independent [Hindu] tribes. The Sultan with his forces moved from the capital, Dihli, on Monday, the 20th of Zi-Hijjah, to quell this sedition of his; and, as the new year, 655 H., came round, the army, in that year, marched towards Santur.

6 See the account of Ulugh Khan, in the next Section, respecting Santur.
7 There is not a word about "the highlands" here, as given in Elliot [vol. ii. page 355]. The word مواس is made a tract of country in that work! The words are مواس and موان (var. ستوور: ستور). The former is probably موار, and the hills the Aravalli mountains. Briggs says there is a town called Santpur, near Abü. Thornton has a "Santoo, eighty-four miles S.S.W. from Jodhpur"! Where will they lead us next? They are entirely out, however, both in their latitude and longitude here, only about five degrees too far W. and S.!! Where "Mewar"? Where the Himalayah mountains? Perhaps "Bahadur" is near "Jodhpur" also. Firishtah turns ستور into جیتور—and جیتپور—Joit-pur—or, rather, the "revised text" of Briggs does. Dow has سیمروار, as in the Tabakat-i-Akbari, which proves that the MS. of Firishtah used by him was correct, for ستور in a MS. might be read, by a person not knowing what place was referred to, ستور. The "revised" text of Firishtah might be revised from other MSS. of that work with much advantage.

There is some difficulty with respect to the exact meaning which our author desired to convey by the word مواس—mawas—here, and مواسات used elsewhere. The latter word seems as if intended for the plural form of it, according to 'Arabic ideas or, otherwise, for the 'Arabic word signifying "society," "neighbourhood," "fellowship," &c. There is also a Hindi word written in the same way—مواس—meaning "refuge," "protection," "retreat," "asylum," and the like, which might be used here: but, from the way in which the second form of the word, viz. مواسات is used in the account of Ulugh Khan, and in other places farther on, respecting these events, both words evidently refer to neighbouring independent Hindû tribes and the tracts they dwelt in, adjoining the Dihli territory, but not under the sway of the Dihli kings, and as such I shall use the word here.

The country of the Mews or Mewras is certainly not meant, for Mewar is too far south-west. The events here recorded happened in and around the Upper Do-âb, in and near the lower ranges of the Himalayah mountains, as far east as the district of Tirhût, and as far as the Bâhn on the west.

I have in my possession detailed geographical accounts of these tracts, but neither of the words used in the text is mentioned. There is a possibility that the name مواس is local, but, at the same time, there seems but little doubt of their being the same, or one among the aboriginal Hindu tribes, referred to in Dalton's Ethnology [pages 154, 221, 230, 231, 280], and in the Bom. Geogr. Journal, II. of 1855, under the name of Muasîns, which is used like the term گیووار—gâwar—by some native writers, applied to a nomad people of Hindustan.

8 These are the events of the next year, not of 654 H. In the account of Ulugh Khan it is stated that the Sultan's troops only began their march in the third month of 655 H.
and hostilities were commenced between the forces of Islam and the Hindūs of the Koh-pāyah [skirt of the hills]. Kutlugh Khān was among that people; and a party among the Musalmān Amīrs, who were apprehensive, through being falsely accused, joined him, but, as they had not the power to withstand [the Sultan’s troops], they consequently turned their backs [and retired], and Ulugh Khān-i-A’zam, by stroke of sword, turned that mountain tract upside down, and pushed on through passes and defiles to Silmūr [i.e., Sirmīr], and devastated the Koh-i-Silmūr [the hill tract of Sirmīr], and waged holy war as by the faith enjoined, over which tract no sovereign had acquired power, and which no Musalmān army had ever before reached, and caused such a number of villainous Hindū rebels to be slain as cannot be defined nor numbered, nor be contained in record nor in narration. 

TWELFTH YEAR: 655 H.

After withdrawing from thence [the hill tract of Sirmīr], on Sunday, the 6th of Rabi’-ul-Awwal, 655 H., Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ban Khān, I-bak, the Khitā-i, sustained a fall from his horse and died from the effects of the injuries he sustained, and the Sultan’s forces turned their faces towards the capital, and, on Sunday, the 26th of the month of Rabī-ul-Ākhīr, he reached the illustrious seat of government, Dihlī.

9 The Sub-Himālayah is here meant, not the hills of Mewāt.

1 This is rendered in ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 356] “a party of nobles in the royal army, &c., went and joined them,” as if they deserted from the Sultan’s army. The text, however, will not admit of this rendering, and the words are तराय सदै सलम सम जमीद कबाच पूजाय The Musalmān Amīrs were not with the royal forces at this time. See under Ulugh Khān.

2 In a few of the more modern copies of the text Kāshab—town is used instead of Koh—mountain, hill-tract, &c. Silmūr and Sirmīr is one and the same thing. The chief town bore that name as well as the tract of country. For further particulars respecting this part, see the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section. There the Hisār—fortress, or fortified town—of Silmūr is mentioned.

3 It was on the last day of Shawwāl of this year, although some say the following day—the 1st of of Zī-Ka’dah—that Rukn-ud-Dīn, Khūr Shah, the last of the Mulāḥidāh rulers of Alamūt, came down from his stronghold of Maimūn-Dujz and presented himself before Hūlākū Khān, the Mughal.

4 It was the 25th according to the statement in the account of Ulugh Khān, which see.
On the return of the victorious forces, Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, who, with the troops of Čuchchah and Multān, was [then] in the neighbourhood of the banks of the river Biāh, advanced still farther [north-eastwards], and Malik Kūtlugh Khān, and those Amirs who were in combination with him, joined Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, and advanced to the limits of Manṣūr-pūr and Samānah ⁶. When information of the movement of this faction came to the sublime hearing, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam with the troops was appointed [to march against them], and, on Thursday, the 15th of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 655 H., he moved from the capital ⁷.

When Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the forces under him, arrived near unto the army of the faction, so that between the two armies about ten kūrōh [about 18 miles] distance remained, a party at the capital, such as the Shaikh-ul-Islām [patriarch], Jamāl-ul-Din, the Sayyid, Kūṭb-ul-Din, and Kāżi Shams-ul-Din, the Bharā'iji, wrote letters secretly, and despatched them to Malik Kūtlugh Khān and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān [urging them] to come to the capital, and that they would give up the gates [of the city] to them; and every one within the city they were getting to pledge their support to this movement, ⁵

This advance was made with an object, as will appear in the account of Ulugh Khān.

Kūtlugh Khān and his faction, skirting the lower range of the Himālayah, advanced towards the Biāh, keeping north of Sirhind, and Balban-i-Kashlū Khān moved up from the Multān district to meet him, along the banks of the Biāh—which, at that period, from our author's remark in his account of Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, was the boundary of the Dihli kingdom. It flowed in its old bed at this period. See remarks on the "Lost River" in last Section.

Our author's account here differs considerably from that given in his notice of Ulugh Khān, and that again differs, in a great measure, from the other two in his notice of Balban-i-Kashlū Khān. Under Ulugh Khān, our author states that, when he, with his troops, drew near to the rebels in the vicinity of Kaithal, on the 15th of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, certain persons at the capital wrote letters, &c.

He is again turned into his namesake, Balban, by Firīštah, who styles him ۸ 'Izz-ul-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān. The title of his namesake, however, was 'Izz-ul-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān. Ulugh Khān never went by the title of 'Izz-ul-Din. The Tāḥakūt-i-Akbarī, which copies from our author, is perfectly correct, but Firīštah imagines that "Kashlū [not Kashlī] Khān, Hākim of Sind" and 'Izz-ul-Din, Balban, was another person altogether, and makes two persons of him in nearly every instance throughout his account of this reign.
and were entering into compacts, and making stipulations with them. Certain loyal informants [however] wrote intimation of this sedition to Ulugh Khan-i-Aʿzam who, in consequence of this treason, from his camp, imparted information to the sublime Court respecting the fact of this disaffection on the part of a party of turban-wearers' [priest-hood], and requested, in the event of its being expedient in the sublime opinion, that a royal mandate should be issued by his Majesty unto them to the effect that those [among them] who held fiefs in the neighbourhood of the capital should repair to their respective fiefs, and that their return to the city again should be prohibited, by his Majesty's command, until that sedition should be quelled.

On Sunday, the 2nd of Jamādi-ul-Ākhīr, 655 H., the mandate was issued that the Sayyid Kuṭb-ub-Din, the Shaikh-ul-Islām, Jamāl-ud-Din, and Ẓābi Ṣhams-ud-Din, Bharaʾi, should proceed to their fiefs.

On their letters from the capital having reached Malik Kutlugh Khan and Malik 'Īzz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khan, they, at once, without the least delay, marched from their position, with the whole of their forces, and pushed on towards Dihlī. This forced march of theirs upon the capital, from their camp near Samānah, was begun on Monday, the 3rd of the month of Jamādi-ul-Ākhīr, and they pushed on with such celerity that they marched a distance of one hundred kuroh [about 180 miles] in two days and a half; and, on Thursday, the 6th of Jamādi-ul-Ākhīr, they alighted at the Bagh-i-Jūd [the Jūd Garden]. The next morning, at dawn, after morning

9 Compare Elliot [vol. ii. pages 356, 357] here does not mean "nobles."

1 How is it possible that the hostile Maliks could have started on the 3rd of Jamādi-ul-Ākhīr, even if the information sent by the loyal party arrived the same day as that in which the letters of the turban-wearers reached the hostile camp? Ulugh Khan had to despatch the news to the Sultān, at Dihlī, and he had to issue his mandate to expel them; and this, our author says, he did on the 2nd of Jamādi-ul-Ākhīr—the day before the letters from the different partisans reached the respective camps! These two dates cannot both be correct.

2 The printed text here has a typographical error of 'ṣ for ṣ which is immediately after printed correctly, and the name occurs in a number of places in this Section and the next. In consequence of this slight mistake, this sentence is rendered in Elliot [vol. ii. page 357]—"they alighted at their
prayers, they made for the city gate, and made a circuit in the vicinity of the capital, and, at night, pitched their camp in the suburbs of Dihli, between the Bāgh-i-Jūd, and Gilū-khāri, and the city.

When those Maliks and [their] forces, in expectation of the fulfilment of the promise [contained] in those letters, reached the Bāgh-i-Jūd, the favour of Almighty God was such that, two days previous to their arrival, the party disaffected had been sent away from the city; and, when those [hostile] Maliks became aware of their story, their proceedings became suspended, and a command had issued from the Sultān’s court, so that they [the authorities] secured the city gates; and, as the [royal] troops were absent from it, they made dispositions for defence. The Amir-ul-Ḥujjāb [Lord or Head of the Chamberlains] 'Alā-ud-Din, son of Ayāz, the Zinjānī, and the Deputy Amir-i-Ḥājib, and the Ulugh Koṭwāl-Bak [the great Lord, the Seneschal], Jamāl-ud-Din, the Nīshāpūrī, with the Diwān-i-Āriż-i-Mamālīk [Muster-Master of the Kingdom], that same night, in organizing the fighting men for the defence of the city, greatly distinguished themselves, and Amirs, heads of families, and respectable persons, were appointed to the ramparts.

gardens [plural] (outside the city),” &c. Immediately under, the same is repeated in the text, but printed correctly—‘‘جمن’’—but, in ELLIOT, Bāgh-i-Jūd is discarded altogether, and the words “gardens on the Jamna” are substituted, and the editor adds, in a note:—‘‘the text has ‘Jūd,’ which I take to be a mistake for ‘Jumna!’” When our author is perfectly correct he is, in this manner, made out to be wrong.

From its situation, the Jiūd Bāgh is probably that which now goes by the name of the Bāgh-i-Shālīmār, some distance W. of the old city of Dihli. This affair will be found much more detailed in the account of Malik Balbān-i-Kashlı Khan, and of Ulugh Khān, farther on, and the Jiūd Garden is again referred to.

1 There is nothing about walls in this part of the sentence.

4 In ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 357]—“they became very cautious in their proceedings,” &c. The original word ‘‘جا’’ here signifies delaying, suspending, retarding, &c.

5 He had succeeded, as Deputy of Ulugh Khān’s brother, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashlı Khān, who had been sent to the fief of Mīrāṭh after Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, the Ghūrī, had been got rid of.

6 Malik Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Sunkar, the Rūmī, feudatory of Bhānāh, also reached the capital with a body of troops, and this timely aid tended to the security of the city. As usual with our author, he gives part of the details here, but retains the greater part of the particulars for his account of Balbān-i-Kashlı Khān, and Ulugh Khān, which see.
When the morning of Friday [the 7th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir] dawned, God Almighty prepared a pleasure [for them], and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kašlū Khan, proposed to retire. The other Maliks along with the Sultān's mother, the Malikah-i-Jahān, when they perceived that his intention was to be abandoned, all concurred in retiring. The greater portion of their following [however] did not accompany them at the time of their withdrawal, and took up their quarters in the vicinity of the city, and many of the great and notable persons among them sought to be admitted to terms, and presented themselves before the sublime court; and those [disaffected] Maliks retired towards the Siwālikh [territory] foiled in their objects.

When information of their intention [to march against Dihli, previously related] reached Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and the [other] Maliks and Amirs of the royal army, they moved from the position they were then in, and pressed forward towards the capital, until, when they arrived near unto it, the state of affairs became manifest to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and he reached the capital again, safely, prosperously, victoriously, and triumphantly, on the 14th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir—May Almighty God perpetuate the sovereignty of this dynasty, and make lasting the fortune and power of this Khan-ship, and preserve the people of Islām, through His illustrious Prophet Muḥammad!

Subsequently to these events, on Wednesday, the 8th of the blessed month of Ramażān of this year, the masnad of the Wazir-ship was entrusted to the Ziya-ul-Mulk, Taj-ud-Dīn, with the title of Nizām-ul-Mulk, and the masnad of the [office of] Ashrāf-i-Mamālik was committed to the

---

7 That is, they presented themselves to make their submission, after terms were entered into, and do homage to the Sultān. In the account of Malik Balban-i-Kašlū Khan, in the next Section, it is said that only 200 or 300 followers accompanied him on his retreat.

8 The Siwālikh has been previously described.

9 Without even a skirmish having taken place between them! So much for our "candid and conscientious narrator."

In the account of Ulugh Khān the date is the 10th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir.

1 No further notice of Kutlugh Khān and his wife, the Sultān's mother, occurs throughout this work, although our author, no doubt, was well aware of their fate; and it is not recorded anywhere else. They probably retired within the Muḥṣal dominions, or remained with Kašlū Khan in Sind.

2 See note 6, page 635, respecting these titles.
The Shamsiah Sultans of Hind.

When the new year came round, and the month of Muharram, 656 h., was entered upon, on Sunday, the 6th of Muharram, the sublime standards moved from the capital for the purpose of making holy war upon and repelling the Mughal infidels, and a camp was formed in sight of the city of Dihli.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that on Wednesday, the 9th of this same month, Hulaki, who was the head of the Mughal infidels [in Irak], fled discomfited before the troops of the Lord of the Faithful, Musta'sim, from the gate of Baghdad.

The Tabakat-i-Akbari dismisses this invasion in a few words, and has: "At the end of this year an army of Mughals came into the territories of Uchchah and Multan, and the Sultan marched to repel them, and the Mughal army retired without fighting, and the Sultan also returned." The "revised" text of Firishtah has this: "an army of Mughals came to Sari and the territories of Uchehah and Multan." The name of the leader has been mistaken for a place, and his rank seemingly for a territory also. He adds, what is neither contained in our author nor in the Tabakat-i-Akbari—"the Sultan brought forth his red tent [pavilion] and pitched it, and after four months, when his forces had assembled, he set out by continuous marches, and, as the Mughals retired without fighting, the Sultan also retired," all of which is totally incorrect, and his own concoction. The Sultan never moved from his capital, nor did the troops either, and there they remained. The Mughals did just what they liked, and ravaged the frontiers of the Dihli kingdom; and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlu Khan, who was independent, all but in name, of the Dihli government, had lately returned from a visit to Huläü [or Hulakü, both being correct] Khan's camp, and was saddled with the presence of a Mughal intendant or commissioner in his territory. See the account of Balban-i-Kashlu Khan and Ulugh Khan farther on.

3 In Zi-Hijjah, the last month of the year.
4 Elliot [vol. ii. page 358]—"at the camp of Sálin-nawír." This leader is styled Sari by our author in the account of Ulugh Khan, and Sáli—r and l being interchangeable—in other places, and by other authors.

The "revised" text of Firishtah has sul iste 5 sey! o's) 3 sy: Jgte SC! which, if correct, shows that writer knew not what he was writing about, for it can only be rendered—"an army of Mughals came to Sari and the territories of Uchehah and Multan." The name of the leader has been mistaken for a place, and his rank seemingly for a territory also. He adds, what is neither contained in our author nor in the Tabakat-i-Akbari—"the Sultan brought forth his red tent [pavilion] and pitched it, and after four months, when his forces had assembled, he set out by continuous marches, and, as the Mughals retired without fighting, the Sultan also retired," all of which is totally incorrect, and his own concoction. The Sultan never moved from his capital, nor did the troops either, and there they remained. The Mughals did just what they liked, and ravaged the frontiers of the Dihli kingdom; and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlu Khan, who was independent, all but in name, of the Dihli government, had lately returned from a visit to Huläü [or Hulakü, both being correct] Khan's camp, and was saddled with the presence of a Mughal intendant or commissioner in his territory. See the account of Balban-i-Kashlu Khan and Ulugh Khan farther on.
When the Sultan's troops issued forth for the purpose of carrying on war against the infidels, Maliks and Amirs, with bodies of troops, were appointed to all parts; and the centre [division] of the Sultan's [own] troops returned to the capital on the 1st of the month of Ramazān, where the Sultan continued for a period of five [seven?] months.

On the 18th of the month of Zī-Hijjah of this same year, the kingdom of Lakhānawatī was conferred upon Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mās'ūd, son of [the late] Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī.

**FOURTEENTH YEAR: 657 H.**

The new year having come round, on Thursday, the 13th of Muharram, 657 H., the Sultan's forces moved for the purpose of carrying on war against the infidels; and, on Sunday, the 21st of the month of Safar, the territories of Bhīānah, Kol, Balarām, and Gwāliyūr were placed in Malik

statement is contained "in all four MSS. used by them," and that it is "contrary to the truth." I can assure them that it is contained in eleven MSS., and more, that, wherever a MS. of the text is found, therein will this statement be found also, and still more, that the statement is perfectly true that the Mughals—the van of Hulāū's army, amounting to 30,000 horse—on approaching the gates of Baghdad on the west side of the Dijlah, were encountered by the Khalīfah's troops under his general Sulīmān Shāh, and other leaders, and repulsed. This was but a temporary success however. Al-Musta'sīm B'ilah, Abū Aḥmad-i-'Abd-ullah, was martyred by the Mughals, together with four of his sons and other members of his family, on the 6th of Safar, 656 H.

Where these bodies of troops were sent may be seen in the account of Ulūgh Khān, and may partly account for the forces of Dihlī, concentrated at the capital, being unable to move against the Mughals.

All the copies of the text have five months, but, from the 6th of Muharram—the first month of the year—mentioned above, to the 1st of Ramazān, is exactly eight months less five days.

In some copies Zī-Ka'dah.

He is styled "Shāh" in some of the best copies of the text, which is certainly redundant, for we nowhere meet with it except for the princes of this dynasty. In the List at the commencement of this reign he is called Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Kūlij Khān, son of the late Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, who is certainly, at page 625, styled Shāh-zādah of Turkistān. In other places the son is called Malik Kūlūgh, Mas'ūd, son of Jānī, and also Kūlij and Kūlīj, Mas'ūd, son of Jānī. See the account of Ulūgh Khān for notice of other discrepancies respecting Lakhānawatī and its governors.

No movement was made, according to this, for a period of four months and twelve days, from the 1st of Ramazān, 656 H. to the 13th of Muharram, 657 H. The infidels referred to were Hindūs, as will appear.
Nusrat-ud-Din, Sher Khan-i-Sunkar’s charge, and the Malik un-Nawwab, I-bak, was nominated to proceed with a force against the infidels of Rantabhur, and the Sultan’s forces returned to the illustrious seat of the kingdom’s glory again.

On Wednesday, the 4th of the month of Jamadi-ul-Akhir of this year, two elephants and some treasure from the territory of Lakhanawati reached the sublime Court; and, on the 6th [26th?] of the aforesaid month, the Shaikh-ul-Islam [Patriarch] of the capital, Jamal-ud-Din, the Buštami died, and on the 24th of the month Każi Kabir-ud-Din departed this life—the Almighty’s mercy be upon them!—and their offices were conferred, with king-like benevolence, upon their sons. In the month of Rajab of this same year, Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak, Kashli Khan-i-Ażam, the Bär-Bak, passed to the eternal mansion of the Most Compassionate, and the office of Amir-i-Ḥājib was assigned to his son, Malik ’Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad. On the 1st of Ramazan, the Imam, Hamid-ud-Din of Mārgalah, died likewise, and his grants, by the royal favour, were confirmed to his sons.

In the account of Malik Sher Khan, and of Ulugh Khan, besides these fiefs, Baltarah, Baltadhah, or Paltarah—for the word is written thus in the best copies of the text—and Mihir and Mahawan, are also said to have been conferred upon him. See note, last para. page 714.

Firishtah, who, of course, knows more than any one else, and is always so correct as I have shown, says, immediately after mentioning the “Sultan’s return from marching against the Mughals”—which was not correct, as shown in the previous note—that the Panjab was entrusted to Sher Khan’s charge, and that Kashli Khan, Ulugh Khan’s brother, got Bhānāh, Kol, Jalisar, and Gwāliyār, which is equally fallacious. The Sultan did not possess the Panjab to give him: the Mughals had overran that part, as will be found farther on. The frontier territory possessed by the Sultan at this period—657 H. [when all Indian Histories suddenly cease from giving any further accounts of the reign, because dependent on our author for them]—was made over to the charge of Malik Nuṣrat Khan, Badr-ud-Din, Sunḳar, the Rūmī, as mentioned in a following note, and he was still stationed in that part, with a considerable body of forces, when our author ended his history.

See the account of Malik Taj-ud-Din, Arsalān Khan, in next Section.

Firishtah, of course, kills the wrong person. He records the death of Malik Ḧa’m, [for Ḧa’m]-ud-Din, Kashšī Khan, who was still living when our author finished his work.

This nephew of Ulugh Khan rose to high rank in his reign, and held the offices his father had held; and his title was ’Alā-ud-Din, Kashšī Khan, Ulugh Ḩulugh-i-Mu’azzam, the Bar-Bak. He was very munificent, a great archer and hunter, and very skillful in the game of Chaugān.

Of Mār-galah in the Panjbā.
After such turmoil, when the prosperity of the state, and the dominion of the great Sultan's kingdom, had its face turned to extension, and all fractures were set and all wounds were alleviated, on the branch of continuity on the stately tree of monarchy, a new flower bloomed, and a tender bud opened, and the ripening fruit grew; and, on the 29th of the month of Ramazān, the abundant grace of the Creator of the Sultānī [imperial] stem, from the illustrious shell of Khānī [the daughter of Ulugh Khan], bestowed a son; and such an amount of favours and benefactions reached both gentle and simple—noble and plebeian—in gratitude for these blessings, as the pen of the record-writer cannot record, nor the breath of the narrator be sufficiently capable of narrating—May the Almighty God ever keep the parterre of sovereignty and garden of dominion adorned with the trees and fruits of continuation!

At the end of the month of Shawwāl of this same year, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān, with a force duly organized and equipped, in accordance with the sublime mandate, reached the capital.

Fifteenth Year: 658 H.

When the new year of 658 H. came in, the sun of sovereignty rose from the horizon of prosperity, and the

1 This son was by Ulugh Khan's daughter, but he did not live long.
2 Our "author's flourishes" seem to have been "greatly compressed" here, in ELLIOT, as well as in the account of the following year.
3 The word άαμ here used signifies—reached, arrived—not returned. He came from Awadh in order to accompany Ulugh Khan in his expedition into the Koh-pāyah; but, in the account of him in the next Section, it is said he arrived at the capital in 658 H., when our author finished his history.

In this year "when all fractures were set," and the Mughals harassing the frontier, Malik Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, the Rūmi, on account of the implicit faith placed in him by the Court, and on account of the continual hostility between Malik Sher Khān, who held Tabarhindah and its dependencies, and Malik Balban-i-Kashlii Khān of Multān and Uchchah, was made feudatory of Tabarhindah, Sunām, Jhajhar, Lakhwāl, and as far as the ferries of the Bāh, and despatched there with a large force. On this occasion, the title of Nusrat Khān was conferred upon him. Sher Khān received the fiefs of Kol and Bhīfānah, Bilarām, Jalīsar, Baltārah, Mihar, and Mahāwān, and the fortress of Gwālliyūr—a very considerable tract of territory. Both Maliks held these fiefs when our author closed his history.
moon of dominion shone forth from the zodiac of happiness.

On the 13th of the month of Safar, the Khan-i-Mu‘azzam, Ulugh Khan-i-A‘zam, marched towards the Koh-payah of Dihli, to put down the violence of the contumacious Mew, of whom a demon would be horrified, and about 10,000 horsemen in defensive armour, warlike and relentless warriors, followed his august stirrup. The next day vast booty, and cattle in great numbers, arrived. He plundered and devastated difficult passes, and attacked strong mountain tracts, and Hindus beyond computation fell beneath the unsparing swords of the holy-warriors.

Since the accomplishment of this History has reached this place, with this holy-warfare, and victory and success conferred by God, it is concluded. Should life be prolonged, and eternity extend the time, and aptitude remain, whatever events may hereafter occur will be recorded.

The hope and reliance of the author on such persons as may look into this Tabakat and into these Annals, and take into consideration these Chronicles and Narrations, or if an atom of these accounts or a hint of these statements should come to their hearing, is, that, if an error, mistake, inadvertency, or omission should enter their

1 Mew, Mewra, or Mewrah, or Mewatīs, a most contumacious race down even to modern times. In Akbar's time they were employed as spies, and Dak runners. The words Mew and Mewra or Mewrah are both singular and plural.

2 There is nothing whatever in the text about "their Deo," nor about "and a large army," as in Elliot [vol. ii. page 359], which compare here. The force consisted of about 10,000 cavalry only.

3 The words کھوہاہی-ہاشم do not signify "strong forts."

4 The details of these operations, but related in quite a different manner, will be found in the account of Ulugh Khan, in the next Section, together with the account of the reception of the emissaries from Khurasan, and the circumstances which led to their coming. These persons certainly came from—or rather returned from—the camp of Hulakī Khan, but they were not envoys from him, nor from the Mughals. Ulugh Khan returned from this expedition on the 24th of Rabī‘ul-Awwal, 658 H., the emissaries from Khurasan were received in the middle of the following month, Rabī‘ul-Ākhir, and, on the 24th of Rajab, the seventh month of the year, Ulugh Khan again moved towards the hill tracts—Koh-payah. His return is not mentioned, but he had returned again, no doubt, when our author finally ended his history, in the tenth month of the year—Shawwal—658 H.
generous minds or reach their recipient ears, they will veil it with the garment of forgiveness, and endeavour to correct and rectify it, since whatever had been read in previous histories from the narrations and chronicles of Prophets, Malik, and Sultan, has been copied, and whatever the eye has beheld has been recorded 4.

It is remarkable, but nevertheless true, and I do not think the fact has been particularly noticed before, that all the Muhammedan Indian histories of this dynasty suddenly end where our author terminates his account of it, and that no farther account of Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah's, reign is contained in any of them.

The Tabakat-i-Akbar relates but two events in the year 657 H., and then suddenly comes to a conclusion with a short account of that Sultan's mode of life, and his death, and no other event is mentioned. Budauuf goes on a little farther, and gives a few lines more, but only as far as our author goes in his account of Ulugh Khan in the next Section, and then gives several Kasidahs, of many pages, by way of lengthening the account. Firighah also manages to spin out his tale to the same date, but relates nothing farther than is contained in Budauuf and our author, whose last date here mentioned is 13th of Safar—the second month of the year 658 H.; and, in the account of Ulugh Khan, the last date given is Shawwal—the tenth month of that year, and all after is a perfect blank in Indian history, until the reign of Ulugh Khan, Sultan Ghias-ud-Din, Balban—with which Ziya-i-Baran commences his history, the Tarikh-i-Firuz-Shah; but he relates nothing respecting the events of the period in question, although he says he commenced his history where "the Sadr-i-Jahan, Minhaj-i-Saraj, Jurjani, left off."

Most writers agree that Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah, was taken ill in 663 H., and died on the 11th of Jamadi-ul-Awwal, 664 H. His reign was exactly twenty years, three months, and seventeen days, and yet, with the dates before them, the authors of the Tarikh-i-Firuz-Shahi, the Tarikh-i-Mubarak-Shahi, Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh, Tabakat-i-Akbari, and several others, make it one year less.

One reason of this significant silence on the part of our author [who died in the next reign] for a period of nearly six years, is, probably, that the Mughals, being so powerful in the Panjab, harassed the western frontier of the Dihl territory, and occasioned considerable confusion therein; and, not being able to chronicle victories, he refrained from continuing his history. Our author's health does not seem to have hindered him, as he continued for some time in employment in Balban's reign. There may have been another reason for his silence, as some authors attribute the death of Nasir-ud-Din to poison administered by Ulugh Khan, although this is extremely doubtful, and some say he was starved to death whilst confined by Balban's orders. Be this as it may, the silence is ominous.

Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah, left neither offspring nor heir, but, before his death, he had nominated Ulugh Khan as his successor. This was natural, as Ulugh Khan was his own father-in-law; that the latter was son-in-law to Nasir's father, I-yal-timigh, is a mistake of the Tabakat-i-Akbari and its copyists who confound him with Balban-i-Kaghli Khan; but I know of no proof that he even was son-in-law of that Sultan. Ulugh Khan's own son, Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud, surnamed Bughra Khan, had married a daughter of Sultan Nasir-ud-
May the Most High God preserve and continue the 
dynasty of the Sultan-i-Mu'azzam, the great king of 
kings, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muẓaffar-
ī-Maḥmūd Shāh, son of the Sultān I-yal-timish, on the 
throne of sovereignty and the couch of dominion to 
the utmost bounds of possibility, and may He grant His 
forgiveness to the compiler of this Ṭabaḵāt, for the sake 
of the illustrious Prophet Muḥammad!

Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, who was the mother of Ulugh Khān's [Sultān Ghiyās-
ud-Dīn, Balban's] successor, Kāi-Kubād; and, therefore, it is not surprising 
that, on the death of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, Ulugh Khān, 
who had, in reality, governed the kingdom since the fall of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-
Raybān, with the accord of all the great Malikāns, was raised to the throne. 

Sultān Fīrūz Shāh, whenever he had occasion to mention the name of 
Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, used, always, to style him, in a con-
temptuous manner, by the name of "the Khwājāh-Tāsh slave"—Khwājāh-
Tāsh signifying one of a number of slaves of one master, and, also, servants of 
one lord.

It is related that Nāṣir's humility was so great that he requested, that, when he 
died, his face should be blackened, a rope tied to his feet, and his body drawn 
along the ground and thrown into a cavern. When his death took place, and 
consultation was held as to the carrying out of his wishes, "some wise persons 
among the Malikāns and 'Ulamā advised that the face of the corpse should be 
covered with a piece of the [old] drapery of the mosque at Makkah, which is 
black, his bier so constructed with long legs that it might be drawn along the 
ground by a rope to a cavern prepared for it. This was done, and over that 
cavern his sepulchre still stands, which since that time has become a place of 
pilgrimage."

Among some of the events of the year 658 H., the Malik of Kābul, whose 
name is not mentioned, after he had carried on war against the Mughals for 
nearly two years, was taken by Prince Yūsh-mūt and I-yal-kā, the Nūyīn. 
He was brought to the presence of Halākū Khān, who ordered his flesh to be 
cut from his body, and he was compelled to eat it until he died. 
In the year 663 H., on the 9th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, Hulākū died in Āgar-
bāljam, aged forty-eight, after ruling, over Irān, nine years and three months. 
In 664 H., the Imām, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Zakariyā, the Multānī, died, leaving 
seven sons. 
Fasīḥ-i—like Žiyyā-ud-Dīn, Barani—says Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Ulugh 
Khān, ascended the throne of Diblī in 662 H.
ADDITIONAL NOTE.—At page 525, where I have given what is said to have been the inscription on the coins of Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, İ-bak, I have stated, as will be observed, that the inscription is given as "contained in a work in my possession, and which the coins are said to have borne." I did not vouch for its accuracy; and this refers equally to the inscriptions subsequently given up to the reign just concluded.

I am under the necessity of burdening this translation with these additional remarks because Mr. H. Blochmann, M.A., imagines he has made an important discovery. He says ["Contributions to the History and Geography of Bengal," No. III., page 136, last para.], "I, too, have a work in my possession on the 'Coins of the Salatin i Hind,' a modern demi-quarto Dihli lithograph, based on Sayyid Ahmad's Asar uṣanddīd, and I dare say I have discovered the source of Major Raverty's information." In this, as in some other matters, however, he is totally mistaken. I do not know of, nor have I seen, any Aṣār-uṣ-Ṣanādīd, by Sayyid Aḥmad—although I dare say anything from the Sayyid's pen is valuable. The work I refer to is a MS., of which I had a copy taken by my Afghan Maulawi of Kandahār—a real Paṭān—some ten years since, and, from what I can discover, it had been used by, or belonged to, the late W. Marsden. I can put Mr. Blochmann in the way of finding the MS., should he ever come to England.